



**Voyager<sup>®</sup> 8.2**  
**Acquisitions User's Guide**

November 2012

# CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

The information herein is the property of Ex Libris Ltd. or its affiliates and any misuse or abuse will result in economic loss. DO NOT COPY UNLESS YOU HAVE BEEN GIVEN SPECIFIC WRITTEN AUTHORIZATION FROM EX LIBRIS LTD.

This document is provided for limited and restricted purposes in accordance with a binding contract with Ex Libris Ltd. or an affiliate. The information herein includes trade secrets and is confidential.

## DISCLAIMER

The information in this document will be subject to periodic change and updating. Please confirm that you have the most current documentation. There are no warranties of any kind, express or implied, provided in this documentation, other than those expressly agreed upon in the applicable Ex Libris contract. This information is provided AS IS. Unless otherwise agreed, Ex Libris shall not be liable for any damages for use of this document, including, without limitation, consequential, punitive, indirect or direct damages.

Any references in this document to third-party material (including third-party Web sites) are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of that third-party material or those Web sites. The third-party materials are not part of the materials for this Ex Libris product and Ex Libris has no liability for such materials.

## TRADEMARKS

"Ex Libris," the Ex Libris Bridge to Knowledge , Primo, Aleph, Voyager, SFX, MetaLib, Verde, DigiTool, Rosetta, bX, URM, Alma , and other marks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Ex Libris Ltd. or its affiliates.

The absence of a name or logo in this list does not constitute a waiver of any and all intellectual property rights that Ex Libris Ltd. or its affiliates have established in any of its products, features, or service names or logos.

Trademarks of various third-party products, which may include the following, are referenced in this documentation. Ex Libris does not claim any rights in these trademarks. Use of these marks does not imply endorsement by Ex Libris of these third-party products, or endorsement by these third parties of Ex Libris products.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Ltd.

Microsoft, the Microsoft logo, MS, MS-DOS, Microsoft PowerPoint, Visual Basic, Visual C++, Win32, Microsoft Windows, the Windows logo, Microsoft Notepad, Microsoft Windows Explorer, Microsoft Internet Explorer, and Windows NT are registered trademarks and ActiveX is a trademark of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Unicode and the Unicode logo are registered trademarks of Unicode, Inc.

Google is a registered trademark of Google, Inc.

Copyright Ex Libris Limited, 2012. All rights reserved.

Document released: November 2012

Web address: <http://www.exlibrisgroup.com>

---

# Contents

---

## About This Document

• Purpose	xxi
• Intended Audience	xxi
• Reason for Reissue	xxi
• Document Summary	xxii
• Conventions Used in This Document	xxiv
• Document Reproduction/Photocopying	xxv
• Comment on This Document	xxv

---

## 1 Getting Started

• Introduction	1-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	1-1
• Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge	1-2
• Starting and Ending Work in Acquisitions	1-2
Selecting a Location	1-3
Viewing Login Information	1-4
Exiting Acquisitions	1-5
• Before You Begin - The Acquisitions Workspace	1-5
The Listbar	1-6
The Toolbar	1-8
Menu Items	1-12
File Menu	1-12
View Menu	1-13
Tools Menu	1-14
Help Menu	1-15
• Printing Labels	1-15
The Print Labels dialog box	1-16

## Contents

---

<b>2</b>	<b>Searching in Acquisitions</b>	
•	Introduction	2-1
•	Purpose of this Chapter	2-2
•	Standard Searches	2-2
•	Quick Searches	2-5
•	Bibliographic Record Searches	2-10
•	Search Dialog Box	2-11
	Keyword Tab and Keyword Searching	2-12
	Command Line Searching	2-16
	Other Keyword Search Considerations/Options	2-17
	Index Selection Tab	2-18
	Find and Browse Searches	2-22
	Heading Searches by Call Number	2-23
	Headings Keyword Searches	2-23
	Builder Tab and Builder Searching	2-24
	History Tab	2-28
•	Titles Index Dialog Box	2-28
	Search Results List Re-Sort Options	2-31
	Re-Sort Configuration Options	2-32
	Considerations for Re-sorting Search Results	2-34
•	Holdings Index Dialog Box	2-35
•	Headings List Dialog Box	2-37
	Reference Information Dialog Box	2-40
	Scope Notes	2-42
	Narrower Term	2-42
	See Also	2-43
	Select one or more authority records Dialog Box	2-44
•	Perform a Keyword Search	2-45
•	Perform an Index Selection Search	2-47
•	Perform a Builder Search	2-50
•	Access/Review the History Tab	2-52
•	Remote Searching	2-53
	Remote Databases	2-53
	Voyager Connection Options Dialog Box	2-54
	Searching Remote Databases	2-56
•	User-Defined Alternate Search Button	2-62
•	Setting Search Preferences	2-63
	Retain Last Search	2-63



## Contents

Automatic Truncation for Index Selection Searches	2-64
• Search Limits	2-64
Search Limits Dialog Box	2-65
Limits.ini File	2-66
Limits Stanza	2-67
Search Limits Stanzas	2-68
Limiting a Search	2-74
• MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search (optional feature)	2-77
Setup	2-79
Search Options	2-80
Search Results Display	2-80
User Considerations	2-80
• Searching in Acquisitions Examples	2-81
Keyword Searching in the Acquisitions Module	2-81
Index Selection Searching in the Acquisitions Module	2-88
Builder Searching in the Acquisitions Module	2-94
• Searching for Serial Item Information	2-98
• Other Searches	2-102
Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order	2-102
Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues from the Problems Workspace	2-104
Searching for Claims	2-107
Searching for Line Items	2-111

## 3 Currency Maintenance

• Introduction	3-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	3-1
• Base Currency	3-1
Security for Adding or Editing a Currency	3-2
• Currency Maintenance Dialog Box	3-2
Current Currency	3-3
Header Information	3-3
Conversion Rate Tab	3-4
Properties Tab	3-6
• Adding a Currency	3-7
• Editing a Currency	3-10

## Contents

- Fix Exchange Rates (Acqjob 5) 3-12

---

## 4

### Vendor Activities

- Introduction 4-1
- Purpose of this Chapter 4-1
- Vendor Records 4-2
  - Security for Creating and Editing Vendor Records 4-2
- Vendor Dialog Box 4-3
  - Header Information 4-4
  - Addresses/Phones Tab 4-6
  - E-mail Addresses 4-8
  - Accounts Tab 4-9
  - Delivery Options Tab 4-12
  - Bank Information Tab 4-12
  - Notes Tab 4-13
  - Performance Tab 4-14
  - Properties Tab 4-15
- Creating a Vendor Record 4-16
- Editing a Vendor Record 4-33
- Deleting a Vendor Record 4-34
  - Security for Deleting Vendor Records 4-35
- EDI Connection Profiles 4-36
  - Security for working with EDI 4-36
  - Incoming Messages Overview 4-37
  - Outgoing Messages Overview 4-37
- EDI Connection Profile Workspace 4-38
  - EDI qualifier codes 4-42
- Creating an EDI Connection Profile 4-42
  - Library section 4-43
  - Vendor 4-44
  - Usage 4-44
- Editing an EDI Connection Profile 4-45
- Copying an EDI Connection Profile 4-46
- Deleting an EDI Connection Profile 4-47
- Summary of EDI Profile Logic 4-48

## Contents

<b>5</b>	<b>Ledger and Fund Activities</b>	
•	Introduction	5-1
•	Purpose of this Chapter	5-2
•	Overview of Ledgers	5-2
•	Overview of Funds	5-2
•	Ledgers, Funds, and Locations	5-3
	Rules for ledgers, funds, and locations	5-3
	How to solve the problem of “Disappearing” Ledgers	5-4
•	Ledger Dialog box	5-9
	Ledgers and Funds Section	5-10
	Ledger - Header Information	5-11
	Ledger - Locations Tab	5-12
	Commitments/ Expenditures Tab	5-14
	Rollover Information Tab	5-17
	Notes Tab	5-18
	Properties Tab	5-18
•	Creating a New Ledger	5-19
	Security to Create and Edit a Ledger	5-19
	Accessing the New Ledger dialog box	5-20
•	Editing a Ledger	5-24
•	Deleting a Ledger	5-25
	Security to Delete a Ledger	5-26
•	Funds Associated with Ledgers	5-27
	Summary Funds	5-27
	Allocated Funds	5-27
	Reporting Funds	5-28
	Begin and End Dates	5-28
	Security to Create and Edit a Fund	5-29
•	Ledger dialog box - Fund Information	5-29
	Fund - Header Information	5-30
	Summary Tab	5-32
	Override Rules Tab	5-33
	Transactions Tab	5-35
	Security to Change Fund Allocations	5-36
	Fund Transactions dialog box	5-37
	Selecting a fund in the Fund Transaction dialog box	5-39
	Notes Tab	5-40

## Contents

Properties Tab	5-41
Changing a Fund's Allocation	5-47
Transferring Allocated Funds	5-48
• Editing a Fund	5-50
• Deleting a Fund	5-51
Security to Delete a Fund	5-51
• Overview of Commitments (Encumbrances) and Expenditures	5-53
• Fund Warnings/Blocks	5-54
Security to Allow Override Warnings	5-56
• Fiscal Period Close	5-56

---

## 6 Purchase Order Activities

• Introduction	6-1
• Purpose of the Chapter	6-1
• Purchase Orders	6-2
Header Tab	6-5
Footer Tab	6-7
Notes Tab	6-9
Properties Tab	6-10
Creating Purchase Orders	6-11
Security for Creating and Editing a Purchase Order	6-11
• Adding Line Items to a Purchase Order	6-15
Adding Line Items from Your Local Database	6-16
Adding Line Items from Remote Databases	6-17
Adding Brief Bibliographic Records	6-18
Customizing the Acqbib.cfg	6-19
Adding a Line Item by Importing a Bibliographic Record	6-21
Adding a Line Item Using Bibliographic IDs	6-25
• Adding Line Item Information	6-26
Quick Line Item	6-28
Detailed Line Item	6-32
Bib Record Tab	6-38
Price Tab	6-43
Copies/Funds Tab	6-48
Copy Status Tab	6-62

## Contents

Type Tab	6-64
Delivery Options Tab	6-70
Notes Tab	6-72
Order Tab	6-74
Payment History Tab	6-76
Receive/Mark Tab	6-77
Problems Tab	6-79
Claims Tab	6-81
Properties Tab	6-82
• Entering Other PO Charges - Price Adjustments	6-84
Selecting a fund in the Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box	6-87
• Purchase Order Copying	6-93
Security for Copying a Purchase Order	6-93
• Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order	6-94
• Approving a Purchase Order	6-94
Security for Approving Purchase Orders	6-95
Duplicate Order Information on PO	6-97
Vendor History Tab	6-98
Changing a Vendor	6-99
Related Invoices Tab	6-102
• Completing a Purchase Order	6-103
• Canceling a Purchase Order	6-103
Security for Canceling a PO	6-104
• Editing POs and Line Items on POs	6-105
• Editing Line Item Data on an Approved Purchase Order	6-108
Security to Edit Line Item Data on an Approved PO	6-108
Line Item Information Hierarchy	6-111
Selecting a new fund	6-111
Changing the List Price	6-113
Changing the Intended Location for All Copies	6-114
Changing the Intended Location for a Single Copy	6-114
Link to Holdings	6-114
Changing Ledger/Fund Data	6-114
Extended Fund Allocation - Adding a Fund	6-115
Extended Fund Allocation - Editing a Fund	6-116
Extended Fund Allocation - Removing a Fund	6-117
• Deleting a Purchase Order	6-117

## Contents

• Security for Deleting POs	6-119
• Creating an Invoice from a Purchase Order	6-120
• Security to Create an Invoice from a PO	6-120

---

## 7 Receiving and Marking Your Monograph Items

• Introduction	7-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	7-1
• Security to Receive and Mark Monographic Items	7-2
• Receiving a Monographic Item from an Approved PO or Invoice	7-3
Line Item Hierarchy	7-7
Item Record Creation Options	7-8
• Receiving a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item	7-9
• Unreceiving a Monographic Item	7-12
Security to Unreceive a Monographic Item	7-12
• Marking a Monographic Item from an Approved PO or Invoice	7-14
• Marking a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item	7-17

---

## 8 Subscription Maintenance

• Introduction	8-1
• Subscription Maintenance Workspace	8-2
Security for Working in Subscription Maintenance	8-4
• Subscription Components	8-4
• Linking a Publication Pattern to a Component	8-8
Predictive Component Pattern Tab	8-9
Combine/Omit Issues	8-12
Non-Predictive Component Pattern Tab	8-14
Issue-Related Activities	8-16
Modifying Claim Information	8-16
Changing the Expected Date of an Issue	8-17
Adding an Extra Issue	8-17
Changing Enumeration/Chronology of an Issue	8-18
Removing an Issue	8-19

## Contents

Removing Multiple Issues	8-19
Converting Non-Predictive Components to Predictive Components	8-21
Closing a Publication Pattern	8-22
• Routing Lists	8-23
Editing a Routing List	8-31
Deleting a Routing List	8-35
• Maintaining Serial Items	8-38
Closing the Publication Pattern Linked to a Component	8-39
Changing a Component's Subscription Pattern	8-45
Deleting a Component	8-45
Example of Creating a Monthly Publication Pattern	8-47
Enumeration	8-48
Chronology	8-49
Linking the Publication Pattern to a Component	8-49
Example of Simple Subscriptions and Standing Orders	8-52
Considerations for Multi-Part Orders	8-54
Publisher and Analyzed Series	8-56
Title Changes (Bibliographic Control)	8-57
• Publication Patterns - Creating, Editing, and Deleting	8-58
Security for Adding or Editing a Publication Pattern	8-58
Creating a Publication Pattern	8-59
Header Information	8-61
Enumeration/ Chronology Tab	8-62
Chronology	8-63
Alternative Enumeration and Alternative Chronology	8-63
Attached Publications Tab	8-63
Properties Tab	8-64
Editing a Publication Pattern	8-65
Copying a Publication Pattern	8-67
Security for Copying a Publication Pattern	8-67
Deleting a Publication Pattern	8-68
Security for Deleting a Publication Pattern	8-68
• Complex Publication Patterns	8-71
Creating Complex Publication Patterns	8-71
Editing/Copying Complex Publication Patterns	8-78
Deleting Complex Publication Patterns	8-83

## Contents

Linking Complex Publication Patterns to a Component	8-84
Considerations for Complex Publication Patterns	8-90
Percent Symbol	8-90
Grid on the Issue Cycle Tab	8-90
Search Publication Patterns	8-94
Search By	8-94
Condition	8-95
Search For	8-95

---

## 9

### Serials Check-In Activities

• Introduction	9-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	9-1
• Serials Check-In Workspace	9-2
• Checking In Serials	9-4
Security for Working in Serials Check-In	9-4
Adding an Issue	9-18
Changing an Issue	9-19
Removing an Issue	9-19
• Information Accessible from the Serials Check-In Workspace	9-20
Viewing MARC Records	9-21
• Serials History Information	9-27
Accessing the Serials History Workspace	9-28
Receipt History Tab	9-33
Edits to Issues	9-35
Serial Issues Collapsing	9-36
Re-collapsing Serial Issues	9-40
Display In OPAC	9-43
Unreceiving a Serial Issue	9-45
Security for Unreceiving a Serial Issue	9-46
Issues and Item Records	9-48
Claims History Tab	9-49
Problem History Tab	9-51
Payment History Tab	9-53
Displaying an Invoice from the Payment History tab	9-54
Displaying a Fund from the Payment History tab	9-55



## Contents

<b>10</b>	<b>Item Record Creation and Maintenance</b>	
	• Introduction	10-1
	• Item Creation and Maintenance -Monographic Items	10-1
	Security for Creating and Editing an Item Record	10-2
	• Item Creation and Maintenance - Serial Items	10-11
	• Deleting an Item Record	10-30
	Security for Deleting Item Records	10-30
	Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field	
	Display	10-31
	Enumeration	10-31
	Chronology	10-32
	Year	10-33
	Caption	10-33
	Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record	
	Field Display	10-33
	Enumeration	10-33
	Chronology	10-34
	Year	10-34
	Caption	10-34
<b>11</b>	<b>Problems and Claims</b>	
	• Introduction	11-1
	• Purpose of this Chapter	11-1
	Security for Processing Marked Items and Issues	11-2
	• Marking by an Operator	11-3
	• Marking by the System	11-4
	System Cancel for Monographic Line Items Only	11-4
	System Claim for Monograph Line Item Copies	11-6
	System Claim for Serial Issues	11-6
	• Explanation of Override Claim Date	11-8
	Override Claim Date for Monographic Items	11-8
	Override Claim Date for Serial Issues	11-10
	• Overview of Processing Marks and Claims	11-10
	• Problems Workspace	11-16
	Marked Line Items Tab	11-17
	Marked Issues Tab	11-19

## Contents

• Claims Workspace	11-20
Claimed Line Items tab	11-21
Claimed Issues tab	11-23
• Buttons on the Tabs in the Problems and Claims Workspaces	11-25
Searching for Marked and Claimed Items	11-27
• Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices	11-27
• Unmarking a Line Item Copy or Serial Issue	11-29
• Generating a Claim	11-31
• Updating a Claim	11-34
• Canceling a Claim	11-36
• Generating a Cancel	11-39
• Generating a Return	11-41
• Using the Order, Invoice, and Print Buttons	11-43
Viewing a Purchase Order from the Problems or Claims Workspaces	11-43
Viewing an Invoice from the Problems or Claims Workspaces	11-45
The Print button	11-46

---

## 12

### Invoice Activities

• Introduction	12-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	12-2
• Accessing the Invoices Workspace	12-2
The New Invoice dialog box	12-4
Header Tab	12-5
Footer Tab	12-7
Notes Tab	12-8
Properties Tab	12-9
• Creating an Invoice	12-10
Security for Creating/Editing Invoices	12-11
Line Items	12-17
Entering Line Item Information	12-24
Changing the Line Item Column Sequence	12-25
Expanding the Line Item Section	12-25
Searching for Line Items from an Invoice	12-27
Entering Other Invoice Charges	12-28

## Contents

- Approving an Invoice 12-33
  - Security to Approve Invoices 12-33
- Processing Marked and Claimed Items from an Approved Invoice 12-36
- Completing an Invoice 12-37
- Deleting an Invoice 12-38
  - Security to Delete an Invoice 12-39
- Item Creation and Maintenance 12-40

---

### 13 Viewing and Editing MARC Records (Cataloging in Acquisitions)

- Introduction 13-1
- Purpose of this Chapter 13-2
- Requirements for Cataloging in Acquisitions 13-2
- Displaying MARC Records 13-4
  - MARC Bibliographic Records 13-4
  - MARC Holding Records 13-12
- http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server 13-16

---

### 14 Bindery Maintenance

- Introduction 14-1
- Purpose of this Chapter 14-1
- Explanation of Bindery Maintenance Functionality 14-1
  - Bindery Maintenance Activities 14-2
  - Definitions of terms 14-2
    - Issues 14-2
    - Volumes 14-2
    - Bindery Copy 14-3
    - Bindery Copy Data 14-3
    - Pullslip 14-3
  - Pages, Dialog Boxes, Field Names, and Field Descriptions 14-3
    - The Bindery Maintenance Workspace Page 14-4
    - Issues Available for Binding Box 14-12

## Contents

Issues Bound in this Volume	14-13
Bind-on Date Interval	14-15
New Volumes List Box	14-16
Bindery Copy Data Dialog Box	14-16
Bindery Pullslip Dialog Box	14-17
Item Record Dialog Box	14-19
• Procedures for Volume Management	14-20
Security for Working in Bindery Maintenance	14-21
Creating New Volumes	14-22
Adjusting New Volumes	14-26
Editing Existing Volumes	14-29
Deleting Volumes	14-39
Working with Bindery Notes and Pullslips	14-42
Collapsing Issues	14-46
Item Creation and Maintenance	14-50
• Workflows	14-52

---

## 15 Electronic Data Interchange

• Introduction	15-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	15-1
• Voyager EDI	15-1
Opening the Process EDI Messages Workspace	15-2
• Incoming Tab	15-4
Security For EDI Incoming Messages	15-4
Receiving EDI Messages	15-4
Obtaining EDIFACT Data Files from Your Vendor	15-6
The contents of EDIFACT files	15-6
Receiving EDIFACT Files	15-7
Correcting Vendor and Location Assignments	15-8
Selecting and Loading Messages into Your Database	15-11
Searching for Incoming Messages	15-11
Receive Items Option	15-12
Selecting and Loading Messages	15-14
Resolving Errors	15-16
Notes	15-19
Receiving EDI files	15-19
Loading EDI Invoices	15-20

## Contents

Loading Claim Responses	15-21
Sending EDI Claims	15-21
Sending EDI Purchase Orders	15-21
• Outgoing Tab	15-22
Security for EDI Outgoing Messages	15-22
Searching for Outgoing Messages	15-23
Security for Modifying Outgoing Messages	15-26
Selecting and Sending Messages	15-27

## 16

### Fiscal Period Close (FPC)

• Introduction	16-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	16-1
• Introduction to FPC	16-2
Preparing for Fiscal Period Close	16-3
Define the Next Fiscal Period (Required)	16-3
Review Fund Names (Optional)	16-4
Identify Open Orders (Optional, Strongly Recommended)	16-4
Define Rollover Rules (Required)	16-7
Security for Defining the Rollover Rule	16-7
Assigning Rollover Rules to Ledgers	16-13
Rollover Rules Eligibility	16-19
Set the Rollover Rule's Action Indicator	16-21
Create and Review Fund Snapshot Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended)	16-22
Create and Review Open Order Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended)	16-22
• Before Running Fiscal Period Close	16-25
Back Up Your System (Optional, Recommended)	16-25
Disable Online Operators (Required)	16-26
• Fiscal Period Close Processing	16-27
• Analyzing Results & Making Corrections (Optional, Strongly Recommended)	16-31
Checking New Ledgers/Funds	16-31
Checking Open Order Rollover	16-31
Re-enable Online Operators (Required)	16-32
Adjust Funds	16-32
• Running the Fiscal Period Close Batch Programs	16-32

## Contents

Issues to Consider Before Running Batch Jobs	16-33
Batch Jobs	16-33
Shutting Down Acquisitions	16-34
Backing Up Your Acquisitions Data (Strongly Recommended)	16-34
Running the Fiscal Period Close (FPC) Batch Job	16-35
Restoring Your Acquisitions Data After Fiscal Period Close Processing	16-36

---

## 17

### Session Defaults

• Introduction	17-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	17-1
• Accessing Session Defaults	17-2
• Purchase Order Defaults	17-4
• Line Item Defaults	17-6
• Line Item Copies/Funds Defaults	17-8
Setting Defaults for an Intended Location	17-10
Displaying the Selected Intended Locations	17-11
• Invoice Defaults	17-12
• Vendor Defaults	17-14
• Fund Defaults	17-16
• Ledger Defaults	17-19

---

## 18

### Session Preferences

• Introduction	18-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	18-1
• Colors and Fonts Tab	18-4
• List Bar Tab	18-5
Default Workspace	18-6
Listbar Appearance	18-7
Position	18-9
• Sounds and Animation Tab	18-10
Sounds	18-11
Tooltips	18-12

## Contents

Deletion Reminder	18-13
Intro Music	18-14
Enable Transitions	18-15

## 19

### Session Workflows

• Introduction	19-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	19-1
• Accessing the Workflows dialog box	19-2
• Searching Tab	19-4
Default Searches	19-5
Bibliographic Staff Searching	19-5
• Line Items Tab	19-5
Quick Line Items - Purchase Orders/Invoices	19-6
Monographic Receive Processing	19-7
Show Line Item Relations	19-7
• Approve Processing Tab	19-8
Orders	19-9
Invoices	19-10
• Item Creation Tab	19-10
Item Records	19-11
Item Creation from Order	19-11
Item Creation from Invoice	19-12
Item Creation from Serials Check-In	19-13
Item Barcodes	19-13
Self Check	19-13
• Serials Check-In Tab	19-14
Serials Receive Processing	19-16
Bindery Pullslips	19-16
• Claim Processing Tab	19-18
• Bibliographic Standard Number Validation (ISBN/ISSN)	19-20
Bypass ISBN validation	19-20
Bypass ISSN validation	19-21
Bypass ISBN prefix validation for EDI messages	19-21
Bypass ISSN validation for EDI messages	19-21

Contents

IN	Index	IN-1
----	-------	------



---

## About This Document

---

### Purpose

This document provides instructions for using Voyager's Acquisitions module.

---

### Intended Audience

This document is intended for Voyager customers who are responsible for acquisitions and other related activities.

---

### Reason for Reissue

This user's guide incorporates and is being reissued for the following reasons:

- Updated [Searching for Serial Item Information](#) on [page 2-98](#)
- Updated [Serials Check-In Workspace](#) on [page 9-2](#) with a new Serials Check-In Search workspace figure that includes the new Bib ID option
- Updated [Procedure 9-10, Accessing and viewing the serials history of a record](#), on [page 9-30](#) with a new Serials History Search workspace figure that includes the new Bib ID option
- Updated [Figure 9-8](#) on [page 9-13](#) and added a related tip regarding in-place creation/editing of barcodes and the Save Item to Database and Close Window icon for one-step processing

- Updated change password information in [Table 1-1](#) on [page 1-12](#).
- Added a notation to step 2 of [Procedure 6-23, Copying a Purchase Order](#), on page [6-93](#)
- Added a notation to [Serial Issues Collapsing](#) on [page 9-36](#) regarding collapsing issues checked in on a complex prediction pattern
- Correct errors found in the section [Overview of Processing Marks and Claims](#) on [page 11-10](#)
- Updated [Table 5-3](#) on [page 5-15](#)

## Document Summary

---

This document consists of the following.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Chapter <a href="#">1</a> | <a href="#">“Getting Started”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">1</a> describes logging in and exiting Acquisitions, the Acquisitions workspace, and printing spine and piece labels in Acquisitions.                                   |
| Chapter <a href="#">2</a> | <a href="#">“Searching in Acquisitions”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">2</a> details searching in the Acquisitions module.   |
| Chapter <a href="#">3</a> | <a href="#">“Currency Maintenance”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">3</a> details configuring and maintaining the types of currency that are available when purchasing your library items.   |
| Chapter <a href="#">4</a> | <a href="#">“Vendor Activities”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">4</a> details the activities relating to managing all of the information necessary for dealing with your vendors.   |
| Chapter <a href="#">5</a> | <a href="#">“Ledger and Fund Activities”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">5</a> details the various ledger and fund activities that allow you to maintain your library's ledgers and funds that are used when you purchase line items. |
| Chapter <a href="#">6</a> | <a href="#">“Purchase Order Activities”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">6</a> details activities relating to purchase orders where you create and maintain your purchase orders for items for your library.                           |
| Chapter <a href="#">7</a> | <a href="#">“Receiving and Marking Your Monograph Items”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">7</a> details activities relating to receiving and marking monographic items.  |
| Chapter <a href="#">8</a> | <a href="#">“Subscription Maintenance”</a><br>Chapter <a href="#">8</a> details activities relating to managing and maintaining the subscription information of your library's serial and multi-part items.                      |

Chapter <a href="#">9</a>	<a href="#">“Serials Check-In Activities”</a> Chapter <a href="#">9</a> details activities relating to managing various aspects of your serial processing.
Chapter <a href="#">10</a>	<a href="#">“Item Record Creation and Maintenance”</a> Chapter <a href="#">10</a> details creating and maintaining item records.
Chapter <a href="#">11</a>	<a href="#">“Problems and Claims”</a> Chapter <a href="#">11</a> details activities relating to monograph line item copies and serial issues that have been marked and how to process them.
Chapter <a href="#">12</a>	<a href="#">“Invoice Activities”</a> Chapter <a href="#">12</a> details activities relating to creating and maintaining your invoices.
Chapter <a href="#">13</a>	<a href="#">“Viewing and Editing MARC Records (Cataloging in Acquisitions)”</a> Chapter <a href="#">13</a> details configuration and activities relating to viewing MARC bibliographic and holding records using the Voyager Cataloging module and a Web server.
Chapter <a href="#">14</a>	<a href="#">“Bindery Maintenance”</a> Chapter <a href="#">14</a> details activities relating to creating and maintaining the binding functions of serials processing.
Chapter <a href="#">15</a>	<a href="#">“Electronic Data Interchange”</a> Chapter <a href="#">15</a> details activities relating to electronically exchanging messages containing purchase orders, invoices, serial claims, and serial claim responses with participating vendors.
Chapter <a href="#">16</a>	<a href="#">“Fiscal Period Close (FPC)”</a> Chapter <a href="#">16</a> details activities relating to creating new ledgers/funds for new fiscal periods and rolling over open orders from a previous fiscal period to a new fiscal period.
Chapter <a href="#">17</a>	<a href="#">“Session Defaults”</a> Chapter <a href="#">17</a> details activities relating to creating default values for newly created Purchase Order, Line Item Copies/Funds, Invoice, Vendor, Fund and Ledger records.
Chapter <a href="#">18</a>	<a href="#">“Session Preferences”</a> Chapter <a href="#">18</a> details activities relating to customizing many aspects of the appearance of your Acquisitions module.
Chapter <a href="#">19</a>	<a href="#">“Session Workflows”</a> Chapter <a href="#">19</a> details configurations to the Searching, Line Items, Approve Processing, Item Creation, Serial Check-In and Claim Processing activities.
Index	The Index is an alphabetical, detailed cross-reference of topics.

## Conventions Used in This Document

---

The following conventions are used throughout this document:

- Names of commands, variables, stanzas, files, and paths (such as `/dev/tmp`), as well as selectors and typed user input, are displayed in `constant width` type.
- Commands or other keyboard input that must be typed exactly as presented are displayed in **`constant width bold`** type.
- Commands or other keyboard input that must be supplied by the user are displayed in ***constant width bold italic*** type.
- System-generated responses such as error messages are displayed in `constant width` type.
- Variable *portions* of system-generated responses are displayed in *constant width italic* type.
- Keyboard commands (such as **Ctrl** and **Enter**) are displayed in **bold**.
- Required keyboard input such as “Enter **vi**” is displayed in **`constant width bold`** type.
- Place holders for variable portions of user-defined input such as ***ls -l filename*** are displayed in ***italicized constant width bold*** type.
- The names of menus or status display pages and required selections from menus or status display pages such as “From the **Applications** drop-down list, select **System-wide**,” are displayed in **bold** type.
- Object names on a window's interface, such as the **Description** field, the **OK** button, and the **Metadata** tab, are displayed in **bold** type.
- The titles of documents such as *Curator Web Client User's Guide* are displayed in *italic* type.
- Caution, and important notices are displayed with a distinctive label such as the following:

### NOTE:

Extra information pertinent to the topic.



### IMPORTANT:

*Information you should consider before making a decision or configuration.*



### CAUTION:

*Information you must consider before making a decision, due to potential loss of data or system malfunction involved.*



**TIP:**

*Helpful hints you might want to consider before making a decision.*

**RECOMMENDED:**

*Preferred course of action.*

**OPTIONAL:**

*Indicates course of action which is not required, but may be taken to suit your library's preferences or requirements.*

## **Document Reproduction/Photocopying**

---

Photocopying the documentation is allowed under your contract with Ex Libris (USA) Inc. It is stated below:

All documentation is subject to U.S. copyright protection. CUSTOMER may copy the printed documentation only in reasonable quantities to aid the employees in their use of the SOFTWARE. Limited portions of documentation, relating only to the public access catalog, may be copied for use in patron instruction.

## **Comment on This Document**

---

To provide feedback regarding this document, use the Ex Libris eService or send your comments in an e-mail message to [docmanager@exlibrisgroup.com](mailto:docmanager@exlibrisgroup.com).



---

## Getting Started

# 1

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge</b>	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Starting and Ending Work in Acquisitions</b>	<b>1-2</b>
• Selecting a Location	1-3
• Viewing Login Information	1-4
• Exiting Acquisitions	1-5
<b>Before You Begin - The Acquisitions Workspace</b>	<b>1-5</b>
• The Listbar	1-6
• The Toolbar	1-8
• Menu Items	1-12
File Menu	1-12
View Menu	1-13
Tools Menu	1-15
Help Menu	1-15
<b>Printing Labels</b>	<b>1-15</b>
• The Print Labels dialog box	1-16





---

**Introduction**

The Voyager Acquisitions module manages your library's purchases and the activities associated with those purchases.

---

**Purpose of this Chapter**

This chapter's purpose is to provide easy-to-follow directions for the following.

- Logging in to Acquisitions
  - Selecting a receiving location
  - Viewing login information
- Exiting Acquisitions
- The Acquisitions workspace
  - Listbar
  - Toolbar
  - Menu
- Printing spine and piece labels

## Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge

---

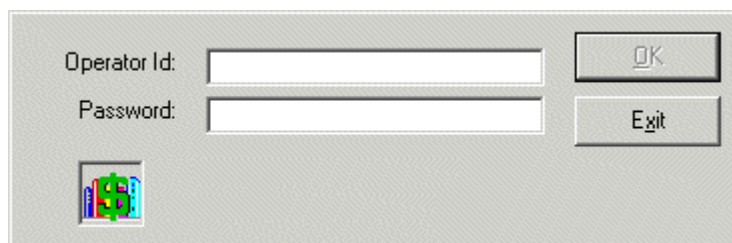
To use this document effectively, you need knowledge of the following.

- Basic Microsoft® Interface navigation
- Basic Voyager® System Administration module
- Knowledge of MARC record formats

## Starting and Ending Work in Acquisitions

---

To open Acquisitions, double-click the Acquisitions program icon. The **Log in** dialog box opens (see [Figure 1-1](#)).



---

**Figure 1-1. Log in dialog box**

The procedure for logging in to Acquisitions is shown in [Procedure 1-1, Logging in to Acquisitions](#).



### Procedure 1-1. Logging in to Acquisitions

---

Use the following to log in to the Acquisitions module.

1. At the **Log in** dialog box
  - a. Enter your operator ID in the **Operator ID** field.
  - b. Enter your password in the **Password** field.
2. Click the **OK** button. Click the **Exit** button to cancel the Acquisitions session.

Result: If you clicked **OK**, you are logged in to the Acquisitions module.

---

### Selecting a Location

---

The **Select a Receiving Location** dialog box ([Figure 1-2](#)) displays after you log in to the Acquisitions module if you are authorized to work at more than one location. The operator must choose the location in which they will work.

---



---

**Figure 1-2.** Select a Receiving Location dialog box

**NOTE:**

Operators authorized to work from only one location do not see this dialog box.

The procedure for selecting a receiving location is shown in [Procedure 1-2, Selecting a Receiving Location](#).



### Procedure 1-2. Selecting a Receiving Location

---

Use the following to select a receiving location.

1. From the **Select a Receiving Location** dialog box, highlight the location from which the operator wants to work.
2. Click the **OK** button. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel the Acquisitions session.

Result: If clicked **OK**, the receiving location is selected.

---

## Viewing Login Information

---

The **Login Information** dialog box displays information about the Acquisitions operator, operator ID, and the login location at anytime during the Acquisitions session.

The procedure for viewing login information is shown in [Procedure 1-3, Viewing Login Information](#).



### Procedure 1-3. Viewing Login Information

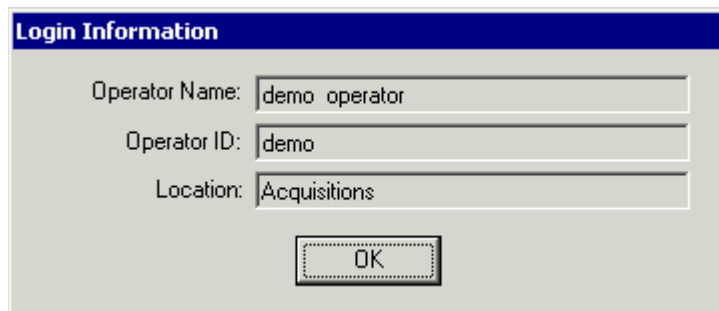
---

Use the following to display login information.

1. Select **Login Information** from the **File** menu.

Result: The **Login Information** dialog box opens (see [Figure 1-3](#)).

---



---

**Figure 1-3. Login Information**

2. Click the **OK** button.

Result: The dialog box closes.

---

## Exiting Acquisitions

---

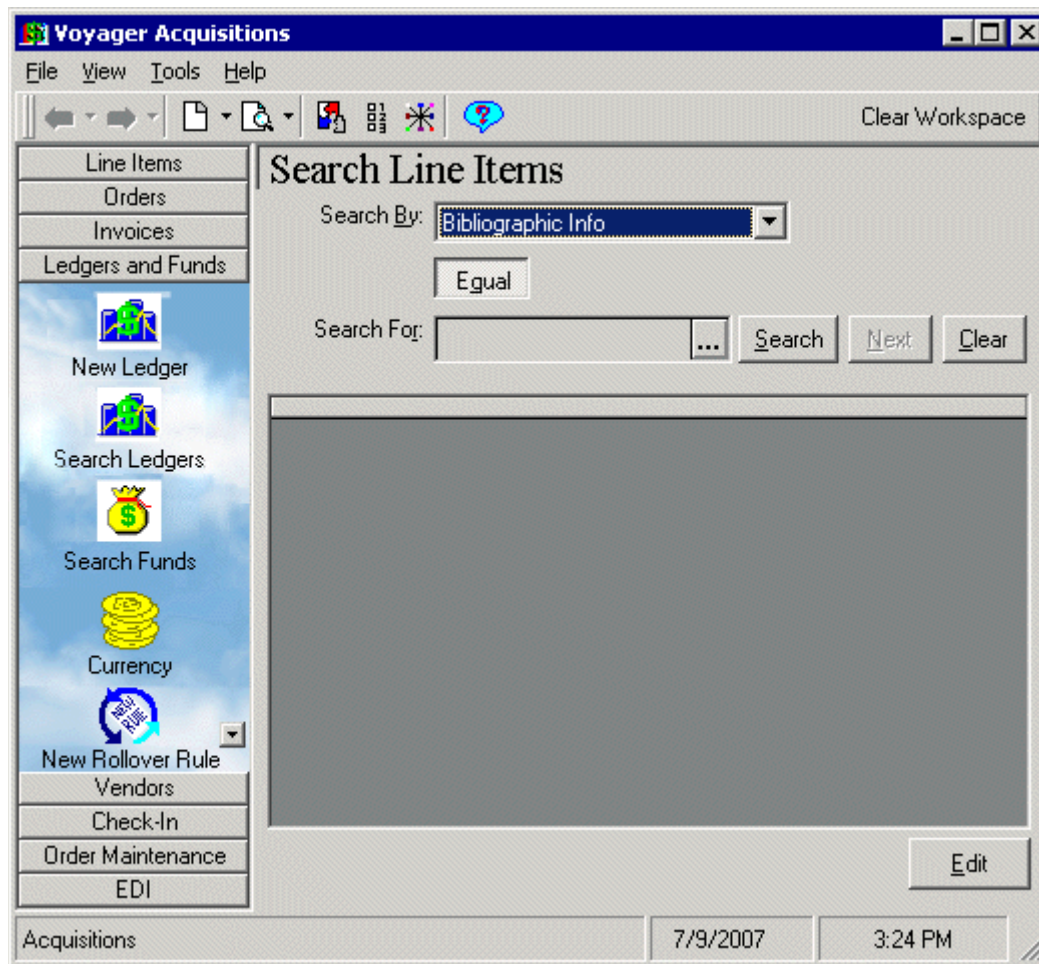
To close and exit the Acquisitions module.

- Select **Exit** from the **File** menu.
- Click the **x** button in the upper right corner of the Acquisitions workspace.

## Before You Begin - The Acquisitions Workspace

---

Acquisitions functions are performed from the Acquisitions workspace (see [Figure 1-4](#)).



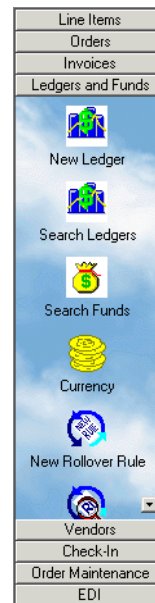
**Figure 1-4. Acquisitions workspace**

The Acquisitions workspace contains a listbar, a menu, toolbar, and the workspace itself.

### **The Listbar**

---

The various activities of the Acquisitions module are organized into bars on the listbar (see [Figure 1-5](#)). For example, all Ledger activities appear under the **Ledgers and Funds** bar.



**Figure 1-5. Acquisitions listbar**

When you click a bar, the available functions for that activity display as buttons. For example, when you click the **Invoice** bar, the **New Invoice** and **Search Invoice** buttons display in the listbar.

Using your Session Preferences, you can choose to display the listbar on the far left or far right side of the window, or you can choose to not display the listbar at all. If you decide to not display the listbar, all functions are still accessible from the **View** menu on the Acquisitions workspace.

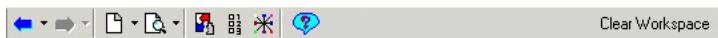
Also, you can select a default activity that displays on the Acquisitions workspace when the module is opened. Because Preferences are retained between sessions, this ability to select a default function makes it possible for you to start with the activity that fits your specific objective each time you open the Acquisitions module.

See [List Bar Tab](#) on [page 18-5](#) for more information about setting up these Session Preferences.

## The Toolbar

---

Using the toolbar on the Acquisitions workspace ([Figure 1-6](#)), you can access certain features with a single click of the mouse.



---

**Figure 1-6.** Acquisitions toolbar

The two **Arrow** buttons ([Figure 1-7](#)) allow you to move back and forth between functions that have been displayed on the Acquisitions workspace during your current session.



---

**Figure 1-7.** Arrow buttons

For example, if you displayed the **Search Orders** workspace and then displayed the **Search Invoices** workspace, you could press the back arrow to return to the **Search Orders** workspace. Likewise, from the **Search Orders** workspace you could press the forward arrow to go to the **Search Invoices** workspace. Also, clicking the down arrows beside the arrow buttons displays the list of screens to which you can move back and forward.

The **New Item** button ([Figure 1-8](#)) creates a new record with a single click of the mouse. Clicking this button creates a record corresponding to the screen currently displayed on the Acquisitions workspace.



---

**Figure 1-8.** New Item button

For example, if you have the **Search Orders** workspace displayed, clicking this button creates a new purchase order record. However, you can also click the down arrow beside the button to select the type of record you want to create.



The **Search** button ([Figure 1-9](#)) displays the **Find** dialog box from which you can conduct standard searches for many types of records.

- Vendors
- Ledgers
- Funds
- Rollover Rules
- Purchase Orders (PO)
- Invoices
- EDI Connection Profiles
- Routing Lists
- Publication Patterns

You can also click the down arrow beside the button to select the type of search you want to conduct.



---

**Figure 1-9. Search button**

For more information about standard searching, see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#).

The **Set Defaults** button ([Figure 1-10](#)) displays the **Session Defaults** dialog box, from which you can configure your Session Defaults. For more information see [Session Defaults](#) on [page 17-1](#).



---

**Figure 1-10. Set Defaults button**

The **Set Preferences** button ([Figure 1-11](#)) displays the **Preferences** dialog box, from which you can configure your session preferences. For more information see [Session Preferences](#) on [page 18-1](#).



---

**Figure 1-11. Set Preferences button**

The **Set Workflows** button ([Figure 1-12](#)) displays the **Workflows** dialog box, from which you can configure your Session Workflows. For more information see [Session Workflows](#) on [page 19-1](#).

---



---

**Figure 1-12. Set Workflows button**

The **Help** button ([Figure 1-13](#)) displays help contents for the Acquisitions online help. The Acquisitions online help can also be displayed by pressing the **F1** function key on your keyboard. Help information displays for the Acquisitions workspace in which you are currently working.

---

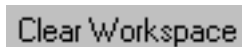


---

**Figure 1-13. Help button**

The **Clear Workspace** button ([Figure 1-14](#)) clears the screen currently displayed on the Acquisitions workspace and replaces it with a blank screen (see [Figure 1-15](#)).

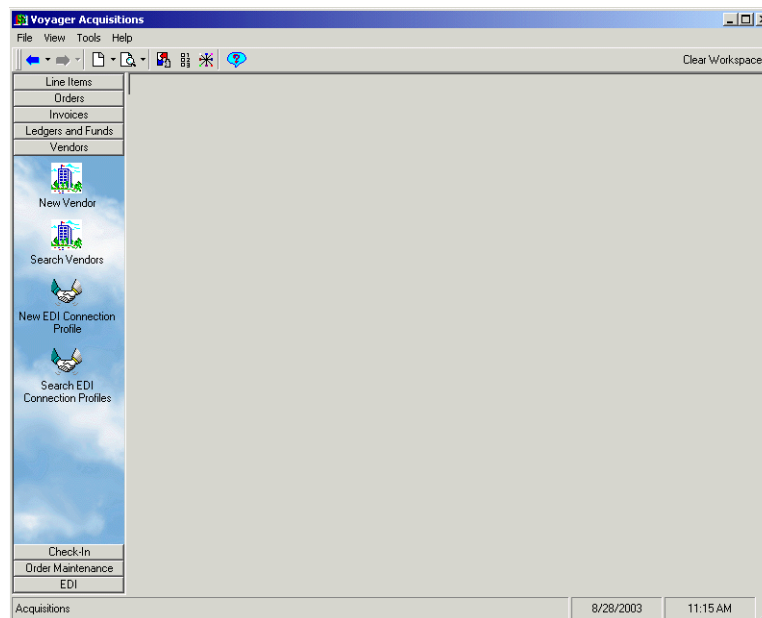
---

A rectangular button with a gray background. It contains the text "Clear Workspace" in a black, sans-serif font.

---

**Figure 1-14. Clear Workspace button**

In a circumstance where you must leave your workstation for an extended period of time after having performed and completed Acquisitions activities, using this button to clear the Acquisitions workspace before you leave can help ensure that you are not mistaken about where you have left off with your activities when you return to your workstation.



**Figure 1-15. Acquisitions workspace - blank screen displayed after pressing the Clear Workspace button**

In addition, clicking the **Clear Workspace** button not only clears the current screen and displays a blank screen ([Figure 1-15](#)) but also clears information that has been displayed previously on all other screens on the Acquisitions workspace.

## Menu Items

---

The menu items are File, View, Tools, and Help (see [Figure 1-16](#)).



---

**Figure 1-16. Acquisitions Menus**

## File Menu

[Table 1-1](#) contains the options that are available to you under the **File** menu on the Acquisitions workspace.

**Table 1-1. File Menu Options**

Options	Description
New	Displays a cascading menu of choices. Select one of the following new menu items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Purchase order</li><li>• Invoice</li><li>• Publication Pattern</li><li>• Vendor</li><li>• Ledger</li><li>• Rollover Rule</li><li>• EDI Connection Profile</li></ul>
Search	Displays a cascading menu of choices. Select one of the following to search for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Purchase order</li><li>• Invoice</li><li>• Publication Pattern</li><li>• Vendor</li><li>• Ledger</li><li>• Fund</li><li>• Rollover Rule</li><li>• EDI Connection Profile</li><li>• Routing List</li><li>• Line Item</li></ul>

**Table 1-1. File Menu Options**

Options	Description
Close All Windows	Closes all windows currently displayed other than the Voyager Acquisitions workspace.
Print Setup	Displays the Print dialog box, from which you can configure your printer(s).
Login Information	Displays the operator name, operator ID and location.
Change Password	Displays the dialog box for changing your password. For information on how to configure password requirements, see <a href="#">Configuring Password Options</a> in the <i>Voyager System Administration Guide</i> .
Exit	Exits the Voyager Acquisitions module.

## View Menu

[Table 1-2](#) contains the options that are available to you under the **View** menu on the Acquisitions workspace.

**Table 1-2. View Menu Options**

Item	Options	Definition
Line Items	Search	Opens the Search Line Items quick search.
Orders	New Order Search	New Order creates a new purchase order. Search opens the Search Orders quick search.
Invoices	New Search	New creates a new invoice. Search opens the Search Invoices quick search.
Ledgers and Funds	New Ledger Search Ledger Search Fund Currency New Rollover Rule Search Rollover Rule	New Ledger and New Roll-over Rule create a new ledger record and a new rollover rule. Search Ledger, Search Fund and Search Rollover Rule open the quick search for ledgers, funds, and rollover rules. Currency displays the Currency Maintenance activity.

**Table 1-2. View Menu Options**

Item	Options	Definition
Vendors	New Vendor Search Vendor New EDI Connection Profile Search EDI Connection Profile	New Vendor and New EDI Connection Profile create a new vendor record and a new EDI connection profile. Search Vendor and Search EDI Connection Profile open respective quick searches.
Check In	Serials Check-In Serials History Subscription Maintenance Search Routing Lists New Publication Pattern Search Publication Pattern	Serials Check-In, Serials History and Subscription Maintenance display the check-in, history and maintenance activities. Search Routing List and Search Publication Pattern display the quick search screens for routing lists and publication patterns. New Publication Pattern creates a new publication pattern record.
Order Maintenance	Problems Claims	Problems and Claims display the Problems and Claims Lists.
EDI	Process EDI Messages	Process EDI Messages displays the screen from which to process incoming and outgoing EDI messages.

## Tools Menu

The **Tools** menu ([Table 1-3](#)) on the Acquisitions workspace allows you to access your Session Defaults, Preferences and Workflows.

**Table 1-3. Tools Menu Options**

Item	Definition
Defaults	Opens the Defaults dialog box with the following tabs: Purchase Order, Line Item, Line Item Copies/Funds, Invoice, Vendor, Fund, and Ledger.
Preferences	Opens the Preferences dialog box with the following tabs: Colors and Fonts, List Bar, and Sounds and Animation.

**Table 1-3. Tools Menu Options**

Item	Definition
Workflows	Opens the Workflows dialog box with the following tabs: Searching, Line Items, Approve Processing, Item Creation, Serials Check-In, Bibliographic Standard Number Validation, and Claim Processing.

## Help Menu

The Acquisitions Help Menu activates the online help system. The online help system allows you to search, browse and access instructions for the Acquisitions module. Press **F1** and retrieve context-sensitive instructions that provide specific help for the window or dialog box you are working in.

When you select **Help** from the **Acquisitions** main menu, your choices are as shown in [Table 1-4](#).

**Table 1-4. Help Menu Options**

Item	Definition
Help Topics	Displays the Acquisitions online help contents.
Ex Libris on the Web	Provides links to Ex Libris Web content.
About Acquisitions	Displays company and product information.

## Printing Labels

There are numerous places throughout the Acquisitions module where you can print spine and piece labels.

A spine label can be an attachment to an item for shelving purposes. A piece label can be an attachment to an item for general identification purposes. Spine and piece labels can be customized. You can create separate spine and piece templates for bibliographic, holding, item and serial records. The templates are defined in the `spinelabel.cfg` file which is located in the `c:\Voyager\Misc` directory.

The default settings are as follows: the size of a spine label is 1 5/8" high by 9/10" wide; the size of a piece label is 1 5/8" high by 2 9/10" wide. For information about how to customize the templates, see the *Voyager Cataloging User's Guide*.

You can print labels from the following functions by clicking the **Print Labels** button, which displays the **Print Labels** dialog box. See [Procedure 1-4, Printing Spine and Piece Labels from the Print Labels dialog box](#), on page 1-17.

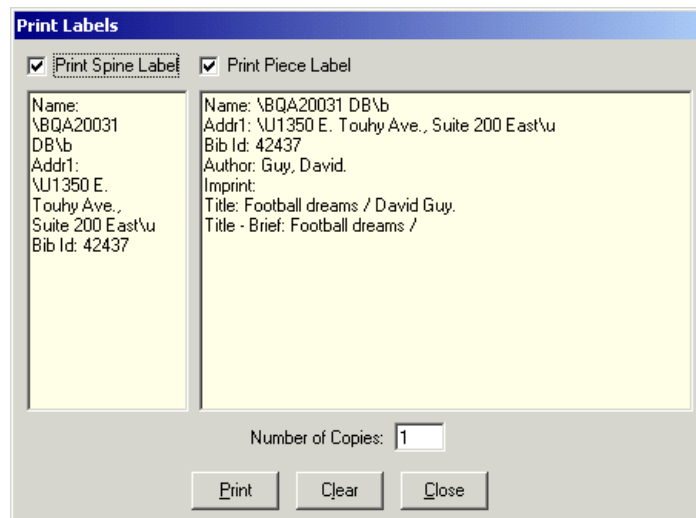
- After you select an issue to check-in and click the **Accept** button, the **Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark** workspace displays. For more information about Serials Check-In activities see [Serials Check-In Activities](#) on page 9-1.
- After selecting a line item in the line item section of the **Purchase Order** or **Invoice**. For more information about purchase orders and invoices, see [Purchase Order Activities](#) on page 6-1 and [Invoice Activities](#) on page 12-1.
- After accessing the **Line Item** dialog box, **Copy Status** tab. For more information about detailed line items, see [Detailed Line Item](#) on page 6-32. For more information about the **Copy Status** tab of a line item, see [Copy Status Tab](#) on page 6-62.
- After accessing the **Line Item** dialog box, **Receive/Mark** tab. For more information about detailed line items, see [Detailed Line Item](#) on page 6-32. For more information about the **Receive/Mark** tab of a line item, see [Receive/Mark Tab](#) on page 6-77.
- After clicking the **Receive** button (on a purchase order or invoice), the **Receive/Mark** dialog box displays.
- After an item record is displayed. For information about creating an item record from a purchase order, invoice or serials check-in, see [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on page 10-1.

### **The Print Labels dialog box**

---

The **Print Labels** dialog box ([Figure 1-17](#)) contains the **Print Spine Label** check box, the **Print Piece Label** check box, the sample labels boxes, the **Number of Copies** field, and the **Print**, **Clear**, and **Close** buttons.





**Figure 1-17. Print Labels dialog box**

The procedure for printing spine and piece labels is shown in [Procedure 1-4, Printing Spine and Piece Labels from the Print Labels dialog box](#).



#### **Procedure 1-4. Printing Spine and Piece Labels from the Print Labels dialog box**

Use the following to print spine and piece labels.

1. When the **Print Labels** dialog box displays, select check box beside the type of label that you want to print, **Print Spine Label** or **Print Piece Label**. Select both check boxes to print both a spine label and piece label.
2. Add or edit information in the spine and piece label sections.

**NOTE:**

The system automatically adjusts the text on the screen to fit the information on the appropriate label.

3. Enter the number of copies to be printed in the **Number of Copies** field.

4. Click the **Print** button to print the labels on the printer that Windows is configured to, click the **Clear** button to remove all information from the spine and piece label sections, or click the **Close** button to close the dialog box without printing the information.

Result: If clicked **Print**, the wanted labels print.

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>2-2</b>
<b>Standard Searches</b>	<b>2-2</b>
<b>Quick Searches</b>	<b>2-5</b>
<b>Bibliographic Record Searches</b>	<b>2-10</b>
<b>Search Dialog Box</b>	<b>2-11</b>
• Keyword Tab and Keyword Searching	2-12
Command Line Searching	2-16
Other Keyword Search Considerations/Options	2-17
• Index Selection Tab	2-18
Find and Browse Searches	2-22
Heading Searches by Call Number	2-23
Headings Keyword Searches	2-23
• Builder Tab and Builder Searching	2-24
• History Tab	2-28
<b>Titles Index Dialog Box</b>	<b>2-28</b>
• Search Results List Re-Sort Options	2-31
Re-Sort Configuration Options	2-32
Considerations for Re-sorting Search Results	2-34
<b>Holdings Index Dialog Box</b>	<b>2-35</b>
<b>Headings List Dialog Box</b>	<b>2-37</b>

• Reference Information Dialog Box	2-40
Scope Notes	2-42
Narrower Term	2-42
See Also	2-43
• Select one or more authority records Dialog Box	2-44
<b>Perform a Keyword Search</b>	<b>2-45</b>
<b>Perform an Index Selection Search</b>	<b>2-47</b>
<b>Perform a Builder Search</b>	<b>2-50</b>
<b>Access/Review the History Tab</b>	<b>2-52</b>
<b>Remote Searching</b>	<b>2-53</b>
• Remote Databases	2-53
• Voyager Connection Options Dialog Box	2-54
• Searching Remote Databases	2-56
<b>User-Defined Alternate Search Button</b>	<b>2-62</b>
<b>Setting Search Preferences</b>	<b>2-63</b>
• Retain Last Search	2-63
• Automatic Truncation for Index Selection Searches	2-64
<b>Search Limits</b>	<b>2-64</b>
• Search Limits Dialog Box	2-65
• Limits.ini File	2-66
Limits Stanza	2-67
Search Limits Stanzas	2-68
• Limiting a Search	2-74
<b>MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search (optional feature)</b>	<b>2-77</b>
• Setup	2-79
• Search Options	2-80
• Search Results Display	2-80
• User Considerations	2-80
<b>Searching in Acquisitions Examples</b>	<b>2-81</b>
• Keyword Searching in the Acquisitions Module	2-81
• Index Selection Searching in the Acquisitions Module	2-88
• Builder Searching in the Acquisitions Module	2-94
<b>Searching for Serial Item Information</b>	<b>2-98</b>
<b>Other Searches</b>	<b>2-102</b>
• Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order	2-102

- Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues from the Problems Workspace 2-104
- Searching for Claims 2-107
- Searching for Line Items 2-111



### **Introduction**

---

You can search for and display existing records in Acquisitions using standard searching or quick searching. Operators can search for:

- Vendors
- Ledgers
- Funds
- Rollover Rules
- Purchase Orders (PO)
- Line Items (quick search only)
- Invoices
- EDI Connection Profiles
- Routing Lists
- Publication Patterns

## Purpose of this Chapter

---

This chapter explains how to perform both types of searches across all areas of Acquisitions.

- Standard searches
- Quick searches

This chapter also discusses bibliographic searching, which is available in the Acquisitions module as well as in the Circulation and Cataloguing modules of Voyager.

- Keyword search
- Non-Keyword search
- Builder search
- History tab search
- Searching for Serial Items
- Other searches in Acquisitions

## Standard Searches

---

Standard searching allows you to conduct complex searches by combining multiple criteria with Boolean operators.

The procedure for performing a standard search is shown in [Procedure 2-1, Performing a standard search](#).



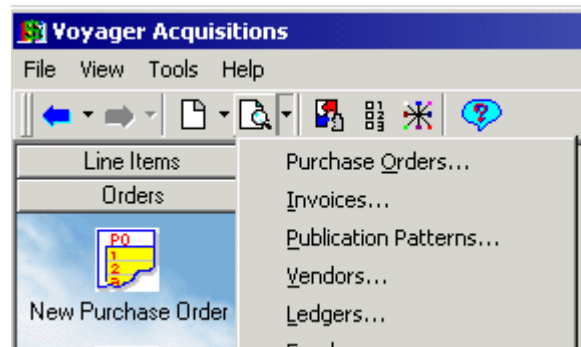
### Procedure 2-1. Performing a standard search

---

Use the following to conduct a standard search.

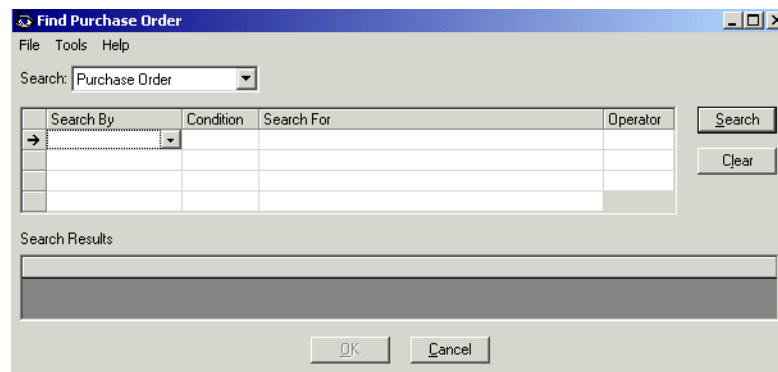
1. Open the search option you want using one of the following methods.
  - From the **File** menu on the Acquisitions workspace, select **Search**, then the relevant search item from the cascading menu.
  - Click the down arrow beside the **Search** button on the Acquisitions toolbar, then click the relevant search item from the drop-down list (see [Figure 2-1](#))





**Figure 2-1. Search button drop-down list**

Result: The corresponding **Find** dialog box opens. For example, if you selected **Purchase Order**, the **Find Purchase Order** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-2](#)).



**Figure 2-2. Find Purchase Order dialog box**

**NOTE:**

After you open the **Find** dialog box, you can change the search type by using the **Search** drop-down list.

2. In the **Search By** column, click the down arrow and select a field to search on.

**NOTE:**

When the **Search By** column has focus (displays the drop-down arrow), you can press the spacebar or **F4** key on your keyboard to view the list of fields. Use your

up and down arrow keys to highlight the field you want, then press **Enter**. This is true of all the drop-down lists on the **Find** dialog box.

3. From the **Condition** field drop-down list, select a relational term for comparing the search term to the search field.

**NOTE:**

Different options display for different **Search By** selections. A **keyword** condition, when available, performs a phrase search for information anywhere in a free-text area, such as a PO Note.

4. Type a search string in the **Search For** field, or, if an ellipsis button (...) displays in the field, click it to open a selection list box and double-click an option.
5. To add another line of search criteria, select a boolean operator from the **Operator** field. Otherwise, proceed to Step [7](#).



**TIP:**

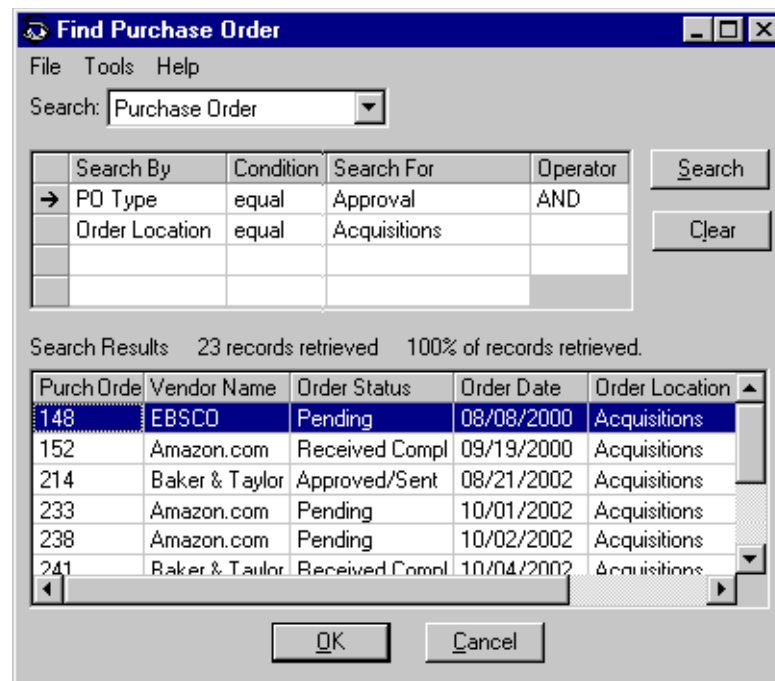
*Boolean operators function as follows: AND returns only items meeting both criteria, OR returns items meeting one of the criteria, NOT returns items not matching the line of criteria that follows.*

6. Repeat steps [2-5](#) until you have finished narrowing your search criteria.
7. Click the **Search** button to execute the search, the **Clear** button to clear the searching criteria.

Result: If you clicked the **Search** button, the results of your search display in the **Search Results** section of the **Find** dialog box (see [Figure 2-3](#)).

**NOTE:**

When your search results in many records a **Next** button displays. Use this button to access more results.



**Figure 2-3. Find Purchase Order dialog box - search results displayed**

8. To access the wanted data, in this case a PO, click the item in the results list, then click **OK**. To open more than one, click each item while holding down the **Ctrl** key on your keyboard, then click **OK**. To close the **Find** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If you selected a PO and clicked **OK**, the wanted Purchase Order opens.

## Quick Searches

In addition to standard searches, you can perform quick searches on the records in your Acquisitions database. These single-criterion searches can be accessed from the listbar of the item type you want to search.

[Table 2-1](#) displays the bar and button names of all quick searches available in Acquisitions.

**Table 2-1. Available quick searches**

Activity bar	Button title
Line Items	Search Line Items
Orders	Search Orders
Invoices	Search Invoices
Ledgers and Funds	Search Ledgers
	Search Funds
	Search Rollover Rules
Vendors	Search Vendors
	Search EDI Connection Profiles
Check-In	Search Routing Lists
	Search Publication Patterns

All quick searches use one **Search By** field, one **Condition** field, and one search string (**Search For**) field. They all allow for right-truncated search terms (for example, **13** for the return of **13**, **131**, **13998**).

On all of the quick search forms:

- The **Search By** field's drop-down list is sorted alphabetically. Operators can set a default for this field by accessing the **Tools> Workflows> Searching> Default Searches** section (see [Default Searches](#) on [page 19-5](#)). Also, the focus remains in this field until the operator clicks the mouse or tab key.
- The buttons below the **Search By** field change depending on the type of search selected. For example, it could be just the **Equal** button, or three buttons, **Equal**, **Greater**, or **Less**. However, even if there is more than one button, there is only one tab space. Therefore, when using the tab key to go from the **Search By** field to the **Search For** field it requires clicking the tab key twice, once to get from the **Search By** field to the condition button row, and another to get from the condition button row to the **Search For** field, regardless of the number of condition buttons available.
- Operators must click the **Search** button, or use the **Enter** key to begin the search.
- The **Clear** button returns the **Search By** field to its default position, and removes the search term in the **Search For** field.

The procedure for performing a quick search is shown in [Procedure 2-2, Performing a quick search](#), on page [2-7](#).



---

**Procedure 2-2. Performing a quick search**

---

Use the following to perform a quick search.

1. Click the name of the activity (for example, **Vendors**), from the listbar.

Result: The **Vendors** bar displays the vendor activity buttons.

2. Click the button for the type of search you want to perform (for example, the **Search Vendors** button).

Result: The **Search Vendors** workspace opens (see [Figure 2-4](#)).



**Figure 2-4. Listbar path to quick search on vendors - Search Vendors workspace**

3. Select an item to search on from the **Search By** drop-down list.
4. Select a condition from the available buttons. Use [Table 2-2](#) for descriptions of all available conditions.

**NOTE:**

Not all conditions will be present for all searches.

**Table 2-2. Conditions available for quick searches**

Condition	Keyboard shortcut	Function
Equal	Alt + Q	Returns all records that begin with or match the search string you enter in the <b>Search For</b> field.
Greater	Alt + G	Returns all records beginning in a sequence after the <b>Search For</b> entry numbers and/or letters. (Numbers precede letters.)

**Table 2-2. Conditions available for quick searches**

Condition	Keyboard shortcut	Function
Less	Alt + L	Returns all records beginning prior to the <b>Search For</b> entry in alphanumeric terms. (Numbers precede letters.)
Phrase	Alt + P	Returns all records containing the phrase entered in the <b>Search For</b> field. (The phrase can occur anywhere in the field's string.) Phrase searches are not case-sensitive but the words must display in the exact order.

5. Enter (or select) the appropriate information in the **Search For** field.
6. Click the **Search** button.

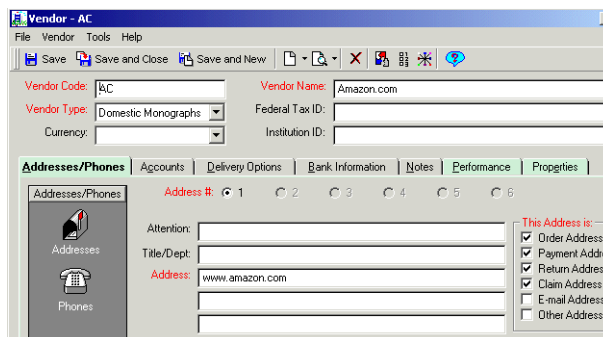
Result: The matching records display in a list below the search terms (see [Figure 2-5](#)).

Vendor Name	Vendor Code	Vendor Type
Amazon.com	AC	Domestic Monographs
Baker & Taylor	BT	Domestic Monographs
Brigham Young University Press	BYU	Domestic Monographs
CA Co.	CAC	Domestic Monographs
EBSCO PUBLISHING	EBSCO	Domestic Monographs
FAXON FW	FAXON	Domestic Monographs
HARRASSOWITZ OTT	HARR	Domestic Monographs

**Figure 2-5. Quick search on vendors, results**

7. Depending on what you searched for, you can access the information based on the buttons that display with the return of your search results. For example, highlighting the first result in the example above and clicking the **Edit** button.

Result: The item searched for displays. In this example it is the Amazon.com vendor record (see [Figure 2-6](#)).



---

**Figure 2-6. Vendor Record displaying after a quick search**

---

## Bibliographic Record Searches

---

Bibliographic record searches are available in Acquisitions as they are in all staff modules of Voyager. They allow you to find a bibliographic record using keyword, non-keyword, and builder searches. You can also perform search history tasks to improve searching speed and efficiency.

Bibliographic searches are conducted from the **Search** dialog box. The procedure to access the **Search** dialog box is shown in [Procedure 2-3, Accessing bibliographic record searches](#), on page [2-10](#).



### Procedure 2-3. Accessing bibliographic record searches

---

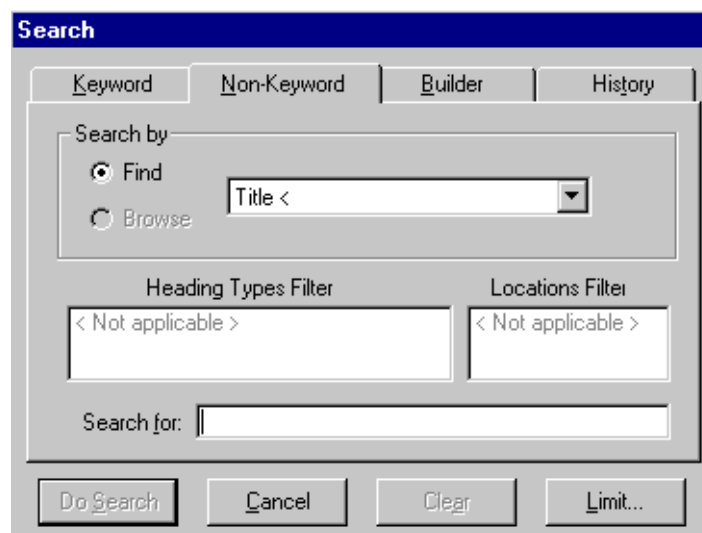
Use the following to access the **Search** dialog box to conduct a bibliographic search.

1. Use one of the following methods.
  - From a saved **Purchase Order**, click the **Add Line (Bib Search)** button in the bottom left corner.
  - From the **Search Line Items**, **Search Orders**, **Search Invoices**, or the order maintenance **Problems** or **Claims** workspaces select **Bibliographic Info** from the **Search By** drop-down list, then click the ellipsis button in the **Search For** field.



- On any **Find** dialog box, select **Bibliographic Info** from the **Search By** drop-down list, then click the ellipsis button in the **Search For** field.
- Click the **Other Search** button from any of the following workspaces, accessible from the **Check-In** bar: **Serials Check-In**, **Serials History**, **Subscription Maintenance**, **Bindery Maintenance**.

Result: The **Search** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-7](#)).



---

**Figure 2-7.** Search dialog box

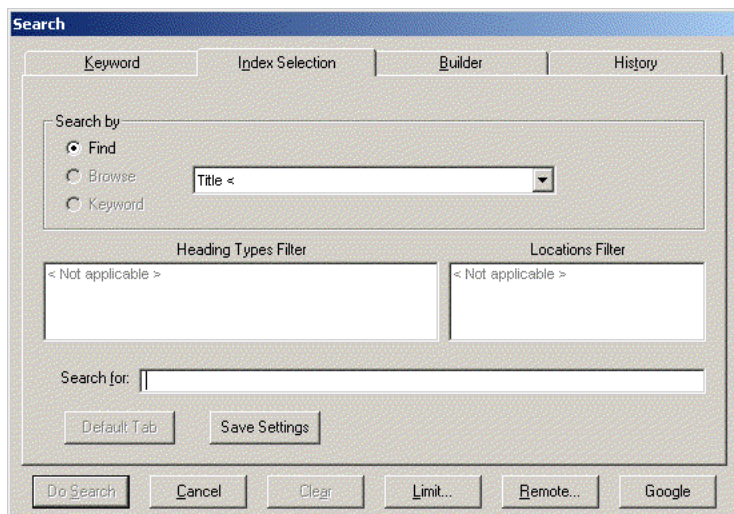
---

## Search Dialog Box

---

The **Search** dialog box ([Figure 2-8](#)), available in all of the Voyager staff modules, provides a way to search your library's catalog. It contains the following tabs.

- **Keyword** tab (see [Keyword Tab and Keyword Searching](#) on [page 2-12](#))
- **Index Selection** tab (see [Index Selection Tab](#) on [page 2-18](#))
- **Builder** tab (see [Builder Tab and Builder Searching](#) on [page 2-24](#))
- **History** tab (see [History Tab](#) on [page 2-28](#))



**Figure 2-8. Search dialog box**

**NOTE:**

By default, the **Index Selection** tab displays when the **Search** dialog box opens. To navigate between search tabs, you can either click the appropriate tab or press the **Alt** key plus the letter underlined in the tab name.

If configured, there can be two other features available on each tab regardless of the type of search. These features are remote searching and a user-defined search. See [Remote Searching](#) on [page 2-53](#) and [User-Defined Alternate Search Button](#) on [page 2-62](#).

User-defined limits can be applied to some searches. See [Search Limits](#) on [page 2-64](#).

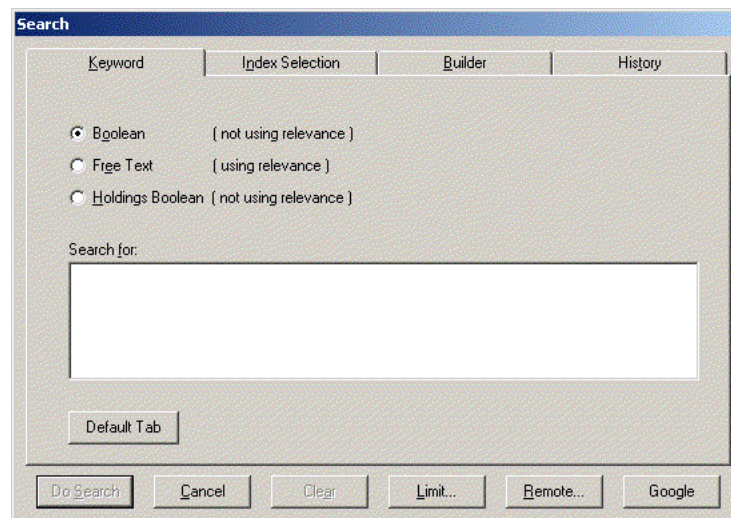
## Keyword Tab and Keyword Searching

---

The **Keyword** tab ([Figure 2-9](#)) of the **Search** dialog box allows you to conduct keyword searches of all MARC fields and subfields in the bibliographic and holdings records. Users can specify the tag/subfields to search or specify an index to search by including the tag/subfield or index code before the search term.

**NOTE:**

The **Holdings Boolean** radio button is an optional feature which your site may or may not have chosen to implement.



**Figure 2-9. Keyword tab of the Search dialog box**

Limits can be applied to the Boolean and Free Text Keyword searches. However, they cannot be applied to the Holdings Boolean search. See [Search Limits](#) on [page 2-64](#).

Users must select a search type radio button and enter search criteria in the **Search for** field to enable the **Do Search** button. See [Table 2-3](#) for a description of the options available on the **Keyword** tab to invoke a keyword search.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphabetic or numeric, uppercase and/or lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 2-3. Description of the Keyword tab**

Option	Description
Boolean	<p>Performs a keyword search of the bibliographic record using Boolean terms (and, or, not) without using relevance.</p> <p>When you select <b>Boolean</b>, remember to insert Boolean terms. Otherwise, you receive a <code>Malformed Query</code> error message.</p>
Free Text	Performs a keyword search of the bibliographic record using relevance without Boolean operators.

**Table 2-3. Description of the Keyword tab**

Option	Description
Holdings Boolean (optional feature)	<p>Performs a keyword search, without using relevance, of holdings records in your local database.</p> <p>Provides the flexibility to locate coded data, for example, inside the call number of MARC holdings records.</p> <p>Must use Boolean operators if using more than one search term.</p> <p>The default index searched is HKEY.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This search is not available for remote searching.</p>

Table 2-3. Description of the Keyword tab

Option	Description
Search for (R)	<p>Enter search criteria in this field. Search criteria separated by spaces may require quotation marks to achieve the intended result. Example:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">“world war”</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">“41051654 //r944”</p> <p>Wildcard characters are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ? (question mark) Use the question mark for multiple-character, wildcard searches at the beginning, middle, or end of your search terms.</li> <li>• % (percent sign) Use the percent sign for single-character wildcard searches.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Wildcard characters can be used in Free Text searches, Builder searches, and command line searches (that do not use a subfield-limited keyword index). Wildcard characters are not available for use with Z39.50 searches.</p> <p>Add one of the following operators before the search term (in a Free Text search) to specify additional characteristics.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• + (plus sign) The term must display in the record.</li> <li>• ! (exclamation point) Records with the term are to be excluded.</li> <li>• * (asterisk) The term is important.</li> </ul> <p>You can also do command line searching. See <a href="#">Command Line Searching</a> on <a href="#">page 2-16</a>.</p>

**Table 2-3. Description of the Keyword tab**

Option	Description
Default Tab	Identifies which tab displays as the default when the Search function is initiated.  This button is inactive on the tab selected as the default.  At installation, the <b>Index Selection</b> tab is the default.  This option is available on the following tabs: <b>Keyword</b> , <b>Index Selection</b> , and <b>Builder</b> .  <b>NOTE:</b> This button does not display when <b>Retain Last Search</b> is selected.
Do Search	Executes the search.
Cancel	Cancels the search and closes the <b>Search</b> dialog box.
Clear	Deletes the search term(s) in the <b>Search for</b> text box.
Limit	Opens the <b>Search Limits</b> dialog box, where you can limit your search by language, location, date, or other variables you've configured.  <b>NOTE:</b> Limits cannot be applied to holdings keyword searching.  See <a href="#">Search Limits</a> on <a href="#">page 2-64</a> .
Remote	The <b>Remote</b> button, if configured, allows users to search remote databases.  See <a href="#">Remote Databases</a> on <a href="#">page 2-53</a>
URI Search	If configured, this button invokes a user-defined URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) to search outside the Voyager database.  See <a href="#">User-Defined Alternate Search Button</a> on <a href="#">page 2-62</a> .

Results of Boolean and Free Text searches are displayed in a **Titles Index** dialog box, and results of Holdings Boolean searches are displayed in a **Holdings Index** dialog box. See [Titles Index Dialog Box](#) on [page 2-28](#).

### Command Line Searching

Users can do command line searching by specifying MARC record tags/subfields to search or an index to search and the existing rules for Boolean searching.

- To search keyword composite indexes use the 4 letter code (see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*). For example, the search code NKEY (author name) searches by tags 100 aqd, 110 abcdefgl, and so forth. Another command line search example using GKEY as the keyword index code is as follows.

**GKEY pinnochio and GKEY disney**

- To search tags, use the three-numeric character of the tag followed by the single subfield (245b, 010a, 035a, 650x). The search is keyword except for number fields such as LCCN, ISBN, and ISSN which are left-anchored.

Truncation as well as boolean operators and quotation marks for phrase searching may be used (245a text? AND commentary) for the keyword indexed searches. You may also search for more than one tag at a time (650a "middle eastern literature" AND 100a pritchard).

### **Other Keyword Search Considerations/Options**

Optionally, your system administrator may implement dynamic noise word reduction to improve performance of keyword searches. This option eliminates common words from a user's query for the purpose of searching but retains them for the purpose of relevance ranking.

The following is a list of stop words used with this feature.

- AND
- OR
- NOT
- OF
- IN
- THE
- WITH
- TO
- FOR

The dynamic noise word reduction capability is set with NOISEWORDFILTER in the server-side voyager.ini file. Refer to the *Voyager Technical User's Guide* or see your system administrator for more information.

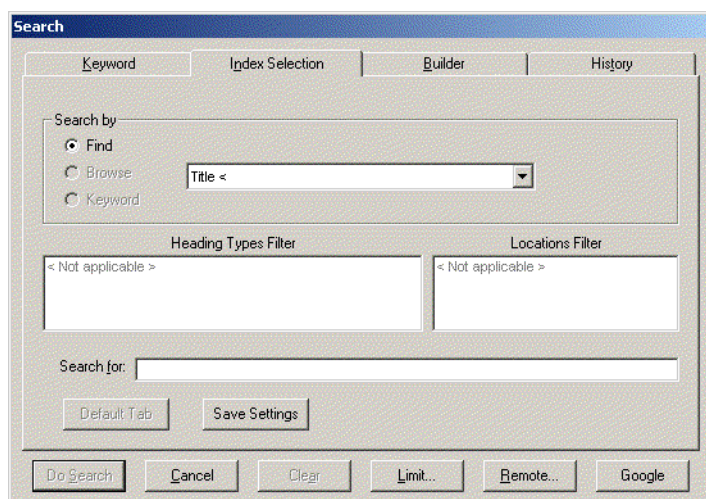
## Index Selection Tab

---

Headings/Index Selection searching allows users to perform left-anchored bibliographic searches, holdings searches, authorities searches, and headings searches. In addition to system defined searches, your institution can define additional searches. Search types are created in System Administration. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for details.

Limits can be applied to those Index Selection searches conducted on left-anchored indexes. However, they cannot be applied to headings searches. See [Search Limits](#) on [page 2-64](#).

[Figure 2-10](#) displays the **Index Selection** tab of the **Search** dialog box.



**Figure 2-10. Index Selection tab of the Search dialog box**

[Table 2-4](#) describes the **Index Selection** tab. When a heading search is selected from the drop-down list, the user must select either the **Find** or **Browse** radio button to govern the search. See [Find and Browse Searches](#) on [page 2-22](#).




**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphabetic or numeric, uppercase and/or lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 2-4. Description of the Index Selection tab**

Name	Description
Find	<p>Find searches match specific records of the <b>Search by</b> type to the terms entered in the <b>Search for</b> field.</p> <p>The result is a finite number of records.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Find and Browse Searches</a> on <a href="#">page 2-22</a> for more information.</p>
Browse	<p>Displays an index of headings that can be browsed based on the <b>Search by</b> selection, any corresponding filter selections, and a <b>Search for</b> value.</p> <p>Available with headings or call number searches.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Find and Browse Searches</a> on <a href="#">page 2-22</a> for more information.</p>
Keyword	<p>Displays a headings list from which to select when exact word order or the initial words are unknown.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Headings Keyword Searches</a> on <a href="#">page 2-23</a> for more information.</p>
Search type drop-down list (R)	<p>Unlabeled field containing a drop-down list of searches available.</p> <p>The list is determined by search usage with the most used search at the top of the drop-down list.</p> <p>The types of searches are system defined and user defined in the System Administration module. See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i>.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> OPAC headings searches and Staff headings searches are available in the Cataloging module. However, only OPAC headings searches are available in the Acquisitions and Circulation modules.</p>

**Table 2-4. Description of the Index Selection tab**

Name	Description
Heading Types Filter	<p>Users can select a Heading Type filter to further limit a heading or a headings keyword search. Resulting records must contain the heading type selected and match the search criteria.</p> <p>The types of searches are system defined.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> These filters may be suppressed in the System Administration module.</p>
Locations Filter	<p>Users can select a Locations filter to further limit a search when doing call number searches.</p> <p>Locations are defined locally in the System Administration module. See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i>.</p> <p> <b>TIP:</b> <i>By limiting a call number search by location, you can get an online shelf list.</i></p>
Search for (R)	<p>Enter your search term(s) or phrase(s) in the <b>Search for</b> field (1-149 characters).</p> <p>Use Boolean operators (and, or, not) to achieve the best match with your search string.</p> <p>Use quotation marks to identify phrases.</p> <p>Use a question mark (?) to truncate the search term if not automatically truncated. See <a href="#">Automatic Truncation for Index Selection Searches</a> on <a href="#">page 2-64</a> for more information.</p>
Default Tab	<p>Identifies which tab displays as the default when the Search function is initiated.</p> <p>This button is inactive on the tab selected as the default.</p> <p>At installation, the <b>Index Selection</b> tab is the default.</p> <p>This option is available on the following tabs: <b>Keyword</b>, <b>Index Selection</b>, and <b>Builder</b>.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This button does not display when <b>Retain Last Search</b> is selected.</p>

**Table 2-4. Description of the Index Selection tab**

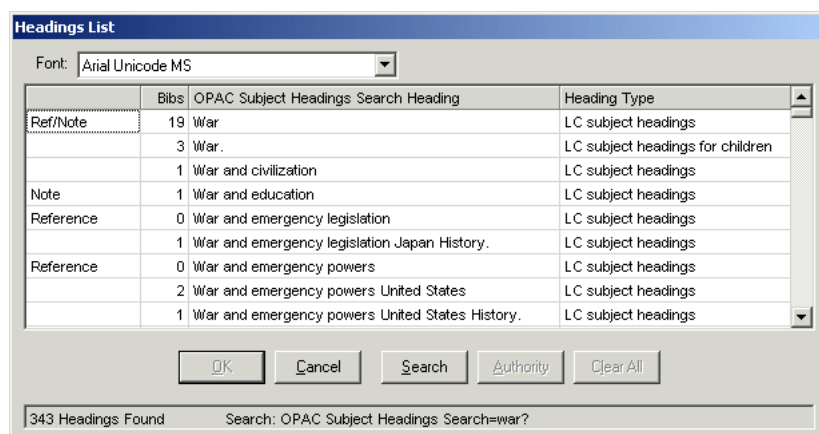
Name	Description
Save Settings	<p>Saves values on the current search tab.</p> <p>The search code for the index is saved.</p> <p>The saved settings display each subsequent time this tab is accessed.</p> <p>To change settings, enter new values on the tab and click <b>Save Settings</b>.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the index is deleted, the index code is changed, or it is suppressed, a standard error message is displayed. When the user responds by clicking <b>OK</b>, the default setting is cleared and the first index in the list and the first connector display.</p> <p>This option is available on the following tabs: <b>Index Selection</b> and <b>Builder</b>.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This button does not display when <b>Retain Last Search</b> is selected.</p>
Do Search	Executes the search.
Cancel	Cancels the search.
Clear	Deletes the search term(s) in the <b>Search for</b> field.
Remote	<p>The <b>Remote...</b> button, if configured, allows users to search remote databases.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Remote Databases</a> on <a href="#">page 2-53</a>.</p>
Limit	<p>Opens the <b>Search Limits</b> dialog box, where you can limit your search by language, location, date, or other variables you've configured.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Limits</b> button is not available for Headings or Holdings Keyword searches.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Search Limits</a> on <a href="#">page 2-64</a>.</p>
URI Search	<p>If configured, this button invokes a user-defined URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) to search outside the Voyager database.</p> <p>See <a href="#">User-Defined Alternate Search Button</a> on <a href="#">page 2-62</a>.</p>

Results of searches from the **Index Selection** tab display in either the **Titles Index** dialog box or **Headings List** dialog box. See [Titles Index Dialog Box](#) on [page 2-28](#) and [Headings List Dialog Box](#) on [page 2-37](#).

### Find and Browse Searches

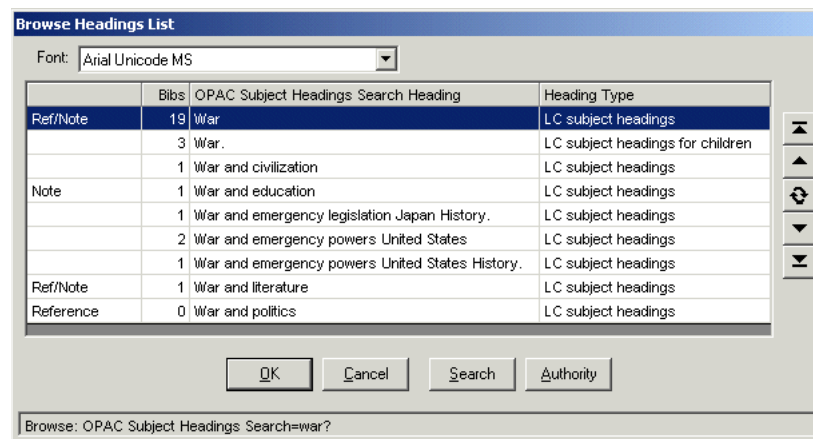
The radio buttons of either **Find** or **Browse** are available if you are performing a heading or call number search. Selecting Find or Browse affects the search results received.

A Find search returns specific, finite results that match the search criteria. For example, a Find subject heading search (OPAC Subject Headings Search) for **war?** returns the results shown in [Figure 2-11](#).



**Figure 2-11.** Search results after doing a find subject heading search for war?

The Browse search allows users to scroll through an institution's list of headings. For example, a Browse subject heading search (OPAC Subject Headings Search) for **war?** returns the results shown in [Figure 2-12](#).



**Figure 2-12.** Search results after doing a browse subject heading search for war?

In this example, the system displays the **Browse Headings List** that users can scroll through using the arrow buttons ([Table 2-10](#)) to find the wanted heading.

### Heading Searches by Call Number

When doing an Index Selection search by call number, Voyager accepts Dewey call numbers that have more than one decimal point as well as call numbers that only have a decimal point after the Dewey root/Cutter combination such as 305.1 M887 no.2 and 506 N56 v.8. Also, normalization of Dewey call numbers including dates was adjusted to ensure proper sorting in call number indexes such as 321 A65 1998.

Regarding the display of call numbers with 852+k and 852+m (call number prefix and suffix) fields, you can include prefixes and suffixes in all of Voyager's call number displays.

When you perform a Browse search for a call number with a prefix or a suffix, you see the prefix or suffix in the results list as well as in the actual record itself.

### Headings Keyword Searches

The **Keyword** radio button is active on the **Index Selection** tab when the following indexes are selected from the drop-down list.

- OPAC Name Headings Search
- OPAC Title Headings Search
- OPAC Name/Title Search

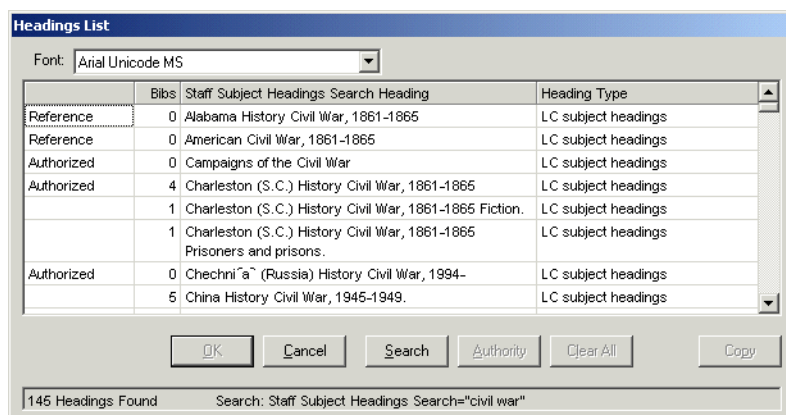
- OPAC Subject Search

Consistent with all headings searches, the **Limit** button is disabled when a headings index is selected from the drop-down list.

Command line syntax may be used with headings keyword searches. Boolean operators such as **and**, **or**, or **not** should be used to combine search strings.

Search terms in quotation marks are searched as a phrase. For example, "**civil war**" is not the same search as **civil AND war**.

Search results display in the Headings List dialog box without relevance ranking. See [Figure 2-13](#). The headings are ordered alphabetically by normal heading.



---

**Figure 2-13. Headings List for Headings Keyword Search**

Headings Keyword Searches are not available on the **Builder** tab.

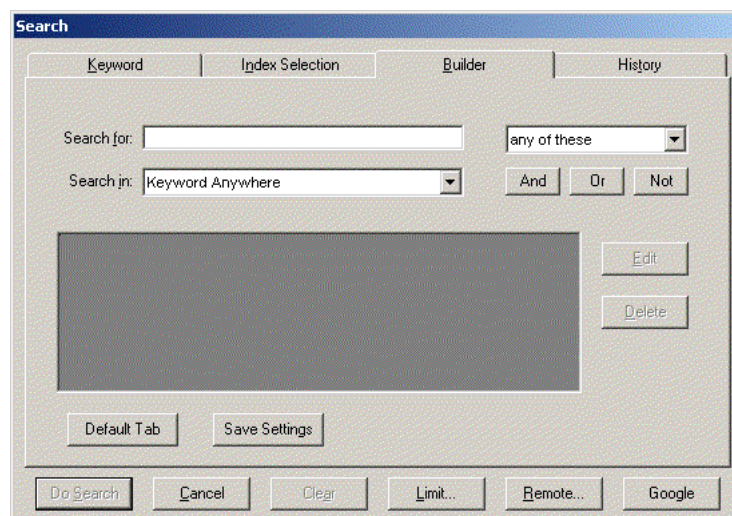
## **Builder Tab and Builder Searching**

---

The **Builder** tab of the **Search** dialog box allows you to build complex searches using multiple fields, search terms, and Boolean operators.

Builder searches are Keyword searches. Therefore, limits can be applied. See [Search Limits](#) on [page 2-64](#).

[Figure 2-14](#) shows the **Builder** tab of the **Search** dialog box.



**Figure 2-14. Builder tab of the Search dialog box**

[Table 2-5](#) describes the **Builder** tab.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphabetic or numeric, uppercase and/or lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 2-5. Description of the Builder tab**

Name	Description
Search for (R)	<p>Enter your search term(s) or phrase in the <b>Search for</b> field (1-149 characters).</p> <p>Wildcard characters are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ? (question mark) Use the question mark for multiple-character, wildcard searches at the beginning, middle, or end of your search terms.</li> <li>• % (percent sign) Use the percent sign for single-character wildcard searches.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Wildcard characters are not available for use with Z39.50 searches.</p>

**Table 2-5. Description of the Builder tab**

Name	Description
Search term options drop-down list	<p>Unlabeled drop-down list allowing the operator to determine how to search. Values are preset by the system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Any of these</b> places an implied <b>or</b> between the search terms.</li><li>• <b>All of these</b> places an implied <b>and</b> between terms.</li><li>• <b>As a phrase</b> searches an if the terms are placed in quotes.</li></ul>
Search in	<p>Drop-down list of keyword search types.</p> <p>Values are preset by the system and user-defined Keyword indexes.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> MFHD keyword index searching and Journal index searching are not available in builder searching because they cannot be combined with bibliographic keyword indexes. The Journal index is a title keyword search with a journal type limit applied to it.</p>
Boolean buttons	<p>Use the <b>And</b>, <b>Or</b>, or <b>Not</b> buttons to conduct a boolean search with additional search criteria.</p>
Search terms	<p>Unlabeled box containing your search terms and, if used, accompanying Boolean operators.</p>
Edit	<p>Allows you to edit any search term or phrase you select from the unlabeled search term box.</p>
Delete	<p>Deletes any selected search term from the unlabeled search term box.</p>
Default Tab	<p>Identifies which tab displays as the default when the Search function is initiated.</p> <p>This button is inactive on the tab selected as the default.</p> <p>At installation, the <b>Index Selection</b> tab is the default.</p> <p>This option is available on the following tabs: <b>Keyword</b>, <b>Index Selection</b>, and <b>Builder</b>.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This button does not display when <b>Retain Last Search</b> is selected.</p>



**Table 2-5. Description of the Builder tab**

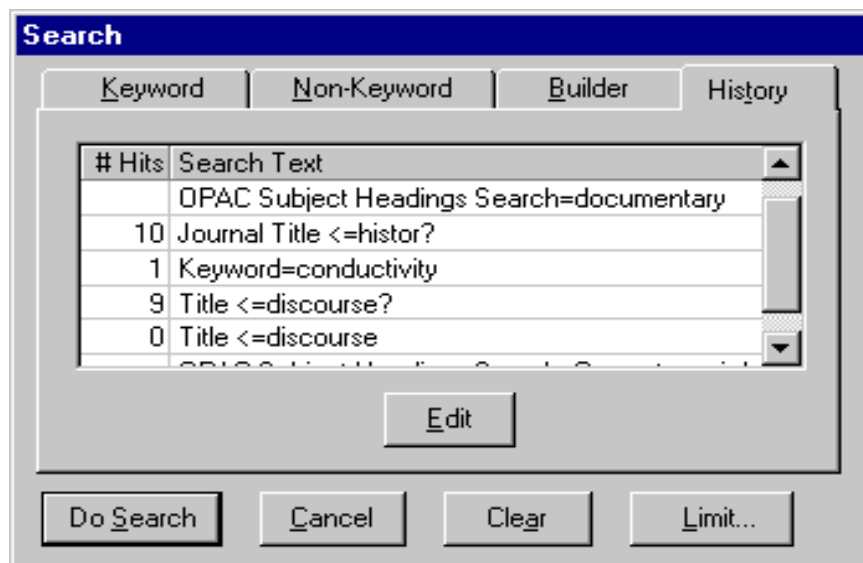
Name	Description
Save Settings	<p>Saves values on the current search tab.</p> <p>The search code for the index is saved.</p> <p>The saved settings display each subsequent time this tab is accessed.</p> <p>To change settings, enter new values on the tab and click <b>Save Settings</b>.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the index is deleted, the index code is changed, or it is suppressed, a standard error message is displayed. When the user responds by clicking <b>OK</b>, the default setting is cleared and the first index in the list and the first connector display.</p> <p>This option is available on the following tabs: <b>Index Selection</b> and <b>Builder</b>.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This button does not display when <b>Retain Last Search</b> is selected.</p>
Do Search	Executes the search.
Cancel	Cancels the search.
Clear	Deletes the search term(s) in the <b>Search for</b> field.
Limit	<p>Opens the <b>Search Limits</b> dialog box.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Limits</b> button is not available for Heading searches.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Search Limits</a> on <a href="#">page 2-64</a>.</p>
Remote	<p>The <b>Remote...</b> button, if configured, allows users to search remote databases.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Remote Databases</a> on <a href="#">page 2-53</a>.</p>
URI Search	<p>If configured, this button invokes a user-defined URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) to search outside the Voyager database.</p> <p>See <a href="#">User-Defined Alternate Search Button</a> on <a href="#">page 2-62</a>.</p>

Results from Builder searches display in the **Titles Index** dialog box, see [Titles Index Dialog Box](#) on [page 2-28](#).

## History Tab

---

The **History** tab ([Figure 2-15](#)) gives you access to all searches you performed during the current session. For each search you performed, it lists the search parameters and the number of records returned (**#Hits**).



---

Figure 2-15. History tab of the Search dialog box

From the **History** tab, you can re-execute searches previously performed or edit previous search statements.



### IMPORTANT:

*The **History** tab does not retain information about search limits. If you re-execute or edit a search from the **History** tab, any current limits in effect are used instead of any limits you previously specified.*

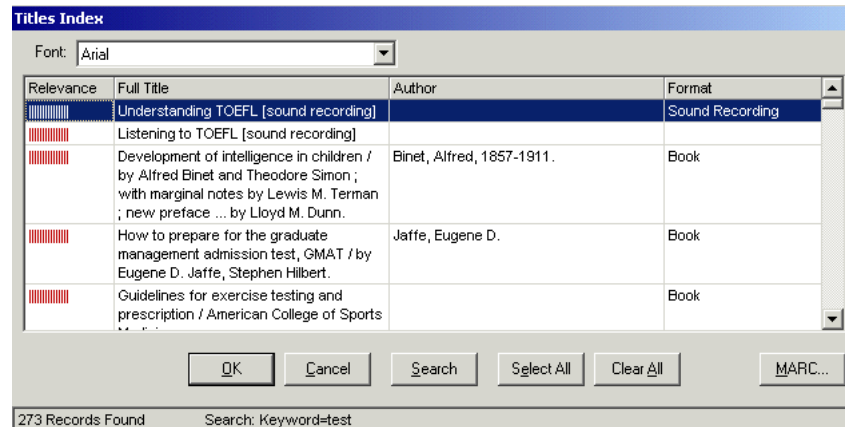
## Titles Index Dialog Box

---

The **Titles Index** dialog box ([Figure 2-16](#)) displays the results of Keyword searches, whether conducted from the **Keyword** tab (a Boolean or Free Text search) or the **Builder** tab, and the results of left-anchored searches conducted from the **Index Selection** tab.

**NOTE:**

The maximum number of records returned is 10,000.



**Figure 2-16. Titles Index dialog box**

By default the **Titles Index** dialog box displays the following. (See [Search Results List Re-Sort Options](#) on [page 2-31](#) for a description of sort options for displaying **Titles Index** results.)

- Relevance column (for free text searches)
- Title
- Author
- Date

The title, author, and date columns can be reconfigured to display other bibliographic data. These columns are configured on the **Search Results** tab when defining indexes in the System Administration module. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

**NOTE:**

If your search retrieves more than 100 titles, a **Stop** button becomes active. You can then click the **Stop** button to cancel the retrieval of more records ([Figure 2-17](#)).



---

**Figure 2-17. Stop button seen with more than 100 search results**

See [Table 2-6](#) for a description of the **Titles Index** dialog box.

**Table 2-6. Description of the Titles Index dialog box**

Name	Description
Font	Select the font used to display text in the <b>Titles Index</b> dialog box.  <b>NOTE:</b> These boxes display the Unicode character set in all Voyager modules.
Sort By	Displays drop-down list of options to re-sort search results. See <a href="#">Search Results List Re-Sort Options</a> on <a href="#">page 2-31</a> .
Relevance Column	Displays relevance bars for Free Text searches.
Bibliographic Information Column(s)	Columns containing bibliographic information (for example, full title, author, and format).  These are specified when defining searches in the System Administration module.
OK	After clicking the <b>OK</b> button, the response of the system varies depending on the type of search conducted.  See <a href="#">Keyword Searching in the Acquisitions Module</a> on <a href="#">page 2-81</a> .
Cancel	Closes the <b>Titles Index</b> dialog box.
Search	Returns to the <b>Search</b> dialog box cleared of previous entries unless the <b>Retain Last Search</b> check box is selected in session preferences.

**Table 2-6. Description of the Titles Index dialog box**

Name	Description
MARC...	<p>Opens the view-only MARC bibliographic record or MARC holdings record for whichever record is selected in the <b>Titles Index</b> dialog box.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Bibliographic data can only be edited in the Cataloging Module. However, MARC bibliographic records can be opened in the Cataloging module from the Acquisitions module. See the <i>Voyager Acquisitions and Cataloging User's Guides</i> for more information.</p>

### Search Results List Re-Sort Options

The following options are available for re-sorting a search results list.

- Author
- Publish Date
- Publish Date Descending
- Relevance (if used for the search)
- Title
- Search results column headers such as Format, for example  
(depending on the [Global Log] settings in the `Voyager.ini` file; see [Re-Sort Configuration Options](#) on [page 2-32](#) for more information)

See [Figure 2-18](#).

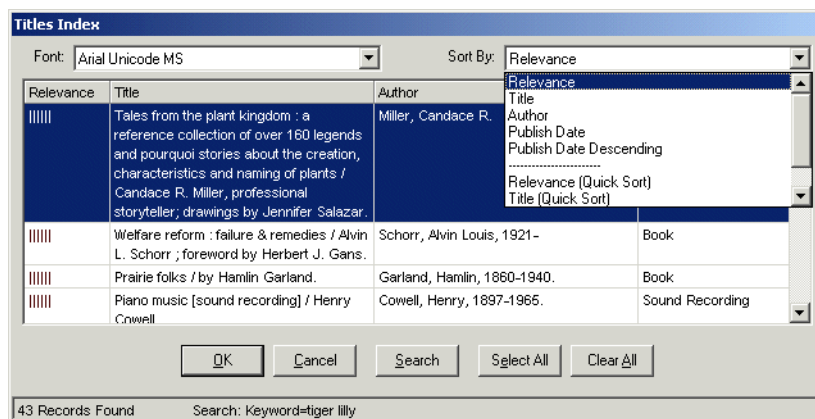
These options display when a non-headings search is performed against the local database or a single remote Voyager database.

Click one of the options from the **Sort By** drop-down list to execute a new sort.

Optionally, you may click a column heading to invoke a Quick Sort of the search results list using the column data. See [Re-Sort Configuration Options](#) on [page 2-32](#) for more details of configurable options.

Selecting a Quick Sort value once re-sorts the list in ascending order based on the value selected. Selecting the same Quick Sort value a second time re-sorts the list in descending order. This applies to the Quick Sort capability selectable from

both the **Sort By** drop-down list and by clicking a column heading when configured for sort options use. See [Re-Sort Configuration Options](#) on [page 2-32](#) for more information.



**Figure 2-18. Search results sort options**

## Re-Sort Configuration Options

The **Sort By** options that display in the **Titles Index** dialog box are determined by sort options configured in the [Global Log] stanza in the `Voyager.ini` file. The configurable sort options are as follows.

- ServerSortList=Y/N
- ASCIISortList=Y/N
- ASCIISortColumn=Y/N

See the *Voyager Technical User's Guide* for more information regarding configuring the [Global Log] stanza in the `Voyager.ini` file.

See [Table 2-7](#) for the system default when no options are configured in the [Global Log] stanza.

**Table 2-7. Default Re-Sorting Options (when none are configured)**

Option	Variable
ServerSortList	Y
ASCIISortList	N
ASCIISortColumn	N

### ServerSortList

When **ServerSortList=Y** is implemented, the sort function utilizes Voyager indexes that follow certain rules to handle punctuation and other non-alphanumeric characters that exist in a MARC record. For example, O'Connor becomes OConnor.

When one of the following **Sort By** options is selected from the drop-down list (see [Figure 2-18](#)), the system automatically executes a Voyager search on the server and displays new search results based on the sort order selected.

- Author
- Publish Date
- Publish Date Descending
- Relevance (if used for the search)
- Title

### ASCIISortList

When **ASCIISortList=Y** is implemented, the system does an alphabetic sort with diacritics removed using Visual Basic on the client to process the existing search results list into the new sort order determined by the selection of one of the following **Sort By** options (below the line).

- Relevance (Quick Sort)
- Title (Quick Sort)
- "Column Heading Name" (Quick Sort)  
such as Format (Quick Sort)

This method is faster because it does not re-execute the search query against Voyager indexed data on the server. Instead, it uses facilities on the client to process the sort. As a result, for example, leading articles are considered part of the data to sort versus ignored data as in a Voyager server sort.

### ASCIISortColumn

When **ASCIISortColumn=Y** is implemented, the system does an alphabetic sort with diacritics removed using Visual Basic on the client to process the existing search results list into the new sort order determined by the selection (mouse click) of one of the column headings.

This method is faster because it does not re-execute the search query against Voyager indexed data on the server. Instead, it uses facilities on the client to process the sort. As a result, for example, leading articles are considered part of the data to sort versus ignored data as in a Voyager server sort.

**NOTE:**

The Quick Sort facility may be accessed through either of the following methods when the appropriate configuration is implemented in the [Global Log] stanza.

- Click the column heading for the desired sort
- Select one of the Quick Sort (below the line) options from the **Sort By** drop-down list

### **Considerations for Re-sorting Search Results**

The following list highlights some considerations.

- When a re-sort is executed, the original sort order is lost except when relevance is used.
- If a search result is truncated to a maximum of 10,000 results, the re-sort option retrieves different results than the original set since the sort order by value is different.

The re-sort drop-down list options only display with bibliographic result sets that display a list of titles. The following are examples of types of searches that provide re-sort options.

- Keyword, Index Selection, or Builder searches
- Keyword searches with relevance and without relevance
- MFHD keyword searches
- Command line searches with relevance and without relevance
- Date searches
- Find searches
- Left-anchored, non-headings searches
- Selections on headings lists of headings with multiple titles

The **Sort By** drop-down list does not display with bibliographic results sets meeting any of the following criteria.

- A list of headings
- Browse searches
- Remote Z39.50 connections
- Remote connections to non-Voyager catalogs
- Remote connections to multiple Voyager catalogs

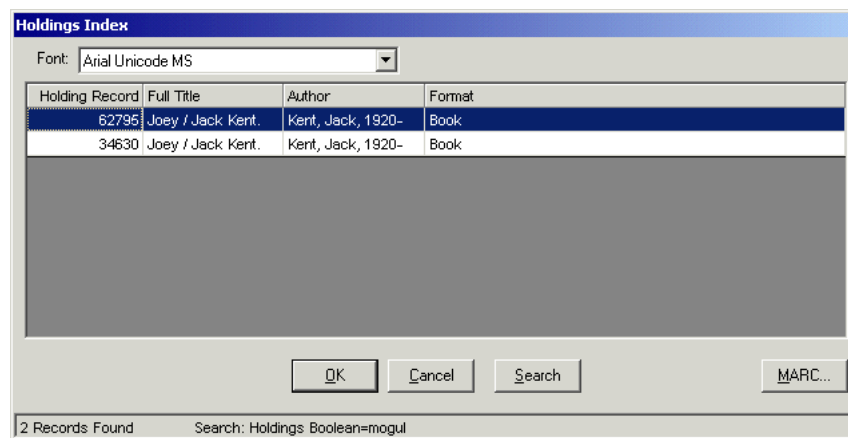


## Holdings Index Dialog Box

The **Holdings Index** dialog box ([Figure 2-19](#)) returns results of a Holdings Boolean search conducted from the **Keyword** tab.

**NOTE:**

The maximum number of records returned is 10,000.



**Figure 2-19. Holdings Index dialog box**

The **Holdings Index** dialog box displays the following:

- Holdings Record ID
- Title
- Author
- Date

The title, author, and date columns can be re-configured to display other bibliographic data on the **Holdings Index** dialog box. These columns are configured on the **Search Results** tab when defining indexes in the System Administration module. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

**NOTE:**

If your search retrieves more than 100 titles, a **Stop** button becomes active. You can then click the **Stop** button to cancel the retrieval of more records ([Figure 2-17](#)).



---

**Figure 2-20. Stop button seen with more than 100 search results**

See [Table 2-8](#) for a description of the **Holdings Index** dialog box.

**Table 2-8. Description of the Holdings Index dialog box**

Name	Description
Font	Select the font used to display text in the <b>Holdings Index</b> dialog box.  <b>NOTE:</b> These boxes display the Unicode character set in all Voyager modules.
Holdings Record Column	Displays the holdings record ID for holdings keyword searches.
Bibliographic Information Column(s)	Columns containing bibliographic information (for example, full title, author, and format).  These are specified when defining searches in the System Administration module.
OK	After clicking the <b>OK</b> button, the response of the system varies depending on the type of search conducted.  See <a href="#">Keyword Searching in the Acquisitions Module</a> on <a href="#">page 2-81</a> .
Cancel	Closes the <b>Holdings Index</b> dialog box.
Search	Returns to the <b>Search</b> dialog box cleared of previous entries unless the <b>Retain Last Search</b> check box is selected in session preferences.

**Table 2-8. Description of the Holdings Index dialog box**

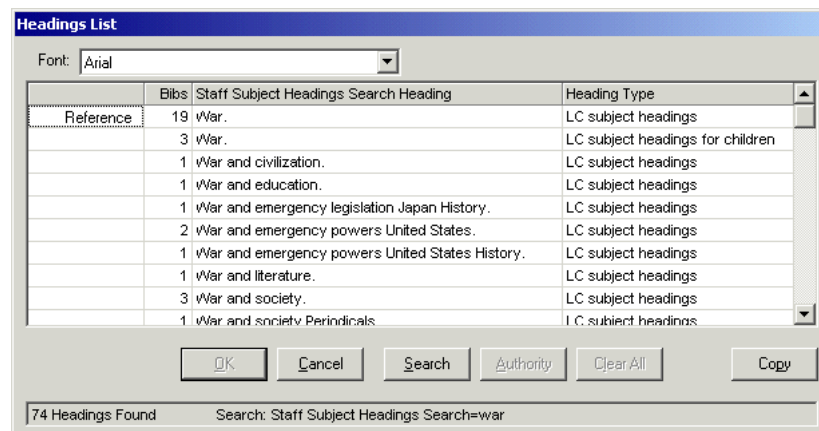
Name	Description
MARC...	<p>Opens the view-only MARC bibliographic record or MARC holdings record for whichever record is selected in the <b>Holdings Index</b> dialog box.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Bibliographic data can only be edited in the Cataloging Module. However, MARC bibliographic records can be opened in the Cataloging module from the Acquisitions module. See the <i>Voyager Acquisitions and Cataloging User's Guides</i> for more information.</p>

## Headings List Dialog Box

Results of Index Selection headings searches display in a **Headings List** dialog box ([Figure 2-21](#)).

**NOTE:**

A left-anchored or non-headings search from the **Index Selection** tab returns results in a **Titles Index** dialog box. See [Titles Index Dialog Box](#) on [page 2-28](#).

**Figure 2-21. Headings List dialog box**

In a **Headings List** dialog box, you can view the following.

- References
- Ref/Notes
- Notes/Scope Notes
- Narrower terms
- See and/or See Also reference(s) associated with the heading

See [Table 2-9](#) for a description of associated Headings List information.

**Table 2-9. Headings List Information**

Type	Description
Authorized	This term displays if the heading is in the <b>1XX</b> field of the authority record.
Reference	This term displays if the heading is not an authorized heading but is a <i>see from</i> reference from the <b>4XX</b> fields.
Auth/Ref	This term displays if the heading is in the <b>1XX</b> in an authority record and has references ( <b>5XX</b> fields) in that same record and/or is itself a cross-reference in another authority record.
Note	This term displays if the heading's authority record contains scope notes.

Optionally, headings with subdivisions display with dashes. See [Figure 2-22](#). To implement the display of dashes for headings with subdivisions, see the description of System>Miscellaneous options in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

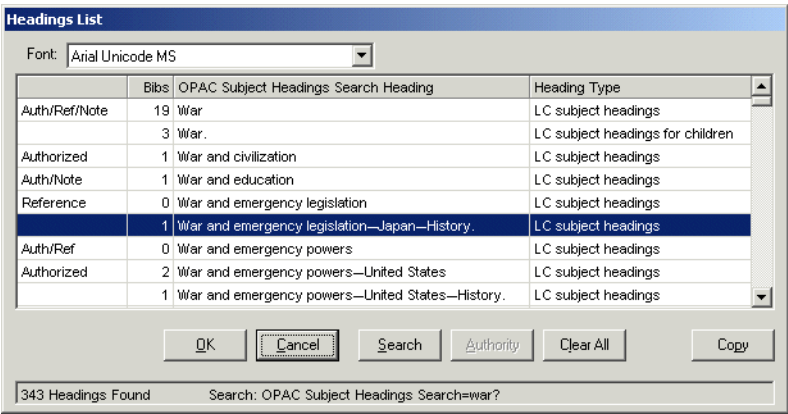


Figure 2-22. Optional dashes for headings with subdivisions

**NOTE:**  
If your search retrieves more than 100 headings, the **Stop** button becomes active. You can then click the **Stop** button to cancel the retrieval of more headings (Figure 2-23).



Figure 2-23. Stop button seen with more than 100 search results

[Table 2-10](#) describes the **Headings List** dialog box containing the search results.

Table 2-10. Description of the Headings List dialog box

Name	Description
Font Drop-down	Select the font used to display text in the <b>Headings List</b> dialog box.  <b>NOTE:</b> These dialog boxes display the Unicode character set in all Voyager modules.
[additional references]	Unlabeled column identifying if there are References, Ref/Notes, Notes as well as Scope Notes, Narrower terms, See and/or See Also reference(s).

**Table 2-10. Description of the Headings List dialog box**

Name	Description
Bibs Column	Number of bibliographic records associated with this heading.
Heading Column	Name of the Heading returned.
Heading Type Column	Type of heading returned.
OK Button	Active once a heading is selected.  Opens the <b>Titles Index</b> dialog box if there are bibliographic records associated with the heading.  See <a href="#">Titles Index Dialog Box</a> on <a href="#">page 2-28</a> .
Cancel Button	Closes the <b>Headings List</b> .
Search Button	Opens the <b>Search</b> dialog box.
Authority Button	Opens the <b>Reference Information</b> dialog box. Active if there is a Ref/Note, Reference, or Note, and so on.  See <a href="#">Reference Information Dialog Box</a> on <a href="#">page 2-40</a> .
Clear All Button	Clears the selected headings. This button is not active in the Acquisitions module.

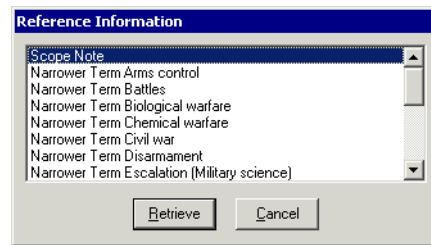
### **Reference Information Dialog Box**

---

Additional Reference Information can be displayed for titles that display the following in the **Headings List** dialog box.

- Authorized
- Reference
- Note
- Ref/Note

By clicking the **Authority** button or right clicking the row, the **Reference Information** dialog box opens ([Figure 2-24](#)).



**Figure 2-24. Reference Information dialog box**

This dialog box lists whether authority record information is available as well as Scope Notes, Narrower terms, See and/or See Also reference(s) for the selected heading.

**NOTE:**

Multiple Scope Notes display in the order in which they occur in the MARC record.

The **Reference Information** dialog box displays information in order by type of reference and then alphabetically by heading text. The reference types should be ordered as follows.

1. Authorized Record
2. Scope Note
3. See Reference
4. Earlier Heading
5. Acronym
6. Musical Composition
7. Broader Term
8. Narrower Term
9. See Also Reference

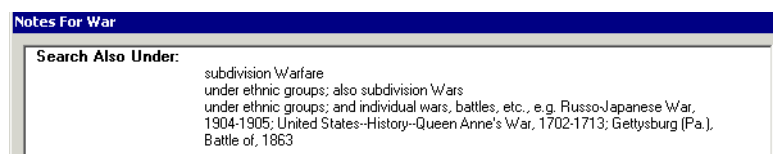
To retrieve information about one of the references, select the appropriate reference and click the **Retrieve** button.

**NOTE:**

When the headings are retrieved from the server, they are normalized using the standard authority normalization rules to ensure that the alphabetic sort returns the headings in the proper order.

## Scope Notes

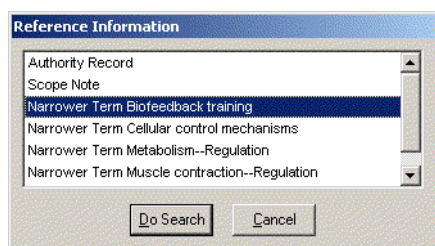
Retrieve the scope notes for the heading by selecting it and clicking the **Retrieve** button ([Figure 2-25](#)).



**Figure 2-25. Scope Notes for a heading**

## Narrower Term

Find a narrower term by selecting it and clicking the **Do Search** button. See [Figure 2-26](#).



**Figure 2-26. Narrower term for a heading**

The system does a new search for the narrower term. See [Figure 2-27](#).



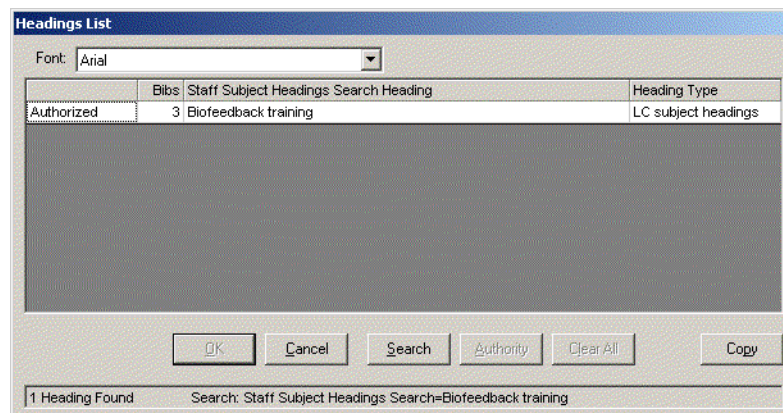


Figure 2-27. Search results from the narrower term

### See Also

From the **Reference Information** dialog box, the operator can do a new search for the see also term by selecting it and clicking the **Do Search** button. See [Figure 2-28](#).

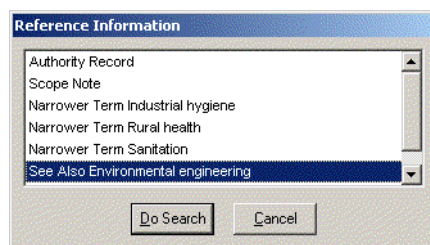


Figure 2-28. See Also for a heading

The system then does a new search for the see also term. [Figure 2-29](#) displays the search results of the See Also term.

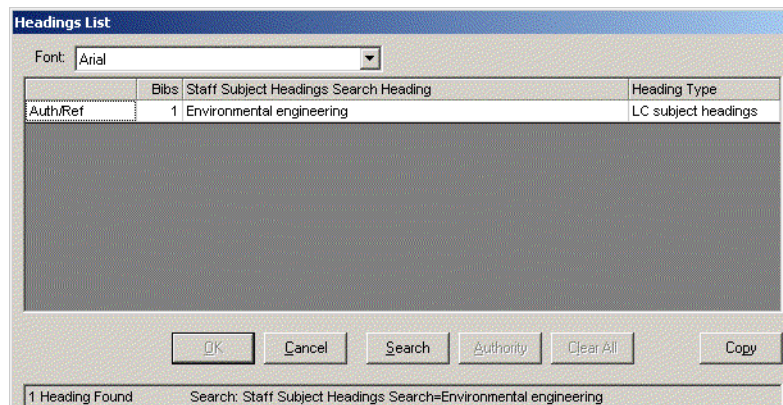


Figure 2-29. See Also search results

### Select one or more authority records Dialog Box

---

The **Select one or more authority records** dialog box displays when an Authorized record is selected from the **Headings List** dialog box or when an Authority Record is selected and you click **Retrieve** from the **Reference Information** dialog box. See [Figure 2-30](#).

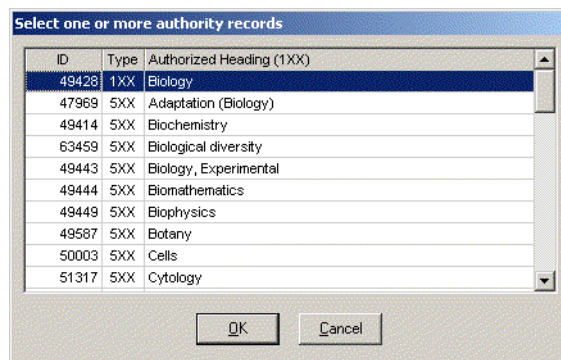


Figure 2-30. Select one or more authority records dialog box

The records in the **Select one or more authority records** dialog box sort by tracing tag of the reference such as 4XX and 5XX and then alphabetically by heading within each tracing type.

**NOTE:**

Headings are deduped prior to being displayed on the **Select one or more authority records** dialog box. Therefore, fewer entries display in this dialog box than the actual count of headings.

## **Perform a Keyword Search**

---

The procedure for performing a keyword search in the Voyager modules is shown in [Procedure 2-4, Performing a keyword search](#).



### **Procedure 2-4. Performing a keyword search**

---

Use the following to conduct a keyword search.

1. From the **Search** dialog box, click the **Keyword** tab.

Result: The **Keyword** tab opens (see [Description of the Keyword tab](#) on [page 2-13](#) for more information).

2. Select the wanted search option, either the **Boolean** radio button, the **Free Text** radio button, or the **Holdings Boolean** radio button.
3. Enter your search term(s) or phrase(s).

Result: The search can now be executed (see [Figure 2-31](#)).

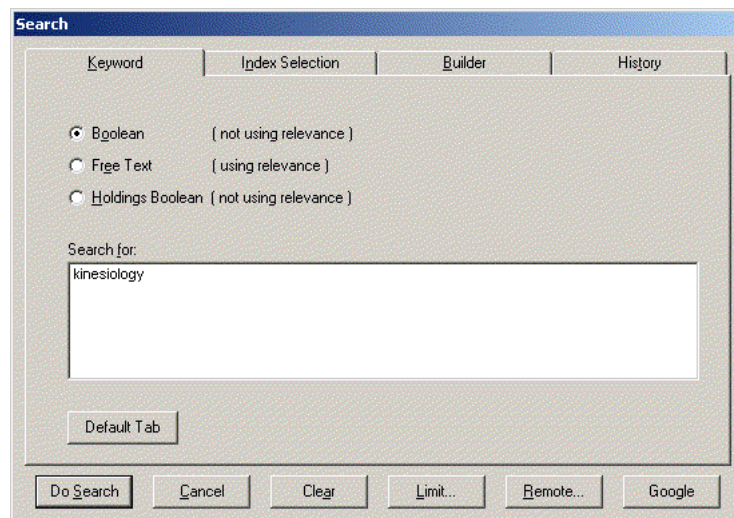


Figure 2-31. Completed Keyword tab

4. Select **Do Search** to execute the search, **Cancel** to cancel the search, **Clear** to delete the search terms, or **Limit** to set limits for this search. See [Setting Search Limits](#) on [page 2-74](#).

Result: If the above search is performed, a **Titles Index** dialog box opens with the results (see [Figure 2-32](#)).

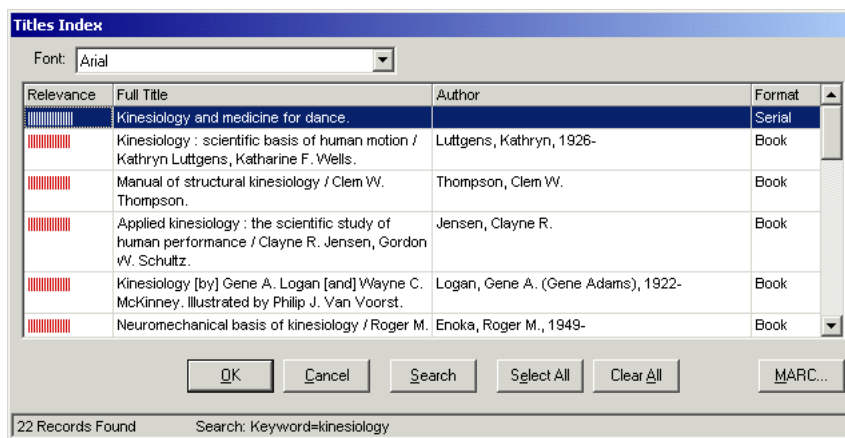
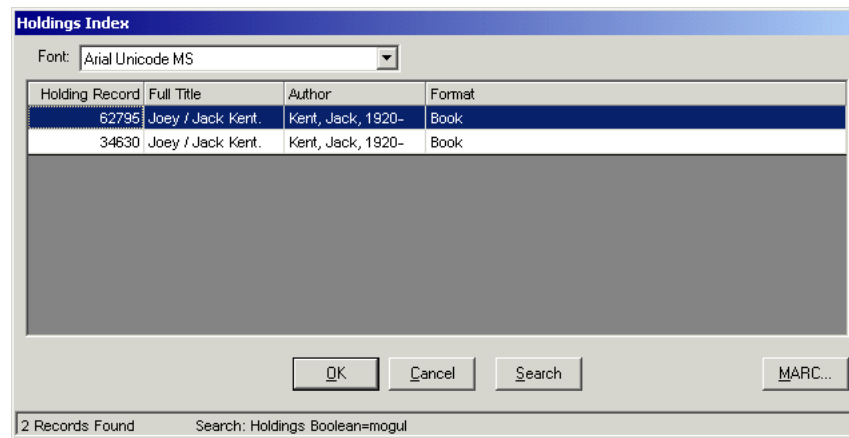


Figure 2-32. Titles Index dialog box after performing a free text keyword search

If a Holdings Boolean search has been conducted the **Holdings Index** dialog box shows the results (see [Figure 2-33](#)).



**Figure 2-33. Holdings Index dialog box**

5. Select the title or holdings record you want and select one of the option buttons. See [Description of the Titles Index dialog box](#) on [page 2-30](#) for information.

Result: If the **OK** button is clicked, the response of the system varies depending on the type of search conducted.

See [Keyword Searching in the Acquisitions Module](#) on [page 2-81](#).

## Perform an Index Selection Search

The procedure for performing an Index Selection search is shown in [Procedure 2-5, Index Selection Searching](#).

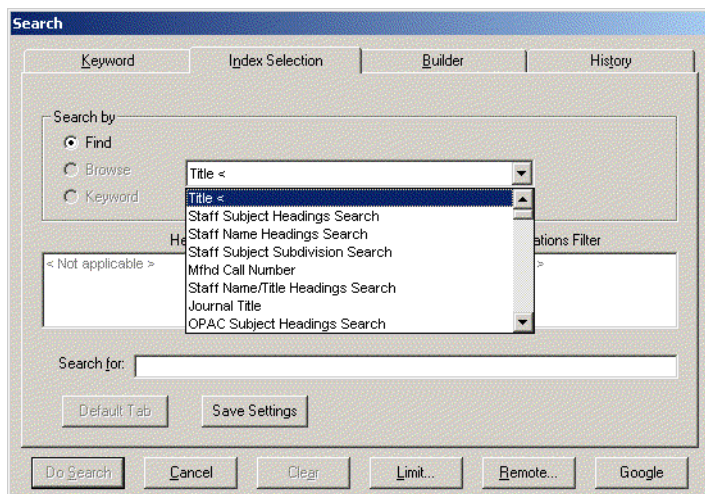


### Procedure 2-5. Index Selection Searching

Use the following to perform an Index Selection search.

1. Access the **Search** dialog box and click the **Index Selection** tab.

2. Select the type of search wanted from the drop-down list (see [Figure 2-34](#)).



**Figure 2-34. Type of search**

**OPTIONAL:**

3. Select an option button of either **Find**, or **Browse** if you are performing a heading or call number search.

**OPTIONAL:**

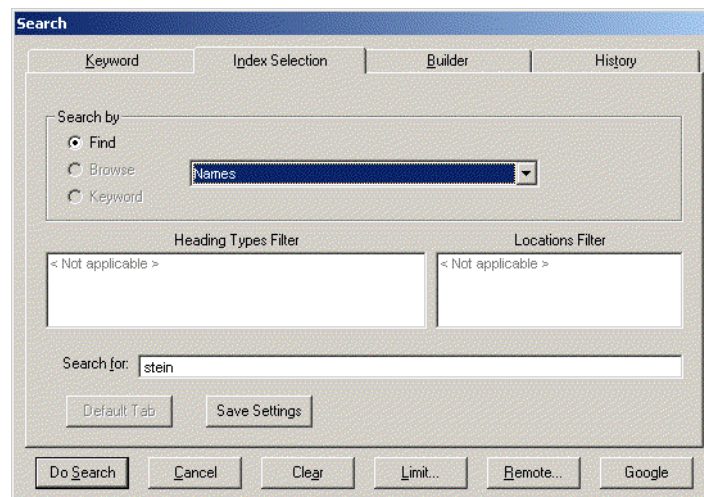
4. Select a *Heading Types Filter* (if doing a heading or call number search). Hold the **Ctrl** key down to select more than one filter.

**OPTIONAL:**

5. Select a *Locations Filter* (if applicable) from the list box(es). Hold the **Ctrl** key down to select more than one filter.

**OPTIONAL:**

6. Click the **Limits** button to display the **Search Limits** dialog box and further limit your search. See [Search Limits](#) on [page 2-64](#).
7. Enter your search term in the **Search For** field (see [Figure 2-35](#)).



**Figure 2-35. Completed Index Selection tab**

8. Click the **Do Search** button to perform the search.

Result: If you performed a Non-Heading search, the **Titles Index** dialog box shows matching titles.

If you performed a Heading search, the **Headings List** dialog box shows all matching headings. Click the heading that most closely matches what you are searching for, then click the **OK** button (or double-click the heading.) The **Titles Index** dialog box then shows the matching titles. See [Titles Index Dialog Box](#) on [page 2-28](#).

9. Click the item you want to select it in the **Titles Index** dialog box and click **OK**. Optionally, double-click the title to select it.



**TIP:**

*To view the MARC record for the item, click the **MARC...** button.*

Result: If the **OK** button is clicked, the response of the system varies depending on the type of search conducted.

See [Index Selection Searching in the Acquisitions Module](#) on [page 2-88](#).



## Perform a Builder Search

---

The procedure for Performing a Builder search is shown in [Procedure 2-6, Performing a Builder search](#).



### Procedure 2-6. Performing a Builder search

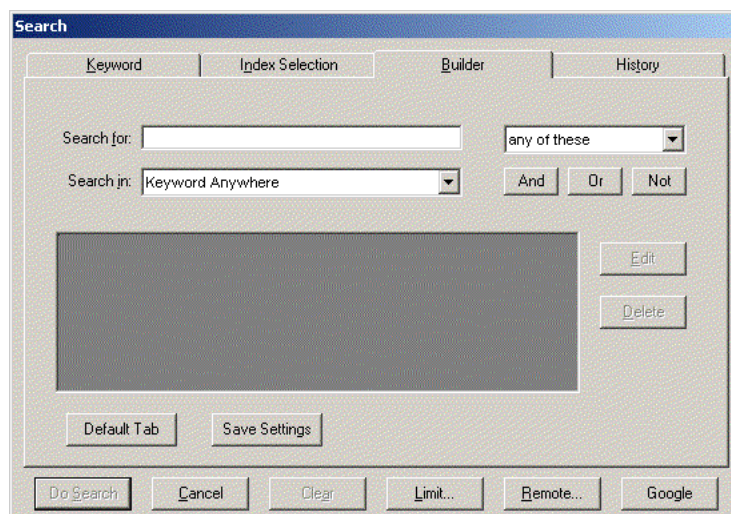
---

Use the following to perform a Builder search.

1. Click the **Builder** tab from the **Search** dialog box.

Result: The **Builder** tab opens (see [Figure 2-36](#)).

---



---

**Figure 2-36. Builder search tab**

2. Enter a search term(s) or phrase(s) in the **Search for** field.
3. Select the “any,” “all,” or “phrase” option from the drop-down list to the right of the **Search for** field. See [Description of the Builder tab](#) on [page 2-25](#) for a description of the options.
4. Select a **Search In** field for matching the search terms.



**OPTIONAL:**

5. Click any of the Boolean operator buttons, **And**, **Or**, or **Not**, to use multiple search rows. Repeat steps 3 - 5.

Result: The row of search terms displays in the pane below the **Search In** field.

**NOTE:**

The Boolean operator does not display in the row until you enter another search term and click an additional Boolean operator button (to be used with the next search term, if you enter another).

[Figure 2-37](#) shows a search using multiple search terms in combination with the following.

- All three options for relationships between terms (any, all, phrase)
- Various **Search In** fields (**Title**, the default **Keyword Anywhere**, **Subject**, and **Author Name**)
- Two Boolean operators (**AND** and **OR**)

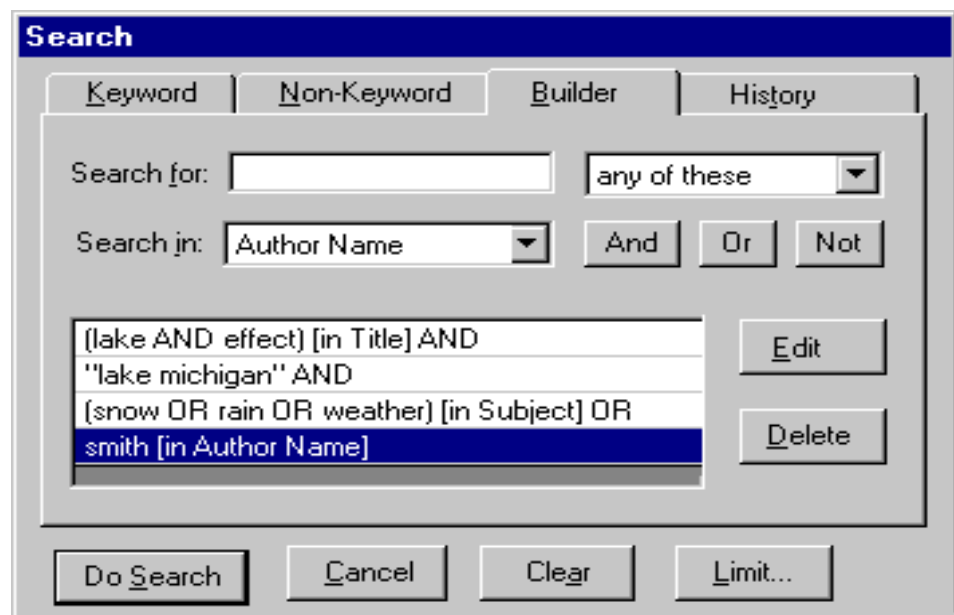


Figure 2-37. Builder tab with multiple search terms and relationships

**OPTIONAL:**

6. *Edit any row of search terms by clicking the row, then the **Edit** button, then repeating steps 3 - 5.*

*Delete any row of search terms by clicking the row, then clicking the **Delete** button.  
Delete the entire pane by clicking the **Clear** button.*

**OPTIONAL:**

7. *Click the **Limits** button to display the **Search Limits** dialog box and further limit your search. See [Search Limits](#) on [page 2-64](#).*
8. *To search, click the **Do Search** button. (To cancel and close the **Search** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.)*

Result: The **Titles Index** or **Headings List** displays the results of the search.

See [Builder Searching in the Acquisitions Module](#) on [page 2-94](#).

---

## **Access/Review the History Tab**

---

The procedure for accessing searches from the **History** tab is shown in [Procedure 2-7, Accessing searches from the History tab](#).



### **Procedure 2-7. Accessing searches from the History tab**

---

Use the following to access a search from the **History** tab.

1. Click the **History** tab from the **Search** dialog box.

Result: The list of previous searches displays.

2. Click the row of the search you want to access.

Result: The row highlights.

**OPTIONAL:**

3. *Click the **Limits** button.*

Result: The **Search Limits** dialog box displays. For information about setting limits. See [Search Limits](#) on [page 2-64](#).

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Click the **Edit** button.

Result: The correct tab opens on the **Search** dialog box and you can edit and re-execute the search from there.

5. Click the **Do Search** button.

Result: This executes the previous search that you selected.

---

## **Remote Searching**

---

The **Remote...** button found on the **Search** dialog box enables you to select, connect to, search, and import records from other databases.

The **Remote...** button displays only if you have defined remote databases to which you can connect in System Administration. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for details.

## **Remote Databases**

---

If remote databases are defined in the **Database Definitions** workspace of the System Administration module, users can search these databases in the Acquisitions and Cataloging modules. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for details on defining databases.

You can include your local database in the remote database search which creates a simultaneous search of local and remote databases.

If you have opened the **Search** dialog box and you have set up remote searches in the System Administration module, a **Remote...** button displays on the **Search** dialog box ([Figure 2-38](#)).

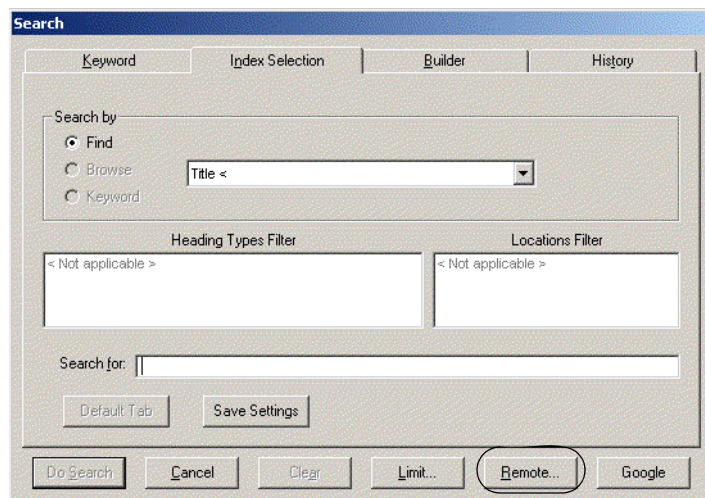


Figure 2-38. Remote... button on Search dialog box

## Voyager Connection Options Dialog Box

When the **Remote...** button is clicked the **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box opens ([Figure 2-39](#)).

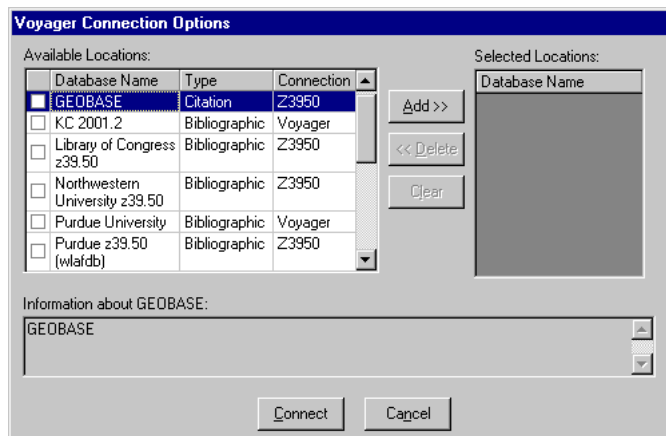


Figure 2-39. Voyager Connection Options dialog box

Use the **Remote...** button to select the remote database(s) from which you want to do the following.

- Search (individually or simultaneously)
- Import records from

The **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box lists the databases you have access to as defined in the System Administration module. The name, connection, and type of databases are set in the **Database Definition** workspace of the Voyager System Administration module.

**NOTE:**

Your local database lists.

[Table 2-11](#) describes the **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box.

**Table 2-11. Description of the Voyager Connection Options dialog box**

Section	Field/Column	Description
Available Locations	[Unnamed]	Column of check boxes to the left of <b>Database Name</b> indicating whether or not the database has been added to <b>Selected Locations</b> .
	Database Name	The name of the database to which you can connect.
	Type	The type of database such as Bibliographic or Citation.
	Connection	The connection type for the database such as Voyager or Z39.50.
Selected Locations	Database Name	Lists the databases (by name) that you have selected for searching.
Information about [database name]	[not used]	Describes the database selected in the list of <b>Available Locations</b> . Description is drawn from the <b>Database Definition</b> workspace in the Voyager System Administration module.



**IMPORTANT:**

*Acquisitions provides access to remote searching through Purchase Order activities only. The **Remote...** button does not display on the **Search** dialog box when the dialog box has been accessed through a different activity or task.*

## Searching Remote Databases

---

The procedure for searching remote databases is shown in [Procedure 2-8, Searching remote databases](#).



### Procedure 2-8. Searching remote databases

---

Use the following to perform a bibliographic search of one or more remote databases.

1. Click the **Remote...** button at the bottom right of the **Search** dialog box or press **Alt + R** on your keyboard from the **Search** dialog box.

Result: The **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box opens.

2. Click the database(s) to which you want to connect, then click the **Add >>** button. (Double-clicking the database name in the **Available Locations** also selects it.) from the list of **Available Locations**.

#### NOTE:

If you select more than one database, Voyager searches them simultaneously.



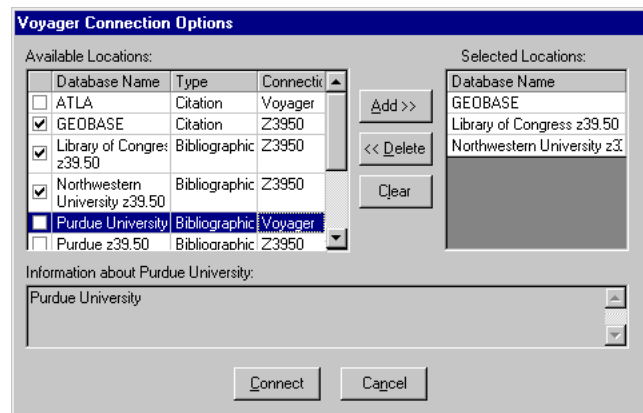
#### IMPORTANT:

*To search your local database along with remote database(s), select **Local Database** from the list of **Available Locations**.*

Result: Selected locations/databases display in the **Selected Locations** list. A check mark displays in the box directly to the left of the selected database name in the list of **Available Locations** (see [Figure 2-40](#)).

#### OPTIONAL:

3. *Select the database and click the **<< Delete** button to remove a database from the list of **Selected Locations**. (You can also double-click the database name in either the list of **Available Locations** or **Selected Locations**.) To remove all the databases from the list of **Selected Locations**, click the **Clear** button.*

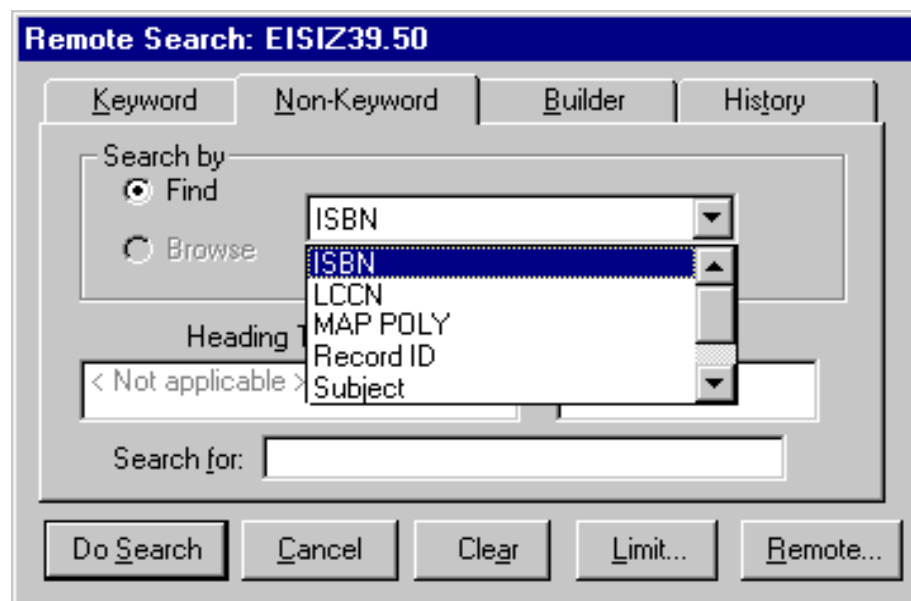


**Figure 2-40. Selected locations in the Voyager Connection Options dialog box**

4. Click the **Connect** button or click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If you clicked the **Connect** button, one of the following dialog boxes opens.

- If you are connecting to one database, the **Remote Search** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-41](#)) with the name of the database displayed in the title bar. If available from the remote server, the same search types are available as those in the regular local search display.



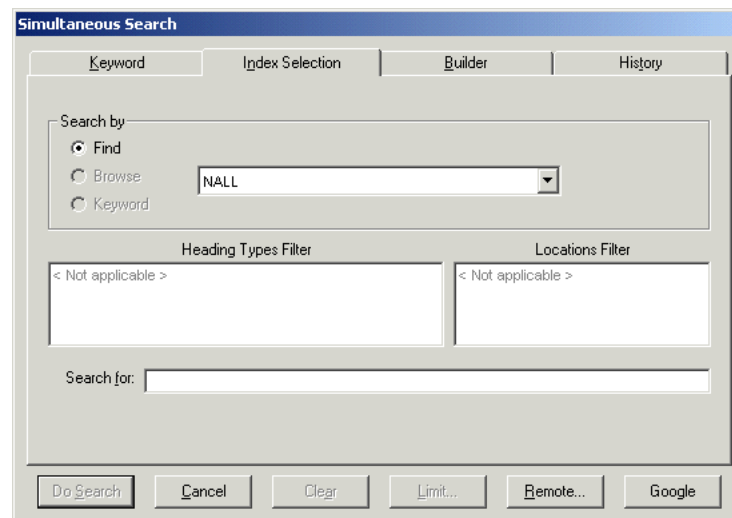
**Figure 2-41. Remote Search dialog box, Search by options**

**NOTE:**

Default Tab and Save Settings functions are not available for remote searches.

- If you are connecting to more than one database, the **Simultaneous Search** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-42](#)). The types of searches available are limited to those shared by all connected databases.





**Figure 2-42. Simultaneous Search dialog box**

**NOTE:**

Default Tab and Save Settings functions are not available for remote searches.

If you clicked the **Cancel** button the **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box closes without connecting to a remote database.



**IMPORTANT:**

*Searches on remote and multiple databases are limited to search types available to all connected databases. Other limits may apply. For instance, connecting to multiple databases disables heading searches, and Z39.50 databases do not support search limits.*

For more information on simultaneous searching, including setting up search attributes, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

5. Enter your search criteria.

[Table 2-12](#) lists the page numbers where you can find information about performing various searches.

**Table 2-12. Page references for bibliographic search tabs**

Tab	Page
Keyword	<a href="#">2-12</a>

**Table 2-12. Page references for bibliographic search tabs**

Tab	Page
Index Selection	<a href="#">2-18</a>
Builder	<a href="#">2-24</a>
History	<a href="#">2-28</a>

6. Click the **Do Search** button.

Result: One of the following occurs.

- If you are performing a single-database search (Z39.50), the **Titles Index** dialog box opens with results from the search.
- If you are performing a single-database search (Voyager-to-Voyager), either a **Titles Index** or **Headings List** dialog box displays the results.
- If you are performing a simultaneous search, the **Search Status** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-43](#)), listing each database name and the status of each search. The **Stop Search** button displays if your search returned over 100 hits. It allows you to interrupt the search if the status is **Searching** or **Receiving**.



---

**Figure 2-43. Search Status dialog box**

For simultaneous searches, click the **Show Results** button to view the results in the **Titles Index** dialog box (see [Figure 2-44](#)).

Titles Index		
Full Title	Author	Database
Accident / by Carol Carrick ; pictures by Don Carrick.	Carrick, Carol.	Z39.50 on Viper
Amazing, the incredible super dog / by Crosb Bonsall.	Bonsall, Crosby Newell	Z39.50 on Viper
Angus and the ducks / told and pictured by Marjorie Flack.	Flack, Marjorie, 1897-1958	Z39.50 on Viper
Atlantic classics. Second series.		UB
Atlantic classics. Second series.		A20012
Bad moon rising, edited by Thomas M. Disch	Disch, Thomas M.	A20012
Bishop's Basset.	Gibbs, Jessie O'Connell.	Z39.50 on Viper

43 Records Found      Search: Command=dogs

**Figure 2-44.** Titles Index following a simultaneous search



**TIP:**

For searches combining local and remote databases, the **Titles Index** dialog box displays records in the sort order specified in the System Administration module. If you are searching only remote databases, the **Titles Index** dialog box displays records in the sort order specified for the first database in the **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for details.

**NOTE:**

For simultaneous searches, the **Titles Index** dialog box contains a **Status** button and a **Database** column. The **Status** button opens the **Search Status** dialog box of the last search. The **Database** column lists the name of the database as established in the System Administration module.

7. Click the row(s) containing the item(s) from the **Titles Index** dialog box to select one or more items.
8. Use one or more of the following buttons to continue and complete the search.

Use...	to...
OK	add the item(s) you selected to the purchase order, close the <b>Titles Index list</b> box, and view the line item(s) in the <b>Purchase Order</b> dialog box.
Cancel	end the search and close the <b>Titles Index</b> dialog box.
Search	close the <b>Titles Index</b> dialog box and return to a new <b>Search</b> dialog box.
Status	open the <b>Search Status</b> dialog box of the last search.
Refresh	update the index in the event that records were updated in the Cataloging module.
Select All	choose all of the records in the search results list.
Clear All	de-select all selected records.
MARC...	open a read-only MARC bibliographic record for the selected title.

Click the **Remote...** button from the **Search** dialog box and de-select/select new databases to change the selected databases.

**NOTE:**

The connections you select in the **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box remain throughout the session unless you change them.

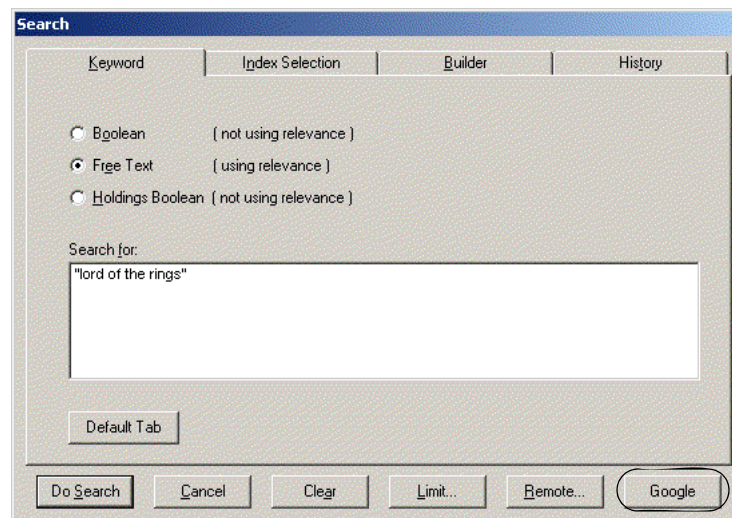
---

## **User-Defined Alternate Search Button**

---

Users can add another button on the **Search** dialog box, providing the capability to invoke a URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) to search outside the Voyager database.

An example of this user-defined feature is shown in [Figure 2-45](#). The button labeled Google has been set up as a URI search option to access the Google™ search page.



**Figure 2-45. Search dialog box with user-defined alternate search button**

This alternate search function can be configured to do either of the following:

- Take the text string entered in the **Search for** field and pass it to the alternate search facility to execute when you click this uniquely-defined alternate search button
- Access the search facility without including the text string

The URI search option is defined in the `voyager.ini` file. For more information, about the setup for this feature, see the description of the `[SearchURI]` stanza in the *Voyager Technical User's Guide*.

## Setting Search Preferences

Users can create session searching defaults to increase their searching efficiency.

### Retain Last Search

Selecting the **Retain Last Search** check box causes the search information from your last search to be saved until the current Voyager session is exited. That way, if you want to perform the same search again, you do not have to redefine your search type and text. This check box is found in the **Session Workflows** workspace > **Searching** tab, in the Bibliographic Staff Searching/Import section in Acquisitions.

### **Automatic Truncation for Index Selection Searches**

---

Selecting the **Automatic Truncation for Index Selection Searches** check box causes an Index Selection search to be automatically truncated without requiring the question mark for a truncation character. This check box is found in the **Session Workflows** workspace> **Searching** tab, in the Bibliographic Staff Searching/Import section in Acquisitions.

### **Search Limits**

---

Search limits can be applied to the following searches:

- Boolean and Free Text Keyword searches from the **Keyword** tab
- Left-anchored searches from the **Index Selection** tab
- **Builder** tab searches



**IMPORTANT:**

*Limits cannot be applied to the Holdings Boolean (MFHD Keyword), Subject headings, Author headings, or Call Number headings searches.*

Users access the **Search Limits** dialog box to limit searches. Searches can be limited by Language, Location, Date, Medium, Type, Place, or Status.

In a limited search, the system compares the limit criteria selected to the code or value in the corresponding field of the bibliographic record. For example, if a search is limited to the publication date of 1960, the system checks the 008 control field in the MARC bibliographic record, date of publication field ([Figure 2-46](#)) and returns the matching results.

**Bib 16690 : Einstein on peace / edited by Otto Nathan and Heinz Norden ; Pref. by Bertrand...**

**MARC** | System | History

Leader 00683nam a2200217 45@0 006

005: 007

008 721201 s 1960 nyu h b 0 0 0 0 eng

Tag	11	12	Subfield Data
010			\$a 60012583
035			\$a CNV01338516
049			\$a SHCM
050	0		\$a JX1952 \$b .E44
082			\$a 341.1
092			\$a 341.1 E35
100	1		\$a Einstein, Albert, \$d 1879-1955.
245	1	0	\$a Einstein on peace / \$c edited by Otto Nathan and Heinz Norden ; Pref. by Bertrand Russell.

**Figure 2-46. Bibliographic record**

User's can configure the limits available in the **Search Limits** dialog box by configuring the `limits.ini` file. See [Limits.ini File](#) on [page 2-66](#).

### Search Limits Dialog Box

[Figure 2-47](#) shows the **Search Limits** dialog box.

**Search Limits**

- \* Language
- \* Location
- \* Date
- \* Medium
- \* Type
- \* Place
- \* Status

Limit Type	Value

Add  
Delete  
Clear

☐ Retain search limits between searches

OK

**Figure 2-47. Search Limits dialog box**

[Table 2-13](#) describes the **Search Limits** dialog box.

**Table 2-13. Description of the Search Limits dialog box**

Name	Description
List of Limits	Types of limits that can be imposed.
Limit Type Column	Type of limit selected.
Value	Value of the limit selected.  For example, if a language limit is applied, English is a possible value.
Add Button	Applies the limit selected in the top portion of the dialog box and displays in the bottom portion of the dialog box.
Delete Button	Deletes the selected limit from the bottom half of the dialog box.
Clear Button	Clears the selected limit from the top half of the dialog box.
Retain search limits between searches	Applies the limit(s) to the current search and all future searches.
OK Button	When clicked the system returns to the <b>Search</b> dialog box and the search limits defined are in effect.

### **Limits.ini File**

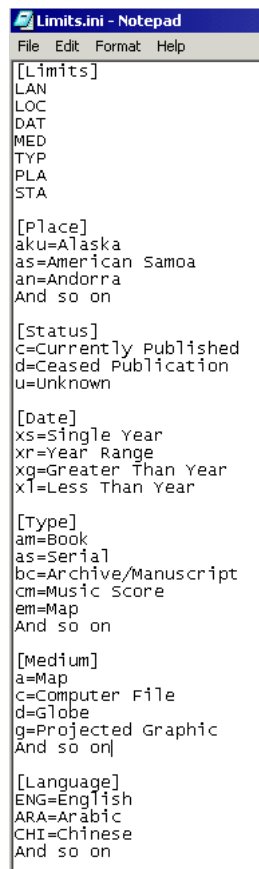
---

Search limits are configured in the `limits.ini` file located in the `c:\Voyager\Misc.` directory on the user's computer. This file contains various stanzas which govern the type of limits available (`[Limits]` stanza), and the limiting criteria (search limits stanzas) seen in the **Search Limits** dialog box. [Figure 2-48](#) provides an example of the `limits.ini` file.

**NOTE:**

Use a text editor to edit the `limits.ini` file such as Notepad or Wordpad.





```
[Limits]
LAN
LOC
DAT
MED
TYP
PLA
STA

[Place]
aku=Alaska
as=American Samoa
an=Andorra
And so on

[Status]
c=Currently Published
d=Ceased Publication
u=Unknown

[Date]
xs=Single Year
xr=Year Range
xg=Greater Than Year
xl=Less Than Year

[Type]
am=Book
as=Serial
bc=Archive/Manuscript
cm=Music Score
em=Map
And so on

[Medium]
a=Map
C=Computer File
d=Globe
g=Projected Graphic
And so on

[Language]
ENG=English
ARA=Arabic
CHI=Chinese
And so on
```

Figure 2-48. Sample limits.ini file

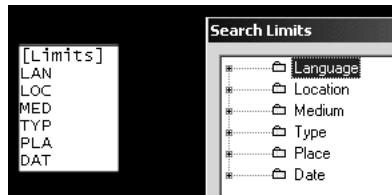
## Limits Stanza

The [Limits] stanza defines the type and order of limits available in the **Search Limits** dialog box. It lists a three letter code for each type of limit:

- Language (LAN)
- Location (LOC)
- Date (DAT)
- Medium (MED)
- Type (TYP)
- Place (PLA)
- Status (STA)

If any codes are misspelled or not present, that limit type is not available. Also, the order in which the codes are listed in the stanza is the order in which the limits are listed in the **Search Limits** dialog box.

[Figure 2-49](#) shows a [Limits] stanza and the corresponding **Search Limits** dialog box list of limits.



---

**Figure 2-49.** [Limits] stanza and the list of limits in the Search Limits dialog box

Also, for each type of limit except the location limit, there is an associated search limit stanza defining the limit criteria. For example, users wanting to limit by medium would include MED in the [Limits] stanza, and include a [Medium] stanza in the `limits.ini` file.

## Search Limits Stanzas

The search limit stanzas in the `limits.ini` file correspond to the types of limits listed in the [Limits] stanza. These provide the limiting criteria for each limit type. The search limits stanzas are as follows:

- [Language]
- [Date]
- [Medium]
- [Type]
- [Place]
- [Status]

### NOTE:

Operators may limit by location if LOC is listed in the [Limits] stanza. However since locations are locally defined there is no locations stanza, the list of locations to choose from is derived from the locations defined in the System Administration module, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### Rules for Search Limit Stanzas

- Stanzas can be in any order in the `limits.ini` file, they do not have to be in the same order as in the `[Limits]` stanza.
- Users can delete criteria by deleting the line, using the hash mark before the criteria does not work.
- Removing a search limit stanza prevents those limits from being available.
- The `[Date]` stanza cannot be edited.



#### **IMPORTANT:**

*See the MARC standards for information regarding the MARC Leader, 007, and 008 fields, as well as, the available codes used for languages, status, medium, and places of publication, <http://www.loc.gov/marc/>.*

### **[Language] Stanza**

Users can limit searches to items published in a particular language by configuring this stanza. Any language you want to limit by must be listed in this stanza.

[Figure 2-50](#) shows an example of part of the `[Language]` stanza. This stanza is editable and additional languages may be added.

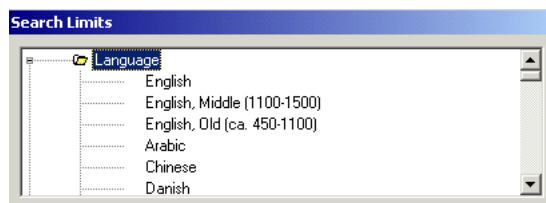
---

```
[Language]
ENG=English
ENM=English, Middle (1100-1500)
ANG=English, old (ca. 450-1100)
ARA=Arabic
CHI=Chinese
DAN=Danish
DUT=Dutch
DUM=Dutch, Middle (ca. 1050-1350)
FRE=French
FRM=French, Middle (ca. 1400-1600)
FRO=French, old (ca. 842-1400)
GER=German
```

---

**Figure 2-50. Language stanza example**

[Figure 2-51](#) shows some of the language limits that correspond to the `[Language]` stanza ([Figure 2-50](#)) as they display in the **Search Limits** dialog box.



**Figure 2-51. Language limits**

When a language limit is applied, the system compares the language code in the **008 control** field (positions 35-37) of the MARC record with the language selected in the **Search Limits** dialog box to find matching records.

### [Date] Stanza

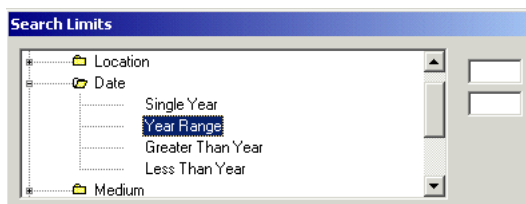
Users can limit searches to items published in a particular year, range of years, or before or after a particular year.

[Figure 2-52](#) shows the [Date] stanza. This stanza is not editable.

```
[Date]
xs=Single Year
xr=Year Range
xg=Greater Than Year
xl=Less Than Year
```

**Figure 2-52. Date stanza example**

[Figure 2-53](#) shows the date limits that correspond to the [Date] stanza ([Figure 2-52](#)) as they display in the **Search Limits** dialog box.



**Figure 2-53. Date limits**

When a date limit is applied, the system compares the date in the **008 control** field (positions 07-10) of the MARC record with the date provided in the **Search Limits** dialog box to find matching records.

### [Medium] Stanza

Users can limit searches to the medium in which the item is published by configuring this stanza. Any medium you want to limit by must be listed in this stanza.

[Figure 2-54](#) shows an example of the [Medium] stanza. This stanza is editable and additional medium limit codes may be added.

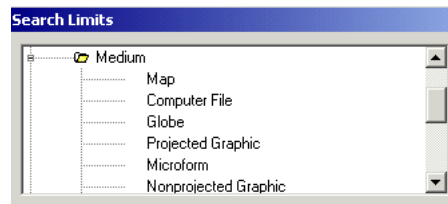
---

```
[Medium]
a=Map
c=Computer File
d=Globe
g=Projected Graphic
h=Microform
k=Nonprojected Graphic
m=Motion Picture
s=Sound Recording
t=Text (Eye-Readable)
v=Videorecording
```

---

**Figure 2-54. Medium stanza example**

[Figure 2-55](#) shows some of the medium limits that correspond to the [Medium] stanza ([Figure 2-54](#)) as they display in the **Search Limits** dialog box.



**Figure 2-55. Medium limits**

When a medium limit is applied, the system compares the medium code in the first position in the **007 control** field of the MARC record with the medium selected in the **Search Limits** dialog box to find matching records.

### [Type] Stanza

Users can limit searches to the type of item by configuring this stanza. In Voyager, types are a combination of the type of record and the bibliographic level. Any type you want to limit by must be listed in this stanza.

[Figure 2-56](#) shows an example of the [Type] stanza. This stanza is editable and additional type limit codes can be added.

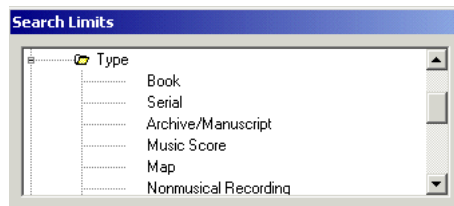
---

```
[Type]
am=Book
as=Serial
bc=Archive/Manuscript
cm=Music Score
em=Map
im=Nonmusical Recording
jm=Musical Recording
mm=Computer File/Software
om=Kit
pc=Mixed Material/Collection
pm=Mixed Material
rm=Visual Material
```

---

**Figure 2-56.** Type stanza example

[Figure 2-57](#) shows some type limits that correspond to the [Type] stanza ([Figure 2-56](#)) as they display in the **Search Limits** dialog box.



**Figure 2-57.** Type limits

When a type limit is applied, the system creates a 2-letter code using the type of record code in the **Leader control** field (position 06) and bibliographic level code in the **Leader control** field (position 07) of the MARC record. This code is then compared to the type selected in the **Search Limits** dialog box to find matching records.

### [Place] Stanza

Users can limit searches to items published in a particular place by configuring this stanza. Any place you want to limit by must be listed in this stanza.

[Figure 2-58](#) shows an example of part of the [Place] stanza. This stanza is editable and additional places can be added.

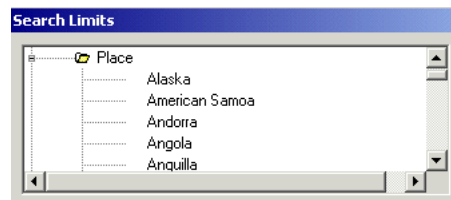
```

|
|[Place]
aku=Alaska
as=American Samoa
an=Andorra
ao=Angola
am=Anguilla
ay=Antarctica
aq=Antigua and Barbuda
ag=Argentina
azu=Arizona
aru=Arkansas
ai=Armenia (Republic)
air=Armenian S.S.R.
aw=Aruba
at=Australia
au=Austria
aj=Azerbaijan
air=Azerbaijan S.S.R.
bf=Bahamas
ba=Bahrain
bg=Bangladesh
bb=Barbados
bw=Belarus
be=Belgium
bh=Belize
dm=Benin

```

**Figure 2-58. Place stanza example**

[Figure 2-59](#) shows some of the place limits that correspond to the [Place] stanza ([Figure 2-58](#)) as they display in the **Search Limits** dialog box.



**Figure 2-59. Place limits**

When a place limit is applied, the system compares the place code in the **008 control** field (positions 15-17) of the MARC record to the place selected in the **Search Limits** dialog box to find matching records.

### [Status] Stanza

Users can limit searches of serial records by the publication status by configuring this stanza. Any status you want to limit by must be listed in this stanza.

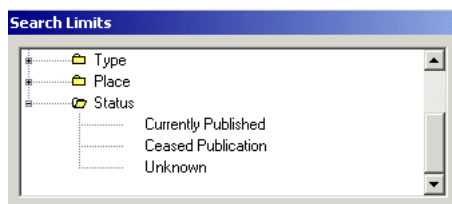
[Figure 2-60](#) shows the [Status] stanza. This stanza is editable and additional status limit types may be added.

```
[Status]
c=Currently Published
d=Ceased Publication
u=Unknown
```

---

**Figure 2-60. Status stanza example**

[Figure 2-61](#) shows the status limits that correspond to the [Status] stanza ([Figure 2-60](#)) as they display in the **Search Limits** dialog box.



---

**Figure 2-61. Status limits**

When a status limit is applied, the system compares the status code in the **008 control** field (position 06) of the MARC record with the status selected in the **Search Limits** dialog box to find matching records.

## Limiting a Search

---

The procedure for setting search limits is shown in [Procedure 2-9, Setting Search Limits](#).



### Procedure 2-9. Setting Search Limits

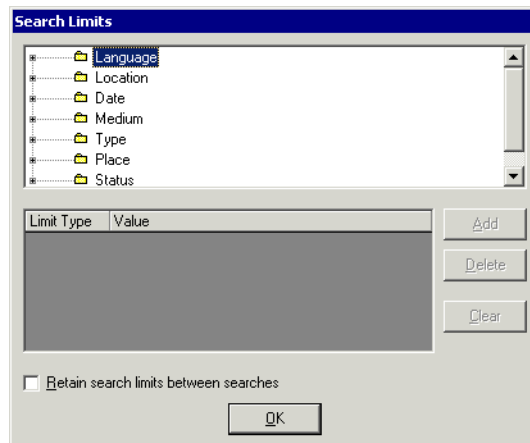
---

Use the following to set search limits.

1. Click the **Limit** button to limit your search.

Result: The **Search Limits** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-62](#)).

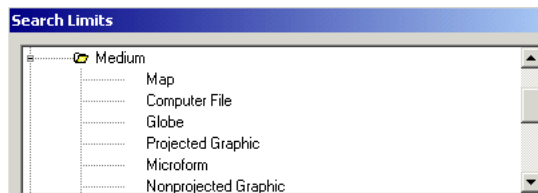




**Figure 2-62. Search Limits dialog box**

2. Click the plus sign ( + ) for the limit type you want to select.

Result: This expands the list and displays the list of limit type values (see [Figure 2-63](#)).

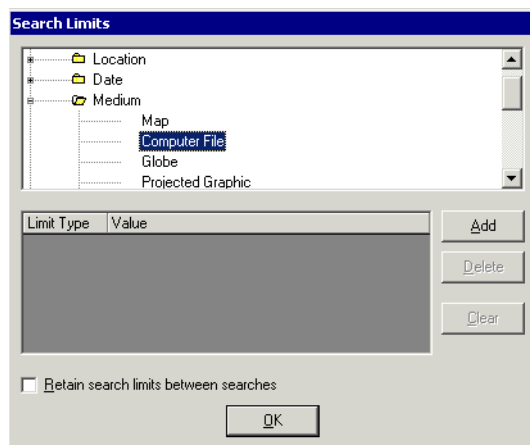


**Figure 2-63. Expanded list of limits**

3. Select any values from the list you want to use as limits for your search. [Figure 2-64](#) shows the Medium limit of Computer File selected.

**NOTE:**

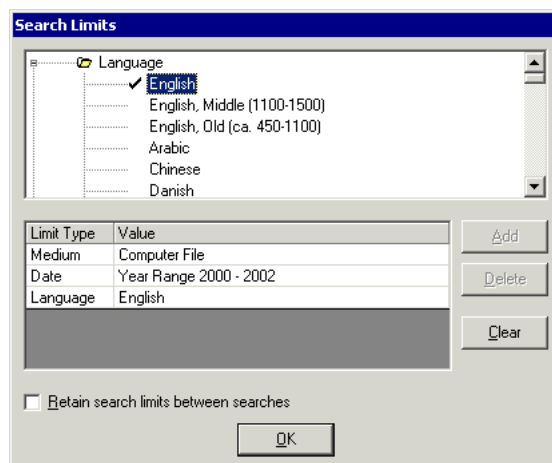
The **Add** button is not active until a specific limit is selected.



**Figure 2-64. Computer File selected as search limit**

4. Click the **Add** button (or double-click the value) to add the limit to the list.

Result: The limit type value you selected displays in the **Limit Type** and **Value** columns (see [Figure 2-65](#)).



**Figure 2-65. Selected search limits listed in the bottom portion of the dialog box**

**OPTIONAL:**

5. Click the **Retain search limits between searches** check box.

**OPTIONAL:**

6. *To edit the limits you have chosen, select a limit type value from the **Value** column and click the **Delete** button to remove the value from the limits to be applied or click the **Clear** button to remove all limit type values from the **Value** column.*
7. Click **OK** to accept the limiting criteria and return to the **Search** dialog box.

Result: The search limits are set.

---

## **MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search (optional feature)**

---

The MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search provides the ability to combine holdings and bibliographic search criteria into one keyword search. This function is available through Voyager client and OPAC search facilities. (The focus of this user's guide description is about the Voyager client capabilities.)

**NOTE:**

The MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search is an optional feature that requires headings keyword indexes to be built. Contact Ex Libris Customer Support for more information.

In the Voyager client, the combined search may be performed as a command-line Boolean Keyword search or the Builder search function may be used.

Example: The following is an example of a command-line search for “102 Dalmatians” or “African Queen” in the motion picture collection where SPAC is the Voyager code for the indexed 901 \$a holdings field and MP is the code representing the motion picture collection stored in the 901 \$a . See [Figure 2-66](#) and [Figure 2-67](#).

The screenshot shows a 'Search' dialog box with four tabs: 'Keyword', 'Index Selection', 'Builder', and 'History'. The 'Keyword' tab is active. It contains three radio buttons: 'Boolean' (selected, with '( not using relevance )' next to it), 'Free Text' (with '( using relevance )' next to it), and 'Holdings Boolean' (with '( not using relevance )' next to it). Below these is a text field labeled 'Search for:' containing the text 'SPAC MP and ("African Queen" or "102 dalmatians")'. At the bottom left is a 'Default Tab' button. At the bottom right are buttons for 'Do Search', 'Cancel', 'Clear', 'Limit...', 'Remote...', and 'Google'.

**Figure 2-66. MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search - command line example**

The screenshot shows a 'Titles Index' dialog box. At the top, there are dropdown menus for 'Font' (set to 'Arial Unicode MS') and 'Sort By'. Below these is a table with three columns: 'Full Title', 'Author', and 'Dates'. The table contains two rows of data. The first row is highlighted in blue. The second row is in white. Below the table is a large grey rectangular area. At the bottom are buttons for 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Search', 'Select All', and 'Clear All'. At the very bottom, a status bar shows '2 Records Found' and the search command: 'Search: Command=SPAC MP and ("African Queen" or "102 dalmatians")'.

Full Title	Author	Dates
102 Dalmatians [videorecording] / Walt Disney Pictures presents an Edwards,Feldman production.		2001
African Queen [videorecording] / Horizon Pictures.		1984

**Figure 2-67. Results of MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search**

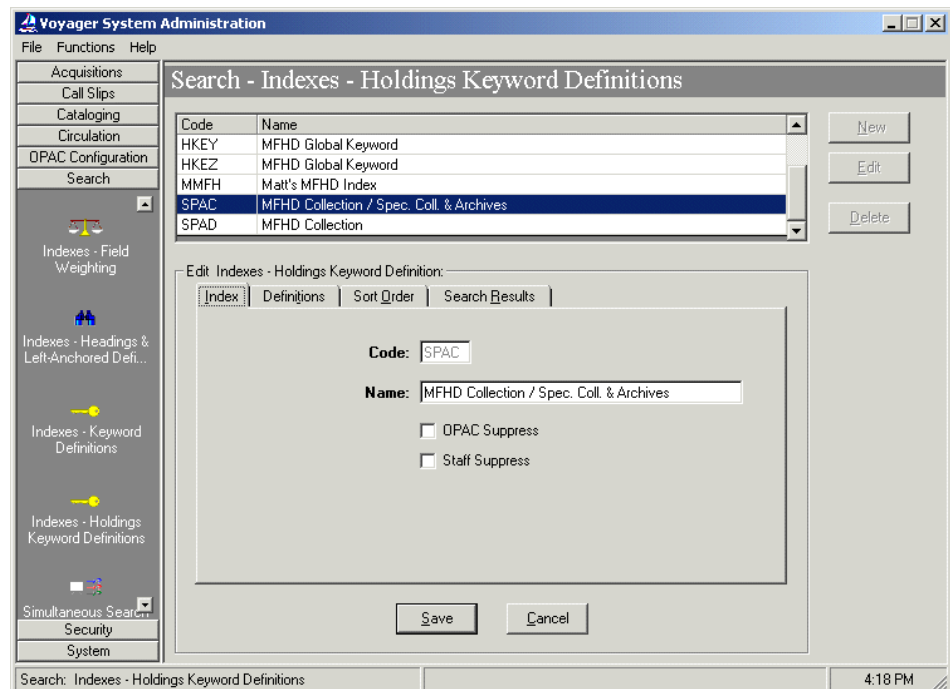
**NOTE:**

The 901  a is used for local cataloging conventions and examples of MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search vary from institution to institution based on what is indexed.

**Setup**

Voyager provides the SPAC holdings keyword definition in Voyager System Administration for use with the MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search. See [Figure 2-68](#). The SPAC definition may be edited and/or additional definitions may be created depending on what you have indexed in your database.

Follow the normal procedures for defining holdings keyword definitions. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



**Figure 2-68. SPAC holdings keyword definition**

The SPAC code may be used in a command-line search to identify the index to be searched. See [Figure 2-66](#).

## Search Options

---

The MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search incorporates the following functional search options/characteristics.

- Boolean operators to include parentheses for grouping and quotes for phrases
- And, or, or not boolean logic may be used to separate each index and term/phrase combination in a command line search as in [Figure 2-66](#)

**NOTE:**

Free-text search syntax of the plus sign and asterisk is not available for command-line boolean searches.

- Search limits
- Remote searching via a Voyager-to-Voyager connection is available

**NOTE:**

The MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search feature must be installed on each remote Voyager server and the search codes (such as SPAC) must be compatible for remote Voyager searching to work.

## Search Results Display

---

The MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search incorporates the following search results display characteristics.

- Search results sets display the associated bibliographic record for the MFHD-bibliographic combined search
- Search results set limit continues to be 10,000
- Search results are de-duplicated by bibliographic ID
- Search results display in the Titles Index format
- Search results columns displayed are determined by the first index in the search when multiple indexes are combined in a search per pre-existing functionality

## User Considerations

---

In utilizing the MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search function, be aware of the following considerations.

- MFHD keyword indexes are not available to the Z39.50 server. As a result, there is no way to incorporate a Z39.50 search into a combined MFHD-bibliographic search.
- Holdings-only search criteria (without the combined bibliographic criteria) generate bibliographic results sets. See [Search Results Display](#) on [page 2-80](#) for more information. Use the optional Holdings Boolean Keyword search function to generate holdings results sets.

## Searching in Acquisitions Examples

This section discusses and provides examples of searching in the Acquisitions module.

In the Acquisitions module, users access the **Search** dialog box by selecting the **Bib and Holdings Info** option from the **Search By** field when searching in the **Line Items, Purchase Orders, Invoices, Problems, and Claims** workspaces.

They can also access the **Search** dialog box after clicking the **Other Search** button from the **Serials Check-In, Serials History, Subscription Maintenance, and Bindery Maintenance** workspaces.

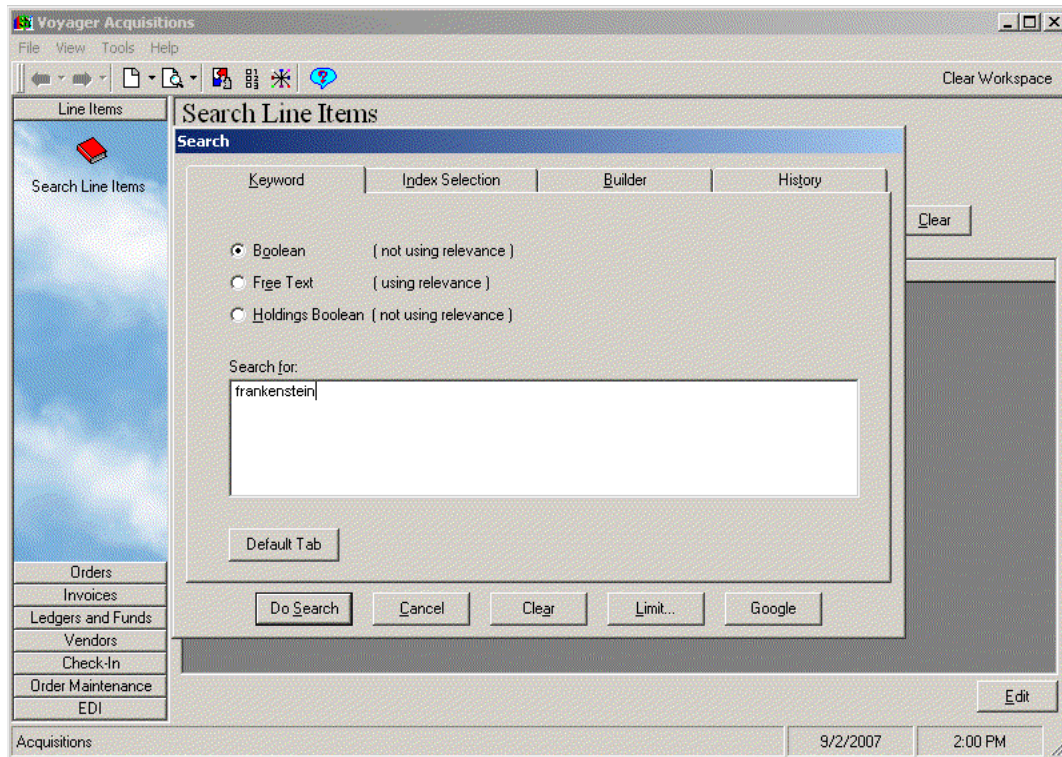
This allows users to search for a particular Acquisitions record using the results of a Bibliographic or Holdings search. Users can also search by Holdings record ID.

## Keyword Searching in the Acquisitions Module

If the Keyword search is	Then the results display in... and the secondary search is...
Boolean	The <b>Titles Index</b> displays. Clicking the <b>OK</b> button populates the <b>Search For</b> field with the selected title. When the <b>Search</b> button is clicked, the secondary search occurs. See the <a href="#">Boolean search</a> example on page <a href="#">2-82</a> .
Free text	The <b>Titles Index</b> displays with relevance bars. Clicking the <b>OK</b> button populates the <b>Search For</b> field with the selected title. When the <b>Search</b> button is clicked, the secondary search occurs. See the <a href="#">Free Text search</a> example on page <a href="#">2-84</a> .
Holdings Boolean (optional feature)	The <b>Holdings Index</b> displays. Clicking the <b>OK</b> button populates the <b>Search For</b> field with the selected title. When the <b>Search</b> button is clicked, the secondary search occurs. See the <a href="#">Holdings Boolean search</a> example on page <a href="#">2-86</a> .

## Example: Boolean search

Conduct a Boolean search to find an invoice containing a specific bibliographic record with the word **frankenstein** ([Figure 2-69](#)).



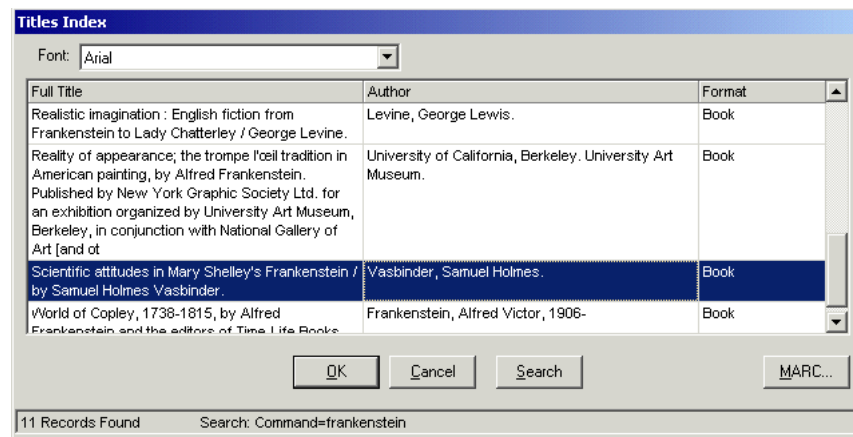
**Figure 2-69. Bib and Holdings Boolean search for an invoice**

After the search is conducted a **Titles Index** dialog box lists the results ([Figure 2-70](#)).

**NOTE:**

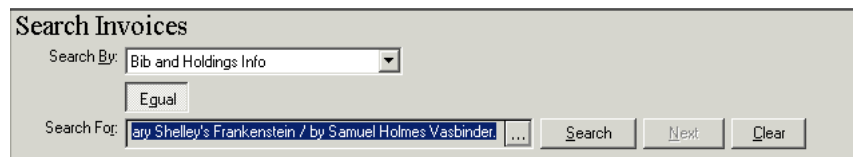
In Acquisitions, to view the MARC record for the item, click the **MARC...** button.





**Figure 2-70. Titles Index dialog box listing the results of Boolean search**

After a title is selected and the user clicks **OK**, the bibliographic information populates the **Search For** field creating the secondary search for the Acquisitions Invoice record ([Figure 2-71](#)).



**Figure 2-71. Search For field populated creating secondary search**

After the **Search** button is selected, the secondary search is conducted and matching invoices display ([Figure 2-72](#)).

Invoice Number	Vendor Name	Invoice Status	Invoice Date
ca567	Mostly Monographs, Inc.	Approved	2/3/2004

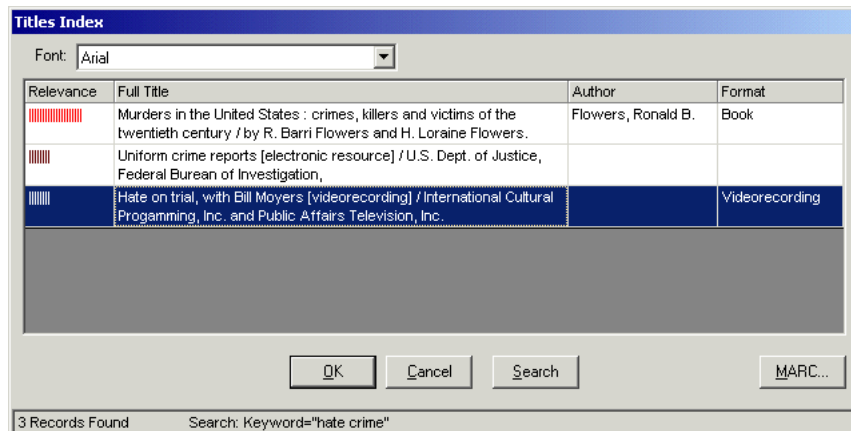
**Figure 2-72. Invoice matching the bibliographic criteria displays**

Example: Free Text search

Conduct a Free Text search to find a marked line item containing a specific bibliographic record with the words **hate crime** ([Figure 2-73](#)).

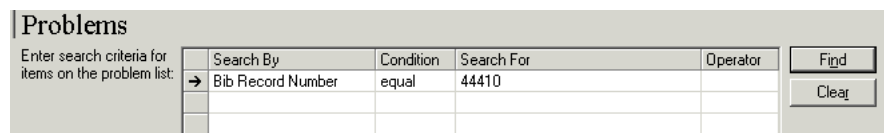
**Figure 2-73. Bib and Holdings Free text search for a marked item**

After the search is conducted, a **Titles Index** dialog box lists the results ([Figure 2-74](#)).



**Figure 2-74. Titles Index dialog box listing the results of Free text search**

After a title is selected and the user clicks **OK**, the system-defined Bib ID populates the **Search For** field creating the secondary search ([Figure 2-75](#)).



**Figure 2-75. Search For field populated creating secondary search**

After the **Find** button is selected, the secondary search is conducted and matching items display ([Figure 2-76](#)).

**Problems**

Enter search criteria for items on the problem list:

Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ Bib Record Number	equal	44410	

---

**Marked Line Items** | Marked Issues

Search Results: 1    100% of records displayed.

Title	Vendor Name	Mark Reason	Date Marked
Hate on trial, with Bill Moyers [videorecording] / InterEBSCO		Damaged	2/3/2004

**Figure 2-76. The item matching the search criteria displays**

Example: Holdings Boolean search

Conduct a Holdings Boolean search to find a PO containing Holdings records with the words **mogul collection** ([Figure 2-77](#)).

**Voyager Acquisitions**

File View Tools Help

Line Items Orders

New Purchase Order

Search Orders

Invoices

Ledgers and Funds

Vendors

Check-In

Order Maintenance

EDI

Acquisitions

**Search Orders**

Search By: Bib and Holdings Info

Equal

Search For:

**Search**

Keyword Index Selection Builder History

☐ Boolean (not using relevance)

☐ Free Text (using relevance)

☒ Holdings Boolean (not using relevance)

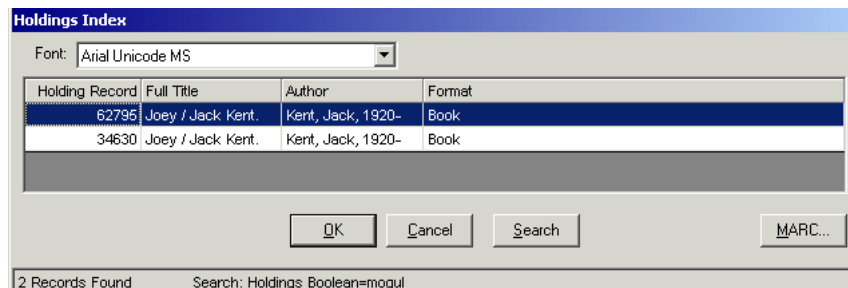
Search for:

"mogul collection"

2:08 PM

**Figure 2-77. Bib and Holdings Boolean search for a PO**

After the search is conducted, a **Holdings Index** dialog box lists the results ([Figure 2-78](#)).



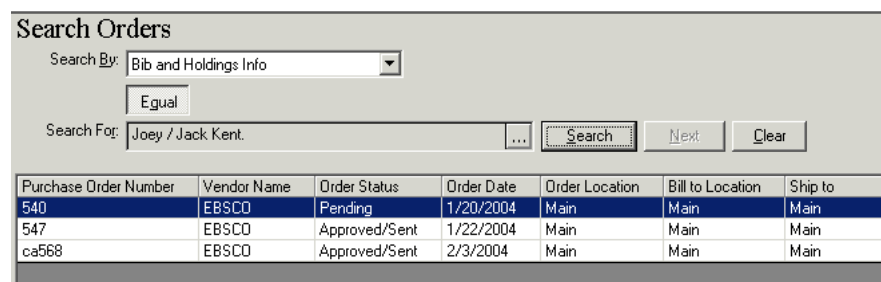
**Figure 2-78. Holdings Index dialog box with results of Holdings Boolean search**

After a title is selected and the user clicks **OK**, the bibliographic information populates the **Search For** field creating the secondary search ([Figure 2-79](#)).



**Figure 2-79. Search For field populated creating secondary search**

After the **Search** button is selected, the secondary search is conducted and matching POs display ([Figure 2-80](#)).



**Figure 2-80. POs matching the MFHD criteria display**

## **Index Selection Searching in the Acquisitions Module**

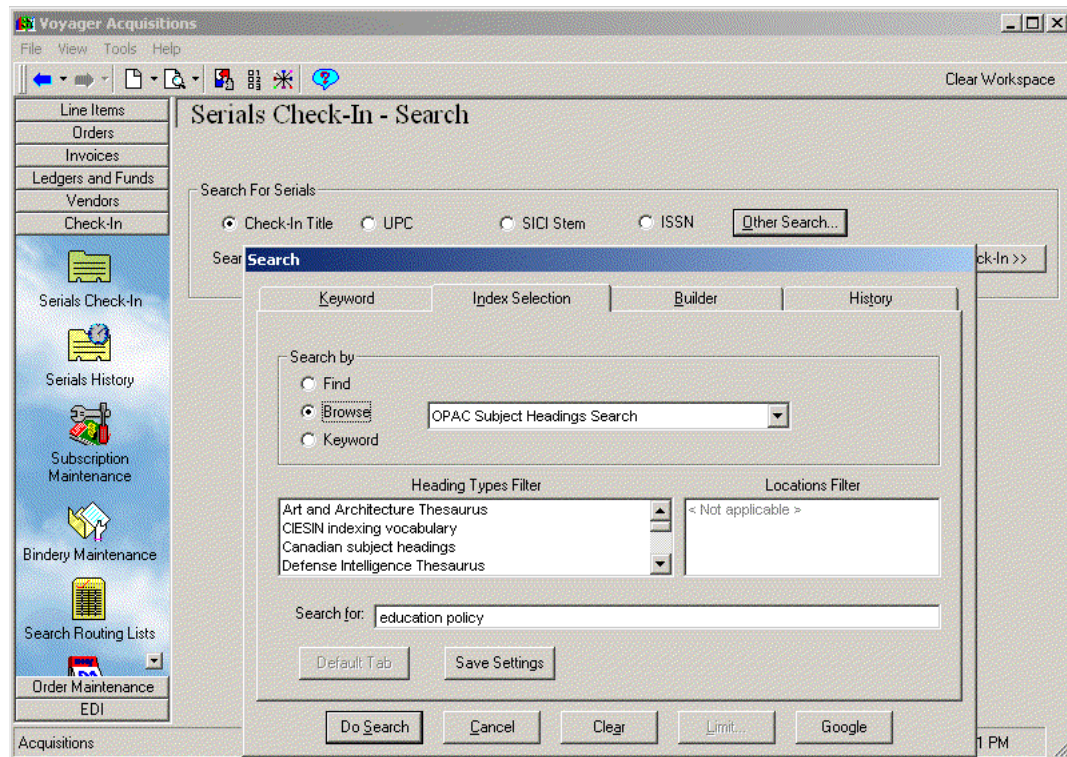
---

<b>If the Index Selection search is</b>	<b>Then the results display in... and the secondary search is...</b>
Headings	The <b>Headings List</b> dialog box displays. Select a heading and click the <b>OK</b> button. The <b>Titles Index</b> dialog box shows, select a title and click <b>OK</b> , the <b>Search For</b> field is populated with the selected title. The <b>Search</b> button is clicked, the secondary search occurs. See the <a href="#">Headings search</a> example on page <a href="#">2-88</a> .
Left-Anchored	The <b>Titles Index</b> displays with relevance bars. Clicking the <b>OK</b> button populates the <b>Search For</b> field with the selected title. When the <b>Search</b> button is clicked, the secondary search occurs. See the <a href="#">Left-anchored search</a> example on page <a href="#">2-91</a> .

Example: Headings search

Conduct a headings search to find a periodical relating to education policy (see [Figure 2-81](#)).





**Figure 2-81. Headings search**

After the search is conducted, a **Headings List** dialog box lists the results. In this example since the **Browse** radio button was selected, the results are returned in a **Browse Headings List** dialog box (see [Figure 2-82](#)).

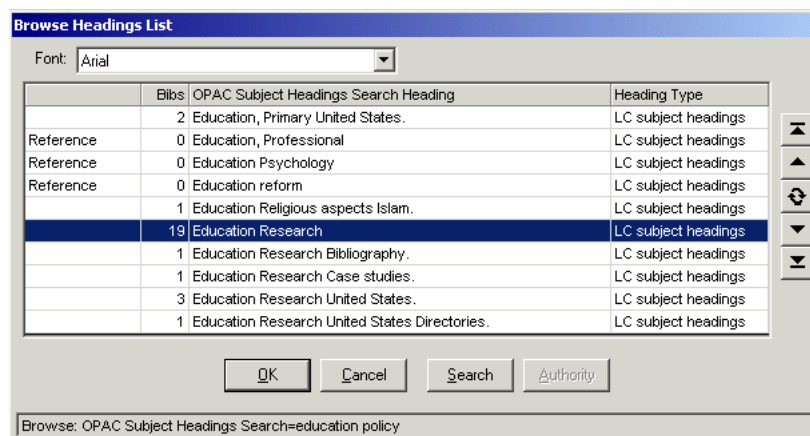


Figure 2-82. Browse Headings List dialog box

After the wanted heading is selected and the user clicks **OK**, the **Titles Index** dialog box displays ([Figure 2-83](#)).

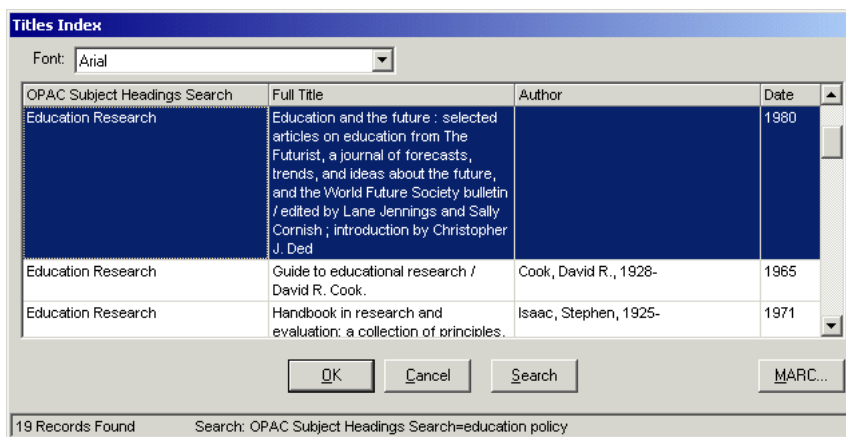
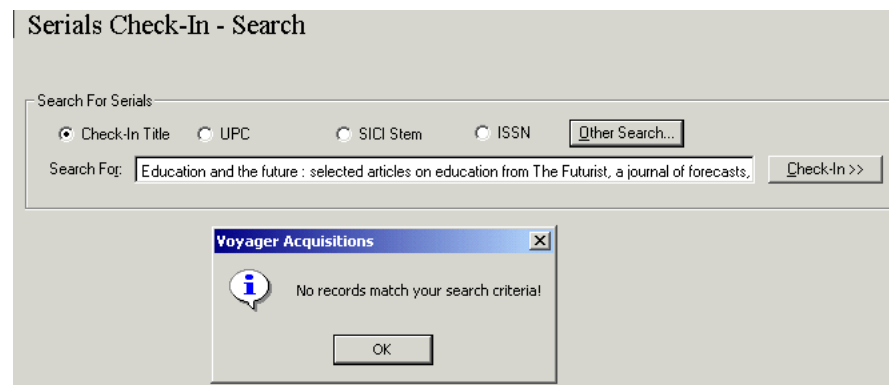


Figure 2-83. Titles Index dialog box

After a title is selected, the bibliographic information populates the **Search For** field creating the secondary search ([Figure 2-84](#)).





**Figure 2-84. Search For field populated creating secondary search**

The secondary search for the serial is conducted. In this example, there were no serials found with this title.

Example: Left-anchored search

Conduct a left-anchored search for a claimed title ([Figure 2-85](#)).

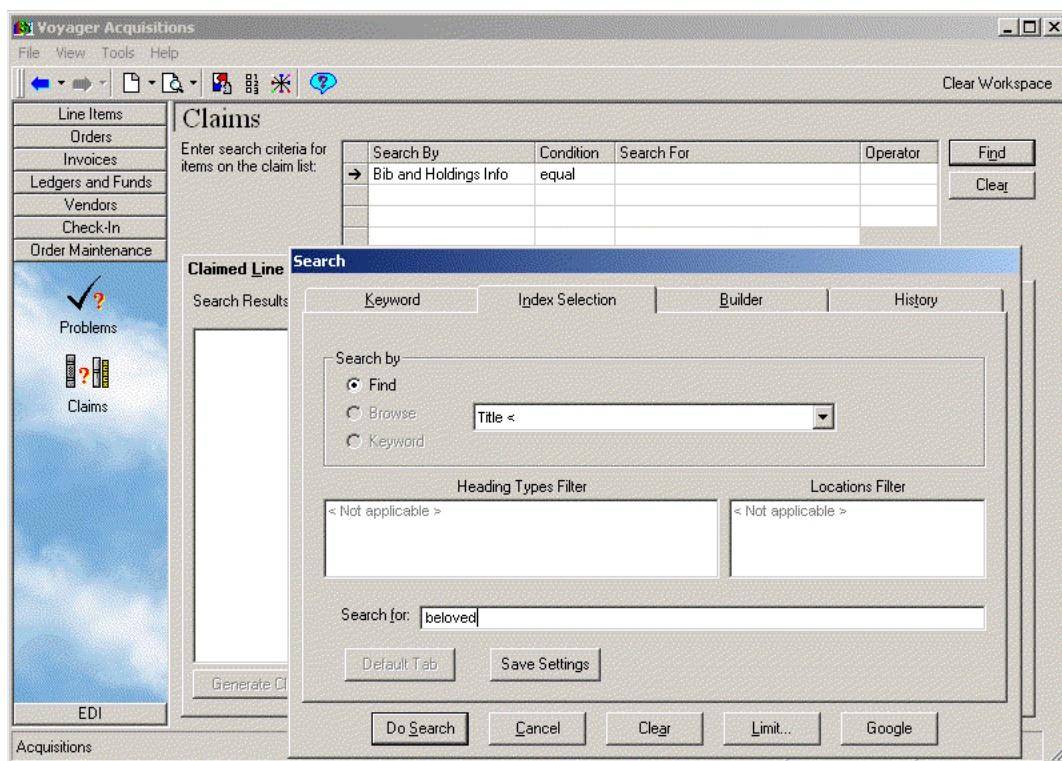


Figure 2-85. Headings search

After the search is conducted, a **Titles Index** dialog box lists the results ([Figure 2-86](#)).

**Titles Index**

Font: Arial

Title <	Author	Date	Title Brief
Beloved.		1989	Dance Theatre of Harlem
Beloved : a novel /	Morrison, Toni.	1987	Beloved : a novel /
"Beloved friend" : the story of Tchaikowsky and Nadejda von Meck /	Bowen, Catherine Drinker, 1897-1973.	1937	"Beloved friend" : the story of Tchaikowsky and Nadejda von Meck /
The beloved returns /	Mann, Thomas, 1875-1955.	1940	Beloved returns /
Beloved scientist : Elihu Thomson, a guiding spirit of the electrical age /	Woodbury, David Oakes, 1896-	1944	Beloved scientist : Elihu Thomson, a guiding spirit of the electrical age /

OK Cancel Search MARC...

5 Records Found Search: Title <=beloved

**Figure 2-86. Titles Index dialog box**

After a title is selected, the system-defined Bibliographic record ID populates the **Search For** field creating the secondary search ([Figure 2-87](#)).

**Claims**

Enter search criteria for items on the claim list:

Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ Bib Record Number	equal	36290	

Find Clear

**Claimed Line Items** Claimed Issues

Search Results:

**Figure 2-87. Search For field populated creating secondary search**

Clicking the **Find** button conducts a search for a claimed item with the title selected ([Figure 2-88](#)).

The screenshot shows a web-based interface for managing claims. At the top, there's a section titled 'Claims' with a prompt 'Enter search criteria for items on the claim list:'. Below this is a search form with columns: 'Search By', 'Condition', 'Search For', and 'Operator'. The first row has 'Bib Record Number' in 'Search By', 'equal' in 'Condition', and '36290' in 'Search For'. To the right of the form are 'Find' and 'Clear' buttons. Below the search form, there are two tabs: 'Claimed Line Items' (which is selected) and 'Claimed Issues'. Under the 'Claimed Line Items' tab, it says 'Search Results: 1' and '100% of records displayed.' Below this is a table with three columns: 'Title', 'Vendor Name', and 'Claim Type'. The table contains one row with the following data: 'Beloved : a novel / by Toni Morrison.' in the Title column, 'CA Co.' in the Vendor Name column, and 'Insufficient copies rece' in the Claim Type column.

Title	Vendor Name	Claim Type
Beloved : a novel / by Toni Morrison.	CA Co.	Insufficient copies rece

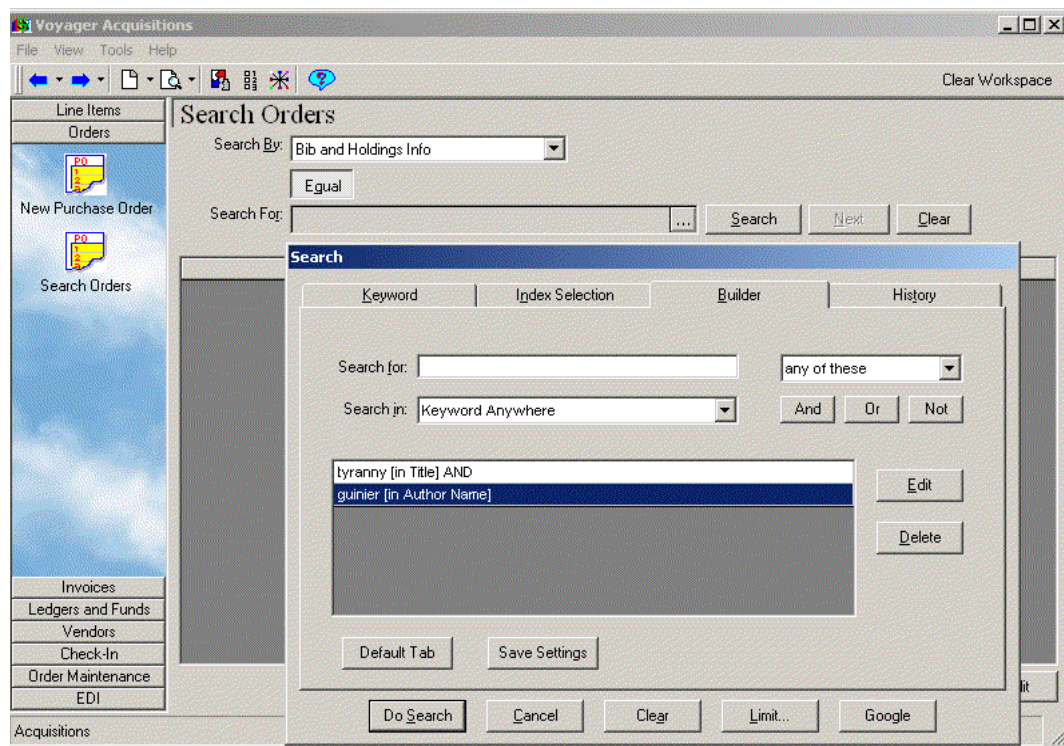
Figure 2-88. Claimed item

## Builder Searching in the Acquisitions Module

All **Builder** tab searches are keyword searches. Therefore, the results are displayed in the **Titles Index** dialog box. Additionally, limits can be applied. See the [Builder search](#) example on page [2-94](#).

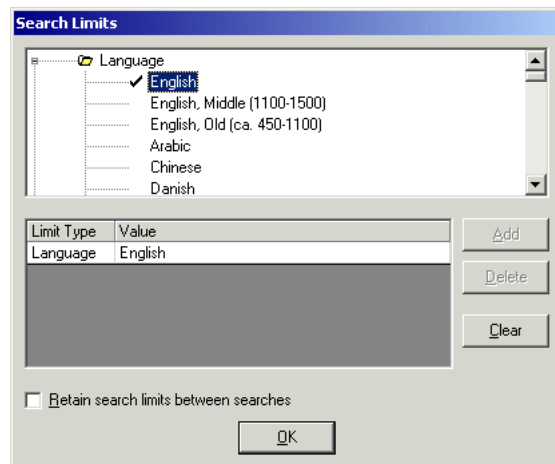
Example: Builder search

Conduct a builder search, with limits, to determine if there is a Purchase Order with the title, *Tyranny of the Majority* ([Figure 2-89](#)).



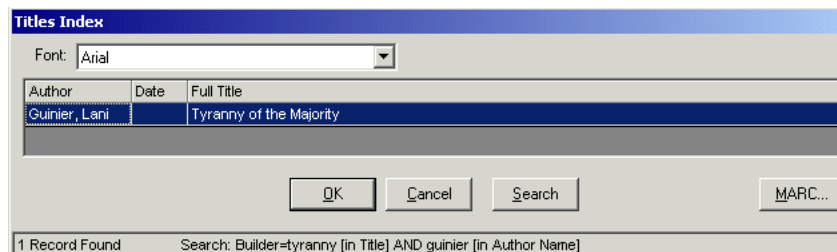
**Figure 2-89. Builder search**

Limit this search by English language ([Figure 2-90](#)).



**Figure 2-90. Limit search for English language only**

After the search is conducted, a **Titles Index** dialog box lists the results ([Figure 2-91](#)).



**Figure 2-91. Titles Index dialog box**

After a title is selected the bibliographic information populates the **Search For** field creating the secondary search for the PO ([Figure 2-92](#)).

Search Orders

Search By: Bib and Holdings Info

Equal

Search For: Tyranny of the Majority

Search Next Clear

**Figure 2-92. Search For field populated creating secondary search**

Clicking the **Search** button finds any POs that contain this bibliographic record ([Figure 2-93](#)).

Search Orders

Search By: Bib and Holdings Info

Equal

Search For: Tyranny of the Majority

Search Next Clear

Purchase Order Number	Vendor Name	Order Status	Order Date	Order Location	Bill to Location	Ship to
ca569	ca	Approved/Sent	2/6/2004	Main	Main	Main

**Figure 2-93. Purchase Order with the selected title found**

Selecting the title and clicking **Edit** opens the PO ([Figure 2-94](#)).

Purchase Order: ca569 - [Approved/Sent] on 2/6/2004

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Quick Line Item On Base Currency

Header Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order: Number: ca569 Type: Approval Site: Main

Vendor: Code: ca Account: Status Date: 2/6/2004 1 Line Items on Order

Locations: Ship To: Main Bill To: Main

Amounts: Line Item Subtotal: \$0.00 Other Charges: \$0.00 Total Order Amount: \$0.00 Currency: Code: USD Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Lin
1 / Approved	Tyranny of the Majority	\$0.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund	

**Figure 2-94. PO displays with Tyranny of the Majority as the line item**

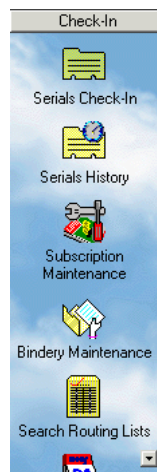
## Searching for Serial Item Information

---

There are a number of ways to search for and display a serial's information.

Operators can access serial information by clicking various buttons in the **Check-In** bar from the **Acquisitions** listbar (see [Figure 2-95](#)).

---



---

**Figure 2-95.** Acquisitions listbar, buttons on the Check-In bar

- The **Serials Check-In** button opens the **Serials Check-In - Search** workspace (see [Figure 2-96](#))

---

**Figure 2-96.** Serials Check-In - Search workspace



- The **Serials History** button opens the **Serials History** search workspace (see [Figure 2-97](#))

**Serials History - Search**

Search For Serials

☒ Check-In Title
 ☐ UPC
 ☐ SICI Stem
 ☐ ISSN
 ☐ Bib ID

Search For:

Select the correct Order record:

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type

**Figure 2-97. Serials History - Search workspace**

- The **Subscription Maintenance** button opens the **Subscription Maintenance** search workspace (see [Figure 2-98](#))

**Subscription Maintenance**

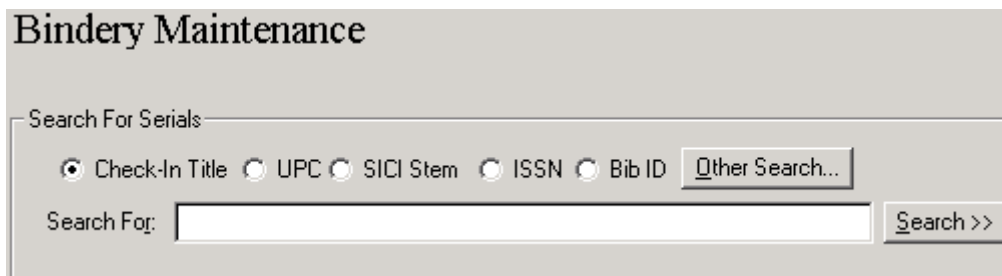
Search For Serials

☒ Check-In Title
 ☐ UPC
 ☐ SICI Stem
 ☐ ISSN
 ☐ Bib ID

Search For:

**Figure 2-98. Subscription Maintenance search workspace**

- The **Bindery Maintenance** button opens the **Bindery Maintenance** search workspace (see [Figure 2-99](#))



---

**Figure 2-99. Bindery Maintenance search workspace**

The procedure for searching in each of these workspaces is found in [Procedure 2-10, Searching for and displaying Serial Information](#).



---

**Procedure 2-10. Searching for and displaying Serial Information**

---

Use the following to search for and display serials information from the **Serials Check-In**, **Serials History**, **Subscription Maintenance**, and **Bindery Maintenance** workspaces.

1. Select the type of search to conduct
  - a. Click the **Check-In Title** radio button if you can identify the serial's check-in title, or part of the check-in title. However, if a component hasn't been created for the serial, a check-in title is not designated either.
  - b. Click the **UPC** radio button if you can identify the Universal Product Code.
  - c. Click the **SICI** radio button if you can identify the Serial Item and Contribution Identifier.
  - d. Click the **ISSN** radio button if you can identify the International Standard Number.
  - e. Click the **Other Search** button to display the **Search** dialog box from which you can conduct other varieties of searches (see [Bibliographic Record Searches](#) on [page 2-10](#).)
2. Enter your information in the **Search For** field. Click the **Search >>** button.

Result: The search workspace expands to include a list of serial records matching the search criteria (see [Figure 2-100](#)).

**Serials History**

Search For Serials

☒ Check-In Title
 ☐ UPC
 ☐ SICI Stem
 ☐ ISSN

Search For:

Select the correct Order record: 5 records, 100% of records displayed.

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Departm	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Room	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsychology	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Room		Continuation
Journal of labour and social research	EBSCO	3	Periodicals Room		Continuation
Journal of running	EB	1	Main		Continuation

**Figure 2-100. Search workspace - expanded**

**NOTE:**

When searching from the **Serials Check-In** workspace, a list of matching records displays in the top portion of the workspace, the bottom portion contains specific information about the record highlighted.

The following information displays for each record in the search results list.

- **Title** column, the title of the serial
  - **Vendor Code** column, the code of the vendor used on the purchase order to which the serial is linked
  - **Components** column, number of components that have been created for the serial
  - **Holdings** column, holdings location for the serial
  - **Call number** column, Call number from MFHD associated with the component
  - **Order type** column, Order type of the purchase order to which the serial is linked
3. To view the purchase order linked to the serial, select the serial from the search results list and click the **View Order** button.
  4. To view a serial's subscription information, select the serial from the search results list and click the **Select** button.

Result: The wanted serial information displays.

**NOTE:**

In the **Serials Check-In** workspace the serial information associated with the first serial title found displays immediately. Select a different title in the search results list and the bottom of the workspace changes to display that title's information.

## Other Searches

---

This section provides the procedures for many types of searches.

- Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order, see [Procedure 2-11, Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order](#)
- Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues, see [Procedure 2-12, Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues](#)
- Searching for Claimed Items, see [Procedure 2-13, Searching for Claimed Items](#)
- Searching for Line Items from an Invoice, see [Procedure 2-14, Searching for Line Items from an Invoice](#)

**NOTE:**

The procedure for searching for an EDI incoming message is shown in [Procedure 15-4, Searching for an Incoming Message](#). The procedure for searching for outgoing messages is shown in [Procedure 15-6, Searching for Outgoing Messages](#).

### Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order

---

You can search for line items directly from a Purchase Order.

The procedure for searching for line items from a PO is shown in [Procedure 2-11, Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order](#), on page [2-102](#).



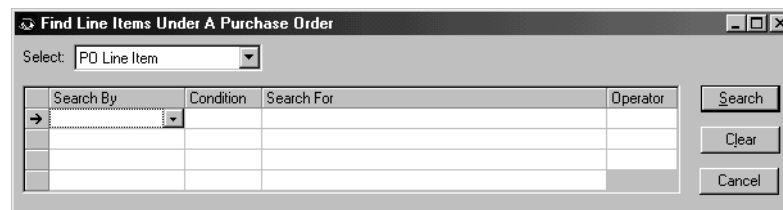
#### Procedure 2-11. Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order

---

Use the following to search for line items directly from a purchase order.

1. Select **Search** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-101](#)).



**Figure 2-101. Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box**

2. Click in the **Search By** field and select a searching option by clicking the down arrow and choosing from the list of searching criteria.

You can search by the following.

- Invoice Number
  - Fund Name
  - Ledger Name
  - Intended Location
  - Line Item Type
  - Line Item Status
  - Invoice Line Item Status
  - Bibliographic Information
  - Bib Record Number
  - Line Item Note
  - Line Item Instructions
3. Click in the **conditions** field and select your searching criteria condition. Depending upon the Search By option that was selected, one or more of the following conditions is listed in the **condition** field for your selection: greater, less, equal, or keyword (keyword allows for a case-insensitive search for information anywhere in a free-text area, such as Line Item Note.)
  4. Click in the **Search For** field and type your search string, click the down arrow, or the ellipsis to open a search for selection dialog box.
  5. From the **Operator** field you can select an operator to continue narrowing your search. If you select an operator, repeat steps 2-5 until you have completed narrowing your searching criteria.

6. Click the **Search** button to execute your search. Click the **Clear** button to clear the searching criteria. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel your the search and exit the **Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order** dialog box.

Result: If any of the line items on the purchase order match your searching criteria, they display highlighted.

---

### Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues from the Problems Workspace

---

You can search for marked line item copies and marked serial issues from the **Problems** workspace.

The procedure for searching for marked line item copies and marked serial issues from the **Problems** workspace is shown in [Procedure 2-12, Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues](#), on page [2-104](#).



---

#### Procedure 2-12. Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues

---

Use the following to search for marked line item copies and marked serial issues from the **Problems** workspace.

1. Click the **Order Maintenance** bar in the **Acquisitions** listbar.

Result: The listbar displays the two Order Maintenance buttons, **Problems** and **Claims**.

2. To open the **Problems** workspace
  - Click the **Problems** button ([Figure 2-102](#)) in the **listbar**.

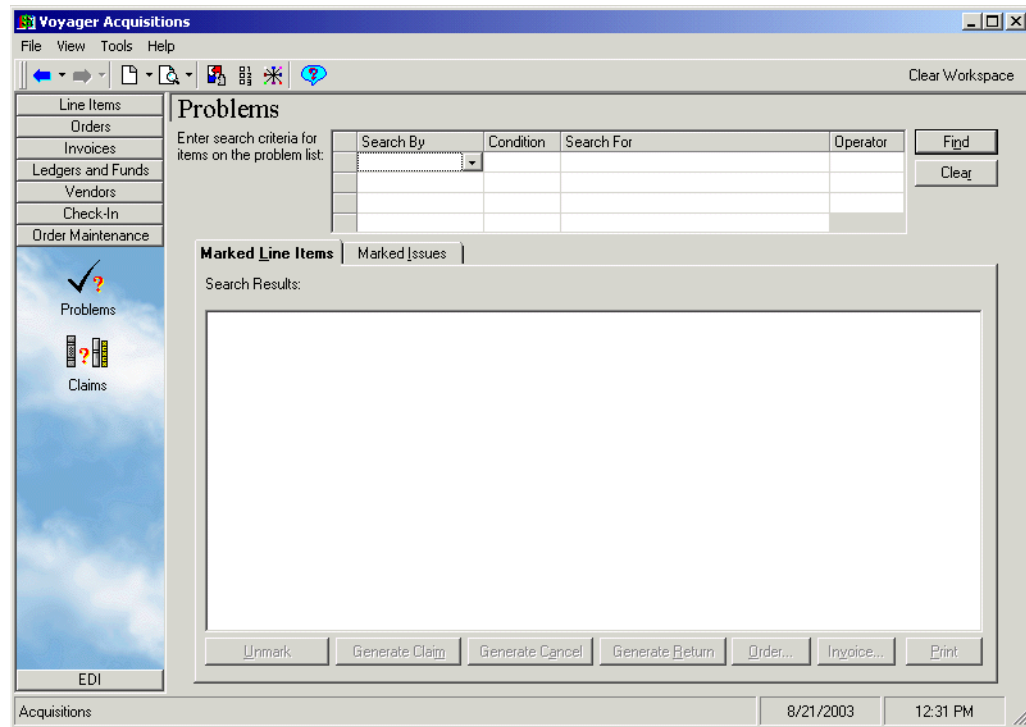


---

**Figure 2-102. Problems button**

- Select **Order Maintenance** from the **View** menu and then select **Problems** from the cascading menu.

Result: The **Problems** workspace opens (see [Figure 2-103](#)).



**Figure 2-103. Problems workspace**

3. Select a Search By option from the drop-down list in the **Search By** field.
  - Mark Reason
  - Operator ID
  - Date Marked
  - Location
  - Bibliographic Info
  - Bib Record Number
  - Vendor Name
  - Vendor Code
  - PO Number

4. Depending on your Search By selection, you can select a search condition from the drop-down list in the **condition** field. For some search by options (such as Location), the equal condition is automatically selected.

**OPTIONAL:**

5. *Perform one of the following tasks, if applicable.*
  - If you selected Mark Reason or Location as your search by option, click the **down arrow** in the **Search For** field and choose from the list of options.
  - If you selected Bibliographic Info as your search by option, click the **ellipsis** to conduct a bibliographic search.
  - If you selected Date Marked as your search by option, click the **down arrow** in the **Search For** field and select a date from the pop-up calendar.
  - If you selected Operator ID, Bib Record Number, Vendor Name, Vendor Code, or PO Number as your search by option, type information directly into the **Search For** field.
6. If you want to continue limiting your search, select a boolean operator from the drop-down list in the **Operator** field: AND, OR, NOT. Continue to limit your search in the next lines.

Click the **Find** button. Or click the **Clear** button if you want to clear the search grid and search results in order to conduct another search.

Result: The search results display on the **Marked Line Items** and **Marked Issues** tabs. The number of results retrieved by the search and the percentage of those results currently displayed appear at the top of the tab. If there are more results to be displayed, click the **Next** button.

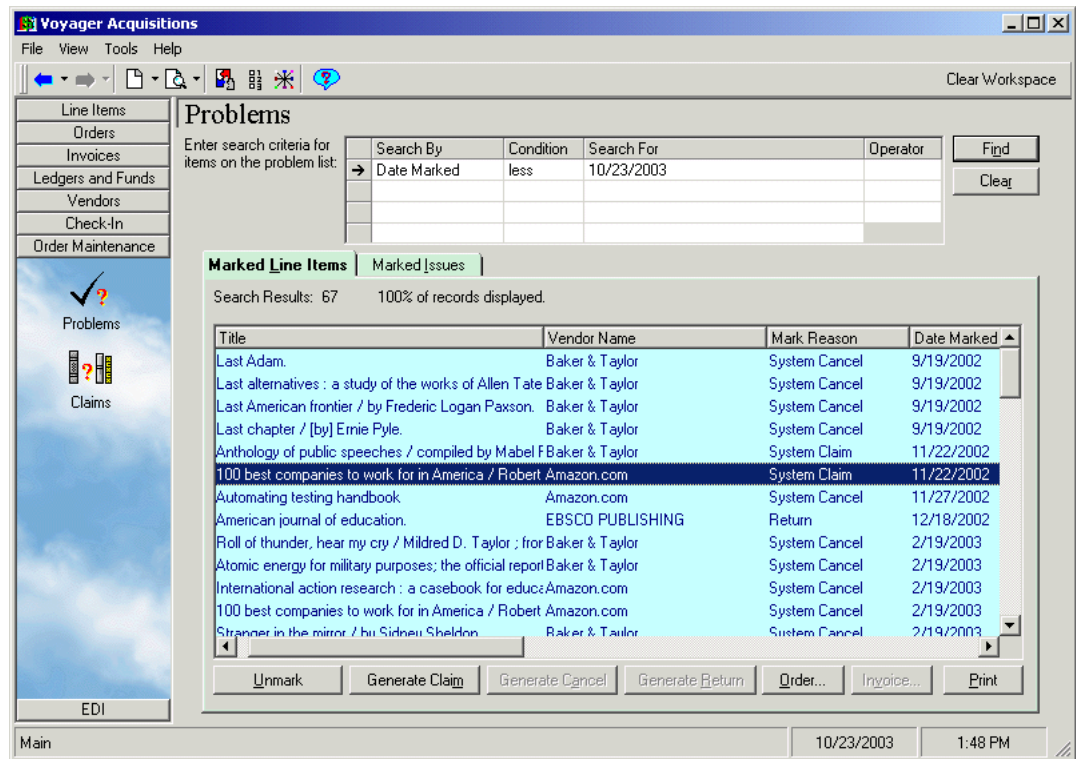


**IMPORTANT:**

*If a component has not been created for a line item with a line item type of Subscription, Membership, Standing Order, Blanket Order, and Multi-Part, the line item is treated as a monograph. This can cause confusion in the Acquisitions **Problems** workspace because, if the line item is marked and sent to the **Problems** workspace by the system due to a surpassed Claim Interval or Cancel After date, the marked line item displays on the **Marked Line Items** tab rather than the **Marked Issues** tab due to its being treated as a monograph. If this is a work flow issue where it is necessary to not create a component from the line item level at the time of the line item's creation, but rather to create the component from Serials Check-In at a later time, you should be sure that the component has been created before the Claim Interval or Cancel After date has been surpassed.*



7. To process an item, select it and click the wanted action button (see [Figure 2-104](#)). See [Problems Workspace](#) on [page 11-16](#).



**Figure 2-104. Problems workspace search results**

## Searching for Claims

You can search for claims from the **Claims** workspace.

The procedure for searching for claims is shown in [Procedure 2-13, Searching for Claimed Items](#), on page [2-108](#).



---

### Procedure 2-13. Searching for Claimed Items

---

Use the following to search for claims from the **Claims** workspace.

1. Click the **Order Maintenance** bar in the **Acquisitions** listbar.

Result: The listbar displays the two Order Maintenance buttons, **Problems** and **Claims**.

2. To open the **Claims** workspace
  - Click the **Claims** button ([Figure 2-105](#)) in the **listbar**.

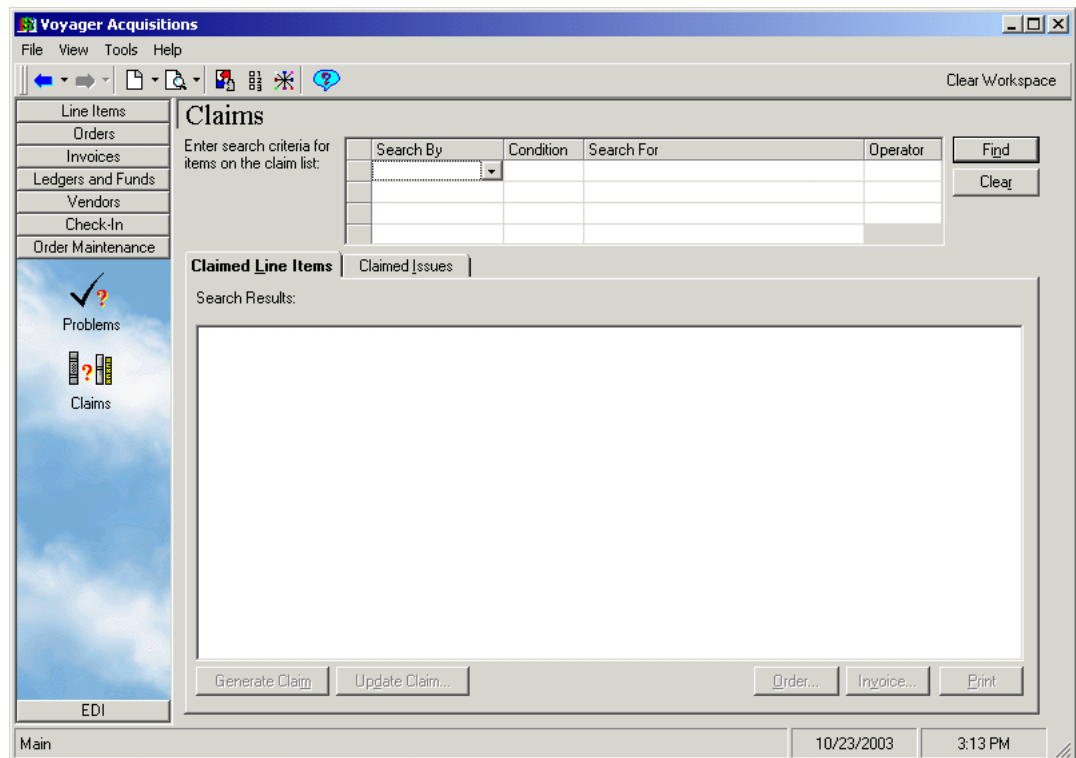


---

**Figure 2-105. Claims Button**

- Select **Order Maintenance** from the **View** menu and then select **Claims** from the cascading menu.

Result: The **Claims** workspace opens (see [Figure 2-106](#)).



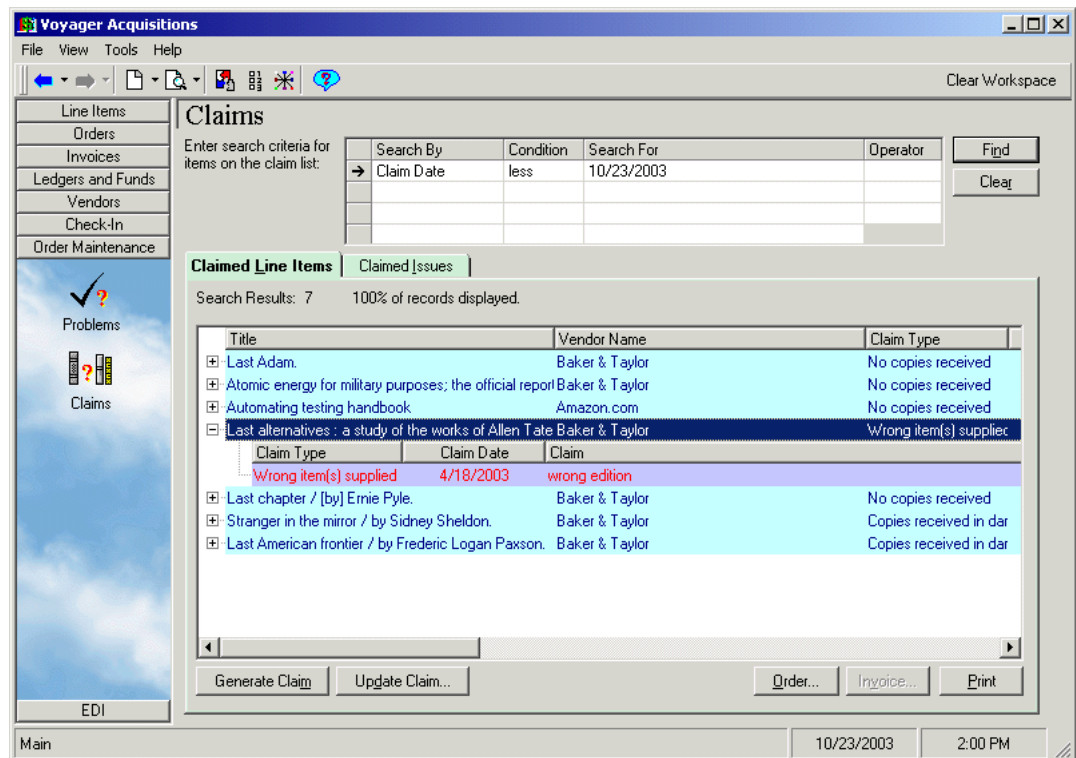
**Figure 2-106. Claims workspace**

3. Select a Search By option from the drop-down list in the **Search By** field.
  - Claim Date
  - Claim Type
  - Bibliographic Info
  - Bib Record Number
  - Vendor Name
  - Vendor Code
  - PO Number
  - Claim Count
4. Depending on your Search By selection, you can select a search condition from the drop-down list in the **condition** field. For some search by options (such as Claim Type), the equal condition is automatically selected.

5. Specify the terms of the search using one of the following methods.
  - If you selected Bibliographic Info as your search by option, click the **ellipsis** to conduct a bibliographic search.
  - If you selected Claim Date or Claim Type as your search by option, click the **down arrow** in the **Search For** field and select a date from the pop-up calendar.
  - If you selected Bib Record Number, Vendor Name, Vendor Code, PO Number, or Claim Count as your search by option, type information directly into the **Search For** field.
6. If you want to continue limiting your search, select a boolean operator from the drop-down list in the **Operator** field: AND, OR, NOT. Continue to limit your search in the next lines.
7. Click the **Find** button. Or click the **Clear** button if you want to clear the search grid and search results in order to conduct another search.

Result: The search results display on the **Claimed Line Items** and **Claimed Issues** tabs. The number of results retrieved by the search and the percentage of those results currently displayed appear at the top of the tab. If there are more results to be displayed, click the **Next** button.

8. To process an item, select it and click the wanted action button (see [Figure 2-107](#)). See [Claims Workspace](#) on [page 11-20](#).



**Figure 2-107. Claims workspace search results**

## Searching for Line Items

You can search for line items directly from an invoice of any status. This feature is useful, for example, in a circumstance where an invoice has many line items. Rather than scrolling through the entire list of line items, you can conduct a search for a particular line item on the invoice.

The procedure for searching for line items from an invoice is shown in [Procedure 2-14, Searching for Line Items from an Invoice](#), on page [2-112](#).



---

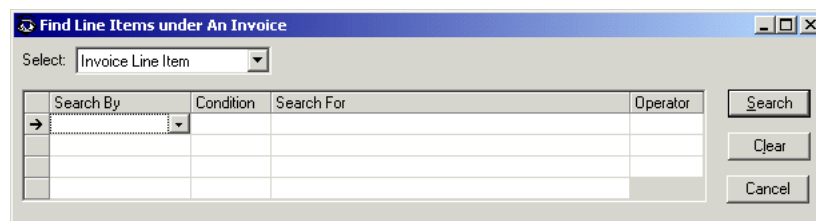
**Procedure 2-14. Searching for Line Items from an Invoice**

---

Use the following to search for line items directly from an invoice.

1. Select **Search** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Find Line Items Under an Invoice** dialog box opens (see [Figure 2-108](#)).



---

**Figure 2-108. Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box**

2. Click in the **Search By** field and select a searching option by clicking the down arrow and choosing from the list of searching criteria.

You can search by the following.

- PO Number
- Fund Name
- Ledger Name
- Intended Location
- Line Item Type
- Invoice Line Item Status
- Bibliographic Information
- Bib Record Number
- Line Item Note

3. Click in the **Condition** field and select your searching criteria condition.

Result: Depending upon the Search By option that was selected, one or more of the following conditions are listed in the **Condition** field for your selection: greater, less, equal, or keyword (keyword allows for a case-insensitive search for information anywhere in a free-text area, such as Line Item Note).

4. Click in the **Search For** field and type your search string or click the ellipsis to open a search for selection dialog box.
5. From the **Operator** field you can select an operator to continue narrowing your search. If you select an operator, repeat steps [2-5](#) until you have completed narrowing your searching criteria.
6. Click the **Search** button to execute your search. Click the **Clear** button to clear the searching criteria. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel your the search and exit the **Find Line Items Under an Invoice** dialog box.

Result: If any of the line items on the invoice match your searching criteria, they display highlighted.

---





---

## Currency Maintenance

# 3

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Base Currency</b>	<b>3-1</b>
• Security for Adding or Editing a Currency	3-2
<b>Currency Maintenance Dialog Box</b>	<b>3-2</b>
• Current Currency	3-3
• Header Information	3-3
• Conversion Rate Tab	3-4
• Properties Tab	3-6
<b>Adding a Currency</b>	<b>3-7</b>
<b>Editing a Currency</b>	<b>3-10</b>
<b>Fix Exchange Rates (Acqjob 5)</b>	<b>3-12</b>



### Introduction

---

After a base currency has been determined, in the System Administration module (see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information), you can create (and edit) the currencies available for purchasing using the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box.

### Purpose of this Chapter

---

This chapter discusses:

- Base Currency
- The **Currency Maintenance** dialog box
- Adding a currency
- Editing a currency
- Fix Exchange Rates, Acquisitions batch job 5

### Base Currency

---

The base currency:

- Determines the currency used in your fund records

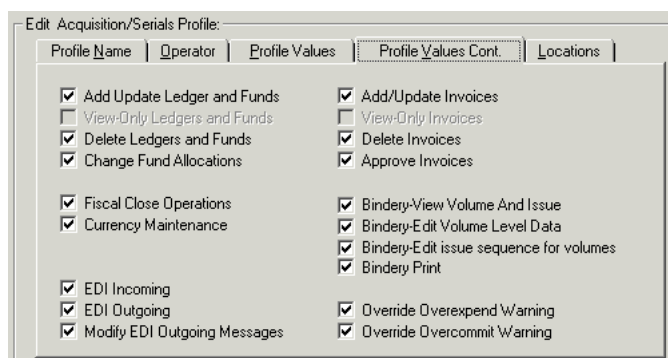
- Is the currency to which all foreign currencies entered in purchase orders and invoices are converted before postings are made to your fund records
- Is the currency reflecting item values in the system
- Is the currency used for patrons' financial obligations and payments

### Security for Adding or Editing a Currency

---

To be authorized to add or edit a currency, the **Currency Maintenance** check box ([Figure 3-1](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

---



---

Figure 3-1. Currency Maintenance check box

### Currency Maintenance Dialog Box

---

The **Currency** button ([Figure 3-2](#)), found on the Ledgers and Funds listbar, opens the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box ([Figure 3-3](#)) where you create and maintain the types of currency that are available for purchasing your library items.

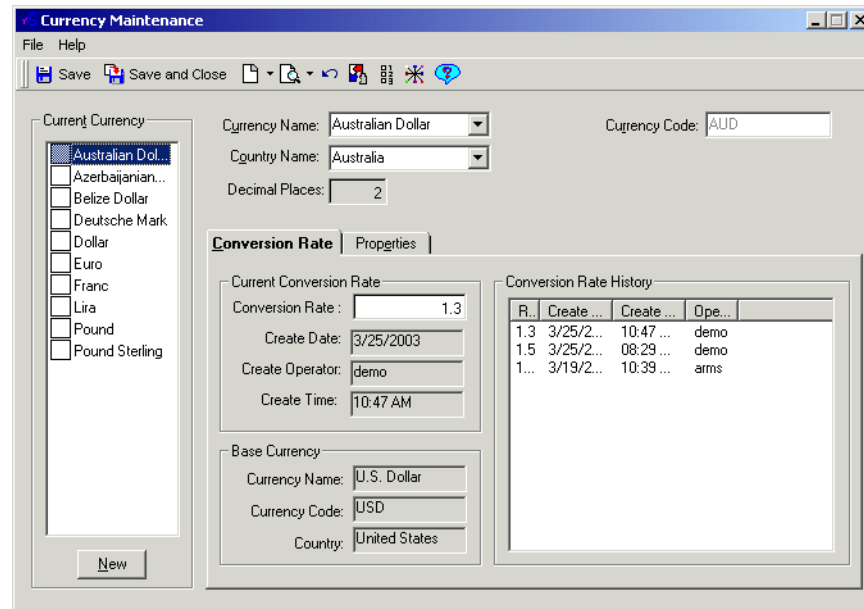
---



---

Figure 3-2. Currency Maintenance button

The **Currency Maintenance** dialog box is organized in four main sections: the **Current Currency** section, the **Header Information** section, the **Conversion Rate** tab and the **Properties** tab.



**Figure 3-3. Currency Maintenance dialog box**

### Current Currency

After currencies have been added, they are listed in the Current Currency box. Information about the highlighted currency displays in the rest of the sections on the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box.


### Header Information

The five fields at the head of the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box comprise the header information of the currency. In other words, these five fields contain the general identification information of the currency. This information is essential when you are searching for a currency to fund your library purchases. [Table 3-1](#) describes the header information.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 3-1. Header Information of the Currency Maintenance dialog box**

Name	Description	Range and Default
Currency Name (R)	The name of the currency. Populated by the system based on the currency selected or select from drop-down list.	No entry.
Currency Code (R)	<p>The code for the currency. Populated by the system based on the currency selected.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The currency code cannot be changed after the currency has been saved. This restriction exists to maintain the viability of any prior purchase orders and invoices created with that code.</p> <p>If your institution uses the EDI activity, use ISO Currency Code Standards. This will allow EDI to read the currency codes on incoming messages from vendors and allow vendors to read the currency codes on your outgoing messages. For information about ISO Currency Code Standards, see <a href="http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency_table.html">http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency_table.html</a>.</p>	No entry.
Country Name (R)	The name of the country associated with the currency.	Enter or select from drop-down list.
Decimal Places (R)	<p>The number of places to the right of the decimal for the currency.</p> <p> <b>IMPORTANT:</b> <i>This value cannot be changed after the currency has been saved.</i></p>	Enter or select using the arrows.  Range: 0-4.

---

**Conversion Rate Tab**

The **Conversion Rate** tab on the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box is organized in three sections.

- Current Conversion Rate information
- Base Currency information

- Conversion Rate History information (see [Figure 3-4](#))

Conversion Rate History			
R..	Create ...	Create ...	Ope...
1.3	3/25/2...	10:47 ...	demo
1.5	3/25/2...	08:29 ...	demo
1...	3/19/2...	10:39 ...	arms

**Figure 3-4. Currency Maintenance dialog box - Conversion Rate tab**

[Table 3-2](#) describes the **Conversion Rate** tab.

**NOTE:**

With the exception of the first field, all of the fields below are populated by the system after you have saved the currency. Only the first field is editable and required.

**Table 3-2. Conversion Rate tab**

Name	Description
<b>Current Conversion Rate information</b>	
Conversion Rate field	The current rate for converting the foreign currency to its equivalent in the base currency. Range = 1 - 999999999. (0 is not a valid entry.)
Create Date	The date on which the current conversion rate was created.
Create Operator	The operator who created the current conversion rate.
Create Time	The time at which the current conversion rate was created.
<b>Base Currency section</b>	

**Table 3-2. Conversion Rate tab**

Name	Description
Currency Name	The name of the base currency used. The base currency is determined in the System Administration module (see the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> .)
Currency Code	The code of the base currency.
Country	The country of the base currency.
<b>Conversion Rate History</b>	
Rate column	The current conversion rate as well as all past conversion rates that have been associated with the currency. Conversion rates are listed from the most recent to the oldest.
Date column	The date on which the conversion rate was created.
Time column	The time at which the conversion rate was created.
Operator column	The operator who created the conversion rate.

### **Properties Tab**

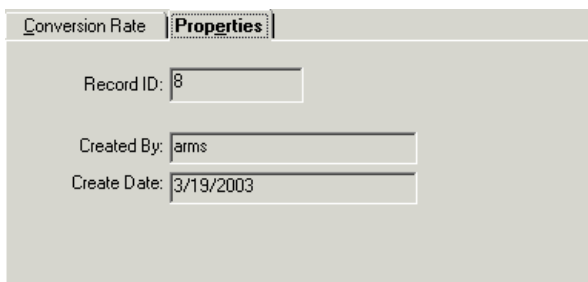
---

The **Properties** tab (accessed by clicking it) displays the following information about the currency (see [Figure 3-5](#)). This information is populated by the system after creating or editing the currency.

- The Record ID of the currency record (the actual ID of the record in the database)
- Who the currency was created by
- The date on which the currency was created



---



---

**Figure 3-5. Currency Maintenance dialog box - Properties tab**

These fields are not editable.

## **Adding a Currency**

---

Currency Maintenance is accessed through the Ledgers and Funds section of the Acquisitions module.

**NOTE:**

If your institution uses the EDI activity, you should use ISO Currency Code Standards. These standards should be used so EDI can read the currency codes on incoming messages from your vendors, and so your vendors can read the currency codes on your outgoing messages. You can acquire information about ISO Currency Code Standards at: [http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency\\_table.html](http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency_table.html).

The procedure for adding a currency is shown in [Procedure 3-1, Adding a Currency](#).



### **Procedure 3-1. Adding a Currency**

---

Use the following to add a currency.

1. Click the **Ledgers and Funds** bar in the **Acquisitions** listbar.

Result: The **Ledgers and Funds** listbar displays.

2. Click the **Currency** button in the listbar.

**OPTIONAL:**

*Skip the previous two steps and instead select **Ledgers and Funds > Currency** from the **View** menu.*

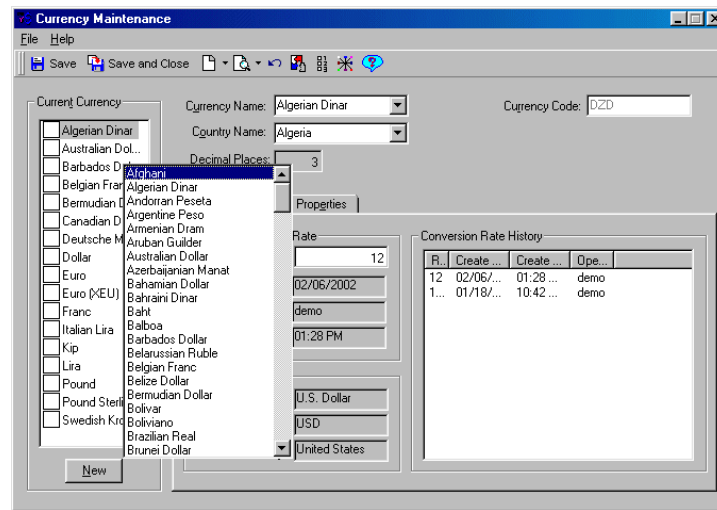
Result: The **Currency Maintenance** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-6](#)).

R...	Create ...	Create ...	Ope...
1.3	3/25/2...	10:47 ...	demo
1.5	3/25/2...	08:29 ...	demo
1...	3/19/2...	10:39 ...	arms

**Figure 3-6. Currency Maintenance dialog box**

3. Click the **New** button.

Result: A list containing all of the available currencies ([Figure 3-7](#)) that Voyager supports (more than 150) opens.



**Figure 3-7. New button selected - available currency list**

4. Double-click the currency that you want to add.

Result: The currency displays in the Current Currency list box with a check mark beside it.

**NOTE:**

You cannot add a currency that is already listed in the Current Currency list box.

5. Type a different name or select a different name from the drop-down list in the **Currency Name** field if you want to change the name for the currency. You can access the **Currency Name** field by pressing **Alt + U** on your keyboard. The currency code automatically displays in the **Currency Code** field.
6. Type a different name or select a different name from the drop-down list beside the **Country Name** field if the name does not automatically display, or if you want to change the name.
7. Specify the appropriate number decimals for the currency in the **Decimal Places** field.
8. Click the **Conversion Rate** tab and enter the current conversion rate in the **Conversion Rate** field.
9. Save the currency.

- To save the currency without closing the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box, click the **Save** button on the toolbar or select **Save** from the **File** menu.
- To save the currency and close the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box, click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar.

Result: A currency is added.

---

## Editing a Currency

---

Information associated with a currency may change frequently such as the conversion rate. Because of this, much of the information associated with a currency can be changed. It should be noted, however, that not all of the information associated with a currency can be altered.

The **Currency Code** field, for example, cannot be changed once the currency has been saved. This restriction exists because changing a currency code would make any purchase orders and invoices created with that currency code completely unusable.

In addition, the **Decimal Places** value cannot be changed after the currency has been saved.

The procedure for editing a currency is shown in [Procedure 3-2, Editing a Currency](#).



### Procedure 3-2. Editing a Currency

---

Use the following to edit a currency.

1. Click the **Ledgers and Funds** bar in the **Acquisitions** listbar.

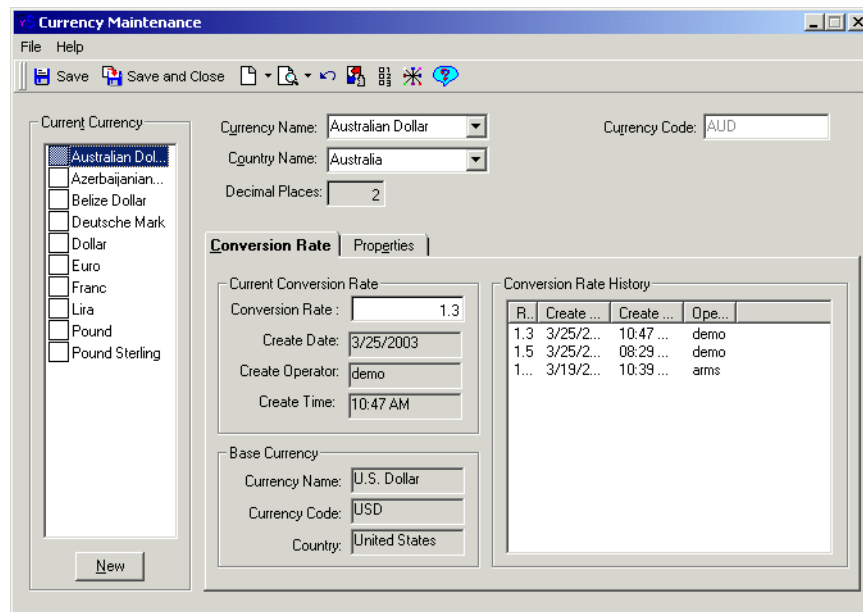
Result: The **Ledgers and Funds** listbar displays.

2. Click the **Currency** button in the listbar.

#### **OPTIONAL:**

*Skip the previous two steps and instead select **Ledgers and Funds > Currency** from the **View** menu.*

Result: The **Currency Maintenance** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-8](#)).



**Figure 3-8. Currency Maintenance dialog box**

3. Select the currency you want to edit from the list of currencies in the Current Currency section.

Result: After you have selected a currency, the information associated with that currency populates the fields and tabs of the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box.

4. Edit the appropriate currency information.
5. To cancel your changes, click the **Undo** button ([Figure 3-9](#)) in the toolbar.



**Figure 3-9. Undo button**

6. Save your changes.
  - To save your changes without closing the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box, click the **Save** button on the toolbar.

- To save your changes and close the **Currency Maintenance** dialog box, click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar.

Result: If saved the currency is edited.

After your changes have been saved, the following update information displays in the Update Information section of the **Properties** tab:

- The name of the operator who updated the currency (**Updated By** field)
- The date on which the currency was updated (**Update Date** field)
- The location from which the currency was updated (**Update Location** field)

Also, if you changed the Conversion Rate for the currency, the following information about the new conversion rate shows in the Conversion Rate History section of the **Conversion Rate** tab:

- The new conversion rate
- The date on which the new conversion rate was created
- The time at which the new conversion rate was created
- The operator who created the new conversion rate

The new conversion rate for the currency is applied to any purchase orders and invoices that use the currency.

---

## **Fix Exchange Rates (Acqjob 5)**

---

Sites using currency other than their base currency can run the Acquisitions batch job, Fix Exchange Rates (Acqjob 5), to update information based on the current conversion rate. This job is discussed in the *Voyager Technical User's Guide*.

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>4-1</b>
<b>Vendor Records</b>	<b>4-2</b>
• Security for Creating and Editing Vendor Records	4-2
<b>Vendor Dialog Box</b>	<b>4-3</b>
• Header Information	4-4
• Addresses/Phones Tab	4-6
E-mail Addresses	4-8
• Accounts Tab	4-9
• Delivery Options Tab	4-12
• Bank Information Tab	4-12
• Notes Tab	4-13
• Performance Tab	4-14
• Properties Tab	4-15
<b>Creating a Vendor Record</b>	<b>4-16</b>
<b>Editing a Vendor Record</b>	<b>4-33</b>
<b>Deleting a Vendor Record</b>	<b>4-34</b>
• Security for Deleting Vendor Records	4-35
<b>EDI Connection Profiles</b>	<b>4-36</b>
• Security for working with EDI	4-36
• Incoming Messages Overview	4-37

• Outgoing Messages Overview	4-37
<b>EDI Connection Profile Workspace</b>	<b>4-38</b>
• EDI qualifier codes	4-42
<b>Creating an EDI Connection Profile</b>	<b>4-42</b>
• Library section	4-43
• Vendor	4-44
• Usage	4-44
<b>Editing an EDI Connection Profile</b>	<b>4-45</b>
<b>Copying an EDI Connection Profile</b>	<b>4-46</b>
<b>Deleting an EDI Connection Profile</b>	<b>4-47</b>
<b>Summary of EDI Profile Logic</b>	<b>4-48</b>



---

**Introduction**

Vendor activities of the Acquisitions module provide the tools to manage all information necessary for dealing with your vendors. This includes:

- Creating new vendor records
- Conducting quick searches for vendor records, and subsequently editing vendor records
- Creating and editing Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) connection profiles
- Searching for EDI Connection Profiles

---

**Purpose of this Chapter**

This chapter discusses:

- Creating, editing, and deleting vendor records
- Creating, editing, and deleting EDI connection profiles

## Vendor Records

---

A vendor record organizes the many pieces of vendor information that are necessary for acquisition interactions to take place between the vendor and your library. At least one vendor record must be created in order for Voyager's acquisition activities to work for your library.

To simplify the setup of your vendor records, default Vendor Type, Cancel After, Claim Interval and Claim Count values can be automatically applied to each new vendor record that you create. These default values can be especially useful if you deal with vendors that are similar in character and therefore like to assign fixed qualities to each vendor. For example, if you most often create vendor records for domestic vendors that provide monograph materials, you can have Domestic Monographs automatically applied as the vendor type for each new vendor record. For more information, see [Vendor Defaults](#) on [page 17-14](#).

## Security for Creating and Editing Vendor Records

---

To be authorized to create and edit vendor records the **Add/Update Vendor** check box ([Figure 4-1](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Vendors** check box is selected on the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view vendor records, but the operator cannot perform any functions on them.

Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile:

Profile Name | Operator | **Profile Values** | Profile Values Cont. | Locations

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Vendor
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Vendors
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Vendors
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Purchase Orders		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Acquisitions	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Serials Control	
	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Problems and Claims Lists	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Line Item Bib Record	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serial Patterns		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record	

Figure 4-1. Profile Values tab

## Vendor Dialog Box

The **Vendor** dialog box is shown in [Figure 4-2](#). This dialog box contains:

- Header Information section
- **Addresses/Phones** tab
- **Accounts** tab
- **Delivery Options** tab
- **Bank Information** tab
- **Notes** tab
- **Performance** tab
- **Properties** tab

**Vendor**

File Vendor Tools Help

Save Save and Close Save and New

Vendor Code:  Vendor Name:

Vendor Type:  Federal Tax ID:

Currency:  Institution ID:

Addresses/Phones Accounts **Delivery Options** Bank Information Notes Performance Properties

Claim Count:  0

Claim Interval (days):  0

Cancel After (days):  0

Ship Via:

**Figure 4-2. Vendor dialog box**

---

### Header Information

The six fields at the head of the **Vendor** dialog box comprise the header information of the vendor record. These six fields contain the general identification information of your vendor.

[Table 4-1](#) describes the fields in the Header Information section of the Vendor dialog box

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces..

**Table 4-1. Description of the fields in the Header Information section**

Name	Description	Range and Default
Vendor Code (R)	<p>The code used to identify the vendor.</p> <p>This value can be used to retrieve the vendor when conducting a search.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Voyager does not enforce uniqueness in vendor codes. Therefore, you do not receive a warning message if you assign a vendor code that is already being used for another vendor.</p>	<p>10 characters</p> <p>No default value</p>
Vendor Name (R)	<p>The vendor's full name.</p> <p>This value can be used to retrieve the vendor when conducting a search.</p>	<p>60 characters</p> <p>No default value</p>
Vendor Type (R)	<p>Vendor Types group individual vendor records by the basic characteristics important to your library.</p> <p>For example, vendor types such as Domestic Monographs, Domestic Serials, Foreign Monographs and Foreign Serials categorize vendors by region and by the type of inventory they provide.</p> <p>This value can be used to retrieve the vendor when conducting a search.</p> <p>Vendor Types are created in the System Administration module. See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> for more information about creating and editing vendor types.</p>	Drop-down
Federal Tax ID	Your institution's Federal Tax ID.	<p>10 characters</p> <p>No default value</p>
Currency	<p>The currency that is used with this vendor.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Currency Maintenance</a> on <a href="#">page 3-1</a> for more information about base currencies.</p>	Drop-down

**Table 4-1. Description of the fields in the Header Information section**

Name	Description	Range and Default
Institution ID	Your institutional identifier.  The institution ID in a vendor record identifies what your institution (typically the billing office) calls the particular vendor. It is the connection between what the library's name/code for a vendor is and the institution's name/code for the vendor.	25 characters  No default value

The majority of additional vendor information located on the seven tabs below the header fields cannot be accessed until the three required header fields have been completed and the record has been saved.

**NOTE:**

The color of required fields are specified on the **Colors and Fonts** tab of your Preferences. See [Colors and Fonts Tab](#) on [page 18-4](#) for more information.

**Addresses/Phones Tab**

---

The **Addresses/Phones** tab on the **Vendor** dialog box allows you to create and maintain up to six addresses as well as an unlimited amount of phone numbers per address for each vendor. However, it should be noted that the system requires at least one vendor address per vendor in order for the vendor to be used on a purchase order.

[Table 4-2](#) describes the fields on the **Addresses/Phones** tab.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 4-2. Descriptions of the fields on the Addresses/Phones tab**

Name	Description	Type, Range/Maximum
<b>Address section</b>		
<b>Address #</b> radio button (R)	Allows specification of which of six addresses you are adding.	Radio buttons  For the first vendor address, <b>Address # 1</b> is selected by default.

Table 4-2. Descriptions of the fields on the Addresses/Phones tab

Name	Description	Type, Range/Maximum
<b>This Address is section (R)</b>	<p>The types of addresses to be associated with this address.</p> <p>The check boxes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Order Address</li> <li>• Payment Address</li> <li>• Return Address</li> <li>• Claim Address</li> <li>• E-mail Address</li> <li>• Other Address</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Selecting <b>E-Mail Address</b> and entering a valid vendor e-mail address on the first line of <b>Address</b> allows users to send e-mail messages from the following locations within Acquisitions. See <a href="#">E-mail Addresses</a> for more information.</p>	<p>Check boxes</p> <p>For <b>Address #1</b>, the first four check boxes, <b>Order Address, Payment Address, Return Address, and Claim Address</b>, are selected by default.</p>
Attention	Vendor contact's name.	30 characters
Title/Dept.	Vendor contact's title and department	40 characters
Address (R)	<p>Vendor's address.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> To allow room for addresses of many sizes, five fields are provided.</p>	50 characters
City	Name of the city in which your vendor is located.	30 characters
State/Province	State or province in which your vendor is located.	7 characters
Zip	Zip code or postal code for the city in which your vendor is located.	10 characters
Country	Country in which your vendor is located.	20 characters
Standard Address Number	Standard Address Number (SAN), assigned by R.R. Bowker, is used to uniquely identify an organization in or served by the publishing industry.	Numeric, 7 digits
<b>Phone section</b>		

**Table 4-2. Descriptions of the fields on the Addresses/Phones tab**

Name	Description	Type, Range/Maximum
Phone Number Type	Type of the phone number: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Primary</li><li>• Mobile</li><li>• Fax</li><li>• Other</li></ul>	Drop-down
Phone Number	Vendor's phone number	25 characters

**E-mail Addresses**

If a valid vendor e-mail address ([Figure 4-3](#)) is added to the vendor record, e-mail messages can be sent from the following locations within Acquisitions.

- **Line Item Order** tab
- **Purchase Order Header** tab
- **Invoice Header** tab
- **Vendor** dialog box
- Subscription Maintenance Vendor text box



The screenshot shows the 'Vendor - DAWSON' dialog box. The 'Addresses/Phones' tab is active. The 'Vendor Code' field contains 'DAWSON' and the 'Vendor Name' field contains 'Dawson Books'. The 'Vendor Type' is 'Domestic Monographs' and the 'Currency' is 'USD'. The 'Address #' field has radio buttons for 1 through 6, with '1' selected. The 'Address' field contains 'vendor@dawson.com'. The 'This Address is:' section has checkboxes for 'Order Address', 'Payment Address', 'Return Address', 'Claim Address', 'E-mail Address' (checked), and 'Other Address'. A 'Mailbox' button (represented by a mailbox icon) is visible in the 'Vendor Code' field. The 'Addresses/Phones' section on the left has icons for 'Addresses' and 'Phones'. The 'Standard Address Number' field is empty.

**Figure 4-3. Saving E-Mail Address Creates Button**

Entering an **E-mail Address** for any of the six available addresses on the **Vendor** dialog box causes a **Mailbox** button to display in the **Vendor Code** field after the vendor information has been saved to the database, closed, and subsequently reopened. See [Figure 4-3](#) for an example. Click the **Mailbox** button to compose and send an e-mail message.

### Accounts Tab

Libraries can have multiple accounts with a single vendor. These accounts may be used for different types of orders and often have discounts associated with them.

It should be noted that a vendor account is required if you want a default purchase order type and a default discount percentage associated with a particular vendor account. When creating a purchase order that is associated with a particular vendor account, the default purchase order type of the account is automatically applied to the purchase order as long as a default purchase order type has not been specified on the **Purchase Order** tab of the **Defaults** workspace.

The fields on the **Accounts** tab are populated by information entered in the **Add Vendor Account** dialog box. This dialog box contains the **Account Info** tab and **Note** tab. [Table 4-3](#) describes the fields on the tabs of the **Add Vendor Account** dialog box.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 4-3. Description of the Add Vendor Account dialog box**

Name	Description	Type, Range/Maximum
<b>Account Info</b> tab		
Account Number (R)	The vendor-assigned account number for your institution.	25 characters
Account Name (R)	Name of the account.	25 characters

**Table 4-3. Description of the Add Vendor Account dialog box**

Name	Description	Type, Range/Maximum
Default PO Type (R)	<p>The following six system-defined purchase order types are always available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval</li> <li>• Firm Order</li> <li>• Gift</li> <li>• Exchange</li> <li>• Depository</li> <li>• Continuation</li> </ul> <p>In addition, your institution may have defined one or more purchase order types.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When a purchase order is marked as Continuation, the line item type defaults to Subscription, all other PO Types default to the Single part line item type.</p> <p>See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> for more information about user-defined purchase order types.</p>	Drop-down
Discount (%)	Discount percentage that is applied to a line item ordered against this account.	0 to 99 The default is 0.
Account Status (R)	<p>The status of the account.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open</li> <li>• Closed</li> <li>• Frozen</li> </ul>	Drop-down
Deposit	<p>If it is appropriate to make deposits into this account, the <b>Deposit</b> check box should be checked.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This field is informational only; it does not affect any functionality.</p>	Check box
Select Locations for Account section (R)	Locations associated with this account.	<p>List of locations provided by the system.</p> <p>May select more than one.</p>
<b>Note tab</b>		

**Table 4-3. Description of the Add Vendor Account dialog box**

Name	Description	Type, Range/Maximum
Free-text box	Additional information associated with this account.	1900 characters

### **Delivery Options Tab**

---

The fields on the **Delivery Options** tab of the **Vendor** dialog box specify shipping and claiming information that your institution deems appropriate for the particular vendor. The Claim After (days), Claim Interval (days) and Ship Via information are applied by default to any new purchase order associated with the vendor.

However, if these values are also specified on the **Purchase Order** tab of your Session Defaults, the values on the **Purchase Order** tab take precedence and are applied to any new purchase order, regardless of vendor.

**NOTE:**

None of the below fields is required. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 4-4. Description of the Delivery Options tab**

Name	Description	Range and Default
Claim Count	The maximum number of claims to be sent to the vendor for an unreceived line item.	0 to 999,999,999 The default is 0.
Claim Interval (days)	The maximum number of days that should elapse between sending claims to the vendor for an unreceived line item.	0 to 999,999,999 The default is 0.
Claim After (days)	The maximum number of days exceeded before an unreceived line item is canceled.	0 to 999,999,999 The default is 0.
Ship Via	The shipping method.	20 characters

### **Bank Information Tab**

---

Your institution may deal with a vendor's bank directly. The **Bank Information** tab on the **Vendor** dialog box contains information about the vendor's bank account as well as information required to communicate with the bank where the account is held.

[Table 4-5](#) describes the **Bank Information** tab.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces. No default values are provided for any of the fields below.

**Table 4-5. Description of the Bank Information tab**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Limit</b>
Bank Account (R)	The vendor's bank account number.  <b>NOTE:</b> Both the Routing Number and Bank Account Number are required to make an electronic payment.	25 characters
Transit/Routing	The bank's routing number.  <b>NOTE:</b> Both the Routing Number and Bank Account Number are required to make an electronic payment.	25 characters
Tax ID field	The bank's tax identification number.	11 characters
Bank Name (R)	The bank's name.	60 characters
Address	The address of the vendor's bank.  <b>NOTE:</b> Five address fields are provided.	50 characters
City	Name of the city in which your vendor's bank is located.	30 characters
State/Province	State or province in which your vendor's bank is located.	7 characters
Zip	Zip code or postal code for the city in which your vendor's bank is located.	10 characters
Country	Country in which your vendor's bank is located.	20 characters
Phone	Vendor's bank phone number.	25 characters
Fax	Vendor's bank fax number.	25 characters

**Notes Tab**

The **Notes** tab on the **Vendor** dialog box contains a 1,900 character free-text field in which you can enter any additional information about your vendor.

## Performance Tab

---

The **Performance** tab ([Figure 4-4](#)) on the **Vendor** dialog box provides a convenient way for your institution to monitor information related to past and current.

Click it or select **Performance** from the **Vendor** menu. When the **Performance** tab opens, it displays the following information about the vendor.

- Date of last order
- Number of outstanding claims
- Number of pending, approved, received partial, received complete, complete, and canceled purchase orders associated with the vendor
- Total number of purchase orders (of all statuses) associated with the vendor
- Total amount spent

**Vendor - DAWSON**

File Vendor Tools Help

Save Save and Close Save and New

Vendor Code: DAWSON Vendor Name: Dawson Books

Vendor Type: Domestic Monographs Federal Tax ID:

Currency: USD Institution ID:

Addresses/Phones Accounts Delivery Options Bank Information Notes **Performance** Properties

Date of Last Order: 6/1/2007

# of Outstanding Claims: 0

Order Status	Number of Orders
Pending	3
Approved	3
Received Partial	0
Received Complete	0
Complete	0
Canceled	0

Total # of Orders: 6

Total Amount Spent: \$0.00

Figure 4-4. Performance tab

### Properties Tab

Click the **Properties** tab. (You can also select **Properties** from the **Vendor** menu.) The **Properties** tab ([Figure 4-5](#)) displays the following information.

- Record ID of the vendor record (the actual ID of the record in the database)
- Who the record was created by
- When the record was created
- Who last updated the record
- When the record was last updated

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Vendor - DAWSON". It has a menu bar with "File", "Vendor", "Tools", and "Help". Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for "Save", "Save and Close", "Save and New", and several other functions. The main area is divided into two sections. The top section contains fields for "Vendor Code" (DAWSON), "Vendor Name" (Dawson Books), "Vendor Type" (Domestic Monographs), "Currency" (USD), "Federal Tax ID", and "Institution ID". The bottom section is a tabbed interface with tabs for "Addresses/Phones", "Accounts", "Delivery Options", "Bank Information", "Notes", "Performance", and "Properties". The "Properties" tab is selected and shows a "Record ID" of 2849. Below this are two sections: "Creation Information" with fields for "Created By" (demo) and "Create Date" (5/6/2003), and "Update Information" with fields for "Updated By" (demo) and "Update Date" (6/1/2007).

Vendor Code:	DAWSON	Vendor Name:	Dawson Books
Vendor Type:	Domestic Monographs	Federal Tax ID:	
Currency:	USD	Institution ID:	

Addresses/Phones | Accounts | Delivery Options | Bank Information | Notes | Performance | **Properties**

Record ID: 2849

Creation Information

Created By: demo

Create Date: 5/6/2003

Update Information

Updated By: demo

Update Date: 6/1/2007

**Figure 4-5. Properties tab**

These fields are not editable.

---

## Creating a Vendor Record

The procedures for creating new vendor records are shown in the following:

- [Procedure 4-1, Accessing the Vendor dialog box](#)
- [Procedure 4-2, Adding Header Information to the Vendor record](#)
- [Procedure 4-3, Adding an Address and Phone Number to a Vendor record](#)
- [Procedure 4-4, Adding a Vendor Account](#)
- [Procedure 4-7, Adding Shipping and Claiming Information to a Vendor record](#)



- [Procedure 4-8, Adding Bank Information to a Vendor record](#)
- [Procedure 4-9, Adding a Note to a Vendor record](#)



#### Procedure 4-1. Accessing the Vendor dialog box

Use the following to access the **Vendor** dialog box.

1. Click the **Vendors** bar in the listbar.

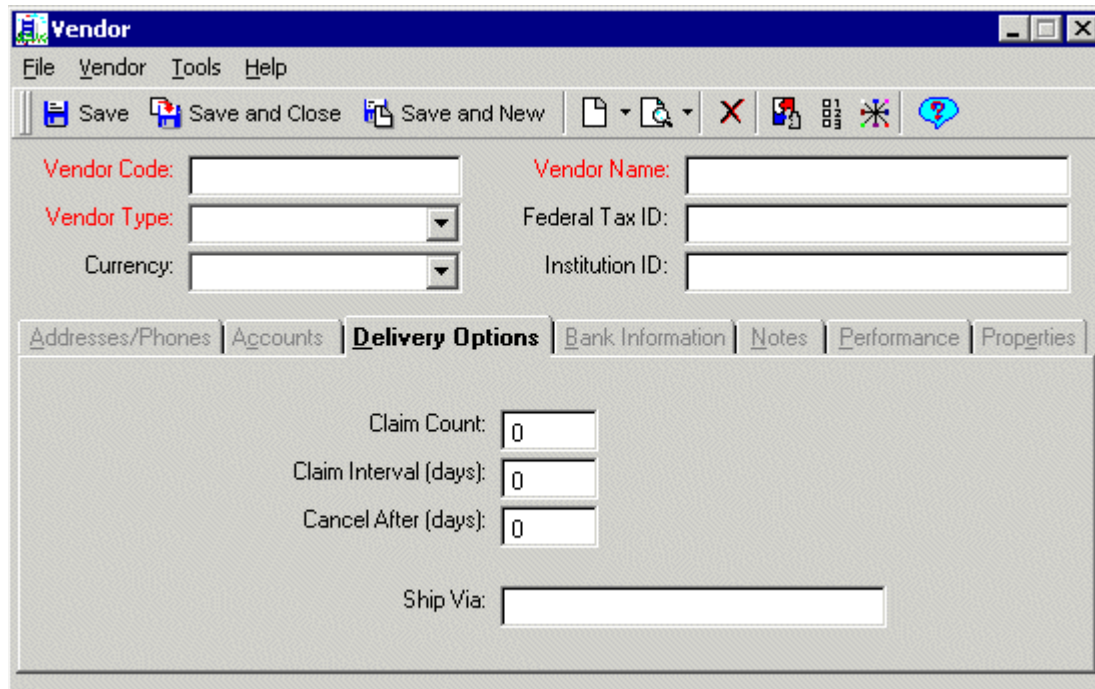
Result: The **Vendor** buttons display.

2. Use one of the following to create a new vendor.
  - Click the **New Vendor** button in the listbar.
  - From the **View** menu, select **Vendors > New Vendor**.
  - Click the down arrow beside the **New Item** button on the toolbar and then select **Vendor...** from the list (see [Figure 4-6](#)).



**Figure 4-6.** New Item menu on the toolbar

Result: The **Vendor** dialog box opens (see [Figure 4-7](#)).



**Figure 4-7. Vendor dialog box**

Once the **Vendor** dialog box is accessed users can create the Vendor record.



---

**Procedure 4-2. Adding Header Information to the Vendor record**

---

Use the following to add header information.

1. Enter the code to identify the vendor in the **Vendor Code** field.
2. Enter the vendor's full name in the **Vendor Name** field.
3. Select a vendor type from the alphabetized drop-down list in the **Vendor Type** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Enter your institution's Federal Tax ID in the **Federal Tax ID** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

5. *Select a currency from the drop-down list in the **Currency** field.*

**OPTIONAL:**

6. *Enter your institutional identifier in the **Institution ID** field.*
7. Save the record by clicking one of the buttons on the Vendor dialog box toolbar (**Save**, **Save and Close**, **Save and New**) or by selecting an option from the **File** menu.

Result: The record is saved and the seven tabs on the dialog box become active.

---



---

**Procedure 4-3. Adding an Address and Phone Number to a Vendor record**

---

Use the following to add Address and Phone Number information.

1. From the **Vendor** dialog box, click the **Addresses/Phones** tab. You can also select **Addresses/Phones** from the **Vendor** menu.

Result: The **Addresses/Phones** tab opens (see [Figure 4-8](#)). Initially, the listbar contains only the **Addresses** button. After you have entered and saved one address for your vendor, the **Phones** button is added.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Vendor - DAWSON". The menu bar includes "File", "Vendor", "Tools", and "Help". The toolbar contains icons for "Save", "Save and Close", "Save and New", a search icon, a close icon, a print icon, a refresh icon, and a help icon. The main form area has several input fields: "Vendor Code" (DAWSON), "Vendor Name" (Dawson Books), "Vendor Type" (Domestic Monographs), "Federal Tax ID", "Currency" (USD), and "Institution ID". Below these are tabs for "Addresses/Phones", "Accounts", "Delivery Options", "Bank Information", "Notes", "Performance", and "Properties". The "Addresses/Phones" tab is active, showing a list of six address radio buttons (1-6), with radio button 1 selected. To the left of the address fields is a sidebar with an "Addresses" icon. The address fields include "Attention:", "Title/Dept:", "Address:" (with five stacked text boxes, the first containing "vendor@dawson.com"), "City:", "State/Province:", "Zip:", "Country:", and "Standard Address Number:". To the right of the address fields is a section titled "This Address is:" with checkboxes for "Order Address", "Payment Address", "Return Address", "Claim Address", "E-mail Address", and "Other Address". At the bottom right of the address section are buttons for "New", "Save", "Clear", "Delete", and "Cancel".

Figure 4-8. Addresses/Phones tab - Address information

2. Select an **Address #** radio button to specify which of six addresses you are adding.
3. Select one or more check boxes to identify the address type in the **This Address is** section.

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Enter your vendor contact's name in the **Attention** field and/or title and department in the **Title/Dept.** field.
5. Enter your vendor's address in the **Address** fields.

To allow room for addresses of many sizes, five address fields have been provided. Only the first address field is required.

**OPTIONAL:**

6. *Enter the name of the city in which your vendor is located in the **City** field, enter state or province in the **State/Province** field, zip code in the **Zip** field, country in the **Country** field, and/or the standard address number in the **Standard Address Number** field.*
7. Click the **Save** button in order to add another address or in order to add a phone number.
  - To clear all information, click the **Clear** button.
  - To delete the address, click the **Delete** button. If a confirmation message displays (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for related preferences), click the **Yes** button to complete the deletion, the **No** button to cancel the deletion.
  - To cancel any unsaved edits you have made, click the **Cancel** button. (For example, if you have clicked the **Clear** button to clear all information, but you have not yet saved this edit and want to cancel it, click the **Cancel** button.)
8. To add subsequent addresses for your vendor, click the **New** button and repeat steps 2-7.
9. Once you have created and saved an address for your vendor, the **Phones** button shows in the **Addresses/Phones** listbar. Click this button.

Result: The **Addresses/Phones** tab displays a phone number section (see [Figure 4-9](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Vendor - DAWSON' window. At the top is a menu bar with 'File', 'Vendor', 'Tools', and 'Help'. Below it is a toolbar with icons for 'Save', 'Save and Close', 'Save and New', a search icon, a close icon, a print icon, a refresh icon, and a help icon. The main form area contains fields for 'Vendor Code' (DAWSON), 'Vendor Name' (Dawson Books), 'Vendor Type' (Domestic Monographs), 'Currency' (USD), 'Federal Tax ID', and 'Institution ID'. Below these fields are several tabs: 'Addresses/Phones' (selected), 'Accounts', 'Delivery Options', 'Bank Information', 'Notes', 'Performance', and 'Properties'. The 'Addresses/Phones' tab is active, showing a left sidebar with 'Addresses' and 'Phones' icons. The main area of this tab has a table with columns 'Phone Type' and 'Phone Number'. Above the table are radio buttons for 'Address #' (1 through 6). To the right of the table are buttons for 'New...', 'Edit...', and 'Delete'. Below the table is a section titled 'Add phone number:' containing a 'Phone Number Type' dropdown (set to 'Primary') and a 'Phone Number' text field. At the bottom of this section are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 4-9. Addresses/Phones tab - Phone activities

10. Select an **Address #** radio button to specify the address for the phone number you are adding.
11. Select Primary, Mobile or Fax from the drop-down list in the **Phone Number Type** field.
12. Enter your vendor's phone number in the **Phone Number** field.
13. Click the **Save** button to save the phone number information. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel the addition of the phone number information.

Result: If saved, the information is listed in the phone number list box.

14. To add a subsequent phone number for an address, click the **New** button and repeat steps 9-13.
  15. To edit any saved phone number, select the phone number from the list and click the **Edit** button. To delete any saved phone number, select the phone number from the list and click the **Delete** button.
- 



---

**Procedure 4-4. Adding a Vendor Account**

---

Use the following to add a vendor account.

1. From the **Vendor** dialog box, click the **Accounts** tab. You can also select **Accounts** from the **Vendor** menu.

Result: The **Accounts** tab displays the account information table and related buttons (see [Figure 4-10](#)).

**Vendor - DAWSON**

File Vendor Tools Help

Save Save and Close Save and New

Vendor Code: DAWSON Vendor Name: Dawson Books

Vendor Type: Domestic Monographs Federal Tax ID:

Currency: USD Institution ID:

Addresses/Phones **Accounts** Delivery Options Bank Information Notes Performance Properties

Account Number	Account Name	PO Type	Deposit	Discount %	Status	Notes

New... Edit... Delete...

**Figure 4-10. Accounts tab**

2. Click the **New...** button.

Result: The **Add Vendor Account** dialog box opens with the following two tabs: **Account Info** and **Notes**.



**Figure 4-11. Add Vendor Account dialog box - Account Info tab**

3. On the **Account Info** tab ([Figure 4-11](#)), enter the vendor-assigned account number for your institution in the **Account Number** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Enter the name of the account in the **Account Name** field.
5. Select a default purchase order type from the drop-down list in the **Default PO Type** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

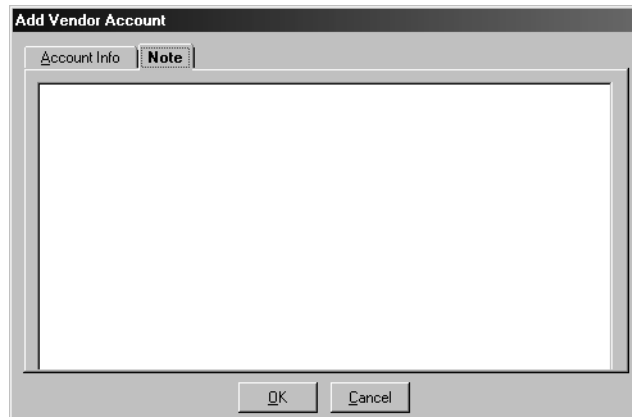
6. Enter the discount percentage that is applied to a line item ordered against this account in the **Discount (%)** field.
7. Select an account status from the drop-down list in the **Account Status** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

8. If it is appropriate to make deposits into this account, click the **Deposit** check box.
9. Select one or more locations from the **Select Locations for Account** list box.

**OPTIONAL:**

10. Click the **Note** tab ([Figure 4-12](#)) and enter the information in the free-text box.



---

**Figure 4-12.** Add Vendor Account dialog box - Note tab

11. Click the **OK** button to save the account and close the **Add Vendor Account** dialog box (see [Figure 4-12](#)). Click the **Cancel** button to close the dialog box without saving.

Result: After the account has been saved, the account information is listed in the table on the **Accounts** tab (see [Figure 4-13](#)).

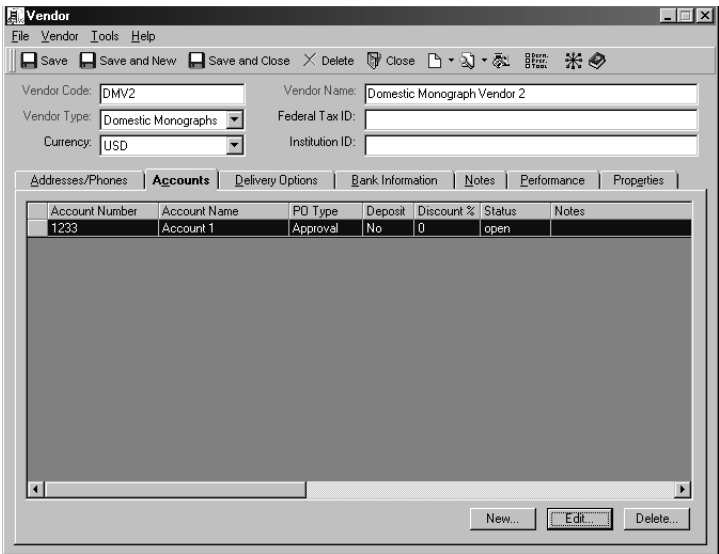


Figure 4-13. Accounts tab - Account information

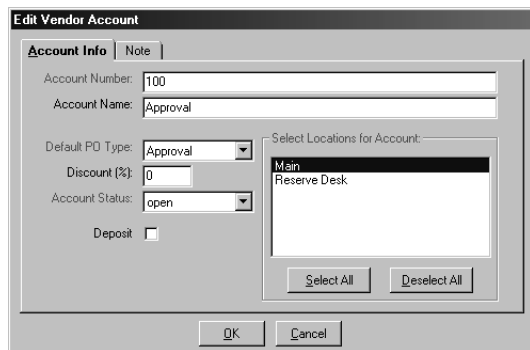


**Procedure 4-5. Editing a Vendor Account**

Use the following to edit a vendor account.

1. From the **Vendor** dialog box, click the vendor account that you would like to edit on the **Accounts** tab of the **Vendor** dialog box.
2. Click the **Edit** button.

Result: The **Edit Vendor Account** dialog box opens (see [Figure 4-14](#)).



**Figure 4-14. Edit Vendor Account dialog box**

3. Edit the fields.
4. Click the **OK** button to save your changes and close the **Edit Vendor Account** dialog box. Click the **Cancel** button to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

Result: If clicked **OK**, the account is edited.



#### **Procedure 4-6. Deleting a vendor account**

---

Use the following to delete a vendor account.

**NOTE:**

You cannot delete a vendor account that is still in use on a purchase order, invoice, or EDI message.

1. From the **Vendor** dialog box, click the vendor account that you would like to delete on the **Accounts** tab of the **Vendor** dialog box.
2. Click the **Delete** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message

- Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the account is deleted.

The procedure for adding shipping and claiming information on the **Delivery Options** tab is shown in [Procedure 4-7, Adding Shipping and Claiming Information to a Vendor record](#).



#### Procedure 4-7. Adding Shipping and Claiming Information to a Vendor record

Use the following to add shipping and claiming information for a vendor.

- From the **Vendor** dialog box, click the **Delivery Options** tab. You can also select **Delivery Options** from the **Vendor** menu.

Result: The **Delivery Options** tab opens (see [Figure 4-15](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Vendor' dialog box with the 'Delivery Options' tab selected. The dialog box has a menu bar (File, Vendor, Tools, Help) and a toolbar with icons for Save, Save and New, Save and Close, Delete, Close, and Print. The main area contains the following fields:

- Vendor Code: DMV2
- Vendor Name: Domestic Monograph Vendor 2
- Vendor Type: Domestic Monographs (dropdown)
- Federal Tax ID: (empty)
- Currency: USD (dropdown)
- Institution ID: (empty)

The 'Delivery Options' tab is active, showing the following fields:

- Claim Count: 5
- Claim Interval (days): 20
- Cancel After (days): 40
- Ship Via: UPS

**Figure 4-15. Delivery Options tab**

- Enter the maximum number of claims to be sent to the vendor for an unreceived line item in the **Claim Count** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

3. Enter the maximum number of days that should elapse between sending claims to the vendor for an unreceived line item in the **Claims Interval (days)** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Enter the maximum number of days exceeded before an unreceived line item is canceled in the **Cancel After (days)** field.
5. Enter the shipping method in the **Ship Via** field.

Result: The **Delivery Options** tab containing shipping and claiming information is completed.

---

The procedure for adding bank information is shown in [Procedure 4-8, Adding Bank Information to a Vendor record](#).



---

**Procedure 4-8. Adding Bank Information to a Vendor record**

---

Use the following to add bank information to a vendor record.

1. From the **Vendor** dialog box, click the **Bank Information** tab. You can also select **Bank Information** from the **Vendor** menu.

Result: The **Bank Information** tab opens (see [Figure 4-16](#)).

The screenshot shows a window titled "Vendor" with a menu bar (File, Vendor, Tools, Help) and a toolbar. The main area is divided into tabs: Addresses/Phones, Accounts, Delivery Options, **Bank Information** (selected), Notes, Performance, and Properties. The Bank Information tab contains the following fields:

- Vendor Code: DMV2
- Vendor Name: Domestic Monograph Vendor 2
- Vendor Type: Domestic Monographs
- Federal Tax ID: (empty)
- Currency: USD
- Institution ID: (empty)
- Bank Account: (empty)
- Transit/Routing: (empty)
- Tax ID: (empty)
- Bank Name: (empty)
- Address: (empty)
- City: (empty)
- State/Province: (empty)
- Zip: (empty)
- Country: (empty)
- Phone: (empty)
- Fax: (empty)

At the bottom right of the form are "Save" and "Delete" buttons.

**Figure 4-16. Bank Information tab**

2. Enter the name of the vendor's bank in the **Bank Name** field.
3. Enter the bank's routing number in the **Transit/Routing** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Enter the bank's tax identification number in the **Tax ID** field.
5. Enter the vendor's bank account number in the **Bank Account** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

6. Enter the address of the vendor's bank in the **Address** fields.

**OPTIONAL:**

7. Enter the name of the city in which your vendor's bank is located in the **City** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

8. Enter the state or province in which your vendor's bank is located in the **State/Province** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

9. Enter zip code of your vendor's bank in the **Zip** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

10. Enter the country in which your vendor's bank is located in the **Country** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

11. Enter the phone number of your vendor's bank in the **Phone** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

12. Enter the fax number of your vendor's bank in the **Fax** field.
13. Click the **Save** button to save the vendor bank information.

Result: The bank information is added.

**OPTIONAL:**

14. To delete bank information, click the **Delete** button to delete the vendor bank information from the fields. Then click yes when the confirmation message asks if you want to continue with the deletion.

---

The procedure for adding notes is shown in [Procedure 4-9, Adding a Note to a Vendor record](#).



---

#### **Procedure 4-9. Adding a Note to a Vendor record**

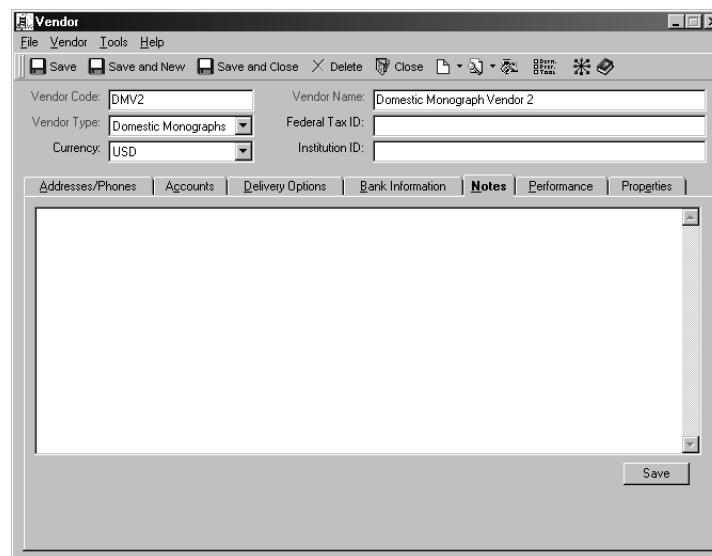
---

Use the following to add a note to the vendor record.

1. Click the **Notes** tab. You can also select **Notes** from the **Vendor** menu.

Result: The **Notes** tab opens (see [Figure 4-17](#)).





**Figure 4-17. Notes tab**

2. After you have entered the additional information in the free-text box, click the **Save** button to save this information.

Result: A note is added to the vendor record.

## Editing a Vendor Record

To edit a vendor record, conduct a search for the vendor record using a quick search (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)) or a standard search (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#).)

The procedure for editing a vendor record is shown in [Procedure 4-10, Editing a Vendor Record](#).



---

**Procedure 4-10. Editing a Vendor Record**

---

Use the following to edit a vendor record.

1. Select the vendor record that you want to edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button. You can also double-click the vendor record that you want to edit.

Result: The vendor record opens.

2. Click the tab containing the vendor information that you want to edit. [Table 4-6](#) contains a list of the page numbers on which to look for extensive explanations of each section of a vendor record.

**Table 4-6. Page References for Vendor Records**

Header Information	<a href="#">4-4</a>
Addresses/Phones tab	<a href="#">4-6</a>
Accounts tab	<a href="#">4-9</a>
Delivery Options tab	<a href="#">4-12</a>
Bank Information tab	<a href="#">4-12</a>
Notes tab	<a href="#">4-13</a>
Performance tab	<a href="#">4-14</a>
Properties tab	<a href="#">4-15</a>

3. After you have edited the record, you must save the record in order for your changes to be saved to the database.

Result: If saved, the record is edited.

---

---

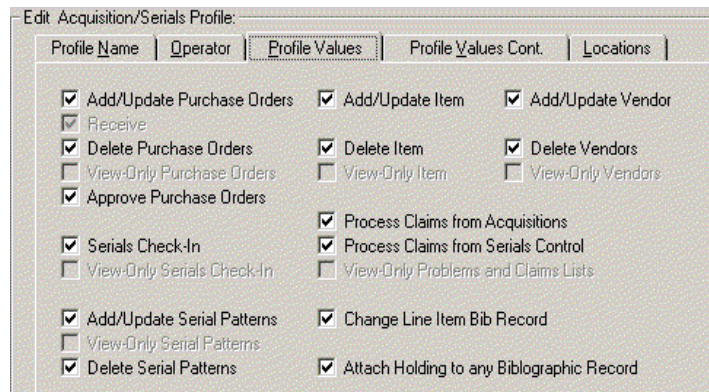
**Deleting a Vendor Record**

---

You cannot delete a vendor if the vendor is used on a purchase order or invoice of any status or if there are EDI messages associated with the vendor.

## Security for Deleting Vendor Records

To be authorized to delete vendor records the **Delete Vendors** check box ([Figure 4-18](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



**Figure 4-18. Profile Values tab**

The procedure for deleting a vendor record is shown in [Procedure 4-11, Deleting a Vendor Record](#).



### Procedure 4-11. Deleting a Vendor Record

Use the following to delete a vendor record.

1. After you have conducted a search for a vendor record select the vendor record that you want to delete from the search results list and click the **Edit** button. You can also double-click the vendor record that you want to edit. The vendor record opens.
2. Click the **Delete** button on the toolbar or select **Delete** from the **File** menu.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the vendor record is deleted.

---

## EDI Connection Profiles

---

Using Voyager Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) processing, your library can electronically exchange messages containing purchase orders, invoices, serial claims, and serial claim responses with participating vendors.

Voyager EDI processing requires EDI connection profiles in order to send messages to and receive messages from vendors. An EDI Connection Profile includes the following information: Library Location, Library Envelope Address, Library Inside Address, Vendor Code, Vendor Envelope Address, Vendor Inside Address, and Usages. The combination of the information contained in a connection profile is used to determine where an incoming EDI message can be accessed and loaded once it is received and where an outgoing EDI message should be sent to. See [Electronic Data Interchange](#) on [page 15-1](#) for more information about the EDI process.

For explanations of Library Envelope Address, Library Inside Address, Vendor Envelope Address and Vendor Inside Address, see [Editing an EDI Connection Profile](#) on [page 4-45](#).

The data included in outgoing EDI purchase order messages has been updated to better support your vendors' handling needs. Those vendors working with libraries to provide shelf-ready materials need to know the final library location (intended location in Voyager) for each copy of an item. This information is automatically included in EDI purchase order messages. In addition, you can include your vendor-supplied customer account number in EDI purchase order messages (see [Creating an EDI Connection Profile](#) on [page 4-42](#).)

## Security for working with EDI

---

To be authorized to create, search, view or edit EDI connection profiles, an operator must have the security to work with incoming or outgoing EDI messages. If either the **EDI Incoming** check box, the **EDI Outgoing** check box, and/or the **Modify EDI Outgoing Messages** check box is selected on the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile ([Figure 4-19](#)), the operator can work with EDI connection profiles. If neither of these check boxes are selected, the **New EDI Connection Profile** and **Search EDI Connection Profiles** buttons do

not display under the **Vendors** tab of the listbar. Also, the corresponding selections do not display under the Vendors option of the View menu. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

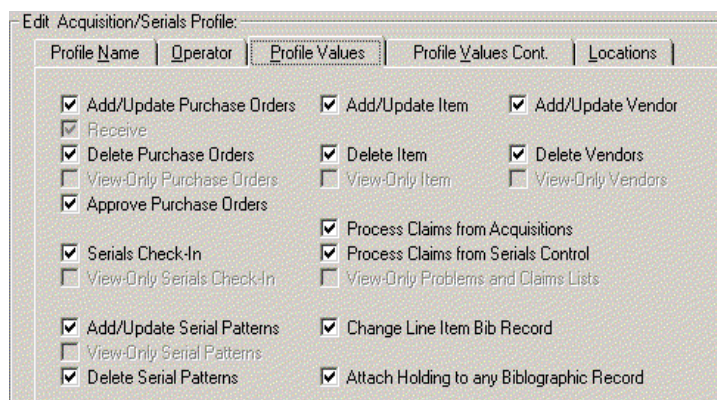


Figure 4-19. Profile Values tab

## Incoming Messages Overview

Before you can load an incoming message file from the server, Voyager attempts to match the sender code and receiver code with a Vendor Envelope Address and Library Envelope Address in any of the existing EDI connection profiles. If a match is found and the matching profile is valid for the particular message type (see [Usage](#) on [page 4-44](#)), Voyager associates the message with the vendor and location given in the matching connection profile.

If the sender and receiver codes do not match any EDI connection profile that is valid for the given message type, the message is assigned to the default location (see [Creating an EDI Connection Profile](#) on [page 4-42](#)) and is not associated with any vendor. To associate this message with a vendor, see [Correcting Vendor and Location Assignments](#) on [page 15-8](#). See [Incoming Tab](#) on [page 15-4](#) for more information about working with incoming EDI messages.

## Outgoing Messages Overview

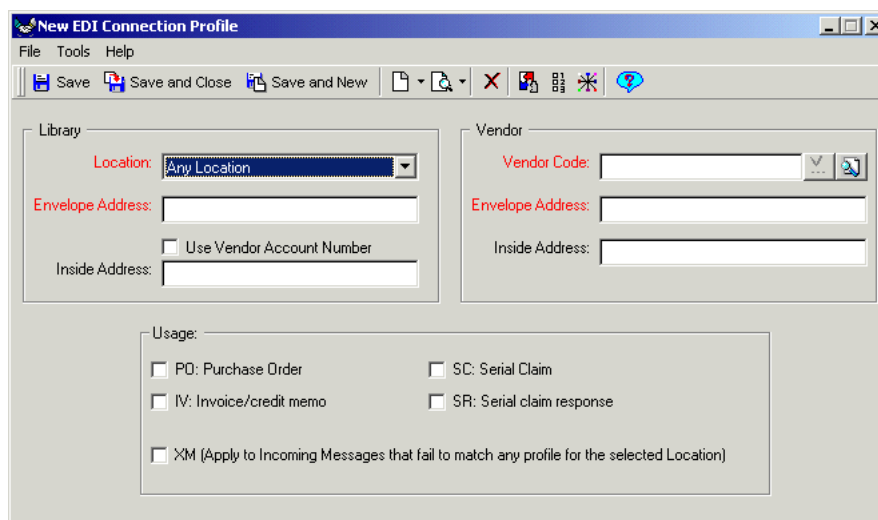
When you approve a purchase order, you are presented with the option to transmit that order via EDI if the location in the **Order Site** field and the vendor in the **Vendor Code** field match the Library Location and Vendor of an existing EDI connection profile. The Library Envelope Address and Vendor Envelope Address are taken from the matched EDI connection profile and used as the sender code and receiver code of the outgoing message.

When you generate a claim from the Claims List, the option to transmit that claim via EDI might be available to you. In order for this option to be available to you, the vendor specified in the claim and the location from which you have generated the claim must match the Vendor and Library Location of an existing EDI connection profile. The Library Envelope Address and Vendor Envelope Address from the matched EDI connection profile are used as the sender code and receiver code of the outgoing message. You can then search for the outgoing message on the **Outgoing** tab of the Process EDI Messages workspace and send the message to a file (see [Outgoing Tab](#) on [page 15-22](#).)

## EDI Connection Profile Workspace

---

The **EDI Connection Profile** workspace ([Figure 4-20](#)) contains the Library, Vendor, and Usage sections.



The screenshot displays the 'New EDI Connection Profile' workspace. It features a menu bar with 'File', 'Tools', and 'Help'. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for 'Save', 'Save and Close', 'Save and New', and other standard functions. The workspace is divided into three main sections: 'Library', 'Vendor', and 'Usage'. The 'Library' section includes a 'Location' dropdown menu set to 'Any Location', an 'Envelope Address' text field, a checkbox for 'Use Vendor Account Number', and an 'Inside Address' text field. The 'Vendor' section includes a 'Vendor Code' dropdown menu, an 'Envelope Address' text field, and an 'Inside Address' text field. The 'Usage' section contains a group box with several checkboxes: 'PD: Purchase Order', 'IV: Invoice/credit memo', 'XM (Apply to Incoming Messages that fail to match any profile for the selected Location)', 'SC: Serial Claim', and 'SR: Serial claim response'.

---

**Figure 4-20.** (New) EDI Connection Profile workspace

[Table 4-7](#) describes the sections of the **EDI Connection Profile** workspace.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 4-7. Description of the EDI Connection Profile workspace**

Name	Description	Range and Default
<b>Library section</b>		
Location (R)	<p>Any EDI incoming messages matching this connection profile are accessible from this location.</p> <p>If you want the connection profile to apply to any location, select <b>Any Location</b> from the drop-down list.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Locations should be associated with connection profiles <b>ONLY</b> if different locations in your institution or consortium have separate EDI relationships with vendors, and therefore need to be protected from accidentally working with each other's messages. If all EDI transmissions at your institution are done from a single location, then you can select Any location for your profiles.</p>	Drop-down
Envelope Address (R)	<p>The library envelope address code.</p> <p>This is the sender code for outgoing messages and the receiver code for incoming messages that match this particular connection profile.</p> <p>The address must include any required EDI qualifier codes set off by one colon (for example, 98876543::31B).</p> <p>See <a href="#">EDI qualifier codes</a> for more information.</p>	<p>55 characters</p> <p>No default value</p>

**Table 4-7. Description of the EDI Connection Profile workspace**

Name	Description	Range and Default
Use Vendor Account number	<p>Some vendors may want your customer account number included in EDI purchase order messages to help them process your orders. You can include the vendor account number in an outgoing EDI purchase order message. When you approve a purchase order, you are presented with the option to transmit the order via EDI.</p> <p>If the <b>Use Vendor Account Number</b> check box is selected on the matching EDI connection profile, the vendor account number specified on the purchase order is included in the EDI purchase order message.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the <b>Use Vendor Account Number</b> check box is selected, the Inside Address (NAD) segment of EDI purchase order messages are used for account numbers. Therefore, the <b>Inside Address</b> field is not available if the <b>Use Vendor Account Number</b> check box is selected.</p>	Check box
Inside Address	<p>The library inside address code. The address must include any required EDI qualifier codes set off by one colon (for example, 9876543::31B.</p> <p>See <a href="#">EDI qualifier codes</a>.</p> <p>This might include additional information that the vendor wants in your outgoing messages.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Inside Address</b> field is not available if the <b>Use Vendor Account Number</b> check box is selected.</p>	<p>55 characters</p> <p>No default value</p>
<b>Vendor section</b>		
Vendor Code (R)	<p>The vendor code of the vendor you want to associate with the EDI connection profile.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You can also click the <b>search</b> button beside the <b>Vendor Code</b> field to conduct a search for a vendor.</p>	<p>Use an already-defined vendor code, see <a href="#">Table 4-2</a>.</p> <p>No default value</p>



**Table 4-7. Description of the EDI Connection Profile workspace**

Name	Description	Range and Default
Envelope Address (R)	<p>The library envelope address code.</p> <p>This is the sender code for outgoing messages and the receiver code for incoming messages that match this particular connection profile.</p> <p>The address must include any required EDI qualifier codes set off by one colon (for example, 98876543::31B).</p> <p>See <a href="#">EDI qualifier codes</a> for more information.</p>	<p>55 characters</p> <p>No default value</p>
Inside Address	<p>The library inside address code. The address must include any required EDI qualifier codes set off by one colon (for example, 9876543::31B).</p> <p>See <a href="#">EDI qualifier codes</a>.</p> <p>This might include additional information that the vendor wants in your outgoing messages.</p>	<p>55 characters</p> <p>No default value</p>
<b>Usage section</b>		
Usage check boxes (R)	<p>Specify the use(s) of the profile by clicking one or more of the check boxes.</p> <p>The usages that can be assigned to a profile are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PO - purchase order</li> <li>• IV - invoice/credit memo</li> <li>• SC - serial claim</li> <li>• SR - serial claim response</li> </ul> <p>Selecting the usage boxes on this profile override and replace any conflicting check boxes on other profiles.</p> <p>Among all profiles with identical vendor and library envelope addresses, only one can have each check box selected for each incoming message type (IV or SR).</p> <p>Among all profiles with identical vendor and location assignments, only one can have each check box selected for each outgoing message type (PO or SC).</p>	Check boxes

**Table 4-7. Description of the EDI Connection Profile workspace**

Name	Description	Range and Default
XM check box	Allows you to designate the Library Location of this profile as the default location.  Incoming messages that fail to match any profile are viewable from the default location.  If you check this box on one profile and then check it on another, the location on the second profile becomes the default location.	Check box

### **EDI qualifier codes**

---

The following are the important EDI qualifier codes. It is essential that your institution enters the exact qualifier code that the vendor expects to use, whatever that happens to be.

EDI Qualifier	Code
Standard Address Number (SAN)	31B
EAN Location code (envelope)	14
EAN Location code (inside)	9
Assigned by seller	91
Assigned by buyer	92
Mutually agreed	ZZ

### **Creating an EDI Connection Profile**

---

The procedure for creating an EDI profile is shown in [Procedure 4-12, Creating an EDI Profile](#).



#### **Procedure 4-12. Creating an EDI Profile**

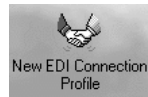
---

Use the following to create an EDI Connection Profile.

1. Click the **Vendors** bar from the Acquisitions listbar.

Result: The listbar displays the Vendor buttons.

2. Use one of the following to create a new EDI connection profile.
  - Click the **New EDI Connection Profile** button ([Figure 4-21](#)) in the listbar.



**Figure 4-21. New EDI Connection Profile Button**

- Select **Vendors** from the **View** menu and then select **New EDI Connection Profile** from the cascading menu.

Result: The **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box opens (see [Figure 4-22](#)).

 A screenshot of a software dialog box titled "New EDI Connection Profile". The dialog has a standard Windows-style title bar with minimize, maximize, and close buttons. Below the title bar is a menu bar with "File", "Tools", and "Help". Under "File", there are icons for "Save", "Save and Close", and "Save and New". The main area of the dialog is divided into several sections. On the left, under the heading "Library", there is a "Location:" label followed by a drop-down menu currently showing "Any Location". Below this are two text input fields: "Envelope Address:" and "Inside Address:". A checkbox labeled "Use Vendor Account Number" is positioned between these two fields. On the right, under the heading "Vendor", there is a "Vendor Code:" label followed by a text input field and a small icon. Below this are two more text input fields: "Envelope Address:" and "Inside Address:". At the bottom of the dialog, there is a section titled "Usage:" containing a group box with several checkboxes: "PO: Purchase Order", "IV: Invoice/credit memo", "XM (Apply to Incoming Messages that fail to match any profile for the selected Location)", "SC: Serial Claim", and "SR: Serial claim response".

**Figure 4-22. New EDI Connection Profile dialog box**

### Library section

3. Select a library location from the drop-down list in the **Location** field.
4. Enter the library envelope address code in the **Envelope Address** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

5. Check the *Use Vendor Account Number* check box to include the account number.

**OPTIONAL:**

6. Enter the library inside address code in the **Inside Address** field.

## Vendor

---

7. Enter the vendor code of the vendor you want to associate with the EDI connection profile in the **Vendor Code** field. You can also click the **search** button ([Figure 4-23](#)) beside the **Vendor Code** field to conduct a search for a vendor.



---

**Figure 4-23. Search Button**

Once the vendor code has been entered, press **Enter** on your keyboard or click the check button beside the field to validate the vendor code. If the vendor code is associated with a vendor record in your database, and is therefore valid, the check button is replaced with an ellipsis button which you can use to open the vendor record (for more information about vendor records, see [Creating a Vendor Record](#) on [page 4-16](#).) If the vendor code is not associated with a vendor record in your database, clicking the check button informs you.

8. Enter the vendor envelope address code in the **Envelope Address** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

9. Enter the vendor inside address code in the **Inside Address** field..

## Usage

---

10. Specify the use(s) of the profile by clicking one or more of the check boxes.

**OPTIONAL:**

11. Select the **XM** check box.
12. Save the profile

- Click the **Save** button on the toolbar to save the new EDI connection profile without closing the **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box. You can also select **Save** from the **File** menu.
- Click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar to save the new EDI connection profile and close the **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box. You can also select **Save and Close** from the **File** menu.
- Click the **Save and New** button on the toolbar to save the new EDI connection profile and create a new profile. You can also select **Save and New** from the **File** menu.
- Or to close the **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box without saving select **Close** from the **File** menu.

Result: If saved, a new EDI Connection Profile is created.

---

## **Editing an EDI Connection Profile**

---

To edit an EDI Connection Profile, first locate the profile using a quick search (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)) or a standard search (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#).)

The procedure for editing an EDI Connection Profile is shown in [Procedure 4-13, Editing a Connection Profile](#).



### **Procedure 4-13. Editing a Connection Profile**

---

Use the following to edit an EDI Connection Profile.

1. After you have conducted a search for an EDI connection profile, select the connection profile that you want to edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button. You can also double-click the connection profile that you want to edit.

Result: The **Edit EDI Connection Profile** dialog box opens (see [Figure 4-24](#)).

**Edit EDI Connection Profile**

File Tools Help

Save Save and Close Save and New

**Library**

Location: Any Location

Envelope Address: ENDEAVOR:ZZ

☐ Use Vendor Account Number

Inside Address:

**Vendor**

Vendor Code: EBSCO

Envelope Address: EBSCO:ZZ

Inside Address:

**Usage:**

☒ PD: Purchase Order ☒ SC: Serial Claim

☒ IV: Invoice/credit memo ☒ SR: Serial claim response

☐ XM (Apply to Incoming Messages that fail to match any profile for the selected Location)

**Figure 4-24. Edit EDI Connection Profile dialog box**

2. Edit any wanted information. See [EDI Connection Profile Workspace](#) for information about the fields in this dialog box.

Result: If altered and saved, the profile is edited.

---

## Copying an EDI Connection Profile

---

Copying connection profiles provides a quick and convenient way to create duplicate connection profiles for multiple locations when multiple locations deal with the same vendor.

The procedure for copying a connection profile is shown in [Procedure 4-14, Copying an EDI Connection Profile](#).



---

**Procedure 4-14. Copying an EDI Connection Profile**

---

Use the following to copy and EDI Connection Profile.

1. After you have conducted a search for an EDI connection profile, select the connection profile that you want to copy from the search results list and click the **Edit** button. You can also double-click the connection profile that you want to edit.

Result: The **Edit EDI Connection Profile** dialog box opens.

2. Select **Copy** from the **File** menu.

Result: The **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box displays all of the same information as the profile that was copied.

3. Make any necessary changes to the new EDI Connection Profile. See [EDI Connection Profile Workspace](#) for explanations of the different parts of the EDI Connection Profile.
4. Save the copy
  - Click the **Save** button on the toolbar to save the new EDI connection profile without closing the **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box. You can also select **Save** from the **File** menu.
  - Click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar to save the new EDI connection profile and close the **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box. You can also select **Save and Close** from the **File** menu.
  - Click the **Save and New** button on the toolbar to save the new EDI connection profile and create a new profile. You can also select **Save and New** from the **File** menu.
  - Or to close the **New EDI Connection Profile** dialog box without saving select **Close** from the **File** menu.

Result: If saved, a new EDI Connection Profile is created from the copy.

---

---

**Deleting an EDI Connection Profile**

---

Operators may delete EDI Connection profiles.

The procedure for deleting a connection profile is shown in [Procedure 4-15, Deleting a Connection Profile](#).



---

#### Procedure 4-15. Deleting a Connection Profile

---

Use the following to delete an EDI Connection Profile.

1. After you have conducted a search for an EDI connection profile, select the connection profile that you want to delete from the search results list and click the **Edit** button. You can also double-click the connection profile that you want to edit.

Result: The **Edit EDI Connection Profile** dialog box opens.

2. Click the **Delete** button on the toolbar or select **Delete** from the **File** menu.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the profile is deleted.

---

### Summary of EDI Profile Logic

---

An EDI profile identifies a relationship between a Voyager component such as purchase order, invoice, claim, or claim response and its corresponding EDI message. It defines how to translate the address fields of the EDI messages for the library envelope address and the vendor envelope address into explicit references into a Voyager vendor record and to a location that is used to process the Voyager component.

The translation is bi-directional. For outgoing messages, the Voyager vendor ID and order location ID are used to select the profile that identifies what to put in the address fields of the message. For incoming messages, the address fields of the message are used to select the profile that identifies which vendor and location IDs are to be used to create the incoming Voyager component.



You may create as many EDI profiles as you want. It is acceptable to create more than one profile for the same vendor and location. You may, for instance, want to send purchase orders to one EDI address and claims for the same vendor to another EDI address.

It is also acceptable to create new profiles to temporarily or permanently replace older ones. When this is done, Voyager needs some way to know which of several profiles (for the same vendor and location, for example) it should use when creating an EDI message.

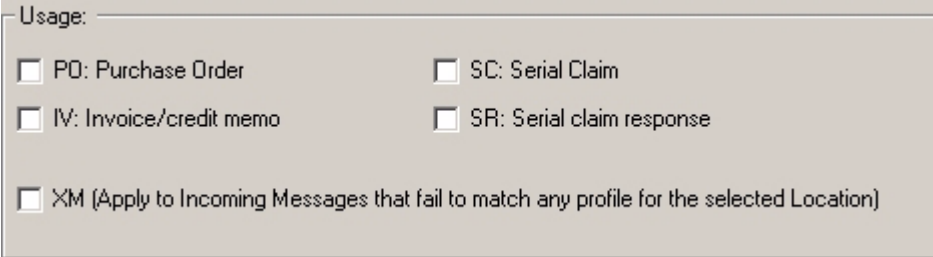
The EDI profile check boxes provide a way of declaring which profiles should be used when the system has a choice.

For outgoing messages such as purchase orders (PO), serial claims (SC), and monograph claims (MC), there can be at most only one profile checked for any given combination of vendor ID and (order) location ID. For incoming messages such as invoices (IV), serial claim responses (SR), and monograph claim responses (MR), there can be at most only one profile checked for any given combination of library envelope address and vendor envelope address. See [Table 4-8](#) for a summary.

**Table 4-8. Summary chart**

Profile Usage Type	Usage Description
PO, SC, MC (outgoing message profiles)	There can be at most only one profile checked for any given combination of vendor ID and order location ID.
IV, SR, MR (incoming message profiles)	There can be at most only one profile checked for any given combination of library envelope address and vendor envelope address
XM (default message profile)	There can be at most only one XM profile checked in the entire database.

The **XM** check box is special. See [Figure 4-25](#). This identifies the default profile to be used when no other matching profile is found. There can be only one profile in the database with the **XM** check box selected.



Usage:

<input type="checkbox"/> PO: Purchase Order	<input type="checkbox"/> SC: Serial Claim
<input type="checkbox"/> IV: Invoice/credit memo	<input type="checkbox"/> SR: Serial claim response
<input type="checkbox"/> XM (Apply to Incoming Messages that fail to match any profile for the selected Location)	

**Figure 4-25. Check box usage**

The EDI profile maintenance dialog box ensures that the check box rules are implemented. If a profile is saved with any of the check boxes selected, Voyager automatically scans the database for other profiles that would conflict with those check boxes, and turns off the conflicting check boxes in the other profiles. As a result if you save a profile with the **XM** check box selected, the profile that previously had it checked is modified to turn off the **XM** check box.

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>5-2</b>
<b>Overview of Ledgers</b>	<b>5-2</b>
<b>Overview of Funds</b>	<b>5-2</b>
<b>Ledgers, Funds, and Locations</b>	<b>5-3</b>
• Rules for ledgers, funds, and locations	5-3
• How to solve the problem of “Disappearing” Ledgers	5-4
<b>Ledger Dialog box</b>	<b>5-9</b>
• Ledgers and Funds Section	5-10
• Ledger - Header Information	5-11
• Ledger - Locations Tab	5-12
• Commitments/ Expenditures Tab	5-14
• Rollover Information Tab	5-17
• Notes Tab	5-18
• Properties Tab	5-18
<b>Creating a New Ledger</b>	<b>5-19</b>
• Security to Create and Edit a Ledger	5-19
• Accessing the New Ledger dialog box	5-20
<b>Editing a Ledger</b>	<b>5-24</b>
<b>Deleting a Ledger</b>	<b>5-25</b>
• Security to Delete a Ledger	5-26

<b>Funds Associated with Ledgers</b>	<b>5-27</b>
• Summary Funds	5-27
• Allocated Funds	5-27
• Reporting Funds	5-28
Begin and End Dates	5-28
• Security to Create and Edit a Fund	5-29
<b>Ledger dialog box - Fund Information</b>	<b>5-29</b>
• Fund - Header Information	5-30
• Summary Tab	5-32
• Override Rules Tab	5-33
• Transactions Tab	5-35
• Security to Change Fund Allocations	5-36
• Fund Transactions dialog box	5-37
Selecting a fund in the Fund Transaction dialog box	5-39
• Notes Tab	5-40
• Properties Tab	5-41
Changing a Fund's Allocation	5-47
Transferring Allocated Funds	5-48
<b>Editing a Fund</b>	<b>5-50</b>
<b>Deleting a Fund</b>	<b>5-51</b>
• Security to Delete a Fund	5-51
<b>Overview of Commitments (Encumbrances) and Expenditures</b>	<b>5-53</b>
<b>Fund Warnings/Blocks</b>	<b>5-54</b>
• Security to Allow Override Warnings	5-56
<b>Fiscal Period Close</b>	<b>5-56</b>

---

### Introduction

Ledger and fund activities allow you to maintain your library's ledgers and funds. Ledgers contain the funds that you use to purchase your line items (the items you order for your library.) It is helpful to think of ledgers as a book and the funds as pages in the book. A ledger has one fiscal year and belongs to one policy group. All of the ledger's funds would inherit the fiscal year and policy group.

Operator access to a location is determined by the locations selected within the Acquisitions/Serials Profile Definitions in the System Administration module (see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.) If any of the locations associated with a ledger are not included in the security profile of the operator, that operator cannot access the ledger or its funds.

Note that when searching and retrieving ledgers, the user must have access to all of the locations that a ledger has assigned to it. However, when specifying a ledger to be used as the source of funds on a purchase order, the user is able to view all ledgers that have the Intended Location (from the **Copies/Funds** tab of the line item) attached, regardless of what the other locations attached to the ledger are and whether the user's profile allows access to them.

## **Purpose of this Chapter**

---

This chapter discusses:

- Overview of ledgers and funds
- The connection between ledgers, funds, and locations
- Creating, editing, and deleting ledgers
- Creating, editing, and deleting funds
- Overview of commitments and expenditures
- Fund warnings and blocks

## **Overview of Ledgers**

---

A ledger contains one or more funds. They are associated with a specific fiscal period, and a specific Acquisitions policy group. Due to the policy group, specific locations are related to a ledger.

Additionally information regarding commitments and expenditures can be associated with a ledger.

- Commitments relate to money that is committed on a pending purchase order.
- Expenditures relate to money that is considered spent, thus that money on an invoice.

Rollover information is populated if the Fiscal Period Close program is run. See [Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\)](#) on [page 16-1](#). Notes regarding the ledger can be added. Also, creation and update information is available.

Lastly ledgers contain funds.

## **Overview of Funds**

---

Funds are associated with the ledger's Acquisitions policy group, fiscal period, and locations. However, a fund may have different begin and end dates than the fiscal period assigned to the ledger. Also, not all of the locations associated with a ledger need be associated with a fund.

There are three categories of funds: summary, allocated, and reporting. Only allocated funds contain money that can be spent. There are also fund types. The system defined fund types are gift, general, endowment, and grant. There can also be user-defined fund types. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

Additionally summary information regarding commitments and expenditures is available and rules can be defined to override the commitments and expenditures limits defined for the ledger.

Lastly, within funds, operators can add, subtract, or transfer monies.

## **Ledgers, Funds, and Locations**

---

Operators have access to ledgers and their associated funds providing they have access to the locations assigned to those ledgers.



### **IMPORTANT:**

*Security profiles govern who has access to ledgers. The operators must have security access for all locations selected in a ledger's list. After saving a ledger if any of the locations associated with a ledger are not included in the operators' security profile, those operators cannot access (or see) any ledger or any ledger's funds to edit or change ledger functions. Operators do not have to be limited to what is in the ledger.*

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

## **Rules for ledgers, funds, and locations**

---

A ledger is assigned to one and only one acquisitions policy group, selected when the ledger is created.

The ledger can be assigned to one or many locations from that acquisitions policy group. This feature allows you to have fund structures that pertain to only a subset of the locations in the acquisitions policy group. That is, when you select the policy group for a new ledger, all locations in that policy group display, select only the ones that apply to the ledger.

Ledgers and funds may not cross policy groups. Locations for a ledger must be included in the same policy group.

Ledger locations should include the following.

1. All storage locations (holding, intended) for which materials can be ordered
2. All happening locations where staff does work
  - All locations that order, claim, and pay for items
  - Locations that receive items
  - Serials check-in locations

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for additional information.

### **How to solve the problem of “Disappearing” Ledgers**

If the operator does not see the ledger(s) there are three areas you can check to see if all locations and values are selected for the ledger.

- Acquisitions Policy Group
- Acquisitions Security Profile
- Associated with a Ledger

The procedure for checking if a ledger is associated with an Acquisitions Policy Group is shown in [Procedure 5-1, Checking that a Location is in the Acquisitions Policy Group](#).

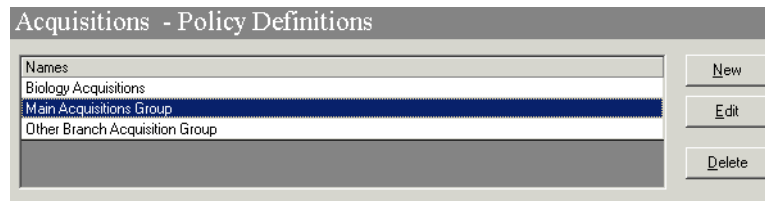


#### **Procedure 5-1. Checking that a Location is in the Acquisitions Policy Group**

Use the following to check Acquisitions policy definitions to confirm location selection for ledgers.

1. Open the System Administration module.
2. Click the **Acquisitions** bar.
3. Click the **Policy Definitions** button. Highlight the Acquisitions policy group that contains the ledger you are checking (see [Figure 5-1](#)).

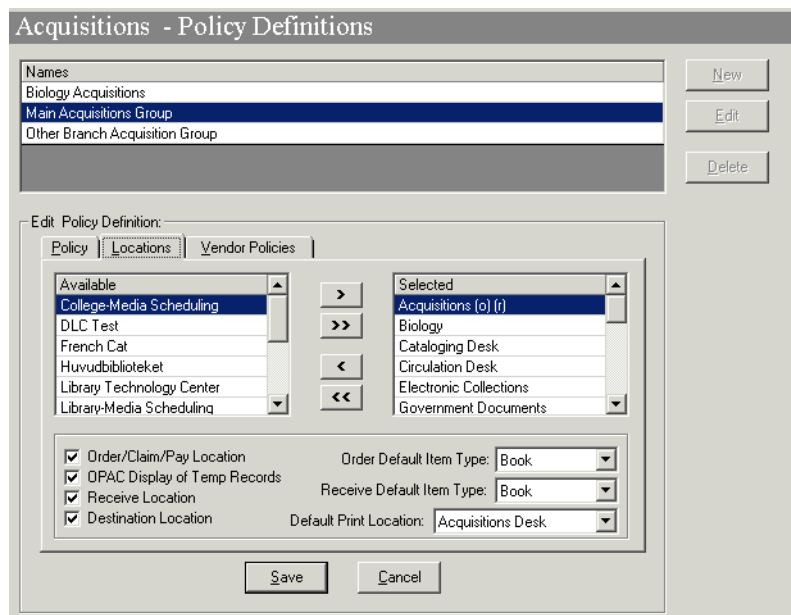




**Figure 5-1. Edit Acq/Serials Group**

4. Click the **Edit** button.
5. Click the **Locations** tab.

Result: The **Locations** tab displays (see [Figure 5-2](#)).



**Figure 5-2. Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions - Locations tab**

6. If the location is not in the **Selected Locations** list, it is not in the policy group. You need to highlight it from the **Available Locations** list and click **Select** to add it to the group.

7. After all locations are selected for the policy group, click **Save** or **Cancel**.

Result: The operator has checked if a location is associated with a specific policy group, and if needed has added it to the group.

---

The procedure for checking that a locations is associated with an Acquisitions security profile is shown in [Procedure 5-2, Checking that a Location is in the Acquisitions Security Profile](#).



---

#### **Procedure 5-2. Checking that a Location is in the Acquisitions Security Profile**

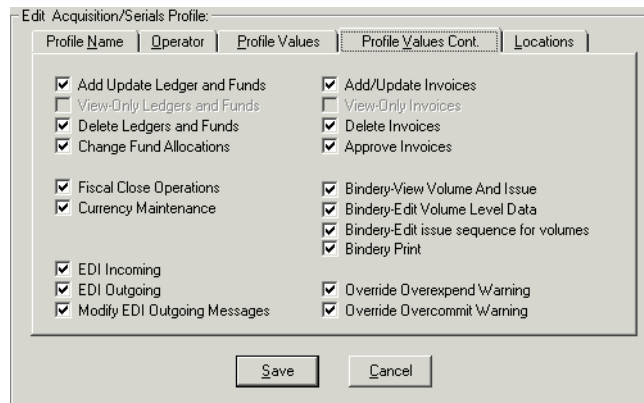
---

Use the following to confirm location selection for Acquisitions security profile.

1. Open the System Administration module.
2. Click the **Security** bar.
3. Click the **Acquisitions/Serials Profiles** button.

Result: The **Security - Acquisitions/Serials Profiles** dialog box opens.

4. Highlight the operator or operator's group that needs access to the ledger and click **Edit**.
5. Click the **Operators** tab and check to see if the operator is in the Selected Operators' list.
6. Click the **Profile Values** tab for the operator. Make sure the appropriate check boxes are selected for ledgers and funds (see [Figure 5-3](#)).



**Figure 5-3. Profile Values tab - Ledgers and Funds**

7. Click the **Locations** tab.
8. Make sure the location where the operator is working is in the **Selected Locations** list. If it is not, highlight it from the **Available Locations** list and click **Select**.

Result: The operator has checked if a location is associated with a specific security profile, and if needed added it to the profile.

The procedure for checking that a location is assigned to a ledger is shown in [Procedure 5-3, Checking that a Location is assigned to a Ledger](#).

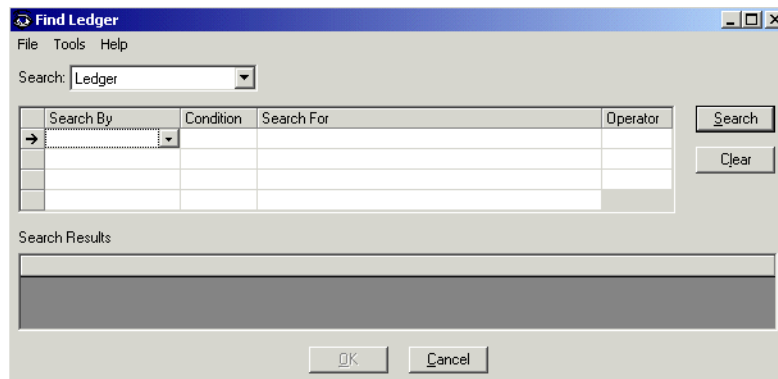


### **Procedure 5-3. Checking that a Location is assigned to a Ledger**

Use the following to confirm the location is in the ledger.

1. Open the Acquisitions module.
2. From the **File** menu select **Search> Ledger**.

Result: The **Find Ledger** dialog box opens (see [Figure 5-4](#)).

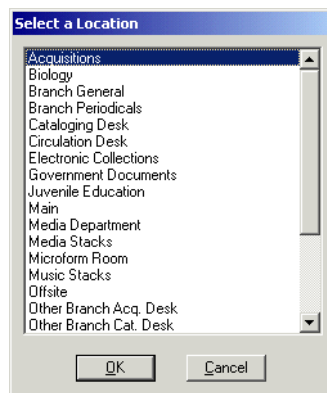


**Figure 5-4. Find Ledger dialog box**

3. Select **Location** from the drop-down list in the **Search By** column.

Result: Location populates the **Search By** field and equal populates the **Condition** field.

4. In the **Search For** column, click the **ellipsis**. The **Select a Location** dialog box opens (see [Figure 5-5](#)).



**Figure 5-5. Select a Location dialog box**

5. If you do not see the location listed in this dialog box, you need to add the location to the Acquisitions policy group. Check the security profile for that operator to make sure you added the location to it.

Result: The operator has checked if a location is associated with a specific ledger.

## Ledger Dialog box

The **Ledger** dialog box ([Figure 5-6](#)) is where users can create and maintain both ledgers and funds.

### NOTE:

When first accessing this dialog box it is entitled, “New Ledger”. Once a ledger is created and saved, it is entitled, “Ledger - *ledger name*”.

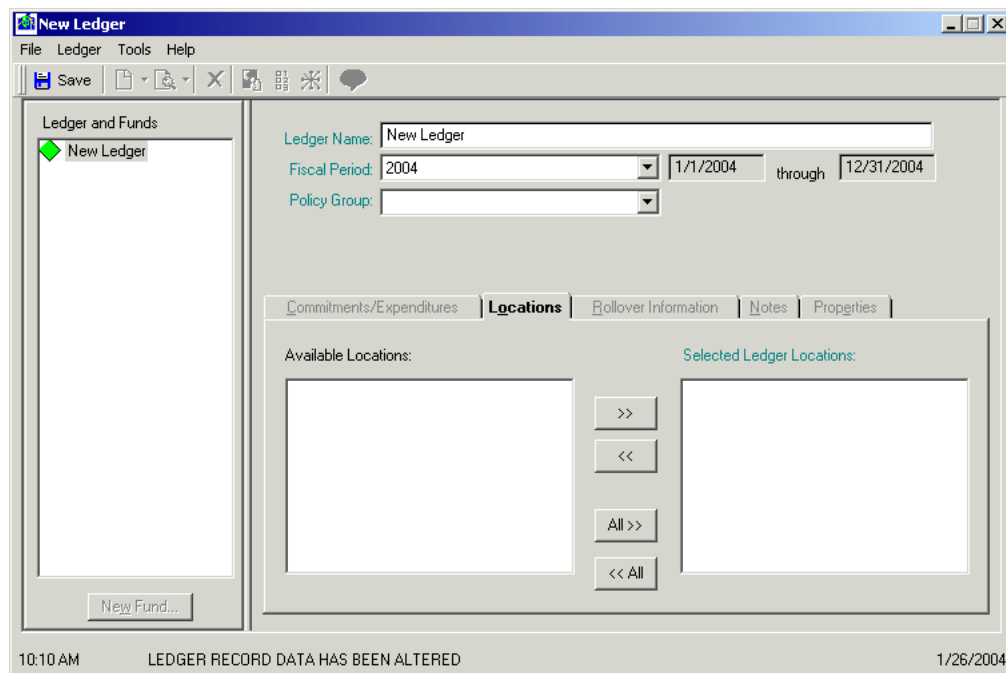


Figure 5-6. Ledger dialog box

The **Ledger** dialog box contains the following sections and tabs.

- Ledgers and funds section
- Header Information section
- **Commitments/Expenditures** tab
- **Locations** tab
- **Rollover Information** tab
- **Notes** tab
- **Properties** tab

### **Ledgers and Funds Section**

---

The Ledgers and Funds section on the left side of the dialog box displays the ledger name and the funds associated with it. It also contains the **New Fund** button or the **Cancel New** button.

When the **New Fund** button is clicked the fund information and fund tabs display in the ledger dialog box ([Figure 5-7](#)). See [Funds Associated with Ledgers](#) on [page 5-27](#).

The screenshot shows the 'Ledger - catest' dialog box. On the left, a tree view under 'Ledger and Funds' shows 'catest' with a green diamond icon and 'New Fund' with a red square icon. The main area contains fields for 'Fund Name', 'Fund Code', 'Fund Category' (set to 'Summary'), 'Fund Type' (set to 'Endowment'), 'Begin Date', 'End Date', and 'Institution ID'. There is an 'Expend Only' checkbox. Below these fields are tabs for 'Summary', 'Override Rules', 'Transactions', 'Notes', and 'Properties'. The 'Transactions' tab is active, showing a table with columns: Description, Au..., Date & Time, Operat..., Transaction, Credit, and Del. At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Cancel New', 'New Transaction...', and 'List View' (with sub-options 'List' and 'Report'). The status bar at the bottom shows '10:23 AM' and '1/26/2004'.

**Figure 5-7. Ledger dialog box - Fund information**

When the **Cancel New** button is clicked the new fund is canceled, providing it has not been saved. Once a fund is saved to the database it cannot be canceled, it must be deleted. See [Deleting a Ledger](#) on [page 5-25](#).

### Ledger - Header Information

The three fields at the head of the **New Ledger** dialog box comprise the Header Information of the ledger record. These three fields contain the general identification information of your ledger. The majority of additional ledger information located on the tabs below the header fields cannot be accessed until the three header fields have been completed and locations have been selected on the **Locations** tab.

[Table 5-1](#) describes the Ledger - Header Information section of the **Ledger** dialog box.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 5-1. Ledger - Header Information section of the Ledger dialog box**

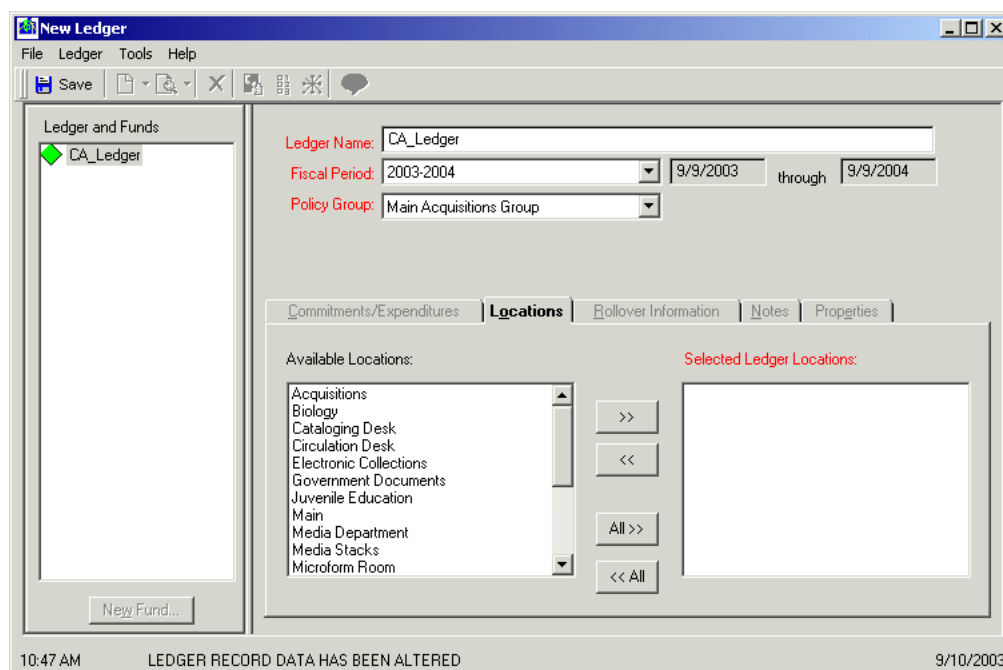
Name	Description	Range and Default
Ledger Name (R)	Name for your ledger. This value can be used to retrieve the ledger when conducting a search.	1 - 40 characters Default: "New Ledger"
Fiscal Period (R)	The fiscal period to which the ledger is associated. Fiscal Periods are defined in the System Administration Module (see the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> .) The fiscal period can be used to retrieve the ledger when conducting a search.	Drop-down Default: the current fiscal period
Dates (R)	The begin and end dates of the fiscal period selected in the Fiscal Period field.	Populated by the system based on the fiscal period you selected.
Policy Group (R)	Policy group associated with this ledger. Defined in the System Administration Module. (See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> .)	Drop-down

**Ledger - Locations Tab**

---

After you select a policy group for your ledger, the **Locations** tab on the **Ledger** dialog box opens (see [Figure 5-8](#)).





**Figure 5-8. Ledger dialog box - Locations tab**

[Table 5-2](#) describes the **Locations** tab.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 5-2. Description of the Locations tab of the Ledger dialog box**

Name	Description
Available Locations list box (R)	<p>List of all of the locations available for you to select as your ledger's locations. To purchase items for one or more locations using funds from this ledger, select the locations.</p> <p>These locations can be used to retrieve the ledger when conducting a search.</p>
Selection buttons: >>, <<, All >>, All <<.	Move the selected locations between the two list boxes.

**Table 5-2. Description of the Locations tab of the Ledger dialog box**

Name	Description
Selected Ledgers Location (R)	<p>List of all locations selected to be associated with this ledger.</p> <p>The locations that use a ledger must be one of the locations in the Voyager Acquisitions policy group (see the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i>.)</p> <p>Locations can share the same ledger (all locations must share the same fiscal period.) If a security location isn't associated with a ledger, the operator doesn't have access to the funds within that ledger.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Ledgers, Funds, and Locations</a>.</p>

---

**Commitments/ Expenditures Tab**

---

The **Commitments/Expenditures** tab contains two sections (see [Figure 5-9](#)).

- Commitments
- Expenditures

These sections regulate the use of any funds associated with the ledger.

---

Ledger Name: CA\_Ledger

Fiscal Period: 2003-2004 9/9/2003 through 9/9/2004

Policy Group: Main Acquisitions Group

**Commitments/Expenditures** Locations Rollover Information Notes Properties

**Commitments**

☐ Over Commit Allowed

Over Commit Warning %:

Over Commit Limit %:

Under Commit Report %:

Freeze Date:

**Expenditures**

☐ Over Expend Allowed

Over Expend Warning %:

Over Expend Limit %:

Under Expend Report %:

Freeze Date:

---

**Figure 5-9. Ledger dialog box - Commitments/Expenditures tab**

[Table 5-3](#) describes the **Commitments/Expenditures** tab.

**Table 5-3. Description of the Commitments/Expenditures tab**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
<b>Commitments section</b>		
Over Commit Allowed check box	Allows overcommitting a ledger.  Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Commitments section of the <b>Commitments/Expenditures</b> tab.	Check box
Over Commit Warning %	The maximum overcommitment percentage that generates an online warning.  The system looks at the Net Allocation and the percent set with 100% as the base.  Set the Over Commit Warning % in the ledger with 100% as the base.  When a user surpasses the <b>overcommit warning percent</b> , the system displays a warning.	Default: 0; range: 0 - 999.  If you allowed overcommitment, either this field or the overcommit limit field is required.
Over Commit Limit %	The maximum overcommitment limit percentage.  This prevents fund overcommitment at the designated percentage.	Default: 0; range: 0 - 999.  If you allowed overcommitment, either this field or the overcommit warning field is required.
Under Commit Report %	The maximum undercommitment percentage that generates a report.	Default: 0; range: 0 - 999.
Freeze Date	The date on which you want to stop overcommitment.  If the field is left blank, the system keeps overcommitting until the overcommitment limit percentage is reached or until the end of the fiscal year.	Date format.
<b>Expenditures section</b>		
Over Expend Allowed check box	Allows overexpending on a ledger.  Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Expenditures section of the <b>Commitments/Expenditures</b> tab.	Check box

**Table 5-3. Description of the Commitments/Expenditures tab**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Over Expend Warning %	<p>The maximum overexpend percentage that generates an online warning.</p> <p>The system looks at the Net Allocation and the percent set with 100% as the base.</p> <p>Set the Over Expend Warning % in the ledger with 100% as the base.</p> <p>When a user surpasses the overexpend warning percent, the system displays a warning.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>Net Allocation=\$20,000.00</p> <p>Over Expend Warning=105%</p> <p>105% of 20,000.00=21,000.00</p> <p>This causes an Over Expend Warning when you reach 21,000.00 in Total Expenditures.</p>	<p>Default: 0; range: 0 - 999.</p> <p>If you allowed overexpenditure, either this field or the overexpend limit field is required.</p>
Over Expend Limit %	<p>The maximum overexpend limit percentage.</p> <p>This prevents fund overexpenditure at the designated percentage.</p>	<p>Default: 0; range: 0 - 999.</p> <p>If you allowed overexpenditure, either this field or the overexpend warning field is required.</p>
Under Expend Report %	The maximum under expend percentage that generates a report.	Default: 0; range: 0 - 999.
Freeze Date	<p>The date on which you want to stop overexpending.</p> <p>If the field is left blank, the system keeps overexpending until the overexpend percentage limit is reached or until the end of the fiscal year.</p>	Date format.

**NOTE:**

Commitment and expenditure values can also be specified at the level of the fund as well, overriding the commitment and expenditure values at the level of the ledger (see [Override Rules Tab](#) on [page 5-33](#) for more information.)

To simplify the set-up of your ledger, default commitment and expenditure values can be automatically applied to the **Commitments/Expenditures** tab. For more information, see [Ledger Defaults](#) on [page 17-19](#).

The procedure for configuring commitments is shown in [Procedure 5-5, Configuring Commitments](#). The procedure for configuring expenditures is shown in [Procedure 5-6, Configuring Expenditures](#).

### Rollover Information Tab

The **Rollover Information** tab ([Figure 5-10](#)) displays the following information from the rollover rule associated with the ledger:

- Successor Ledger Name
- Fiscal Period
- Rollover Rule Name
- Rollover Date

The screenshot shows a software interface for configuring a ledger. At the top, there are three rows of labels and text boxes: 'Ledger Name:' with 'CA\_Ledger', 'Fiscal Period:' with '2003-2004' and a date range '9/9/2003 through 9/9/2004', and 'Policy Group:' with 'Main Acquisitions Group'. Below these is a set of five tabs: 'Commitments/Expenditures', 'Locations', 'Rollover Information' (which is highlighted), 'Notes', and 'Properties'. Under the 'Rollover Information' tab, there are four more rows of labels and text boxes: 'Successor Ledger Name:', 'Fiscal Period:', 'Rollover Rule Name:', and 'Rollover Date:'.

**Figure 5-10. Ledger dialog box - Rollover Information tab**

Rollover takes effect at the end of the fiscal period assigned to a ledger. Rollover Rules are used to indicate how open activities from the old fiscal period are rolled over to the new fiscal period. See the *Voyager Acquisitions User's Guide*, [Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\)](#) on [page 16-1](#) for more information.

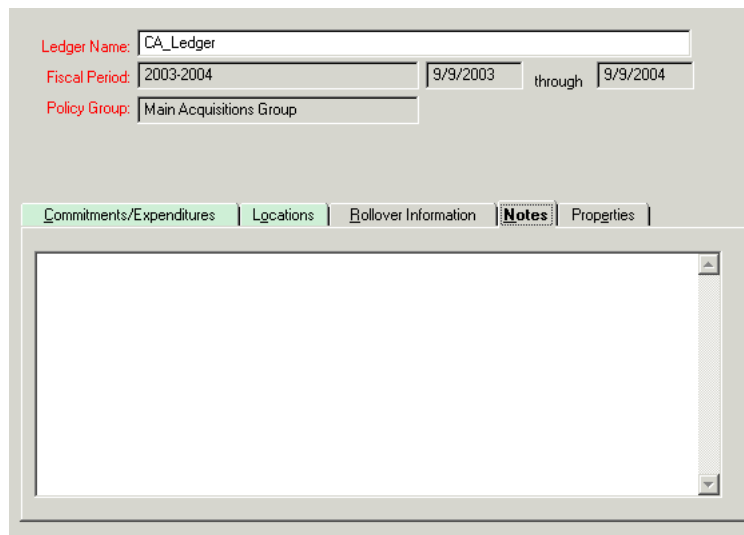
To access this tab, click the **Rollover Information** tab or select **Rollover Information** from the **Ledger** dialog box.

## Notes Tab

---

The **Notes** tab ([Figure 5-11](#)) on the **Ledger** dialog box contains a 1,900 character free-text box in which you can enter any additional information you want associated with the ledger.

---

The screenshot shows the 'Notes' tab of the 'Ledger' dialog box. At the top, there are three input fields: 'Ledger Name' with the value 'CA\_Ledger', 'Fiscal Period' with the value '2003-2004', and 'Policy Group' with the value 'Main Acquisitions Group'. To the right of the 'Fiscal Period' field, there are two date fields: '9/9/2003' and '9/9/2004', separated by the word 'through'. Below these fields is a tabbed interface with five tabs: 'Commitments/Expenditures', 'Locations', 'Rollover Information', 'Notes' (which is currently selected and highlighted), and 'Properties'. The 'Notes' tab contains a large, empty text area with a vertical scrollbar on the right side.

---

**Figure 5-11. Ledger dialog box - Notes tab**

## Properties Tab

---

The **Properties** tab ([Figure 5-12](#)) displays the following historical information about the ledger record:

- Record ID of the ledger record (the actual ID of the record in the database)
- Who the ledger was created by
- The date on which the ledger was created
- Who last updated the ledger
- The date on which the ledger was last updated

Ledger Name: CA\_Ledger

Fiscal Period: 2003-2004 9/9/2003 through 9/9/2004

Policy Group: Main Acquisitions Group

Commitments/Expenditures Locations Rollover Information Notes **Properties**

Record ID: 86

Creation Information:  
Created By: demo  
Create Date: 9/10/2003

Update Information:  
Updated By: demo  
Update Date: 9/10/2003

**Figure 5-12. Ledger dialog box - Properties tab**

To access the **Properties** tab, from an open ledger, click the **Properties** tab, select **Properties** from the **Ledger** dialog box. These fields are not editable.

## Creating a New Ledger

The procedures for creating a new ledger and completing the tabs on the **Ledger** dialog box are shown in the following:

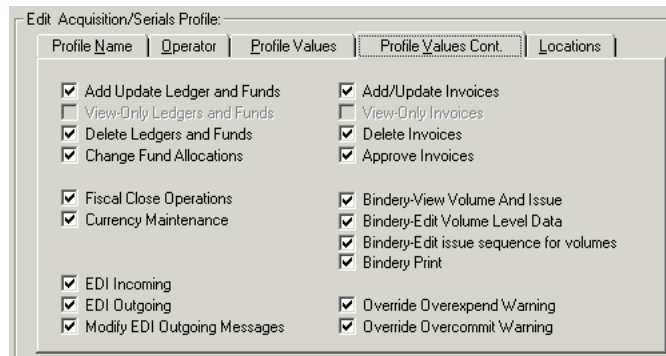
- [Procedure , Accessing the New Ledger dialog box](#)
- [Procedure 5-4, Adding Ledger Header and Location Information](#)
- [Procedure 5-5, Configuring Commitments](#)
- [Procedure 5-6, Configuring Expenditures.](#)
- [Procedure 5-7, Adding Notes to a Ledger](#)

## Security to Create and Edit a Ledger

To be authorized to create or edit a ledger, check the **Add/Update Ledgers and Funds** check box in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab ([Figure 5-13](#)) of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Ledgers and Funds** check box is selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view ledgers and funds, but the operator cannot perform any functions on them.

---



---

**Figure 5-13. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The procedure for accessing the **New Ledger** dialog box is shown in [Procedure, Accessing the New Ledger dialog box](#).

---

### Accessing the New Ledger dialog box

To access the **New Ledger** dialog box:

- Click the **Ledgers and Funds** bar in the listbar, then the **New Ledger** button.
- Select **Ledgers and Funds** from the **View** menu, then **New Ledger** from the cascading menu.
- Or click the down arrow beside the **New Item** button on the toolbar and then select **New Ledger** from the list (see [Figure 5-14](#)).



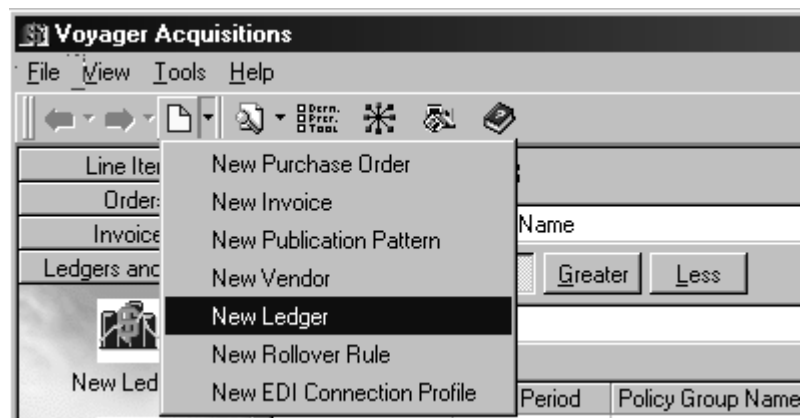


Figure 5-14. New Item button selected on the toolbar - list displayed

Result: The **New Ledger** dialog box opens (see [Figure 5-15](#)).

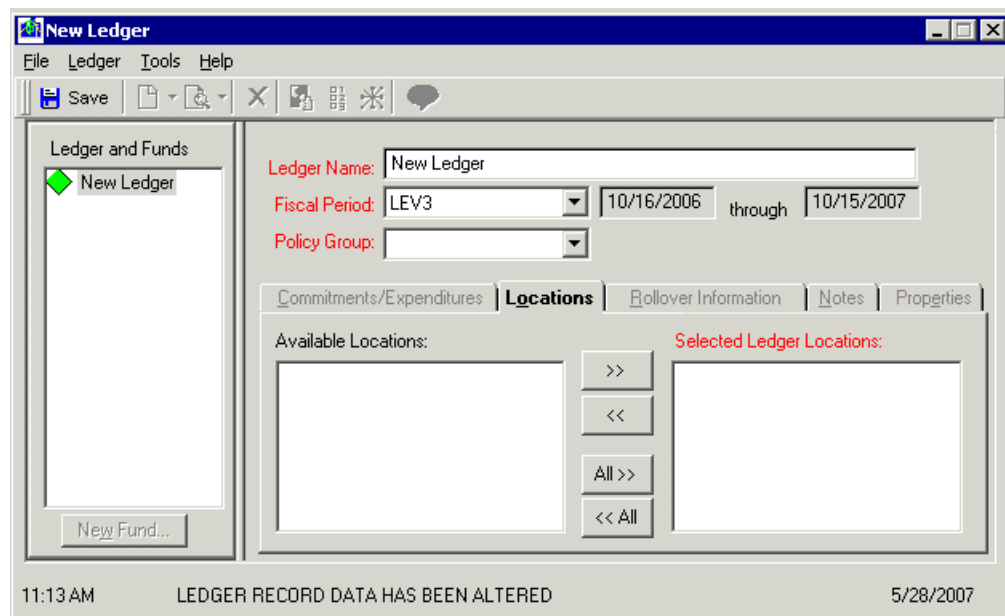


Figure 5-15. New Ledger dialog box

The procedure for adding header and location information to a new ledger is shown in [Procedure 5-4, Adding Ledger Header and Location Information](#).



---

#### Procedure 5-4. Adding Ledger Header and Location Information

---

Use the following to add header and location information to create a new ledger.

1. From a newly-accessed **Ledger** dialog box, enter a name for your ledger in the **Ledger Name** field.
2. Select a fiscal period for your ledger from the drop-down list in the **Fiscal Period** field.
3. Select a Policy Group for your ledger from the drop-down list in the **Policy Group** field.
4. Click the **Locations** tab. You can also select **Locations** from the **Ledger** dialog box . Select the locations that you want to use with your ledger.

Click the **All >>** button to move all of the locations in the Available Locations list to the **Selected Locations** list box. Click the **<< All** button to move all of the locations in the **Selected Locations** list back to the **Available Locations** list.

You can also move single locations or groups of locations between the **Available Locations** and **Selected Locations** list by using the **>>** and **<<** buttons. To select more than one location but not all locations, hold down the **Ctrl** key on your keyboard and click your mouse on each location that you want to select.

5. Click the **Save** button on the toolbar or select **Save** from the **File** menu before you can access the other tabs on the **Ledger** dialog box.

Result: The new ledger is created.

---

The procedure for configuring commitments for a ledger is shown in [Procedure 5-5, Configuring Commitments](#).

#### NOTE:

Allowing overcommitments for a ledger is optional.



### Procedure 5-5. Configuring Commitments

---

Use the following to configure commitments.

1. Conduct a search for a ledger (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)), and select the ledger that you want to configure.
2. Select the **Over Commit Allowed** check box if you want fund overcommitment allowed.
3. Enter the maximum overcommitment percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Commit Warning%** field.
4. Enter the maximum overcommitment limit percentage in the **Over Commit Limit %** field.
5. Enter the maximum undercommitment percentage that generates a report in the **Under Commit Report %** field.
6. Select a date from the drop-down list in the **Freeze Date** field.

Result: The commitments are configured.

---

The procedure for configuring expenditures is shown in [Procedure 5-6, Configuring Expenditures](#).

#### NOTE:

Allowing overexpenditures for a ledger is completely optional.



### Procedure 5-6. Configuring Expenditures

---

Use the following to configure expenditures.

1. Conduct a search for a ledger (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)) you want to configure.
2. Click the **Commitments/Expenditures** tab. You can also select **Commitments/Expenditures** from the **Ledger** dialog box.

3. Select the **Over Expend Allowed** check box if you want overexpending allowed.
4. Enter the maximum overexpend percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Expend Warning %** field.
5. Enter the maximum overexpend limit percentage in the **Over Expend Limit %** field.
6. Enter the maximum underexpend percentage that generates a report in the **Under Expend Report %** field.
7. Select the date from the drop-down list in the **Freeze Date** field.

Result: The expenditures are configured.

---

The procedure for adding a note to a ledger is shown in [Procedure 5-7, Adding Notes to a Ledger](#).



---

### Procedure 5-7. Adding Notes to a Ledger

---

Use the following to add a note to a ledger.

1. From an open ledger, click the **Notes** tab. You can also select **Notes** from the **Ledger** dialog box.

Result: The **Notes** tab opens.

2. Enter the wanted information in the box.

Result: The note is added.

---

## Editing a Ledger

---

Operators may edit a ledger.

The procedure for editing a ledger is shown in [Procedure 5-8, Editing a Ledger](#).



### Procedure 5-8. Editing a Ledger

---

Use the following to edit a ledger.

1. Conduct a search for a ledger (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)), and select the ledger that you want to edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The ledger opens.

2. Click the field or tab containing the ledger information that you want to edit.

[Table 5-4](#) shows where to find explanations of each section of a ledger.

**Table 5-4. Page References for Ledger Sections**

Header Information	<a href="#">5-11</a>
Commitments/Expenditures tab	<a href="#">5-14</a>
Locations tab	<a href="#">5-12</a>
Rollover Information tab	<a href="#">5-17</a>
Notes tab	<a href="#">5-18</a>
Properties tab	<a href="#">5-18</a>

3. After changing any data, click the **Save** button.

Result: The wanted information is edited.

---

### Deleting a Ledger

---

A ledger cannot be deleted if any of its funds are in use on a purchase order or an invoice.

## Security to Delete a Ledger

---

To be authorized to delete a ledger, check the **Delete Ledgers and Funds** check box in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab ([Figure 5-16](#)) of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Ledgers and Funds** check box is selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view ledgers and funds, but the operator cannot perform any functions on them.

---



---

**Figure 5-16. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The procedure for deleting a ledger is shown in [Procedure 5-9, Deleting a Ledger](#).



### Procedure 5-9. Deleting a Ledger

---

Use the following to delete a ledger.

1. Conduct a search for a ledger (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)), and select the ledger that you want to edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The ledger opens.

2. Click the **Delete** button on the toolbar or select **Delete** from the **File** menu.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the ledger is deleted.

---

## **Funds Associated with Ledgers**

---

Ledgers can have one or more funds associated with them. Funds are organized hierarchically into three category types:

- Summary
- Allocated
- Reporting

### **Summary Funds**

---

Summary funds ([Figure 5-17](#)) do not have allocations (money). They allow you to gather a summary of information about all of their subordinate funds. Analyzing fund activity at the summary fund level allows you to see the expenditure activities of all allocated and reporting funds associated with the summary fund.



---

**Figure 5-17. Summary Funds Indicator**

### **Allocated Funds**

---

Allocated funds ([Figure 5-18](#)) are usually subordinate to summary funds. In addition, allocated funds contain real money. An allocated fund can be set up to have additional money added to it during the course of the fiscal period for expenditures only (a dollar amount allocated for an entire fiscal period from budget or for a deposit account.)



---

**Figure 5-18. Allocated Funds Indicator**

## Reporting Funds

---

Reporting funds ([Figure 5-19](#)) are usually subordinate to allocated funds and do not have money in them, but they can be selected on purchase orders and invoices. Money to pay for invoice items comes from a reporting fund's parent allocated fund. Reporting funds generate detailed information about the expenditures from that allocated fund.



---

**Figure 5-19. Reporting Funds Indicator**

## Begin and End Dates

When an Allocated or Reporting fund is created, the fund's begin and end dates default to the begin and end dates of the parent level in the hierarchy. If the parent level is the ledger itself, the fund inherits the dates of the ledger's fiscal period.

If the parent level is another fund, the system checks to see if the parent fund's begin and end dates have been changed to differ from the dates of the ledger's fiscal period. If so, the subordinate fund inherits the parent fund's changed dates. If not, the system continues looking up the hierarchy until it finds a fund that has had its begin and end dates changed. If it finds such a fund, it applies the dates to the fund that is being created. If it does not find such a fund, it applies the dates of the ledger's fiscal period to the fund that is being created.

### **NOTE:**

For funds with begin and end dates that match the dates of the ledger's fiscal period, any time the ledger's fiscal period is redefined in the System Administration module, the fund's dates are changed accordingly. For funds that have begin and end dates that differ from the dates of the ledger's fiscal period, the dates are not automatically updated if the ledger's fiscal period is redefined in the System Administration module.



## Security to Create and Edit a Fund

To be authorized to create or edit a fund, check the **Add/Update Ledgers and Funds** check box in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab ([Figure 5-20](#)) of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Ledgers and Funds** check box is selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view ledgers and funds, but the operator cannot perform any functions on them.

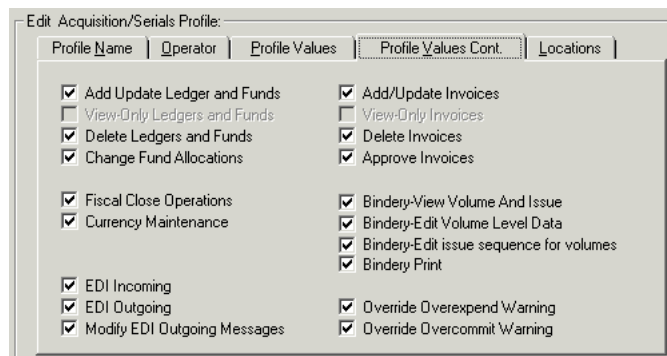
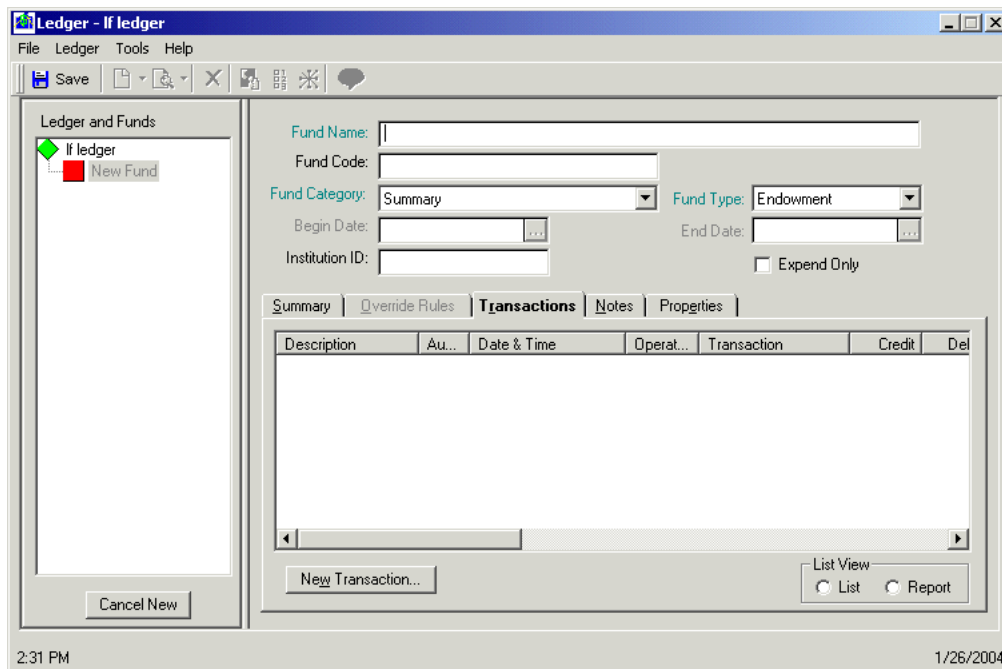


Figure 5-20. Profile Values Cont. tab

## Ledger dialog box - Fund Information

Use the **Ledger** dialog box - **Fund information** section ([Figure 5-21](#)) to create and edit funds associated with a ledger.



**Figure 5-21. Ledger dialog box - Fund information section**

The **Ledger** dialog box - **Fund Information** section contains the following sections and tabs.

- Ledgers and funds section, see [Ledgers and Funds Section](#) on [page 5-10](#)
- Fund - Header Information section
- **Summary** tab
- **Override Rules** tab
- **Transactions** tab
- **Notes** tab
- **Properties** tab

## Fund - Header Information

The fields in the Fund - Header Information section contain the general identification information of the fund. The majority of additional fund information is located on the tabs below the header fields.

[Table 5-5](#) describes the Fund - Header Information section of the **Ledger** dialog box.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 5-5. Fund - Header Information section of the Ledger dialog box**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Fund Name (R)	Name of the fund.  When conducting a search, this value can be used to retrieve the fund or the ledger to which the fund belongs.	25 characters
Fund Code (R)	Code to identify the fund.  When conducting a search, this value can be used to retrieve a fund or the ledger to which the fund belongs.	10 characters
Fund Category (R)	Type of fund being added to the ledger. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Summary</li> <li>• Allocated</li> <li>• Reporting</li> </ul>	Drop-down
Fund Type (R)	Type of fund. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Endowment</li> <li>• General</li> <li>• Gift</li> <li>• Grant</li> <li>• User-defined type</li> </ul> Fund types are defined in the System Administration Module. (See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> for more information.)	Drop-down
Begin Date/End Date (R)	Dates within which the fund may be used.  A fund's begin date cannot be changed to a date earlier than the begin date of the parent level in the hierarchy. A fund's end date cannot be changed to a date later than the end date of the parent level in the hierarchy.  <b>NOTE:</b> Summary funds do not use a begin or end date. Therefore, the <b>Begin Date</b> and <b>End Date</b> fields are not available for Summary funds.	Date  Default: the begin and end dates used in the parent-level fund or ledger (see <a href="#">Begin and End Dates</a> on <a href="#">page 5-28</a> )

**Table 5-5. Fund - Header Information section of the Ledger dialog box**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Institution ID	Your institution's fund identification. This ID prints on invoices.	100 characters No default
Expend only	Allows you to expend against this fund. .	Check box

---

### Summary Tab

The **Summary** tab ([Figure 5-22](#)) breaks down a fund's money and usages by displaying the fund's Allocations, Commitments, Expenditures, and Balance.

It contains the **Original Allocation** field which is the original monetary balance for the fund. This field is only available for an allocated fund.

---

Fund Name: CA\_Main  
Fund Code: CAGM  
Fund Category: Allocated Fund Type: General  
Begin Date: 1/1/2004 End Date: 12/31/2004  
Institution ID:  ☐ Expend Only

**Summary** | Override Rules | Transactions | Notes | Properties

<b>Allocations</b>	<b>Commitments</b>	<b>Expenditures</b>
Original Allocation: \$0.00	Total: \$0.00	Total: \$0.00
Increases: \$0.00	Pending: \$0.00	Pending: \$0.00
Decreases: \$0.00		
Net: \$0.00		

**Balances**

Available: \$0.00
Cash: \$0.00

---

**Figure 5-22. Summary tab**

The maximum value for the Original Allocation is 21,000,000.00.

## Override Rules Tab

If the commitments and expenditures values for a fund are different than those defined for the ledger, you can use the **Override Rules** tab to override the commitments and expenditures values established at the ledger level.

The **Override Rules** tab ([Figure 5-23](#)) contains two sections: Commitments and Expenditures. These sections regulate the use of the fund. Commitments and expenditures values can be specified for the fund, overriding the commitments and expenditures values at the level of the ledger (see [Commitments/Expenditures Tab](#) on [page 5-14](#) for more information.)

To simplify the setup of your fund, default commitments and expenditures values can be automatically applied to the **Override Rules** tab. For more information, see [Fund Defaults](#) on [page 17-16](#).

The screenshot shows the 'Override Rules' tab for a fund named 'CA\_Main' with code 'CAGM'. The 'Fund Category' is 'Allocated' and 'Fund Type' is 'General'. The 'Begin Date' is '9/9/2003' and 'End Date' is '9/9/2004'. The 'Institution ID' field is empty. Below the input fields are tabs for 'Summary', 'Override Rules' (which is the active tab), 'Transactions', 'Notes', and 'Properties'. The 'Override Rules' tab is divided into two main sections: 'Commitments' and 'Expenditures'. Each section contains a checkbox for 'Over [Commit/Expend] Allowed' (both are unchecked), and four input fields: 'Over [Commit/Expend] Warning %', 'Over [Commit/Expend] Limit %', 'Under [Commit/Expend] Report %', and 'Freeze Date'. All percentage fields are currently set to '0'.

**Figure 5-23. Override Rules tab**

[Table 5-6](#) describes the **Override Rules** tab

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 5-6. Description of the Override Rules tab**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
<b>Commitments section</b>		
Over Commit Allowed check box	Allows overcommitting a fund. Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Commitments section of the <b>Override Rules</b> tab.	Check box
Over Commit Warning %	The maximum overcommitment percentage that generates an on-line warning. Therefore, if approving a purchase order on which the commitment to a fund has surpassed the Over Commit Warning %, the system displays a warning message.	Range: 0 - 999; default: 0.  If you allowed overcommitment, either this field or the overcommit limit field is required.
Over Commit Limit %	The maximum overcommitment limit percentage. This prevents fund overcommitment at the designated percentage.	Range: 0 - 999; default: 0.  If you allowed overcommitment, either this field or the overcommit warning field is required.
Under Commit Report %	The maximum under commitment percentage that generates a report.	Range: 0 - 999; default: 0.
Freeze Date	The date on which you want to stop overcommitment.  If the field is left blank, the system keeps overcommitting until the overcommitment limit percentage is reached or until the end of the fiscal year.	Date
<b>Expenditures section</b>		
Over Expend Allowed check box	Allows overexpending on a fund. Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Expenditures section of the <b>Override Rules</b> tab.	Check box

**Table 5-6. Description of the Override Rules tab**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Over Expend Warning %	The maximum overexpend percentage that generates an on-line warning.  If you attempt to approve an invoice on which the expenditure of a fund has surpassed the overexpend warning percent, the system displays a warning message.	Range: 0 - 999; default: 0.  If you allowed overexpenditure, either this field or the overexpend limit field is required.
Over Expend Limit %	The maximum overexpend limit percentage.  This prevents fund overexpenditure at the designated percentage.	Range: 0 - 999; default: 0.  If you allowed overexpenditure, either this field or the overexpend warning field is required.
Under Expend Report %	The maximum under expend percentage that generates a report.	Range: 0 - 999; default: 0.
Freeze Date	The date to stop overexpending.  If the field is left blank, the system keeps overexpending until the overexpend limit percentage is reached or until the end of the fiscal year.	Date format.

### Transactions Tab

---

The **Transactions** tab displays information about an allocated fund's transaction history (see [Figure 5-24](#)).

The screenshot shows a software window with several input fields at the top: Fund Name (CA\_Main), Fund Code (CAGM), Fund Category (Allocated), Fund Type (General), Begin Date (9/9/2003), End Date (9/9/2004), and Institution ID. Below these is a checkbox for 'Expend Only'. A tabbed interface below the fields has tabs for Summary, Override Rules, Transactions (which is selected), Notes, and Properties. The Transactions tab contains a table with the following data:

Description	Au...	Date & Time	Operat...	Transaction	Credit	Del
Original Allocati...	1046	9/10/2003 11:11:0...	demo	Original Allocation	\$100,0...	\$0.0

At the bottom left is a 'New Transaction...' button. At the bottom right is a 'List View' section with radio buttons for 'List' and 'Report'.

---

**Figure 5-24. Transactions tab**

In addition, you can conduct new transactions such as adding money to (crediting a fund) or subtracting money from the fund's allocation, or transferring money to or from a different fund using the **Fund Transactions** dialog box.

### **Security to Change Fund Allocations**

---

To be authorized to change fund allocations and do transfers, check the **Change Fund Allocations** check box in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab ([Figure 5-25](#)) of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



Figure 5-25. Profile Values Cont. tab

### Fund Transactions dialog box

The fields on the **Fund Transactions** dialog box vary depending on the type of transaction, an allocation change (see [Figure 5-26](#)) or transfer (see [Figure 5-27](#)).

Figure 5-26. Fund Transactions dialog box - allocation change

**Figure 5-27. Fund Transactions dialog box - transfer**

[Table 5-7](#) describes the fields of the **Fund Transactions** dialog box

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 5-7. Description of the Fund Transactions dialog box**

Name	Description	Type and Range
<b>Allocation Change</b>		
Amount (R)	The adjustment amount.  This adjustment can be either a positive or negative amount. An amount is required in order for the transaction to be completed.	- 21 million - +21 million.  To make the adjustment a negative amount, press the hyphen key on your keyboard. A negative amount displays in red parenthesis.
Note	Notes related to this allocation change.	Free-text box 1,900 characters
<b>Transfer</b>		
Ledger (R)	Ledger containing the fund involved in the transfer.	Drop-down  Or click the folder to access the ledger and fund tree.  <a href="#">See Selecting a fund in the Fund Transaction dialog box.</a>

**Table 5-7. Description of the Fund Transactions dialog box**

Name	Description	Type and Range
Fund (R)	Fund into which, or from which, money is transferred.	Enter fund code or click the folder to access the ledger and fund tree.  See <a href="#">Selecting a fund in the Fund Transaction dialog box</a> .
Amount (R)	The adjustment amount.  This adjustment can be either a positive or negative amount. An amount is required in order for the transaction to be completed.	- 21 million - +21 million.  To make the adjustment a negative amount, press the hyphen key on your keyboard. A negative amount displays in red parenthesis.
Note	Notes related to this transfer.	Free-text box  1,900 characters

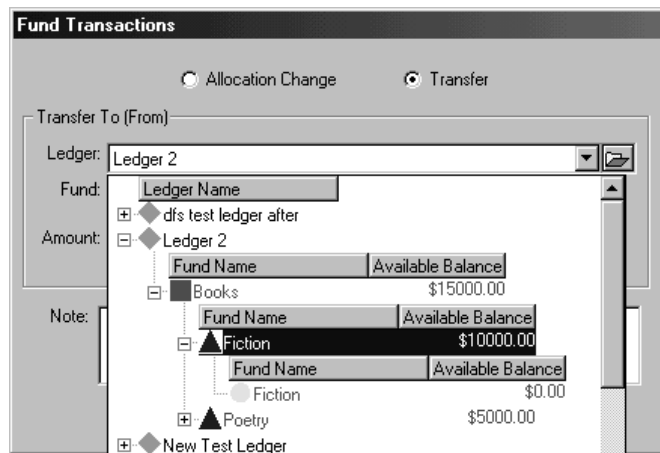
**Selecting a fund in the Fund Transaction dialog box**

There are two ways you can select a fund: you can manually type a Fund Code in the **Fund** field or you can select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy.

- If you want to manually type a fund code into the **Fund** field, you must first select a ledger from the drop-down list in the **Ledger** field. After you have selected a ledger, type the Fund Code into the **Fund** field. Because typing the fund code into the field is often much faster than navigating a complex ledger/fund hierarchy, this feature improves the efficiency of your fund processing.

After the fund code has been entered, you must verify the code by clicking the ellipsis button beside the **Fund** field. If the fund code is valid, the name of the fund appears in the **Fund** field.

- If you want to select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy rather than typing the fund code into the **Fund** field, click the **folder** button beside the **Ledger** field. This displays a hierarchy of available ledgers and funds (see [Figure 5-28](#)). To aid you in selecting an appropriate fund, each fund's available balance displays within the hierarchy.



**Figure 5-28. Ledger/Fund hierarchy displayed in the Ledger field**

Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. Navigate the hierarchy and select a fund.

## Notes Tab

The **Notes** tab ([Figure 5-29](#)) contains a 2,000 character free-text box in which you can enter any additional information you want associated with the fund.

---

Fund Name: CA\_Main  
Fund Code: CAGM  
Fund Category: Allocated Fund Type: General  
Begin Date: 9/9/2003 End Date: 9/9/2004  
Institution ID:   
☐ Expend Only

Summary | Override Rules | Transactions | **Notes** | Properties

---

**Figure 5-29. Notes tab**

### Properties Tab

---

The **Properties** tab displays the following historical information about the fund (see [Figure 5-30](#)).

- Record ID of the fund (the actual ID of the record in the database)
- Who the fund was created by
- The date on which the fund was created
- Who last updated the fund
- The date on which the fund was last updated

The screenshot shows the 'Properties' tab of a fund management interface. At the top, there are several input fields: 'Fund Name' (CA\_Main), 'Fund Code' (CAGM), 'Fund Category' (Allocated), 'Fund Type' (General), 'Begin Date' (9/9/2003), 'End Date' (9/9/2004), and 'Institution ID'. Below these fields is a tabbed interface with five tabs: 'Summary', 'Override Rules', 'Transactions', 'Notes', and 'Properties'. The 'Properties' tab is selected. Inside this tab, there are two sections: 'Creation Information' and 'Update Information'. 'Creation Information' includes 'Created By' (demo) and 'Create Date' (9/10/2003). 'Update Information' includes 'Updated By' (demo) and 'Update Date' (9/10/2003). There is also a 'Record ID' field showing 556 and an 'Expend Only' checkbox which is unchecked.

---

**Figure 5-30. Properties tab**

To access the **Properties** tab, from an open fund, click the **Properties** tab on your keyboard, select **Properties** from the **Fund** menu. These fields are not editable.

The procedure for creating new funds from an open ledger is shown in [Procedure 5-10, Creating a New Fund from an Open Ledger](#).



---

#### **Procedure 5-10. Creating a New Fund from an Open Ledger**

---

Use the following to create a new fund from an open ledger.

1. To create a Summary fund, click the ledger in the Ledger and Funds tree hierarchy. To create an Allocated fund, click a summary fund in the tree hierarchy. To create a Reporting fund, click an allocated fund in the tree hierarchy.

Your new fund is subordinate to the level that you select.

2. Click the **New Fund** button below the Ledger and Funds hierarchy or select **New Fund** from the **Ledger** menu.

Result: A new fund appears in the Ledger and Funds hierarchy and the **Ledger** dialog box opens displaying various fund-related fields (see [Figure 5-31](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Ledger - CA\_Ledger' window. On the left, a tree view under 'Ledger and Funds' shows 'CA\_Ledger' and 'New Fund'. The main area contains fields for 'Fund Name', 'Fund Code', 'Fund Category' (set to 'Summary'), 'Fund Type' (set to 'Gift'), 'Begin Date', 'End Date', and 'Institution ID'. There is an 'Expend Only' checkbox. Below these fields are tabs for 'Summary', 'Override Rules', 'Transactions', 'Notes', and 'Properties'. The 'Transactions' tab is active, showing a table with columns: Description, Au..., Date & Time, Operat..., Transaction, Credit, and Del. At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Cancel New', 'New Transaction...', and 'List View' (with 'List' and 'Report' radio buttons). The status bar at the bottom shows '11:01 AM' and '9/10/2003'.

**Figure 5-31. Ledger dialog box - Fund information**

The procedure for adding fund header information is shown in [Procedure 5-11, Adding Fund - Header Information](#).



#### **Procedure 5-11. Adding Fund - Header Information**

Use the following to configure the header information.

1. After clicking the **New Fund** button, in the **Ledger** dialog box - Fund information, Enter the name of the fund in the **Fund Name** field.
2. Enter the code to identify the fund in the **Fund Code** field.
3. Select a category from the drop-down list in the **Fund Category** field.
4. Select the fund type from the alphabetized drop-down list in the **Fund Type** field.

5. If needed, click the down arrow in the **Begin Date** or **End Date** field and select a date from the pop-up calendar.
6. Enter your institution's fund identification in the **Institution ID** field.
7. Select the **Expend Only** check box if you want to expend against this fund but do not want to display pending or total commitments against the fund.

Result: The header information is configured (see [Figure 5-32](#)).

**Ledger - CA\_Ledger**

File Fund Tools Help

Save

**Ledger and Funds**

- CA\_Ledger
- CA\_General
- CA\_Main

**Fund Name:** CA\_Main

**Fund Code:** CAGM

**Fund Category:** Allocated **Fund Type:** General

**Begin Date:** 1/1/2004 **End Date:** 12/31/2004

**Institution ID:**

☐ Expend Only

**Summary** | Override Rules | Transactions | Notes | Properties

**Allocations**

Original Allocation:	\$0.00
Increases:	\$0.00
Decreases:	\$0.00
Net:	\$0.00

**Commitments**

Total:	\$0.00
Pending:	\$0.00

**Expenditures**

Total:	\$0.00
Pending:	\$0.00

**Balances**

Available:	\$0.00
Cash:	\$0.00

Cancel New

11:05 AM FUND RECORD DATA HAS BEEN ALTERED 9/10/2003

**Figure 5-32. Completed Fund information header section**

The procedure for configuring the summary tab is shown in [Procedure 5-12, Configuring Summary Tab](#).



#### **Procedure 5-12. Configuring Summary Tab**

Use the following to configure the **Summary** tab for an allocated fund.



1. Click the **Summary** tab. You can also select **Summary** from the **Fund** menu.
2. Enter the fund's original monetary balance in the **Original Allocation** field.
3. Save the fund, click the **Save** button.

Result: The **Summary** tab is configured.

---

The procedure for configuring commitments is shown in [Procedure 5-13, Configuring Commitments](#). The procedure for configuring expenditures is shown in [Procedure 5-14, Configuring Expenditures](#).



---

### Procedure 5-13. Configuring Commitments

---

Use the following to configure commitments.

1. Click the **Override Rules** tab. You can also select **Override Rules** from the **Fund** menu.
2. Select the **Over Commit Allowed** check box if you want fund overcommitment allowed.
3. Enter the maximum overcommitment percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Commit Warning %** field.
4. Enter the maximum overcommitment limit percentage in the **Over Commit Limit %** field.
5. Enter the maximum undercommitment percentage that generates a report in the **Under Commit Report %** field.
6. From the drop-down list in the **Freeze Date** field, select the date on which you want to stop overcommitments against the fund.

Result: The commitments are configured.

---



---

**Procedure 5-14. Configuring Expenditures**

---

Use the following to configure expenditures.

1. On the **Override Rules** tab, Select the **Over Expend Allowed** check box if you want overexpending allowed.
2. Enter the maximum overexpend percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Expend Warning %** field.
3. Enter the maximum overexpend limit percentage in the **Over Expend Limit %** field.
4. Enter the maximum underexpend percentage that generates a report in the **Under Expend Report %** field.
5. From the drop-down list in the **Freeze Date** field, select the date on which you want to stop overexpending against the fund.

Result: The expenditures are configured.

[Figure 5-33](#) shows a completed **Override Rules** tab.

---

Commitments	Expenditures
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Over Commit Allowed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Over Expend Allowed
Over Commit Warning %: 10	Over Expend Warning %: 5
Over Commit Limit %: 5	Over Expend Limit %: 3
Under Commit Report %: 0	Under Expend Report %: 0
Freeze Date: [dropdown]	Freeze Date: [dropdown]

---

**Figure 5-33. Completed Override Rules tab**

---

The procedure for conducting new transactions is shown in [Procedure 5-15, Conducting a New Transaction](#).



---

**Procedure 5-15. Conducting a New Transaction**

---

Use the following to conduct a new transaction.

1. Click the **Transactions** tab. You can also select **Transactions** from the **Fund** menu.
2. Click the **New Transaction** button.

Result: The **Fund Transactions** dialog box opens (see [Figure 5-34](#)).

---

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Fund Transactions". At the top, there are two radio buttons: "Allocation Change" (which is selected) and "Transfer". Below these is a section labeled "Adjustment:" containing a text box for "Amount" with the value "\$0.00". At the bottom of the dialog is a large text area labeled "Note:". At the very bottom are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

---

**Figure 5-34. Fund Transactions dialog box - Allocation Change radio button selected**

Operators can now choose to change a fund's allocation or transfer funds. See [Procedure 5-16, Changing a Fund's Allocation](#) and [Procedure 5-17, Transferring Allocated Funds](#).

---

### **Changing a Fund's Allocation**

You can change your fund's allocation by adding money to or subtracting money from the fund.

The procedure for changing a fund's allocation is shown in [Procedure 5-16, Changing a Fund's Allocation](#).



---

### Procedure 5-16. Changing a Fund's Allocation

---

Use the following to change an allocation.

1. Click the **Allocation Change** radio button in the **Fund Transaction** dialog box.

Result: The Adjustment section of the **Fund Transactions** dialog box displays an **Amount** field.

2. Enter the adjustment amount for the fund in the **Amount** field.

#### **OPTIONAL:**

3. *Enter any additional information in the **Note** free-text box.*
4. Click **OK** to complete your allocation change. Click **Cancel** to cancel your allocation change.

Result: If clicked **OK**, the allocation change is made.

---

### Transferring Allocated Funds

Fund transfers allow you to transfer money out of or into the fund you are working with.

The procedure for transferring allocated funds is shown in [Procedure 5-17, Transferring Allocated Funds](#).



---

### Procedure 5-17. Transferring Allocated Funds

---

Use the following to transfer funds.

1. Click the **Transfer** radio button in the **Fund Transaction** dialog box.

Result: The **Fund Transactions** dialog box displays the Transfer to section (see [Figure 5-35](#)).

The screenshot shows a 'Fund Transactions' dialog box. At the top, there are two radio buttons: 'Allocation Change' (unselected) and 'Transfer' (selected). Below this is a section titled 'Transfer To (From)'. Inside this section, there are three fields: 'Ledger:' with a dropdown menu showing 'CA\_Ledger', 'Fund:' with a dropdown menu showing 'ca4', and 'Amount:' with a text box containing '\$0.00'. Below these fields is a 'Note:' label followed by a large empty text area. At the bottom right of the dialog box are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

**Figure 5-35. Fund Transactions dialog box - Transfer radio button selected**

2. You must then select a fund to transfer money out of or into.

There are two ways you can select a fund: you can manually type a Fund Code in the **Fund** field or you can select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy. See [Selecting a fund in the Fund Transaction dialog box](#).

Result: After selecting a fund from the hierarchy, the ledger to which the fund belongs displays in the **Ledger** field and the fund displays in the **Fund** field.

3. If you are transferring:
  - money out of the fund you are working with and into the fund specified in the **Fund** field, enter the amount to be transferred in the **Amount** field.
  - money out of the fund specified in the **Fund** field and into the fund you are working with, enter the amount to be transferred in the **Amount** field and press the **dash (-) key** on your keyboard to make the amount negative.

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Enter any additional notes about the transaction in the **Note** free-text box.
5. Click **OK** to complete the transfer. Click **Cancel** to cancel the transfer.

Result: If clicked **OK**, the fund transfer then displays in the transaction history list on the **Transactions** tab.

6. Click **Save** to save the transaction information.

The procedure for adding a note to a fund is shown in [Adding a Note to a Fund](#).



---

#### Procedure 5-18. Adding a Note to a Fund

---

Use the following to add a note to a fund.

1. From an open fund, click the **Notes** tab. You can also select **Notes** from the **Fund** menu.

Result: The **Notes** tab opens.

2. Enter information in the free-text box.

Result: The note is added.

---

---

### Editing a Fund

---

Operators may edit a fund.

The procedure for editing a fund is shown in [Procedure 5-19, Editing a Fund](#).



---

#### Procedure 5-19. Editing a Fund

---

Use the following to edit a fund.

1. Search for a fund (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)), then select the fund that you want to edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button.

Result: If you searched for a fund by Ledger Name, PO Number or Invoice Number, when you select a fund from the search results list and click the **Edit** button, the **Ledger** dialog box opens with all of its funds visible in the Ledger and Funds list.

However, if you searched for a fund by Fund Name or Fund Code, when you select a fund from the search results list and click the **Edit** button, the **Ledger** dialog box opens with only the selected fund visible in the Ledger and Funds list. In such a circumstance, the Ledger and Funds label above the list displays as a

button. You can click this **Ledger and Funds** button to display all of the ledger's funds. After the button has been clicked, the button becomes the normal Ledger and Funds label.

2. Click the fund that you want to edit in the Ledger and Funds list.
3. Click the field or tab containing the fund information that you want to edit.

[Table 5-8](#) shows where to find explanations of each section of a fund.

**Table 5-8. Page References for Funds**

Header Information	<a href="#">5-43</a>
Summary tab	<a href="#">5-44</a>
Override Rules tab	<a href="#">5-33</a>
Transactions tab	<a href="#">5-35</a>
Notes tab	<a href="#">5-40</a>
Properties tab	<a href="#">5-41</a>

4. After changing any data, click the **Save** button.

Result: The wanted information is edited.

## Deleting a Fund

A fund cannot be deleted if it is in use on a purchase order or an invoice.

### Security to Delete a Fund

To be authorized to delete a fund, check the **Delete Ledgers and Funds** check box in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab ([Figure 5-36](#)) of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Ledgers and Funds** check box is selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view ledgers and funds, but the operator cannot perform any functions on them.



---

**Figure 5-36. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The procedure for deleting a fund is shown in [Procedure 5-20, Deleting a Fund](#).



---

### **Procedure 5-20. Deleting a Fund**

---

Use the following to delete a fund.

1. Search for and display the fund you want to delete (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#).)
2. Click the **Delete** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the fund is deleted.

---



## Overview of Commitments (Encumbrances) and Expenditures

Operators use the funds they have created to commit (encumber) monies on a purchase order or to expend monies on an invoice. See [Purchase Order Activities](#) on [page 6-1](#) and [Invoice Activities](#) on [page 12-1](#) for information on purchase orders and invoices.

The actions of creating and approving purchase orders and invoices impact the money in their associated funds.

If the	Then
PO is pending	The fund has a pending commitment (encumbrance).
PO is approved	The fund has an approved commitment (encumbrance). The amount is added to the total.
Invoice is pending	The fund has a pending expenditure.
Invoice is approved	The fund has an approved expenditure and the commitment (encumbrance) is cleared. The amount is added to the total.

[Figure 5-37](#) shows the **Summary** tab of a fund with the Commitments and Expenditures sections.

Summary		Commitments		Expenditures	
Original Allocation:	\$5,000.00	Total:	\$58.00	Total:	\$30.00
Increases:	\$0.00	Pending:	\$1,595.95	Pending:	\$0.00
Decreases:	\$0.00				
Net:	\$5,000.00				

Balances	
Available:	\$4,912.00
Cash:	\$4,970.00

**Figure 5-37. Summary tab of a fund**

When a purchase order is created and approved, the monies from the line item are set aside or committed to being spent from the associated fund. This is referred to as an encumbrance. At this point money is not actually spent.

When the invoice is created, the monies from the line item are considered pending expenditures, but the encumbrances are not yet cleared from the fund. When the invoice has been approved, then the expenditures become actual expenditures, and the encumbrances are cleared from the fund.

*If it has not yet been invoiced and the line item status is approved or received, the following actions clear an encumbrance (disencumbers):*

- Generating a cancel for the line item
- Canceling the entire PO
- Generating a return

**NOTE:**

If you mistakenly cancel or return a line item, you cannot undo this by re-encumbering. You must create a new PO. Re-encumbering recalculates the encumbrances based on the line item and invoice statuses.

*If an invoice has been approved and the line item status is approved or received:*

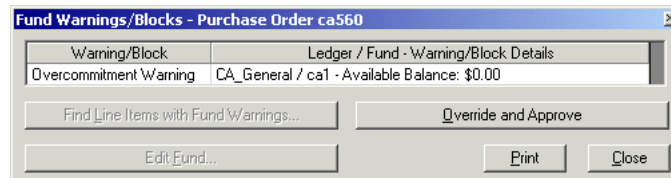
- Generating a cancel does not disencumber funds (funds are already disencumbered). A second invoice at negative the amount is needed to “repay” the amount that was expended when the first invoice was approved.
- Generating a return does not disencumber funds (funds are already disencumbered). A second invoice at negative the amount is needed to “repay” the amount that was expended when the first invoice was approved.

## **Fund Warnings/Blocks**

---

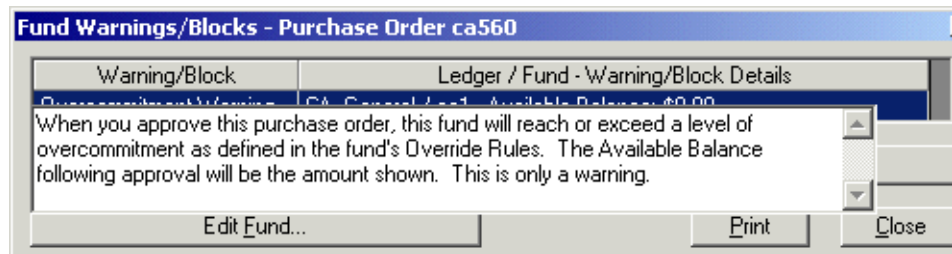
Sometimes when an operator selects a fund for use with a purchase order or invoice the action receives a warning or block. Warnings and blocks display based on the information found in either the **Override** tab of the Fund, or the **Commitments/Expenditures** tab of the fund's associated ledger.

The **Fund Warnings/Blocks** dialog box ([Figure 5-38](#)) displays a list of the funds that are causing errors. For example, a block occurs if a fund used on the original order has expired.



**Figure 5-38. Fund Warnings/Blocks dialog box**

Users can highlight the message and click the ellipsis in the Warning/Block column to access additional information (see [Figure 5-39](#)).



**Figure 5-39. Text describing why a warning was given**

Operators can take one of these actions when this dialog box opens:

- If you want to find the line items associated with the warning, highlight the fund and click the **Find Line Items with Fund Warnings** button.
- If you want to edit a fund, click the fund and click the **Edit** button.
- If you want to print a fund, select fund and click the **Print** button.
- If you want to override the fund warning and approve the purchase order, click the **Override and Approve** button (if authorized, see [Security to Allow Override Warnings](#)). The **Fund Warnings/Blocks** dialog box is cleared and closed.

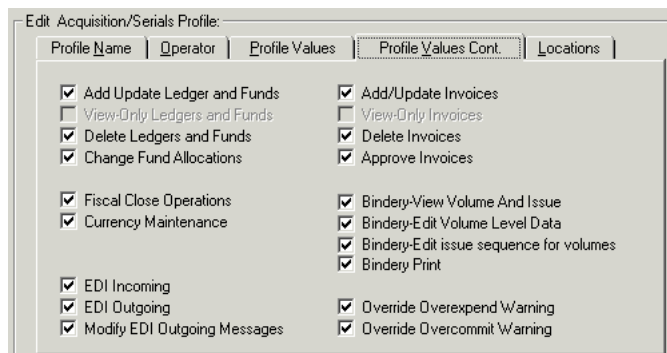
When done, click the **Close** button to close the **Fund Warnings/Blocks** dialog box.

## Security to Allow Override Warnings

---

To be authorized to override an overexpend or overcommit warning when working in a PO or invoice, check the **Override Overexpend Warning** check box and/or the **Override Overcommit Warning** check box in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab ([Figure 5-40](#)) of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

---



---

**Figure 5-40. Profile Values Cont. tab**

## Fiscal Period Close

---

For information about creating new ledgers/funds for new fiscal periods, and what occurs with ledgers and funds after running the Fiscal Period Close program, see [Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\)](#) on [page 16-1](#).

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>6-1</b>
<b>Purpose of the Chapter</b>	<b>6-1</b>
<b>Purchase Orders</b>	<b>6-2</b>
Header Tab	6-5
Footer Tab	6-7
Notes Tab	6-9
Properties Tab	6-10
• Creating Purchase Orders	6-11
• Security for Creating and Editing a Purchase Order	6-11
<b>Adding Line Items to a Purchase Order</b>	<b>6-15</b>
• Adding Line Items from Your Local Database	6-16
• Adding Line Items from Remote Databases	6-17
• Adding Brief Bibliographic Records	6-18
Customizing the Acqbib.cfg	6-19
• Adding a Line Item by Importing a Bibliographic Record	6-21
• Adding a Line Item Using Bibliographic IDs	6-25
<b>Adding Line Item Information</b>	<b>6-26</b>
• Quick Line Item	6-28
• Detailed Line Item	6-32
Bib Record Tab	6-38
Price Tab	6-43
Copies/Funds Tab	6-48

Copy Status Tab	6-62
Type Tab	6-64
Delivery Options Tab	6-70
Notes Tab	6-72
Order Tab	6-74
Payment History Tab	6-76
Receive/Mark Tab	6-77
Problems Tab	6-79
Claims Tab	6-81
Properties Tab	6-82
<b>Entering Other PO Charges - Price Adjustments</b>	<b>6-84</b>
Selecting a fund in the Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box	6-87
<b>Purchase Order Copying</b>	<b>6-93</b>
• Security for Copying a Purchase Order	6-93
<b>Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order</b>	<b>6-94</b>
<b>Approving a Purchase Order</b>	<b>6-94</b>
• Security for Approving Purchase Orders	6-95
Duplicate Order Information on PO	6-97
• Vendor History Tab	6-98
Changing a Vendor	6-99
• Related Invoices Tab	6-102
<b>Completing a Purchase Order</b>	<b>6-103</b>
<b>Canceling a Purchase Order</b>	<b>6-103</b>
• Security for Canceling a PO	6-104
<b>Editing POs and Line Items on POs</b>	<b>6-105</b>
<b>Editing Line Item Data on an Approved Purchase Order</b>	<b>6-108</b>
• Security to Edit Line Item Data on an Approved PO	6-108
Line Item Information Hierarchy	6-111
Selecting a new fund	6-111
• Changing the List Price	6-113
• Changing the Intended Location for All Copies	6-114
• Changing the Intended Location for a Single Copy	6-114
• Link to Holdings	6-114
• Changing Ledger/Fund Data	6-114
• Extended Fund Allocation - Adding a Fund	6-115
• Extended Fund Allocation - Editing a Fund	6-116
• Extended Fund Allocation - Removing a Fund	6-117

**Deleting a Purchase Order** **6-117**

- Security for Deleting POs 6-119

**Creating an Invoice from a Purchase Order** **6-120**

- Security to Create an Invoice from a PO 6-120





### Introduction

---

The Purchase Orders area of the Acquisitions module provides tools for creating and maintaining your purchase orders. Specifically, these tools allow you to do the following.

- Create new purchase orders and line items
- Search for and edit existing purchase orders

### Purpose of the Chapter

---

This chapter discusses the following.

- **New Order** dialog box/**Purchase Order** dialog box and creating a Purchase Order
- Line Items on the Purchase Order
- Line Item Information
  - Quick Line Item
  - Detailed Line Item
- Price adjustments
- Purchase Order copying
- Searches for Line items from a Purchase Order

- Procedures for doing the following
  - Approving Purchase Orders
  - Completing a PO
  - Canceling a PO and Canceling a line item copy
  - Editing POs and line item data
  - Deleting a PO
  - Creating an Invoice from a PO

## Purchase Orders

---

To create a new purchase order, you must access the **New Order** dialog box and enter data in the required fields and any optional fields across three tabs. You can then add line items to the order.

You can access purchase order activities from the **Orders** bar on the **Acquisitions** listbar. see [Figure 6-1](#).

**NOTE:**

To search for a line item directly, rather than as an element of a purchase order, use a quick search from the **Line Items** bar on the **Acquisitions** listbar. For more information, see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#).



**Figure 6-1. Purchase Order buttons on the listbar**

**NOTE:**

For information about creating a purchase order when importing records from a vendor, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

The **New Order** dialog box ([Figure 6-2](#)) is composed of two sections.

**Figure 6-2.** New Order dialog box

The top section of the **New Order** dialog box contains four tabs (**Header**, **Footer**, **Notes**, **Properties**) that store general information about the purchase order, such as identification and billing information. After the purchase order has been approved, the **Vendor History** and **Related Invoices** tabs display beside the four existing tabs. (See [Approving a Purchase Order](#) on [page 6-94](#) for more information.)

The lower section of the **New Order** dialog box is initially a blank pane. After you have selected a line item, the item is listed in the pane as a single row of information. (Each line item can also be displayed in full detail in a separate dialog box. See [Detailed Line Item](#) on [page 6-32](#) for more information.)

**NOTE:**

After you have saved information, the **New Order** dialog box becomes the **Purchase Order** dialog box.

## Header Tab

The **Header** tab on the **New Order** (or **Purchase Order**) dialog box contains general information about the order.

Information is divided into four sections.

Section	Content
Order	Identification information, such as the purchase order number and type, and the library site that submits the order
Vendor	Information about the vendor used for the purchase order
Locations	Information about the library locations to which the bill and materials should be sent
Amounts	Sum charges on the purchase order, also the currency and conversion rate (current or at the time of approval) used. See <a href="#">Fix Exchange Rates (Acqjob 5)</a> on <a href="#">page 3-12</a> for additional currency information.

[Figure 6-3](#) shows a **Header** tab with completed fields. The labels of required fields display in red or in another color you have specified in your session preferences (see [Colors and Fonts Tab](#) on [page 18-4](#).)

The screenshot shows the 'Header' tab of a 'New Order' dialog box. It contains several sections with input fields:

- Order:** Number (148), Type (Approval), Site (Acquisitions).
- Vendor:** Code (BT), Account (Popular Magazine).
- Locations:** Ship To (Main), Bill To (Acquisitions).
- Amounts:** Line Item Subtotal (\$105.00), Other Charges (\$0.00), Total Order Amount (\$105.00).
- Currency:** Code (USD), Rate (1).
- Status Date:** 8/8/2000
- 5 Line Items on Order**

**Figure 6-3. Header tab completed**

[Table 6-1](#) describes the fields on the **Header** tab by section. Required fields are noted with an “(R)” beside the field name.

**Table 6-1. Header Tab Fields**

Section	Field	Description
Order	Number (R)	The purchase order number. Defaults to the next available sequential number, but can be edited (up to 25 alphanumeric characters, including spaces and punctuation).
	Type (R)	The purchase order type. Selections include system-defined types (such as <b>Firm Order</b> and <b>Gift</b> ) and, if set up by your institution, user-defined types. For more information about user-defined types, see the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> .  <b>NOTE:</b> Continuation type purchase orders create Subscription line item types. All others create Single part line item types.
	Site (R)	The purchase order site. Selections are defined in the System Administration module as sites associated with the particular acquisitions policy group where the <b>Order/Claim/Pay Location</b> check box for the site has been selected.  See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> for more information.
Vendor	Code (R)	The code of the vendor you are using for the order. To search for a vendor, click the search button (magnifying glass) beside the <b>Code</b> field. After you enter a valid vendor code, you can view the vendor's record by clicking the ellipsis (...) button or email the vendor by clicking the mailbox button (if one displays beside the <b>Code</b> field).
	Account	List of the accounts of the vendor identified in the <b>Code</b> field (provided the code is valid). Select an account to add the current order to it.
Locations	Ship To	The location where the order should be shipped. Locations are defined for particular acquisitions policy groups in the System Administration module.
	Bill To	The location where the bill for the order should be sent.  Selections are defined in the System Administration module as locations associated with the particular acquisitions policy group where the <b>Order/Claim/Pay Location</b> check box for the location has been selected.  See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> for more information.

**Table 6-1. Header Tab Fields**

Section	Field	Description
Amounts	Line Item Subtotal	The combined cost of all of the line items on the purchase order.
	Other Charges	Additional charges such as shipping and tax.  <b>NOTE:</b> You can credit a pending purchase order by entering a discount price adjustment in <b>Other Charges</b> field.  See <a href="#">Entering Other PO Charges - Price Adjustments</a> .
	Total Order Amount	The total cost of line items and other charges.
Amounts/ Currency	Code	The currency code. If none is selected, the base currency set in the System Administration module is used.  <b>NOTE:</b> Currency cannot be changed after the purchase order has been saved, except to restore the base currency.
	Rate	The exchange rate for the selected currency, as entered in the <b>Currency Maintenance</b> workspace.
[not sectioned]	Status Date	System-generated date of the purchase order update.
	Line Items on Order	The number of line items in the order.

To simplify the creation of purchase orders, you can prepopulate fields on the **Header** tab with default values. See [Purchase Order Defaults](#) on [page 17-4](#).

### Footer Tab

The **Footer** tab contains information divided into two sections.

Section	Content
Instructions	Information about the shipping of your purchases and the claiming or cancellation of your order.
Amounts	Sum charges on the purchase order. Same as <b>Amounts</b> section on the <b>Header</b> tab.

[Figure 6-4](#) shows a **Footer** tab with completed fields.

**Figure 6-4. Footer tab completed**

**NOTE:**

None of the fields on the **Footer** tab are required.

[Table 6-2](#) describes the fields on the **Footer** tab by section.

**Table 6-2. Footer Tab Fields**

Section	Field	Description
Instructions	Ship Via	The preferred shipping method for the order.
	Not Needed After	The latest date that you will accept the purchase order items. Drop-down calendar selection.
	Rush	Rush delivery status check box.
	Cancel After	The maximum number of days between ordering and canceling an unreceived order. Defaults to number entered on your session defaults or, if none entered, to the number in the <b>Cancel After</b> field on the associated vendor's record.
	Don't Claim	Check box indicating not to send any claim notices to the vendor for purchase order items.
	Claim Interval	The number of days after the expected received date when an unreceived line item is claimed.  Not available if the <b>Don't Claim</b> check box has been selected.



**Table 6-2. Footer Tab Fields**

Section	Field	Description
Amounts	Line Item Subtotal	Combined cost of all line items in the order.
	Other Charges	Additional charges such as shipping and tax.
	Total Order Amount	The total cost of line items and other charges.

To simplify the creation of your purchase orders, you can prepopulate fields on the **Footer** tab with default values. See [Purchase Order Defaults](#) on [page 17-4](#).

### Notes Tab

The **Notes** tab ([Figure 6-5](#)) provides text fields for you to enter instructions to the vendor and internal notes about the order.

The screenshot shows a software window with four tabs: Header, Footer, Notes, and Properties. The 'Notes' tab is active. It contains two text input fields. The first field is labeled 'Instructions to Vendor:' and contains the text 'Please rush. Needed for week of 8/25.' The second field is labeled 'Notes:' and contains the text 'Needed for "Women on the Homefront and in the Trenches" display to kick off academic year.'

**Figure 6-5. Notes tab filled**

[Table 6-3](#) describes the **Notes** tab.

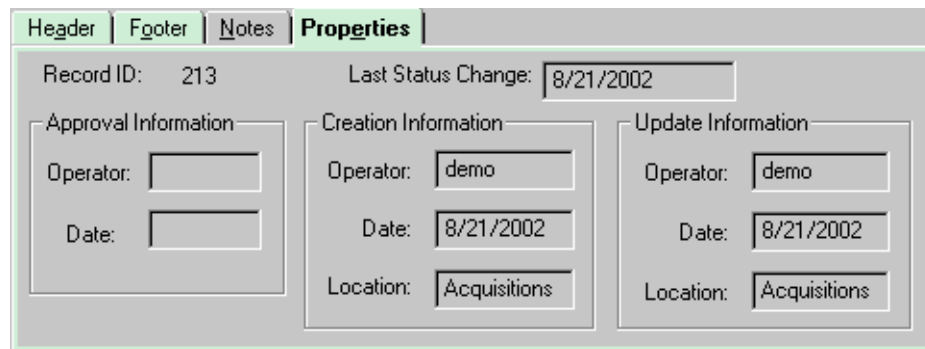
**Table 6-3. Notes Tab Text Boxes**

Label	Description	Limits
Instructions to Vendor	Text box for instructions to the vendor. The text prints on the purchase order.	60 alphanumeric characters
Notes	Text box for additional information about the order. For internal use.	1900 alphanumeric characters

## Properties Tab

The **Properties** tab ([Figure 6-6](#)) displays read-only historical information about the purchase order.

---



The screenshot shows a software interface with a tabbed menu at the top containing 'Header', 'Footer', 'Notes', and 'Properties'. The 'Properties' tab is active. Below the tabs, the following information is displayed:

- Record ID: 213
- Last Status Change: 8/21/2002

The main area is divided into three sections, each with a title and three input fields:

- Approval Information:**
  - Operator: [empty text box]
  - Date: [empty text box]
- Creation Information:**
  - Operator: demo
  - Date: 8/21/2002
  - Location: Acquisitions
- Update Information:**
  - Operator: demo
  - Date: 8/21/2002
  - Location: Acquisitions

---

**Figure 6-6. Properties tab for new purchase order**

[Table 6-4](#) describes the fields within sections of the **Properties** tab.

**Table 6-4. Properties Tab Fields**

Section	Field	Definition
[not sectioned]	Record ID	The record ID number of the purchase order, system-generated or user-entered.
	Last Status Change	The date on which the status of the purchase order was last changed.
Approval Information	Operator	The operator who approved the purchase order.
	Date	The date on which the purchase order was approved.
Creation Information	Operator	The operator who created the purchase order.
	Date	The date on which the purchase order was created.
	Location	The library location where the purchase order was created.
Update Information	Operator	The operator who last updated the purchase order.
	Date	The date on which the purchase order was last updated.
	Location	The library location where the purchase order was last updated.

## Creating Purchase Orders

Creating purchase orders involves entering information in the **New Order** dialog box, adding line items to the order, and entering information about the line items on your order.

## Security for Creating and Editing a Purchase Order

To be authorized to create and edit purchase orders the **Add/Update Purchase Orders** check box ([Figure 6-7](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Purchase Orders** check box is selected on the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view purchase orders, but the operator cannot perform any functions on them.

Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile: Profile Values		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Vendor
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Vendors
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Vendors
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Purchase Orders		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Acquisitions	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Serials Control	
	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Problems and Claims Lists	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Line Item Bib Record	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serial Patterns		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record	

**Figure 6-7. Profile Values tab**

[Procedure 6-1, Creating a Purchase Order](#), takes you through the first part of the process. (Adding line items and line item information follows.)

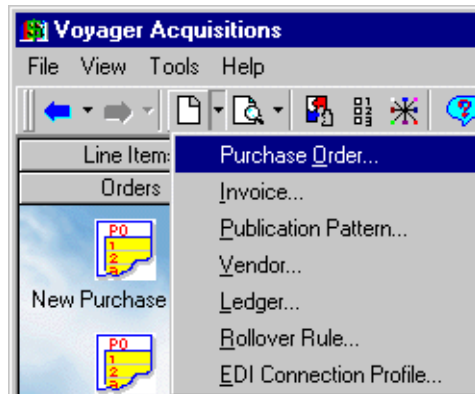


## Procedure 6-1. Creating a Purchase Order

Use the following to create a purchase order.

1. Access the **New Order** dialog box using one of the following:

- Click the **Orders** bar on the **Acquisitions** listbar, then the **New Purchase Order** icon.
- From the **View** menu, select **Orders > New Order**.
- Click the down arrow beside the **New Item** button on the toolbar, then select **Purchase Order** from the drop-down list (see [Figure 6-8](#)).



**Figure 6-8.** Accessing a new purchase order from the toolbar

Result: The **New Order** dialog box opens to the **Header** tab (see [Figure 6-9](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'New Order' dialog box with the 'Header' tab selected. The dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Order:**
  - Number: 320
  - Type: Approval
  - Site: Acquisitions
- Vendor:**
  - Code: [empty]
  - Account: [empty]
- Status Date:** 3/19/2003
- 0 Line Items on Order**
- Locations:**
  - Ship To: [empty]
  - Bill To: [empty]
- Amounts:**
  - Line Item Subtotal: \$0.00
  - Other Charges: \$0.00
  - Total Order Amount: \$0.00
- Currency:**
  - Code: [empty]
  - Rate: [empty]

**Figure 6-9.** New Order dialog box

2. Enter values for the fields in the **Order** section. Use [Table 6-1](#) on [page 6-6](#) for descriptions of individual fields.
3. Enter the vendor code in the **Code** field of the **Vendor** section. To search for vendor codes, click the magnifying glass button.

Result: The ellipsis button (...) activates.

**RECOMMENDED:**

4. *If you entered the code without using the search feature, click the ellipsis button (...) to validate the vendor code.*

Result: If the vendor code is valid, the **Save** and **Save and Close** buttons on the toolbar activate. The ellipsis button opens the vendor record if you click it again.

If the code is not valid, an error message displays. Try the vendor search (click the magnifying glass button) or manually enter a different code.

**OPTIONAL:**

5. *Enter values or make selections in any of the other write-enabled fields on the **Header** tab. Use [Table 6-1](#) on [page 6-6](#) for descriptions of individual fields.*

**NOTE:**

If you do not select a currency in the **Currency** section **Code** field, the system uses the base currency set in the System Administration module. After you save the purchase order, the currency cannot be changed except to the base currency by clicking the **Base Currency** button on the toolbar.

Result: If you enter a currency code and save it, the current conversion rate, as defined for the currency in the Acquisitions **Currency Maintenance** section, displays in the **Rate** field. See [Fix Exchange Rates \(Acqjob 5\)](#) on [page 3-12](#) for more information regarding maintenance of exchange rates.

6. Click the **Save** button on the toolbar to save your entries without closing the **New Order** dialog box. To save the order and close the dialog box, click the **Save and Close** button.

Result: The title bar changes from **New Order** to **Purchase Order: [order #] [(order status)]**. Line item activities for the order become accessible through the buttons at the bottom of the dialog box (see [Figure 6-10](#)).

Figure 6-10. Completed Header tab saved

**OPTIONAL:**

7. To enter information on the **Footer** tab, click the **Footer** tab.

Result: The **Footer** tab opens. All fields on this tab are optional.

**OPTIONAL:**

8. Enter values in the **Footer** tab's editable fields, changing any default values necessary for this purchase order. See [Table 6-2](#) on [page 6-8](#) for descriptions of individual fields.

When you finish, click the **Save** or **Save and Close** button on the toolbar.

**OPTIONAL:**

9. To enter instructions to the vendor or internal notes about the purchase order, click the **Notes** tab and enter information in the fields. See [Table 6-3](#) on [page 6-9](#) for information about the fields.
10. When you have completed all entries for this purchase order, you can do one of the following.

- Save and close the order by clicking the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar
- Save the order by clicking the **Save** button and begin adding line items to the order.

Result: If saved, the Purchase Order is created.

---

## **Adding Line Items to a Purchase Order**

Once a purchase order has been created or retrieved from the database, you can add line items to the order by linking an item's bibliographic record to the order. Line items show in the bottom pane of the **Purchase Order** dialog box.

### **NOTE:**

You must complete the required information on the **Header** tab and save the purchase order before you can add line items.

After adding a line item to your purchase order, you must enter purchasing information about the item. (For more information, see [Adding Line Item Information](#) on [page 6-26](#).)

To add a line item to an order, you must first locate the item's bibliographic record. Use one of the following to do so.

- Search for a bibliographic record in your local database (see [Procedure 2-3, Accessing bibliographic record searches](#)).
- Search for a bibliographic record in one or more remote databases.
- Create a brief bibliographic record manually (see [Adding Brief Bibliographic Records](#)).
- Import a bibliographic record from a file (see [Adding a line item by importing a bibliographic record](#)).
- Search your local database using the record's ID number (see [Procedure 6-6, Adding a line item by bibliographic ID](#)).

### **NOTE:**

Any editing of bibliographic data must be done in the Cataloging module. However, MARC bibliographic records can be opened in Cataloging from the Acquisitions module. See [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#) for more information.

## **Adding Line Items from Your Local Database**

---

You can add a line item to your purchase order by searching for a bibliographic record in your local database. After you locate and select the record, the bibliographic information is linked to the purchase order in the form of a new line item.

### **NOTE:**

If the **Attach Holdings to Any Bibliographic Record** check box for your Acq/Serials Security Profile is not checked, the Owning Library of the bibliographic record must match the Owning Library from which you are ordering. Your Owning Library is the location specified in the **Order Site** field on the **Header** tab. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

The procedure for adding a line item using a bibliographic search is shown in [Procedure 6-2, Adding a line item using a bibliographic search of your local database](#).



### **Procedure 6-2. Adding a line item using a bibliographic search of your local database**

---

Use the following to add a line item by bibliographic searching. See [Bibliographic Record Searches](#) on [page 2-10](#) for detailed instructions.

1. From the **Purchase Order** dialog box, click the **Add Line (Bib Search)** button.

Result: The **Search** dialog box opens.

2. Select the tab corresponding to the search type you want to perform.

Result: Your search preference options display.

3. Enter search parameters and terms, click the **Do Search** button on the **Search** dialog box to conduct the search.

Result: Results display in the headings list or titles index box.

4. Select the line item(s) from your search results to add to the purchase order.

Result: The item(s) displays in the bottom pane of the **Purchase Order** dialog box (see [Figure 6-11](#)).



The screenshot shows a software window titled "Purchase Order: 701 - [Pending]". It has a menu bar with "File", "Order", "Line Item", "Tools", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "Save", "Save and Close", "Approve", "Base Currency", and others. The main area is divided into several sections:

- Header:** Includes fields for "Order Number" (701), "Type" (Approval), "Site" (Acquisitions), "Vendor Code" (HARR), "Account", "Status Date" (11/17/2004), and "1 Line Items on Order".
- Locations:** Includes "Ship To" and "Bill To" dropdown menus.
- Amounts:** Includes "Line Item Subtotal" (\$0.00), "Other Charges" (\$0.00), and "Total Order Amount" (\$0.00).
- Currency:** Includes "Code" (USD) and "Rate" (1).

Below these sections is a table with the following columns: "Line #/Status", "Title", "Price (Adjustments)", "# of Copies", "Location", "Fund", and "Line". The table contains one row:

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line
1 / Pending	Jungle books / Rudyard Ki	\$0.00	0			

At the bottom of the window is a toolbar with buttons: "Add Line (Bib Search)", "Add Line (Bib Import)", "Add Line (Template)", "Delete Line", "Quick Line Item...", "Detailed Line Item...", and "MARC...".

**Figure 6-11. Purchase Order dialog box line item display**

You can now add more line items to your purchase order or begin entering more information for the line item(s) you have added. (See [Adding Line Item Information](#) on [page 6-26](#).)

### **Adding Line Items from Remote Databases**

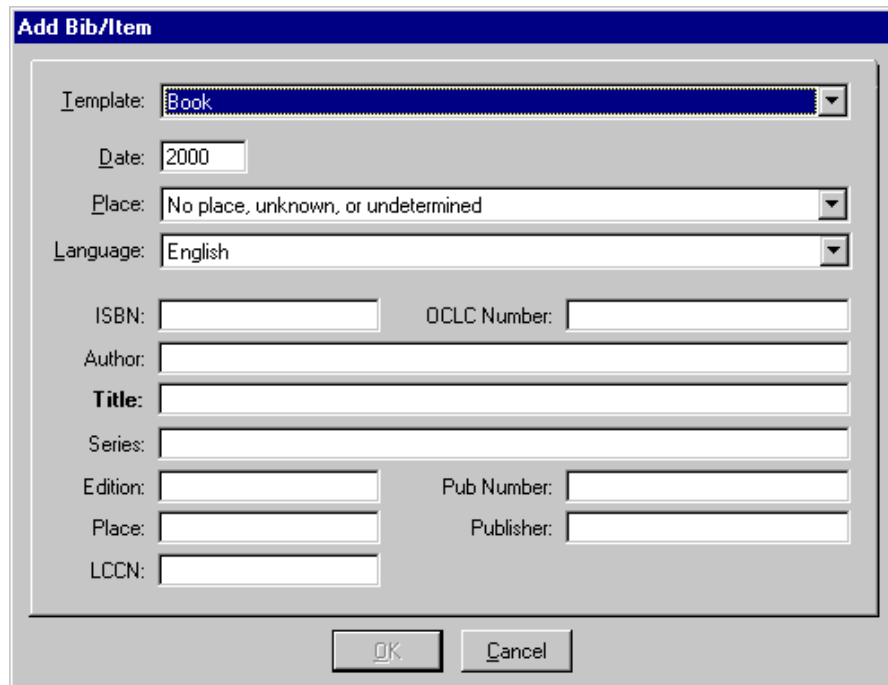
If you have established remote databases in the Voyager System Administration module, a **Remote** button displays on the **Search** dialog box. (For details on establishing connections to remote databases, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.) This button opens the **Voyager Connection Options** dialog box, where you select the databases you want to search.

See Chapter 2 for instructions on adding line items by searching remote databases.

## **Adding Brief Bibliographic Records**

---

You can add a line item to a purchase order by creating a brief bibliographic record derived from a customizable template. To create a brief bibliographic record, use the **Add Line (Template)** button on the **Purchase Order** dialog box to open the **Add Bib/Item** template (see [Figure 6-12](#)).



**Figure 6-12. Add Bib/Item template**

Required fields display in bold captions. The **OK** button activates after you have entered information in all required fields. When you click it, the item is linked to the purchase order in the form of a new line item.

More extensive line item information can be entered after the line item appears on the purchase order.

Template fields are configured by the `acqbib.cfg` template file, located in the `c:\Voyager\Misc` directory. This file determines which fields must be entered manually for the retrieval of a record using partial bibliographic data.

## Customizing the Acqbib.cfg

You can customize the template for brief bibliographic records using the `acqbib.cfg` file, which contains a separate template for books, journals, and a third category, plus any additional templates/stanzas you have added to the file. Fields in the `acqbib.cfg` file correspond to the fields in the **Add Bib/Item** dialog box. These fields are numbered in the `.cfg` file as **F1-F11**, for eleven fields (see [Figure 6-13](#)).

```
[Journal]
DateOn=Yes
DateDefault=
FormatOn=No
FormatDefault=as
LangOn=Yes
LangDefault=eng
PlaceOn=Yes
PlaceDefault=xx
F1=ISSN
F1Marc=022||a
F1Default=
F1Required=No
F2=
F2Marc=
F2Default=
F2Required=
F3=Title
F3Marc=2451?a
F3Default=
F3Required=Yes
F4=Publisher
F4Marc=260||b
F4Default=
F4Required=No
```

**Figure 6-13.** Excerpt from `acqbib.cfg` - beginning of [Journal] stanza

Customizing can take the form of editing a particular field (or fields) within an existing stanza/template, or of creating a completely new stanza for a new type of item and template. To edit fields, open the file in a text editor and make changes to

fields belonging to the relevant template(s) or stanza(s). The [Book], [Journal], [Other], [Format] and [Country] stanzas can be edited (any of the country codes can be deleted) so that your .cfg file is more manageable.

To add a new template/stanza, follow [Procedure 6-3, Adding a stanza to acqbib.cfg](#). You can add as many stanzas to acqbib.cfg as you want.



### Procedure 6-3. Adding a stanza to acqbib.cfg

---

Use the following to add a new stanza to the acqbib.cfg file (and a new template type to the **Add Bib/Item** template).

1. Open the acqbib.cfg file from your c:\Voyager\Misc directory using any text editor.
2. Add the following row to the [Templates] stanza, **Template[n+1]=[new template name]**, where *n* equals the template number of the previous template in the stanza.
3. Copy one of the other template stanzas to the end of the list of template stanzas.
4. Change the stanza name to the name you provided in the [Templates] stanza.
5. Edit the information in the stanza keeping the following in mind:
  - The order of fields F1-F11 is copied in the **Add Bib/Item** template.
  - The four fields (**Date**, **Format**, **Place**, and **Language**) following the first **Template** drop-down field on the **Add Bib/Item** template can be turned on or off in the opening eight lines of the template stanzas.
  - A # mark hides or blocks the information that follows it. It must be used on every line you want to block.
  - Any information below the [Filing] stanza is left out in the title count.
6. Save and close the acqbib.cfg file.

Result: A new stanza is added to the acqbib.cfg file.

---



#### Procedure 6-4. Adding a line item by creating a brief bibliographic record

---

Use the following to add a line item by creating a brief bibliographic record.

1. Click the **Add Line (Template)** button on the bottom of the **Purchase Order** dialog box or follow the menu path **Line Items > Add > New**.

Result: The **Add Bib/Item** template opens (see [Figure 6-12](#)).

2. Enter information in the fields and select options from the drop-down lists. The order of the information listed in the drop-down lists corresponds to the order of the information as it is listed in the `acqbib.cfg` template.

Result: When all required fields have been completed, the **OK** button activates.

3. Click the **OK** button.

Result: The record is listed as a line item in the bottom pane of the **Purchase Order** dialog box (see [Figure 6-11](#)).

You can now add more line items to your purchase order or begin entering more information for the line item(s) you have added. (See [Adding Line Item Information](#) on [page 6-26](#).)

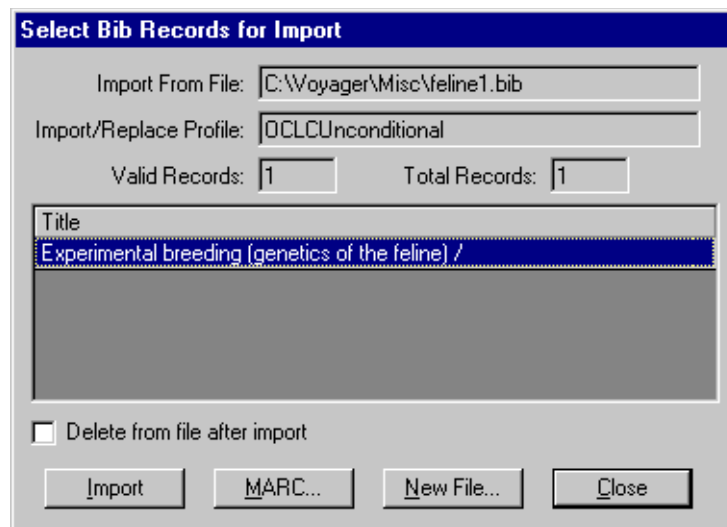
---

#### Adding a Line Item by Importing a Bibliographic Record

---

You can add a line item to your purchase order by importing a bibliographic record from your local PC or a network drive. Voyager adds the imported record to the owning library of the purchase order.

Importing a record begins with opening a single- or multi-record file (often with a `.bib` or `.dat` extension) in a Windows dialog box, which opens the **Select Bib Records for Import** list box (see [Figure 6-14](#)).



**Figure 6-14. Select Bib Records for Import list box**

[Table 6-5](#) describes the fields and buttons on the **Select Bib Records for Import** list box.

**Table 6-5. Fields and Buttons on the Select Bib Records for Import List Box**

Name	Description	Type
Import From File	The directory path and name of the file you selected for import.	Field, read-only
Import/Replace Profile	<p>The Import/Replace profile defined in the <b>Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions</b> dialog box in the System Administration module. (See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> for more information.)</p> <p>If the <b>Import/Replace Profile</b> value is <b>Merge</b> or <b>Replace</b>, the system checks for duplicate records before importing the selected one(s). If it finds a match, it displays a message to that effect and does not import the duplicate record. A duplicate record is defined as an identical record that shares the same owning library. If the owning library differs, the same record will be imported to the new owning library.</p>	Field, read-only
Valid Records	The number of usable bibliographic records in the file.	Field, read-only

**Table 6-5. Fields and Buttons on the Select Bib Records for Import List Box**

Name	Description	Type
Total Records	The total number of bibliographic records in the file.	Field, read-only
Title	The title(s) of the selected record(s) are listed below.	Column head
Delete from file after import	Deletes the imported record(s) from the file after importing has been completed.	Check box
Import	Imports the selected bibliographic record(s) into the owning library of the order site specified on the purchase order.	Button
MARC	<p>Opens a read-only MARC view of a record. Button is inactive when more than one record is selected.</p> <p>The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see <a href="#">Viewing and Editing MARC Records (Cataloging in Acquisitions)</a> on <a href="#">page 13-1</a>. For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see <a href="#">http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server</a> on <a href="#">page 13-16</a>.</p>	Button
New File	Returns you to the <b>Open</b> dialog box to select a different file.	Button
Close	Closes the <b>Select Bib Records for Import</b> list box without opening any records.	Button

When adding a bibliographic record the system checks for a Yes/No value for OPAC Display of Temp Records for your Order/Claim/Pay Location. If the value is Yes, the bibliographic record is set to suppress. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information on group definitions.

The procedure for adding a line item by importing is shown in [Procedure 6-5, Adding a line item by importing a bibliographic record](#).



---

**Procedure 6-5. Adding a line item by importing a bibliographic record**

---

Use the following to add a line item by importing a bibliographic record.

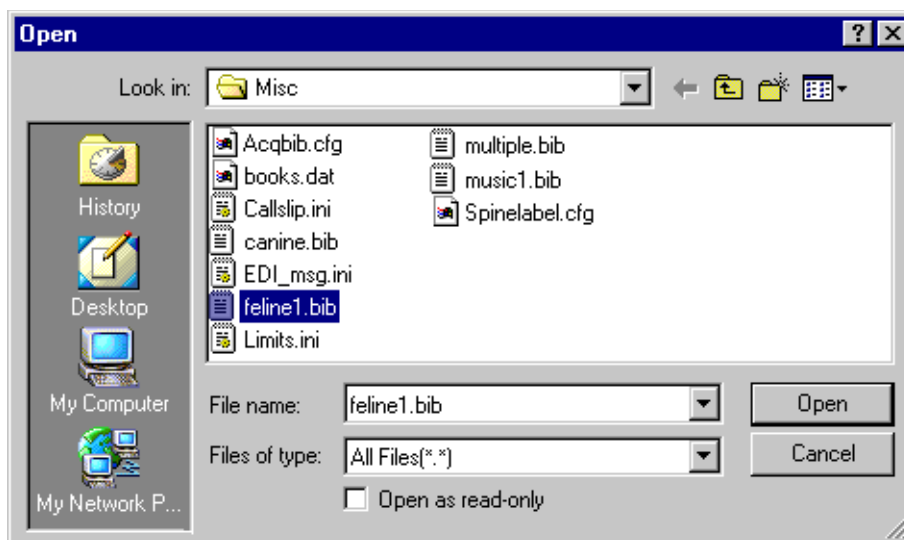
1. Click the **Add Line (Bib Import)** button on the **Purchase Order** dialog box or follow the menu path **Line Items > Add > Bib Import**.

Result: The **Open** dialog box ([Figure 6-15](#)) displays the contents of the last folder you opened in Acquisitions.

2. To change **Look In** folder, click the down arrow beside the field and navigate to the folder containing the file(s) you want to import.

Result: By default, only files with the .bib file extension display. (If the file you want has a different extension, select **All Files** from the **Files of type** field.)

---



---

**Figure 6-15. Open dialog box**

3. Select the file that contains the bibliographic record(s) and click the **Open** button. (Or double-click the file.)

Result: The **Select Bib Records for Import** list box displays the bibliographic record(s) in the file (see [Figure 6-14](#)). If the file contains one record, that record is listed. If the file contains multiple records, each record is listed on a separate line.



**OPTIONAL:**

4. Select the appropriate fields or buttons on the **Select Bib Records for Import** list box. See [Table 6-5](#) for detailed information about individual fields and buttons.
5. Select the bibliographic record(s) that you want to import and click the **Import** button. To select more than one record, hold down the **Ctrl** key and click the records.

Result: If a bibliographic record is imported successfully, the record displays as a line item on the purchase order (see [Figure 6-11](#)).

You can now add more line items to your purchase order or begin entering more information for the line item(s) you have added. (See [Adding Line Item Information](#) on [page 6-26](#).)

---

### **Adding a Line Item Using Bibliographic IDs**

---

You can use the bibliographic ID number of a record in your database to create a new line item if

- you know the complete ID number of the bibliographic record, and
- the owning library of the bibliographic record is the same as the owning library from which you are ordering or if, in the System Administration module, the **Attach Holdings to Any Bibliographic Record** check box for your Acq/Serials Security Profile is checked. (See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.)

The procedure for adding a line item by bibliographic id is shown in [Procedure 6-6, Adding a line item by bibliographic ID](#).



#### **Procedure 6-6. Adding a line item by bibliographic ID**

---

Use the following to add a line item by bibliographic ID.

1. From the **Purchase Order** dialog box, follow the menu path **Line Item > Add > By Bib ID**.

Result: The **New line item by Bib record id** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-16](#)).



---

**Figure 6-16. New line item by Bib record id dialog box**

2. In the **Enter the record id** field, enter the ID number of the bibliographic record that you want to add to the purchase order as a line item.
3. Click the **OK** button.

Result: The record displays as a line item on the purchase order (see [Figure 6-11](#)).

You can now add more line items to your purchase order or begin entering more information for the line item(s) you have added. See [Adding Line Item Information](#) on [page 6-26](#).

---

## **Adding Line Item Information**

---

Line items added to purchase orders are listed in the bottom pane of the **Purchase Order** dialog box (see [Figure 6-17](#)). Information available for each row/item includes the following.

- Line item number and order status
- Line item title
- Price adjustments
- Number of copies on order
- Intended location(s) (if more than one, **<<Multiple>>** displays in the **Location** column, and you must access the full details of the record for complete location information)
- Fund(s) used to purchase the item (if more than one, **<<Multiple>>** displays in the **Fund** column, and you must access the full details of the record for complete fund information)
- Total amount of the line item (all copies and adjustments)
- Line item type

- Additional notes

Information not initially visible can be viewed by resizing the existing columns to make room for more columns. You can also click and drag column headers to rearrange entire columns of information. Holding your cursor over a table cell whose contents have been truncated displays the entire contents of that cell. You can view more line item data by selecting the line item and clicking the **Detailed Line Item** button.

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line
1 / Pending	Jungle books / Rudyard Ki	\$0.00	0			

**Figure 6-17. Purchase Order dialog box with one line item**

**NOTE:**

To view additional line items that fall below the bottom pane, expand the pane by holding your cursor just above the pane until your cursor turns into a small horizontal bar with arrows. Click and drag the cursor up to expand the line item pane.

After you have added a line item to your purchase order, you must enter additional information about the item. You can do this using the Quick Line Item feature or the Detailed Line Item feature.

- The Quick Line Item feature allows you to enter basic, required line item information in one dialog box. See [Quick Line Item](#) on [page 6-28](#).

- The Detailed Line Item feature allows you to enter more detailed, complex information across several tabs. See [Detailed Line Item](#) on [page 6-32](#).

## Quick Line Item

---

The Quick Line Item feature uses only required and common fields such as price, fund, and intended location to create line items. If you have enabled this feature, the **Quick Line Item** dialog box ([Figure 6-18](#)) opens when you select the line item and click the **Quick Line Item** button on the **Purchase Order** dialog box.

To enable this feature, click **Tools>Workflows>Line Items** tab. For more information, see [Quick Line Items - Purchase Orders/Invoices](#) on [page 19-6](#).

**Quick Line Item For Purchase Orders**

List Price:  PrePay Amount per copy:

Intended Location:

Number of Copies:

Link to Holdings:

Ship To:

Ledger:

Commit to Fund:

Line Item Type:

Requester:

Instructions to Vendor:

Notes:

☒ Open line item details after saving

---

**Figure 6-18. Quick Line Item dialog box**

You can use the Quick Line Item feature to edit a line item if the following is true.

- The item contains a single intended location.
- The line item only has a single fund.
- There are no price adjustments to the line item.
- The status is Pending.

Use the Detailed Line Item feature to edit orders that do not have a status of Pending or to add intended locations to a line item. See [Detailed Line Item](#) on [page 6-32](#).


The Quick Line Item feature can be used to update the intended location of a line item. It also requires you to specify new Copies, Holdings and Ledger/Fund information.

[Table 6-6](#) describes the **Quick Line Item** dialog box fields in detail, including the corresponding fields on the tabs of the Detailed Line Items dialog box. Required fields are designated by an (R).

**Table 6-6. Quick Line Item dialog box fields**

Option	Description	Tab on Detailed Line Items form
List Price	The list price of the item.	Price
PrePay Amount Per Copy	The amount, if any, paid prior to invoicing. Amount is automatically deducted from the fund and should be subtracted from the <b>Actual Price</b> on the invoice.  Prepaid line item copies cannot be edited on approved purchase orders or rolled over. (See <a href="#">Rollover Rules Eligibility</a> on <a href="#">page 16-19</a> .)	Price
Intended Location (R)	The intended destination of the item(s).	Copies/ Funds
Number of Copies (R)	Active only after you have selected an <b>Intended Location</b> .	Copies/ Funds
Link to Holdings	If holdings records exist for the item, you can link the copies of the line item to a holdings record.  Clicking the ellipsis button opens the <b>Link to Holdings</b> dialog box.  For more information, see <a href="#">Link to Holdings</a> on <a href="#">page 6-59</a> .	Copies/ Funds
Ship To	The location where the item(s) should be shipped.	Copies/ Funds
Ledger (R)	The ledger to which the <b>Commit to Fund</b> for the item belongs.  Enter only if you type the entry for <b>Commit to Fund</b> code rather than using the Find/binoculars button provided and selecting a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy (see <a href="#">Figure 6-19</a> ).	Copies/ Funds

Table 6-6. Quick Line Item dialog box fields

Option	Description	Tab on Detailed Line Items form
Commit to Fund (R)	<p>The allocated fund that will finance this line item purchase. Belongs to the above Ledger.</p> <p> <b>TIP:</b>  <i>Selecting this field using the Find/binoculars button also selects an entry for the <b>Ledger</b> field above it. To set defaults for both fields, see <a href="#">Line Item Copies/Funds Defaults</a> on <a href="#">page 17-8</a>.)</i></p>	Copies/ Funds
Line Item Type	The item's type or form, such as a subscription or single-part monograph.	Type
Requester	The name of the person requesting the item.	Delivery Options
Instructions to Vendor	Any additional instructions to the vendor, up to 60 characters. It is included on the printed purchase order.	Notes
Notes	This is a Line item note.	Notes
Open line item details after saving	<p>Select this option to have the <b>Line Item</b> (detailed) dialog box automatically open upon saving the <b>Quick Line Item</b> dialog box.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b>            This checkbox can be set to default as checked. See <a href="#">Quick Line Items - Purchase Orders/Invoices</a> on <a href="#">page 19-6</a> for more information.</p>	NA

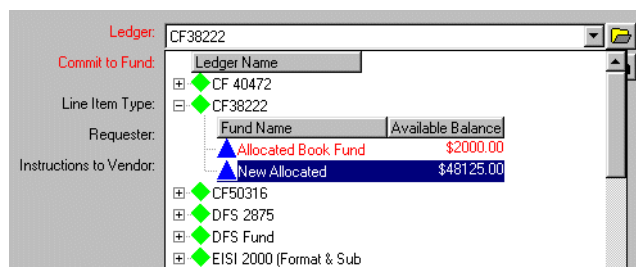


Figure 6-19. Ledger/Fund hierarchy displayed in the Ledger field

The procedure for entering line item information using the Quick Line Item feature is shown in [Procedure 6-7, Entering line item information using the Quick Line Item feature](#).



### Procedure 6-7. Entering line item information using the Quick Line Item feature

Use the following to enter line item information using the Quick Line Item feature.

1. Click the **Quick Line Item** button.

Result: The **Quick Line Item** dialog box displays. See [Figure 6-20](#).



#### TIP:

To have the **Quick Line Item** dialog box open automatically after you add a line item to a purchase order, select the **Enable Quick Line Items Upon Add** check box on the **Line Items** tab of your Session Workflows. See [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more information about this workflow option.

**Quick Line Item For Purchase Orders**

List Price:  PrePay Amount per copy:

Intended Location:

Number of Copies:

Link to Holdings:

Ship To:

Ledger:

Commit to Fund:

Line Item Type:

Requester:

Instructions to Vendor:

Notes:

☒ Open line item details after saving

**Figure 6-20. Quick Line Item dialog box**

2. Enter values in the fields and change any default settings, as necessary.

See [Table 6-6](#) on [page 6-29](#) for a description of the individual fields.

Result: This completes the **Quick Line Item** dialog box.

**OPTIONAL:**

3. Click the **Open line item details after saving** box to automatically display the detailed **Line Item** dialog box after saving the Quick Line Item data. You can set this to default in **Tools>Workflows**. See [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#).
4. Click **Save** or click **Cancel**.

Result: This saves or cancels the Quick Line Item data entered.

---

## Detailed Line Item

---

The Detailed Line Item feature allows you to view and enter information for all aspects of the line item. Click the **Detailed Line Item** button for the selected line item to display in the **Line Item** dialog box. See [Figure 6-21](#).



The screenshot shows a software window titled "Line Item - Structural hearing : tonal coherence in music / by Felix Salzer ; With a foreword ...". The window has a menu bar (File, View, Tools, Help) and a toolbar with icons for Save, Save and Close, Print, Find, and others. Below the toolbar is a tabbed interface with the following tabs: Problems, Claims, Properties, Delivery Options, Notes, Order, Payment History, Receive/Mark, Bib Record, Price, Copies/Funds, Copy Status, and Type. The "Bib Record" tab is currently selected and active. It contains the following fields:

- Title: Structural hearing : tonal coherence in music / by Felix Salzer ; With a foreword by Leopold Mann
- Author: Salzer, Felix.
- Edition:
- Publisher: C. Boni.
- Place: New York :
- Date: 1952
- Series:
- System No: CNV01989386
- LCCN: 52002463
- Bib Record ID: 19675

Below these fields is a section titled "Check the Standard Number you wish to appear on the printed Purchase Order" with the following options:

- ☐ ISSN:
- ☐ ISBN:
- ☐ CODEN:
- ☐ GPO Stock Number:
- ☐ Publication Number:
- ☐ Std Technical Report No:

At the bottom right of the dialog box are three buttons: "Change Bib Record", "MARC...", and "Save".

**Figure 6-21.** Line Item dialog box

Many of the tabs on the **Line Item** dialog box contain information needed to order the item such as the **Price**, **Copies/Funds** and **Delivery Options**. Some tabs contain informational data only such as **Properties** and **Payment History**. Other tabs allow you to conduct various activities related to ordering and receiving line items such as the **Problems**, **Claims**, and **Receive/Mark** tabs.

XREF left off here XREF

For specific information about each of the tabs, see [Table 6-7](#).

**Table 6-7. Line Item dialog box tabs descriptions/references**

Tab	Contents	Page
Bib Record	Displays read-only data from the bibliographic record associated with the line item	<a href="#">Bib Record Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-38</a>
Price	Displays the expected price of an item (the <b>List Price</b> for the purchase order line item), any adjustments or pre-payments, and the actual price of the item (the <b>Actual Price</b> for the invoiced line item.	<a href="#">Price Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-43</a>
Copies/Funds	Stores information about the intended location for the line item, the number of copies to order, and the fund(s) that will pay for the item.	<a href="#">Copies/Funds Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-48</a>
Copy Status	Presents a summary view of the status of each ordered copy.  Ability to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• create and maintain item records</li><li>• create print labels</li><li>• and, if the appropriate conditions are met, unreceive a monograph item</li></ul>	<a href="#">Copy Status Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-62</a>

**Table 6-7. Line Item dialog box tabs descriptions/references**

Tab	Contents	Page
Type	<p>A line item type identifies the characteristics of your purchase order line item such as whether it is a serial, a single part monograph, or a monograph in multiple parts (Subscription, Single Part, or Multi-part types, respectively).</p> <p>Allows you to specify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• line item type, which determines whether the line item receives single or multiple pieces</li> <li>• piece identification (and subscription information such as start date and renewal date for Subscription and Membership line item types)</li> <li>• vendor title number and vendor reference number, and</li> <li>• prediction pattern information (for Subscription types only)</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Type Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-64</a>
Delivery Options	Allows you to provide instructions for the delivery of a line item.	<a href="#">Delivery Options Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-70</a>
Notes	<p>Provides fields for you to enter internal notes and instructions to the vendor.</p> <p>If the order has an invoice associated with it, you can switch views from <b>Order</b> to <b>Invoice</b> using the buttons on the <b>Order/Invoice</b> listbar. (The <b>Invoice</b> button only displays if one or more invoices have been associated with the purchase order.)</p>	<a href="#">Notes Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-72</a>

**Table 6-7. Line Item dialog box tabs descriptions/references**

Tab	Contents	Page
Order	<p>Summarizes information that is stored on the purchase order <b>Header</b> tab.</p> <p>The <b>Order</b> tab also provides direct access to the line item's vendor record and purchase order record, facilitating quick navigation between related groups of information.</p> <p>The fields on the <b>Order</b> tab are read-only, though some buttons access related records that can be edited.</p>	<a href="#">Order Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-74</a>
Payment History	<p>Provides a consolidated history of all expenditures and funds associated with a line item. You can open an invoice or fund associated with the payment from this tab, but the tab itself is read-only, the data system-generated.</p>	<a href="#">Payment History Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-76</a>
Receive/Mark	<p>Allows you to receive an item or mark a line item with pre-defined types (or reasons).</p> <p>For a line item on a purchase order, the <b>Receive/Mark</b> tab activates when the purchase order has been approved. (For a line item on an invoice, the <b>Receive/Mark</b> tab is active if the invoice is pending or has been approved.)</p>	<a href="#">Receive/Mark Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-77</a>
Problems	<p>Displays all copies of a monograph line item that have been manually marked by an Acquisitions operator or automatically marked by the system.</p> <p>Enables an authorized operator to process marked line item copies directly from the line item, eliminating the need to search for the copies on the <b>Problems</b> workspace.</p>	<a href="#">Problems Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-79</a>

**Table 6-7. Line Item dialog box tabs descriptions/references**

Tab	Contents	Page
Claims	Displays all claims that have been generated for copies of a monograph line item. It enables an authorized operator to process these claims directly from the line item, eliminating the need to search for copies on the <b>Problems</b> workspace.  Authorized operators can update and generate claims from the <b>Claims</b> tab.	<a href="#">Claims Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-81</a>
Properties	Displays historical information about the line item.	<a href="#">Properties Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-82</a>

For instructions on adding or editing information to a line item using the Detailed Line Item feature, see [Procedure 6-8, Adding and editing line item information using the Detailed Line Item feature](#).



#### **Procedure 6-8. Adding and editing line item information using the Detailed Line Item feature**

Use the following to add or edit line item information using the Detailed Line Item feature.

1. Click the line item that you want to edit.

Result: The corresponding row highlights.

2. Click the **Detailed Line Item** button below the line item section of the purchase order or select **Detailed Line Item** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Line Item** dialog box opens.

3. Click the tabs that store the information you want to add or edit, and enter/change information as needed. See [Table 6-7](#) on [page 6-34](#) for reference pages to detailed information about the different tabs.

4. Click the **Save and Close** button when your changes are complete.

Result: The line item information is added or edited.

## Bib Record Tab

The **Bib Record** tab ([Figure 6-22](#)) displays read-only data from the bibliographic record associated with the line item.

From the **Bib Record** tab you can do the following:

- Choose one of six standard identification numbers to have printed on the paper purchase order that goes to the vendor.
- Change bibliographic record links and associated holdings and line item copies.
- Display the record in MARC format.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

- Save tab settings.

The screenshot shows the 'Line Item - Structural hearing : tonal coherence in music / by Felix Salzer ; With a foreword ...' dialog box. The 'Bib Record' tab is selected, displaying bibliographic data for the item. The data includes Title, Author, Edition, Publisher, Place, Date, Series, System No., LCCN, and Bib Record ID. Below this, there is a section for selecting a standard number to appear on the printed Purchase Order, with radio buttons for ISSN, ISBN, CODEN, GPO Stock Number, Publication Number, and Std Technical Report No. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Change Bib Record', 'MARC...', and 'Save'.

Check the Standard Number you wish to appear on the printed Purchase Order	
<input type="radio"/> ISSN:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="radio"/> ISBN:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="radio"/> CODEN:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="radio"/> GPO Stock Number:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="radio"/> Publication Number:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="radio"/> Std Technical Report No.:	<input type="text"/>

Figure 6-22. Bib Record tab, Line Item dialog box

[Table 6-8](#) describes the information contained in each field and the bibliographic record source for each.

**Table 6-8. Bib Record tab, field descriptions**

Field	Description	MARC field
Title	The title of the bibliographic record.	245 field
Author	The author of the item.	100 field (personal) or 101 field (corporate)
Edition	The version of the title being ordered. For example, the second revised edition.	250 field
Publisher	The name of the publisher.	260 subfield b field
Place	The place where the title was published.	260 subfield a field
Date	The date of the title's publication.	260 subfield d field
Series	A group of items related to each other, where one item is considered part of the group or series.	440 field
System No.	The MARC code (enclosed in parentheses) of the organization originating the system control number, followed immediately by the number.	035 subfield a field
LCCN	The Library of Congress Control Number.	010 field
Bib Record ID	The ID of the record in the Voyager database.	NA

The bottom section of the **Bib Record** tab contains the standard numbers that you can choose to have appear on the printed purchase order. [Table 6-9](#) contains a list of the available standard numbers.

**Table 6-9. Available standard numbers on the Bib Record tab**

Number	Description
ISSN	International Standard Number.
ISBN	International Book Number.
CODEN	Unique identifier (6 characters) for scientific and technical publications.
GPO Item Number	Government Printing Office item number.
Publication Number	The alphanumeric identifier designed for music publications.



**Table 6-9. Available standard numbers on the Bib Record tab**

Standard Technical Report Number	The complete alphanumeric (32 maximum characters) identifier designated for technical publications.
----------------------------------	---

See [Table 6-10](#) for processing options.

**Table 6-10. Bib Record tab processing options**

Option	Description
Change Bib Record	Select this option to change the bibliographic record link and associated holdings and line item copies. This change is cascaded to any linked purchase orders and invoices.  Clicking this button initiates a series of ordered steps to complete the process.
MARC	Use this option to display the record in MARC format.
Save	Use this option to store/retain the options selected on this tab.

For a variety of reasons, occasionally, line items may be linked to an incorrect bibliographic and/or holdings record. See [Procedure 6-9, Changing bibliographic record links on approved line items](#) to make the changes you need to update the links.

**NOTE:**

In order to make link changes, the operator's security profile must have **Change Line Item Bib Record** selected on the **Profile Values** tab in **Security - Acquisitions/Serials Profiles** of Voyager System Administration.



---

**Procedure 6-9. Changing bibliographic record links on approved line items**

---

Use the following to change bibliographic record links and associated holdings and line item copies on approved line items.

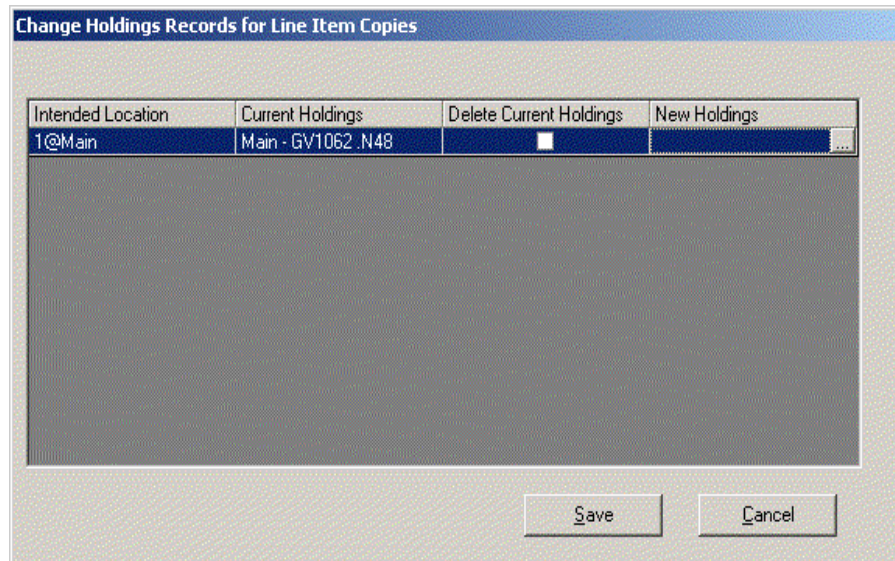
1. Access the **Bib Record** tab on the detailed **Line Item** dialog box.
2. Click the **Change Bib Record** button.

Result: The **Search** dialog box displays.



3. Search for and select a new bibliographic record to which you want to link the line item.

Result: The **Change Holdings Records for Line Item Copies** dialog box displays. See [Figure 6-23](#). Current information displays in the **Intended Location** and **Current Holdings** columns. The actions you can perform display in the **Delete Current Holdings** and **New Holdings** column.



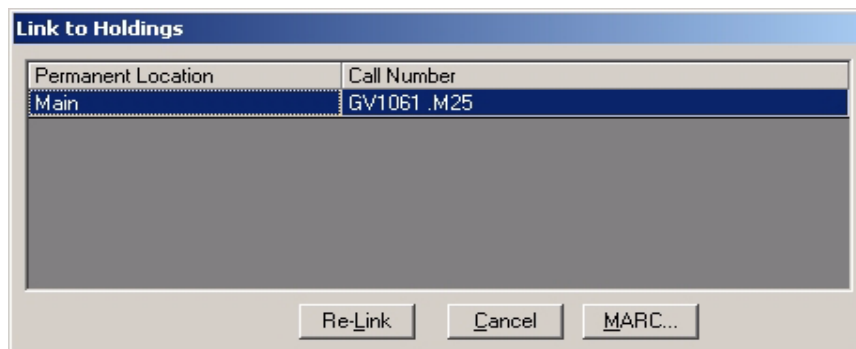
**Figure 6-23. Change Holdings Records for Line Item Copies dialog box**

4. (Optional) Specify **Delete Current Holdings** by clicking the check box.

Result: This causes the old holdings record(s) to be deleted.

5. Click the ellipses button in the **New Holdings** column to link to an existing MFHD (or leave it blank to create a new MFHD).

Result: The **Link to Holdings** dialog box displays. See [Figure 6-24](#).



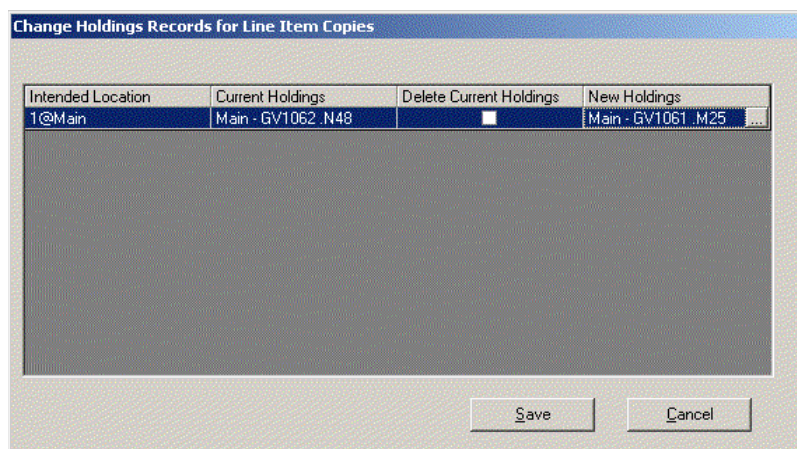
---

**Figure 6-24. Link to Holdings for Change Holdings Records for Line Item Copies**

6. Click **Re-Link**.

Result: The **New Holdings** column is updated to reflect the re-linked holdings change. See [Figure 6-25](#).

---

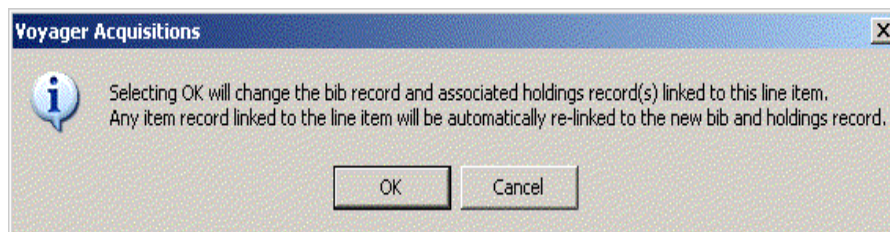


---

**Figure 6-25. Re-Linked holdings**

7. Click **Save** to process the change(s).

Result: An informational warning message displays. See [Figure 6-26](#).



**Figure 6-26. Informational warning message**

8. Click **OK** to confirm your specified changes or click **Cancel**.

On the **Bib Record** tab you can select which of the standard numbers you want to appear on the printed purchase order. See [Procedure 6-10, Selecting a standard number for the printed purchase order](#).



#### **Procedure 6-10. Selecting a standard number for the printed purchase order**

Use the following to select a standard number to print on the purchase order.

1. Access the **Bib Record** tab on the detailed **Line Item** dialog box.
2. Click the radio button beside the identification number that you want to use on the printed purchase order. See [Table 6-9](#) on [page 6-39](#) for information about the identification types.
3. To save the standard number selection, click the **Save** button

Result: The standard number is selected.

#### **Price Tab**

The **Price** tab ([Figure 6-27](#)) displays the expected price of an item (the **List Price** for the purchase order line item), any adjustments or pre-payments, and the actual price of the item (the **Actual Price** for the invoiced line item.)

To access the tab, click the **Price** tab. You can also select **Price** from the **View** menu.

The screenshot displays the 'Line Item dialog box - Price tab'. At the top, there are tabs for Problems, Claims, Properties, Delivery Options, Notes, Order, Payment History, and Receive/Mark. Below these are tabs for Bib Record, Price (selected), Copies/Funds, Copy Status, and Type. The main area is titled 'Order/Invoice' and 'Order 170'. It contains a listbar with an 'Order 170' button and an 'Invoice' button. The 'Price' tab shows the following calculation: List Price: \$39.95 × Quantity: 1 = Line Item Total: \$39.95 + Total Adjustments: \$0.00 = Adjusted Price: \$39.95. Below this is a 'PrePay Amount per copy' field set to \$0.00. The 'Adjustment Details' section features a table with columns: Charge Type, How To Apply, Amount, Adjustment, and Adjusted Price. At the bottom of the table are buttons for 'Add...', 'Edit...', and 'Remove'. A 'Save' button is located at the bottom right of the dialog.

Figure 6-27. Line Item dialog box - Price tab

**NOTE:**

After you have linked an invoice to this order, an invoice button displays with the order button on the **Order/Invoice** listbar (**Order 170** in [Figure 6-27](#)). This allows you to toggle between expected and invoiced prices.

The **Adjustment Details** section of the **Price** tab allows you to enter adjustments to the line item price in an **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box (see [Figure 6-28](#)). The fields on the **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box correspond directly to the columns in the **Adjustment Details** section of the **Price** tab.

Figure 6-28. Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box for line item price

[Table 6-11](#) describes the fields and columns on the **Price** tab, including the **Adjustment Details** section (or **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box).

Table 6-11. Price tab fields and columns

Name	Data source	Description
List Price	User enters on <b>Price</b> tab	The list price of one copy of the item.
Quantity	User enters on <b>Copies/Funds</b> tab, system draws value from there	The number of items ordered.
Line Item Total	System multiplies <b>List Price</b> entry by <b>Quantity</b> entry	The total cost of the line item (times the number ordered)
Total Adjustments	System adds the amount(s) from the <b>Adjustment</b> column of the <b>Adjustment Details</b> section.	The total adjustment amount(s) from the <b>Adjustment Details</b> section. Can be a positive or negative amount
Adjusted Price	System adds the <b>Line Item Total</b> to the <b>Total Adjustments</b>	The price adjusted for number of copies and <b>Adjustment Details (Total Adjustments)</b>
PrePay Amount per copy	User enters amount, if any.	Amounts are immediately expended from fund(s) and must be subtracted from the <b>Actual Price</b> on invoices
<b>Adjustment Details</b> section / <b>Add/Edit Adjustment</b> dialog box		
Charge Type	User selects from drop-down	The type of adjustment, such as shipping charges

**Table 6-11. Price tab fields and columns**

Name	Data source	Description
How to Apply/ Application Method	User selects from drop-down	How the amount is figured--for example, by percent of total cost (a percentage is based on the adjusted price, not the line item total of the previous row.)
Amount	User enters in field	The amount of the charge or discount, relative to the <b>Application Method</b>
Adjustment	System calculates from previous two entries	The amount added or subtracted to the line item, based on the previous two entries
Adjusted Price	System calculates from list price, number of copies, and adjustments	The price of the line item after all copies and adjustments have been calculated

The procedure for entering line item price information is shown in [Procedure 6-11](#), [Entering line item price information on the Price tab](#).



---

**Procedure 6-11. Entering line item price information on the Price tab**

---

Use the following to enter line item price information on the **Price** tab of the detailed **Line Item** dialog box.

1. Access the **Price** tab on the detailed **Line Item** dialog box.
2. Enter values for the **List Price** and, if applicable, the **PrePay Amount** per copy field. For more information about individual fields, see [Table 6-11](#).

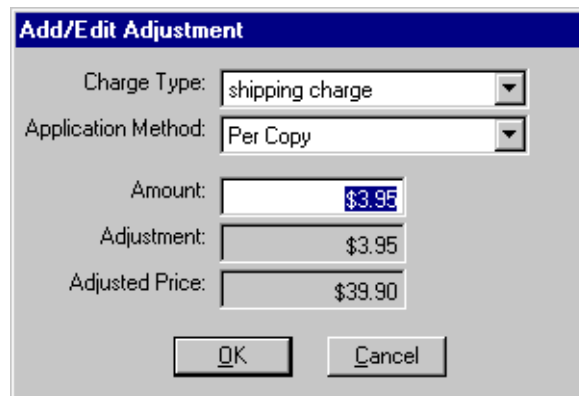
**NOTE:**

If a line item contains prepaid copies, it is not eligible for rollover (for more information, see [Rollover Rules Eligibility](#) on [page 16-19](#).) Prepaid line item copies cannot be edited on approved purchase orders.

**OPTIONAL:**

3. *To adjust charges for the line item, click the **Add** button in the **Adjustment Details** section.*

Result: The **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-29](#)).



The dialog box is titled "Add/Edit Adjustment". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Charge Type:** A dropdown menu with "shipping charge" selected.
- Application Method:** A dropdown menu with "Per Copy" selected.
- Amount:** A text input field containing "\$3.95".
- Adjustment:** A text input field containing "\$3.95".
- Adjusted Price:** A text input field containing "\$39.90".
- Buttons:** "OK" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom.

**Figure 6-29.** Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Enter or change values in the editable fields. See [Table 6-11](#) for details about individual fields.

**OPTIONAL:**

5. Click **OK** to save the adjustment, **Cancel** to discard it.

Result: After completing an adjustment, details about the adjustment display as a row in the **Adjustment Details** section of the **Price** tab (see [Figure 6-30](#)).

**OPTIONAL:**

6. Repeat Steps [3](#) - [5](#) as needed. To edit an existing adjustment, click to select it; and click the **Edit** button. To remove an adjustment, click to select it; and click the **Remove** button.

**Order 170**

List Price:  X Quantity:  = Line Item Total:  + Total Adjustments:  = Adjusted Price:

PrePay Amount per copy:

Adjustment Details

Charge Type	How To Apply	Amount	Adjustment	Adjusted Price
discount	Percent of Cost	-10	-4.00	35.95
shipping charge	Per Copy	3.95	3.95	39.90

---

**Figure 6-30. Price tab, Adjustment Details section**

7. Click the **Save** button to save your changes.

Result: The line item price information is entered.

**NOTE:**

If you don't save your information, you will be prompted to save it when you click another tab or when you attempt to close the **Line Item** dialog box.

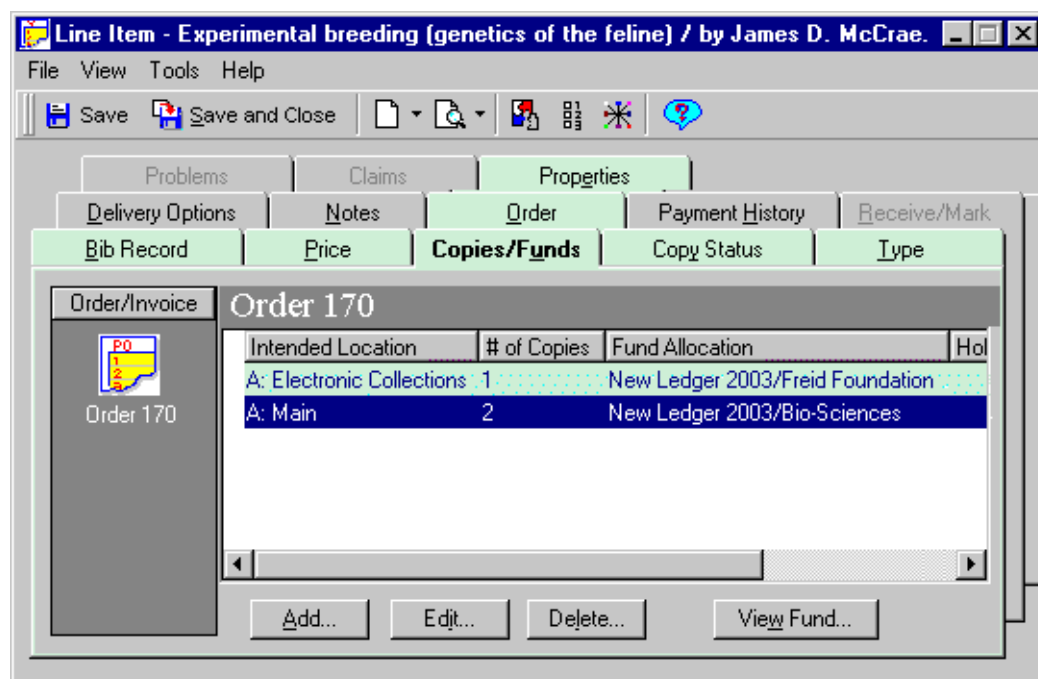
---

## Copies/Funds Tab

The **Copies/Funds** tab ([Figure 6-31](#)) stores information about the intended location for the line item, the number of copies to order, and the fund(s) that will pay for the item.

To open the tab, click the **Copies/Funds** tab, select **Copies/Funds** from the **View** menu.





**Figure 6-31. Line Item dialog box, Copies/Funds tab**

Columns on the **Copies/Funds** tab take their values from the **Copies and Funds** dialog box ([Figure 6-32](#)), which opens when you click the **Add** button or select an existing location/copy row and click the **Edit** button.

On a pending purchase order, you can delete the copy and fund information for each location by clicking the location's row, then the **Delete** button.

After a purchase order has been approved, only an operator with the proper authority can edit the purchase order (see [Editing Line Item Data on an Approved Purchase Order](#) on [page 6-108](#).)

**NOTE:**

Initially, only the **Order** button displays in the **Order/Invoice** listbar. After copies have been linked to one or more invoice(s), the **Order** and **Invoice** buttons allow you to toggle back and forth between the purchase order and invoice(s) associated with the line item.

Once copies and funds have been defined and the **Copies and Funds** dialog box closed, the copies and funds display in a hierarchical structure (see [Figure 6-37](#) on [page 6-58](#).) This structure provides a consolidated display of all locations and funds.

### Copies and Funds Dialog Box

The **Copies and Funds** dialog box provides fields for you to enter copy and fund information for your line item. It opens when you click the **Add** or **Edit** button on the **Copies/Funds** tab. The initial view of the dialog box displays (see [Figure 6-32](#)).

#### NOTE:

The Extended Fund Allocation view of the **Copies and Funds** dialog box provides additional buttons and fields for more complex divisions of copies and funds (see [Extended Fund Allocation Features](#) on [page 6-53](#).)

**Figure 6-32. Copies and Funds dialog box**

[Table 6-12](#) describes the fields in the **Copies and Funds** dialog box (which correspond to the column headers on the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box). Required fields display in red text (though you may change this color in your Session Preferences, see [Colors and Fonts Tab](#) on [page 18-4](#)). Also, various defaults can be set, see [Line Item Copies/Funds Defaults](#) on [page 17-8](#).

**Table 6-12. Copies and Funds dialog box, fields and values**

Field	Description	How to complete
Cost per copy	The cost of the item per copy after adjusted amounts.	Read-only. Completed on the <b>Price</b> tab.
PrePay per copy	The amount, if any, prepaid on the item.	Read-only. Completed on the <b>Price</b> tab.

**Table 6-12. Copies and Funds dialog box, fields and values**

Field	Description	How to complete
Intended Location	The intended destination of the copy/copies.	Select from the drop-down list.
# of Copies	The number of copies to order for this location.	Active only after you have selected an <b>Intended Location</b> . Type the number or use the up and down arrow buttons beside the field.
Link to Holdings	Available if holdings record(s) exist for the item. Allows you to link copy/copies to a holdings record.	Click the ellipsis button to open the <b>Link to Holdings</b> dialog box, and make a selection from there. See <a href="#">Link to Holdings</a> on <a href="#">page 6-59</a> for more information.
Ship To	The location where the item(s) should be shipped.	Select a location from the drop-down list.
Ledger	The ledger to which the <b>Fund</b> for the item belongs.	Select from the drop-down list (only if you will type the entry for the <b>Fund</b> field below), OR click the folder button and navigate through the ledger/fund hierarchies ( <a href="#">Figure 6-33</a> on <a href="#">page 6-52</a> ) to find the one you want, OR see the Find/binoculars button method below.
Fund	The allocated fund that will finance this line item purchase. Belongs to the above <b>Ledger</b> .	Type the fund code into the field and click the ellipsis button to verify, OR search for the fund using the Find (binoculars) button.  <b>NOTE:</b> Selecting this field using the Find/binoculars button also populates the <b>Ledger</b> field.
Extended Fund Allocation (button)	Expands the <b>Copies and Funds</b> dialog box to allow you to choose more than one fund, change a fund, or alter the percentage of a fund's responsibility.	Click to expand the <b>Copies and Funds</b> dialog box to work with ledgers and funds.  See <a href="#">Procedure 6-13, Editing extended fund allocations</a> , on page <a href="#">6-55</a> .

The screenshot shows a software interface for managing ledger entries. On the left, there are labels for 'Ledger:', 'Commit to Fund:', 'Line Item Type:', 'Requester:', and 'Instructions to Vendor:'. The main area displays a hierarchical tree structure. The top level is 'CF38222'. Below it, there is a 'Fund Name' table with two rows: 'Allocated Book Fund' with an 'Available Balance' of '\$2000.00', and 'New Allocated' with an 'Available Balance' of '\$48125.00'. Below the table, there are several other ledger entries: 'CF40472', 'CF38222' (with a minus sign icon), 'CF50316', 'DFS 2875', 'DFS Fund', and 'EISI 2000 (Format & Sub'.

**Figure 6-33. Ledger/Fund hierarchy displayed in the Ledger field**

The procedure to add or edit copies and fund is shown in [Procedure 6-12, Adding/editing copies and funds](#).



#### **Procedure 6-12. Adding/editing copies and funds**

Use the following to add or edit copies and funds for a line item.



**TIP:**

*To simplify the creation of your line items, default values can be applied to some of the fields on the **Copies/Funds** tab. See [Line Item Copies/Funds Defaults](#) on [page 17-8](#) for more information.*

1. Open the **Line Item** dialog box for the item and click the **Copies/Funds** tab.

Result: The **Copies/Funds** tab opens.

2. To add a copy and fund to the line item purchase order, click the **Add** button near the bottom of the **Copies/Funds** tab. To edit an existing copy and fund, click the row containing the copy and fund, then click the **Edit** button.

Result: The **Copies and Funds** dialog box opens. [Figure 6-34](#) displays a completed version.

The image shows a software dialog box titled "Copies and Funds". It contains several input fields and buttons. The fields are: "Cost per copy:" with a value of "\$39.95", "PrePay per copy:" with a value of "\$0.00", "Intended Location:" with a dropdown menu showing "1 @ A: Main", "# of Copies:" with a value of "1", "Link to Holdings:" with a text field "A: Main" and a browse button "...", "Ship To:" with a dropdown menu showing "B: Circulation Desk", "Ledger:" with a dropdown menu showing "New Ledger 2003" and a browse button, and "Fund:" with a text field "whatever" and a browse button. At the bottom, there are three buttons: "Extended Fund Allocation >>", "Save", and "Close".

**Figure 6-34. Copies and Funds dialog box, completed**

3. Enter or edit values for all required fields and any optional fields you want. Use [Table 6-12](#) for detailed instructions and information about individual fields.
4. Click the **Save** button to save your entries.

**NOTE:**

The **Extended Fund Allocation >>** button automatically saves your entries.

5. If your entries are complete and you will not be using the Extended Fund Allocation feature, click the **Close** button to return to the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box (see [Figure 6-37](#)). Otherwise, continue with [Procedure 6-13, Editing extended fund allocations](#) or [Procedure 6-14, Adding an extended fund allocation](#).

Result: If you clicked **Save**, the copies and funds information is added or edited.

### Extended Fund Allocation Features

The extended fund allocation allows you to

- specify different funds for specific copies in your line item order
- split the financing of one or more copies between two or more funds
- add and delete copies from the line item order, and
- add, edit, or remove funds from the line item order.

When you extend the **Copies and Funds** dialog box by clicking the **Extended Fund Allocation >>** button, the **Ledger** and **Fund** fields are replaced by a new **Funds** section (see [Figure 6-35](#)).

**Copies and Funds**

Cost per copy: \$39.90      PrePay per copy: \$0.00

Intended Location: 1 @ A: Electronic Collections

# of Copies: 1

Link to Holdings: A: Main

Ship To: A: Electronic Collections

**Funds**

Copy Number: 1      Add Copy      Delete Copy

Fund	%	Amount	Prepaid
New Ledger 2003/Freid Foundation	100	39.90	.00

Add Fund...  
Edit Fund...  
Remove Fund  
Save Copy

Close

Expanded section

**Figure 6-35. Copies and Funds dialog box, expanded**

[Table 6-13](#) describes the fields, buttons, and columns on the extended portion of the **Copies and Funds** dialog box.

**Table 6-13. Extended Fund Allocation section, descriptions**

Name	Description
Copy Number drop-down field	Lists each copy by number, also contains an <b>All</b> selection for assigning the same fund structure to all line item copies.
Add Copy button	Adds a copy with the same fund information as the copy selected in the <b>Copy Number</b> field.
Delete Copy button	Deletes the copy selected in the <b>Copy Number</b> field.
Fund column	The name/code of the fund assigned to the copy.
% column	The percent of the copy cost covered by the fund.
Amount column	The dollar amount covered by the fund.
Prepaid column	The amount, if any, prepaid for the copy.

**Table 6-13. Extended Fund Allocation section, descriptions**

Name	Description
Add Fund button	Opens the <b>Add/Edit Fund Allocation</b> dialog box with blank entries.
Edit Fund button	Opens the <b>Add/Edit Fund Allocation</b> dialog box with entries for the selected fund.
Remove Fund button	Removes the selected fund from use in the line item order.
Save Copy button	Saves entered information for the copy/fund.

Before you can add extended fund allocations, you often must edit an existing allocation (to change the percent allocated from 100, for example, to 50).

The procedure to change fund allocations is shown in [Procedure 6-13, Editing extended fund allocations](#).



### **Procedure 6-13. Editing extended fund allocations**

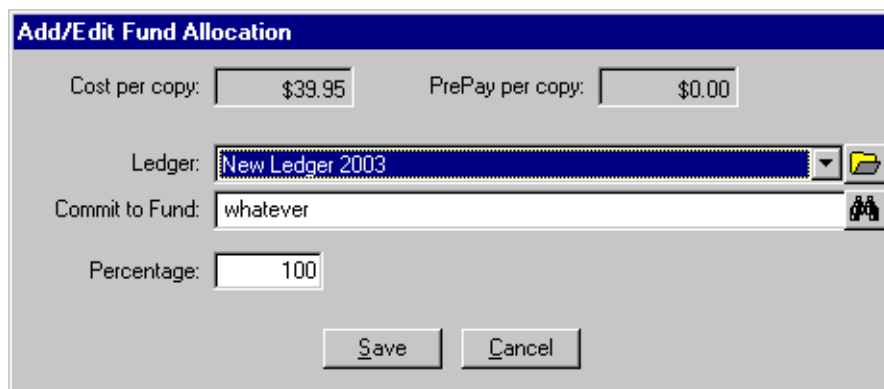
Use the following to change all or part of a fund's allocation.

1. From the **Copies and Funds** dialog box, click the **Extended Fund Allocation >>** button.

Result: Voyager saves your copy and fund entries and expands the **Copies and Funds** dialog box (see [Figure 6-35](#)).

2. To allocate (or change the allocation of) funds for one copy, select the copy number from the **Copy Number** drop-down list. To set identical allocations for all copies, select **All** from the **Copy Number** drop-down list.
3. Click the row containing the current fund in the extended **Funds** section, then click the **Edit Fund** button.

Result: The **Add/Edit Fund Allocation** dialog box opens ([Figure 6-36](#)) with your previously entered selections.

The image shows a software dialog box titled "Add/Edit Fund Allocation". It has a blue title bar. Inside, there are several input fields: "Cost per copy:" with a text box containing "\$39.95", "PrePay per copy:" with a text box containing "\$0.00", "Ledger:" with a dropdown menu showing "New Ledger 2003" and a folder icon to its right, "Commit to Fund:" with a text box containing "whatever" and a group of three people icon to its right, and "Percentage:" with a text box containing "100". At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

---

**Figure 6-36. Add/Edit Fund Allocation dialog box**

4. Change the values for **Ledger**, **Commit to Fund**, and/or **Percentage** as needed. If you will be sharing the copy across more than one fund, the total **Percentage** should equal 100.
5. Click the **Save** button to save your changes, the **Cancel** button to cancel them.

Result: The **Add/Edit Fund Allocation** dialog box closes and any changes you saved display in the **Funds** section of the extended **Copies and Funds** dialog box.

If you reduced a fund's percentage, you are now able to add a new fund for the copy. Use [Procedure 6-14, Adding an extended fund allocation](#), on page [6-57](#)."

6. If your changes are complete, click the **Save Copy** button, then the **Close** button below the **Funds** section.

Result: The fund's allocation is changed. The **Copies and Funds** dialog box closes, and all copies and funds for the item display in a hierarchical structure on the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box (see [Figure 6-37](#)).

---

The procedure for adding an extended fund allocation for a copy is shown in [Procedure 6-14, Adding an extended fund allocation](#).





#### Procedure 6-14. Adding an extended fund allocation

Use the following to add an extended fund allocation to a copy.

1. From the extended **Copies and Funds** dialog box, click the **Add Fund** button.

Result: The **Add/Edit Fund Allocation** dialog box opens with no previous entries.

2. Select the ledger/fund combination you want to use for the copy. See [Table 6-12](#) for instructions on selecting a ledger and fund.
3. Enter the percentage of the cost that you want the fund to cover in the **Percentage** field. If the copy or copies are being shared across more than one fund, the funds must add up to 100%. (Repeat Steps 1 - 3, as necessary, until your copy or copies have been funded 100%.)
4. To save the fund information, click the **Save** button. To cancel the addition of the fund, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: Saved changes display in the fund list on the **Copies and Funds** dialog box.

5. If your changes are complete, click the **Save Copy** button, then the **Close** button below the **Funds** section.

Result: An extended fund allocation is added to a copy. The **Copies and Funds** dialog box closes, and all copies and funds for the item display in a hierarchical structure on the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box (see [Figure 6-37](#)).

#### Other Fund Activities

Other activities you can perform using the Extended Fund Allocation feature include

- adding and deleting copies from the line item order, and
- adding, editing, or removing funds from the line item order.

To perform these activities, see [Table 6-13](#) for an explanation of all of the objects in the extended **Funds** section and how they work.

## Copies/Funds Tab Hierarchy

The copy and fund information displays in a hierarchical structure on the **Copies/Funds** tab (Figure 6-37) after fund allocations have been completed.

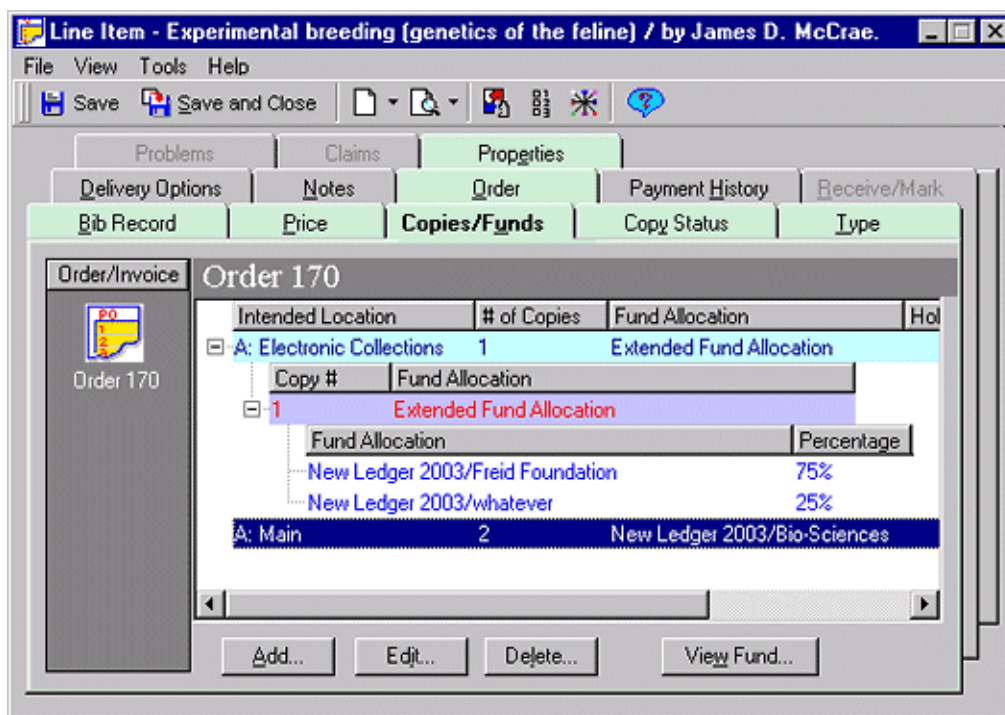


Figure 6-37. Copies/Funds tab, hierarchy

You can navigate through the locations, copies, and funds by clicking the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy, the minus (-) signs to close the levels.

Each location for which you are ordering copies displays up to three levels in the hierarchy.

- The first level displays the intended location, the number of copies ordered for the location, fund allocation information (if more than one fund is used, **Extended Fund Allocation** displays), holdings information (if relevant), and the **Ship To** location. If all of the copies use the same fund, only the first level is displayed. If the copies use different funds, or if one or more of the copies uses more than one fund, the second level is shown.
- The second level displays copy number and fund allocation for each copy. If one or more of the copies uses more than one fund, a third hierarchical level is shown.

- The third level displays the funds that are used for a single copy. The percentage of the cost that each fund is responsible for also displays.

The procedure for deleting copies and funds is shown in [Procedure 6-15, Deleting copies and funds on the Copies/Funds tab](#).



---

#### Procedure 6-15. Deleting copies and funds on the Copies/Funds tab

---

Use the following to delete copies and funds from the **Copies/Funds** tab.

1. Open the **Line Item** dialog box for the item and click the **Copies/Funds** tab.

Result: The **Copies/Funds** tab opens.

2. On the **Copies/Funds** tab, click the line for the copy and fund information that you want to delete.
3. Click the **Delete** button.

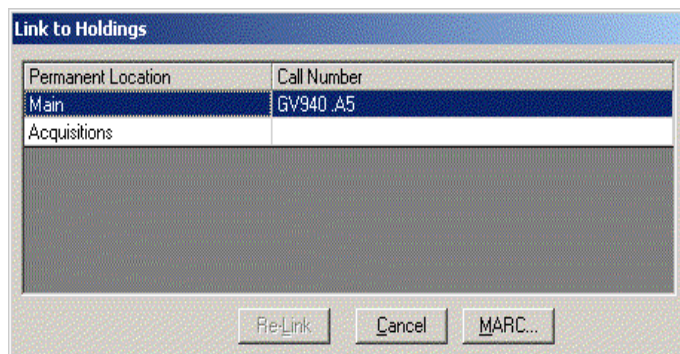
Result: A confirmation message displays if you have elected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) Click the **Yes** button to continue. Click the **No** button to cancel the removal of the copy and fund information. If you have not elected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

Result: If you clicked **Yes**, the deletion is complete.

---

#### Link to Holdings

When you click the ellipsis button beside the **Link to Holdings** field on the **Copies and Funds** dialog box (see [Figure 6-34](#)), the **Link to Holdings** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-38](#)).



---

**Figure 6-38. Link to Holdings dialog box**

The **Link to Holdings** dialog box shows the permanent location and call number (if one exists) of any existing holdings records for the item. The dialog box also contains the following buttons.

Button	Description
<b>Re-Link</b>	Links the selected holdings record to the item on the <b>Copies and Funds</b> dialog box. The holdings location displays in the <b>Link to Holdings</b> field on the <b>Copies and Funds</b> dialog box.

**NOTE:**

The **Re-Link** button is only active when more than one link option displays on the **Link to Holdings** dialog box and the holdings other than the current link is selected. Use **Re-Link** to identify a new holdings link other than the current link.

<b>MARC</b>	Displays the MARC holdings record for the selected holdings location.
-------------	---

The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.

**NOTE:**

MARC holding records can be opened in the Cataloging module from the Acquisitions module. See [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#) for more

information. To send the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on page 13-16.

**Cancel** Closes the **Link to Holdings** dialog box without recording any actions taken.

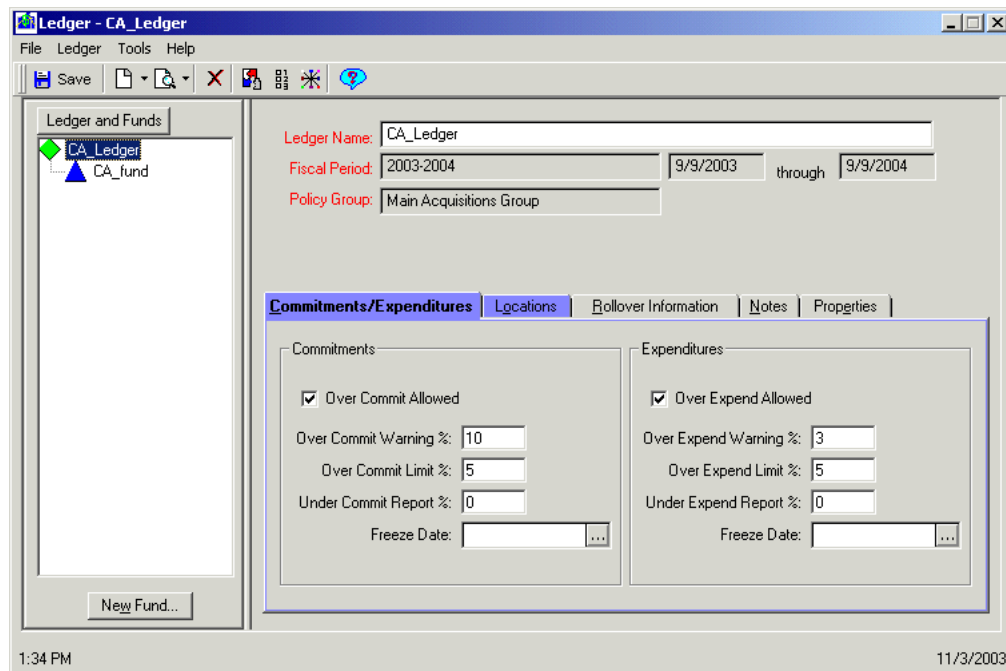
### Viewing a Fund

From the **Copies/Funds** tab hierarchical view, you can view ledgers and funds in the **Ledgers** dialog box. To do so, make the **View Fund** button on the **Copies/Funds** tab active by clicking the name of a fund in the hierarchy.

#### NOTE:

The location of a fund in the hierarchy depends on the number of funds that have been applied across the number of copies and locations. Funds split across one or more copies display in the second or third hierarchical level.

To open the **Ledger** dialog box ([Figure 6-39](#)), click the **View Fund** button.



**Figure 6-39.** Ledger dialog box opened from Copies/Funds tab, View Fund button

The left-column **Ledger and Funds** list shows the ledger/fund pair. To browse funds, click any plus signs in the **Ledger and Funds** list. To view all of the ledger's funds, click the **Ledger and Funds** button above the list.

To close the **Ledger** dialog box, select **Close** from the **File** menu or click the **X** in the upper right corner of the dialog box.

## Copy Status Tab

The **Copy Status** tab ([Figure 6-40](#)) presents a summary view of the status of each ordered copy.

This tab also provides the ability to

- create and maintain item records
- create print labels
- and, if the appropriate conditions are met, unreceive a monograph item.

To access the **Copy Status** tab, click the tab.

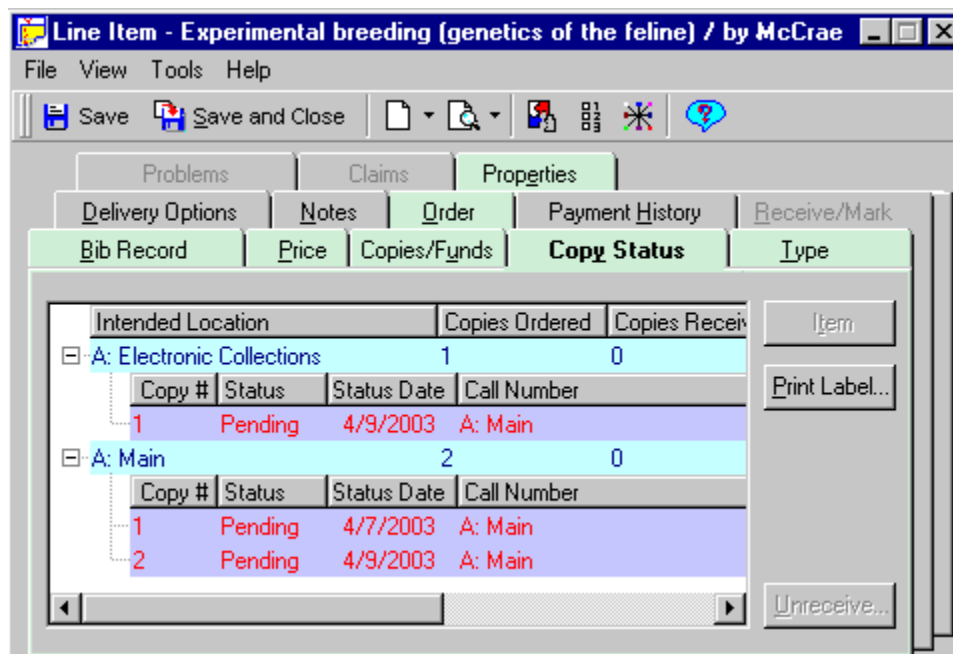


Figure 6-40. Line Item dialog box, Copy Status tab

On the **Copy Status** tab hierarchy, the plus (+) signs on the left side of the chart expand the levels. The minus (-) signs collapse them.

Two hierarchical levels display for each intended location for which you are ordering copies.

- The first level displays the intended location and the number of copies ordered, received, and invoiced.
- The second level displays more specific information about each copy for a location: copy number, status, date status was assigned, call number, holdings information (if any links exist), and, after the copy has been received (and if an item record has been created), the item type and ID.

[Table 6-14](#) explains the capabilities of the buttons on the tab.

**Table 6-14. Buttons/functions on the Copy Status tab**

Button	Function	Notes
Item	<p>Opens a new or existing item record for a received copy.</p> <p>To create or open an item record, click the copy from the hierarchy, then click this button.</p>	<p>Available only for copies with the status of <b>Received</b>.</p> <p>If the <b>Item ID</b> column for the copy contains an entry, an item record has already been created for this copy.</p> <p>For further instructions, see <a href="#">Item Record Creation and Maintenance</a> on <a href="#">page 10-1</a>.</p>
Print Label	<p>Opens the <b>Print Labels</b> dialog box, where you can print spine and piece labels for the item.</p>	<p>These labels print on item attachments and help to identify the item. A spine label prints receipt information. A piece label prints the title, any pertinent dates, call number, and receipt information.</p>
Unreceive	<p>Enables an operator with proper authorization to unreceive a monograph copy sent in error.</p> <p>When a copy is unreceived, the status changes from <b>Received</b> to the earlier <b>Approved</b>.</p> <p>To unreceive a copy, select the copy from the second-level hierarchy of the <b>Copy Status</b> tab, then click the <b>Unreceive</b> button.</p>	<p>For unreceive to be an option, a copy must</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• be received (<b>Received</b> should display in the <b>Status</b> column.)</li> <li>• be a regular (or monograph) line item type (Single Part and Approval), not a subscription (or serial). (For information about unreceiving serials, see <a href="#">Unreceiving a Serial Issue</a> on <a href="#">page 9-45</a>.)</li> <li>• not have an item record created for it. (If it does, delete the item record, then unreceive the copy.)</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> See <a href="#">Procedure 7-3, Unreceiving a monographic item</a>.</p>

## Type Tab

A line item type identifies the characteristics of your purchase order line item such as whether it is a serial, a single part monograph, or a monograph in multiple parts (Subscription, Single Part, or Multi-part types, respectively).

The **Type** tab ([Figure 6-41](#)) allows you to specify

- line item type, which determines whether the line item receives single or multiple pieces
- piece identification (and subscription information such as start date and renewal date for Subscription and Membership line item types)
- vendor title number and vendor reference number, and
- prediction pattern information (for Subscription types only).

Click the **Type** tab, to access the Type options. You can also select **Type** from the **View** menu.



Problems Claims Properties Delivery Options Notes Order Payment History Receive

Bib Record Price Copies/Funds Copy Status **Type**

Line Item Type: Single Part

Single Part

Piece Identification:

Vendor Title #:

Vendor Reference Number

Vendor's order number (VN)

BTREF0813

Save

Figure 6-41. Type tab

### Regular Line Item Types

A regular line item type receives a single piece. The information you enter on the Type tab for a single-piece line item is for informational purposes only. (Multi-piece types have functionality attached to some fields.) The two single-piece types available in Acquisitions, Single Part and Approval, use identical input fields. A Single Part selection is shown in [Figure 6-41](#).

[Table 6-15](#) describes the fields on a regular line item **Type** tab.

Table 6-15. Type tab fields for regular types

Field	Description
Line Item Type	A system-defined list of types. For single-piece types, select <b>Single Part</b> or <b>Approval</b> .

**Table 6-15. Type tab fields for regular types**

Field	Description
Piece Identification	A number and/or date that identifies the piece you are requesting (for example, Vol. 44).
Vendor Title #	A unique number used by your vendor to identify the item. Vendor-supplied.
Vendor Reference Number	<p>The category used by the vendor (see the drop-down list of options). This is used with EDI (Electronic Data Interchange).</p> <p>This method of exchange is vendor-initiated, and the input for the field is vendor-supplied. The reference number supplied by the vendor is used by Voyager to identify items in a vendor's incoming EDI message.</p> <p>The vendor reference number may also be stored in the system as a result of using the Voyager bulk import options.</p>

**Dummy EDI Invoices**

When you use Agent's subscription identifier (SNA) as your **Vendor Reference Number** category, vendors often send SNA numbers as barcodes for you to scan into the **Vendor Reference Number** fields of the corresponding line items. Using dummy EDI invoices can save time.

When you have completed a purchase order but do not have SNA numbers assigned to the titles, send your vendor the titles and purchase order number. The vendor can then send you a dummy invoice file with zero for the line item amounts that include RFF+SNA segments (such as RFF+SNA:17102944').

When you receive the invoice and link it to the purchase order, the SNA numbers are automatically added to the correct fields. Any existing SNA numbers are replaced by the new dummy invoice numbers.

**NOTE:**

The invoice file must have good match points to ensure a link between the invoice line items and the purchase order line items.

The procedure for creating regular line item types is shown in [Procedure 6-16, Creating regular line item types](#).



### Procedure 6-16. Creating regular line item types

Use the following to create regular line item types.

1. Open the **Line Item** dialog box for the item and click the **Type** tab.

Result: The **Type** tab opens.

2. From the **Line Item Type** drop-down list, select Single Part or Approval.
3. Enter information in the applicable fields. Use [Table 6-15](#) for information about individual fields.
4. Click the **Save** button to save your changes.

Result: The regular line item type is created.

### Multiple Part Line Item Types

Using prediction patterns, Acquisitions can process the following multiple-part line item types: Subscription ([Figure 6-42](#)), Membership, Standing Order, Blanket Order, and Multi-Part. See [Considerations for Multi-Part Orders](#) on [page 8-54](#) for information on working with the different multiple-part types.

The **Type** tab displays varying fields for multiple-part types depending on the type you select (from the **Line Item Type** field). [Table 6-16](#) describes the fields that display for all multi-part types and for specific types (noted in the Description column).

**Table 6-16. Type tab fields for multiple part types**

Field	Description
Line Item Type	The type of multiple-part item you are ordering. Selection determines which input fields display on the tab.
Starting Piece Identification	The way the first piece of the series is labeled (for example, V. 1. No. 1. Sept. 96).
SICI	<i>For Subscription and Membership line item types only.</i> The Serial Item and Contribution Identifier.
UPC	<i>For Subscription and Membership line item types only.</i> The Universal Product Code.

**Table 6-16. Type tab fields for multiple part types**

Field	Description
Start Date	<i>For Subscription and Membership line item types only.</i> The date on which the subscription starts.
Renewal Date	<i>For Subscription and Membership line item types only.</i> The date on which the subscription needs to be renewed. (This date is for informational purposes only.)
Automatic Renewal	<i>For Subscription and Membership line item types only.</i> Tells whether or not the item is automatically renewed. (Informational only.)
Subscription Length	<i>For Subscription and Membership line item types only.</i> The length of the subscription in number of issues, months, or years.
Subscription Pattern (button)	<i>Available only if copy and fund information has been specified on the <b>Copies/Funds</b> tab.</i>  Opens <b>Subscription Maintenance</b> pane for adding subscription component(s).  For instructions on creating a subscription component, see <a href="#">Table 8-1 describes the fields in the top section of the Subscription Maintenance workspace</a> , on <a href="#">page 8-3</a> .
Vendor Title #	A unique number used by your vendor to identify the item. Vendor-supplied.
Vendor Reference Number	The category used by the vendor (see the drop-down list of options). This is used with EDI (Electronic Data Interchange).  This method of exchange is vendor-initiated, and the input for the field is vendor-supplied. The reference number supplied by the vendor is used by Voyager to identify items in a vendor's incoming EDI message.  The vendor reference number may also be stored in the system as a result of using the Voyager bulk import options.

The screenshot shows a software window with multiple tabs. The 'Type' tab is active and highlighted in green. It contains the following elements:

- Line Item Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Subscription' selected.
- Subscription Section:**
  - Starting Piece Identification:** A text input field.
  - SICI:** A text input field.
  - UPC:** A text input field.
  - Subscription Length:** A numeric input field set to '0' and a unit dropdown set to 'issues'.
  - Start Date:** A date picker button with '...'.
  - Renewal Date:** A date picker button with '...'.
  - Automatic Renewal:** An unchecked checkbox.
  - Subscription Pattern...:** A button.
- Vendor Title #:** A text input field.
- Vendor Reference Number:** A section containing a dropdown menu and a text input field.
- Save:** A button at the bottom right.

**Figure 6-42. Type tab, Subscription line item type**

The procedure for creating serial line items is shown in [Procedure 6-17, Creating serial line item types](#).



### **Procedure 6-17. Creating serial line item types**

Use the following to create a serial line item type.

1. Open the **Line Item** dialog box for the item and click the **Type** tab.

Result: The **Type** tab opens.

2. From the **Line Item Type** drop-down list, select a line item type that can receive multiple pieces.

Result: The **Type** tab displays the relevant fields based on your selection.

3. Enter information in the applicable fields. Use [Table 6-15](#) for information about individual fields.

4. Click the **Subscription Pattern** button to create one or more subscription components and to select a publication pattern for each. For instructions on creating a subscription component, see [Table 8-1 describes the fields in the top section of the Subscription Maintenance workspace.](#) on [page 8-3](#).



**IMPORTANT:**

*If a subscription component is not created for a line item with a multiple-part type, the line item is treated as a monograph. This can cause confusion in the Acquisitions Problems List: If the line item is marked and sent to the Problems List by the system due to a surpassed Claim Interval or Cancel After date, the item displays in the Marked Line Items list rather than in the Marked Issues list (due to its being treated as a monograph). If it is necessary to wait to create a component until a later date (for example, on receipt of the first issue), be sure that the component is created before the Claim Interval or Cancel After date has passed. Create the later component from the same location in Acquisitions, the line item level of the purchase order.*

5. To save the new information to the database, click the **Save** button on the toolbar. (You can also select **Save** from the **File** menu.)

Result: The serial line item type is created.

---

## Delivery Options Tab

The **Delivery Options** tab ([Figure 6-43](#)) allows you to provide instructions for the delivery of a line item.

To access the **Delivery Options** tab, click it. You can also select **Delivery Options** from the **View** menu.

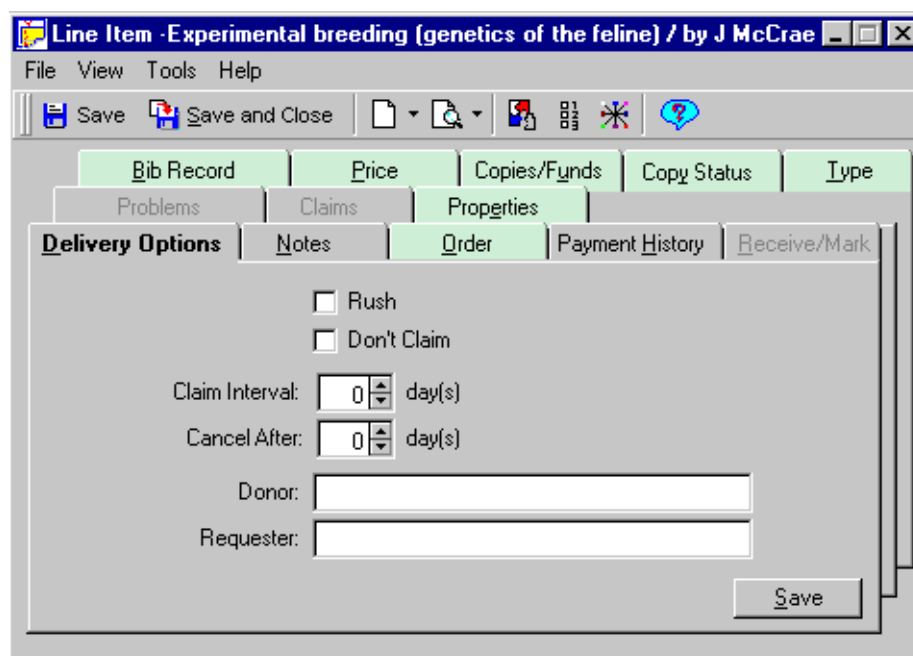


Figure 6-43. Line Item dialog box, Delivery Options tab

[Table 6-17](#) describes the fields and boxes on the **Delivery Options** tab.

Table 6-17. Delivery Options tab, fields and check boxes

Field	Description	Input Type
Rush	Sets the purchase order line item status to <b>Rush</b> .  Users can set default values to all of the fields except <b>Rush</b> .	Check box
Don't Claim	Tells Voyager not to claim the item when it arrives.	Check box
Claim Interval	The number of days after the expected received date when an unreceived line item is claimed.  Not available if the <b>Don't Claim</b> check box has been selected.	Count box/text combo
Cancel After	The number of days after the expected received date when an unreceived line item is cancelled.	Count box/text combo

**Table 6-17. Delivery Options tab, fields and check boxes**

Field	Description	Input Type
Donor	If the item is donated, the name of the person who donated it.	Text box
Requestor	If a specific person is requesting the item, the name of that person.	Text box

The procedure for setting delivery options is shown in [Procedure 6-18, Setting delivery options](#).



---

**Procedure 6-18. Setting delivery options**

---

Use the following to set delivery options.

1. Open the **Line Item** dialog box for the item and click the **Delivery Options** tab.

Result: The **Delivery Options** tab opens.

2. Enter values in the fields or check boxes as needed. See [Table 6-17](#) on [page 6-71](#) for detailed descriptions of individual fields.
3. Click the **Save** button to save the information to the database. You can also select **Save** from the **File** menu.

Result: The **Delivery Options** tab is complete.

---

**Notes Tab**

The **Notes** tab ([Figure 6-44](#)) provides fields for you to enter internal notes and instructions to the vendor. If the order has an invoice associated with it, you can switch views from **Order** to **Invoice** using the buttons on the **Order/Invoice** listbar. (The **Invoice** button only displays if one or more invoices have been associated with the purchase order.)

To access the **Notes** tab, click it or select **Notes** from the **View** menu.



Figure 6-44. Line Item dialog box, Notes tab

**NOTE:**

For purchase orders, the first field is **Instructions to the Vendor**. For invoices, the field changes to **Invoice Piece Identifier**. Otherwise, the form is identical.

[Table 6-18](#) describes the fields on the **Notes** tab, both for purchase orders and for invoices.

**Table 6-18. Line Item dialog box, Notes tab fields**

Field	Description	Order/Invoice
Instructions to Vendor	Instructions to the vendor, up to 60 characters. Will be included on the printed purchase order.	Displays on purchase order only.
Invoice Piece Identifier	The specific piece or item for which the payment is being made.	Displays on invoice only.

**Table 6-18. Line Item dialog box, Notes tab fields**

Field	Description	Order/Invoice
Notes	Internal notes, up to 1,900 characters. Used for informational purposes only.	Displays on purchase order and invoice.

The procedure for entering line item notes is shown in [Procedure 6-19, Entering notes for line items](#).



---

**Procedure 6-19. Entering notes for line items**

---

Use the following to enter line item notes for a purchase order or an invoice.

1. Click the **Notes** tab on the **Line Item** dialog box for the item you have selected.

Result: The **Notes** tab opens.

2. To enter notes for a purchase order line item, click the **Order** button on the **Order/Invoice** listbar. To enter notes for an invoice line item, click the **Invoice** button on the **Order/Invoice** listbar.

**NOTE:**

Both buttons have the order number in their captions (number 207 in [Figure 6-44](#))

3. Enter notes and/or instructions in the fields. See [Table 6-18](#) on [page 6-73](#) for descriptions of the fields that display for both the purchase order selection and the invoice selection.
4. To save the new information to the database, click the **Save** button or select **Save** from the **File** menu.

Result: A note is added to the line item.

---

**Order Tab**

The **Order** tab ([Figure 6-45](#)) summarizes information that is stored on the purchase order **Header** tab. The **Order** tab also provides direct access to the line item's vendor record and purchase order record, facilitating quick navigation between related groups of information.

The fields on the **Order** tab are read-only, though some buttons access related records that can be edited.

To access the **Order** tab, click it. You can also select **Order** from the **View** menu.

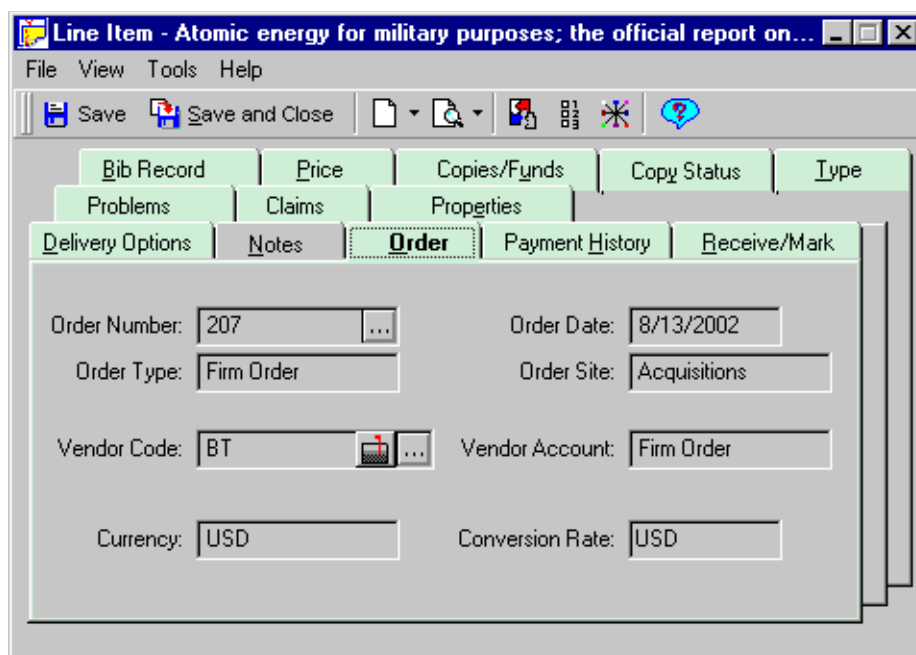


Figure 6-45. Line Item dialog box, Order tab

[Table 6-19](#) describes the individual fields and buttons on the **Order** tab.

Table 6-19. Line Item dialog box, Order tab fields and buttons

Field	Description
Order Number	The purchase order number, system-generated. Click the ellipsis button to open the <b>Purchase Order</b> dialog box.
Order Type	The purchase order type.
Order Date	The date the purchase order was created.
Order Site	The site ordering the purchase.
Vendor Code	The code of the vendor from whom the order is being purchased. The ellipsis button opens the vendor record.  If an e-mail address has been entered into the vendor record, a mailbox button displays beside the field. Click this button to send an e-mail to the vendor.

**Table 6-19. Line Item dialog box, Order tab fields and buttons**

Field	Description
Vendor Account	The vendor account used for the purchase order.
Currency	The currency used for the purchase order.
Conversion Rate	The current conversion rate for the purchase order currency as defined in the <b>Currency Maintenance</b> workspace.

### Payment History Tab

The **Payment History** tab ([Figure 6-46](#)) provides a consolidated history of all expenditures and funds associated with a line item. You can open an invoice or fund associated with the payment from this tab, but the tab itself is read-only, the data system-generated.

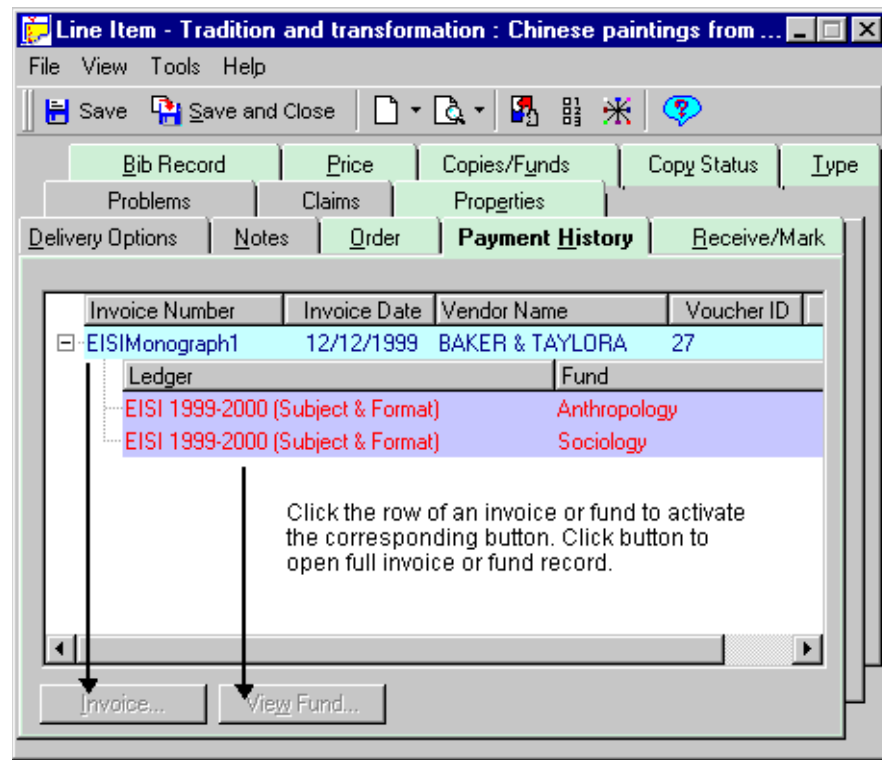
**TIP:**

*The **Payment History** tab is particularly useful for continuations that are invoiced multiple times.*

To access the **Payment History** tab, click the tab. You can also select **Payment History** from the **View** menu.

**NOTE:**

In order for information to display on the **Payment History** tab, funds need to have been expended toward the purchase of your line item. If an invoice listing your item has been approved, the **Line Item** dialog box shows this tab as having data.



**Figure 6-46. Line Item dialog box, Payment History tab**

Invoice information displays on the first level of the hierarchy. This includes Invoice Number and Date, Vendor Name, Voucher ID, Line total, Expenditure Date, Check Number, Title Number, Reference Number, and Piece Identifier. Ledger and fund information displays on the second level. This includes Ledger name, Fund name, Fiscal Period, and Amount. Click the plus sign (+) to view the ledger and fund contents belonging to the invoice.

To open an invoice in its own dialog box, click the row containing the invoice you want to view, then click the **Invoice** button. To view ledger and fund information for the line item, click the second-level row containing the ledger/fund information you want to view, then click the **View Fund** button.

### Receive/Mark Tab

The **Receive/Mark** tab ([Figure 6-47](#)) allows you to receive an item or mark a line item with pre-defined types (or reasons).

For a line item on a purchase order, the **Receive/Mark** tab activates when the purchase order has been approved. (For a line item on an invoice, the **Receive/Mark** tab is active if the invoice is pending or has been approved.)

To access the **Receive/Mark** tab, click it.

The screenshot shows the 'Line Item dialog box, Receive/Mark tab'. The dialog has a tabbed interface with the following tabs: Bib Record, Price, Copies/Funds, Copy Status, Type, Problems, Claims, Properties, Delivery Options, Notes, Order, Payment History, and **Receive/Mark**. The 'Select Copies' section displays a hierarchical tree structure:

- ☒ Title | Copies Ordered: 0 | Copies Received: 1
  - ☒ Location | Call Number: Main - QC173 .S1 | Copies Ordered: 0 | Copies Received: 1
    - ☒ Copy # | Status: Claimed | Status Date: 12/19/2002 | Location: must f

Below the hierarchy, there is a 'Mark Reason' dropdown menu, a 'Comment' text box, and two buttons: 'Receive' and 'Mark'. A 'Print Label...' button is also visible on the right side of the dialog.

**Figure 6-47. Line Item dialog box, Receive/Mark tab**

The line item displays in a hierarchical structure in the **Select Copies** section.

- The top level of the hierarchy displays information at the title (or line item) level.
- The second level displays information related to the location(s) of the item.
- The third level displays information related to the smallest component, the copy or copies for the level-two location.

To navigate through the hierarchy, click the plus (+) signs to expand levels, the minus (-) signs to collapse them.

**NOTE:**

Using your Session Workflows, you can have the hierarchy open initially to the second or third level. See [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more information.

For information about how to receive copies from the **Receive/Mark** tab, see Receiving and Marking [Receiving a Monographic Item from an Approved Purchase Order or Invoice](#) on [page 7-3](#).

## Problems Tab



### IMPORTANT:

*The **Problems** tab is available only for monograph line items on an approved purchase order or on a pending or approved invoice. The **Problems** tab is not available for line items with a component.*

The **Problems** tab ([Figure 6-48](#)) displays all copies of a monograph line item that have been manually marked by an Acquisitions operator or automatically marked by the system (for more information about marking, see [Marking by an Operator](#) on [page 11-3](#) and [Marking by the System](#) on [page 11-4](#).) In addition, this tab enables an authorized operator to process marked line item copies directly from the line item, eliminating the need to search for the copies on the **Problems** workspace.

To access the **Problems** tab, click it or select **Problems** from the **View** menu.

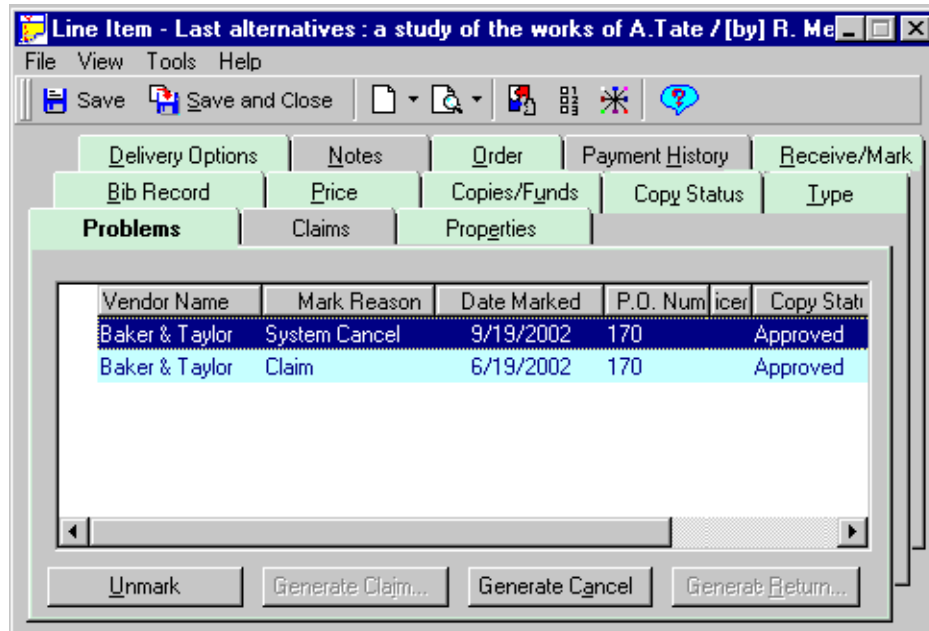


Figure 6-48. Line Item dialog box, Problems tab

The **Problems** tab can be view-only or functional. The functional version provides the use of the buttons along the bottom of the tab.

[Table 6-20](#) describes the columns that display for each marked line item copy.

**Table 6-20. Line Item dialog box, Problems tab columns**

Column	Description
Vendor Name	The name of the vendor associated with the purchase order on which the line item is listed.
Mark Reason	The mark reason assigned to the line item copy (for example, Return or System Claim).
Date Marked	The date on which the line item copy was marked.
P.O. Number	The number of the purchase order on which the line item is listed.
Invoice Number	The number of the invoice on which the line item is listed. This value is only present if the line item has been invoiced.
Copy Status	The status of the line item copy (for example, Pending)
Operator	The operator who marked the line item copy. If the line item copy was marked by the system, <b>SYSTEM</b> displays.
Comment	Any comments entered by the operator who marked the line item copy.

For operators authorized to process marked line item copies, [Table 6-21](#) describes the buttons and functions that become available for processing marked line items.

**Table 6-21. Procedures per mark reason (Problems tab, Line Item dialog box)**

Button	Mark reason	Function
Unmark	All	Removes the mark from the selected line item copy and removes the line item copy from the <b>Problems</b> tab.
Generate Claim	Claim, System Claim	Opens the <b>Generate Claim</b> dialog box, where you can generate a claim and send it to the vendor using EDI (Electronic Data Interchange) and/or postal mail.
Generate Cancel	Cancel, System Cancel	<p>Generates a cancellation notice for one or more monograph line item copies. (You must proceed to the Reporter module to print the notice for the vendor. See the <i>Voyager Reporter User's Guide</i>.)</p> <p>Removes the <b>Cancel</b> mark from the line item copy and from the <b>Problems</b> tab, removes all other marks for the copy, archives and removes from display all claims for the copy.</p>



**Table 6-21. Procedures per mark reason (Problems tab, Line Item dialog box)**

Button	Mark reason	Function
Generate Return	Return	<p>Generates a return notice for one or more monograph line item copies. (You must proceed to the Reporter module to print the notice for the vendor. See the <i>Voyager Reporter User's Guide</i>.)</p> <p>Adjusts the fund commitments or expenditures and the line item totals, and updates the status with today's date. Also removes the mark for the copy from the <b>Problems</b> tab. The purchase order, however, retains a record of the line item.</p>

See [Problems and Claims](#) on [page 11-1](#) for information on the Generating claims, cancels, returns, and other marks and claims processing.

### Claims Tab



#### **IMPORTANT:**

*The **Claims** tab is available only for monograph line items on an approved purchase order or on a pending or approved invoice. The **Claims** tab is not available for line items with a component.*

The **Claims** tab ([Figure 6-49](#)) displays all claims that have been generated for copies of a monograph line item. It enables an authorized operator to process these claims directly from the line item. Authorized operators can update and generate claims from the **Claims** tab.

To access the **Claims** tab, click it. You can also select **Claims** from the **View** menu.

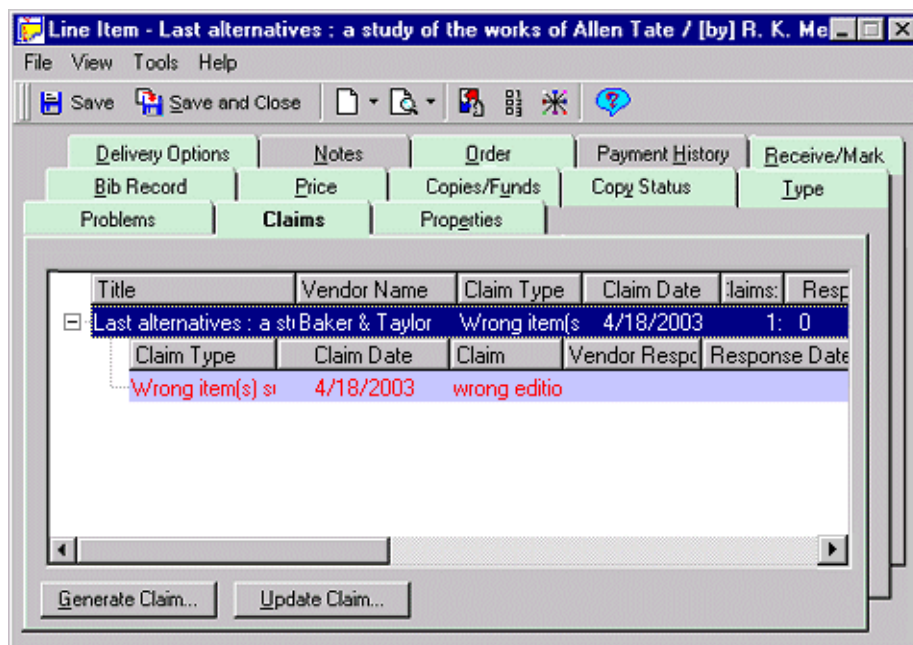


Figure 6-49. Line Item dialog box, Claims tab

From this tab operators with the proper authority can update and generate claims. See [Problems and Claims](#) on [page 11-1](#) for more information.

## Properties Tab

Click the **Properties** tab. You can also select **Properties** from the **View** menu.

Line Item - Last alternatives : a study of the works of Allen Tate / [by] R. K. Meiner

File View Tools Help

Save Save and Close

Delivery Options Notes Order Payment History Receive/Mark

Bib Record Price Copies/Funds Copy Status Type

Problems Claims Properties

Order/Invoice Order 170

Line Item ID: 294

Creation Information

Created By: demo

Create Date: 6/19/2002

Update Information

Updated By: demo

Update Date: 6/19/2002

**Figure 6-50. Line Item dialog box - Properties tab**

The **Properties** tab ([Figure 6-50](#)) displays the following historical information about the line item.

- The Line Item ID of the line item
- Who the line item was created by
- The date on which the line item was created
- Who last updated the line item
- The date on which the line item was last updated

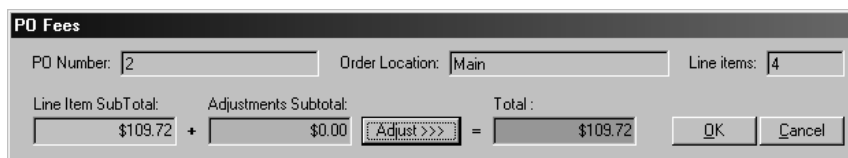
These fields are not editable.

## Entering Other PO Charges - Price Adjustments

---

The **PO Fees** dialog box ([Figure 6-51](#) and [Figure 6-52](#)) and the **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box ([Figure 6-53](#)) can be used to apply any charges or discounts in addition to the line item costs (such as shipping costs and tax) or to adjust any existing additional charges or discounts for the PO. These charges can only be added to a pending PO.

The **PO Fees** dialog box is accessed by clicking the ellipsis button in the **Other Charges** field on the PO header (see [Header Tab](#)).

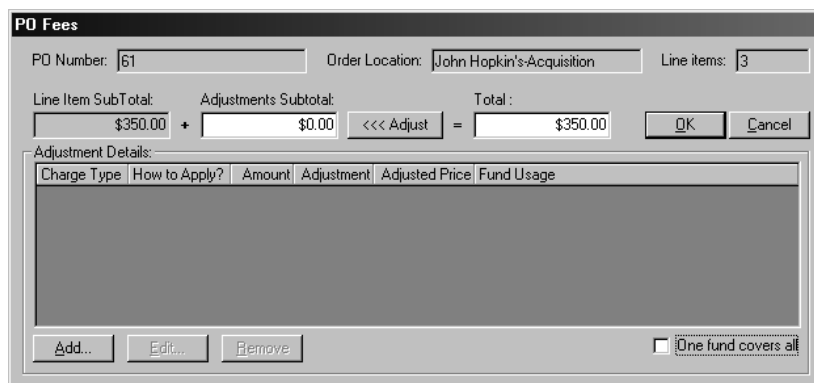


The **PO Fees** dialog box is shown with the following fields and values:

- PO Number: 2
- Order Location: Main
- Line items: 4
- Line Item SubTotal: \$109.72
- Adjustments Subtotal: \$0.00
- Total: \$109.72
- Buttons: OK, Cancel
- Adjustment button: Adjust >>>

**Figure 6-51. PO Fees dialog box**

Users access the **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box from the **PO Fees** dialog box.



The **PO Fees** dialog box is shown expanded to display **Adjustment Details**. The fields and values are:

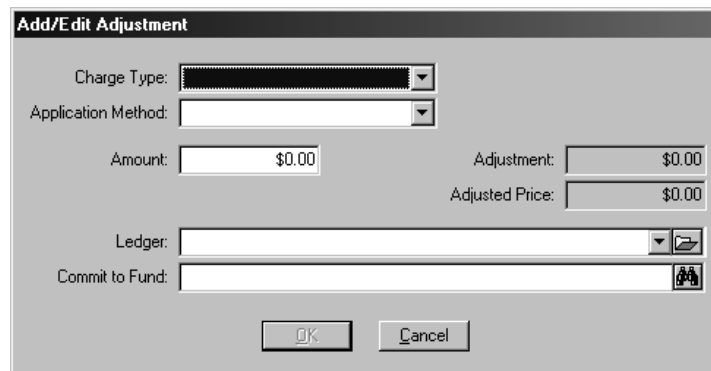
- PO Number: 61
- Order Location: John Hopkin's Acquisition
- Line items: 3
- Line Item SubTotal: \$350.00
- Adjustments Subtotal: \$0.00
- Total: \$350.00
- Buttons: OK, Cancel
- Adjustment button: <<< Adjust
- Adjustment Details table:

Charge Type	How to Apply?	Amount	Adjustment	Adjusted Price	Fund Usage
-------------	---------------	--------	------------	----------------	------------

At the bottom, there are buttons: Add..., Edit..., Remove, and a checkbox labeled "One fund covers all".

**Figure 6-52. PO Fees dialog box - expanded to display Adjustment Details**

The **PO Fees** dialog box, when expanded, displays the details of the other charges added using the **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box.



The dialog box titled "Add/Edit Adjustment" contains the following fields and controls:

- Charge Type:** A dropdown menu.
- Application Method:** A dropdown menu.
- Amount:** A text box containing "\$0.00".
- Adjustment:** A text box containing "\$0.00".
- Adjusted Price:** A text box containing "\$0.00".
- Ledger:** A dropdown menu with a search icon.
- Commit to Fund:** A dropdown menu with a search icon.
- Buttons:** "OK" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom.

**Figure 6-53.** Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box

The **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box is where users add or edit other charges.

[Table 6-22](#) describes the **PO Fees** and **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog boxes.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 6-22.** Description of the PO Fees and Add/Edit Adjustment dialog boxes

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
<b>PO Fees dialog box</b>		
PO Number (R)	Purchase Order number	Populated by the system.
Order Location (R)	Order site location.	Populated by the system from the <b>Site</b> field on the <b>Header</b> tab.
Line Items (R)	Number of line items on the PO.	Populated by the system.
Line Item Sub-Total (R)	Sum of the line item prices.	Populated by the system from the <b>Line Items Sub-Total</b> field on the <b>Header</b> tab.
Adjustments SubTotal (R)	Total of all price adjustments	Populated by the system after completing the <b>Add/Edit Adjustment</b> dialog box.  The default is 0.

**Table 6-22. Description of the PO Fees and Add/Edit Adjustment dialog boxes**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Adjust >>> <<<Adjust	These buttons expand or close the Adjustment details section of the <b>PO Fees</b> dialog box.	Buttons
Total (R)	Total amount, includes line item costs and price adjustments.	Calculated by the system after completing the <b>Add/Edit Adjustment</b> dialog box.
Adjustment Details section	The adjustment details section columns <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Charge Type</li> <li>• How to Apply</li> <li>• Amount</li> <li>• Adjustment</li> <li>• Adjusted Price</li> <li>• Fund Usage</li> </ul>	Populated by the system after completing the <b>Add/Edit Adjustment</b> dialog box.
One Fund covers all	When checked, the latest fund you have selected (while adding your latest price adjustment or while editing an existing price adjustment) is used for all previous price adjustments.  For example, if you select the Books fund of the 2004 ledger for your latest price adjustment, a previous price adjustment that used the Misc fund of the 2004 ledger also uses the Books fund of the 2004 ledger.	Check box
<b>Add/Edit Adjustment</b> dialog box		
Charge Type (R)	The type of charge type. For example, discount or shipping charge.	drop-down list.
Application Method (R)	The manner used to apply the charge type.  <b>NOTE:</b> This differs depending on whether you are applying a percentage of an amount or a flat amount.	drop-down list.

**Table 6-22. Description of the PO Fees and Add/Edit Adjustment dialog boxes**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Amount (R)	The amount of the charge.  To make the amount a negative (a credit rather than a debit), press the minus (-) sign on your keyboard. If you selected Discount as your Charge Type, the amount is automatically negative.	0 to 21,000,000
Adjustment	Adjustment applied to the value that you entered in the <b>Amount</b> field.	Populated by the system after completing the <b>Charge Type</b> and <b>Application Method</b> fields
Adjusted Price	The total amount of additional charges, after the <b>Adjustment</b> amount and any other price adjustments have been calculated.	Populated by the system.  This amount displays in the <b>Total</b> field on the <b>PO Fees</b> dialog box.
Ledger (R)	Ledger containing the fund used for this adjustment.  See <a href="#">Selecting a fund in the Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box</a>	Drop-down list or click folder to access the ledger and fund tree.
Commit to Fund (R)	Fund used for this adjustment.  See <a href="#">Selecting a fund in the Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box</a>	Enter fund code, click the folder to access the ledger and fund tree, or search for a fund.

### Selecting a fund in the Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box

There are three ways you can choose a fund for the price adjustment: you can manually type a fund code in the **Commit to Fund** field, you can select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy, or you can search for a fund.

- If you want to manually type a fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field, you must first select a ledger from the drop-down list in the **Ledger** field. After you have selected a ledger, type the fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field. Because typing the fund information into the field is often much faster than navigating a complex ledger/fund hierarchy, this feature improves the efficiency of your line item processing.

- If you want to select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy (Figure 6-54) rather than typing the fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field, click the **folder** button beside the **Ledger** field. This displays a hierarchy of available ledgers and funds. To aid you in selecting an appropriate fund, each fund's available balance displays within the hierarchy.

Fund Name	Available Balance
Allocated Book Fund	\$2000.00
New Allocated	\$48125.00
CF50316	
DFS 2875	
DFS Fund	
EISI 2000 (Format & Sub	

**Figure 6-54. Ledger/Fund hierarchy displayed in the Ledger field**

Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. Navigate the hierarchy and select a fund. You cannot select a ledger or summary fund, but must select an allocated fund (displays with a blue triangle).

After selecting a fund from the hierarchy, the ledger to which the fund belongs displays in the **Ledger** field and the fund displays in the **Commit to Fund** field.

- If you want to search for a fund, click the search button (the binoculars) beside the **Commit to Fund** field. The **Select Fund** dialog box opens. Search for a fund. After selecting a fund, the ledger to which the fund belongs displays in the **Ledger** field and the fund displays in the **Commit to Fund** field.

The procedures for adding, editing, and deleting a price adjustment are shown in [Procedure 6-20, Adding a Price Adjustment](#), [Procedure 6-21, Editing a Price Adjustment](#), and [Procedure 6-22, Removing a Price Adjustment](#).





### Procedure 6-20. Adding a Price Adjustment

Use the following to add a price adjustment.

1. On the **Header** or **Footer** tab of the purchase order, click the **ellipsis** button beside the **Other Charges** field or select **Other Charges** from the **Order** menu.

Result: The **PO Fees** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-55](#)).

**Figure 6-55. PO Fees dialog box**

2. Click the **Adjust >>>** button beside the **Adjustments Subtotal** field.

Result: The **PO Fees** dialog box expands to include an Adjustment Details section (see [Figure 6-56](#)).

**NOTE:**

You can return the **PO Fees** dialog box to its initial size at any time by clicking the **<<< Adjust** button.

The **PO Fees** dialog box is shown with the following fields and controls:

- PO Number:** 61
- Order Location:** John Hopkin's-Acquisition
- Line items:** 3
- Line Item SubTotal:** \$350.00
- Adjustments Subtotal:** \$0.00
- Total:** \$350.00
- Adjustment Details:** A table with columns: Charge Type, How to Apply?, Amount, Adjustment, Adjusted Price, Fund Usage. The table is currently empty.
- Buttons:** Add..., Edit..., Remove, OK, Cancel.
- Checkbox:** One fund covers all (unchecked).

**Figure 6-56. PO Fees dialog box - expanded to display Adjustment Details**

3. Click the **Add** button to add a price adjustment.

Result: The **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-57](#)).

The **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box is shown with the following fields and controls:

- Charge Type:** A drop-down menu.
- Application Method:** A drop-down menu.
- Amount:** \$0.00
- Adjustment:** \$0.00
- Adjusted Price:** \$0.00
- Ledger:** A drop-down menu with a folder icon.
- Commit to Fund:** A field with a person icon.
- Buttons:** OK, Cancel.

**Figure 6-57. Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box**

4. Select a charge type from the drop-down list in the **Charge Type** field.
5. From the drop-down list in the **Application Method** field, select how you want to apply the charge type.

6. Enter the amount of the charge in the **Amount** field.

Result: The **Adjustment** field reflects the charge type and application method applied to the value that you entered in the **Amount** field. The **Adjusted Price** field reflects the total amount of the additional charges, after the Adjustment amount of this and any other price adjustments have been calculated.

7. Choose a ledger from the drop-down list in the **Ledger** field.
8. Define a fund for the price adjustment in the **Commit to Fund** field. See [Selecting a fund in the Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box](#).
9. To complete the price adjustment, click the **OK** button. To cancel the price adjustment, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: After completing the price adjustment, details about the adjustment appear as a line in the Adjustment Details section of the **PO Fees** dialog box (see [Figure 6-58](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'PO Fees' dialog box. At the top, there are fields for 'PO Number: 61', 'Order Location: John Hopkin's-Acquisition', and 'Line items: 3'. Below these, a summary section shows 'Line Item SubTotal: \$350.00', 'Adjustments Subtotal: (\$30.00)', and 'Total: \$320.00'. There are buttons for '<<< Adjust' and '>>> Adjust'. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. The main section is titled 'Adjustment Details:' and contains a table with the following data:

Charge Type	How to Apply?	Amount	Adjustment	Adjusted Price	Fund Usage
discount	Amount	(\$30.00)	(\$30.00)	\$320.00	2000 test/Books

Below the table are buttons for 'Add...', 'Edit...', and 'Remove'. At the bottom right, there is a checkbox labeled 'One fund covers all'.

**Figure 6-58. PO Fees dialog box - adjustment displayed**

10. To add another price adjustment, repeat steps 3 - 8.

#### **OPTIONAL:**

11. Select the **One fund covers all** check box.
12. After you have finished adding all price adjustments, click the **OK** button to save the information to the database and close the **PO Fees** dialog box.

To cancel the price adjustments you have added and close the **PO Fees** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If clicked **OK**, the price adjustments are added.

---



---

### Procedure 6-21. Editing a Price Adjustment

---

Use the following to edit a price adjustment.

1. Select the adjustment that you want to edit from the list in the Adjustment Details section of the **PO Fees** dialog box and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box opens.

2. Follow steps 4 - 8 of [Procedure 6-20, Adding a Price Adjustment](#).
3. After you have finished editing any price adjustments, click the **OK** button to save the information to the database and close the **PO Fees** dialog box. To cancel your edits and close the **PO Fees** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If clicked **OK**, the price adjustments are edited.

---



---

### Procedure 6-22. Removing a Price Adjustment

---

Use the following to remove a price adjustment.

1. Select the adjustment that you want to remove from the list in the Adjustment Details section of the **PO Fees** dialog box and click the **Remove** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) Click the **Yes** button to continue. Click the **No** button to cancel the removal of the adjustment. If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

2. After you have finished deleting any price adjustments, you must click the **OK** button to save your deletions to the database and close the **PO Fees** dialog box.

To cancel your deletions and close the **PO Fees** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If clicked **OK**, the price adjustments are deleted.

---

## **Purchase Order Copying**

---

Operators can copy an existing purchase order to create a new purchase order that contains identical information. This can be done regardless of the purchase order status. In addition, Serial components linked to line items on the original purchase order can be re-linked to the corresponding line items on the new purchase order. The check-in information (such as the subscription pattern and serials history) associated with components also re-links.

The new purchase order is assigned a new Order Number and a new Status Date. All other fields on the purchase order are copied identically. You may edit the **Order Number** field, but you cannot edit the **Status Date**, **Order Site**, and **Currency** fields.

### **Security for Copying a Purchase Order**

---

To be authorized to copy a purchase orders the **Add/Update Purchase Orders** check box must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

The procedure to copy a purchase order is shown in [Procedure 6-23, Copying a Purchase Order](#).



### **Procedure 6-23. Copying a Purchase Order**

---

Use the following to copy a purchase order.

1. Open the purchase order that you want to copy.
2. To copy the purchase order with components re-linked, select **Copy Order** from the **Order** menu and then select **with Components Re-linked** from the cascading menu.

#### **NOTE:**

Copying a PO with components re-linked removes the component from the original PO, and there is no way to undo the re-link of the component.

To copy the purchase order without re-linking components, select **Copy Order** from the **Order** menu and then select **without Components Re-linked** from the cascading menu.

Result: A new copy of the purchase order opens.

**NOTE:**

When you try to copy a purchase order that has warnings or blocks associated with the funds used to purchase the line items, the **Fund Warnings/Blocks** dialog box opens. Depending on your authority and the error, you may use the override feature. See [Fund Warnings/Blocks](#) on [page 5-54](#) for more information.

3. Change any necessary information and click the **Save** button on the toolbar to save the new purchase order to the database.

Result: The new purchase order has been created by copying (and editing) a previous purchase order.

---

## **Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order**

---

You can search for line items directly from a purchase order of any status. This feature is useful, for example, in a circumstance where a purchase order has many line items. Rather than scrolling through the entire list of line items, you can conduct a search for a particular line item on the purchase order.

See [Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order](#) on [page 2-102](#).

## **Approving a Purchase Order**

---

When a PO is approved that means it is ready to be sent to the vendor. The money on that PO are commitments (encumbrances) that are included in the total commitments of the fund.

At the time the purchase order is approved, you can specify whether to send the purchase order via EDI (Electronic Data Interchange), indicate if you want the purchase order to print or if you want to check for duplicate orders. In addition, when you approve the purchase order you have the option to receive all of the line items on the purchase order. This capability eliminates the need to visit each line item separately to perform the receiving function.

## Security for Approving Purchase Orders

To be authorized to approve purchase orders, the **Approve Purchase Orders** check box ([Figure 6-59](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile: Profile Values		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Vendor
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Vendors
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Vendors
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Purchase Orders		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Acquisitions	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Serials Control	
	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Problems and Claims Lists	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Line Item Bib Record	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serial Patterns		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record	

**Figure 6-59. Profile Values tab**

The procedure for approving a pending purchase order is shown in [Procedure 6-24, Approving a Pending Purchase Order](#).



### Procedure 6-24. Approving a Pending Purchase Order

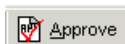
Use the following to approve a pending purchase order.



**TIP:**

Operators can set default workflows for approving a PO. See the **Approve Processing** tab in your Session Workflows (see [Approve Processing Tab on page 19-8](#).)

1. Click the **Approve** button ([Figure 6-60](#)) or select **Approve** from the **Order** menu. The **Approve** button is located on the toolbar at the top of **Purchase Order** dialog box in order to avoid any accidental usage.

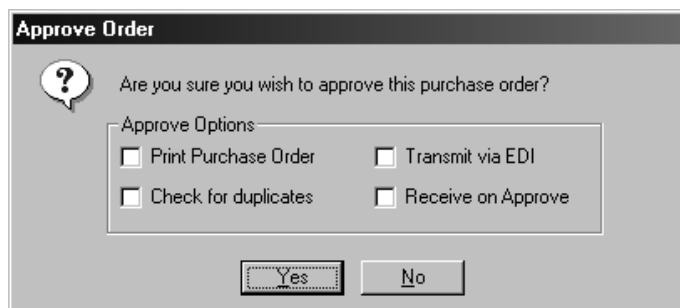


---

**Figure 6-60. Approve button**

Result: The **Approve Order** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-61](#)).

---



---

**Figure 6-61. Approve Order dialog box**

- 
2. Click the **Print Purchase Order** check box to automatically print a copy of the purchase order once it is approved.
3. Click in the **Transmit Order via EDI** check box to transmit a copy of your purchase order via EDI to your vendor once it is approved.

**NOTE:**

The **Transmit Order via EDI** check box on the **Approve Order** dialog box is only available if the location in the **Order Site** field and the vendor in the **Vendor Code** field match the Library Location and Vendor of an existing EDI connection profile. If there are no matches, the Transmit Order via EDI check box is greyed out. See [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#) for more information.

- 
- 
- 
4. Click the **Check for Duplicates** check box if you want the system to check for duplicate titles for the same location when a purchase order is approved. The system checks duplicate line items based on the Order Location and the Bibliographic ID. If any orders match these two criteria, the **Duplicate Order Information on PO** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-62](#)).
5. The **Receive on Approve** check box allows you to automatically receive all monograph line items on the purchase order when the purchase order is approved.



6. Click **Yes** to approve the purchase order. Click **No** to cancel the approving of the purchase order.

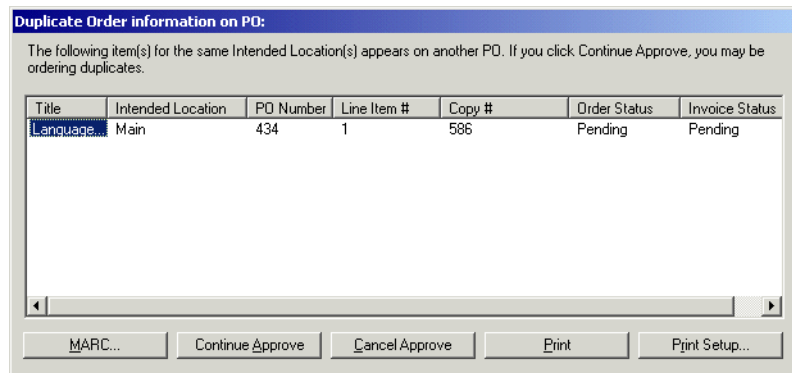
Result: If clicked **Yes**, the purchase order is approved. After approval and after any duplicate order information is resolved, two additional tabs appear at the top of the purchase order: **Vendor History** (see [Vendor History Tab](#) on [page 6-98](#)) and **Related Invoices** (see [Related Invoices Tab](#) on [page 6-102](#).)

**NOTE:**

After the purchase order has been approved, an operator with proper authorization can change the vendor associated with the purchase order. See [Procedure 6-25, Changing a Vendor](#) for more information.

### Duplicate Order Information on PO

The **Duplicate Order Information on PO** dialog box ([Figure 6-62](#)) opens when you approve a purchase order that contains titles that are on more than one purchase order for the same location, or duplicate purchase order numbers. (Providing that you checked the **Check for Duplicates** check box of the Approve Options section when approving a PO.)



**Figure 6-62. Duplicate Order Information on PO dialog box**

This fields of the **Duplicate Order Information on the PO** dialog box are populated by the system.

These fields are:

Field	Description
<b>Title</b>	The title of the duplicate line item. Click in the ellipsis to open a dialog box with the bibliographic and standard number information.
<b>Intended Location</b>	The duplicate title's intended location.
<b>PO Number</b>	The purchase order number that contains duplicate information.
<b>Line Item #</b>	The duplicate purchase order line item number.
<b>Copy #</b>	The duplicate purchase order line item copy number.
<b>Order Status</b>	The status of the duplicate line item's purchase order.
<b>Invoice Status</b>	The status of the duplicate line item's invoice.

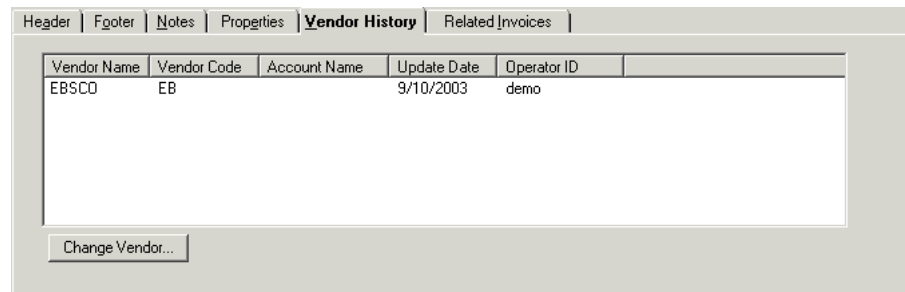
You can do the following from the **Duplicate Order Information on PO** dialog box:

- Click the **Continue Approve** button to approve the purchase order.
- Click the **Cancel Approve** button to cancel the approve and return to the purchase order.
- Click the **Print** button to print the duplicate order information.

## **Vendor History Tab**

---

The **Vendor History** tab ([Figure 6-63](#)) displays on a purchase order after the purchase order has been approved. This tab provides the option for authorized operators to change the current vendor. The tab also displays a history of all of the vendors that have been associated with the purchase order.



Vendor Name	Vendor Code	Account Name	Update Date	Operator ID
EBSCO	EB		9/10/2003	demo

Change Vendor...

**Figure 6-63. Approved Purchase Order - Vendor History tab**

The following historical information about each vendor that has been associated with the purchase order displays on the **Vendor History** tab:

- The vendor name
- The vendor code
- The vendor account name
- The date on which the vendor was changed
- The ID of the operator who changed the vendor

Click the **Vendor History** tab to access this tab.

### Changing a Vendor

Using the **Change Vendor** button on the **Vendor History** tab and the **Change Vendor** dialog box ([Figure 6-64](#)), an authorized operator can change the current vendor for the purchase order.

Two sections appear on the **Change Vendor** dialog box: Current Vendor and Change to Vendor.

- The Current Vendor section displays the Code, Name, and Account of the vendor that is currently associated with the purchase order.
- The Change in Vendor section contains the fields that enable you to associate the purchase order to a different vendor.

The screenshot shows a 'Change Vendor' dialog box. It is divided into two main sections. The top section, 'Current Vendor', contains three text boxes: 'Code' with the value 'DMV', 'Name' with the value 'Domestic Monograph Vendor', and 'Account'. The bottom section, 'Change to Vendor', contains three text boxes: 'Code', 'Name', and 'Account'. The 'Code' box has a small icon to its right. The 'Account' box has a dropdown arrow. At the bottom of the dialog are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

---

**Figure 6-64. Change Vendor dialog box**

[Table 6-23](#) describes the **Change Vendor** dialog box.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 6-23. Description of the Change Vendor dialog box**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Current Vendor Section (R)	This section displays the code, name, and the Account of the vendor currently used for this PO.	Populated by the system.
<b>Change to Vendor section</b>		

**Table 6-23. Description of the Change Vendor dialog box**

Name	Description	Type, Range, and Default
Code (R)	<p>The code of the new vendor.</p> <p>If you do not know the code of the vendor, click the magnifying glass beside the <b>Code</b> field to search for the vendor.</p> <p>After you have entered the vendor's code, click the <b>ellipsis</b> beside the <b>Code</b> field to verify that the code is legitimate.</p> <p>If the code matches a vendor in the database, the name of the vendor displays in the <b>Name</b> field and all of the vendor's available accounts are listed in the drop-down list in the <b>Account</b> field.</p> <p>If the code does not match a vendor in the database, an error message displays.</p>	Codes defined in the Vendor record, see <a href="#">Vendor Records</a> .
Name	Vendor name (based on the vendor code).	Populated by the system.
Account	List of all accounts associated with the vendor.	Drop-down list.

The procedure for changing a vendor is shown in [Procedure 6-25, Changing a Vendor](#).

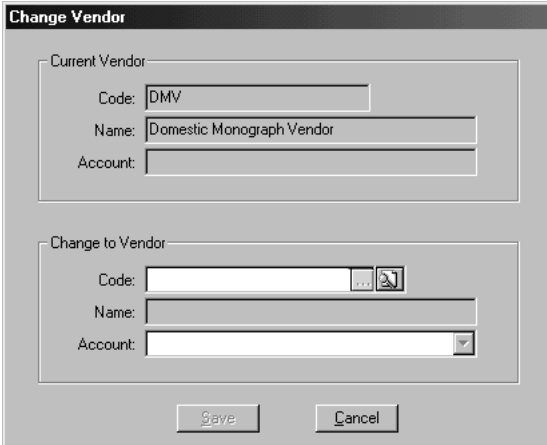


#### **Procedure 6-25. Changing a Vendor**

Use the following to change a vendor on an approved purchase order.

1. Click the **Change Vendor** button on the **Vendor History** tab of the approved purchase order. You can also select **Change Vendor** from the **Order** menu.

Result: The **Change Vendor** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-65](#)).



The dialog box is titled "Change Vendor". It contains two main sections: "Current Vendor" and "Change to Vendor".

**Current Vendor:**

- Code:** DMV
- Name:** Domestic Monograph Vendor
- Account:** (empty text field)

**Change to Vendor:**

- Code:** (empty text field with a search icon to its right)
- Name:** (empty text field)
- Account:** (empty drop-down list)

At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

**Figure 6-65. Change Vendor dialog box**

2. In the Change to Vendor section, enter the code of the new vendor in the **Code** field. Click the **ellipsis** beside the **Code** field to verify that the code is legitimate.

Result: If the code matches a vendor in the database, the name of the vendor then displays in the **Name** field and all of the vendor's available accounts is listed in the drop-down list in the **Account** field. If the code does not match a vendor in the database, an error message stating, *Vendor does not exist!* displays.

**OPTIONAL:**

3. *Select the vendor account you want to use from the drop-down list in the **Account** field.*
4. Click the **Save** button to change the vendor. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel the vendor change.

Result: The new vendor code and account then display in the **Code** and **Account** fields on the **Header** tab of the purchase order.

---

## Related Invoices Tab

The **Related Invoices** tab ([Figure 6-66](#)) lists the invoices that account for items on the purchase order. Access this tab by clicking the **Related Invoices** tab.

Header Footer Notes Properties Vendor History <b>Related Invoices</b>				
Invoice Number	Vendor Name	Invoice Status	Invoice Date	
514	Domestic Mo...	Approved	5/7/00	
103	Domestic Mo...	Approved	5/11/00	
1594848	XMISSINGX	Pending	6/6/00	
103	Domestic Mo...	Pending	8/4/00	

Invoice...

**Figure 6-66. Approved Purchase Order - Related Invoices tab**

To open a related invoice, select the invoice and click the **Invoice** button. This option to open a related invoice directly from the purchase order helps save time by eliminating the need to conduct a search for the invoice.

## Completing a Purchase Order

Completing a purchase order makes any further changes to the purchase order impossible. Also, once a purchase order is completed, you cannot make any changes to claims or check-ins associated with that purchase order.

In order to complete a purchase order, you select **Complete** from the **Order** menu.

The following criteria block the completion of a purchase order.

- Open components linked to the purchase order
- One or more currently marked line items on the purchase order
- One or more currently claimed line items on the purchase order

## Canceling a Purchase Order

Canceling a purchase order allows you to cancel an entire PO, after it has been approved, and generate a cancellation notice to send to the vendor. A purchase order cannot be canceled if it contains a line item with a subscription component. The status of the purchase order must be approved/sent.

The following criteria block the cancellation of a purchase order.

- Line item copies on the purchase order with statuses other than Received, Backordered, Claimed, or Approved
- Pending invoice is attached to the purchase order

### Security for Canceling a PO

---

In order to cancel a purchase order, you must have the security to approve purchase orders. That is, the **Approve Purchase Orders** check box should be checked in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

The procedure to cancel an entire approved purchase order is shown in [Procedure 6-26, Canceling a Purchase Order](#), on page [6-104](#).



### Procedure 6-26. Canceling a Purchase Order

---

Use the following to cancel an entire approved purchase order.

1. From an open purchase order, select **Cancel** from the **Order** menu.


Result: A confirmation message displays.

2. Click **Yes** to continue with the cancellation or click **No** to abort the cancellation.

Result: If you clicked **Yes**, the system checks for blocks of the cancellation.

If there are blocks the operator must determine the block condition, clear it, and then may cancel the PO.

If canceled, the status of the purchase order at the top of the purchase order is changed to Canceled and a cancellation notice containing all of the purchase order's line items that have not been received is generated.

3.  **IMPORTANT:**  
*After the cancellation notice is generated, you must then proceed to the Reporter module where the notice can be printed in order to be sent to the vendor (see the Voyager Reporter User's Guide for more information.)*

Result: The notice is generated and printed, ready to send to the vendor.

---



## Editing POs and Line Items on POs

Operators can edit Purchase Orders and/or line items on POs, according to the following:

### If the PO or line item status is... Then...

Pending	Operator may edit all fields at any time, except the Order Site and Currency fields after the PO is saved.
Completed	No editing may be done. Completing a purchase order makes any further changes to the purchase order or line items on it impossible.
All other statuses: Approved, Received Partial or Received complete, and Canceled	<p>The majority of purchase order and line item information cannot be changed because modification could compromise the audit trail.</p> <p>You cannot delete line items or change or delete the number of copies ordered.</p> <p>Authorized operators (identified as Acquisitions operators with the security necessary to approve purchase orders) can change:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vendor Code / Vendor Account</li> <li>Purchase Order Type</li> <li>Notes/Instructions to Vendor</li> <li>Intended Location</li> <li>Line item price</li> <li>Ledgers and funds</li> <li>Subscription data</li> <li>Link to Holdings</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Editing Line Item Data on an Approved Purchase Order</a> on <a href="#">page 6-108</a></p>

**NOTE:** The exception to the above information is that a Pre-paid copy of a line item on an approved purchase order cannot be edited.

The procedure for editing a purchase order is shown in [Procedure 6-27, Editing a Purchase Order](#).

The procedure for editing a line item on a purchase order is shown in [Procedure 6-28, Editing a Line Item on a Purchase Order](#).



---

**Procedure 6-27. Editing a Purchase Order**

---

Use the following to edit a purchase order.

1. Perform a line item search, a quick search (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)), or a standard search (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#)), to access a purchase order.
2. Select the purchase order that you want to view or edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button. You can also double-click the purchase order that you want to edit.

Result: The purchase order opens. Tabs that contain data are highlighted, alerting the operator at a glance where information exists.

3. Edit the purchase order as wanted.

[Table 6-24](#) contains a list of the page numbers on which to look for extensive explanations of each section of a purchase order.

**Table 6-24. Page References for Sections of Purchase Order**

Header Tab	<a href="#">6-5</a>
Footer tab	<a href="#">6-7</a>
Notes tab	<a href="#">6-9</a>
Properties tab	<a href="#">6-10</a>
Vendor History tab	<a href="#">6-98</a>
Related Invoices tab	<a href="#">6-102</a>
Line Items	<a href="#">6-15</a>

4. After changing any data, click the **Save** button.

Result: The purchase order is edited.

---



### Procedure 6-28. Editing a Line Item on a Purchase Order

Use the following to view or edit a line item.

1. From an open Purchase Order, select the line item that you want to view or edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button. You can also double-click the line item that you want to edit.

Result: Either the **Line Item** dialog box, or the **Quick Line Item** dialog box opens.

2. Edit the line item.
  - If the Quick Line Item dialog box opens see [Quick Line Item](#) on [page 6-28](#).
  - If the Line Item dialog box opens see [Table 6-25](#) for a list of the page numbers on which to look for extensive explanations about each tab of a line item.

**Table 6-25. Page References for Tabs of Line Items**

Bib Record Tab	<a href="#">6-38</a>
Price Tab	<a href="#">6-43</a>
Copies/Funds Tab	<a href="#">6-48</a>
Copy Status Tab	<a href="#">6-62</a>
Type Tab	<a href="#">6-64</a>
Delivery Options Tab	<a href="#">6-70</a>
Notes Tab	<a href="#">6-72</a>
Order Tab	<a href="#">6-74</a>
Payment History Tab	<a href="#">6-76</a>
Receive/Mark Tab	<a href="#">6-77</a>
Problems Tab	<a href="#">6-79</a>
Claims Tab	<a href="#">6-81</a>
Properties Tab	<a href="#">6-82</a>

3. After changing any data, click the **Save** button.

Result: The line item is edited.

## Editing Line Item Data on an Approved Purchase Order

---

An authorized operator can edit the Price, Intended Location, Ledger/Fund, and Link to Holdings data of line items on approved purchase orders. These capabilities enable a library to maintain more accurate records through the life of an order and to manage the often unpredictable nature of the acquisitions process more effectively.

### NOTE:

If the line item is pre-paid, the expenditure cannot be edited.

Changes to the Intended Location are propagated down to all associated received issues and any new issues, items, or bindery volumes that are created to provide complete serial receipt history.

## Security to Edit Line Item Data on an Approved PO

---

To be authorized to edit line item data on an approved purchase order, the Acquisitions/Serials Profile to which an operator belongs must have the **Approve Purchase Orders** check box selected in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

[Figure 6-67](#) displays an example of the **Edit Approved Line Item Data** dialog box.

**Figure 6-67. Edit Approved Line Item Data dialog box**

[Table 6-26](#) describes the **Edit Approved Line Item Data** dialog box.

**NOTE:**

An (R) in the first column of the table designates a required entry. Unless otherwise specified, characters can be alphanumeric, uppercase and lowercase, and may include punctuation and spaces.

**Table 6-26. Description of the Edit Approved Line Item Data dialog box**

Name	Description	Type/Range
List Price	The list price of the line item. Populated by the system from the <b>List Price</b> field on the <b>Price</b> tab.	System-populated.
Adjusted Price (per copy)	The price of each copy. Populated by the system from the <b>Adjusted Price</b> field on the <b>Price</b> tab.	System-populated.
Center section of the dialog box	Line item information for each location. See <a href="#">Line Item Information Hierarchy</a> .	System-populated.

**Table 6-26. Description of the Edit Approved Line Item Data dialog box**

Name	Description	Type/Range
Intended Location (R)	<p>For all copies under a single location, the intended location of the copies displays in the <b>Intended Location</b> field.</p> <p>When changing this if any of the ledger/fund combinations used for copies are not valid for the new intended location, the data in the <b>Ledger</b> and <b>Commit to Fund</b> fields is removed. If this happens, you must select new ledger/fund combinations that are valid for the new intended location.</p>	Drop-down list.
Link to Holdings	<p>Click the ellipses button to display the <b>Link to Holdings</b> dialog box that shows all the MFHDS linked to the line item's bibliographic record with options to view the MARC or re-link a new MFHD.</p> <p>This option allows the operator (with appropriate security) to change just the currently-linked MFHD record to another MFHD record that is linked to the bibliographic record.</p> <p>After clicking the ellipses button, a warning message displays indicating "changing the holdings record will automatically delete the previous holdings record and re-link its items to the new holdings record."</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The functionality that re-links the items from the previous to the new holdings record only happens if the items were created from Acquisitions using the line item in question (using what data exists in the line_item_copy_status table for the line item in question).</p>	Ellipses button.
Ledger (R)	<p>Ledger used for this line item.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Selecting a new fund.</a></p>	<p>Drop-down</p> <p>Or click the folder to access the ledger and fund tree.</p>
Commit to Fund (R)	<p>Fund used for this line item.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Selecting a new fund.</a></p>	Text search box/button combo.

**Table 6-26. Description of the Edit Approved Line Item Data dialog box**

Name	Description	Type/Range
Extended Fund Allocation>>	<p>Expands the <b>Edit Approved Line Item Data</b> dialog box.</p> <p>The Extended Fund Allocation function allows you to choose more than one fund to finance the cost of a copy.</p> <p>This function also allows you to completely change funds that are being used or alter the percentage of the price that a fund is responsible for.</p>	Button

### Line Item Information Hierarchy

For each location for which you are ordering copies may have up to three levels in the hierarchy. Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy.

The first level of the hierarchy displays the intended location, the number of copies ordered for the location, and the ledger/fund allocation information (if more than one fund is used, <<Multiple>> displays).

The second level of the hierarchy displays the copy number, the copy status, and the ledger/fund allocation for each copy under each location. For a copy that uses more than one fund, Extended Fund Allocation displays under Ledger/Fund Allocation and a third level displays in the hierarchy.

The third level of the hierarchy displays for a copy that uses multiple funds. The ledger and fund names display. The percentage of the cost that each fund is responsible for also displays.

### Selecting a new fund

There are three ways you can select a new fund: you can manually type a fund code in the **Commit to Fund** field, you can select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy, or you can search for a fund.

- If you want to manually type a fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field, you must first select a ledger from the drop-down list in the **Ledger** field. After you have selected a ledger, type the fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field. Because typing the fund information into the field is often much faster than navigating a complex ledger/fund hierarchy, this feature improves the efficiency of your line item editing.

- If you want to select a fund from the ledger/fund hierarchy ([Figure 6-68](#)) rather than typing the fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field, click the **folder** button beside the **Ledger** field. This displays a hierarchy of available ledgers and funds. To aid you in selecting an appropriate fund, each fund's available balance displays within the hierarchy.

**NOTE:**

Only valid ledger/fund combinations for the intended location are available.

The screenshot shows a software interface with a 'Ledger' field set to 'CF38222'. To the right, a 'Commit to Fund' field is visible. Below these, a 'Line Item Type' and 'Requester' field are present. The main area displays a hierarchy of funds. A table shows the available balance for each fund:

Fund Name	Available Balance
Allocated Book Fund	\$2000.00
New Allocated	\$48125.00

Below the table, a list of ledgers is shown with expand/collapse icons (+/-):

- CF 40472
- CF38222
- CF50316
- DFS 2875
- DFS Fund
- EISI 2000 (Format & Sub

**Figure 6-68. Ledger/Fund hierarchy displayed in the Ledger field**

Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. Navigate the hierarchy and select a fund. You cannot select a ledger or summary fund, but must select an allocated fund (displays with a dollar sign).

After selecting a fund from the hierarchy, the ledger to which the fund belongs displays in the **Ledger** field and the fund displays in the **Commit to Fund** field.

- If you want to search for a fund, click the **search button** (the binoculars) beside the **Commit to Fund** field. The **Select Fund** dialog box opens. Search for a fund. After selecting a fund, the ledger to which the fund belongs displays in the **Ledger** field and the fund displays in the **Commit to Fund** field.

The procedure for editing line item data on an approved purchase order is shown in [Procedure 6-29, Editing Line Item Data on an Approved Purchase Order](#).





### Procedure 6-29. Editing Line Item Data on an Approved Purchase Order

Use the following to edit line item data on an approved purchase order.

1. Search for and display the purchase order, then click the line item that you want to edit and select **Edit Approved** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Edit Approved Line Item Data** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-69](#)).

Intended Location	Copies	Ledger/Fund Allocation
Acquisitions	2	Fiscal Year 2007 Test/Subfund 1

Copy #	Copy Status	Ledger/Fund Allocation
2	Approved	Fiscal Year 2007 Test/Subfund 1
1	Approved	Fiscal Year 2007 Test/Subfund 1

Intended Location: Acquisitions  
 Link to Holdings: Acquisitions  
 Ledger:   
 Commit to Fund:   
 Extended Fund Allocation >> Save Cancel

**Figure 6-69. Edit Approved Line Item Data dialog box**

Result: In the center of the dialog box, the line item information displays in a hierarchy.

### Changing the List Price

2. The list price for each copy of the line item displays in the **List Price** field. Edit this value.

### **Changing the Intended Location for All Copies**

---

3. To change the intended location for all copies under a single location, click a location in the hierarchy (locations display in the first level) and select a new intended location from the alphabetized drop-down list in the **Intended Location** field.

### **Changing the Intended Location for a Single Copy**

---

4. To assign a copy to a new intended location, click the copy (copies display in the second level of the hierarchy) and then select a new intended location for the copy from the alphabetized drop-down list in the **Intended Location** field.

Result: The copy then displays under a new location level in the hierarchy.

### **Link to Holdings**

---

5. Change the MFHD that the line item is linked to. See [Procedure 6-9, Changing bibliographic record links on approved line items](#), on page [6-40](#) for additional information.

### **Changing Ledger/Fund Data**

---

6. If all copies under a single location use the same ledger/fund combination, and you want to select a different combination, click the location (the first level in the hierarchy).

If you want to change the ledger/fund combination for a single copy under a location, click the copy (the second level in the hierarchy).

**NOTE:**

If a single copy under a location uses more than one ledger/fund combination, you need to use Extended Fund Allocation to alter the combinations (see [Extended Fund Allocation - Adding a Fund](#) on [page 6-115](#))

7. Select a new fund: you can manually type a fund code in the **Commit to Fund** field, you can select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy, or you can search for a fund. See [Selecting a new fund](#).

### Extended Fund Allocation - Adding a Fund

8. Select a copy (copies display in the second level of the hierarchy) and click the **Extended Fund Allocation >>** button.

Result: The **Edit Approved Line Item Data** dialog box expands (see [Figure 6-70](#)).

**Edit Approved Line Item Data**

List Price: \$30.00      Adjusted Price (per copy): \$30.00

Intended Location	Copies	Ledger/Fund Allocation
[-] Biology	2	<<Multiple>>
Copy #	Copy Status	Ledger/Fund Allocation
1	Received Partial	Test Ledger/Books
2	Received Partial	Test/Another Test
[-] Main	3	<<Multiple>>
Copy #	Copy Status	Ledger/Fund Allocation
1	Received Partial	Extended Fund Allocation
2	Received Partial	Test/Another Test
3	Received Partial	Mark's Test Ledger/Allocated Fund 1

Intended Location: Biology

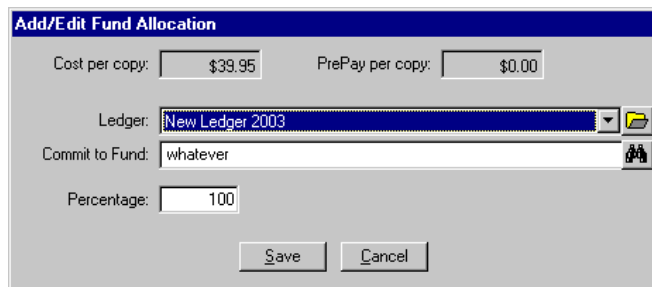
Fund	%	Amount
Test/Another Test	100	\$30.00

Buttons: Add Fund... Edit Fund... Delete Fund Save Cancel

**Figure 6-70. Edit Approved Line Item Data dialog box - expanded**

9. Before you can use an additional fund, you must change the percentage of the cost that the initial fund is responsible for. To change this percentage, select the fund and then click the **Edit Fund** button.

Result: The **Add/Edit Fund Allocation** dialog box opens (see [Figure 6-71](#)).



---

**Figure 6-71. Add/Edit Fund Allocation dialog box**

10. In the **Percentage** field, change 100 to the percentage of the cost that you want the fund to be responsible for. For example, if you want to allocate the cost of a copy equally over two funds, you would enter 50 in the **Percentage** field. Click the **Save** button.
11. After the percentage has been reduced for the initial fund, you can choose another fund to use. Click the **Add Fund** button.

Result: The **Add/Edit Fund Allocation** dialog box opens once again.

12. Select a fund to use in addition to the initial fund. See Step 6 of [Changing Ledger/Fund Data](#) on [page 6-114](#) for a description of the ways that you can select a fund.
13. Enter the percentage of the cost that you want the fund to be responsible for in the **Percentage** field.
14. To save the additional fund information and add the fund, click the **Save** button. To cancel the addition of the fund, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: After saving the additional fund information, the additional fund displays in the Funds list at the bottom of the **Edit Approved Line Item Data** dialog box.

15. Repeat Steps [11](#) - [14](#) until your copy has been funded 100%.

---

### Extended Fund Allocation - Editing a Fund

There are a few reasons why you might want to edit a fund. You might want to change the percentage of the cost that the fund is responsible for (if you are using more than one fund to finance a copy), or you might simply want to select an entirely new fund.

16. Select the fund that you want to edit from the Funds list at the bottom of the **Edit Approved Line Item Data** dialog box and click the **Edit Fund** button.

Result: The **Add/Edit Fund Allocation** dialog box opens.

17. The ledger and fund display in the **Ledger** and **Commit to Fund** field. You can select a new ledger and fund. See Step 6 of [Changing Ledger/Fund Data](#) on [page 6-114](#) for a description of the ways that you can select a fund.
18. If you want to change the percentage of the cost that the fund is responsible for, enter a new percentage number in the **Percentage** field.
19. To save your changes and close the **Add/Edit Allocated Funds** dialog box, click the **Save** button. To cancel your changes and close the **Add/Edit Allocated Funds** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

### **Extended Fund Allocation - Removing a Fund**

---

Select the fund that you want to remove from the Funds list at the bottom of the **Edit Approved Line Item Data** dialog box and click the **Remove Fund** button. A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) Click the **Yes** button to continue. Click the **No** button to cancel the removal of the fund. If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do **not** receive a confirmation message.

This does not remove the fund from your ledger, just from use for the copy.

20. After you have completed your edits to the line item data, you must click the **Save** button to save the changes to the database. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel any changes you have made.

Result: If clicked **Save**, the edits are saved to the database.

---

### **Deleting a Purchase Order**

---

Operators may delete purchase orders.

The following criteria block the deletion of a purchase order.

- There are existing components linked to the purchase order (this is why a purchase order with a status of Received Partial cannot be deleted, as displayed in the table below)
- There is one or more invoices linked to the purchase order
- There are any currently marked line items on the purchase order
- There are any currently claimed line items on the purchase order

If the deletion of a purchase order is blocked due to any of these criteria, the **Cannot Delete Order** dialog box ([Figure 6-72](#)) opens the exact reasons for the block.



---

**Figure 6-72. Cannot Delete Order dialog box**

Deleting a purchase order impacts a funds pending or total commitments only.

<b>If the PO status is</b>	<b>Then</b>
Pending	The fund's pending commitments are removed.
Approved	The fund's total commitments are removed.
Received Partial	There is no impact on the fund's commitments.
Received Complete	The fund's total commitments are removed.
Canceled	There is no impact on the fund's commitments.
Complete	The fund's commitments are removed.

Fiscal period or fund date rules are not checked. Therefore, when a purchase order is deleted, money may go back into a fund that is not current with your fiscal year.

## Security for Deleting POs

To be authorized to delete purchase orders, the **Delete Purchase Orders** check box ([Figure 6-73](#)) must be selected in the **Profiles** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. Also, in order to delete a purchase order with a status other than Pending, the Approve Purchase Orders check box should be selected. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile:		
Profile Name	Operator	Profile Values
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Receive	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Delete Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	View-Only Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Approve Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	View-Only Serials Check-In	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	View-Only Serial Patterns	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Delete Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Process Claims from Acquisitions	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Process Claims from Serials Control	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	View-Only Problems and Claims Lists	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change Line Item Bib Record	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**Figure 6-73. Profile Values tab**

The procedure for deleting purchase orders is shown in [Procedure 6-30, Deleting a Purchase Order](#).



### Procedure 6-30. Deleting a Purchase Order

Use the following to delete a purchase order.

1. Click the **Delete** button (X) in the toolbar of the purchase order or select **Delete** from the **Order** menu..

Result: A confirmation message, Are you sure you wish to delete this purchase order? displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

2. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: A second message displays stating, `This action will remove all commitments and expenditures for this order, Continue?`

3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If there are any reasons to block the deletion the Cannot Delete Order dialog box displays. Operators must eliminate the block conditions before deleting the PO.

If there are no block conditions, the PO is deleted.

---

## Creating an Invoice from a Purchase Order

---

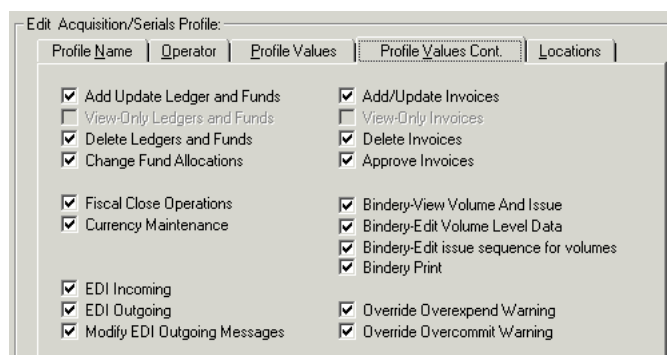
Operators can create an invoice from an open purchase order. See [Invoice Activities](#) on [page 12-1](#) for more information.

### Security to Create an Invoice from a PO

---

To be authorized to create an invoice from a PO the **Add/Update Purchase Orders** check box and the **Add/Update Invoices** check box ([Figure 6-74](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.





Profile Name	Operator	Profile Values	Profile Values Cont.	Locations
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add Update Ledger and Funds	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Invoices	
		<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Ledgers and Funds	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Invoices	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Ledgers and Funds	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Invoices	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Fund Allocations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Invoices	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fiscal Close Operations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-View Volume And Issue	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Currency Maintenance	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit Volume Level Data	
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit issue sequence for volumes	
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery Print	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Incoming	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overexpend Warning	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Outgoing	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overcommit Warning	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Modify EDI Outgoing Messages		

**Figure 6-74. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The procedure for creating an invoice from a PO is shown in [Procedure 6-31, Creating an Invoice from a Purchase Order](#).



### **Procedure 6-31. Creating an Invoice from a Purchase Order**

Use the following to create an invoice for a purchase order.

1. From an open purchase order, select **Create Invoice** from the **Order** menu on the purchase.

Result: All of the line items on the purchase order are automatically listed on the newly-created invoice. See [Invoice Activities](#) on [page 12-1](#) for additional information.



---

## **Receiving and Marking Your Monograph Items**

# **7**

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>7-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>7-1</b>
<b>Security to Receive and Mark Monographic Items</b>	<b>7-2</b>
<b>Receiving a Monographic Item from an Approved PO or Invoice</b>	<b>7-3</b>
Line Item Hierarchy	7-7
Item Record Creation Options	7-8
<b>Receiving a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item</b>	<b>7-9</b>
<b>Unreceiving a Monographic Item</b>	<b>7-12</b>
• Security to Unreceive a Monographic Item	7-12
<b>Marking a Monographic Item from an Approved PO or Invoice</b>	<b>7-14</b>
<b>Marking a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item</b>	<b>7-17</b>



---

# Receiving and Marking Your Monograph Items

# 7

---

## Introduction

You can receive and mark monographic items from a number of different places within the Acquisitions module. Monographic items can be received and marked directly from approved purchase orders, invoices, and from the **Receive/Mark** tab of a line item.

To automatically receive items with the EDI process, see [Receive Items Option](#) on [page 15-12](#).

Serial items can be received and marked using the **Serials Check-In** workspace. Receiving and marking serials issues from the **Serials Check-In** workspace is not discussed in this section. See [Checking In Serials](#) on [page 9-4](#) for information about receiving and marking serial issues.

---

## Purpose of this Chapter

This chapter discusses how to receive, unreceive, and mark monographic items in the Acquisitions module.

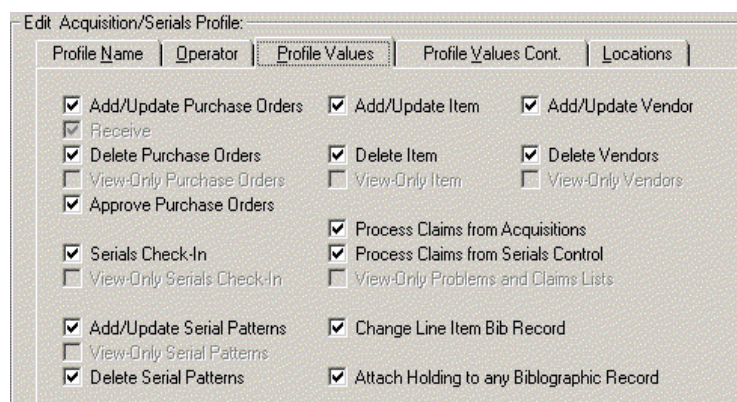
- The procedure for receiving from an approved purchase order or invoice is shown in [Procedure 7-1, Receiving a Monographic Item from an Approved Purchase Order or Invoice](#)

- The procedure for receiving from the **Receive/Mark** tab of a line item is shown in [Procedure 7-2, Receiving a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item](#)
- The procedure for unreceiving a monographic item is shown in [Unreceiving a monographic item](#) on [page 7-13](#)
- The procedure for marking from an approved purchase order or invoice is shown in [Procedure 7-4, Marking a Monographic Item from an Approved Purchase Order or Invoice](#)
- The procedure for marking from the **Receive/Mark** tab of a line item is shown in [Procedure 7-5, Marking a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item](#)

## Security to Receive and Mark Monographic Items

---

To be authorized to receive items, the **Add/Update Purchase Orders** check box in the **Profile Values** tab automatically selects the **Receive** check box. If you only want the operator to be able to receive items, check the **Receive** check box ([Figure 7-1](#)) in the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



Profile Name	Operator	Profile Values	Profile Values Cont.	Locations
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Vendor		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Vendors		
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Vendors		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Acquisitions	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Serials Control		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serials Check-In	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Problems and Claims Lists			
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serials Check-In				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Line Item Bib Record			
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Serial Patterns				

---

**Figure 7-1. Profile Values tab**

## Receiving a Monographic Item from an Approved PO or Invoice

---

Receiving an item means that it is actually in hand.

From an approved PO or invoice, operators can receive a monographic item if its line item status is Approved, or Received partial. An item cannot be received if the line item status is pending, canceled, or complete.

**NOTE:**

Receiving an item does not affect fund commitments or expenditures.

The procedure for receiving a monographic item from an approved PO is shown in [Procedure 7-1, Receiving a Monographic Item from an Approved Purchase Order or Invoice](#).



### Procedure 7-1. Receiving a Monographic Item from an Approved Purchase Order or Invoice

---

Use the following to receive one or more line items.

1. Search for and display a Purchase Order or an Invoice (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#).)

Result: The appropriate workspace opens with the search results.

- If searching for a purchase order, the **Search Orders** workspace opens with the results of the search (see [Figure 7-2](#)).

**Search Orders**

Search By:

Search For:

Purchase Order Number	Vendor Name	Order Status	Order Date	Order Location
155	Brigham Young University Press	Received Complete	3/22/2002	Acquisitions
157	EBSCO	Received Complete	4/29/2002	Acquisitions
159	EBSCO	Approved/Sent	5/2/2002	Acquisitions
160	Baker & Taylor	Pending	5/21/2002	Acquisitions
167	Amazon.com	Pending	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
168	Baker & Taylor	Received Partial	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
169	Amazon.com	Pending	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
170	Baker & Taylor	Received Partial	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
182	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Pending	6/27/2002	Acquisitions

**Figure 7-2. Search Orders workspace**

- If searching for an invoice, the **Search Invoices** workspace opens with results of the search (see [Figure 7-3](#)).

**Search Invoices**

Search By:

Search For:

Invoice Number	Vendor Name	Invoice Status	Invoice Date
257	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Pending	2/6/2003
302	Baker & Taylor	Pending	9/11/2003
346	EBSCO	Pending	7/25/2003
350	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Approved	5/16/2003
357	Amazon.com	Approved	6/30/2003
368	Baker & Taylor	Pending	7/7/2003
386	Baker & Taylor	Complete	7/15/2003
387	Baker & Taylor	Pending	7/15/2003
423	Baker & Taylor	Approved	9/4/2003

**Figure 7-3. Search Invoices workspace**

2. Select the PO or invoice you want and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The purchase order or invoice displays.

3. Select the line item you want to receive.

Result: On the PO, this enables the **Recv/Mark** button (see [Figure 7-4](#)).



**Purchase Order: 446 - [Approved/Sent] on 9/12/2003**

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Quick Line Item OFF Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order:  
 Number: 446  
 Type: Firm Order  
 Site: Acquisitions

Vendor:  
 Code: BT  
 Account: Firm Order

Status Date: 9/12/2003  
 1 Line Items on Order

Locations:  
 Ship To: Acquisitions  
 Bill To: Acquisitions

Amounts:  
 Line Item Subtotal: \$34.00  
 Other Charges: \$0.00  
 Total Order Amount: \$34.00

Currency:  
 Code: USD  
 Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line
1 / Approved	Baseball / by Ray Broekel	\$34.00 (+)	1	Main	03 Test Ledger / 03 Gener	

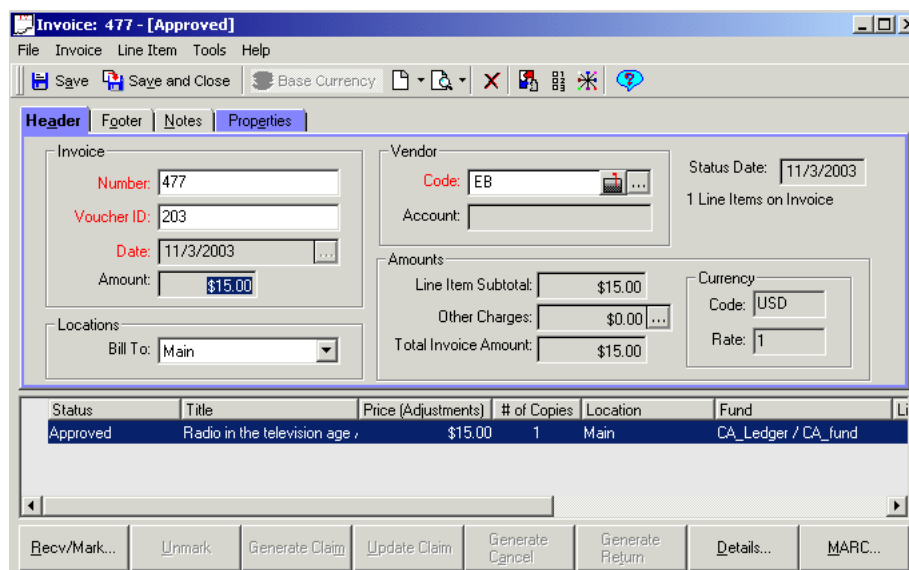
Recv/Mark... Unmark Generate Claim Update Claim Generate Cancel Generate Return Details... MARC...

**Figure 7-4. Recv/Mark button enabled on an approved PO**

Result: On an Invoice, this enable the **Recv/Mark** button (see [Figure 7-5](#)).

**NOTE:**

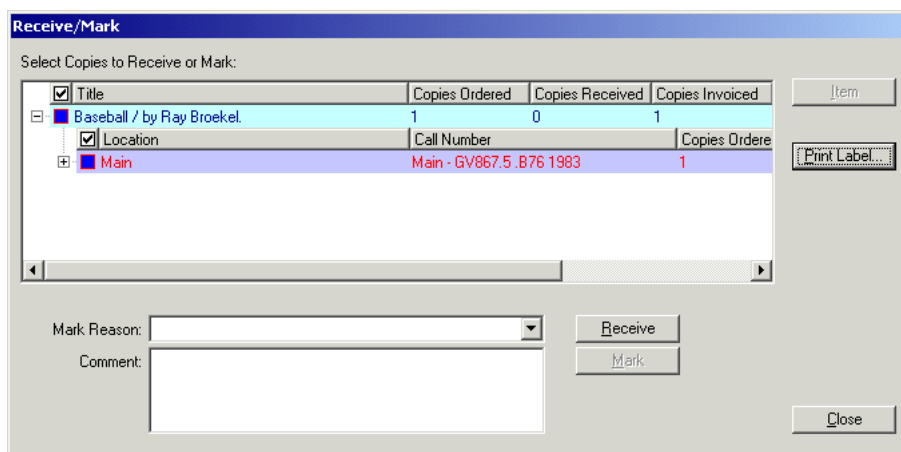
You must receive or mark serial issues from Serials Check-In (see [Serials Check-In Activities](#) on [page 9-1](#).)



**Figure 7-5. Invoice dialog box with item selected to receive**

4. Click the **Recv/Mark** button.

Result: The **Receive/Mark** dialog box opens (see [Figure 7-6](#)).



**Figure 7-6. Receive/Mark dialog box**

## Line Item Hierarchy

In the **Receive/Mark** dialog box, the line items display in a tree structure or line item hierarchy in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** box. Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. There are three levels in the hierarchy.

- The first level of the hierarchy displays the title of the item, the number of copies ordered, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The second level of the hierarchy displays the intended location(s) for the item, the call number, the number of copies order, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The third level of the hierarchy displays the individual copies for each location, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Approved), the date on which the status became active, the intended location for the copy, the item type and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, do not contain information until after the copy has been received and an item record has been created.)



### **TIP:**

*Use Session Workflows to have the hierarchy in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** section automatically open to the second level (Location level) or third level (Copy level), see [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more information.*

The boxes in the hierarchy are used to select the copies that you want to receive (or mark).

- If you want to specify which copies to receive for each location, at the third level of the hierarchy click the box beside each copy that you want to receive.
- If you want to receive all copies for a location, click the box beside the second level (the Location level) to select all the copies beneath that location.
- If you want to select all copies for all locations, click the box beside the first level of the hierarchy.

To make it easier for you to see how many copies are currently selected to be received, the boxes beside the levels of the hierarchy are either half-full (if only some of the copies are selected) or completely full (if all of the copies are selected to be received).

**TIP:**

*Use Session Workflows to have all copies for all locations for the selected line item automatically selected to be received (check the **Auto-select All Copies during Receive** check box on the **Line Items** tab), see [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more information.*

5. Select the copies to receive, and click the **Receive** button.

Result: Depending on your selections in Session Workflows ([Item Creation Tab](#) on [page 19-10](#)), either the item record opens, or after clicking the **Item** button, the item record displays (see [Figure 7-7](#)).

### Item Record Creation Options

- An item record is automatically created, if the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows. If the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the item record automatically displays when it is created.
- If you selected to receive more than one copy, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically display, even if you have selected the **Show Item Record on Create** check box in your Session Workflows. Rather, you receive the message: x item records automatically created, where x equals the appropriate amount. However, you can access an item record for an individual copy by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button.
- If the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is selected but the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is not selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the item record is not automatically displayed when it is created. You can access the item record by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button.
- If the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is not selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, an item record is not automatically created. However, after a line item copy has been received, you can select the copy from the hierarchy and click the **Item** button to create an item record.

**Item 69565 for holding 32037**

Title: American journal of education.

Location: Main Call #: L11 .S55

Barcode: ... Temp. Loc.: [dropdown]

Perm. Loc.: Main Temp. Type: [dropdown]

Item Type: serial Media Type: [dropdown]

Enym: v. 1, no. 4

Chron: 2003

Year: 2003

Caption:

Free text:

Spine:

Copy: 1 Pieces: 1 Price: \$0.00

Self Check:

☐ Magnetic Media ☒ Sensitize

Close

**Figure 7-7. Item record creation after receiving**

6. Create the item record. See [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#) for information on creating an item record.

Result: The item is received and the item record is created.

## Receiving a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item

Operators can receive a monographic item from the **Receive/Mark** tab, however, when using this method, they can only receive copies for one line item at a time.

The procedure to receive one item from the **Receive/Mark** tab is shown in [Procedure 7-2, Receiving a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item](#).



---

### Procedure 7-2. Receiving a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item

---

Use the following to receive one item from the **Receive/Mark** tab.

1. Search for and display a PO or invoice, and select the line item you want to receive.

Result: This enables the **Details** button (see [Figure 7-8](#)).

---

**Purchase Order: 446 - [Approved/Sent] on 9/12/2003**

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Quick Line Item OFF Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order:  
Number: 446  
Type: Firm Order  
Site: Acquisitions

Vendor:  
Code: BT  
Account: Firm Order

Status Date: 9/12/2003  
1 Line Items on Order

Locations:  
Ship To: Acquisitions  
Bill To: Acquisitions

Amounts:  
Line Item Subtotal: \$34.00  
Other Charges: \$0.00  
Total Order Amount: \$34.00

Currency:  
Code: USD  
Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line
1 / Approved	Baseball / by Ray Broekel	\$34.00 (+)	1	Main	03 Test Ledger / 03 Gener	

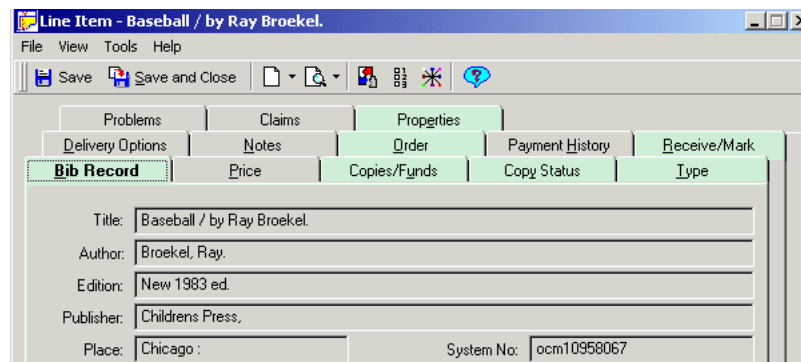
Recv/Mark... Unmark Generate Claim Update Claim Generate Cancel Generate Return Details... MARC...

---

**Figure 7-8. Details button enabled on a purchase order**

2. Click the **Details** button or select **Details** from the **Line Item** menu.

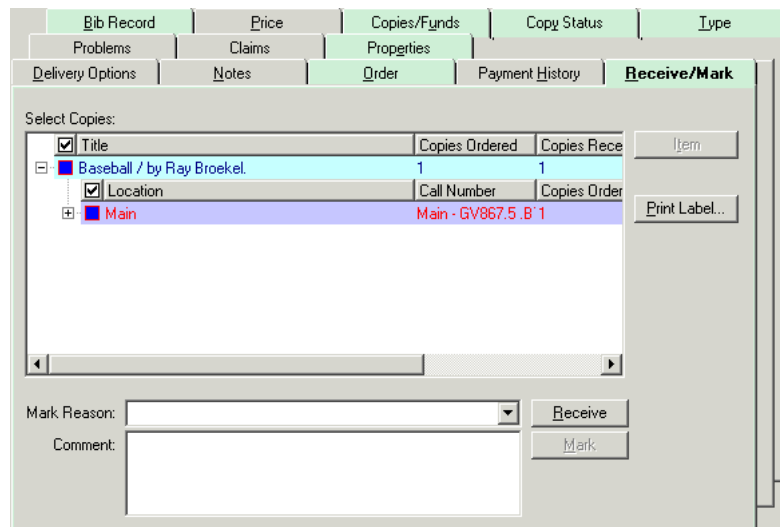
Result: The **Line Item** dialog box opens (see [Figure 7-9](#)).



**Figure 7-9. Tabs of the Line Item dialog box**

3. Click the **Receive/Mark** tab.

Result: The **Receive/Mark** tab displays (see [Figure 7-10](#)).



**Figure 7-10. Line Item dialog box - Receive/Mark tab**

See [Line Item Hierarchy](#) on [page 7-7](#) for an explanation of the line item hierarchy seen in the **Select Copies** section.

4. Select the copies you want to receive from the hierarchy, and click the **Receive** button.

Result: Depending on your selections in Session Workflows, either the item record opens, or after clicking the **Item** button, the item record displays (see [Item Record Creation Options](#) on [page 7-8](#)).

5. See [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#) for information on creating an item record.

Result: The item is received and the item record is created.

---

## **Unreceiving a Monographic Item**

---

An operator with proper authorization can unreceive a monograph copy using the **Unreceive** button on the **Copy Status** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box. This feature is valuable, for example, in a circumstance where you have received the wrong copy accidentally. You can unreceive the wrong copy and then proceed to receive the correct copy.

A copy can be unreceived only if it an item record has not been created for it. If you want to unreceive a copy that has an item record, you must first delete the item record. When the item record has been deleted, you is able to unreceive.

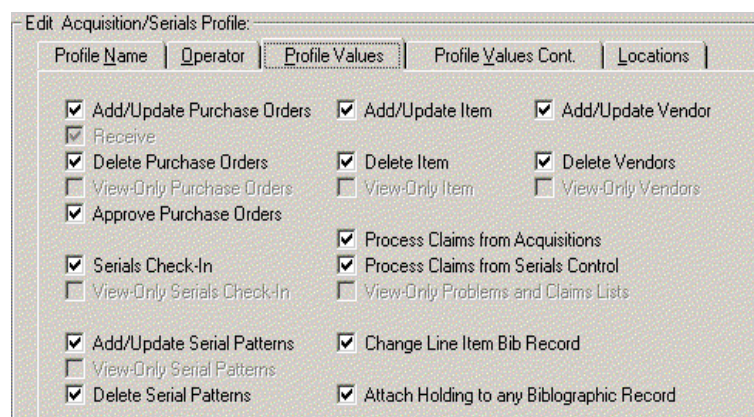
This feature is only available for regular, or monograph, line item types (Single Part and Approval), not for subscription (or serial) line item types. For information about unreceiving serial issues, see [Procedure 9-15, Unreceiving serial issues](#).

### **Security to Unreceive a Monographic Item**

---

To be authorized to unreceive a monographic item, the **Receive** check box ([Figure 7-11](#)) must be checked in the **Profile Values** tab of the Acquisitions/Serials Profile to which an operator belongs.





**Figure 7-11. Profile Values tab**

See the *System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

The procedure for unreceiving a monographic copy is shown in [Procedure 7-3, Unreceiving a monographic item](#).



### **Procedure 7-3. Unreceiving a monographic item**

Use the following to unreceive an item.

1. Search for and display the **Line Item** dialog box of the item you want to unreceive. See [Procedure 2-11, Searching for Line Items from a Purchase Order](#) and [Procedure 2-14, Searching for Line Items from an Invoice](#).

2. Click the **Copy Status** tab and select one copy from the hierarchy.

Result: Copies display on the second level of the hierarchy. In order for the **Unreceive** button to be available, you must click a copy in the second level of the hierarchy rather than a location in the first level of the hierarchy.

#### **NOTE:**

The **Unreceive** button is only available if you select a copy that has been received (Received displays in the Status column of a received copy). The **Unreceive** button also is not enabled if you select more than one copy.

3. Click the **Unreceive** button.

Result: The line item copy status is then changed back to Approved.

---

## Marking a Monographic Item from an Approved PO or Invoice

---

Marking an item means that it is flagged as having some type of problem, and sent to the **Problems** list.

See [Marking by an Operator](#) on [page 11-3](#) and [Marking by the System](#) on [page 11-4](#) for more information on marking items. See [Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices](#) on [page 11-27](#) for information on processing marked items.

The procedure for marking a monographic item from an approved PO is shown in [Procedure 7-4, Marking a Monographic Item from an Approved Purchase Order or Invoice](#).



### Procedure 7-4. Marking a Monographic Item from an Approved Purchase Order or Invoice

---

Use the following to mark one or more line items.

1. Search for and display a Purchase Order or an Invoice (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) or [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#).)

Result: The appropriate workspace opens with the search results.

- If searching for a purchase order, the **Search Orders** workspace opens with the results of the search (see [Figure 7-12](#)).

**Search Orders**

Search By:

Search For:

Purchase Order Number	Vendor Name	Order Status	Order Date	Order Location
155	Brigham Young University Press	Received Complete	3/22/2002	Acquisitions
157	EBSCO	Received Complete	4/29/2002	Acquisitions
159	EBSCO	Approved/Sent	5/2/2002	Acquisitions
160	Baker & Taylor	Pending	5/21/2002	Acquisitions
167	Amazon.com	Pending	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
168	Baker & Taylor	Received Partial	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
169	Amazon.com	Pending	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
170	Baker & Taylor	Received Partial	6/19/2002	Acquisitions
182	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Pending	6/27/2002	Acquisitions

**Figure 7-12. Search Orders workspace**

- If searching for an invoice, the **Search Invoices** workspace opens with results of the search (see [Figure 7-13](#)).

**Search Invoices**

Search By:

Search For:

Invoice Number	Vendor Name	Invoice Status	Invoice Date
257	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Pending	2/6/2003
302	Baker & Taylor	Pending	9/11/2003
346	EBSCO	Pending	7/25/2003
350	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Approved	5/16/2003
357	Amazon.com	Approved	6/30/2003
368	Baker & Taylor	Pending	7/7/2003
386	Baker & Taylor	Complete	7/15/2003
387	Baker & Taylor	Pending	7/15/2003
423	Baker & Taylor	Approved	9/4/2003

**Figure 7-13. Search Invoices workspace**

2. Select any line items you want to mark and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The purchase order or invoice displays.

3. Select the line item you want to mark.

Result: This enables the **Recv/Mark** button (see [Figure 7-14](#)).

**Purchase Order: 446 - [Approved/Sent] on 9/12/2003**

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Quick Line Item OFF Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order: Number: 446 Type: Firm Order Site: Acquisitions

Vendor: Code: BT Account: Firm Order

Status Date: 9/12/2003  
1 Line Items on Order

Locations: Ship To: Acquisitions Bill To: Acquisitions

Amounts: Line Item Subtotal: \$34.00 Other Charges: \$0.00 Total Order Amount: \$34.00

Currency: Code: USD Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line
1 / Approved	Baseball / by Ray Broekel	\$34.00 (+)	1	Main	03 Test Ledger / 03 Generz	

Recv/Mark... Unmark Generate Claim Update Claim Generate Cancel Generate Return Details... MARC...

**Figure 7-14. Recv/Mark button enabled on an approved PO**

- Click the **Recv/Mark** button.

Result: The **Receive/Mark** dialog box opens (see [Figure 7-15](#)).

Title	Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Invoiced	Location	Call Number	Copies Ordered
Baseball / by Ray Broekel	1	0	1			
Main					Main - GV867.5 .B76 1983	1

**Figure 7-15. Receive/Mark dialog box**

See [Line Item Hierarchy](#) on [page 7-7](#) for an explanation of the line item hierarchy seen in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** section.

5. Select the copies you want to mark.
6. Select a mark reason from the drop-down list in the **Mark Reason** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

7. *Enter any additional comments in the **Comment** field.*
8. Click the **Mark** button.

Result: The item is marked and sent to the **Problems List**. See [Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues from the Problems Workspace](#) on [page 2-104](#) and [Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices](#) on [page 11-27](#) for more information.

## Marking a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item

Operators can receive a monographic item from the **Receive/Mark** tab, however, when using this method, you can only receive copies for one line item at a time.

The procedure for marking a monographic item from the **Receive/Mark** tab is shown in [Procedure 7-5, Marking a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item](#).



### Procedure 7-5. Marking a Monographic Item from the Receive/Mark Tab of a Line Item

Use the following to mark one item from the **Receive/Mark** tab.

1. Search for and display a PO or invoice, and select a line item you want to mark.

Result: This enables the **Details** button (see [Figure 7-16](#)).

**Purchase Order: 446 - [Approved/Sent] on 9/12/2003**

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Quick Line Item OFF Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order:  
 Number: 446  
 Type: Firm Order  
 Site: Acquisitions

Vendor:  
 Code: BT  
 Account: Firm Order

Status Date: 9/12/2003  
 1 Line Items on Order

Locations:  
 Ship To: Acquisitions  
 Bill To: Acquisitions

Amounts:  
 Line Item Subtotal: \$34.00  
 Other Charges: \$0.00  
 Total Order Amount: \$34.00

Currency:  
 Code: USD  
 Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line
1 / Approved	Baseball / by Ray Broekel	\$34.00 (+)	1	Main	03 Test Ledger / 03 Gener	

Recv/Mark... Unmark Generate Claim Update Claim Generate Cancel Generate Return Details... MARC...

**Figure 7-16. Details button enabled on a purchase order**

2. Click the **Details** button or select **Details** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Line Item** dialog box opens (see [Figure 7-17](#)).

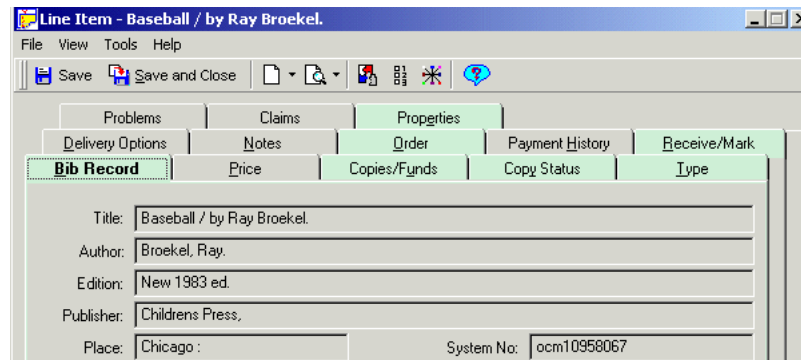


Figure 7-17. Tabs of the Line Item dialog box

3. Click the **Receive/Mark** tab.

Result: The **Receive/Mark** tab displays (see [Figure 7-18](#)).

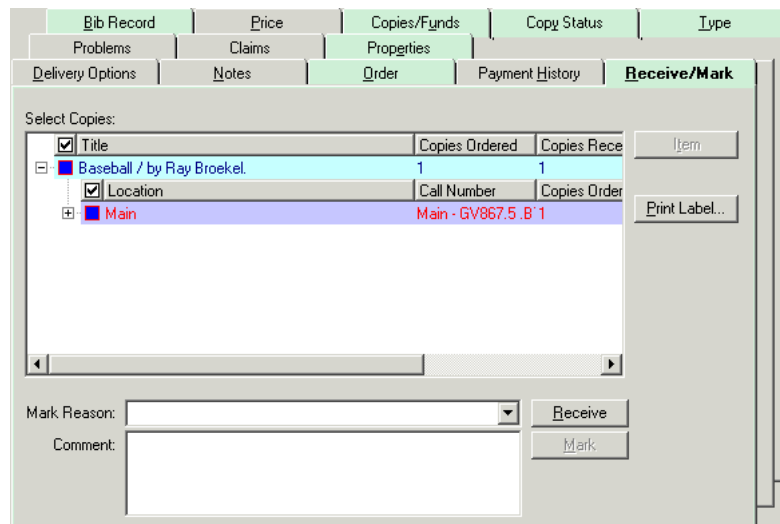


Figure 7-18. Line Item dialog box - Receive/Mark tab

See [Line Item Hierarchy](#) on [page 7-7](#) for an explanation of the line item hierarchy seen in the **Select Copies** section.

4. Select the copies you want to mark from the hierarchy, select a mark reason from the drop-down list in the **Mark Reason** field.

**OPTIONAL:**

5. *Enter any additional comments in the **Comment** field.*
6. Click the **Mark** button.

Result: The copy is marked and sent to the **Problems** list. See [Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues from the Problems Workspace](#) on [page 2-104](#) and [Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices](#) on [page 11-27](#) for more information.

---



<b>Introduction</b>	<b>8-1</b>
<b>Subscription Maintenance Workspace</b>	<b>8-2</b>
• Security for Working in Subscription Maintenance	8-4
<b>Subscription Components</b>	<b>8-4</b>
<b>Linking a Publication Pattern to a Component</b>	<b>8-8</b>
• Predictive Component Pattern Tab	8-9
Combine/Omit Issues	8-12
• Non-Predictive Component Pattern Tab	8-14
• Issue-Related Activities	8-16
Modifying Claim Information	8-16
Changing the Expected Date of an Issue	8-17
Adding an Extra Issue	8-17
Changing Enumeration/Chronology of an Issue	8-18
Removing an Issue	8-19
Removing Multiple Issues	8-19
Converting Non-Predictive Components to Predictive Components	8-21
Closing a Publication Pattern	8-22
<b>Routing Lists</b>	<b>8-23</b>
• Editing a Routing List	8-31
• Deleting a Routing List	8-35
<b>Maintaining Serial Items</b>	<b>8-38</b>

• Closing the Publication Pattern Linked to a Component	8-39
• Changing a Component's Subscription Pattern	8-45
• Deleting a Component	8-45
• Example of Creating a Monthly Publication Pattern	8-47
Enumeration	8-48
Chronology	8-49
Linking the Publication Pattern to a Component	8-49
• Example of Simple Subscriptions and Standing Orders	8-52
• Considerations for Multi-Part Orders	8-54
• Publisher and Analyzed Series	8-56
• Title Changes (Bibliographic Control)	8-57
<b>Publication Patterns - Creating, Editing, and Deleting</b>	<b>8-58</b>
• Security for Adding or Editing a Publication Pattern	8-58
• Creating a Publication Pattern	8-59
Header Information	8-61
Enumeration/ Chronology Tab	8-62
Chronology	8-63
Alternative Enumeration and Alternative Chronology	8-63
Attached Publications Tab	8-63
Properties Tab	8-64
• Editing a Publication Pattern	8-65
• Copying a Publication Pattern	8-67
• Security for Copying a Publication Pattern	8-67
• Deleting a Publication Pattern	8-68
• Security for Deleting a Publication Pattern	8-68
<b>Complex Publication Patterns</b>	<b>8-71</b>
• Creating Complex Publication Patterns	8-71
• Editing/Copying Complex Publication Patterns	8-78
• Deleting Complex Publication Patterns	8-83
• Linking Complex Publication Patterns to a Component	8-84
• Considerations for Complex Publication Patterns	8-90
Percent Symbol	8-90
Grid on the Issue Cycle Tab	8-90
• Search Publication Patterns	8-94
Search By	8-94
Condition	8-95
Search For	8-95

### Introduction

---

The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace allows you to comprehensively manage and maintain the subscription information of your library's serial and multi-part items. When creating a subscription line item on a purchase order, you can use the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to create components and assign a prediction pattern and routing list to the item. You can also use the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to access and modify the subscription information of already existing serial items.

This chapter covers the following.

- **Subscription Maintenance** workspace
- Creating a component
- Linking a publication pattern to a component
  - Predictive patterns
  - Non-predictive patterns
- Working with routing lists
- Maintaining subscriptions
- Creating, editing, and deleting publication patterns

## Subscription Maintenance Workspace

The Subscription Maintenance workspace ([Figure 8-1](#)) opens in the following circumstances.

- When you create a subscription line item: From a purchase order's line item, on the **Type** tab, click the **Subscription Pattern** button. The Subscription Maintenance workspace opens to allow you to create components for the subscription line item. See [Type Tab](#) on [page 6-64](#) for more information.
- From the Serials Check-In or Serials History workspaces, click the **Maintenance** button either to create components or to view or edit the subscription information of the serial. For more information, see [Checking In Serials](#) on [page 9-4](#) and [Serials History Information](#) on [page 9-27](#).
- When you click the **Subscription Maintenance** button on the **Check-In** listbar to search for and display a serial's subscription information.

The screenshot displays the 'Subscription Maintenance' workspace. On the left is a vertical listbar with icons and labels: 'Line Items', 'Orders', 'Invoices', 'Ledgers and Funds', 'Vendors', 'Check-In' (circled), 'Serials Check-In', 'Serials History', 'Subscription Maintenance' (circled), 'Order Maintenance', and 'EDI'. The main workspace area has a title 'Subscription Maintenance' and several input fields: 'Title' (Journal of company law), 'Order Number' (257), 'Vendor' (EBSCO PUBLISHING), 'Call Number' (CL 123 .456), 'Location' (Reference Department), 'Vendor Title #' (VTN123), and 'Component' (Journal of company law). Below these fields are four tabs: 'Component Details' (selected), 'Predictive Component Pattern', 'NonPredictive Component Pattern', and 'Routing Lists'. The 'Component Details' tab contains fields for 'Component Name' (Journal of company law), 'Category' (Basic), 'Note' (check-in note), 'Create Items' (checked), 'Default Item Type' (serial), 'Don't Claim' (unchecked), 'Claim Interval (days)' (10), and buttons for 'Save', 'Delete', and 'Start Over'.

Figure 8-1. Subscription Maintenance workspace opened to a publication

[Table 8-1](#) describes the fields in the top section of the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.

**Table 8-1. Information displayed in the top section of the Subscription Maintenance workspace**

Field Name	Description	Notes
Title	Title of the serial. Clicking the ellipses button opens the MARC bibliographic record.	For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see <a href="#">Viewing and Editing MARC Records (Cataloging in Acquisitions)</a> on <a href="#">page 13-1</a> . For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see <a href="#">http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server</a> on <a href="#">page 13-16</a> .
Order Number	Purchase order number to which the title is linked.	Display the purchase order by clicking the ellipsis button beside this field. This eliminates the need to search for the purchase order manually.
Vendor	Vendor used to obtain the title.	Display the vendor by clicking the <b>ellipsis</b> button beside this field. This eliminates the need to search for the vendor record manually.
Call Number	Call number of the MFHD associated with this component.	
Location	MFHD's location.	
Vendor Title #	This a unique number supplied by your vendor. It is used by your vendor to identify the item.	If you entered this number in the <b>Vendor Title #</b> field on the <b>Type</b> tab at the time of the line item's creation, it automatically displays.
Component	If one or more components has been created for the serial title, it displays in the <b>Component</b> field drop-down list.  If no components have been created for the serial title, you must create a new component.	The tabs on the <b>Subscription Maintenance</b> workspace display information about the currently selected component.
New button	Opens the <b>Component Details</b> tab.	

## Security for Working in Subscription Maintenance

---

To be authorized to work in the Subscription Maintenance workspace, the **Serials Check-In** check box ([Figure 8-2](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab in the operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

**Figure 8-2. Profile Values tab**

If the **View-Only Serials Check-In** check box is selected on the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view Subscription Maintenance information, but the operator is not able to perform any functions (such as creating a new component, changing the enumeration/chronology information of an expected issue, editing a routing list, and so on). See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

## Subscription Components

---

Subscription components are part of a serial title that is synchronized with a publication pattern. There are three types of subscription components:

- basic: used for regular issues of the periodical
- supplementary: special issues or topical issues that are in addition to the basic component
- index: an index issue for an entire volume or multiple volumes of a serial

Each of these subscription components can be attached to a different publication pattern (even though they are part of the same subscription). For more information about publication patterns, see [Publication Patterns - Creating, Editing, and Deleting](#) on [page 8-58](#).

In order to receive multiple pieces (or components), the line item must be one of the following five types.

- Subscription
- Membership
- Standing Order
- Blanket Order
- Multi-part

If the line item is of a type that can receive multiple pieces, components can be created from the **Type** tab of the line item during a purchase order entry. You can also create additional components from Serials Check-In after the purchase order has been approved.

**IMPORTANT:**

*It is important to create a component for a line item with a line item type of Subscription, Membership, Standing Order, Blanket Order, or Multi-part. If this is not done, the line item is treated as a monograph. This can cause confusion in the Acquisitions **Problems List** because, if the line item is marked by the system and sent to the **Problems List** due to a surpassed Claim Interval or Cancel After date, the marked line item displays in the **Marked Line Items** tab rather than the **Marked Issues** tab.*

If it is necessary to wait to create the component at a later date (for example, on receipt of the first issue), verify that the component has been created *before* the Claim Interval or Cancel After date has passed.

If you choose to create a component at a later date, you must still do so from the line item level of the purchase order.

[Procedure 8-1, Creating a subscription component](#), describes how to create a component from the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.



---

**Procedure 8-1. Creating a subscription component**

---

Use the following to create a component from the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.

1. From the Subscription Maintenance workspace, click the **New** button beside the **Component** field.

Result: The **Component Details** tab opens (see [Figure 8-3](#)).

---

The screenshot shows the 'Subscription Maintenance' workspace with the 'Component Details' tab selected. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Title:** Text field containing 'Journal of company law'.
- Order Number:** Text field containing '257'.
- Vendor:** Text field containing 'EBSCO PUBLISHING'.
- Call Number:** Text field containing 'CL 123 .456'.
- Location:** Text field containing 'Reference Department'.
- Vendor Title #:** Text field containing 'VTN123'.
- Component:** Dropdown menu showing 'Journal of company law'.
- New** button.
- Tabs:** 'Component Details' (selected), 'Predictive Component Pattern', 'Non-Predictive Component Pattern', and 'Routing Lists'.
- Component Name:** Text field containing 'Journal of company law'.
- Check-In Title:** Check box, checked.
- Category:** Dropdown menu showing 'Basic'.
- Note:** Large text area.
- Create Items:** Check box, unchecked.
- Default Item Type:** Dropdown menu.
- Don't Claim:** Check box, unchecked.
- Claim Interval (days):** Spin box showing '0'.
- Save** and **Cancel** buttons.

---

**Figure 8-3. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Component Details tab**

2. The bibliographic title of the serial displays in the **Component Name** field by default. You can modify this information (45 characters maximum, including punctuation and spaces).



3. The **Check-In title** check box is automatically selected by default. If you want the information entered in the **Component Name** field to be used as the check-in title, leave this check box selected. If you do not, click the check box to clear it.

**NOTE:**

You can use the check-in title to retrieve the serial for checking in, to retrieve the serial's Subscription Maintenance information, or to retrieve the serial's Serials History information. If you do not select the **Check-In title** check box, you cannot use the Component Name to retrieve the serial for any of the above mentioned activities.

4. Select the component's category from the drop-down list in the **Category** field: Basic, Supplementary, or Indexes.
5. Enter any additional information about the component in the **Note** free-text box.
6. A **Claim Interval** is available at the component level. This claim interval is added to an issue's expected date to determine the first date on which the issue is marked for claiming if it is not received. For example, if the expected date of an issue is February 1 and the component claim interval is 10 days, February 11 is the first date on which the issue is marked for claiming if it is not received.

If the component claim interval is set to 0, the system looks at the remaining claiming hierarchy (Line item, PO, vendor, vendor policy). For example if the expected date of an issue is May 1, the component claim interval is 0 days, the line item claim interval is 30, May 31 is the date on which the issue is marked for claiming for the first time.

**NOTE:**

The component Claim Interval is used only to determine the *first* date on which an issue is marked for claiming if it is not received. To determine the subsequent dates on which the issue is marked for claiming if it is not received, the system looks sequentially in a number of other locations to find a claim interval. For a complete listing of these locations, see Step 4 of [System Claim for Serial Issues](#) on [page 11-6](#).

Enter the number of days in the **Claim Interval (days)** field.

In addition, you can click the **Don't Claim** check box at the component level to specify that issues should not be claimed, overriding any claim intervals that may have been set at the line item, purchase order, vendor or vendor type level. If this check box is selected, the **Claim Interval (days)** field is not available.

7. Click the **Create Items** check box if you want item records to automatically create when issues of this subscription component are received from Serials Check-In. For more information about Item Creation, see [Item Creation and Maintenance - Serial Items](#) on [page 10-11](#).

If you want the item records to automatically display when they are created, you must click the **Show Item Record on Create** check box on the **Item Creation** tab in your Session Workflows (see [Item Creation Tab](#) on [page 19-10](#).)

8. Select a default item type from the drop-down list in the **Default Item Type** field. If an item record is created when an issue is received, this default displays in the **Item Type** field on the item record. If no default is defined at the component level, the system looks for the default item type for the location defined in System Administration. If there is no default item type for the location defined in System Administration, the **Item Type** field on the item record defaults to the first item type alphabetically in the list.
9. Click the **Save** button to save this new component.

Result: The component is saved and its subscription pattern can be added.

---

## Linking a Publication Pattern to a Component

---

After a component has been created for a serial item, you must define the component's subscription schedule. You can either use the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab or the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to define the component's subscription schedule.

If a component has a predictable schedule for reception, use the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab (see [Predictive Component Pattern Tab](#) on [page 8-9](#)). When you use this tab, you link the component to a publication pattern, which is a template of generic enumeration and chronology in which your serial component is received (that is, monthly, quarterly, volume, number, year, and so on). This information automatically generates a prediction schedule for the issues of the component. For more information about publication patterns, see [Publication Patterns - Creating, Editing, and Deleting](#) on [page 8-58](#).

If the reception of a component's issues cannot be predicted, use the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab. When you use this tab, you manually input the dates for the next expected subscription issues. See [Non-Predictive Component Pattern Tab](#) on [page 8-14](#).

## Predictive Component Pattern Tab

The **Predictive Component Pattern** tab (Figure 8-4) contains the **Publication Pattern Model** drop-down list and the **Start Prediction** button.

**Subscription Maintenance**

Title:

Order Number:  Vendor:

Call Number:  Location:

Vendor Title #:

Component:

**Component Details** | **Predictive Component Pattern** | Non-Predictive Component Pattern | Routing Lists

Publication Pattern Model:

Figure 8-4. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Predictive Component Pattern tab



## Procedure 8-2. Creating a Predictive Component Pattern

Use the following to create a predictive component pattern.

1. Select the correct publication pattern for the component from the drop-down list in the **Publication Pattern Model** field. After a publication pattern has been selected, you can display the publication pattern by clicking the **ellipsis** beside the field.

### NOTE:

If there are no publication patterns that match the reception schedule of the component, you can either create a new publication pattern or you can use the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab to bypass prediction (see [Non-Predictive Component Pattern Tab](#) on [page 8-14](#).)

- Click the **Start Prediction** button.

Result: The Start Prediction dialog box opens (see [Figure 8-5](#)).

**NOTE:**

The **Start Prediction** button is not enabled until a publication pattern has been selected from the drop-down list in the **Publication Pattern Model** field.

**Figure 8-5. The Start Prediction dialog box**

- Enter the enumeration/chronology values for the first expected issue of the serial component (required). See [Table 8-2](#) for more information.

**Table 8-2. Enumeration values description**

Start Prediction Field	Description
Caption	Provided by the Publication Pattern model selected. This is a non-editable field.
Numbering Scheme	Provided by the Publication Pattern model selected. This is a non-editable field.
Value	Specify value for first issue held or any previous issue value that starts the numbering sequence with the correct values.
# of Issues	Provided by the Publication Pattern model selected. This is a non-editable field.

**Table 8-2. Enumeration values description**

Start Prediction Field	Description
Numbering Continuity	<p>Provided by the Publication Pattern model selected. This is a non-editable field.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Specifying Restart indicates that the first “restarted” component is numbered 1, I, A, i, or a depending on the Numbering Scheme that is chosen.</p>
Changes At	Specify a Changes At value when Numbering Continuity is set for Continuous. Initially, this value is provided as a result of the Publication Pattern model. This is an editable field.

If applicable, enter the alternative enumeration/chronology values for the first expected issue of the serial component. The alternative enumeration/chronology values are provided for publications that maintain a dual numbering scheme.

4. Enter the day of the month on which issues are expected in **The day of the month Expected (1..31)** field.
5. Click the down arrow beside the **First Issue's Expected Date** field and select the day of the first expected issue from the calendar that displays (required). This date must match the date in **The day of the month Expected** field.

**NOTE:**

Normally, the **First Issue's Expected Date** is the date which is used by the system to generate claims. If this is the case, you should allow enough time for mail and check-in delays. However, a **Claim Interval** is available at the component level. If you use this claim interval, the expected date of an issue is not the date on which the issue is claimed if it is not received. Rather, the claim interval is added to the expected date to determine the date on which the issue is claimed if it is not received. In addition, a **Don't Claim** setting is available at the component level and a **Don't Claim Issue** setting is available at the issue level. If the **Don't Claim** setting is activated at the component level, claims are not generated for the component. Likewise, if the **Don't Claim Issue** setting is activated for a particular issue, the issue is not claimed, even if a claim interval has been specified for the component.

[Figure 8-6](#) displays a completed **Start Prediction** dialog box.

**Start Prediction - Monthly--v.,consec.no.,yr.,mo.**

Enter enumeration/chronology values for your first expected issue:

Enumeration						Chronology	
Caption	Numbering Scheme	Value	# of Issues	Numbering Continuity	Changes	Format	Value
v.	Arabic	1				Year	2003
no.	Arabic	1	12	Continuous	13	Months	Jan.

Alternative Enumeration						Alternative Chronology	
Caption	Numbering Scheme	Value	# of Issues	Numbering Continuity	Changes	Format	Value

The day of the month Expected (1..31):

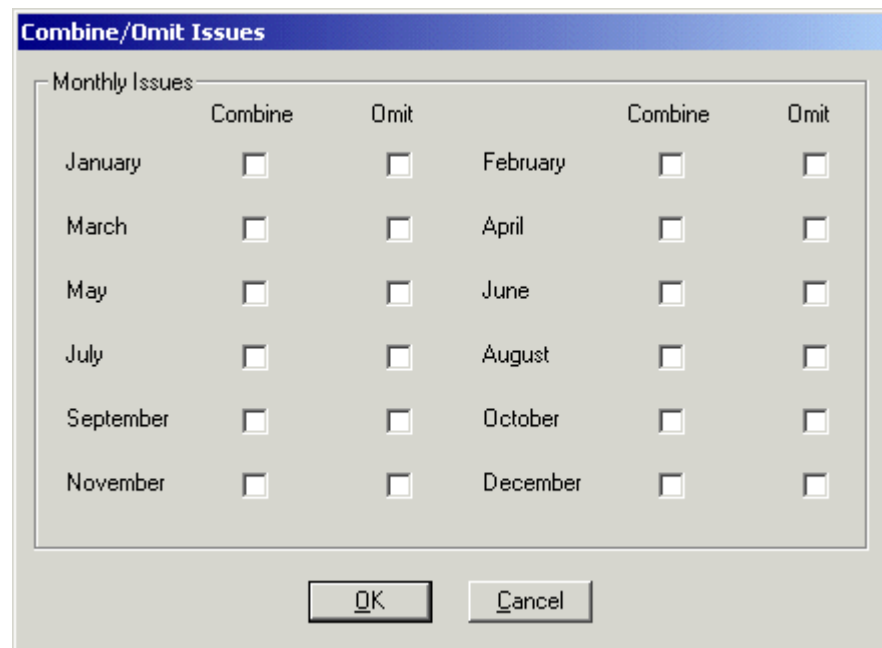
**First Issue's Expected Date:**  ...

**Figure 8-6. Completed Start Prediction dialog box**

### Combine/Omit Issues

The daily and monthly publication patterns allow for combining/omitting issues.

- Click the **Combine/Omit** button from the **Start Prediction** dialog box to display the **Combine/Omit Issues** dialog box (see [Figure 8-7](#)).



**Figure 8-7. The Combine/Omit Issues dialog box**

The **Combine/Omit Issues** dialog box allows you to combine issues or omit issues entirely.

7. Select a month clicking in the **Combine** check box, the issue from the selected month is then combined with the following month.

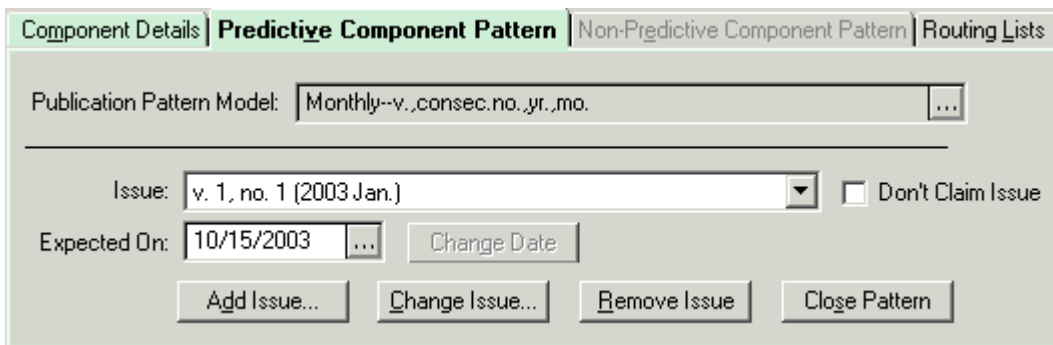
For example, if you click in April's **Combine** check box, the April and May issues are combined. Click the **Omit** check box to omit the issue from the prediction. Once you combine an issue, you are not allowed to omit any issues from the prediction. Once you omit an issue, you are not allowed to combine any issues.

8. Click the **OK** button to apply the changes and return to the **Start Prediction** dialog box. Click the **Cancel** button to return to the **Start Prediction** dialog box without applying the changes.
9. On the **Start Prediction** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the prediction information and close the **Start Prediction** dialog box.

Click the **Cancel** button to cancel the prediction information and close the **Start Prediction** dialog box.

Result: After you press the **OK** button, the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace displays with the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab completed ([Figure 8-8](#)).

---



The screenshot shows a software interface with four tabs: "Component Details", "Predictive Component Pattern" (which is selected and highlighted in green), "Non-Predictive Component Pattern", and "Routing Lists". Below the tabs, the "Publication Pattern Model" is set to "Monthly--v.,consec.no.,yr.,mo." with a dropdown arrow. Below this, the "Issue:" field shows "v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.)" with a dropdown arrow, and there is an unchecked checkbox labeled "Don't Claim Issue". The "Expected On:" field shows "10/15/2003" with a dropdown arrow and a "Change Date" button. At the bottom, there are four buttons: "Add Issue...", "Change Issue...", "Remove Issue", and "Close Pattern".

---

**Figure 8-8. Predictive Component Pattern tab with prediction information**

---

### Non-Predictive Component Pattern Tab

---

If there are no publication patterns that match the reception schedule of a component, or if the reception of a component's issues cannot be predicted, you should use the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab to bypass prediction. When you use this tab, you manually input the dates for the next expected subscription issues.



#### **IMPORTANT:**

*Once a Non-Predictive component pattern is used, a Predictive component pattern cannot be added to the component. If you want to use a Predictive pattern a new component must be created.*



### **Procedure 8-3. Creating a non-predictive component pattern**

---

Use the following to create a Non-predictive component pattern.

1. From the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace, click the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab.



Result: The **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab opens (see [Figure 8-9](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Subscription Maintenance' workspace with the 'Non-Predictive Component Pattern' tab selected. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Title:** Journal of forensic neuropsychology.
- Order Number:** EISISerial2
- Vendor:** EBSCO PUBLISHING
- Call Number:** (empty)
- Location:** Biology
- Vendor Title #:** 12345
- Component:** Journal of forensic neuropsychology. (dropdown menu)
- Buttons:** New
- Tabs:** Component Details, Predictive Component Pattern, **Non-Predictive Component Pattern**, Routing Lists
- Issue:** (dropdown menu)
- Expected On:** 4/26/2005 (calendar icon) **Change Date**
- Don't Claim Issue:** (checkbox)
- Buttons:** Add Issue..., Change Issue..., Remove Issue, Remove Multiple Issues..., Start Prediction...
- Bottom Right Button:** Start Over

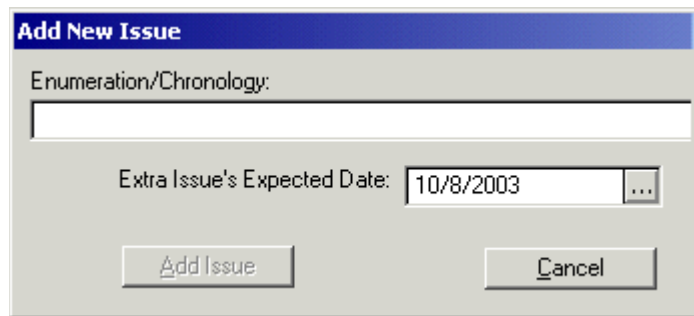
**Figure 8-9. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Non-Predictive Component Pattern tab**

- To manually input the enumeration/chronology information and expected date for an issue, click the **Add Issue** button.

Result: The **Add New Issue** dialog box opens (see [Figure 8-10](#)).

**NOTE:**

For a Non-Predictive Component, the added issue displays after all existing issues.



**Figure 8-10. Add New Issue dialog box**

3. Enter the issue's enumeration/chronology information in the **Enumeration/Chronology** field.
4. Click the down arrow beside the **Extra Issue's Expected Date** field and select a date from the pop-up calendar.
5. Click the **Add Issue** button to add the issue and close the window. Click the **Cancel** button to close the window without adding the issue.

Repeat this and add as many issues as you want. The issues you add appear in the drop-down list in the **Issue** field on the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab.

**NOTE:**

The enumeration/chronology of the next expected issue displays in the **Expected Issue** field in Serials Check-In. Any subsequent issues listed in the **Issue** field drop-down list display in the **Issue(s) in Hand** field in Serials Check-In.

---

## Issue-Related Activities

There are a variety of maintenance activities for serial issues.

### Modifying Claim Information

To specify individual issues that should not be claimed, overriding any claim intervals designated at the component, line item, purchase order, vendor, or vendor type level.

- Select the issue that you want to designate as exempt from claiming from the drop-down list in the **Issue** field and click the **Don't Claim Issue** check box.

**NOTE:**

This is only used with predictive components.

**Changing the Expected Date of an Issue**

The date on which the selected issue is expected to arrive displays in the **Expected On** field.

- If you want to change the date on which an issue is expected to arrive, or if you want to change the date on which all subsequent issues are expected to arrive, select the issue from the drop-down list in the **Issue** field and click the down arrow beside the **Expected On** field. Select a different date on the pop-up calendar and click the **Change Date** button. The following message displays.

Change expected date by the same number of days for all subsequent issues?

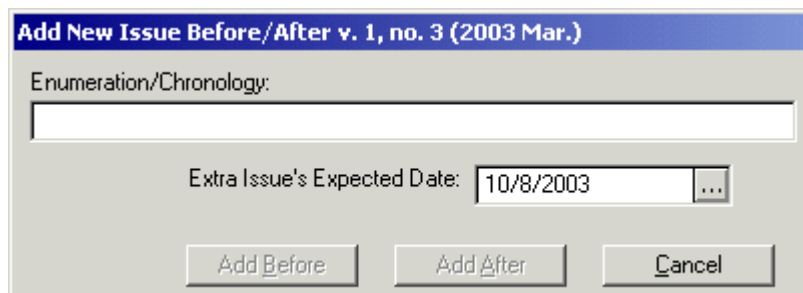
- If you click the **Yes** button, the expected dates of all subsequent issues are changed by the same number.

For example, if you moved the expected date of the currently selected issue forward one day, the expected dates of all subsequent issues are moved forward one day. If you only want to change the expected date for the currently selected issue, click the **No** button.

**Adding an Extra Issue**

You can add up to nine extra issues between predicted issues using the **Add New Issue Before/After** dialog box (see [Figure 8-11](#)).

- If you want to add an extra issue, select the issue before or after which you would like to add an issue from the drop-down list in the **Issue** field and click the **Add Issue** button.



**Figure 8-11. Add New Issue Before/After dialog box**

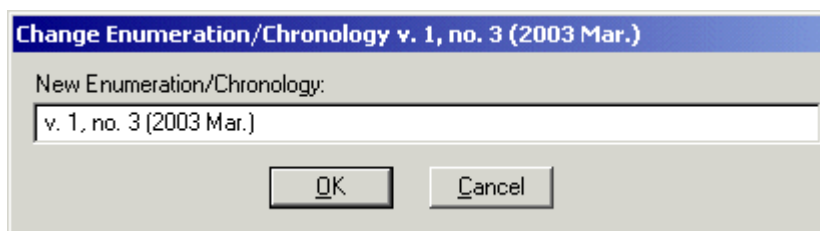
- Enter the extra issue's enumeration/chronology information in the **Enumeration/Chronology** field.
- Click the down arrow in the **Extra Issue's Expected Date** field and select a date from the pop-up calendar.
- Click the **Add Before** button to add the extra issue before the selected issue. Click the **Add After** button to add the extra issue after the selected issue. Click the **Cancel** button to close the window without adding the extra issue.

**NOTE:**

See [Creating a non-predictive component pattern](#) on [page 8-14](#) for non-predictive components.

### Changing Enumeration/Chronology of an Issue

- If you want to change the enumeration/chronology of an issue, select the issue from the drop-down list in the **Issue** field and click the **Change Issue** button. This opens the **Change Enumeration/Chronology** dialog box (see [Figure 8-12](#)).



**Figure 8-12. Change Enumeration/Chronology dialog box**

- Enter the new enumeration/chronology for the selected issue in the **New Enumeration/Chronology** field.
- Click the **OK** button to apply the new enumeration/chronology. Click the **Cancel** button to close the dialog box without applying the new enumeration/chronology.

### Removing an Issue

- To remove an issue, select it from the drop-down list in the **Issue** field and click the **Remove Issue** button.

A confirmation message opens if you have elected to use the deletion reminder on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not elected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

- Click the **Yes** button to remove the issue from the expected issues. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

#### **NOTE:**

The first expected issue for a component cannot be removed.

The issue is removed from the expected issues list.

### Removing Multiple Issues

To remove multiple issues from a predictive component or non-predictive component, click the **Remove Multiple Issues** button ([Figure 8-13](#)) from the **Predictive Component Pattern** or **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab.

**Subscription Maintenance**

Title: Science teacher. ...

Order Number: Serial6 ... Vendor: EBSCO PUBLISHING ...

Call Number: ... Location: Periodicals Room

Vendor Title #: ...

Component: Science teacher. ... **New**

**Component Details** **Predictive Component Pattern** Non-Predictive Component Pattern Routing Lists

Publication Pattern Model: Monthly--consec.no.,yr.,mo. ...

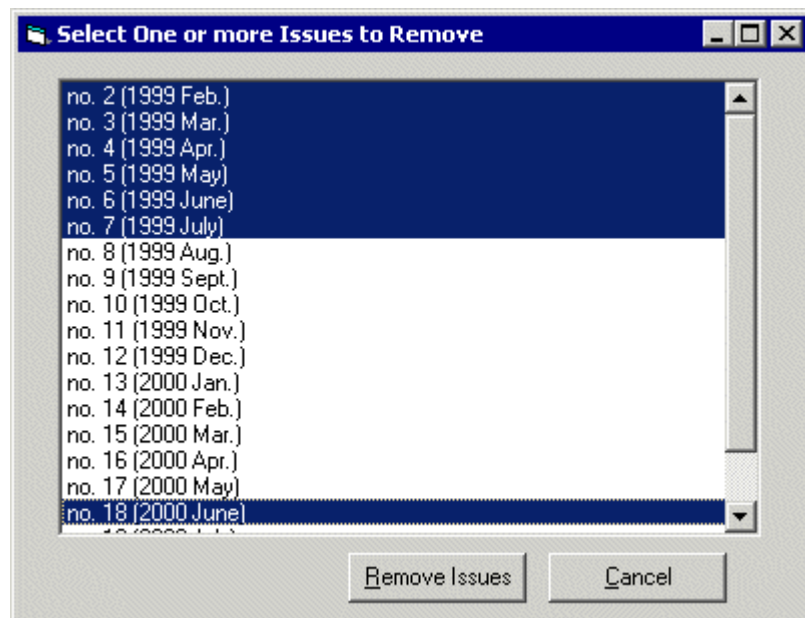
Issue: no. 1 (1999 Jan.) ... ☐ Don't Claim Issue

Expected On: 1/1/1999 ... **Change Date**

**Add Issue...** **Change Issue...** **Remove Issue** **Remove Multiple Issues ...** **Close Pattern**

**Figure 8-13. Predictive Component Pattern tab, Remove Multiple Issues button example**

A list of all existing issues opens in a separate window ([Figure 8-14](#)).



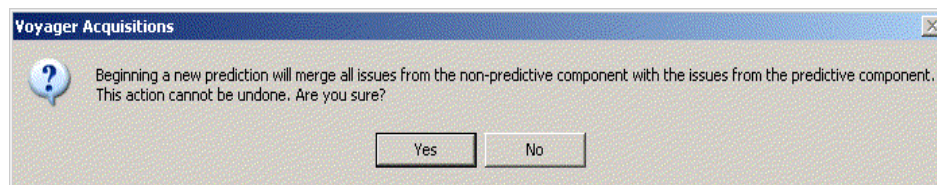
**Figure 8-14.** List of existing issues

Select the expected issues you want to remove using the **Ctrl** + click and **Shift** + click conventions, then click the **Remove Issues** button.

### Converting Non-Predictive Components to Predictive Components

Use the **Start Prediction** button to initiate converting a non-predictive component to predictive component. Serials Check-In security authorization is required to perform this function.

A warning message displays indicating that this procedure cannot be undone. See [Figure 8-15](#).



**Figure 8-15. Start Prediction warning message**

The **Predictive Component Pattern** tab displays. Complete creating a predictive component using the standard functionality. See [Procedure 8-2, Creating a Predictive Component Pattern](#), on page [8-9](#) for more details.

**NOTE:**

Predicted issues always follow the old, unpredicted issues in the new component.

A combined history display for merged non-predictive and predictive components is available when **Start Prediction** is executed.

### **Closing a Publication Pattern**

You can use the **Close Pattern** button to close the publication pattern linked to a component.



**IMPORTANT:**

*This does not delete the actual publication pattern, but rather ends the component's use of the publication pattern. You might want to close the publication pattern linked to a component if your subscription has ended or if you want to change the subscription pattern by linking a different publication pattern to the component.*

See [Closing the Publication Pattern Linked to a Component](#) on [page 8-39](#) for more information.

**NOTE:**

This is only used with predictive components.



## Routing Lists

---

Serial Issues Routing provides printed slips for routing serial issues to recipients, which can be patrons and/or locations. When a specific issue of a component is received through Serials Check-In, the system determines whether or not routing lists exist for that component. If routing lists do exist, the **Route Serial Issue** dialog box displays, from which you can select, edit, or print any of the routing lists defined for that component.

If the **Automatically route serials** check box on the **Serials Check-In** tab in your Session Workflows is selected, the **Route Serial Issue** dialog box does not display when an issue is received. Rather, the next unused routing list is automatically printed. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

After a component has been created for a serial item, you can use the **Routing Lists** tab on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to create one or more routing lists for the component. After routing lists have been created for a component, the **Routing Lists** tab ([Figure 8-16](#)) can be used to edit or delete routing lists.

The screenshot shows the 'Subscription Maintenance' workspace with the 'Routing Lists' tab selected. The workspace contains several input fields: 'Title' (Journal of conflict resolution.), 'Order Number' (EISISerial3), 'Vendor' (EBSCO PUBLISHING), 'Call Number' (JX1901 .J6), 'Location' (Periodicals Room), 'Vendor Title #' (bber test 82307), and 'Component' (Journal of conflict resolution. B). There are 'New' and 'Start Over' buttons. The 'Routing Lists' tab shows a table with columns 'Routing List Name' and 'Individuals'. The table contains three rows: 'Special Scholars', 'Staff', and an empty row. To the right of the table are 'New...', 'Edit...', and 'Delete' buttons.

Routing List Name	Individuals
Special Scholars	
Staff	

**Figure 8-16. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Routing Lists tab**

[Procedure 8-4, Creating a Routing List](#), explains how to add this part of a component.



#### **Procedure 8-4. Creating a Routing List**

---

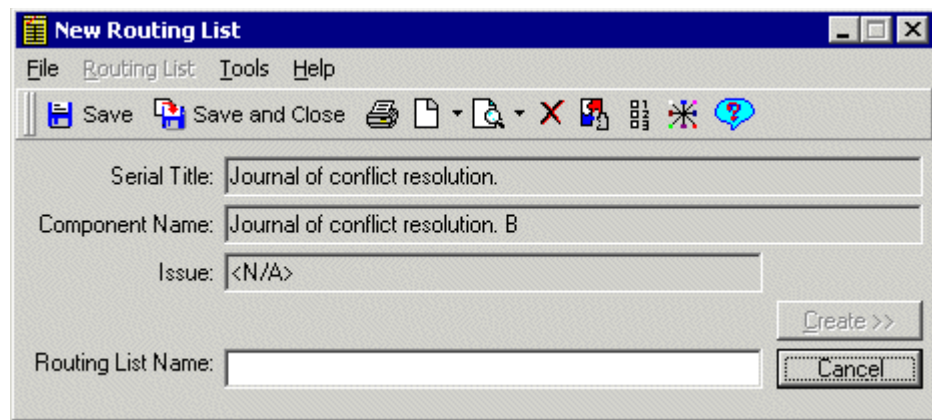
Use the following to create a routing list.

**NOTE:**

This procedure begins at the point where you have opened a serial record to display its details within the Subscription Maintenance workspace.

1. Click the **Routing Lists** tab, then the **New** button.

Result: The **New Routing List** dialog box opens ([Figure 8-17](#)). The serial and component that the routing list is assigned to display in the **Serial Title** and **Component Name** fields. These cannot be changed.



**Figure 8-17. New Routing List dialog box**

**NOTE:**

A specific issue's identification displays in the **Issue** field when it is received through Serials Check-In.

2. Enter a name for the routing list in the **Routing List Name** field and click the **Create** button.

Result: The **Edit Routing List** dialog box opens ([Figure 8-18](#)).

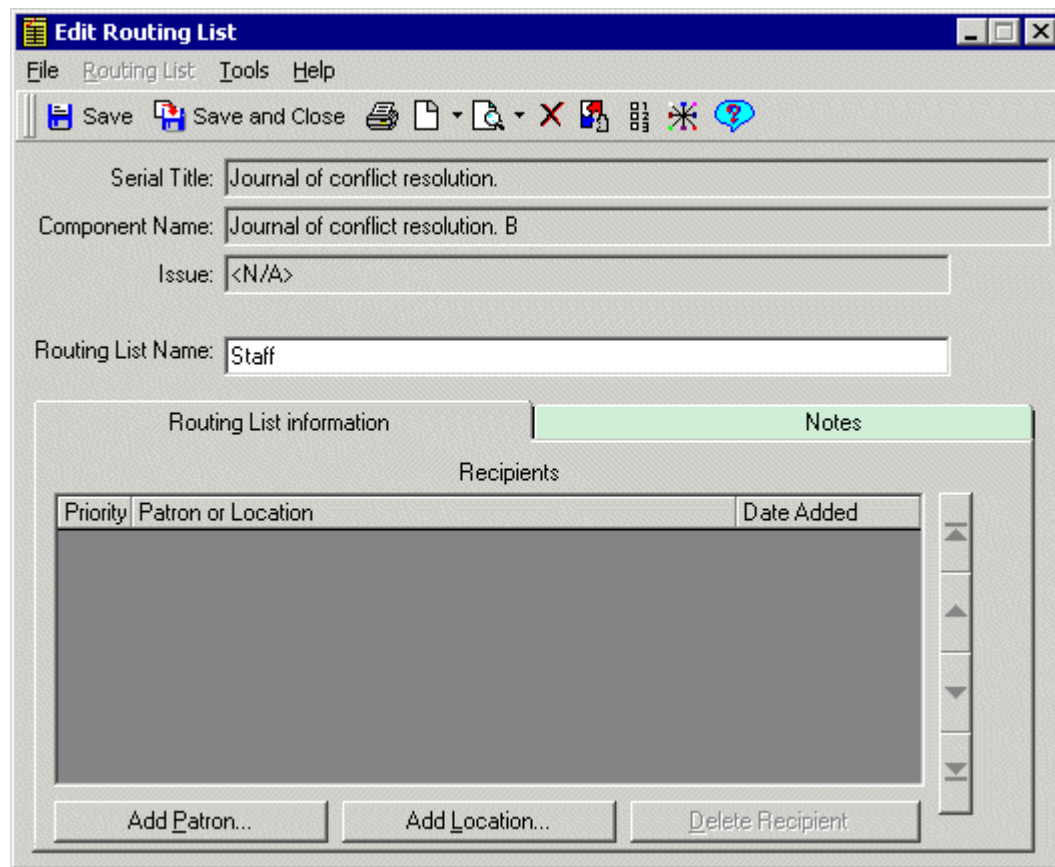


Figure 8-18. Edit Routing List dialog box

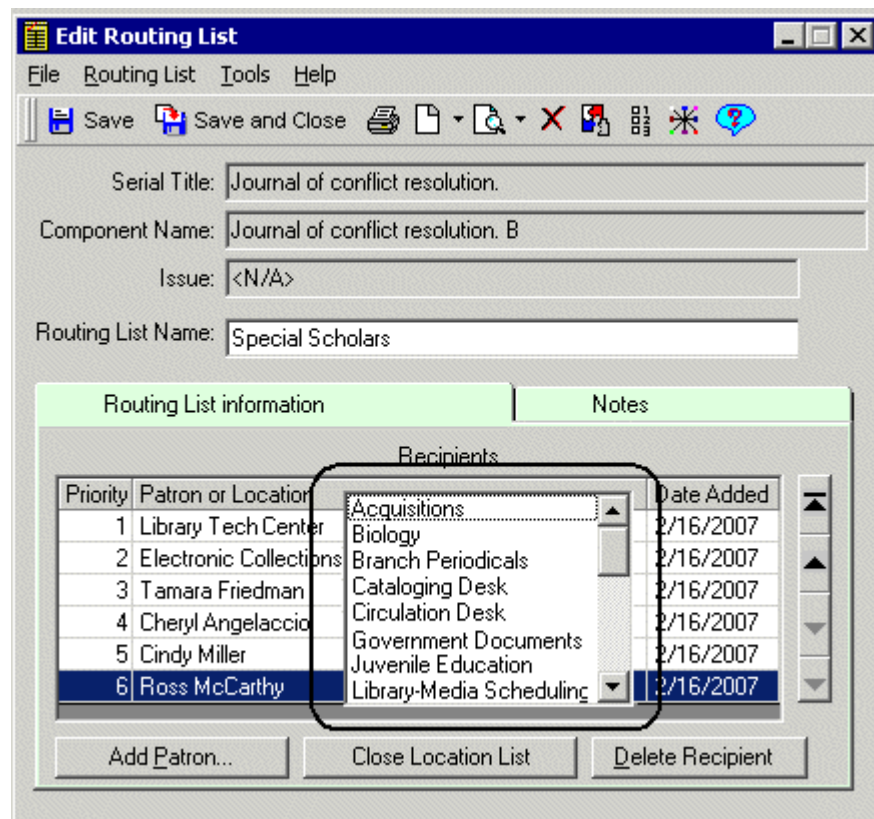
The **Edit Routing List** dialog box contains two tabs: **Routing List Information** and **Notes**. The **Routing List Information** tab displays the list of Recipients (Patrons or Locations) to be routed to. The **Recipients** list box displays the **Priority** of the recipients (the lower the number, the higher the priority), the **Patron** name or **Location** of the recipients, and the **Date Added** of the recipients to the routing list.

**NOTE:**

If a patron is deleted in Circulation, the patron is automatically, and without warning, removed from any and all routing lists. The same is true for deleting a location in System Administration.

3. To add a location recipient to the routing list, click the **Add Location** button.

Result: A location list opens ([Figure 8-19](#)).



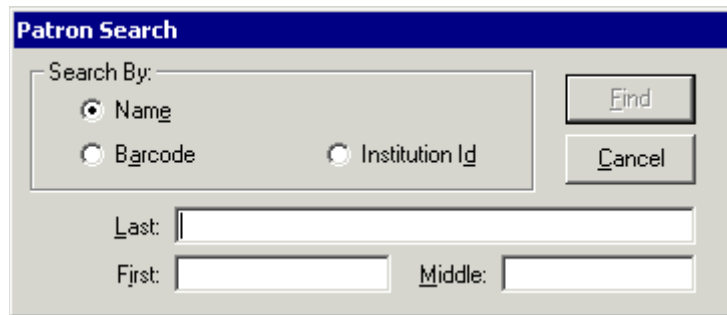
**Figure 8-19. Edit Routing List dialog box - location list displayed**

- Double-click a location to add it to the routing list. (If you decide not to add a location to the routing list, click the **Close Location List** button.)

Result: The location displays in the **Recipients** list on the **Routing List Information** tab.

- To add a patron recipient to the routing list, click the **Add Patron** button.

Result: The **Patron Search** dialog box opens (see [Figure 8-20](#)).



The image shows a 'Patron Search' dialog box with a blue title bar. Inside, there is a 'Search By:' section with three radio buttons: 'Name' (selected), 'Barcode', and 'Institution Id'. To the right of these are 'Find' and 'Cancel' buttons. Below the radio buttons are three text input fields: 'Last:', 'First:', and 'Middle:'.

**Figure 8-20. Patron Search dialog box**

6. Select one of the following **Search By** options:
  - **Name**, to search by a patron's last, first and/or middle name. (You must enter at least one character in the **Last** field. Truncation is acceptable.
  - **Barcode**, to search by the patron's barcode (typed or scanned).
  - **Institution Id**, to search by entering the patron's institution ID.
7. Enter the search term for the method you selected and click the **Find** button.

**Result:** If your search returns a single patron, that patron's name displays in the **Recipients** list box. If more than one patron matches your searching criteria, the **Patron Search** dialog box expands to display the matching patrons ([Figure 8-21](#)).

The image shows a 'Patron Search' dialog box. At the top, there's a title bar 'Patron Search'. Below it, a 'Search By:' section has three radio buttons: 'Name' (selected), 'Barcode', and 'Institution Id'. To the right of these are 'Find' and 'Clear' buttons. Below the search criteria, there are input fields for 'Last:' (containing 'mc'), 'First:', and 'Middle:'. At the bottom, there's a table with two columns: 'Patron Name' and 'Institution Id'. The table contains three rows of data. At the very bottom of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Patron Name	Institution Id
McCarthy, Ross	100071
McClay, Paul	100072
McClure, Christine	1234

**Figure 8-21. Multiple patrons returned on a search**

8. Choose from the following options to save or discard these changes. Click
  - the **Cancel** button to cancel the search without adding a patron
  - the **Clear** button to clear the search criteria in order to conduct another search.
  - the correct patron's row followed by the **OK** button.

Result: The patron is added to the routing list and displays in the Recipients list on the **Routing List Information** tab (see [Figure 8-22](#)).

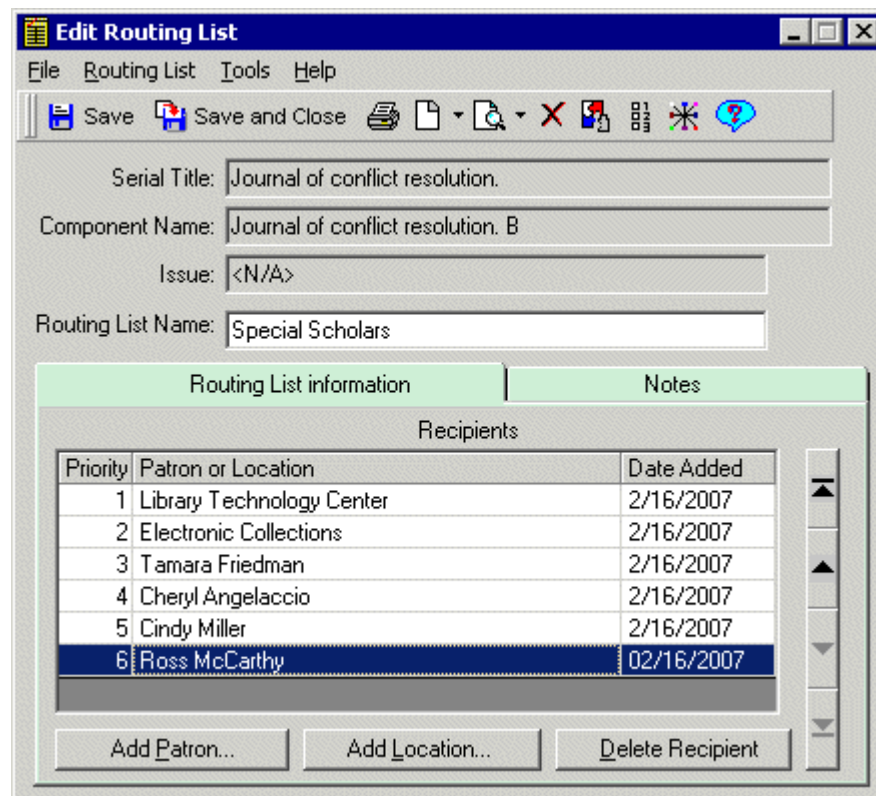


Figure 8-22. Edit Routing List dialog box - locations and recipients displayed

9. Click the **Notes** tab and enter any additional information in the free-text box. To include the notes when the routing list is printed, select the **Print Notes on Routing List** check box.

**NOTE:**

If you have defined a tab color in Preferences, the **Notes** tab is highlighted whenever there are notes or whenever the **Print Notes on Routing List** check box is selected.

10. When you have finished adding information to the routing list, click the **Save** button on the toolbar or select **Save** from the **Routing List** menu.
11. To close the routing list, click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar or select **Save and Close** from the **Routing List** menu.



Result: Voyager saves your input to the database and closes the **Edit Routing List** form closes.

**NOTE:**

If you have unsaved changes, the system displays a message asking if you want to save changes. Click the **Yes** button to save the changes before closing the routing list, the **No** button to close the routing list without saving your changes, the **Cancel** button to cancel the closing of the routing list.

---

### **Editing a Routing List**

---

To edit a routing list, access the list by conducting a quick search (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)) or a standard search (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#).)

The **Edit Routing List** dialog box contains two tabs.

- **Routing List Information**
- **Notes**

The **Routing List Information** tab displays the list of Recipients (Patrons or Locations) to be routed to. The Recipients list displays the Priority of the recipients (the lower the number, the higher the priority), the Name or Location of the recipients, and the Date the recipients were added to the routing list.

**NOTE:**

If a patron is deleted in circulation, the patron is automatically, and without warning, removed from any and all routing lists. The same is true for deleting a location in System Administration. If a location is deleted in System Administration, the location is automatically, and without warning, removed from any and all routing lists.

**NOTE:**

The serial and component that the routing list is assigned to display in the **Serial Title** and **Component Name** fields. These cannot be changed. A specific issue's identification displays in the **Issue** field when an issue is received.

The procedure for editing a routing list is shown in [Procedure 8-5, Editing a Routing List](#), on page [8-32](#).



---

**Procedure 8-5. Editing a Routing List**

---

Use the following to edit a routing list.

1. From **Subscription Maintenance** workspace **Component** field, select the component to which the routing list is assigned.
2. Click the **Routing Lists** tab.

Result: The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace displays the **Routing Lists** tab (see [Figure 8-23](#)). If there are routing lists assigned to the component, they display on the **Routing Lists** tab.

---

The screenshot shows the 'Subscription Maintenance' workspace. At the top, there are several input fields: 'Title' (Journal of conflict resolution.), 'Order Number' (EISISerial3), 'Vendor' (EBSCO PUBLISHING), 'Call Number' (JX1901 .J6), 'Location' (Periodicals Room), 'Vendor Title #' (bber test 82307), and 'Component' (Journal of conflict resolution - g). Below these fields are four tabs: 'Component Details', 'Predictive Component Pattern', 'Non-Predictive Component Pattern', and 'Routing Lists'. The 'Routing Lists' tab is selected and highlighted in green. It contains a table with one row: 'Routing List Name' and 'Staff list'. To the right of the table are three buttons: 'New...', 'Edit...', and 'Delete'. At the bottom right of the workspace is a 'Start Over' button.

---

**Figure 8-23. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Routing Lists tab**

---

3. Select the routing list that you want to edit and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The **Edit Routing List** dialog box opens (see [Figure 8-24](#)).

**Edit Routing List**

File Routing List Tools Help

Save Save and Close Print Find X Help

Serial Title: Journal of company law

Component Name: Journal of company law

Issue: <N/A>

Routing List Name: LAW507

Routing List information Notes

Recipients

Priority	Patron or Location	Date Added
1	Jesse Seldess	08/28/2007
2	Branch Periodicals	08/28/2007

Add Patron... Add Location... Delete Recipient

**Figure 8-24. Edit Routing List dialog box**

4. Click in the **Routing List Name** field to edit the routing list name.
5. See steps 3 - 14 of [Creating a Routing List](#) on [page 8-24](#) for information about the different aspects of the routing list that can be edited.
6. After you have edited the routing list, click the **Save** button or select **Save** from the **Routing List** menu.

To close the routing list, click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar or select **Save and Close** from the **Routing List** menu.

Result: Voyager saves your input to the database.

**NOTE:**

If you have unsaved changes, the system displays a message asking if you want to save changes. Click the **Yes** button to save the changes before closing the routing list, the **No** button to close the routing list without saving your changes, the **Cancel** button to cancel the closing of the routing list.



---

**Procedure 8-6. Changing the Priority of a Recipient**

---

Use the following to change the priority of a recipient.

1. The **Recipients** list displays the priority of the recipients (the earlier in the list and the lower the number, the higher the priority). The priority ranking on the routing list determines the routing order for issues of the component when they are received. You can use the arrow buttons ([Figure 8-25](#)) to the right of the recipient list to move a recipient up or down in priority.



---

**Figure 8-25. Arrow Buttons**

- To move a recipient to the top of the priority list, select the recipient and click the uppermost arrow button.
- To move a recipient up one level in the priority list, select the recipient and click the second arrow button from the top.
- To move a recipient down one level in the priority list, select the recipient and click the second arrow button from the bottom.
- To move a recipient to the bottom of the priority list, select the recipient and click the last arrow button.

Result: The priority is edited.

---



---

**Procedure 8-7. Printing a Routing List**

---

Use the following to print a routing list.

1. To print the routing list, click the **Print** button on the toolbar or select **Print** from the **Routing List** menu.

Result: The routing list prints the following information.

- Title
- Component
- Issue
- Routing list name
- Notes
- Recipients

The recipient list includes the name and their active temporary address. If there is no active temporary address the permanent address is printed.

---



---

**Procedure 8-8. Deleting a recipient from the Routing List**

---

Use the following to take a recipient off of the routing list.

1. Select the recipient from the Recipient list and click the **Delete Recipient** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays. If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message. Click the **Yes** button to continue. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

---

---

**Deleting a Routing List**

---

You can delete a routing list from the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace or you can display a routing list and delete it from the **Edit Routing List** dialog box.

The procedure for deleting a routing list is shown in [Procedure 8-9, Deleting a Routing List from the Subscription Maintenance Workspace](#), on page [8-36](#).



### Procedure 8-9. Deleting a Routing List from the Subscription Maintenance Workspace

---

Use the following to delete a routing list.

1. From the drop-down list in the **Component** field, select the component that the routing list is assigned to.
2. Click the **Routing Lists** tab.

Result: The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace displays the **Routing Lists** tab (see [Figure 8-25](#)).

---

The screenshot shows the 'Subscription Maintenance' workspace. At the top, there are several input fields: 'Title' (Journal of conflict resolution.), 'Order Number' (EISISerial3), 'Vendor' (EBSCO PUBLISHING), 'Call Number' (JX1901 .J6), 'Location' (Periodicals Room), 'Vendor Title #' (bber test 82307), and 'Component' (Journal of conflict resolution - g). To the right of the 'Component' field is a 'New' button. Below these fields are three tabs: 'Component Details', 'Predictive Component Pattern', and 'Non-Predictive Component Pattern'. The 'Routing Lists' tab is selected and highlighted in green. This tab contains a table with one row: 'Routing List Name' and 'Staff list'. To the right of the table are three buttons: 'New...', 'Edit...', and 'Delete'. At the bottom right of the workspace is a 'Start Over' button.

Figure 8-25. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Routing Lists tab

Result: If there are routing lists assigned to the component, they display on the **Routing Lists** tab.

3. Select the routing list that you want to delete and click the **Delete** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion of the routing list.

---



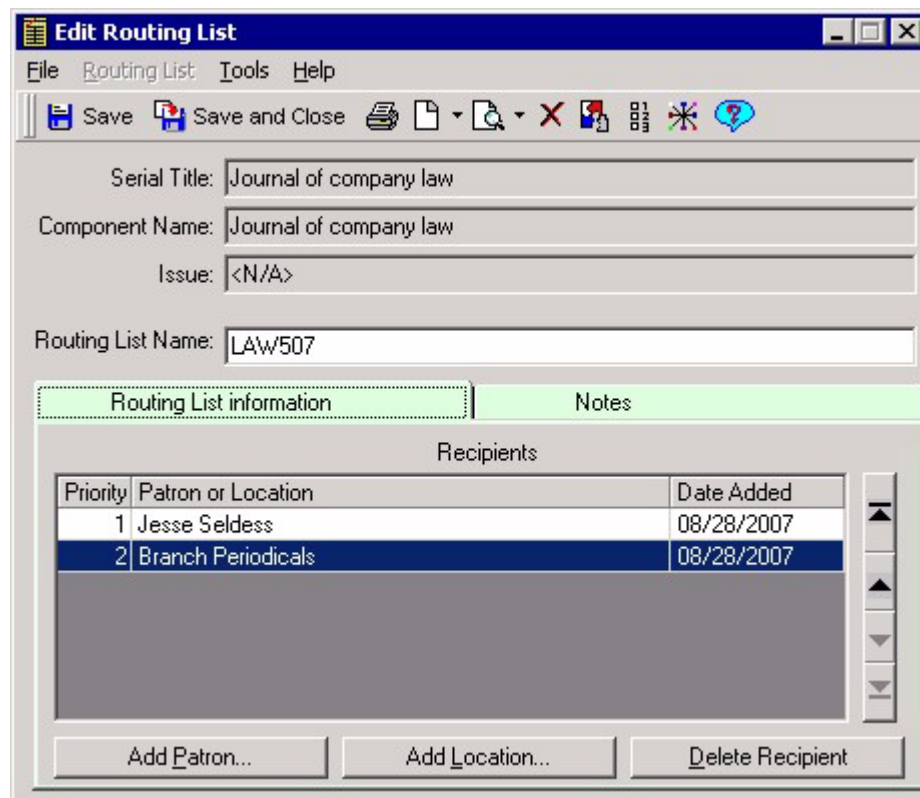
---

**Procedure 8-10. Deleting a Routing List from the Edit Routing List dialog box**

---

Use the following to delete a routing list from the **Edit Routing List** dialog box.

1. On the **Routing Lists** tab, select the routing list that you want to delete and click the **Edit** button. The **Edit Routing List** dialog box opens (see [Figure 8-26](#)).



**Figure 8-26. Edit Routing List dialog box**

2. Click the **Delete** button (X) on the toolbar or select **Delete** from the **Routing List** menu.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion of the routing list.

---

## Maintaining Serial Items

This section provides information related to maintaining serial items to include the following.



- Closing the publication pattern linked to a component
- Changing a component's subscription pattern
- Considerations for multi-part orders
- Title changes

### **Closing the Publication Pattern Linked to a Component**

---

You might want to close the publication pattern linked to a component if your subscription has ended or if you want to change the subscription pattern by linking a different publication pattern to the component. Closing the publication pattern linked to a component does not delete the actual publication pattern, but rather ends the component's use of the publication pattern. In addition, the component's check-in history remains intact if the publication pattern is changed or closed.

The procedure for closing the publication pattern linked to a component is shown in [Procedure 8-11, Closing the Publication Pattern Linked to a Component](#).



#### **Procedure 8-11. Closing the Publication Pattern Linked to a Component**

---

Use the following to close a publication pattern linked to a component.

1. Click the **Subscription Maintenance** button from the Acquisitions listbar, select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **Subscription Maintenance** from the cascading menu that displays.
2. The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace opens ready to search for a serial item
3. Search for and display subscription maintenance information for a serial item. See [Procedure 2-10, Searching for and displaying Serial Information](#), on page [2-100](#).

**Figure 8-27. Subscription Maintenance search workspace - expanded**

The following information displays for each record in the search results list.

- Title of the serial
  - Vendor code of the vendor used on the purchase that the serial is linked to
  - Number of components that have been created for the serial
  - Holdings location for the serial
  - Call number
  - Order Type
4. Select the serial from the search results list and click the **Select** button.

Result: The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace displays the serials subscription information (see [Figure 8-28](#)).

**Subscription Maintenance**

Title: Journal of company law ...

Order Number: 257 ... Vendor: EBSCO PUBLISHING ...

Call Number: CL 123 .456 Location: Reference Department

Vendor Title #: VTN123

Component: Journal of company law ... **New**

**Component Details** | Predictive Component Pattern | NonPredictive Component Pattern | Routing Lists

Component Name: Journal of company law Check-In Title ☒

Category: Basic

Note: check-in note

Create Items ☒ Default Item Type: serial

Don't Claim ☐ Claim Interval (days): 10 **Save** **Delete**

**Start Over**

**Figure 8-28. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Component Details displayed**

The title of the serial displays in the **Title** field at the top of the window. To display the MARC bibliographic record associated with the title, click the **ellipsis** button beside the field (see [Figure 8-29](#)).

**NOTE:**

The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

Tag	Ind 1	Ind 2	Bibliographic Data
035			\$a 12345
245	1	0	\$a Journal of company law
260			\$a Chicago \$b CCH

---

**Figure 8-29. MARC Bibliographic record**

The number of the purchase order that the title is linked to displays in the **Order Number** field. The vendor used to obtain the title displays in the **Vendor** field. You can display the purchase order and vendor record by clicking the **ellipsis** buttons beside these fields. This ability to display the purchase order and vendor directly from the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace helps improve your workflow by eliminating the need to search for the purchase order and vendor manually.

5. If one or more components have been created for the serial title, they display in the **Component** field drop-down list. Select the appropriate component from drop-down list.

Result: The tabs on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace display information about the currently selected component.

6. Click the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab.

Result: The **Predictive Component Pattern** tab displays (see [Figure 8-30](#)).

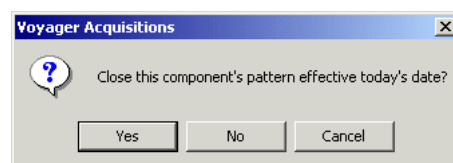
The screenshot shows the 'Subscription Maintenance' window with the 'Predictive Component Pattern' tab selected. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Title:** Journal of company law
- Order Number:** 257
- Vendor:** EBSCO PUBLISHING
- Call Number:** CL 123 .456
- Location:** Reference Department
- Vendor Title #:** VTN123
- Component:** Journal of company law (dropdown menu)
- Buttons:** New
- Tabs:** Component Details, Predictive Component Pattern (active), Non-Predictive Component Pattern, Routing Lists
- Publication Pattern Model:** Biweekly-v.,no.,yr.
- Issue:** v. 1, no. 1 (2003) (dropdown menu)
- Don't Claim Issue:** ☐
- Expected On:** 1/5/2004 (calendar icon)
- Buttons:** Change Date, Add Issue..., Change Issue..., Remove Issue, Close Pattern
- Bottom Button:** Start Over

**Figure 8-30. Predictive Component Pattern tab**

7. Click the **Close Pattern** button.

Result: A confirmation message asks you if you want to close the component's pattern effective today's date (see [Figure 8-31](#)).



**Figure 8-31. Close pattern confirmation**

8. Operators can close the pattern, cancel closing the pattern, or close the pattern another time.
  - a. If you want to close the component's pattern on the current date, click the **Yes** button.

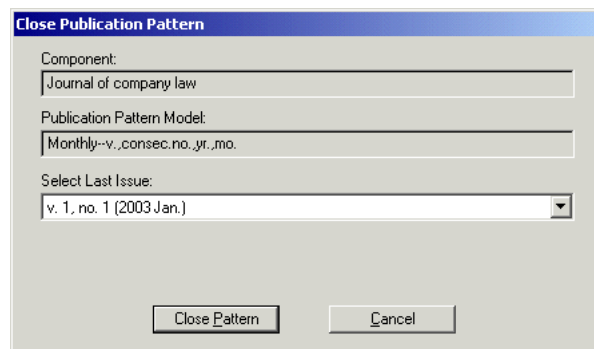
Result: The publication pattern is closed for the component. If necessary, you can then select a different publication pattern for the component.

**NOTE:**

When the component's pattern is closed, all claims or marks that have been made for issues associated with that pattern are cleared.

- b. Click the **Cancel** button if you decide that you do not want to close the component's pattern.
- c. If you do not want to close the component's publication pattern on the current date, but want to select a future issue with which to close the component's pattern,
  1. Click the **No** button.

Result: The **Close Publication Pattern** dialog box opens (see [Figure 8-32](#)). The name of the component displays in the **Component** field. The name of the publication pattern displays in the **Publication Pattern Model** field.



---

**Figure 8-32. Close Publication Pattern dialog box**

2. Select the issue with which you want to close the component's pattern from the drop-down list in the **Select Last Issue** field.
3. Click the **Close Pattern** button to continue.

Result: The publication pattern closes immediately when the **Close Pattern** button is clicked, even if the last issue is not yet received. If necessary, you can select a different publication pattern for the component.

---

### **Changing a Component's Subscription Pattern**

---

You can change a component's subscription pattern by closing the current pattern for the title and linking a new pattern to the component. See [Closing the Publication Pattern Linked to a Component](#) on [page 8-39](#) for information about how to close a component's current pattern.

After the component's pattern has been closed, you can then proceed to select a different publication pattern for the component. See [Linking a Publication Pattern to a Component](#) on [page 8-8](#) for information about how to link a new publication pattern to the component.

### **Deleting a Component**

---

A component cannot be deleted if

- Routing lists are associated with the component
- Outstanding claims are associated with issues of the component.

For information about deleting routing lists, see [Deleting a Routing List](#) on [page 8-35](#). For information about resolving outstanding claims, see [Overview of Processing Marks and Claims](#) on [page 11-10](#).

You can delete a component from the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace. The procedure for deleting a component is shown in [Procedure 8-12, Deleting a Component](#), on page [8-45](#).



#### **Procedure 8-12. Deleting a Component**

---

Use the following to delete a component from the **Subscription Maintenance** dialog box.

1. Click the **Subscription Maintenance** button from the Acquisitions listbar, select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **Subscription Maintenance** from the cascading menu that displays.
2. The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace opens ready to search for a serial item.
3. Search for and display subscription maintenance information for a serial item. See [Procedure 2-10, Searching for and displaying Serial Information](#), on page [2-100](#).

4. Select the component that you want to delete from the drop-down list in the **Component** field.

Result: The **Component Details** tab displays the selected component's information (see [Figure 8-33](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Subscription Maintenance' workspace with the 'Component Details' tab selected. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Title:** Journal of company law
- Order Number:** 257
- Vendor:** EBSCO PUBLISHING
- Call Number:** CL 123 .456
- Location:** Reference Department
- Vendor Title #:** VTN123
- Component:** Journal of company law-Supp. (dropdown menu)
- New** button
- Tabs:** Component Details (selected), Predictive Component Pattern, Non-Predictive Component Pattern, Routing Lists
- Component Name:** Journal of company law-Supp.
- Check-In Title:** ☒
- Category:** Basic (dropdown menu)
- Note:** (text area)
- Create Items:** ☒
- Default Item Type:** serial (dropdown menu)
- Don't Claim:** ☐
- Claim Interval (days):** 10 (spinner)
- Save** and **Delete** buttons

---

**Figure 8-33. Subscription Maintenance workspace - Component Details tab**

5. Click the **Delete** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.



**IMPORTANT:**

*Deleting a component removes any check-in history for that component.*



### Example of Creating a Monthly Publication Pattern

The procedure for creating a monthly publication is shown in [Procedure 8-13, Creating a Monthly Publication - Example](#).



#### Procedure 8-13. Creating a Monthly Publication - Example

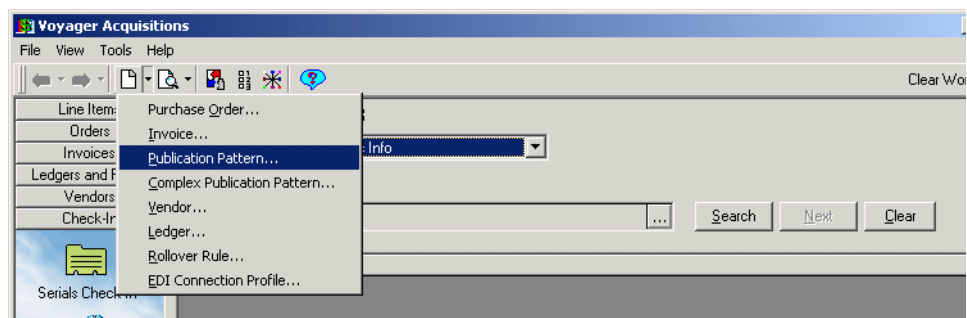
Use the following to create a monthly publication that arrives nine times per year.

1. Click the **Check-In** tab in the listbar.
2. Click the **New Publication Pattern** button ([Figure 8-34](#)) in the listbar. Or select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **New Publication Pattern** from the secondary menu.



**Figure 8-34. New Publication Pattern Button**

You can also click the down arrow beside the **New Item** button ([Figure 8-35](#)) on the toolbar and then select Publication Pattern from the list.



**Figure 8-35. New Item button selected on the toolbar**

Result: The **Publication Pattern** dialog box opens (see [Figure 8-36](#)).

**Publication Pattern -**

File Publication Pattern Tools Help

Save Save and Close Save and New

Descriptive Name: Frequency:

**Enumeration/Chronology** Attached Publications Properties

Enumeration:

Level	Caption	Maximum	No. Scheme	No. Continuity
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				

Chronology:

Level	Format
1	
2	
3	
4	

Alternative Enumeration:

Level	Caption	Maximum	No. Scheme	No. Continuity
1				
2				

Alternative Chronology:

Level	Format
1	

Figure 8-36. Publication Pattern dialog box

3. Enter a descriptive name to identify your publication pattern in the **Descriptive Name** field (required).
4. Select the frequency of the publication pattern from the drop-down list in the **Frequency** field (required). For this example, select Monthly.

### Enumeration

5. Enter a caption for the first level of enumeration in the **Caption** field.
6. For the **No. Scheme** field, select a numbering scheme (for example, Arabic) for the first level of enumeration.
7. Enter a caption for the second level of enumeration in the **Caption** field.
8. In the **Maximum** field, enter the maximum number of pieces at the **second level** that can occur before the first level turns over.

**NOTE:**

This field cannot be set for the first level of enumeration.

Example: If the first level of enumeration is volume, the second level of enumeration is number, and the maximum for the second level of enumeration is 9, then the volume number increases when the issue number reaches 10.

9. Select a numbering scheme for the second level of enumeration.
10. Select **Restart** or **Continuous** from the drop-down list in the **No. Continuity** field. If you restart the numbering for the **second level** each time the maximum is reached, select **Restart**.

**NOTE:**

This field cannot be set for the first level of enumeration.

Example: The first level of enumeration is volume, the second level of enumeration is number, and the maximum for the second level of enumeration is 9. If you select **Restart** from the drop-down list in the **No. Continuity** field, the issue number restarts at 1 after every 9 issues and the volume number increases after every 9 issues. In other words, volume 1 has 9 issues, volume 2 has 9 issues, and so on.

**Chronology**

11. Select the chronology format for each level from the drop-down list in the **Format** field. For this example, select Year for the first level and Months from the second level.
12. Click the **Save** button on the toolbar to save the publication pattern.

**Linking the Publication Pattern to a Component**

In this part of the example, you link the publication pattern that you just created to a serial component that receives issues nine months out of per academic year.

13. Click **Check-In** from the **listbar**.
14. Click the **Subscription Maintenance** button or select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **Subscription Maintenance** from the menu that displays.

Result: The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace opens.

15. Click the **Other Search** button.

Result: The **Search** dialog box opens.

16. Search for a serial title that is on a purchase order but that has not yet had a component created for it. When the serial title displays in the search results, select the title and click the **OK** button.

Result: The title displays in the **Select the correct Order record** section of the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.

17. Select the title, and click **Select**.

Result: The **Component Details** tab in the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace displays.

18. Click the **New** button beside the **Component** field.

Result: The bibliographic title of the serial displays in the **Component Name** field by default. You can modify this information.

19. Click the **Check-In Title** check box if you want the information entered in the **Component Name** field to be used as the Check-In title. You can use the Check-In title to retrieve a serial for checking in. If you do not select the **Check-In Title** check box, you cannot use the Component Name to retrieve the serial for Check-In.

20. Select the component's category from the drop-down list in the **Category** field.

- Basic
- Supplementary
- Indexes

Result: This identifies the Component category

21. Enter any additional information about the component in the **Note** free-text box.

Result: This provides additional helpful information.

22. In the **Claim Interval (days)** field, enter the number of days that are added to an issue's expected date to determine when the issue is claimed if it is not received. You can also use the plus (+) and minus (-) signs beside the field to increase or decrease this number.

A claim interval is available at the component level. If you use this claim interval, the expected date of an issue is not the date on which the issue is claimed if it is not received. Rather, the claim interval is added to the expected date to determine the date on which the issue is claimed if it is not received.

At the component level, you can click the **Don't Claim** check box to specify that issues should not be claimed, overriding any claim intervals that may have been set at the line item, purchase order, vendor or vendor type level. If this check box is selected, the **Claim Interval (days)** field is not available.

Result: The Claim Interval (days) is identified.

23. Click the **Create Items** check box.

Result: Item records are automatically created when issues of this subscription component are received from Serials Check-In by selecting this option.

24. Select a default item type from the drop-down list in the **Default Item Type** field.

Result: If an item record is created when an issue is received, this default displays in the **Item Type** field on the item record. If no default is defined at the component level, the system looks for the default item type for the location defined in System Administration. If there is no default item type for the location define in System Administration, the **Item Type** field on the item record defaults to the first item type alphabetically in the list.

25. Click the **Save** button to save the new component.

Result: This saves the new component name and the Component name displays in the **Component** field on the top section of the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.

26. Click the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab.

Result: The Predictive Component Pattern options display.

27. Select the Nine Months Per Academic Year publication pattern for the component from the drop-down list in the **Publication Pattern Model** field. (Click the **ellipsis** to display the publication pattern details.)

Result: This highlights the Complex Publication Pattern that you want to use.

28. Click the **Start Prediction** button.

Result: The **Start Prediction** dialog box opens.

29. Enter the enumeration/chronology values for the first expected issue of the serial component. If applicable, enter the alternative enumeration/chronology values for the first expected issue of the serial component.

Result: This identifies the enumeration/chronology characteristics.

30. Enter the day of the month on which issues are expected in **The day of the month Expected (1..31)** field.

Result: This identifies the day of the month expected information.

31. Enter the **First Issue's Expect Date**. Click the ellipsis button to display a calendar from which to select this date.

Result: This identifies the first issue's expected date information.

32. If the publication pattern allows, click the **Combine/Omit** button from the **Start Prediction** dialog box to identify combine/omit requirements.

Result: This displays the **Combine/Omit Issues** dialog box.

33. Click the **OK** button to apply the changes.

Result: The **Start Prediction** dialog box displays.

34. On the **Start Prediction** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the prediction information and close the **Start Prediction** dialog box.

Result: The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace displays with the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab visible. The Nine Months Per Academic Year publication pattern then has been linked to the component and is used to predict the reception schedule for issues of the component.

---

### Example of Simple Subscriptions and Standing Orders

---

The pieces are identified as part of a larger unit (for example, periodical subscription or a standing order for an annual) and they are not cataloged separately.

The procedure for simple subscriptions and standing orders is shown in [Procedure 8-14, Simple Subscriptions and Standing Orders - Example](#), on page [8-52](#).



---

#### Procedure 8-14. Simple Subscriptions and Standing Orders - Example

---

The following instructions are a simple way of handling simple subscriptions and standing orders.

1. Create a purchase order with a purchase order type of Continuation.
2. Attach the bibliographic record for the title to the purchase order.
3. Create a link to a holdings record for the intended location. Select the fund(s) for payment.
4. Set the line item type to subscription or standing order, membership, blanket order, multi-part or approval.
5. Enter the vendor title number to provide a link for electronic interchange.
6. Enter as much (or as little) of the subscription details as you require.
7. Set up a subscription component. If the reception schedule is predictable, use the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to link a publication pattern that fits the reception schedule to the component. If the reception schedule is irregular, use the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to bypass prediction, but be sure to enter an expected date in order to start the claim cycle.

**NOTE:**

You can start prediction as you create the order or you can set it up later from Serials Check-In.

8. Approve the order.
9. Use Serials Check-In to receive issues/parts of the title.
10. When you are invoiced for the subscription, create an invoice for the vendor.
11. Search for the purchase order and select the line item for the title.
12. Append the line item to the invoice. You can append the same purchase order line item to many invoices so you can invoice the title from one year to the next while retaining your linked check-in information.
13. Adjust the price to reflect the correct amount.

You can also suppress individual issues from public display. The OPAC display receives current receipts as part of the serials holdings display. This information is combined with MARC holdings record.

---

## Considerations for Multi-Part Orders

---

There are several issues to consider as you set up multi-part orders within Acquisitions.

- Whether the pieces are ordered and tracked as individual pieces or as part of a larger unit received over time.
- Whether the pieces are identified individually upon receipt (analyzed series).

If a component has not been created for a line item with a line item type of subscription, or if a component has been created but has not had any items received through Serials Check-In, the line item is treated as a monograph. This can cause confusion in the Acquisitions **Problems List** because, if the line item is marked and sent to the **Problems List** due to a surpassed Claim Interval or Cancel After date, the marked line item displays in the Order/Invoice Marked Items list rather than the Check-In Marked Issues list due to its being treated as a monograph.

If this is a work flow issue where it is necessary to *not* create a component from the line item level at the time of the line item's creation, but rather to create the component at a later date (for example, upon receipt of the first issue), you should be sure that the component has been created before the Claim Interval or Cancel After date has been surpassed. If you choose to create a component at a later date, you must still do so from the line item level of the purchase order.



### **IMPORTANT:**

*You can make a distinction between how you manage the order and how you catalog the item(s) when they are received.*



## **Procedure 8-15. Multi-part Subscriptions - Example**

---

With a multi-part subscription, the pieces are identified as part of a larger unit, but there are distinct divisions within the subscription itself and they are cataloged separately. For example, a subscription that includes a monthly issue and an annual cumulation.

Use the following for this example.

1. Create a purchase order with a purchase order type of Continuation.
2. Attach the bibliographic record for the title to the purchase order.



3. Create (or link to) a holdings record for the intended location. Select the fund(s) for payment.
4. Set the line item type to subscription, standing order, membership, blanket order, or multi-part.
5. Enter the vendor title number to provide a link for electronic interchange.
6. Enter any subscription details.
7. Set up a subscription component for each part of the subscription. If the reception schedule is predictable, use the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to link a publication pattern that fits the reception schedule to the component. If the reception schedule is irregular, use the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to bypass prediction, but be sure to enter an expected date in order to start the claim cycle.

If a component has not been created for a line item with a line item type of Subscription, Membership, Standing Order, Blanket Order and Multi-Part, the line item is treated as a monograph. This can cause confusion in the Acquisitions **Problems List** because, if the line item is marked and sent to the **Problems List** by the system due to a surpassed Claim Interval or Cancel After date, the marked line item displays in the Marked Line Items list rather than the Marked Issues list due to its being treated as a monograph. If this is a work flow issue where it is necessary to not create a component from the line item level at the time of the line item's creation, but rather to create the component at a later date (for example, upon receipt of the first issue), you should be sure that the component has been created before the Claim Interval or Cancel After date has been surpassed. If you choose to create a component at a later date, you must still do so from the line item level of the purchase order.

8. Approve the order.
9. Check the title through Serials Check-In by selecting the appropriate component.
10. Update the receipt history to suppress the issues that are replaced by a later cumulation.
11. When your subscription is invoiced, create an invoice for the vendor.
12. Search for the purchase order and select the line item for the title.
13. Append the line item to the invoice.
14. Adjust the price to reflect the correct amount.

You can append the same purchase order line item to many invoices so that you can invoice the title from one year to the next while retaining your linked check-in information for all of the components.

You may suppress individual issues from public display from any component. The OPAC display receives current receipts for all components as part of the serials holdings display. This information is combined with summary holdings from the MARC holdings record to build the display.

---

## **Publisher and Analyzed Series**

---

When pieces are identified as part of a larger unit but are cataloged separately use the procedure for publisher and analyzed series as shown in [Procedure 8-16, Publisher and Analyzed Series - Example.](#)



### **Procedure 8-16. Publisher and Analyzed Series - Example**

---

Use the following for publisher and analyzed series.

1. Create a purchase order with a purchase order type of Continuation.
2. Create a bibliographic record for the series title in Cataloging. Suppress this record from the public display. Attach this bibliographic record for the series title to the purchase order.
3. Create (or link) a holdings record for the ordering location and select the fund(s).
4. Set the line item type to standing order, blanket order, approval, membership, or multi-part.
5. Enter the vendor or title number, if available, to provide a link for electronic interchange.
6. Enter any subscription details.
7. Set up a subscription component for the series. If the reception schedule is predictable, use the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab on the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to link a publication pattern that fits the reception schedule to the component. If the reception schedule is irregular, use the **Non-Predictive Component Pattern** tab to bypass prediction, but be sure to enter an expected date in order to start the claim cycle.

**NOTE:**

You can select the prediction pattern as you create the order, or you can set it up later from Serials Check-In.

8. Approve the order.
9. Check in the title through Serials Check-In.
10. When you are invoiced for the subscription, create an invoice for the vendor.
11. Search for the purchase order and select the line item for the series title.
12. Append the line item to the invoice.
13. Adjust the price to reflect the correct amount for this particular item.
14. When the item is received in Cataloging, create an authority record for the series indicating that the titles are cataloged separately.
15. Upgrade the bibliographic record created in Acquisitions to reflect the correct form of series entry. Keep the record suppressed.
16. Create the bibliographic record for the newly received item with the correct form of the series entry in an indexed field. You can append the same purchase order line item to many invoices so that you can invoice the piece separately while retaining your linked check-in information for all of the components.

Because the bibliographic record for the series is suppressed from public display, none of your check-in information is presented to the end users.

In order to see what titles have been received in this particular series, you can search for invoices by the series title. The bibliographic entry for the series record (from your order) links to all of the invoices. The other index entries that display on your series search represent the individual titles.

---

**Title Changes (Bibliographic Control)**

---

Title changes handled in Voyager depend on how you choose to manage the bibliographic records for the serial. If your library does latest entry cataloging, changes to the bibliographic record do not affect the order, holdings, or serials check-in links. A cataloger can edit the bibliographic record, and nothing changes for the serials staff member. If your library does successive entry cataloging, you need to close the pattern for the previous title and link a new pattern to the

bibliographic and holdings record for the new title. Bibliographic links between the various title changes are managed through the 78X links in the bibliographic record and can be set up as hypertext links in the OPAC display.

When a staff member notices a title change during Serials Check-In, they can mark the issue for review from the serials problem list by the cataloging staff. Voyager allows you to define any number of mark reasons, and for this situation you would define such a reason as a possible title change.

## **Publication Patterns - Creating, Editing, and Deleting**

---

A publication pattern is a template of generic enumeration and chronology descriptions in which some of your serial components are received (monthly, quarterly, vol., no., year). Once created, a publication pattern may be associated with one or more subscription components on the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab of the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace. Applying detailed subscription information to a generic publication pattern creates a prediction pattern from which issues of a subscription component are received through Serials Check-In. For example, you can predict which particular volume, number, date and year you'll be checking-in first (this information generates a prediction pattern for the component.) You can create as many publication patterns as you want. The frequency choices are based on MARC 21 values (which have no frequency longer than triennial).

### **Security for Adding or Editing a Publication Pattern**

---

To be authorized to create or edit a publication pattern, the **Add/Update Serial Patterns** check box ([Figure 8-37](#)) must be selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of your Acquisitions/Serials Profile. If the **View-Only Serial Patterns** check box is selected on the **Profile** tab of your Acquisitions/Serials Profile, you can search for and view a publication pattern, but you cannot create or edit a publication pattern (see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.)

Profile Name	Operator	Profile Values	Profile Values Cont.	Locations
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add Update Ledger and Funds			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Invoices	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Ledgers and Funds			<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Invoices	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Ledgers and Funds			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Invoices	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Fund Allocations			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Invoices	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fiscal Close Operations			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-View Volume And Issue	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Currency Maintenance			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit Volume Level Data	
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit issue sequence for volumes	
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery Print	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Incoming			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overexpend Warning	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Outgoing			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overcommit Warning	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Modify EDI Outgoing Messages				

**Figure 8-37. Profile Values Cont. tab**

## Creating a Publication Pattern

The procedure for creating a publication pattern is shown in [Procedure 8-17, Creating a Publication Pattern](#), on page 8-59.



### Procedure 8-17. Creating a Publication Pattern

Use the following to create a publication pattern.

1. Click the **Check-In** bar in the listbar.

Result: The listbar displays the six Check-In activity options: Serials Check-In, Serials History, Subscription Maintenance, Search Routing Lists, New Publication Pattern and Search Publication Patterns.

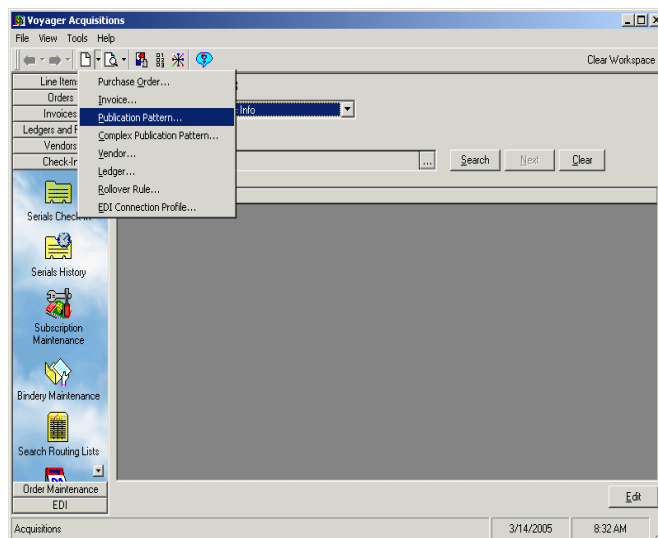
2. To open a new publication pattern:
  - Click the **New Publication Pattern** button ([Figure 8-38](#)) in the listbar.



---

**Figure 8-38. New Publication Pattern Button**

- Select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **New Publication Pattern** from the cascading menu (see [Figure 8-39](#)).
- You can also click the down arrow beside the **New Item** button on the toolbar and then select **New Publication Pattern** from the list.



---

**Figure 8-39. New Item button selected on the toolbar - list displayed**

Result: The **Publication Pattern** workspace opens (see [Figure 8-40](#)).

**Publication Pattern**

File Publication Pattern Tools Help

Save Delete Close [Icons]

Descriptive Name: [Text Field] Frequency: [Drop-down]

**Enumeration/Chronology** | Attached Publications | Properties

**Enumeration:**

Level	Caption	Maximum	No. Scheme	No. Continuity
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				

**Chronology:**

Level	Format
1	
2	
3	
4	

**Alternative Enumeration:**

Level	Caption	Maximum	No. Scheme	No. Continuity
1				
2				

**Alternative Chronology:**

Level	Format
1	

**Figure 8-40. Publication Pattern workspace**

## Header Information

The **Descriptive Name** and **Frequency** fields at the top of the **Publication Pattern** workspace comprise the header information of the publication pattern. These two fields are required and must be completed in order for the publication pattern to be saved.

### NOTE:

Required fields display in the color specified on the **Colors and Fonts** tab of the **Preferences** dialog box (see [Colors and Fonts Tab](#) on [page 18-4](#) for more information.)

- Enter a name to identify your publication pattern in the **Descriptive Name** field (required). This value can be used to retrieve the publication pattern when conducting a search. What do you want to call this pattern? Often, the frequency, enumeration and chronology information is used in the descriptive name. Examples: Monthly (Vol., No), Monthly, 11 issues (vol., no.), Seasonal (Winter, Spring, Summer, Autumn), Seasonal (Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter), Weekly (Vol., Issue) (Date, Month, Year).
- Select the frequency of the publication pattern from the drop-down list in the **Frequency** field (required). This value can be used to retrieve the publication pattern when conducting a search. On what standard frequency do you want to base pattern? How often are issues in this pattern published?

## Enumeration/ Chronology Tab

The **Enumeration/Chronology** tab is divided into four sections: Enumeration, Chronology, Alternative Enumeration and Alternative Chronology. Serial components associated with the publication pattern use the specified enumeration and chronology information (including caption and number scheme) for their individual issues.

5. Click the **Enumeration/Chronology** tab.

### Enumeration

- a. Enter the caption for the **first level** of enumeration in the **Caption** field. For example, Vol., vol., v. How do you want to name the first level of enumeration of this pattern? These captions display in the OPAC as part of the recent issues if current issues are selected for OPAC display. There is a 20 character limit.
- b. Select the numbering scheme for the **first level** of enumeration from the drop-down list in the **No. Scheme** field. How should the first level of enumeration be numbered? The numbering scheme choices are: Alpha lower, Alpha upper, Arabic, Roman lower and Roman upper.
- c. \*Enter the caption for the **second level** of enumeration in the **Caption** field. For example, No., no., n., Issue, Pt., pt. How do you want to name the second level of enumeration of this pattern? There is a 20 character limit.
- d. In the **Maximum** field, enter the maximum number of pieces at the **second level** that can occur before the first level turns over. What is the most you have of this level before the first level turns over? How many issues per volume, how many parts per number?

### NOTE:

This field cannot be set for the first level of enumeration.

**Example:** If the first level of enumeration is volume, the second level of enumeration is issue number, and the maximum for the second level of enumeration is 10, then the volume number increases when the issue number reaches 11. In other words, issue 11 is considered part of the second volume of the publication.

- e. Select the numbering scheme for the **second level** of enumeration from the drop-down list in the **No. Scheme** field. How should the second level of enumeration be numbered? The numbering scheme choices are: Alpha lower, Alpha upper, Arabic, Roman lower and Roman upper.
- f. Select Restart or Continuous from the drop-down list in the **No. Continuity** field. Do you restart the numbering for the **second level** each time the maximum is reached? If so, select Restart; if not, select Continuous.



**NOTE:**

This field cannot be set for the first level of enumeration.

**Example:** The first level of enumeration is volume, the second level of enumeration is issue number, and the maximum for the second level of enumeration is 10. If you select **Restart** from the drop-down list in the **No. Continuity** field, the issue number restarts at 1 after every 10 issues and the volume number increases after every 10 issues. In other words, volume 1 has 10 issues, volume 2 has 10 issues, etc. If you select **Continuous** from the drop-down list in the **No. Continuity** field, the issue number does not restart after every 10 issues and the volume number increases after every 10 issues. In other words, volume 1 includes issues 1 through 10, volume 2 includes issues 11- 20, etc.

- g. Repeat steps [c-f](#) for each subsequent level of enumeration as needed.

**Chronology**

6. Select the chronology format for each level from the drop-down list in the **Format** field. For example, for a monthly publication pattern, select Month for the first level and Year for the second level. What does the chronology information look like on the publication - month, date, year, or season?

**Alternative Enumeration and Alternative Chronology**

Alternative Enumeration and Chronology are not used for all publications, and thus not for all Voyager Publication Patterns. Alternative Enumeration and Chronology apply to serial components which have two types of numbering systems. Example: Library Hi Tech v. 32, no. 2 (consecutive issue 135). The volume/number would be the primary enumeration and the consecutive issue would be the alternative enumeration.

7. Follow the steps in the Enumeration and Chronology sections above.
8. At this point, you must save the publication pattern in order to access the other two tabs on the **Publication Pattern** workspace. Select **Save** from the **File** menu or click the **Save** button on the toolbar.
- 

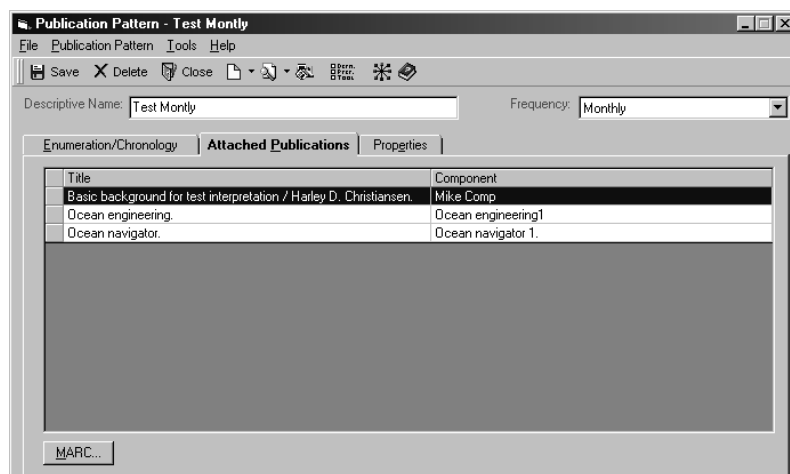
**Attached Publications Tab**

Click the **Attached Publications** tab.

The **Attached Publications** tab ([Figure 8-41](#)) displays the titles and components of all publications that are currently using the publication pattern. To see the bibliographic record of a publication listed on this tab, select the publication and click the **MARC...** button.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

Nothing displays on the **Attached Publications** tab until the publication pattern is associated with at least one publication. The sample screenshot below is an example of what the **Attached Publications** tab looks like when the publication pattern has been associated with a number of publications.



---

**Figure 8-41. Attached Publications tab**

## Properties Tab

Click the **Properties** tab.

The **Properties** tab ([Figure 8-42](#)) on the **Publication Pattern** workspace displays the following information:

- Record ID of the publication pattern (the actual ID of the record in the database)
- Who the publication pattern was created by
- The date on which the publication pattern was created

- The location from which the publication pattern was created
- Who last updated the publication pattern
- The date on which the publication pattern was last updated
- The location from which the publication pattern was last updated

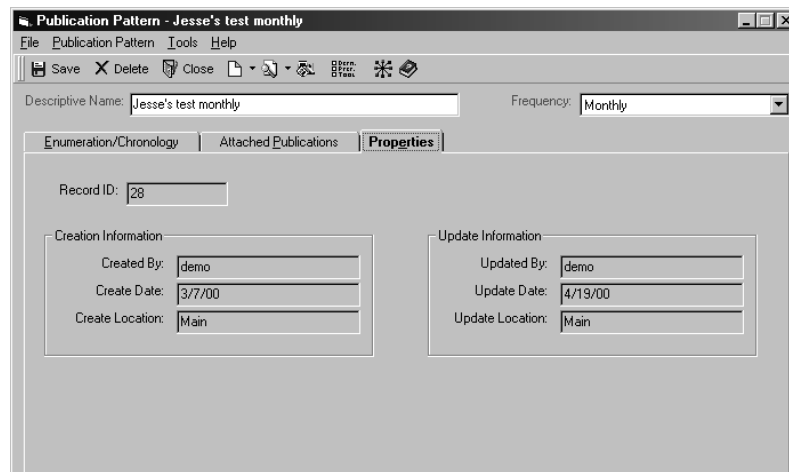


Figure 8-42. Properties tab

## Editing a Publication Pattern

The procedure for editing a publication pattern is shown in [Procedure 8-18, Editing a Publication Pattern](#), on page 8-65.

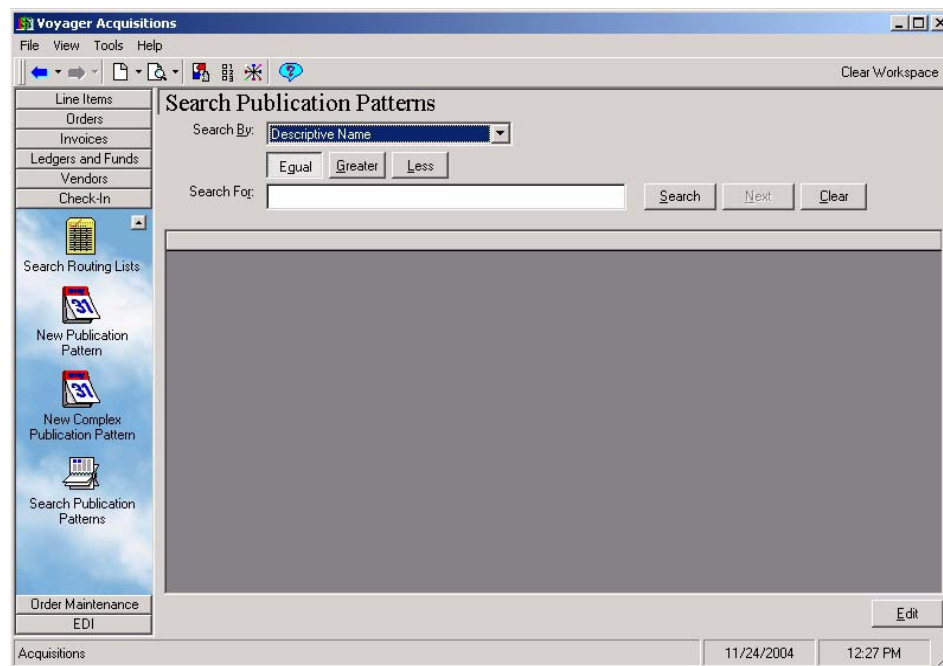


### Procedure 8-18. Editing a Publication Pattern

Use the following to edit a publication pattern.

1. Click **Check-In>Search Publication Patterns** to locate the publication pattern you want to edit.

Result: The **Search Publication Patterns** workspace displays. See [Figure 8-43](#).



**Figure 8-43. Search Publication Patterns workspace**

2. Enter your search criteria and click **Search**.

Result: Search results display.

3. Select the publication pattern that you want to edit from the search results list and click **Edit**. You can also double-click the publication pattern that you want to edit.

Result: The publication pattern displays.

4. Make your changes to the publication pattern using steps similar to creating a publication pattern. See [Table 8-3](#) for a listing of the pages containing this information.

Result: The publication pattern is updated to match your criteria.

**Table 8-3. Page References for Publication Pattern Information**

Header Information	<a href="#">8-61</a>
Enumeration/Chronology tab	<a href="#">8-62</a>
Attached Publications tab	<a href="#">8-63</a>

**Table 8-3. Page References for Publication Pattern Information**

Header Information	<a href="#">8-61</a>
Enumeration/Chronology tab	<a href="#">8-62</a>
Properties tab	<a href="#">8-64</a>

5. Click **Save**, **Save and Close**, or **Save and New**.

Result: This saves the Publication Pattern and leaves the information displaying on the screen, closes the dialog box, or opens the dialog box for creating a New Publication Pattern.

---

### **Copying a Publication Pattern**

---

An authorized operator can copy an existing publication pattern to create a new publication pattern that contains identical frequency, enumeration and chronology information. The new publication pattern is not stored in the database until the operator saves it.

### **Security for Copying a Publication Pattern**

---

To be authorized to copy a publication pattern, the **Add/Update Serial Patterns** check box must be selected on the **Profile** tab of your Acquisitions/Serials Profile.

The procedure for copying a publication pattern is shown in [Procedure 8-19, Copying a Publication Pattern](#), on page [8-67](#).



### **Procedure 8-19. Copying a Publication Pattern**

---

Use the following to copy a publication pattern.

1. Open the publication pattern that you want to copy.
2. Select **Copy** from the **File** menu.

Result: A new copy of the publication pattern opens.

In the **Descriptive Name** field of the new publication pattern, the name of the copied publication pattern displays prefixed with Copy of. The **Frequency**, **Enumeration** and **Chronology** information appear on the new publication pattern exactly as it appeared on the copied publication pattern.

3. Change any necessary information (for example, give the new publication pattern a unique name).
4. The new publication pattern is not stored in the database until it is saved.
  - To save the new publication pattern, click the **Save** button on the toolbar, select **Save** from the **File** menu.
  - To save and close the new publication pattern, click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar.
  - To save the publication pattern and create a new publication pattern, click the **Save and New** button on the toolbar.

---

### Deleting a Publication Pattern

---

A publication pattern cannot be deleted if the pattern is being used by one or more subscription components. To quickly determine whether a publication pattern is being used by any serial components, look at the **Attached Publications** tab (see [Attached Publications Tab](#) on [page 8-63](#) for more information.)

---

### Security for Deleting a Publication Pattern

---

To be authorized to delete a publication pattern, the **Delete Serial Patterns** check box ([Figure 8-44](#)) must be selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of your Acquisitions/Serials Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile:

Profile Name | Operator | Profile Values | Profile Values Cont. | Locations

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add Update Ledger and Funds	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Invoices
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Ledgers and Funds	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Invoices
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Ledgers and Funds	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Invoices
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Fund Allocations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Invoices
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fiscal Close Operations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-View Volume And Issue
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Currency Maintenance	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit Volume Level Data
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit issue sequence for volumes
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery Print
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Incoming	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overexpend Warning
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Outgoing	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overcommit Warning
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Modify EDI Outgoing Messages	

**Figure 8-44. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The procedure for deleting a publication pattern is shown in [Procedure 8-20, Deleting a Publication Pattern](#), on page [8-69](#).

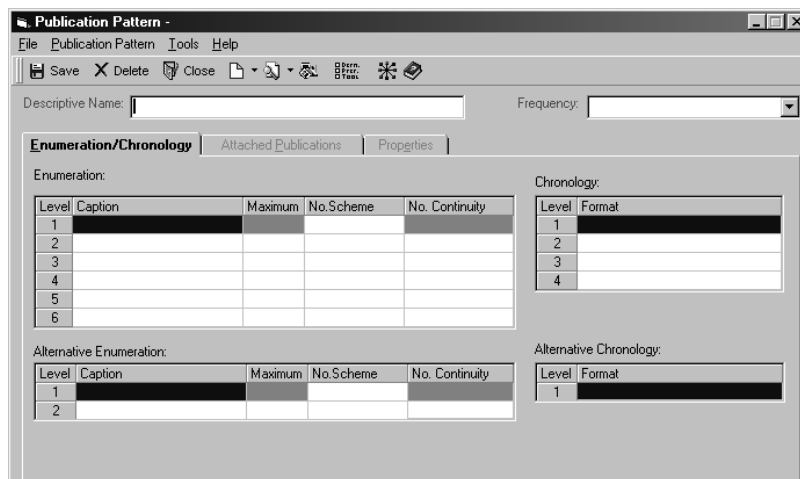


#### **Procedure 8-20. Deleting a Publication Pattern**

Use the following to delete a publication pattern

1. After you have conducted a search for a publication pattern (see steps 1-6 of [Editing a Publication Pattern](#) on [page 8-65](#)), select the publication pattern that you want to delete from the search results list and click the **Edit** button or press **f E** on your keyboard. You can also double-click the publication pattern that you want to delete.

Result: The **Publication Pattern** workspace opens (see [Figure 8-45](#)).



**Figure 8-45. Publication Pattern workspace**

2. To delete the publication pattern, click the **Delete** button (X) on the toolbar, select **Delete** from the **File** menu.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If you clicked **OK**, the pattern is deleted.

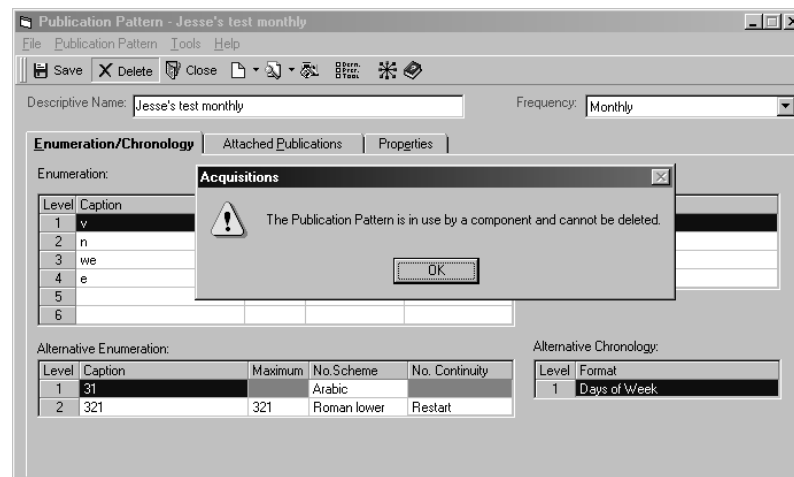
**NOTE:**

The following message displays if the publication pattern is being used by one or more serial components.

The Publication Pattern is in use by a component and cannot be deleted.

[Figure 8-46](#) shows this message.





**Figure 8-46. Publication Pattern workspace - message displayed**

## Complex Publication Patterns

The Complex Publication Pattern feature is designed to enable institutions to define prediction patterns for periodicals with complex issue cycles. In addition to the basic Acquisitions publication pattern functions, this feature provides operators with the capability to do the following.

- Create predictions for normalized irregular patterns.
- Create patterns not associated with a standard frequency such as periodicals issued on the 2nd and 4th Tuesdays of the month or the last Friday of the month.
- Generate a sample pattern for the operator to edit.

This section describes how to create, edit/copy, and delete Complex Publication Patterns.

### Creating Complex Publication Patterns

The procedure for creating a complex publication pattern is shown in [Procedure 8-21](#), [Creating a Complex Publication Pattern](#), on page [8-72](#).



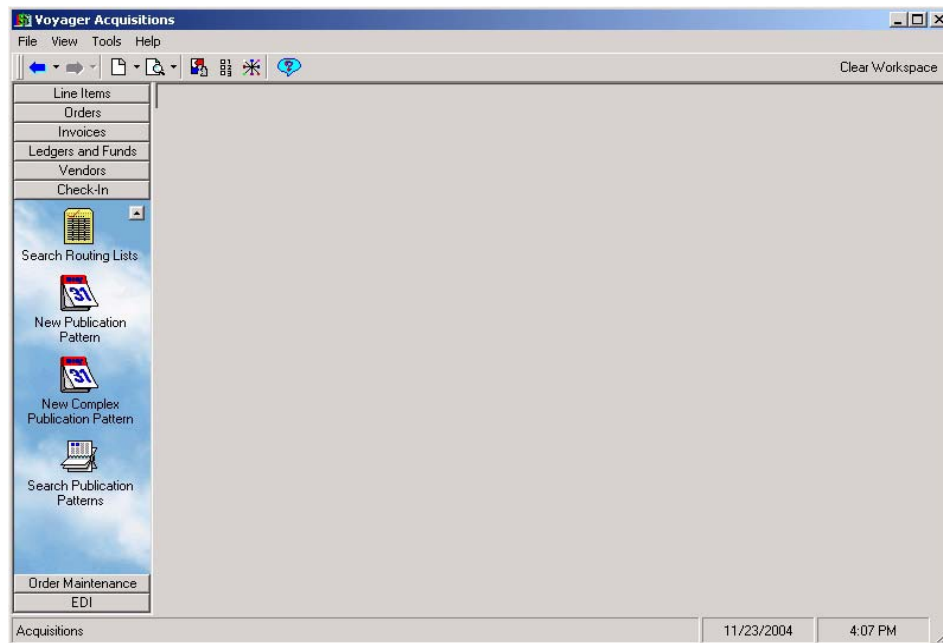
## Procedure 8-21. Creating a Complex Publication Pattern

---

Use the following to create a Complex Publication Pattern.

1. Click **Check-In** from the Acquisitions task bar.

Result: This displays the Acquisitions Check-In functional icons. See [Figure 8-47](#).



**Figure 8-47. New Complex Publication Pattern icon**

2. Click **New Complex Publication Pattern**.

Result: This opens the **New Complex Publication Pattern** dialog box. See [Figure 8-48](#).

**Figure 8-48. New Complex Publication Pattern dialog box**


3. Enter the pattern information to match your requirements. See [Table 8-4](#) for a description of the fields on the **New Complex Publication Pattern** dialog box. For additional information, see [Considerations for Complex Publication Patterns](#) on [page 8-90](#).

Result: This completes the data required for the **New Complex Publication Pattern** dialog box. For example, see [Figure 8-49](#).

**Table 8-4. New Complex Publication Pattern Dialog Box**

Option	Description
Issues in the cycle	<p>Enter the number of issues that are received within a given cycle pattern.</p> <p>Valid values = 1 - 999.</p> <p>This is a required field.</p>

**Table 8-4. New Complex Publication Pattern Dialog Box**

Option	Description
Expected Date	<p>Enter the expected receipt interval of the serial.</p> <p>If you expect to receive the serial every two months, for example, you need to enter the number 2 in this field.</p> <p> <b>IMPORTANT:</b>  <i>The <b>Expected Date</b> field works in combination with the <b>Interval</b> field. In the example, above you must specify Months in the <b>Interval</b> field.</i></p>
Interval	<p>Specify the interval that issues are received. Your options from the drop-down list are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Day(s)</li> <li>• Week(s)</li> <li>• Month(s)</li> <li>• Year(s)</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b>  This field works in combination with the <b>Expected Date</b> field.</p>
Enumeration Level 1 through 6	<p>Specify up to six levels of enumeration.</p> <p>These fields are used to specify caption designator components like volume, number, and so on.</p> <p>The maximum field length is 50 characters.</p> <p>The issue designator is the percent symbol (%) that indicates where the generated values from the prediction pattern should be substituted. The system supplies the percent symbol (%) as in v.%, if it is absent. However when the text follows the designator (%), you must enter the % symbol with the caption as in %xxx.</p> <p>Additional formatting of this pattern can be completed on the <b>Issue Cycle</b> tab of the <b>Complex Publication Pattern</b> dialog box. See <a href="#">Figure 8-50</a>.</p>
Continuity (for Enumeration 1 through 6)	<p>Enter the Continuity for each level of enumeration that you specify. Your options are <b>Restart</b> or <b>Continuous</b>.</p> <p>Additional formatting of this pattern can be completed on the <b>Issue Cycle</b> tab of the <b>Complex Publication Pattern</b> dialog box. See <a href="#">Figure 8-50</a>.</p>

**Table 8-4. New Complex Publication Pattern Dialog Box**

Option	Description
Chronology Level 1 through 4	<p>Specify up to four levels of Chronology. Select from the drop-down list of options.</p> <p>These fields are used to specify intervals such as days, months, quarters, seasons, and so on.</p> <p>Select <b>Enter Manually</b> if none of the other predefined options meet your requirements. Subsequently, enter the Chronology information on the <b>Issue Cycle</b> tab (see <a href="#">Figure 8-50</a>) after submitting all the information on the <b>New Complex Publication Pattern</b> dialog box (see <a href="#">Figure 8-49</a>).</p> <p>Additional formatting of this pattern can be completed on the <b>Issue Cycle</b> tab of the <b>Complex Publication Pattern</b> dialog box. See <a href="#">Figure 8-50</a>.</p>
Alternate Enumeration Level 1 and 2	<p>Specify an Alternate Enumeration if the publication uses two types of numbers such as Volume 51, Number 1, (Issue 138) where Issue 138 requires the Alternate Enumeration.</p> <p>Additional formatting of this pattern can be completed on the <b>Issue Cycle</b> tab of the <b>Complex Publication Pattern</b> dialog box. See <a href="#">Figure 8-50</a>.</p>
Continuity (for Alternate Enumeration Level 1 and 2)	<p>Select <b>Restart</b> or <b>Continuous</b> for each level of Alternate Enumeration specified.</p> <p>Additional formatting of this pattern can be completed on the <b>Issue Cycle</b> tab of the <b>Complex Publication Pattern</b> dialog box. See <a href="#">Figure 8-50</a>.</p>
Alternate Chronology Level	<p>Select the Alternate Chronology from the drop-down list of options.</p> <p>Additional formatting of this pattern can be completed on the <b>Issue Cycle</b> tab of the <b>Complex Publication Pattern</b> dialog box. See <a href="#">Figure 8-50</a>.</p>

**New Complex Publication Pattern**

Issues in the cycle: 12 Expected Date: 1 Interval: Month(s)

☒ Enumeration Level 1 Volume % Continuity: Continuous

☒ Enumeration Level 2 Number % Continuity: Continuous

☐ Enumeration Level 3 Continuity:

☐ Enumeration Level 4 Continuity:

☐ Enumeration Level 5 Continuity:

☐ Enumeration Level 6 Continuity:

☒ Chronology Level 1 Months

☐ Chronology Level 2

☐ Chronology Level 3

☐ Chronology Level 4

☐ Alternate Enumeration Level 1 Continuity:

☐ Alternate Enumeration Level 2 Continuity:

☐ Alternate Chronology Level

Submit Cancel

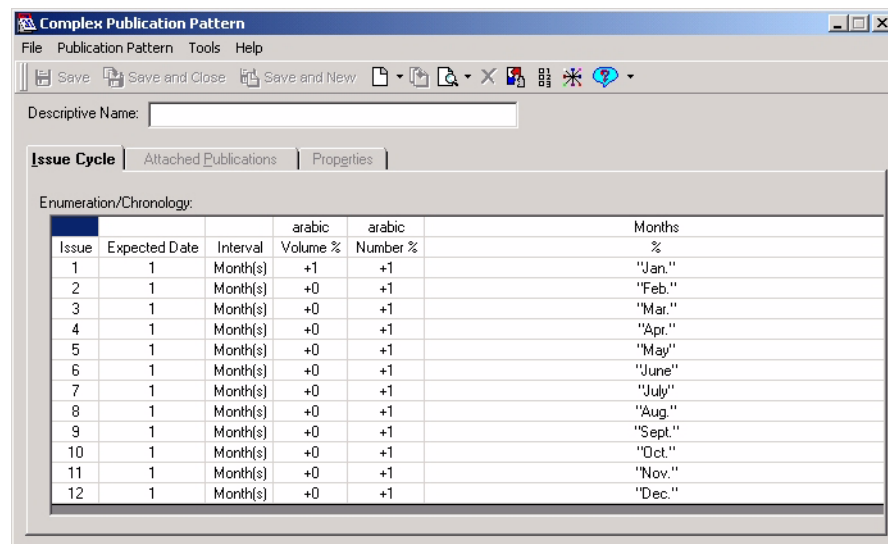
**Figure 8-49. New Complex Publication Pattern example**

4. Click **Submit**.

Result: The **Issue Cycle** tab of the **Complex Publication Pattern** dialog box displays. See [Figure 8-50](#).

**NOTE:**

Within the grid pattern that displays on the **Issue Cycle** tab, the rows describe an issue and the columns provide specific pieces of information (enumeration, chronology, numbering scheme, and so on) about each issue.



**Figure 8-50. Issue Cycle tab - Complex Publication Pattern dialog box**

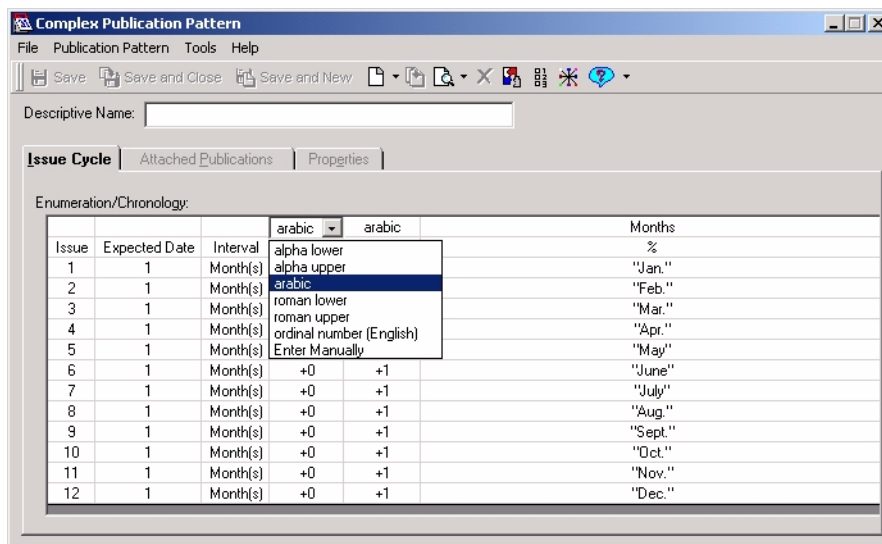
5. Make any additional edits to the publication pattern. Place the cursor in the cell to change its content.

For example, click the cells in the first row to display a drop-down list of options. See [Figure 8-51](#). In this example, you can further identify the enumeration format as one of the following.

- Alpha lowercase
- Alpha uppercase
- Arabic
- Roman lowercase
- Roman uppercase
- Ordinal number (English)
- Enter manually

See [Considerations for Complex Publication Patterns](#) on [page 8-90](#) for additional information.

Result: This finalizes the format for the pattern that you are creating.



**Figure 8-51. Drop-down list example**

- Enter the name for the New Complex Publication Pattern in the **Descriptive Name** field and click **Save**, **Save and Close**, or **Save and New**.

Result: This saves the New Complex Publication Pattern and leaves the information displaying on the screen, closes the dialog box, or opens the dialog box for creating a New Complex Publication Pattern.

## Editing/Copying Complex Publication Patterns

The procedure for editing/copying a complex publication pattern is shown in [Procedure 8-22, Editing/Copying a Complex Publication Pattern](#), on page [8-78](#).



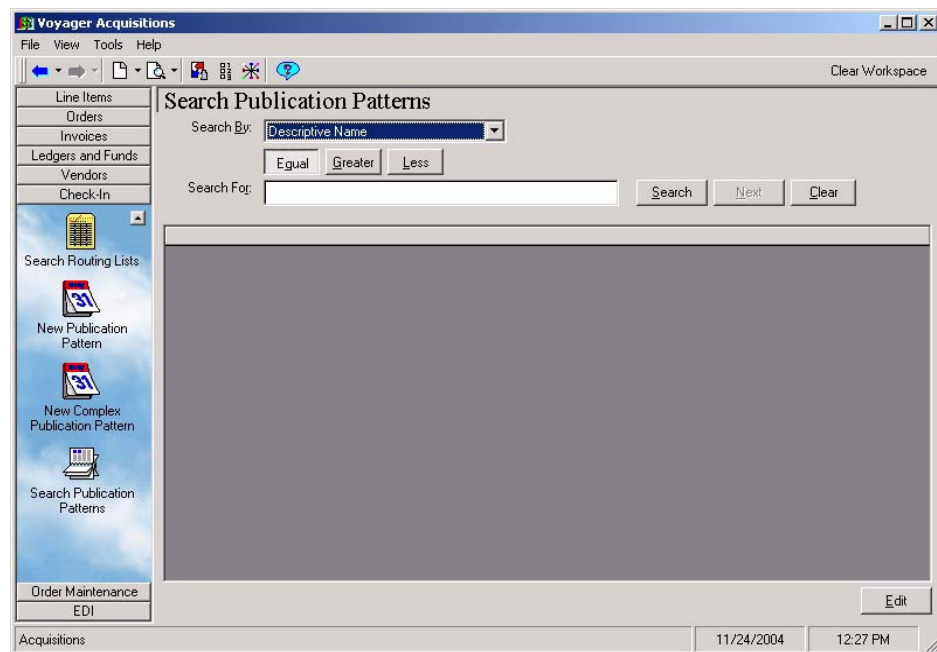
### Procedure 8-22. Editing/Copying a Complex Publication Pattern

Use the following to edit/copy a Complex Publication Pattern.

- Click the **Search Publication Patterns** icon to locate the Complex Publication Pattern that you want to edit/copy.

Result: The Search Publications Pattern dialog box opens. See [Figure 8-52](#).





**Figure 8-52. Search Publication Patterns dialog box**

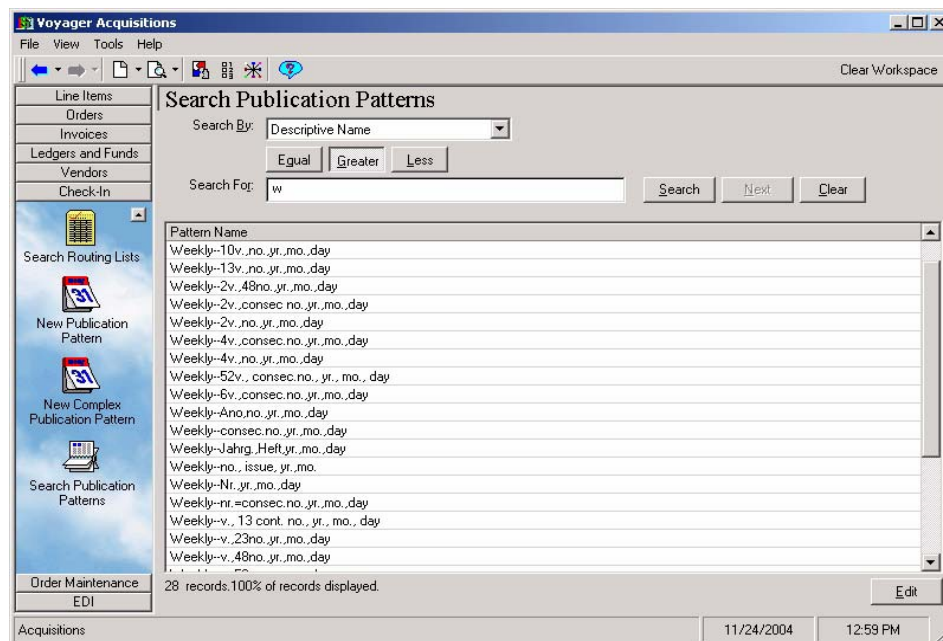
2. Enter your search criteria and click **Search**.

For more information about searching, see [Search Publication Patterns](#) on [page 8-94](#).

Result: The Search Publication Patterns workspace updates to display the results of your search criteria. See [Figure 8-53](#).

**NOTE:**

The results that display include both Publication Patterns and Complex Publication Patterns.



**Figure 8-53. Search Publication Patterns display results example**

3. Select the Complex Publication Pattern with which you want to work, and click **Edit**.

Result: This opens the **Complex Publication Pattern** dialog box. See [Figure 8-50](#).

**OPTIONAL:**

4. *Edit the Complex Publication Pattern. See [Procedure 8-21, Creating a Complex Publication Pattern](#), on page 8-72 for details about working with the Complex Publication Pattern dialog box. Pattern changes are made on the **Issue Cycle** tab.*



**IMPORTANT:**

*Edits can be made on the **Issue Cycle** tab but are not applied retroactively to any attached patterns.*

**NOTE:**

Additional information about the pattern is indicated on the **Attached Publications** tab and the **Properties** tab. See [Figure 8-54](#) and [Figure 8-55](#).

Result: This modifies the Complex Publication Pattern content to match your requirements.

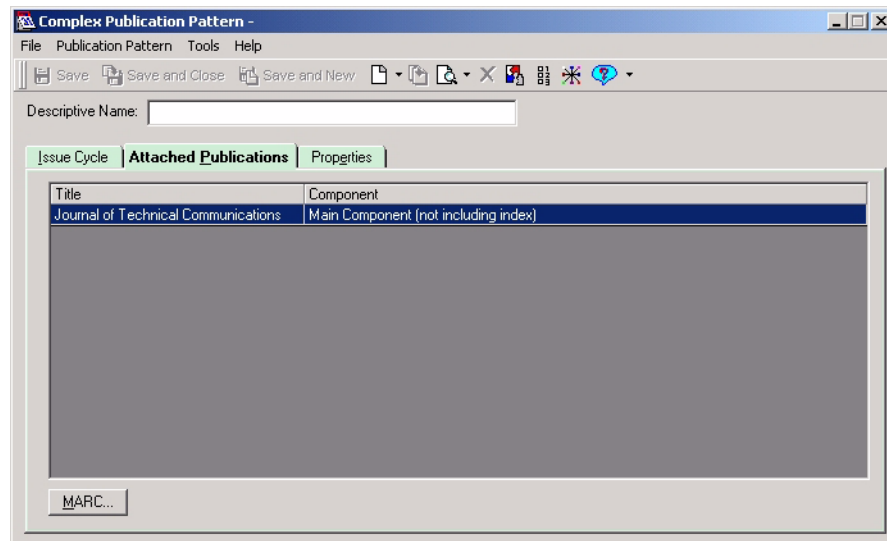


Figure 8-54. Attached Publications tab

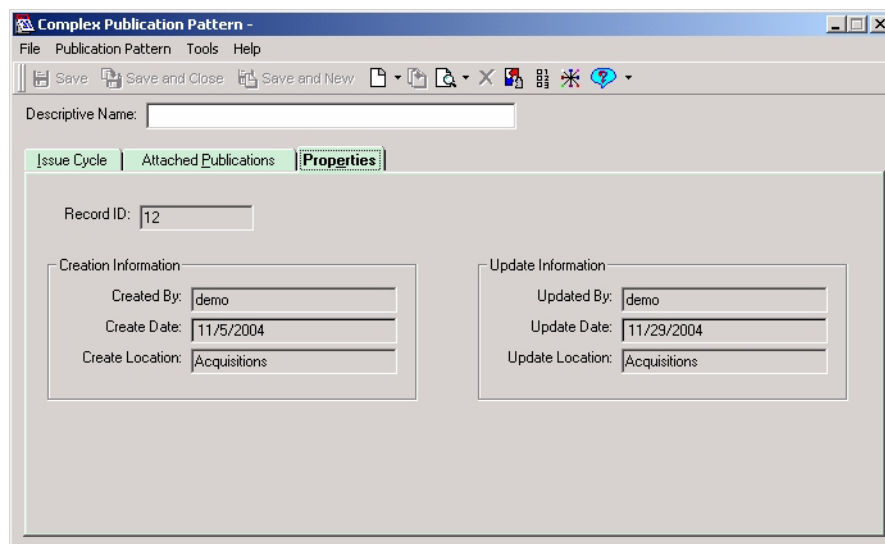
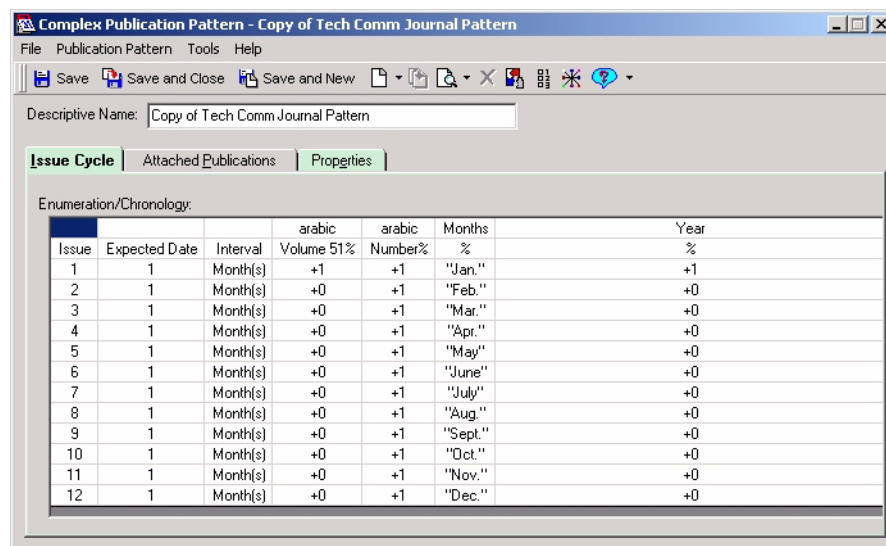


Figure 8-55. Properties tab

**OPTIONAL:**

5. Click **File>Copy** to make a copy of the Complex Publication Pattern. The copy can be edited and saved as a new Complex Publication Pattern. See [Procedure 8-21, Creating a Complex Publication Pattern](#), on page [8-72](#) for details about working with the Complex Publication Pattern dialog box.

Result: This creates an additional Complex Publication Pattern for editing and saving that matches your requirements. See [Figure 8-56](#).



**Figure 8-56. Copy of Complex Publication Pattern**

6. Click **Save**, **Save and Close**, or **Save and New**.

Result: This saves the Complex Publication Pattern and leaves the information displaying on the screen, closes the dialog box, or opens the dialog box for creating a New Complex Publication Pattern.

**NOTE:**

If you have made a copy of the Complex Publication Pattern, enter a new name for the Complex Publication Pattern in the **Descriptive Name** field before saving it.

---

## Deleting Complex Publication Patterns

---

A Complex Publication Pattern may be deleted if it is not being used by one or more serial subscription components. View the **Attached Publications** tab of the pattern you want to delete to determine its eligibility for deletion.

The procedure for deleting a complex publication pattern is shown in [Procedure 8-23, Deleting a Complex Publication Pattern](#), on page [8-83](#).



---

### Procedure 8-23. Deleting a Complex Publication Pattern

---

Use the following to delete a Complex Publication Pattern.

1. Click the **Search Publication Patterns** icon to locate the Complex Publication Pattern that you want to delete.

Result: This displays the **Search Publications Pattern** dialog box. See [Figure 8-52](#).

2. Enter your search criteria and click **Search**.

Result: The Search Publication Patterns workspace updates to display the results of your search criteria. See [Figure 8-53](#).

**NOTE:**

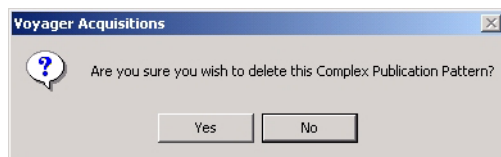
The results that display include both Publication Patterns and Complex Publication Patterns.

3. Select the Complex Publication Pattern that you want to delete, and click **Edit**.

Result: This opens the Complex Publication Pattern dialog box. See [Figure 8-50](#).

4. Click **File>Delete**.

Result: A warning message displays. See [Figure 8-57](#).



---

**Figure 8-57. Complex Publication Pattern delete warning message**

5. Click **Yes** to delete the Complex Publication Pattern.

Result: The Complex Publication Pattern is deleted.

**NOTE:**

If the Complex Publication Pattern has active Attached Publications, a message displays indicating that this pattern cannot be deleted. See [Figure 8-58](#).



---

**Figure 8-58. Complex Publication Pattern cannot be deleted message**

## Linking Complex Publication Patterns to a Component

---

The procedure for linking Complex Publication Patterns to a component is shown in [Linking Complex Publication Patterns to a Component](#) on [page 8-84](#).



### Procedure 8-24. Linking Complex Publication Patterns to a Component

---

Use the following to link a Complex Publication Pattern to a component.

1. Click **Check-In** from the listbar.

Result: The **Check-In** icons display.

2. Click the **Subscription Maintenance** icon or select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **Subscription Maintenance** from the cascading menu that displays.

Result: The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace opens.

3. Click **Other Search**.

Result: The **Search** dialog box opens.

4. Search for a serial title that is on a purchase order that has not yet had a component created for it.

Result: The search results display.

5. Select the title, and click **OK** on the **Titles Index** dialog box.

Result: The title displays in the **Select the correct Order record** section of the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.

6. Select the title, and click **Select**.

Result: The **Component Details** tab in the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace displays.

7. Click the **New** button.

Result: The bibliographic title of the serial displays in the **Component Name** field by default. You can modify this information.

#### **OPTIONAL:**

8. Click the **Check-In Title** check box.

Result: Information entered in the **Component Name** field is used as the Check-In title. You can use the Check-In title to retrieve a serial for checking in. If you do not select the **Check-In title** check box, you cannot use the Component Name to retrieve the serial for Check-in.

9. Select the component's category from the drop down menu in the **Category** field.
  - Basic
  - Supplementary
  - Indexes

Result: This identifies the Component category.

10. Enter any additional information about the component in the **Note** free-text box.

Result: This provides additional helpful information.

11. In the **Claim Interval (days)** field, enter the number of days that are added to an issue's expected date to determine when the issue is claimed if it is not received. You can also use the plus (+) and minus (-) signs beside the field to increase or decrease this number.

A claim interval is available at the component level. If you use this claim interval, the expected date of an issue is not the date on which the issue is claimed if it is not received. Rather, the claim interval is added to the expected date to determine the date on which the issue is claimed if it is not received.

At the component level, you can click the **Don't Claim** check box to specify that issues should not be claimed, overriding any claim intervals that may have been set at the line item, purchase order, vendor or vendor type level. If this check box is selected, the **Claim Interval (days)** field is not available.

Result: The Claim Interval (days) is identified.

12. Click the **Create Items** check box.

Result: Item records are automatically created when issues of this subscription component are received from Serials Check-In by selecting this option.

13. Select a default item type from the **Default Item Type** drop-down list.

Result: If an item record is created when an issue is received, this default displays in the **Item Type** field on the item record. If no default is defined at the component level, the system looks for the default item type for the location defined in System Administration. If there is no default item type for the location defined in System Administration, the **Item Type** field on the item record defaults to the first item type alphabetically in the list.

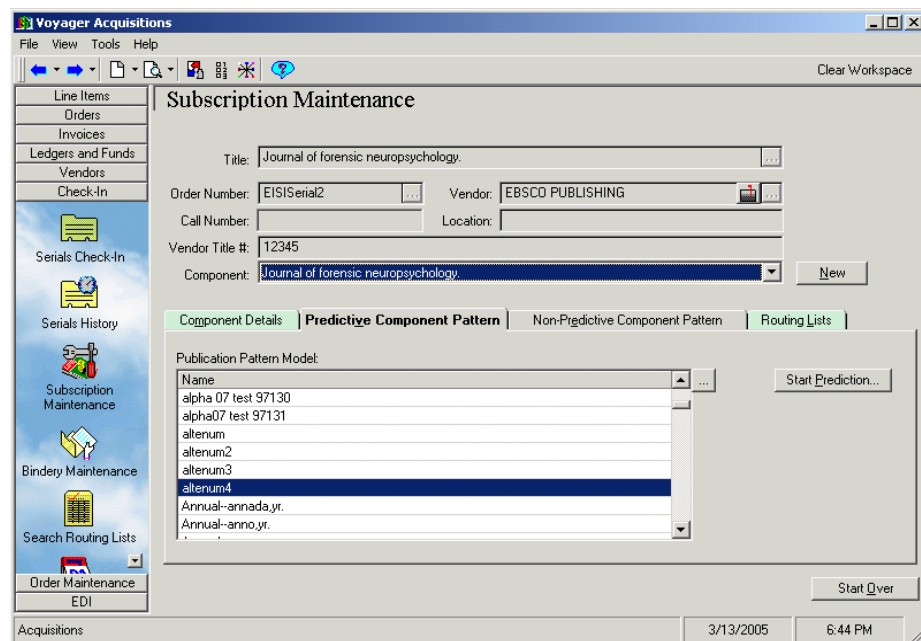
14. Click the **Save** button.

Result: This saves the new Component and the component name displays in the **Component** field on the top section of the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.

15. Click the **Predictive Component Pattern** tab.

Result: The Predictive Component Pattern options display. See [Figure 8-59](#).





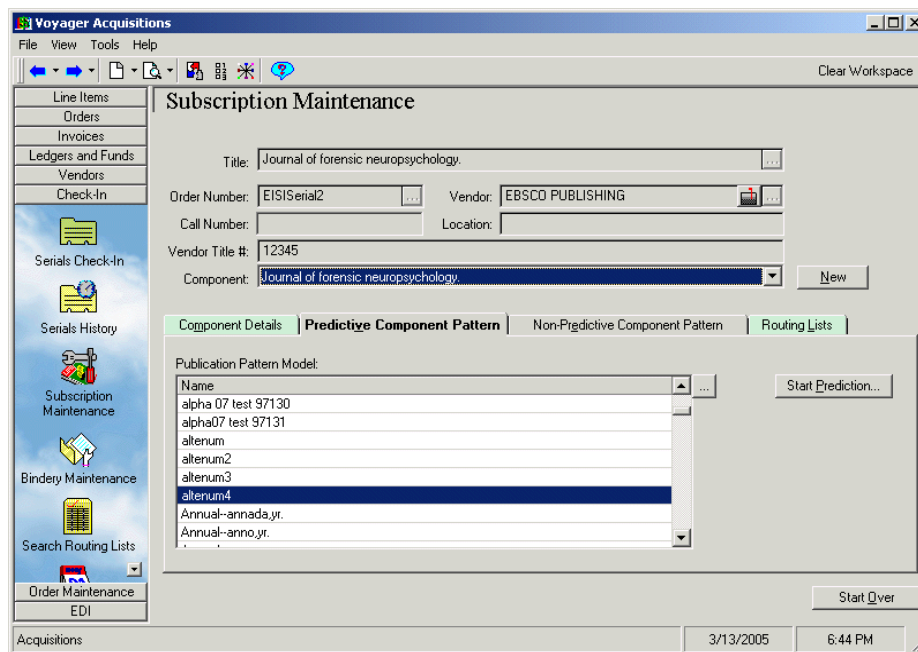
**Figure 8-59. Predictive Component Pattern tab**

16. Select the Complex Publication Pattern for the Component from the **Publication Pattern Model** list. (Click the **ellipsis** to display the publication pattern details.)

Result: This highlights the Complex Publication Pattern that you want to use.

17. Click the **Start Prediction** button.

Result: The **Start Complex Prediction** dialog box opens. See [Figure 8-60](#).



**Figure 8-60. Start Complex Prediction dialog box**

18. Enter the enumeration/chronology values for the first expected issue of the serial component. If applicable, enter the alternative enumeration/chronology values for the first expected issue of the serial component.

Result: This identifies the enumeration/chronology characteristics.

19. Enter the **First Issue's Expect Date**. Click the ellipsis button to display a calendar from which to select this date.

Result: This identifies the expected date.

20. Click the **OK** button to apply the information that you have entered.

Result: The **Select a Starting Issue** dialog box displays. See [Figure 8-61](#).

**Select a Starting Issue**

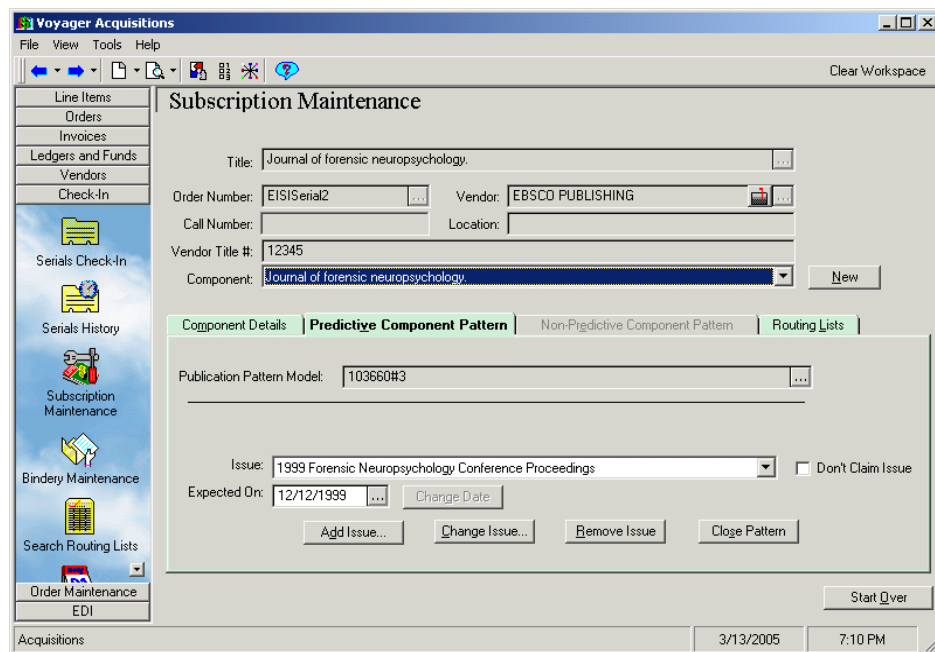
Issue	Expected Date	Interval	arabic v. %	arabic no. %	Months %	Day of Year (1..366) %	Year %
1	13	Day(s)	+1	+1	day:20	day:20	+1
2	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:33	day:33	+0
3	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:46	day:46	+0
4	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:59	day:59	+0
5	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:72	day:72	+0
6	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:85	day:85	+0
7	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:98	day:98	+0
8	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:111	day:111	+0
9	13	Day(s)	+0	+1	day:124	day:124	+0

OK Cancel

**Figure 8-61. Select a Starting Issue dialog box**

21. Select the starting issue and click **OK**.

Result: The updated **Predictive Component Pattern** tab displays. See [Figure 8-62](#). The publication pattern has been linked to the component.



**Figure 8-62. Predictive Component Pattern tab after selecting pattern**

## Considerations for Complex Publication Patterns

The Complex Publication Pattern feature provides much flexibility for customizing serial patterns. The following information highlights some considerations for creating and editing these patterns.

### Percent Symbol

The percent symbol (%) is used as an issue designator. If the percent symbol is required as a constant piece of text, enter two percent symbols (%%) to have the % print as text.

### Grid on the Issue Cycle Tab

The following information describes characteristics of the grid that display on the **Issue Cycle** tab.

### Issue Column

The first column of the grid is the Issue column. This column is numbered sequentially to represent each issue. The heading and issue numbers are fixed and cannot be edited.

### Expected Date and Interval Columns

These two pieces of information work together. The numeric **Expected Date** column accepts numbers that have positive or negative values indicated by a preceding plus(+) or minus sign (-). The **Interval** column defines the frequency of the expected arrival.

#### **NOTE:**

The arrival chronology defined with Expected Date and Interval is unrelated and independent of the chronology levels for the issues defined in the pattern.

### Enumeration/Chronology Cells

The remaining interior cells of the grid contain the following two types of data.

- Issue increments
- Constant values

#### **NOTE:**

Empty cells are not permitted.

Increments are expressed by a required plus or minus sign (+/-) followed by an Arabic number. The increment value of +0 indicates that the enumeration does not increase from one issue to the next. A zero without the plus sign (0) indicates that the enumeration value is counted for prediction purposes but causes the caption for the level to be suppressed.

Generally, the increment value is +1, but a greater value can be specified to indicate a skipped issue. Entering +1/+1 indicates combined issues such as June/July.

Constant values are enclosed with double quotes. The constant value is substituted into the prediction where the percent symbol (%) has been specified. Commonly, constant values are used for enumerations and chronologies that restart such as months, days, issue numbers, and so on.

In addition to specific dates (March 19 2005) and increments, the system can handle specific days that might occur in semi-monthly or monthly patterns where the cover date represents the first and third Wednesdays of the month or the last Thursday of the month, for example, by entering a:b where a and b are as follows.

**Table 8-5. a Value Examples**

<b>a</b>	<b>Represents ...</b>
01	First
02	Second
03	Third
99	Last
98	Next to Last
97	Third to Last

**Table 8-6. b Value Examples**

<b>b</b>	<b>Represents ...</b>
su	Sunday
mo	Monday
tu	Tuesday
we	Wednesday
th	Thursday
fr	Friday
sa	Saturday

Example: 01:tu represents the first Tuesday of the Month.

98:su represents the last Sunday of the Month

Other flexible syntax options include the following.

day:X

Where X is an integer value, 1-366, that is calculated as a date of a month.

For example, day:54 is calculated as February 23.

In the case of Day of Year chronology levels if there is an accompanying Month in Swedish, for example, the same day:X syntax may be used to represent the calculable month.

**Table 8-7. Special day:X Syntax Examples**

Months in Swedish	Day of Year (1 - 366)
day:10	day:10
day:20	day:20
day:30	day:30
day:40	day:40

The reason for the duplicate syntax in two different chronology levels is that when the pattern is created one may not know which month in which day:110 falls. Moreover, the month of day:110 may change between years. Repeating the day:X has the system calculate the month based on day's integer. This is only allowable in the Day of Year and Months type of chronology levels.

**NOTE:**

These exceptional syntaxes may be intermixed with other literal (constant) values. However, they may not be intermixed with increments.

These special syntaxes require additional chronology levels in the pattern in order to predict them. In order to calculate the date of the first Monday of the month, for example, the system needs to know what month of what year it is in. The following chronology levels must be included in the publication pattern in order for it to be saved.

- Day of Year requires that a Year chronology level be included in the pattern.
- Day of Month requires both a Month chronology level (any language) and Year chronology level.

**System Assumptions**

The following are system assumptions for producing the Issue Cycle grid. In some cases, editing the grid may be required to have the pattern match your requirements.

- The enumeration numbering scheme is Arabic.
- Restarting enumerations are entered as constant values.
- The default increment for continuous enumerations is +1.

- Any chronology format other than Year restarts. The system estimates and provides the first issue information based on the selected chronology format. For example, days of the week start with Sunday; and months begin with January.
- The Year chronology format increments continuously beginning with the first issue in a cycle.

## Search Publication Patterns

---

The Search Publication Patterns function provides considerable flexibility for locating the Complex Publication Pattern you want. This search function is implemented with the following components.

- Search By
- Condition
- Search For

### Search By

See [Table 8-8](#) for a description of the **Search By** options.

**Table 8-8. Search By Options**

Option	Description
Descriptive Name	Use this option to select a pattern by name. Enter the name of an existing pattern in the <b>Search For</b> field.
Frequency	Use this option to locate a pattern by selecting a frequency such as Weekly or Monthly from a drop-down list. Use this option when searching for non-complex patterns.
Unused Patterns	Use this option to locate patterns that do not have attached publications.
Number of Issues in Cycle	Use this option to locate patterns based on the number of issues in the cycle defined within the pattern.
Number of Levels in Pattern	Use this option to locate a publication pattern by entering a number that represents the number of levels within the pattern.



**Table 8-8. Search By Options**

Option	Description
Numbering Scheme	Use this option to locate a publication pattern by selecting the numbering scheme such as arabic or ordinal from the drop-down list provided.
Chronology Format	Use this option to locate a publication pattern by selecting the chronology format such as Days of Week or Months from the drop-down list provided.
Enumeration/Chronology Label	Use this option to locate a publication pattern by entering the label text of the enumeration/chronology.

**Condition**

The condition options dynamically change with the **Search By** option selected. The choices are as follows.

- Equal
- Greater (than)
- Less (than)

**NOTE:**

In some instances, **Equal** is the only condition option; and with the **Search By** option of **Unused Patterns**, there is no condition to select.

**Search For**

The **Search For** field is used to enter a value as part of the search criteria. This field dynamically changes with the selection of **Search By** option. In some cases, this field is used for entering text; and in other cases, this field provides a drop-down list of options from which to select as **Search For** criteria.



<b>Introduction</b>	<b>9-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>9-1</b>
<b>Serials Check-In Workspace</b>	<b>9-2</b>
<b>Checking In Serials</b>	<b>9-4</b>
• Security for Working in Serials Check-In	9-4
• Adding an Issue	9-18
• Changing an Issue	9-19
• Removing an Issue	9-19
<b>Information Accessible from the Serials Check-In Workspace</b>	<b>9-20</b>
• Viewing MARC Records	9-21
<b>Serials History Information</b>	<b>9-27</b>
• Accessing the Serials History Workspace	9-28
• Receipt History Tab	9-33
Edits to Issues	9-35
Serial Issues Collapsing	9-36
Re-collapsing Serial Issues	9-40
Display In OPAC	9-43
Unreceiving a Serial Issue	9-45
Security for Unreceiving a Serial Issue	9-46
Issues and Item Records	9-48

• Claims History Tab	9-49
• Problem History Tab	9-51
• Payment History Tab	9-53
Displaying an Invoice from the Payment History tab	9-54
Displaying a Fund from the Payment History tab	9-55

---

### Introduction

The Serials Check-In activities of the Acquisitions module provide the tools for you to manage all aspects of your serial processing. Operators can receive and mark issues, access the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace, and access the **Serial History** workspace.

---

### Purpose of this Chapter

This chapter discusses:


- The **Serials Check-In** workspace
- Checking in serial items
  - Receiving
  - Marking
- Adding, changing, and removing issues
- Accessing additional information associated with the serial
- The **Serials History** workspace

## Serials Check-In Workspace

---

The **Serials Check-In** workspace ([Figure 9-1](#)) allows operators to check-in their serial issues in addition to marking issues and accessing related information.

---



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Serials Check-In - Search". Below the title is a section labeled "Search For Serials:". This section contains five radio buttons for search criteria: "Check-In Title" (which is selected), "UPC", "SICI Stem", "ISSN", and "Bib Id". To the right of these buttons is a button labeled "Other Search...". Below the radio buttons is a text input field labeled "Search For:" followed by a large empty text box. To the right of the text box is a button labeled "Check-In".

---

**Figure 9-1.** Serials Check-In - Search workspace

Once a serial title is searched for (see [Searching for Serial Item Information](#) on [page 2-98](#)), the **Serials Check-In** workspace displays information for titles that match the search criteria (see [Figure 9-2](#)).

**Serials Check-In - Search**

Select the correct Order record: 4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Dept r	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Room	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsych.	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Room		Continuation

View Order...

Component Name: Journal of company law

Expected Issue: v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.) on 1/5/2004

Issue(s) in Hand:

- v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.)
- v. 1, no. 2 (2003 Feb.)
- v. 1, no. 3 (2003 Mar.)
- v. 1, no. 4 (2003 Apr.)
- v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)
- v. 1, no. 7 (2003 July)
- v. 1, no. 8 (2003 Aug.)

Accept... Quick Check-In

Add Issue...

Change Issue...

Remove Issue(s)

History Note... Maintenance Start Over

**Figure 9-2. Serials Check-In workspace with a title displayed**

The procedure for accessing the **Serials Check-In** workspace and displaying a serial title is shown in [Procedure 9-1, Displaying a Serial Title from the Serials Check-In Workspace](#).



**Procedure 9-1. Displaying a Serial Title from the Serials Check-In Workspace**

Use the following to access the **Serials Check-In** workspace and display a serial title.

1. Click the **Check-In** bar in the listbar on the Acquisitions workspace.

Result: The listbar displays the Check-In activity options.

2. Click the **Serials Check-In** button in the listbar or select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **Serials History** from the cascading menu that opens.

Result: The **Serials Check-In** workspace displays.

3. Search for a serial title. (See [Procedure 2-10, Searching for and displaying Serial Information.](#))

Result: A serial title displays in the **Serials Check-In** workspace.

---

## Checking In Serials

---

Serials Check-In provides a way to receive, mark, and manage your library's serials receipts.

On the **Serials Check-In** workspace, the following functions are available: Accept, Add Issue, Change Issue, Remove Issue(s), Quick Check-In, access to the **Serials History** workspace, **Subscription Maintenance** workspace, the Purchase Order, and the Check-In Note dialog box.

For a serial copy, skipping an issue(s) automatically posts skipped issue(s) to the **Problems List** with System Claim as the mark reason. Likewise, a receipt for less than the total number of serial issue copies automatically posts missing line copies to the **Problem List** with System Claim as the mark reason. See [Problems and Claims](#) on [page 11-1](#).

## Security for Working in Serials Check-In

---

Access to the **Serials Check-In** workspace is assigned in the Voyager System Administration module. (From the **Functions** menu, select **Security > Acquisition/Serials Profiles**; or click the **Security** bar in the left-column listbar of the System Administration module, then click the **Acquisition/Serials Profiles** button.)

The following security levels exist :

- Operators can perform tasks and operations if the **Serials Check-In** check box is selected in the **Profile Values** tab of the operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile (see [Figure 9-3](#)).
- Operators can access the information as view-only if the **View-Only Serials Check-In** check box is selected on the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile.

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile:

Profile Name | Operator | **Profile Values** | Profile Values Cont. | Locations

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Vendor
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Vendors
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Vendors
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Purchase Orders		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Acquisitions	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Serials Control	
	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Problems and Claims Lists	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Line Item Bib Record	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serial Patterns		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record	

**Figure 9-3. Profile Values tab (System Administration module)**

[Procedure 9-2, Checking In Serials](#), provides detailed instructions for checking in serial issues for operators with permissions to do so.



### **Procedure 9-2. Checking In Serials**

Use the following to check in serial issue(s).

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, search for and display a serial title (see [Searching for Serial Item Information](#) on [page 2-98](#)).

Result: The **Serials Check-In - Search** workspace expands to display serial title information (see [Figure 9-4](#)).

### Serials Check-In - Search

Select the correct Order record: 4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Dept	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Room	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsych.	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Room		Continuation

View Order...

Component Name: Journal of company law

Expected Issue: v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.) on 1/5/2004

Issue(s) in Hand:

- v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.)
- v. 1, no. 2 (2003 Feb.)
- v. 1, no. 3 (2003 Mar.)
- v. 1, no. 4 (2003 Apr.)
- v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)
- v. 1, no. 7 (2003 July)
- v. 1, no. 8 (2003 Aug.)

Accept... Quick Check-In

Add Issue...

Change Issue...

Remove Issue(s)

Hjstory Note... Maintenance Start Over

**Figure 9-4. Serials Check-In - Search workspace - expanded**

Data such as title, vendor code, and order type display in a table at the top of the **Check-In** workspace.

**OPTIONAL:**

- The MARC record of a serial can be displayed by clicking the entry in the corresponding **Title** or **Holdings** column, then clicking the ellipsis button (...) that displays for the item.

**NOTE:**

The MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded. MARC data that displays elsewhere in Acquisitions uses the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

**NOTE:**

The **Start Over** button in the lower right corner of the window allows you to return to the initial **Serials Check-In Search** workspace at any time.

3. Select a serial record from the list at the top of the **Serials Check-In Search** workspace.
4. Select a component from drop-down list in the **Component Name** field.

Result: A Check-In Note dialog box opens if a note is associated with the serial item. Depending on your Session Workflows settings, the check-in note either has to be closed before you can proceed, or you can keep it open throughout the check-in process. This is determined by the **Use Persistent Check-In Notes** check box on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

The system updates the information for the component selected (see [Figure 9-5](#)). The next expected issue displays in the **Expected Issue** field. The date on which the issue is expected displays beside the **Expected Issue** field.

**NOTE:**

The enumeration/chronology of each predicted issue for the serial is listed in the **Issue(s) in Hand** field. If the **Display Copies Received/Counts in Issue in Hand** check box on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows is selected, the number of copies received out of the number of copies ordered display beside the enumeration/chronology information of each issue. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

### Serials Check-In - Search

Select the correct Order record: 4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Dept	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Room	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsych	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Room		Continuation

[View Order...](#)

Component Name:  ▼

Expected Issue:  on

Issue(s) in Hand:  ▲ ▼

v. 8, no. 1 (2009) (0/1)  
 v. 8, no. 2 (2009) (0/1)  
 v. 8, no. 3 (2009) (0/1)  
 v. 9, no. 1 (2010) (0/1)  
 v. 9, no. 2 (2010) (0/1)  
 v. 9, no. 3 (2010) (0/1)  
 v. 10, no. 1 (2011) (0/1)  
 v. 10, no. 2 (2011) (0/1)

[Accept...](#) [Quick Check-In](#)  
[Add Issue...](#)  
[Change Issue...](#)  
[Remove Issue\(s\)](#)

[History](#) [Note...](#) [Maintenance](#) [Start Over](#)

**Figure 9-5. Serials Check-In workspace after component is selected**

5. Using the **Add Issue**, **Change Issue**, and **Remove Issue(s)** buttons, you can add, remove, or change issues on the **Issue(s) in Hand** list. For more information about these procedures, see [Adding an Issue](#) on [page 9-18](#), [Changing an Issue](#) on [page 9-19](#), and [Removing an Issue](#) on [page 9-19](#).
6. Select the issue(s) you want from the **Issue(s) in Hand** field. To select more than one issue, hold down the **Ctrl** key on your keyboard while selecting the issues.
7. Use one of the following to receive or mark your issue(s).

- Use the **Quick Check-In** button to receive all copies of the selected issue(s) with one click. This eliminates several steps in the check-in process. [Table 9-1](#) shows possible results of this action based on existing settings and selections.

**Table 9-1. Results for Quick Check-In button**

If...	Then...
one or more routing list is assigned to the component	the Route Serial Issue dialog box opens (see <a href="#">Routing Lists</a> on <a href="#">page 8-23</a> ).
the <b>Create Items</b> check box is selected on the <b>Component Details</b> tab for the component	item records are automatically created.
the <b>Show Item Record on Create</b> check box is selected on the <b>Item Creation</b> tab of your Session Workflows and only one copy is received	the item record automatically opens.
the <b>Show Item Record on Create</b> check box is selected on the <b>Item Creation</b> tab of your Session Workflows and more than one copy is received	the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically display. Rather, you receive a message stating how many item records were created. You can select an individual issue to view its item record.

- Use the **Accept** button to have more control over the details of the reception process. This method allows you to:
  - Specify the individual copies of each issue to receive
  - Proceed with any item creation or routing list selection
  - Use Voyager's marking capabilities

After you have selected one or more issues from the **Issue(s) in Hand** list, click the **Accept** button. (If the serial was previously claimed, a message displays and you can click **OK** to continue.)

Result: The **Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark** workspace opens (see [Figure 9-6](#)).

### Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark

Title:

Component:

Select Copies to Receive or Mark:

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enumeration/Chronology	Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Inv	Item
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.)	1	0	1	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Location	Call Number	Copies		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reference Department	Reference Department - CL 123 .456	1		Print Label...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Copy Number	Status	Status Date	Location	Item T:
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1	Not Yet Received	10/28/2002		

Mark Reason:

Comment:

**Figure 9-6. Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark workspace, hierarchy expanded**

The title of the serial and the name of the component display in the **Title** and **Component** fields at the top of the workspace. The issue(s) you selected display in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** hierarchy in the center of the workspace. Each issue that you are receiving or marking has three levels:

- The first level displays the enumeration/chronology information of the issue, the number of copies ordered, received, and invoiced.
- The second level displays the intended location(s) for the issue, the call number, the number of copies order, received, and invoiced.
- The third level displays the individual copies for each location, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Received Partial), status date (the time and date on which the status became active), the intended location for the copy, the item type, and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, do not contain information until after the copy has been received and an item record has been created.)

**NOTE:**

Using your Session Workflows, you can have the hierarchy in the Select Copies to Receive or Mark box automatically open to the second level (Location level) or third level (Copy level). Choosing to expand the hierarchy to the Copy level might be more useful when checking in an issue because the Call Number can only be seen at the Copy level. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

To specify which copies to receive for each location, click the box beside each copy at the third level of the hierarchy. If you want to receive all copies for a location, click the box beside the second level (the Location level). If you want to select all copies for all locations, click the box beside the first level of the hierarchy.

**TIP:**

*To make it easier for you to see how many copies have been received, or how many copies are currently selected to be received or marked, the boxes beside the levels of the hierarchy are either half-full (if only some of the copies have been received, or if only some of the copies are selected to be received or marked) or completely full (if all of the copies have been received, or if all of the copies are selected to be received or marked).*

**NOTE:**

Using your Session Workflows, you can have all copies for all locations for the selected component automatically selected to be received. This can be done using the **Auto-select All Copies during Receive** check box on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

If you are marking copies, skip to step [9](#).

After you have selected the copies that you want to receive, click the **Receive** button.

Result: What displays next depends on the specific item, your configuration relating to whether or not you will create items or maintain them, and whether there is a routing list associated with this component.

- The **Serials Check-In Receive/Mark** workspace displays the information of the issue you received if items are not created, item maintenance is not done, and there is no routing list associated with the component (see [Figure 9-7](#)).

### Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark

Title:

Component:

Select Copies to Receive or Mark:

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enumeration/Chronology	Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Invoiced
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)	1	1	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Location	Call Number	Copies Ordered	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reference Department	Reference Department - CL 123 .456	1	

Mark Reason:

Comment:

Buttons:

**Figure 9-7. Serials Check-In workspace after receiving an issue**

- If a single item record was created, the newly-created item record opens (see [Figure 9-8](#)).

Item records are automatically created if the **Create Items** check box is selected on the **Component Details** tab for the component. If the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows and only one copy is received, the item record automatically opens. If more than one copy is received, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically display, even if the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is selected. Rather, you receive a message stating how many item records were created.

You can access the item record by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button that displays on the **Serials Check-In - Receiving/Marking** workspace.



Click the **Close** button and the **Serials Check-In Receive/Mark** workspace displays the information of the issue you received.



**TIP:**

*To streamline your workflow, use in-place creation/editing of barcodes and the Save Item to Database and Close Window icon for one-step processing.*

**New Item Record**

Title: Journal of company law

Location: Reference Department Call #: CL 123.456

Barcode: Temp. Loc.:

Perm. Loc.: Reference Department Temp. Type:

Item Type: 1 day reserve item Media Type:

Enum: v. 1, no. 1

Chron: 2005 Jan. 1

Year: 2005

Caption:

Free text:

Spine:

Copy: 0 Pieces: 1 Price: \$0.00

Self Check

☐ Magnetic Media ☒ Sensitize

Close

**Figure 9-8.** Item record automatically created on receive

- The routing list associated with the component opens. When you close the **Route Serial Issue** dialog box (Figure 9-9), the newly-created item record displays if a single item record was created.

**Route Serial Issue**

File Routing List Tools Help

Save Save and Close Print Find Cancel Help ?

Serial Title: Journal of company law

Component Name: Journal of company law-Supp.

Issue: v. 11, no. 3 (2012 )

Copy #: 1

Routing List Name: Journal of Company Law - library reserve copy (Not Used)

Routing List information Notes

Priority	Patron or Location	Date Added
1	Reserve Desk	2/6/2003

Add Patron... Add Location... Delete Recipient

**Figure 9-9. Routing list associate with a component**

Close the item record after adding information. The **Serials Check-In Receive/Mark** workspace displays information about the issue you received.

After clicking the **Receive** button, you are sent to one of three places:

- The initial **Serials Check-In** workspace ([Figure 9-10](#)) for the component

### Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark

Title:

Component:

Select Copies to Receive or Mark:

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enumeration/Chronology	Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Invoiced
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)	1	1	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Location	Call Number		Copies Order
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reference Department	Reference Department - CL 123 .456	1	

Mark Reason:

Comment:

Figure 9-10. Serials Check-In workspace after receiving an issue

- The **Recap** workspace ([Figure 9-11](#)) displays if the **Display Check-In Recap workspace** check box is selected on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows. This workspace allows you to review the issues you just received and view information about the next expected issue. If you want to stream-line the check-in process, you can choose to not have the **Recap** workspace display. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

### Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark

Title:

Component Name:

Received Issue(s):

Next Expected Issue:

Date Expected:

Figure 9-11. Serials Check-In - Recap screen

- The **Receive/Mark** workspace remains displayed after the issues have been received, if the **Perform Item Maintenance during Check-In** check box is selected on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows. This allows you to edit any item records that were created. When you want to proceed, click the **Continue** button. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

The title of the serial and the name of the component display in the **Title** and **Component Name** fields at the top of the screen.

Result: The issue or issues you just received display in the **Received Issue(s)** field. The next expected issue displays in the **Next Expected Issue** field. The date on which the next issue is expected displays in the **Date Expected** field. To change the expected date for the next issue, click the **Change Date** button.

**OPTIONAL:**

8. *From here, you can perform any of the following optional tasks:*

- To display the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace from the **Recap** workspace, click the **Maintenance** button.
- To display the **Serials History** workspace from the **Recap** workspace, click the **History** button.
- To continue back to the check-in workspace where you can select other issues to receive, click the **Continue** button.

- If you are through checking in issues for the serial, click the **Done** button to be sent back to the initial **Check-In** workspace, where you can search for different serials.
9. After you have selected the copies that you want to mark from the issue hierarchy, select a mark reason from the drop-down list in the **Mark Reason** field (see [Figure 9-12](#)).

**Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark**

Title:

Component:

Select Copies to Receive or Mark:

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enumeration/Chronology	Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Invoiced
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)	1	1	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Location	Call Number		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reference Department	Reference Department - CL 123 .456	1	

Mark Reason:

Comment:

Buttons:

**Figure 9-12. Mark Reason drop-down list**

**OPTIONAL:**

10. Enter any additional comments in the **Comment** field.
11. Click the **Mark** button. The mark for the issue is then sent to the **Problems** workspace, **Claimed Issues** tab. See [Claimed Issues tab](#) on [page 11-23](#) for more information.

Result: The issue is marked.

## Adding an Issue

---

You can add an issue before or after any of the issues listed in the **Issue(s) in Hand** field.



### Procedure 9-3. Adding an issue

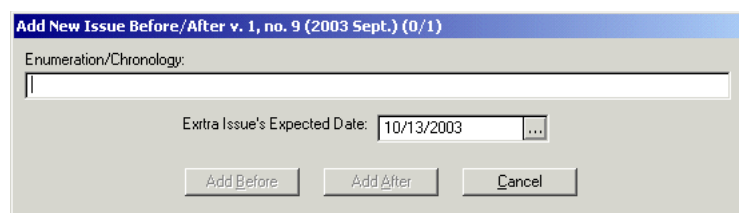
---

Use the following to add an issue before or after an issue listed in the **Issue(s) in Hand** field.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, click the **Add Issue** button.

Result: The **Add New Issue** dialog box opens (see [Figure 9-13](#)).

---



---

**Figure 9-13. Add New Issue dialog box**

2. Enter the enumeration and chronology information of the issue in the **Enumeration/Chronology** field. Click the ellipsis (...) button in the **Extra Issue's Expected Date** field and select a date from the calendar.
3. To add the issue before the currently selected issue in the **Issue(s) in Hand** field, click the **Add Before** button.

To add the issue after the selected issue, click the **Add After** button.

To cancel the addition of the issue, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: The added issue displays in the appropriate position in the **Issue(s) in Hand** list.

---

---

## Changing an Issue

---

Operators can change the enumeration/chronology information of an issue.



---

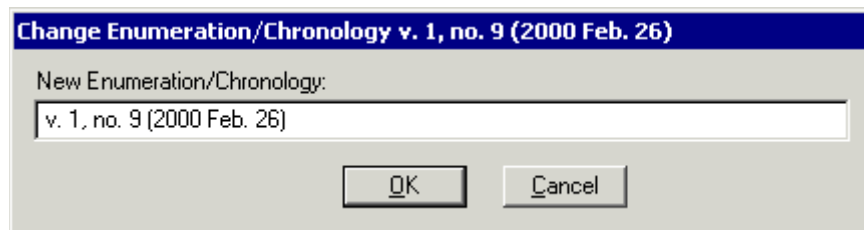
### Procedure 9-4. Changing the enumeration/chronology of an issue

---

Use the following to change the enumeration/chronology information of an issue.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, select an issue from the **Issue(s) in Hand** field and click the **Change Issue** button.

Result: The **Change Enumeration/Chronology** dialog box opens (see [Figure 9-14](#)).



---

**Figure 9-14.** Change Enumeration/Chronology dialog box

2. Enter the new enumeration and chronology for the issue in the **New Enumeration/Chronology** field and click the **OK** button. Or to cancel the enumeration/chronology change, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If changed, the issue displays with the new enumeration/chronology in the **Issue(s) in Hand** list.

---

---

## Removing an Issue

---

Users can remove one or more issues from the **Issue(s) in Hand** list. The only issue that cannot be removed is the next expected issue.



---

### Procedure 9-5. Removing an issue from the Issues in Hand list

---

Use the following to remove one or more issues from the **Issue(s) in Hand** list.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, select the issue(s) that you want to remove from the **Issue(s) in Hand** list. To select more than one issue, hold down the **Ctrl** key on your keyboard while selecting the multiple issues.
2. Click the **Remove Issue(s)** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

3. Click the **Yes** button to remove the issue. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If clicked **Yes** the issue is removed immediately from the **Issue(s) in Hand** list.

---

## Information Accessible from the Serials Check-In Workspace

---

A variety of related information can be accessed and displayed from the **Serials Check-In** workspace after searching for a serial (see [Figure 9-15](#)).



### Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark

Select the correct Order record: 4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Department	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Room	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsych	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Room		Continuation
Journal of labour and social res	EBSCO	3	Periodicals Room		Continuation

Component Name:  View Order..

Expected Issue:  on

Issue(s) in Hand:  Accept... Quick Check-In

v. 3, no. 14 (1 Feb.) (0/2)

v. 3, no. 15 (1 Mar.) (0/2)

v. 3, no. 16 (1 Apr.) (0/2)

v. 3, no. 17 (1 May) (0/2)

v. 3, no. 18 (1 June) (0/2)

v. 4, no. 19 (1 July) (0/2)

v. 4, no. 20 (1 Aug.) (0/2)

Figure 9-15. Serial Check-In workspace

Operators can do the following from this workspace.

- View the MARC record
- View the Purchase Order
- Access the **Serials History** workspace
- Access the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace

### Viewing MARC Records

To view the MARC bibliographic record of the serial, access the **Serials Check-In** workspace, click on a title, then on the ellipsis (...) button in the **Title** column (see [Figure 9-16](#)).

**Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark**

Select the correct Order record: 4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference	CL 123 .456	Contin
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Rm	JX1901 .J6	Contin
Journal of forensic neuropsychology.	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Rm		Contin
Journal of labour and social research.	EBSCO	3	Periodicals Rm		Contin

**Figure 9-16. Accessing the MARC record**

**NOTE:**

To view the MARC holdings record, click the ellipsis (...) button in the **Holdings** column. The Link to Holdings dialog box opens. Select a location and click the **MARC** button on the Link to Holdings dialog box to view the MARC holdings record.

The MARC record opens ([Figure 9-17](#)).

**Bibliographic Record #54638**

Font: Arial Unicode MS

Send Record To

Bib

status	type	bib/l	enc/l	form	006:
Leader: n	a	s	5	i	
007:	008: 990321 xx eng				

Tag	Ind 1	Ind 2	Bibliographic Data
035			\$a 12345
245	1	0	\$a Journal of company law
260			\$a Chicago \$b CCH

Close Print

**Figure 9-17. MARC record**

**NOTE:**

The MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded. MARC data that appears elsewhere in Acquisitions uses the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).




---

**Procedure 9-6. Viewing the Purchase Order**


---

Use the to view the purchase order to which the serial is attached.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, click the **View Order** button.

Result: The Purchase Order displays (see [Figure 9-18](#)).

---

**Purchase Order: 257 - [Approved/Sent] on 2/6/2003**

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order Number: 257 Type: Continuation Site: Acquisitions

Vendor Code: EBSCO Account: Status Date: 2/6/2003 1 Line Items on Order

Locations Ship To: Bill To:

Amounts Line Item Subtotal: \$255.00 Other Charges: \$0.00 Total Order Amount: \$255.00

Currency Code: USD Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund
1 / Received Comp	Journal of company law	\$255.00	1	Reference Departm	Daryl's 2003 L

**Figure 9-18. Purchase Order associated with this serial**

See [Purchase Orders](#) on [page 6-2](#) for descriptions of each part of a purchase order.

---



---

**Procedure 9-7. View Serial History**

---

Use the following to view serials history.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, click the **History** button.

Result: The **Serials History** workspace displays (see [Figure 9-19](#)).

---

**Serials History - Details**

Title:  ...

Component Name:  Maintenance

Location:  Holdings...

Call Number:

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapsed
+ v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 2 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 1 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No

Edit Issue... Collapse Display in OPAC Unreceive Item... Start Over

---

**Figure 9-19. Serials History workspace**

The **Serials History** workspace is where you can view the receipt history, claims history, problem history and payment history related to the serial. It also allows you to display or suppress received issues in Opac, collapse received issues to the MARC Holdings record, edit the subscription pattern, view the MARC

Bibliographic and Holdings record, edit the enumeration/chronology of a particular issue, unreceive serial issues, and access the item records of received issues. See [Serials History Information](#) on [page 9-27](#) for more information.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).



---

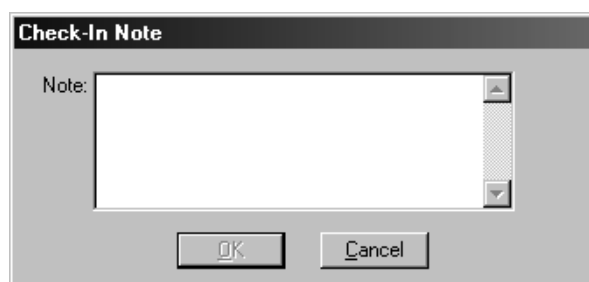
### Procedure 9-8. Adding or editing a Check-in Note for a Serial component

---

Use the following add a Check-in note to a serial component.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, click the **Note** button.

Result: The **Check-In Note** dialog box displays (see [Figure 9-20](#)).



---

**Figure 9-20. Check-In Note dialog box**

2. Enter information about the serial in the **Note** field. If a note already exists for the serial, edit the information in the **Note** field.
3. Click the **OK** button to save and close the **Check-In Note** dialog box. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel the note and close the **Check-In Note** dialog box.

Result: If clicked **OK** the note is saved and the system returns to the **Serials Check-In** workspace.

This note appears whenever the serial is retrieved for check-in. The check-in note has to be closed before the check-in process can proceed. However, if the **Use Persistent Check-In Notes** check box on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows is checked, the check-in note is displayed throughout the check-in process. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

Additionally, the placement of the **Check-In Note** dialog box on the screen remains in the same place each time a note displays, and across sessions (see [Figure 9-21](#)).

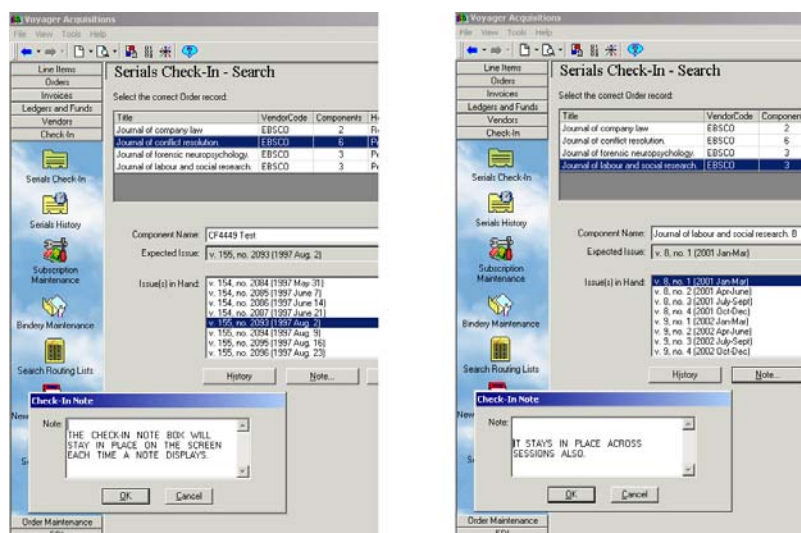


Figure 9-21. The Check-In Note box stays in place each time a record opens



## Procedure 9-9. Accessing the Subscription Maintenance Workspace

Use the following to access the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, click the **Maintenance** button.

Result: The **Subscription Maintenance** workspace opens (see [Figure 9-22](#)).

**Subscription Maintenance**

Title:  ...

Order Number:  ... Vendor:  ...

Call Number:  Location:

Vendor Title #:

Component:

**Component Details** | Predictive Component Pattern | Non-Predictive Component Pattern | Routing Lists

Component Name:  Check-In Title ☒

Category:  ...

Note:

Create Items ☒ Default Item Type:  ...

Don't Claim ☐ Claim Interval (days):

**Figure 9-22. Subscription Maintenance workspace**

From the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace users can view and edit the components of the serial as well as any related routing lists. See [Subscription Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 8-2](#) for more information.

## Serials History Information

After searching for and displaying a serial's component, the **Serials History** workspace ([Figure 9-23](#)) allows you to view information related to it, such as the history of received issues, the claims and problems associated with the component, and the history of payments for the issues of the component. In addition, the **Serials History** workspace enables you to edit the enumeration and

chronology of a received issue, collapse issues with MARC Holdings records, specify whether or not to display an issue in the OPAC, unreceive serial issues, generate claims, and more.

---

**Serials History - Details**

Title: American journal of education. ...

Component Name: American journal of education. Maintenance

Location: Main Holdings...

Call Number: L11 .S55

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapse	
[-] v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID
1	Received Partial	9/11/2003	Main	serial	69566
[-] v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID
1	Received Partial	9/11/2003	Main	serial	69565
[-] v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	

Edit Issue... Collapse Display in OPAC Unreceive Item... Start Over

---

**Figure 9-23. Serials History workspace**

Four tabs display on the **Serials History - Details** workspace:

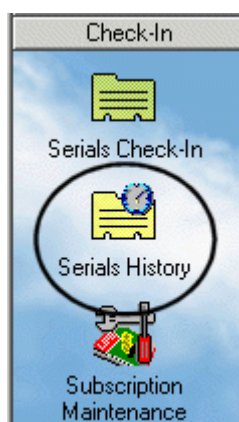
- **Receipt History** tab, see [Receipt History Tab](#) on [page 9-33](#)
- **Claims History** tab, see [Claims History Tab](#) on [page 9-49](#)
- **Problems History** tab, see [Problem History Tab](#) on [page 9-51](#)
- **Payment History** tab, see [Payment History Tab](#) on [page 9-53](#)

### Accessing the Serials History Workspace

---

To display the **Serials History** workspace click the **Serials History** button ([Figure 9-24](#)) in the **Check-In** bar.





**Figure 9-24. Serials History button**

You can also access this workspace when checking in issues of a serial component on the **Serials Check-In** workspace by clicking the **History** button (Figure 9-24) to display the serials history for the selected component.

**Serials Check-In** 4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Select the correct Order record:

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Dpt	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Rm	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsycholo	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Rm		Continuation

View Order...

Component Name: Journal of company law (a)

Expected Issue: v. 1, no. 9 (2003 Sept.) on 9/5/2004

Issue(s) in Hand:

- v. 1, no. 9 (2003 Sept.) (0/1)
- v. 1, no. 10 (2003 Oct.) (0/1)
- v. 1, no. 12 (2003 Dec.) (0/1)
- v. 2, no. 13 (2004 Jan.) (0/1)
- v. 2, no. 14 (2004 Feb.) (0/1)
- v. 2, no. 15 (2004 Mar.) (0/1)

Accept... Quick Check-In

Add Issue...

Change Issue...

Remove Issue(s)

Start Over

**History** Note... Maintenance

**Figure 9-25. History button on Serials Check-In**

[Procedure 9-10, Accessing and viewing the serials history of a record](#), shows how to access and view the details of a record.



---

**Procedure 9-10. Accessing and viewing the serials history of a record**

---

Use the following to access and view the serials history of a record.

1. Click the **Check-In** bar in the listbar on the Acquisitions workspace.

Result: The listbar displays the **Check-In** activity buttons.

2. Click the **Serials History** button in the listbar or select **Check-In** from the **View** menu and then select **Serials History** from the cascading menu.

Result: The **Serials History** workspace opens (see [Figure 9-26](#)).

---

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
-------	------------	------------	----------	-------------	------------

---

**Figure 9-26. Serials History workspace**

3. Search for and display a serial item. See [Searching for and displaying Serial Information](#) on [page 2-100](#).

Result: The **Serials History** workspace expands to include a list of matching serial records (see [Figure 9-27](#)).

### Serials History

Search For Serials

☒ Check-In Title
 ☐ UPC
 ☐ SICI Stem
 ☐ ISSN

Search For:

Select the correct Order record: 4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Title	VendorCode	Compts	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Dpr	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution.	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Rm	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsych	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Rm		Continuation

**Figure 9-27. Serials History - expanded**

**NOTE:**

If there is a single record that matches the search criteria, the **Serials History - Details** workspace displays immediately.

4. Select a title and click the **Select** button to view the **Serials History - Details** workspace.

Result: The **Serials History - Details** workspace opens (see [Figure 9-28](#)).

**Serials History - Details**

Title: American journal of education. ...

Component Name: American journal of education. Maintenance

Location: Main Holdings...

Call Number: L11 .S55

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapsed
+ v. 1, no. 5 (2003 )	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 4 (2003 )	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 3 (2003 )	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 2 (2003 )	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 1 (2003 )	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No

Edit Issue... Collapse Display in OPAC Unreceive Item... Start Over

**Figure 9-28. Serials History - Details workspace**

The **Title** field at the top of the workspace displays the title of the serial. You can click the ellipsis (...) button in the **Title** field to display the MARC Bibliographic record.

**NOTE:**

The MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded. MARC data that appears elsewhere in Acquisitions uses the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

The component that is earliest alphabetically displays in the **Component Name** field. The **Location** field at the top of the **Serials History** workspace defaults to the first location. Additionally, the call number displays in the **Call Number** field.

You can change the component and the location for which you want to view the history by selecting from the drop-down lists in the **Component Name** field and **Location** field. The history is changed to reflect the new choices.

To display the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace to edit the component, click the **Maintenance** button beside the **Component Name** field. To display the Holdings record associated with the location, click the **Holdings** button. MARC Holdings records can automatically be opened in the Cataloging module from the Acquisitions module.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

---

## **Receipt History Tab**

---

[Figure 9-29](#) displays the **Receipt History** tab.

From this tab operators can edit the enumeration/chronology of received issues, collapse issues, determine if the issues should display in OPAC, and unreceive issues.

**Serials History - Details**

Title:  ...

Component Name:  [Maintenance](#)

Location:  [Holdings...](#)

Call Number:

**Receipt History** | [Claims History](#) | [Problem History](#) | [Payment History](#)

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapse	
[-] v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID
1	Received Partial	9/11/2003	Main	serial	69566
[-] v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID
1	Received Partial	9/11/2003	Main	serial	69565
[-] v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	

[Edit Issue...](#) [Collapse](#) [Display in OPAC](#) [Unreceive](#) [Item...](#) [Start Over](#)

**Figure 9-29. Receipt History tab**

The **Receipt History** tab displays information about issues that have been received. It allows you to

- edit the enumeration/chronology of a received issue
- collapse issues to the MARC Holdings record
- specify whether or not to display an issue in the OPAC
- unreceive a serial issue or multiple issues.

The plus (+) signs expand the levels of the hierarchy, the minus (-) signs close them.

For each issue, the first level of the hierarchy displays the enumeration/chronology, the date on which the issue was received, the number of copies received, whether or not the issue is displayed in OPAC, and whether or not the issue has been collapsed to the MARC Holdings record.

The second level of the hierarchy displays information about the individual copies of the issue, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Received Partial), the date on which the status was applied, the intended location for the copy, the item type and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, contain information only if an item record has been created.)

### Edits to Issues

Users can edit the issue's enumeration/chronology information. This allows the issue to display differently in the OPAC.



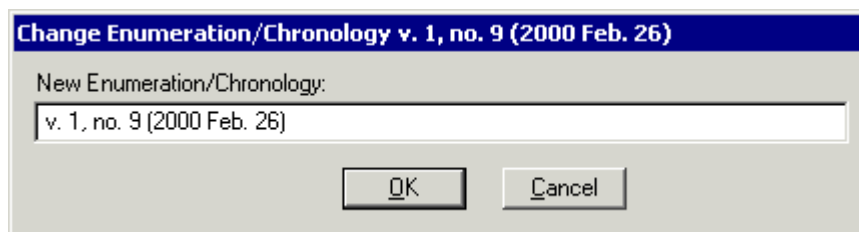
#### Procedure 9-11. Editing the enumeration/chronology of an issue

Use the following to edit the enumeration of an issue.

1. From the **Receipt History** tab, select the issue that you want to modify. You must select this first level (rather than the second level, which is the copy level) in order for the **Edit Issue** button to be available.

Result: The issue information displays on the first level of the hierarchy.

2. Click the **Edit Issue** button. The **Change Enumeration/Chronology** dialog box opens (see [Figure 9-30](#)).



**Figure 9-30. Change Enumeration/Chronology dialog box**

3. Enter the new enumeration and chronology for the issue in the **New Enumeration/Chronology** field.
4. Click the **OK** button to enter the edit. (To cancel the enumeration/chronology change, click the **Cancel** button.)

Result: The issue displays with the new enumeration/chronology on the **Receipt History** tab.

---

### Serial Issues Collapsing

After serial issues have been received, they can be collapsed to the MARC Holdings record for their location.

**NOTE:**

However, issues checked in on a complex prediction pattern cannot be collapsed.

The number of copies that have been received for a particular issue (**Copies Received** column of the first level in the hierarchy) does not affect how the issue is collapsed to the MARC Holdings record.

When an issue is collapsed, specific fields are created and added to the MARC Holdings record. These specific fields are created according to the type of component the issue belongs to (basic, supplementary, or index) and whether the component is predictive or non-predictive. The following table lists the specific fields that are created on the MARC Holdings record according to the issue's component and predictive properties:

	Predictive	Non-predictive
<b>Basic</b>	853, 863	866
<b>Supplementary</b>	854, 864	867
<b>Index</b>	855, 865	868

Fields 853-855 contain the subscription pattern for the predictive component.

Fields 863-865 contain the enumeration and chronology of the received issue(s). For example, if you collapse an issue belonging to a basic component type, the enumeration and chronology of that issue appear in the 863 field on the MARC Holdings record.

Fields 866-868 contain the caption assigned to an unpredictable issue.

**NOTE:**

If you simultaneously collapse multiple issues of a specific component type, the enumeration and chronology of those issues are summarized in the applicable field 863, 864, or 865, if the component type is predictive. However, each non-predictive issue gets one 866, 867, or 868.

To collapse serial issues to the MARC Holdings record, follow [Procedure 9-12, Collapsing serial issues to the MARC holdings record](#), on page [9-37](#).





### Procedure 9-12. Collapsing serial issues to the MARC holdings record

Use the following to collapse serial issues to the MARC Holdings record.

1. From the **Receipt History** tab, click one or more issues to enable the **Collapse** button. You must select this first level (rather than the second level, which is the copy level) in order for the **Collapse** button to be available.

Result: The issue information displays on the first level of the hierarchy (see [Figure 9-31](#)).

Receipt History						
Claims History						
Problem History						
Payment History						
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID	
1	Received Partial	10/28/2002			no item	
⊕ v. 1, no. 7 (2003 July)		10/10/2003	1	Yes	No	
⊖ v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)		10/10/2003	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID	
1	Received Partial	10/28/2002			no item	
⊖ v. 1, no. 5 (2003 May)		10/9/2003	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID	
1	Received Partial	10/28/2002			no item	
⊖ v. 1, no. 4 (2003 Apr.)		10/9/2003	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID	
1	Received Partial	10/28/2002			no item	

Figure 9-31. Issues selected to collapse

#### OPTIONAL:

2. Display the MARC Holdings record.
  - a. Click the **Holding** button beside the **Location** field at the top of the screen.  
Result: The Link to Holdings dialog box opens.
  - b. Click the location to enable the **MARC...** button.
  - c. Click the **MARC...** button to display the MARC holdings record.

Result: The associated MARC holdings record is shown in [Figure 9-32](#). Close this dialog box by clicking the **Close** button.

**Holdings Record #55635**

Font:  Linkresolver:  Send Record To:

Holdings: status type enc/l

Leader: ☐ ☐ ☐

007:  008:

Tag	Ind 1	Ind 2	Bibliographic Data
852	0		\$b reference \$h CL 123 \$i .456
853	2	3	\$8 65 \$a v. \$b no. \$u 3 \$v r \$i (year) \$w t
853	2	3	\$8 86 \$a v. \$b no. \$u 12 \$v c \$i (year) \$j (month) \$w m \$x 01
863	4	0	\$8 65.210 \$a 7 \$i 2008
863	4	1	\$8 86.80 \$a 1 \$b 8 \$i 2003 \$j 08
866	4	0	\$8 0.191 \$a Extra Issue
866	4	0	\$8 0.201 \$a Supplement

**Figure 9-32. MARC holdings record**

- Click the **Collapse** button on the **Receipt History** tab to collapse the issue(s) to the MARC Holdings record.

Result: The **Collapsed** status toggles to **Yes** for the collapsed issue(s) (see [Figure 9-33](#)).

<b>Receipt History</b>							Claims History		Problem History		Payment History	
Issue Identification		Receive Date		Copies Received		Display in OPAC		Collapsed		▲		
⊕ v. 1, no. 8 (2003 Aug.)		10/10/2003		1		No		Yes				
⊕ v. 1, no. 7 (2003 July)		10/10/2003		1		Yes		No				
⊖ v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)		10/10/2003		1		No		Yes				
Copy #		Status		Status Date		Location Name		Item Type		Item ID		
1		Received Partial		10/28/2002						no item		
⊖ v. 1, no. 5 (2003 May)		10/9/2003		1		No		Yes				
Copy #		Status		Status Date		Location Name		Item Type		Item ID		
1		Received Partial		10/28/2002						no item		
⊖ v. 1, no. 4 (2003 Apr.)		10/9/2003		1		No		Yes				
Copy #		Status		Status Date		Location Name		Item Type		Item ID ▼		
◀												
Edit Issue...		Collapse		Display in OPAC		Unreceive		Item...				

Figure 9-33. Receipt History tab after collapsing issues

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Display the MARC holdings record.
  - a. Click the **Holding** button beside the **Location** field at the top of the screen.  
Result: The **Link to Holdings** dialog box opens.
  - b. Click the location to enable the **MARC...** button.
  - c. Click the **MARC...** button to display the MARC holdings record.

Result: The MARC holdings record has a new 853-863 pair (see [Figure 9-34](#)). Close this dialog box by clicking the **Close** button.

**Holdings Record #55635**

Font:

Holdings: status type enc/l

Leader: ☐ ☐ ☐

007:  008:

Tag	Ind 1	Ind 2	Bibliographic Data
852	0		\$b reference \$h CL 123 \$i .456
853	2	3	\$8 65 \$a v. \$b no. \$u 3 \$v r \$i (year) \$w t
853	2	3	\$8 86 \$a v. \$b no. \$u 12 \$v c \$i (year) \$j (month) \$w m \$x 01
863	4	0	\$8 65.210 \$a 7 \$i 2008
863	4	1	\$8 86.80 \$a 1 \$b 8 \$i 2003 \$j 08
863	4	1	\$8 86.10 \$a 1 \$b 1 \$i 2003 \$j 01
863	4	0	\$8 86.60 \$a 1 \$b 4-6 \$i 2003 \$j 04-06
866	4	0	\$8 0.191 \$a Extra Issue
866	4	0	\$8 0.201 \$a Supplement

**Figure 9-34. MARC holdings record after collapsing issues**

**NOTE:**

When an issue is collapsed, it is automatically suppressed from OPAC display (Display in OPAC status toggles to No). The operator may change the Display in OPAC status back to Yes after the issue has been collapsed, see [Display In OPAC](#) on [page 9-43](#).

---

### Re-collapsing Serial Issues

You can also re-collapse an issue or multiple issues. However, with every collapse new fields are created and added to the MARC Holdings record. You must display the MARC Holdings record through Cataloging to edit or delete any of these fields. For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions,

see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).



### Procedure 9-13. Re-collapsing serials issues

#### NOTE:

In [Procedure 9-12, Collapsing serial issues to the MARC holdings record](#), issues 4-6 were collapsed. In this example, issues 4-8 are re-collapsed.

Use the following to re-collapse serial issues.

1. From the **Receipt History** tab, click one or more issues to enable the **Collapse** button. You must select the first level (rather than the second level, which is the copy level) in order for the **Collapse** button to be available.

Result: The issue information displays on the first level of the hierarchy (see [Figure 9-35](#)).

Receipt History						Claims History	Problem History	Payment History
Issue Identification		Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapse			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	v. 1, no. 8 (2003 Aug.)	10/10/2003	1	No	Yes			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	v. 1, no. 7 (2003 July)	10/10/2003	1	Yes	No			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)	10/10/2003	1	No	Yes			
<input type="checkbox"/>		Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID	
		1	Received Partial	10/28/2002			no item	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	v. 1, no. 5 (2003 May)	10/9/2003	1	No	Yes			
<input type="checkbox"/>		Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID	
		1	Received Partial	10/28/2002			no item	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	v. 1, no. 4 (2003 Apr.)	10/9/2003	1	No	Yes			
<input type="checkbox"/>		Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID	
Edit Issue...		Collapse		Display in OPAC		Unreceive		Item...

Figure 9-35. Issues selected to re-collapse

2. Click the **Collapse** button to collapse the issue(s) to the MARC Holdings record.

Result: A message indicating the issue is already collapsed displays (see [Figure 9-36](#)).

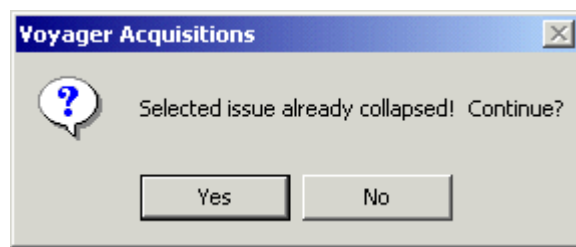


Figure 9-36. Confirmation of re-collapsing message

3. Click **Yes** to continue with re-collapsing, click **No** to stop.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the Collapsed status toggles to **Yes** for the collapsed issue(s) (Figure 9-37) and they are re-collapsed.

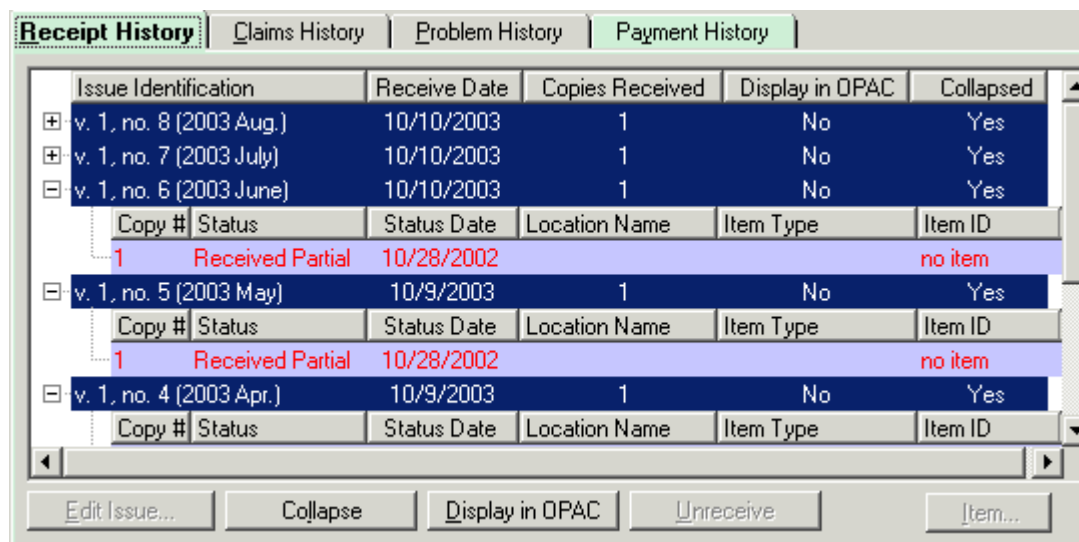


Figure 9-37. Receipt History tab after re-collapsing

#### OPTIONAL:

4. Display the MARC holdings record.
  - a. Click the **Holding** button beside the **Location** field at the top of the screen.  
Result: The **Link to Holdings** dialog box opens.
  - b. Click the location to enable the **MARC...** button.

c. Click the **MARC...** button to display the MARC holdings record.

*Result: The MARC holdings record has a new 853-863 pair (see [Figure 9-38](#)). Close this dialog box by clicking the **Close** button.*

Tag	Ind 1	Ind 2	Bibliographic Data
852	0		\$b reference \$h CL 123 \$i .456
853	2	3	\$8 65 \$a v. \$b no. \$u 3 \$v r \$i (year) \$w t
853	2	3	\$8 86 \$a v. \$b no. \$u 12 \$v c \$i (year) \$j (month) \$w m \$x 01
863	4	0	\$8 65.210 \$a 7 \$i 2008
863	4	1	\$8 86.80 \$a 1 \$b 8 \$i 2003 \$j 08
863	4	1	\$8 86.80 \$a 1 \$b 8 \$i 2003 \$j 08
863	4	1	\$8 86.10 \$a 1 \$b 1 \$i 2003 \$j 01
863	4	0	\$8 86.60 \$a 1 \$b 4-6 \$i 2003 \$j 04-06

**Figure 9-38. MARC Holdings Record after collapsing issues**

#### OPTIONAL:

5. Edit the MARC Holdings record in the Cataloging module. See the *Voyager Cataloging User's Guide* for more information.

#### Display In OPAC

You can specify whether an issue does or does not display in the OPAC. This action can be applied to one or more issues at a time.



---

**Procedure 9-14. Displaying issues in the OPAC**

---

Use the following to specify if an issue should display in the OPAC.

1. From the **Receipt History** tab, click one or more issues to enable the **Display in OPAC** button. You must select the first level (rather than the second level, which is the copy level) in order for the **Display in OPAC** button to be available.

Result: The issue information displays on the first level of the hierarchy (see [Figure 9-39](#)).

---

Serials History - Details

Title: American journal of education. ...

Component Name: American journal of education. Maintenance

Location: Main Holdings...

Call Number: L11 .S55

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapsed
+ v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 2 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 1 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No

Edit Issue... Collapse Display in OPAC Unreceive Item...

Start Over

---

**Figure 9-39. Issue selected to display in OPAC**

2. Select the issue(s) that you want to modify and click the **Display in OPAC** button to toggle Yes (to display) or No (to not display).

Result: The **Display in OPAC** column changes based on your selections (see [Figure 9-40](#)).



**Serials History - Details**

Title:  ...

Component Name:  Maintenance

Location:  Holdings...

Call Number:

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapsed
+ v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	No	No
+ v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 2 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 1 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No

Edit Issue... Collapse Display in OPAC Unreceive Item...

Start Over

**Figure 9-40. Issues to display in the OPAC**

### Unreceiving a Serial Issue

Operators can unreceive a serial issue as long as it has not been collapsed to the MARC Holdings record. This feature is valuable, for example, in a circumstance where you have received the wrong issue accidentally.

Unreceiving does the following:

- unreceives all copies of the issue at the selected location. (You cannot unreceive a single copy of an issue of which you have received multiple copies)
- adds the issue back to the list of expected issues
- has no impact on the PO or line item. That is, The status of the purchase order or the line item is not updated when an issue is unreceived.

#### **NOTE:**

If you want to unreceive an issue that has been deleted, and if the issue has not been collapsed, you can then unreceive it.

## Security for Unreceiving a Serial Issue

To be authorized to unreceive, the **Receive** check box must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of the Acquisitions/Serials Profile to which an operator belongs. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

### NOTE:

For information about unreceiving monograph copies, see [Unreceiving a monographic item](#) on [page 7-13](#).

To unreceive one or more issue(s), follow [Procedure 9-15, Unreceiving serial issues](#), on page [9-46](#).



---

### Procedure 9-15. Unreceiving serial issues

---

Use the following to unreceive one or more serial issue(s).

1. From the **Receipt History** tab, select the first-level row(s) of the issue(s) you want to unreceive (see [Figure 9-41](#)).

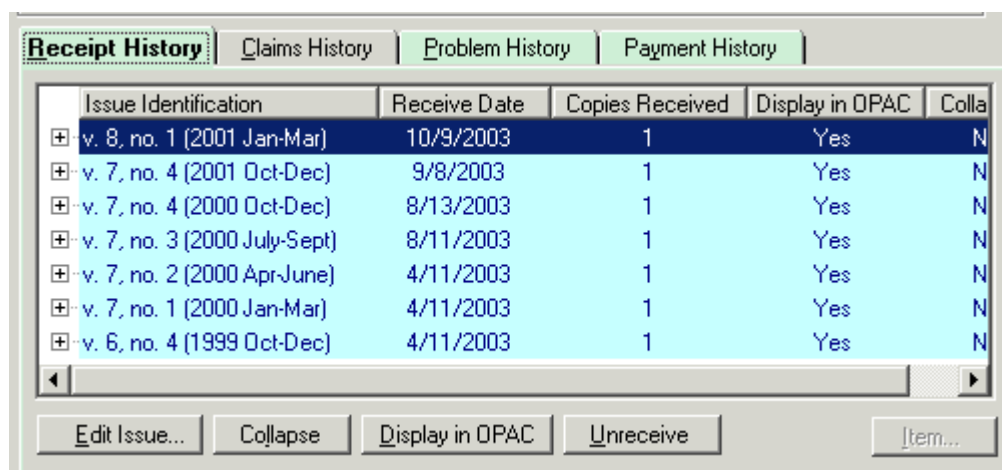


### TIP:

Use Windows conventions (**Ctrl**+ click, **Shift**+ click) to make multiple selections.

### NOTE:

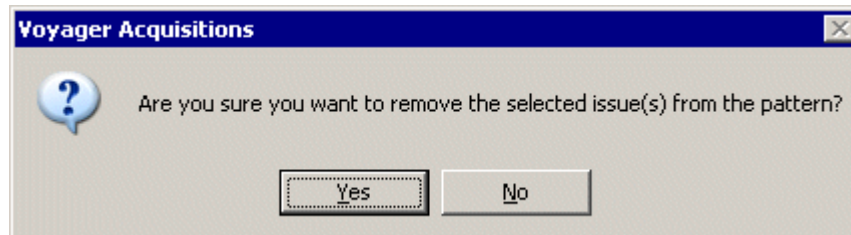
If copies reside at more than one location, select the appropriate location from the **Location** drop-down list at the top of the **Serials History** workspace.



**Figure 9-41.** Serial issue selected to unreceive

- Click the **Unreceive** button.

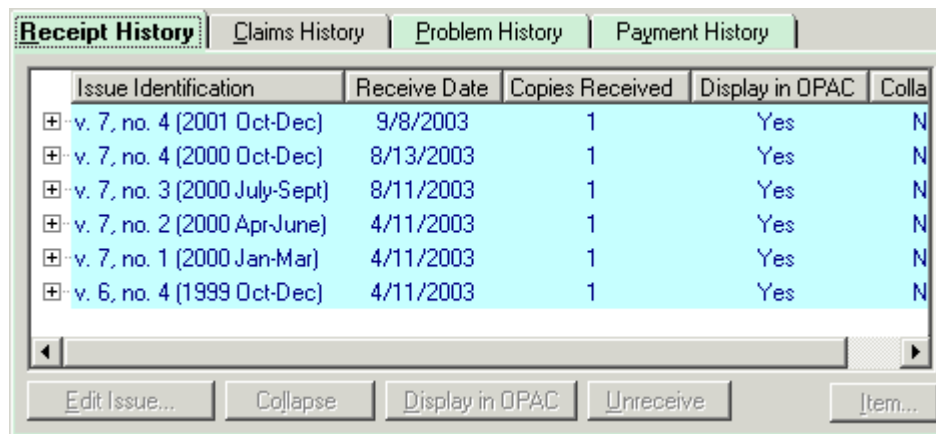
Result: A confirmation message displays (see [Figure 9-42](#)).



**Figure 9-42.** Confirmation message when unreceiving a serial issue

- Click **Yes** to unreceive the issue(s), **No** to cancel unreceiving the issue(s).

Result: If you clicked **Yes**, the system removes the issue(s) and they no longer display on the **Receipt History** tab or the OPAC (see [Figure 9-43](#)).



The screenshot shows a window titled "Receipt History" with four tabs: "Receipt History", "Claims History", "Problem History", and "Payment History". The "Receipt History" tab is active, displaying a table with the following columns: "Issue Identification", "Receive Date", "Copies Received", "Display in OPAC", and "Colla". The table contains six rows of data, all with a "Display in OPAC" value of "Yes". The last row, "v. 6, no. 4 (1999 Oct-Dec)", is highlighted in blue. Below the table is a horizontal scrollbar and a row of buttons: "Edit Issue...", "Collapse", "Display in OPAC", "Unreceive", and "Item...".

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Colla
+ v. 7, no. 4 (2001 Oct-Dec)	9/8/2003	1	Yes	N
+ v. 7, no. 4 (2000 Oct-Dec)	8/13/2003	1	Yes	N
+ v. 7, no. 3 (2000 July-Sept)	8/11/2003	1	Yes	N
+ v. 7, no. 2 (2000 Apr-June)	4/11/2003	1	Yes	N
+ v. 7, no. 1 (2000 Jan-Mar)	4/11/2003	1	Yes	N
+ v. 6, no. 4 (1999 Oct-Dec)	4/11/2003	1	Yes	N

**Figure 9-43.** Issue 8 has been unreceived and no longer displays

---

## Issues and Item Records

Users can create an item record for a copy of a received issue or display and edit an item record that has been previously created for a copy of a received issue.



### TIP:

*You can tell if an item record has been created for a copy of a received issue by looking to see if an Item ID displays in the second level (the Copy level) of the hierarchy on the **Receipt History** tab.*



---

## Procedure 9-16. Accessing an issue's item record

Use the following to create an item record or view an existing one.

1. From the **Receipt History** tab, select the copy of the issue in the second level of the hierarchy for which you want to create an item or to view or edit an existing item record (see [Figure 9-44](#)).

Receipt History   Claims History   Problem History   Payment History						
Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Coll:		
[-] v. 43, no. 7 (2000 July)	8/19/2003	1	Yes			
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item	
1	Received Partial	12/12/1999	Periodicals Room	serial	6253	
[+] v. 43, no. 6 (2000 June)	8/19/2003	1	Yes		N	
[+] v. 43, no. 5 (2000 May)	8/19/2003	1	Yes		N	
[+] v. 43, no. 4 (2000 Apr.)	8/19/2003	1	Yes		N	
[+] v. 43, no. 3 (2000 Mar.)	5/7/2002	1	Yes		N	
[+] v. 43, no. 2 (2000 Feb.)	4/30/2002	1	Yes		N	
[+] v. 43, no. 1 (2000 Jan.)	4/30/2002	1	Yes		N	
[+] v. 42, no. 12 (1999 Dec.)	8/2/2000	1	No		Ye	

**Figure 9-44.** Copy level selected, the **Item** button is active

- Click the **Item** button.

Result: The Item record opens. See [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#) for further information on creating or editing item records.

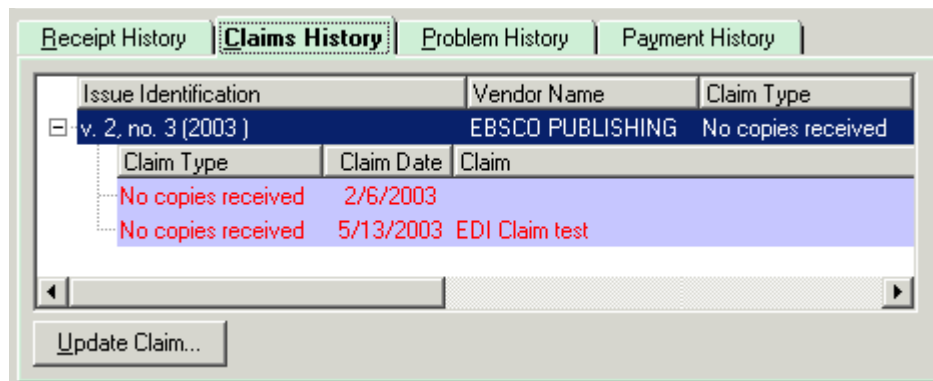
## Claims History Tab

The **Claims History** tab displays information about claims that have been made for issues of the serial component.

From this tab, an authorized operator can

- Generate a claim, see [Generating a Claim](#) on [page 11-31](#)
- Update a claim, see [Updating a Claim](#) on [page 11-34](#)
- Cancel a claim, see [Canceling a Claim](#) on [page 11-36](#)

The ability to perform these functions right from the **Serials History** workspace can help save valuable time by eliminating the need to search for the items on the **Claims** workspace (for more information about the **Claims** workspace, see [Claims Workspace](#) on [page 11-20](#).)



**Figure 9-45. Serials History - Claims History tab**

The title of the serial, Component Name, Location, and Call Number display at the top of the workspace. The following information displays for each issue on the **Claims History** tab (see [Figure 9-45](#)).

- Issue Identification (the enumeration/chronology of the issue)
- Vendor Name
- Claim Type
- Claim Date
- Number of Claims
- Number of Claim Responses
- PO Number (click the ellipsis in this field to display the purchase order associated with the serial)
- Approve Date of the purchase order
- Invoice Number (click the ellipsis in this field to display the invoice associated with the serial)
- Invoice Date
- Operator who claimed the issue
- Any addition Comments

Click the plus (+) sign beside an issue to view the individual claims associated with the issue. The following information displays for each claim.

- Claim Type
- Claim Date
- Claim

- Vendor Response
- Response Date
- Response Type
- Action Date
- Action Quantity

**NOTE:**

Claimed line item copies and serial issues can now be processed from an approved purchase order or from an approved invoice [Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices](#) on [page 11-27](#).

**Problem History Tab**

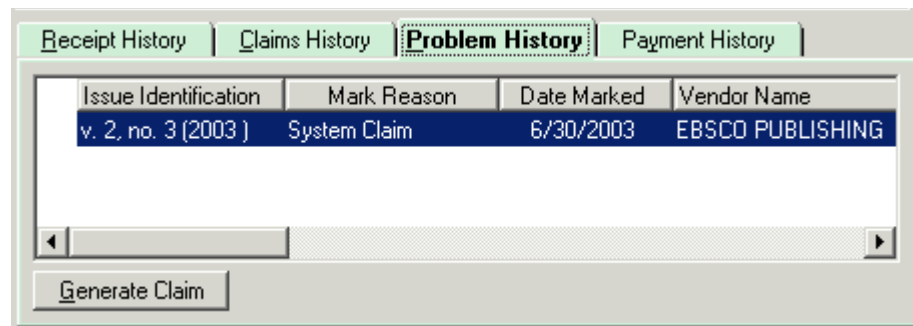
---

When an Acquisitions operator encounters a serial issue that is not satisfactory or that requires further investigation, the operator can manually mark the copy or issue with an appropriate mark reason. In addition, a serial issue can be automatically marked by the system due to a surpassed Claim Interval (for more information about how issues are marked, see [Marking by an Operator](#) on [page 11-3](#) and [Marking by the System](#) on [page 11-4](#).)

The **Problem History** tab (see [Figure 9-46](#)) displays information about issues of the serial component that have been marked by an Acquisitions operator or by the system.

From this tab, an authorized operator can

- Unmark an issue that has been marked, see [Unmarking a Line Item Copy or Serial Issue](#) on [page 11-29](#)
- Generate a claim to be sent to the vendor, see [Generating a Claim](#) on [page 11-31](#)



**Figure 9-46. Serials History workspace - Problem History tab**

The ability to perform these functions from this tab on the **Serials History** workspace can help save valuable time by eliminating the need to search for the items on the **Problems** workspace (for more information about the **Problems** workspace, see [Problems Workspace](#) on [page 11-16](#).)

The following information is displayed on the **Problem History** tab ([Figure 9-46](#)) for each marked issue:

- The enumeration and chronology information of a marked issue displays in the **Issue Identification** column
- The mark reason of a marked issue displays in the **Mark Reason** column (for example, Claim or System Claim)
- The date on which an issue was marked displays in the **Date Marked** column
- The name of the vendor associated with the purchase order on which the serial item is listed displays in the **Vendor Name** column
- The number of the purchase order on which the serial item is listed displays in the **P.O. Number** column

**NOTE:**

You can quickly display the purchase order by clicking the ellipsis (...) button in this column.

- The number of the invoice on which the serial item is listed displays in the **Invoice Number** column, if the serial item has been invoiced

**NOTE:**

If an invoice is associated with the serial item, you can quickly display the invoice by clicking the ellipsis (...) button in this column.



- The status of the serial issue displays in the **Copy Status** column (for example, Received or Received Partial)
- The operator who marked the serial issue displays in the **Operator** column. If the serial issue was marked by the system **SYSTEM** displays
- Any comments entered by the operator when the issue was marked displays in the **Comment** column

**NOTE:**

Marked and claimed line item copies and serial issues can be processed directly from an approved purchase order and from an approved invoice (see [Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices](#) on page 11-27)

### Payment History Tab

The **Payment History** tab ([Figure 9-47](#)) displays information about any payments that have been made for the serial. In addition, you can quickly display an invoice or fund associated with the payment of the serial.

Invoice Number	Invoice Date	Vendor Name	Voucher ID	Line Total	Expense
257	2/6/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING	87	25500	

Ledger	Fund	Fiscal Period
Daryl's 2003 Ledger	General Serials	2003

Fund...

**Figure 9-47. Serials History - Payment History tab**

If the serial is listed on one or more approved invoices (funds are expended when an invoice is approved), the following information displays about each invoice.

- The number of the invoice
- The date on which the most recent status was applied to the invoice
- The name of the vendor associated with the invoice
- The voucher ID on the invoice
- The total cost of the serial as listed on the invoice

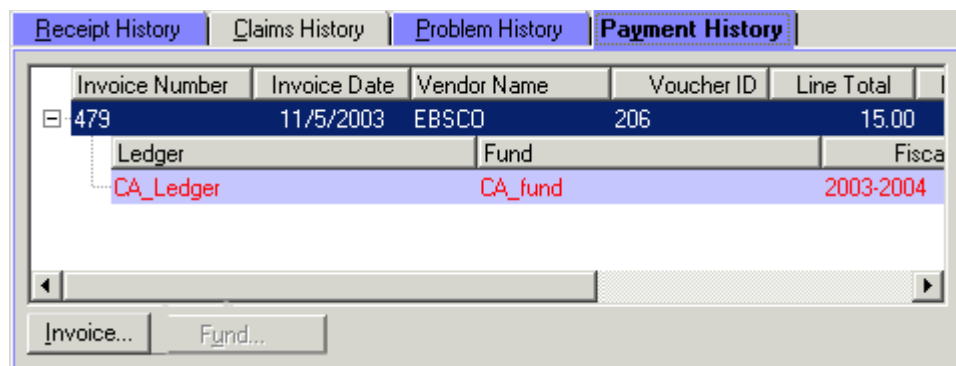
- The expenditure date on the invoice
- The number of the check used for the invoice
- Vendor piece identifier
- Vendor title number
- Vendor reference number

Click the plus (+) sign beside the invoice information to display information about the funds that were used to pay for the serial. The following information displays for each ledger/fund combination used.

- The name of the ledger
- The name of the fund
- The ledger's fiscal period
- The amount expended from the fund

### Displaying an Invoice from the Payment History tab

To display an invoice, click to select the invoice information row on the **Payment History** tab, then click the **Invoice** button ([Figure 9-48](#)).



**Figure 9-48.** Payment History tab, invoice row selected

**NOTE:**

The **Invoice** button does not display if there is no associated invoice.

### Displaying a Fund from the Payment History tab

To display a fund, click to select the ledger/fund information row on the **Payment History** tab, then click the **Fund** button ([Figure 9-49](#)).

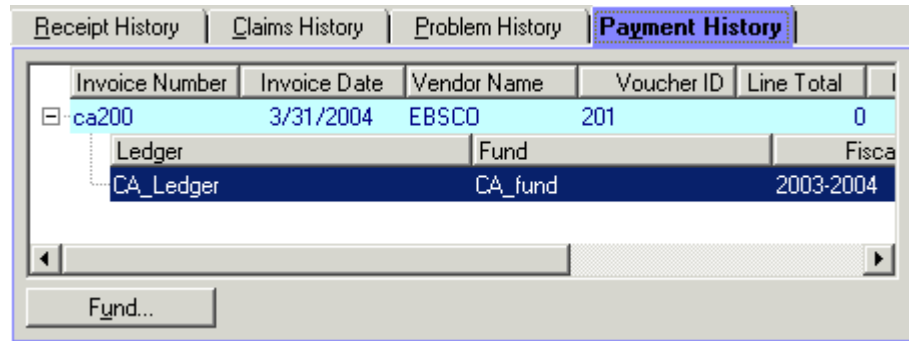


Figure 9-49. Payment History tab with the Fund button enabled

The **Ledger** workspace displays with only the selected fund visible in the **Ledger and Funds** list (see [Figure 9-50](#)). Click the **Ledger and Funds** button to display all of the ledger's funds. After the button has been clicked, the button becomes the normal **Ledger and Funds** label.

**Ledger and Funds**

**Ledger Name:** CA\_Ledger

**Fiscal Period:** 2003-2004    9/9/2003 through 9/9/2004

**Policy Group:** Main Acquisitions Group

**Commitments/Expenditures** | Locations | Rollover Information | Notes | Properties

Commitments	Expenditures
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Over Commit Allowed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Over Expend Allowed
Over Commit Warning %: 10	Over Expend Warning %: 3
Over Commit Limit %: 5	Over Expend Limit %: 5
Under Commit Report %: 0	Under Expend Report %: 0
Freeze Date: [ ] [ ] [ ] ...	Freeze Date: [ ] [ ] [ ] ...

New Fund...

**Figure 9-50. Ledger and Fund information displayed from the Payment History tab**

---

## **Item Record Creation and Maintenance**

# **10**

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>10-1</b>
<b>Item Creation and Maintenance -Monographic Items</b>	<b>10-1</b>
• Security for Creating and Editing an Item Record	10-2
<b>Item Creation and Maintenance - Serial Items</b>	<b>10-11</b>
<b>Deleting an Item Record</b>	<b>10-30</b>
• Security for Deleting Item Records	10-30
• Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display	10-31
Enumeration	10-31
Chronology	10-32
Year	10-33
Caption	10-33
• Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display	10-33
Enumeration	10-33
Chronology	10-34
Year	10-34
Caption	10-34



### Introduction

---

Item records can be created and maintained from many places within the Acquisitions module.

This chapter discusses the following topics.

- Creating and maintaining Item Records for
  - Monographic items
  - Serial issues
- Deleting Item records
- Predictive and Non-predictive publication pattern information

To automatically receive items with the EDI process, see [Receive Items Option](#) on [page 15-12](#).

### Item Creation and Maintenance - Monographic Items

---

Operators can create and maintain item records for received monographic items from the various places in the Acquisitions module. From either an approved purchase order or an approved invoice create or edit an item record from the:

- **Receive/Mark** dialog box

- **Copy Status** tab of the detailed view of a line item
- **Receive/Mark** tab of the detailed view of a line item

When receiving line item copies, item records are automatically created if the **Automatically create at receive** check box on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows is selected. Also, you can choose to have the item records automatically open when they are created by selecting the **Show Item Record on Create** check box. See [Item Creation Tab](#) on [page 19-10](#) for more information.

### **Security for Creating and Editing an Item Record**

---

To be authorized to create or edit an item record, the **Add/Update Item** check box ([Figure 10-1](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of the Acquisitions/Serials Profile to which an operator belongs. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Item** check box is selected on the **Profile Values** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view item record, but the operator is not able to perform any functions. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile:

Profile Name	Operator	Profile Values	Profile Values Cont.	Locations
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Vendor		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Vendors		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Vendors		
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Acquisitions			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Serials Control			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serials Check-In	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Problems and Claims Lists			
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Line Item Bib Record			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record			
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serial Patterns				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Serial Patterns				

**Figure 10-1. Profile Values tab**

The procedures for creating/maintaining item records are shown in

- [Procedure 10-1, Creating/editing an item record from the Receive/Mark dialog box](#)
- [Procedure 10-2, Creating/maintaining an item record from the Copy Status tab of a line item](#)



- [Procedure 10-3, Creating/maintaining an item record from the Receive/Mark tab of a line item.](#)



### Procedure 10-1. Creating/editing an item record from the Receive/Mark dialog box

Use the following to create (or maintain) an item record from the **Receive/Mark** dialog box.

1. Search for and display a purchase order or invoice. See [Searching in Acquisitions](#) on [page 2-1](#).
2. Click a line item in the line items section of the invoice.

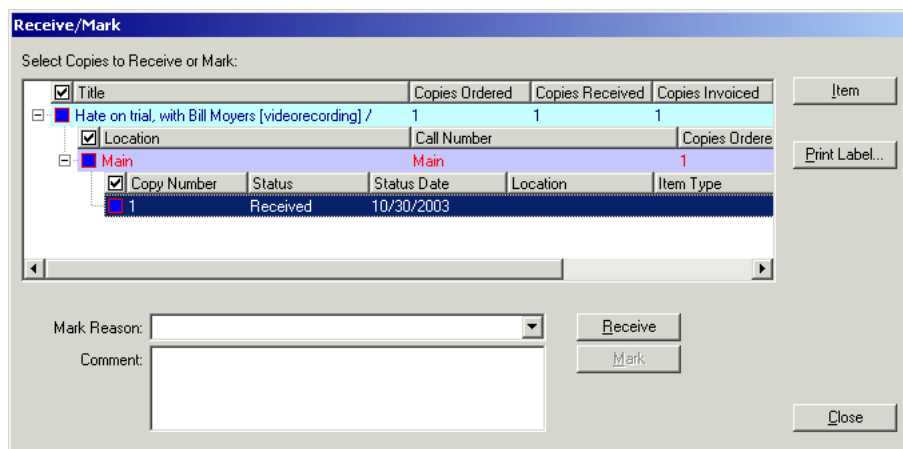
Result: The **Recv/Mark** button is active (see [Figure 10-2](#)).

Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund
Received Complete	Hate on trial, with Bill Moyer	\$0.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund

**Figure 10-2. Recv/Mark button on approved Invoice**

3. Click the **Recv/Mark** button.

Result: The **Receive/Mark** dialog box opens (see [Figure 10-3](#)).



**Figure 10-3. Receive/Mark dialog box**

The line item you selected displays in a tree structure or hierarchy in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** box. Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. There are three levels in the hierarchy.

- The first level of the hierarchy displays the title of the item, the number of copies ordered, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The second level of the hierarchy displays the intended location(s) for the item, the call number, the number of copies order, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The third level of the hierarchy displays the individual copies for each location, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Approved), the date on which the status became active, the intended location for the copy, the item type and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, does not contain information until after the copy has been received and an item record has been created.)

**NOTE:**

Using your Session Workflows, you can have the hierarchy in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** box automatically open to the second level (Location level) or third level (Copy level). See [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more information.

4. Each level of the hierarchy has a box beside it. These boxes are used to select the copies that you want to receive. If you want to specify which copies to receive for each location, at the third level of the hierarchy click the box beside each copy that you want to receive. If you want to receive all copies for a location, click the box beside the second level (the Location level) to select all the copies beneath that location. Or, if you want to select all copies for all locations, click the box beside the first level of the hierarchy.

To make it easier for you to see how many copies are currently selected to be received or marked, the boxes beside the levels of the hierarchy are either half-full (if only some of the copies are selected) or completely full (if all of the copies are selected to be received or marked).

5. After you have selected the copy or copies that you want to receive, click the **Receive** button.

Result: An item record is automatically created if the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows. If the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the item record automatically opens when it is created. See [Item Creation Tab](#) on [page 19-10](#) for more information.

- If you selected to receive more than one copy, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically open, even if you have selected the **Show Item Record on Create** check box in your Session Workflows. Rather, you receives the message: x item records automatically created, where x equals the appropriate amount. However, you can access an item record for an individual copy by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button.
- If the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is selected but the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is not selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the item record is not automatically opened when it is created. You can access the item record by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button.
- If the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is not selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, an item record is not automatically created. However, after a line item copy has been received, you can select the copy from the hierarchy and click the **Item** button to create an item record. The **New Item Record** dialog box opens (see [Figure 10-4](#)).

**New Item Record**

Title: 100 more story poems. Illustrated by Peter Spier.

Location: Main Call #: PZ8.3.P167 O1

Barcode: Temp. Loc.:

Perm. Loc.: Main Temp. Type:

Item Type: Book Media Type:

Enum:

Chron:

Year:

Caption:

Free text:

Spine:

Copy: 1 Pieces: 1 Price: \$0.00

Self Check:

☐ Magnetic Media ☒ Sensitize

Close

**Figure 10-4. New Item Record dialog box**

6. The operator can now create the item record (or maintain an already created item record). Follow [Procedure 10-6, Creating/maintaining an item record](#).

Result: The item record is created or maintained.



### Procedure 10-2. Creating/maintaining an item record from the Copy Status tab of a line item

---

Use the following to create (or maintain) an item record from the **Copy Status** tab of a line item.

1. From a purchase order or invoice, highlight a line item in the line items section and click the **Details...** button or select **Details** from the **Line Item** menu.

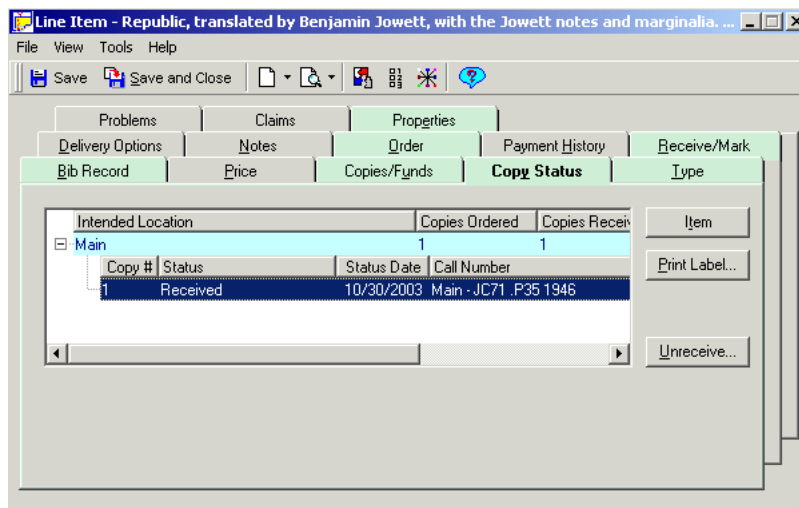
Result: The **Line Item** dialog box opens.

2. Click the **Copy Status** tab.

Result: The **Copy Status** tab opens.

The **Copy Status** tab uses a hierarchy (or tree structure) to present a consolidated view of the detailed information regarding the status of each ordered copy. Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy.

- The first level of the hierarchy displays the intended location, the number of copies ordered for the location, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
  - The second level of the hierarchy displays more specific information about each copy for a location. The following information is displayed for each copy: the copy number, the status of the copy, the date on which the status was applied, holdings information (if the items have been linked to an existing holdings record), item type (only applies after the copy has been received and if an item record has been created), and item ID (only applies after the copy has been received and if an item record has been created).
3. Click the copy (second level of the hierarchy) that is associated with the item record that you want to create/maintain ([Figure 10-5](#)) and then click the **Item** button.



---

**Figure 10-5. Line Item dialog box - Copy Status tab**

Result: The **New Item Record** dialog box opens.

**NOTE:**

An item record can only be created for a copy that has been received. Therefore, if you select a copy that has not been received, the **Item** button is not available.

4. The operator can now create the item record (or maintain an already created item record). Follow [Procedure 10-6, Creating/maintaining an item record](#).

Result: The item record is created (or maintained).



**Procedure 10-3. Creating/maintaining an item record from the Receive/Mark tab of a line item**

---

Use the following to create (or maintain) an item record from the **Receive/Mark** tab of a line item.

1. From a purchase order or invoice, highlight a line item in the line items section and then click the **Details...** button or select **Details** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Line Item** dialog box opens.

2. Click the **Receive/Mark** tab.

Result: The **Receive/Mark** tab opens.

The line item displays in a tree structure or hierarchy in the **Select Copies** box. Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. There are three levels in the hierarchy.

- The first level of the hierarchy displays the title of the item, the number of copies ordered, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The second level of the hierarchy displays the intended location(s) for the item, the call number, the number of copies order, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The third level of the hierarchy displays the individual copies for each location, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Approved), the date on which the status became active, the intended location for the copy, the item type and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, do not contain information until after the copy has been received and an item record has been created.)

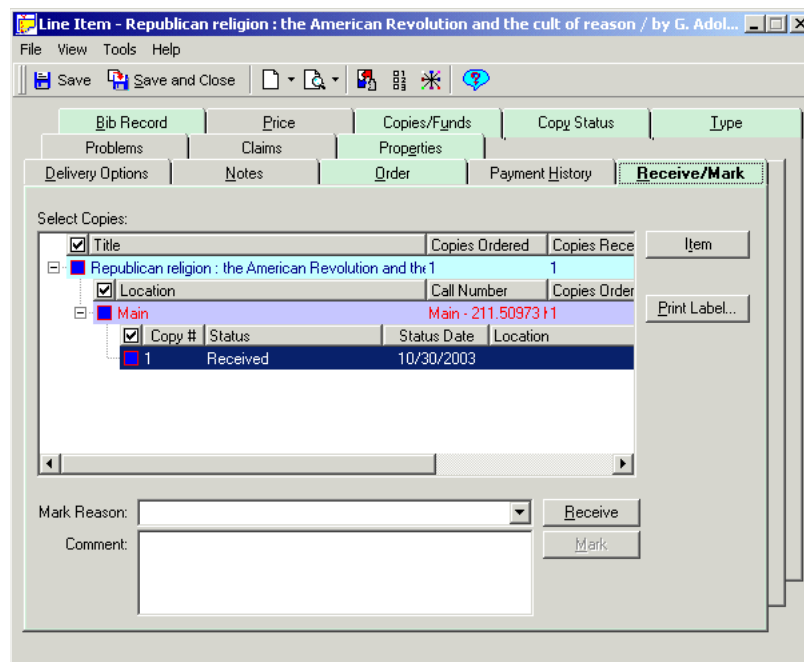
**NOTE:**

Using your Session Workflows, you can have the hierarchy in the **Select Copies** box automatically open to the second level (Location level) or third level (Copy level). See [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more information.

3. Each level of the hierarchy has a box beside it. These boxes are used to select the copies that you want to receive.
  - If you want to specify which copies to receive for each location, at the third level of the hierarchy click the box beside each copy that you want to receive.
  - If you want to receive all copies for a location, click the box beside the second level (the Location level) to select all the copies beneath that location.
  - If you want to select all copies for all locations, click the box beside the first level of the hierarchy.

To make it easier for you to see how many copies are currently selected to be received or marked, the boxes beside the levels of the hierarchy are either half-full (if only some of the copies are selected to be received or marked) or completely full (if all of the copies are selected to be received or marked).

4. After you have selected the copy or copies that you want to receive ([Figure 10-6](#)), click the **Receive** button.



**Figure 10-6. Line Item dialog box - Receive/Mark tab**

Result: An item record is automatically created if the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows. If the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the item record automatically displays when it is created.

- If you selected to receive more than one copy, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically open, even if you have selected the **Show Item Record on Create** check box in your Session Workflows. Rather, you receive the message: x item records automatically created, where x equals the appropriate amount. However, you can access an item record for an individual copy by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button.
- If the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is selected but the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is not selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the item record does not automatically open when it is created. You can access the item record by selecting the copy and then clicking the **Item** button that appears on the **Receive/Mark** dialog box.



- If the **Automatically create at Receive** check box is not selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, an item record is not automatically created. However, after a line item copy has been received, you can select the copy from the hierarchy and click the **Item** button.
5. The operator can now create the item record (or maintain an already created item record). Follow [Procedure 10-6, Creating/maintaining an item record](#).

Result: The item record is created (or maintained).

---

## Item Creation and Maintenance - Serial Items

---

Operators can create and maintain item records for serial items from various places in the Acquisitions module.

- **Serials Check-In** workspace, see [Procedure 10-4, Creating/maintaining an Item Record from the Serials Check-In Workspace](#), on page [10-12](#)
- **Receipt History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace, see [Procedure 10-5, Creating/maintaining an item record from the Receipt History tab of the Serials History Workspace](#), on page [10-17](#)
- In addition, after an item record has been created, it can be maintained from the **Receipt History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace

### NOTE:

For line items with components, item records cannot be created or maintained from an approved purchase order or invoice. Item creation and maintenance for such items must be performed through the Serials Check-In.

When receiving issues of a serial component from the **Serials Check-In** workspace, item records are automatically created if the **Create Items** check box is selected on the **Component Details** tab for the component. This check box can be selected when the component is created or while editing the component (for more information about selecting this check box when creating or editing a component, see [Table 8-1 describes the fields in the top section of the Subscription Maintenance workspace](#), on [page 8-3](#).)

You can also choose to have the item records automatically display when they are created by clicking the **Show Item Record on Create** check box in the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows. See [Item Creation Tab](#) on [page 19-10](#) for more information.



#### Procedure 10-4. Creating/maintaining an Item Record from the Serials Check-In Workspace

---

Use the following to create (or maintain) an item record from the **Serials Check-In** workspace when receiving an issue of a component.

1. From the **Serials Check-In** workspace, search for and display the title and component of the issue, a copy of which you want to create an item record.

Result: The component information populates the **Serials Check-In** workspace (see [Figure 10-7](#)).

---

Title	VendorCode	Components	Holdings	Call Number	Order Type
Journal of company law	EBSCO	4	Reference Dept	CL 123 .456	Continuation
Journal of conflict resolution	EBSCO	6	Periodicals Room	JX1901 .J6	Continuation
Journal of forensic neuropsych	EBSCO	4	Periodicals Room		Continuation

4 records.  
100% of records displayed.

Select the correct Order record:

Component Name: Journal of company law

Expected Issue: v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.) on 1/5/2004

Issue(s) in Hand:

- v. 1, no. 1 (2003 Jan.)
- v. 1, no. 2 (2003 Feb.)
- v. 1, no. 3 (2003 Mar.)
- v. 1, no. 4 (2003 Apr.)
- v. 1, no. 6 (2003 June)
- v. 1, no. 7 (2003 July)
- v. 1, no. 8 (2003 Aug.)

Buttons: View Order..., Accept..., Add Issue..., Change Issue..., Remove Issue(s), Quick Check-In, History, Note..., Maintenance, Start Over

---

**Figure 10-7. Serials Check-In workspace with a title displayed**

2. Select the issue(s) you want to receive from the **Issue(s) in Hand** field. To select more than one issue, hold down the **Ctrl** key on your keyboard while selecting the issues.
3. Click the **Accept** button. If the serial was previously claimed, a message displays in which case you would click **OK**.

Result: The **Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark** workspace opens (see [Figure 10-8](#)).

**Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark**

Title:

Component:

Select Copies to Receive or Mark:

Enumeration/Chronology	Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Invoiced
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> v. 8, no. 1 (2001 Jan-Mar)	1	0	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Location	Call Number	Copies Order	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Periodicals Room	Periodicals Room	1	

Mark Reason:

Comment:

**Figure 10-8. Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark workspace**

The title of the serial and the name of the component display in the **Title** and **Component** fields at the top of the screen. You can display the MARC bibliographic record by clicking the **ellipsis** button in the **Title** field. Bibliographic data can only be edited in the Cataloging module. MARC bibliographic and holding records can quickly and easily be opened in the Cataloging module from the Acquisitions module.

**NOTE:**

The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

It is useful to note that you can return to the previous **Check-In** screen at any point by clicking the **Back** button.

The issue you selected in the **Issue(s) in Hand** field displays in a tree structure or hierarchy in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** box in the center of the screen. Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. Each issue that you are receiving or marking has three levels in the hierarchy.

- The first level of the hierarchy displays the enumeration/chronology information of the issue, the number of copies ordered, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The second level of the hierarchy displays the intended location(s) for the issue, the call number, the number of copies order, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The third level of the hierarchy displays the individual copies for each location, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Received Partial), the time and date on which the status became active, the intended location for the copy, the item type and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, do not contain information until after the copy has been received and an item record has been created.)

**NOTE:**

Using your Session Workflows, you can have the hierarchy in the **Select Copies to Receive or Mark** box automatically open to the second level (Location level) or third level (Copy level). Choosing to expand the hierarchy to the Copy level might be more useful when checking in an issue because the Call Number can only be seen at the Copy level. Also, you can have all copies for all locations for the selected component automatically selected to be received. This can be done using the **Auto-select All Copies during Receive** check box on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows. See [Serials Check-In Tab](#) on [page 19-14](#) for more information.

4. Each level of the hierarchy has a box beside it. These boxes are used to select the copies that you want to receive. If you want to specify which copies to receive for each location, at the third level of the hierarchy click the box beside each copy that you want to receive. If you want to receive all copies for a location, click the box beside the second level (the Location level) to select all the copies beneath that location. Or, if you want to select all copies for all locations, click the box beside the first level of the hierarchy.

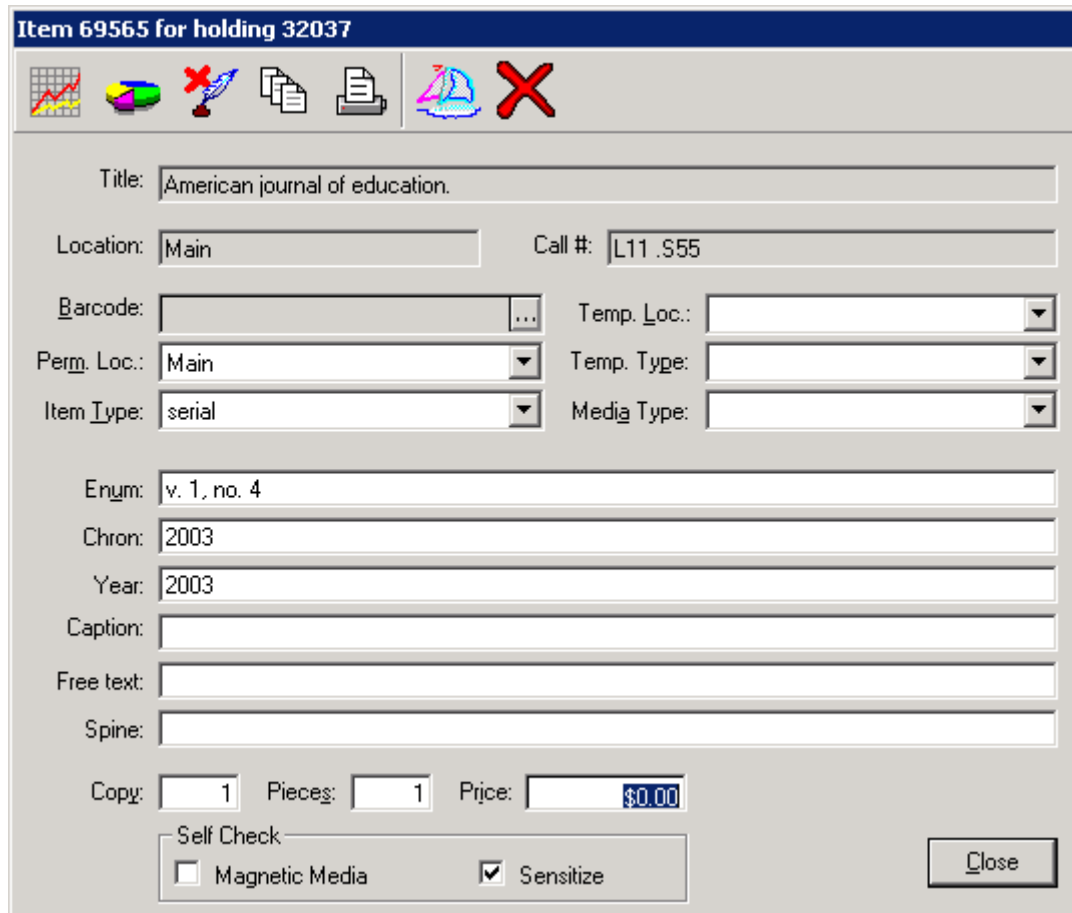
To make it easier for you to see how many copies have been received, or how many copies are currently selected to be received or marked, the boxes beside the levels of the hierarchy are either half-full (if only some of the copies have been received, or if only some of the copies are selected to be received or marked) or completely full (if all of the copies have been received, or if all of the copies are selected to be received or marked).

Figure 10-9. All levels of the hierarchy displaying

5. After you have selected the copy or copies that you want to receive, click the **Receive** button.

Result: An item record is automatically created if the **Create Items** check box is selected on the **Component Details** tab for the component (see [Procedure 8-1, Creating a subscription component](#) for more information.) If you checked the **Show Item Record on Create** check box on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the item record automatically opens.

- If you selected to receive more than one copy, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically display, even if you have checked the **Show Item Record on Create** check box in your Session Workflows. Rather, you receive the message: *x item records automatically created, where x equals the appropriate amount.* However, you can access an item record for an individual copy by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button.
- If the **Create Items** check box is selected on the **Component Details** tab for the component but the **Show Item Record on Create** check box is not selected in your Session Workflows, the item record is not automatically displayed when it is created. You can access the item record by selecting the copy from the hierarchy and then clicking the **Item** button that appears on the **Serials Check-In - Receiving/Marking** screen.
- If the **Create Items** check box is not selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, an item record is not automatically created. However, after a line item copy has been received, you can select the copy from the hierarchy and click the **Item** button to display the **New Item Record** dialog box ([Figure 10-10](#)) and to create an item record.



**Item 69565 for holding 32037**

Title: American journal of education.

Location: Main Call #: L11 .S55

Barcode: Temp. Loc.:  
Perm. Loc.: Main Temp. Type:  
Item Type: serial Media Type:

Enum: v. 1, no. 4  
Chron: 2003  
Year: 2003  
Caption:  
Free text:  
Spine:

Copy: 1 Pieces: 1 Price: \$0.00

Self Check:  
☐ Magnetic Media ☒ Sensitize

Close

**Figure 10-10. New Item Record dialog box**

6. The operator can now create an item record (or maintain an already existing item record). See [Creating/maintaining an item record](#) on [page 10-19](#).

Result: The item record is created (or maintained).



**IMPORTANT:**

For information on predictive and non-predictive publication patterns and the item record see [Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-33](#) and [Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-33](#).



### Procedure 10-5. Creating/maintaining an item record from the Receipt History tab of the Serials History Workspace

Use the following to create (or maintain) an item record from the **Receipt History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace after an issue has been received.

1. From the **Serials History** workspace, search for and display the title and component of the issue, a copy of which you want to create an item record. See [Searching for Serial Item Information](#) on [page 2-98](#).

Result: The **Serials History** workspace displays the history details (see [Figure 10-11](#)).

**Serials History - Details**

Title: American journal of education. ...

Component Name: American journal of education. Maintenance

Location: Main Holdings...

Call Number: L11 .S55

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapsed
+ v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 2 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 1 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No

Edit Issue... Collapse Display in OPAC Unreceive Item...

Start Over

Figure 10-11. Serials History workspace

The **Title** field at the top of the screen displays the title of the serial. You can click the **ellipsis** button in the **Title** field to display the MARC Bibliographic record. Bibliographic data can only be edited in the Cataloging module. MARC bibliographic and holding records can quickly and easily be opened in the Cataloging module from the Acquisitions module.

**NOTE:**

The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

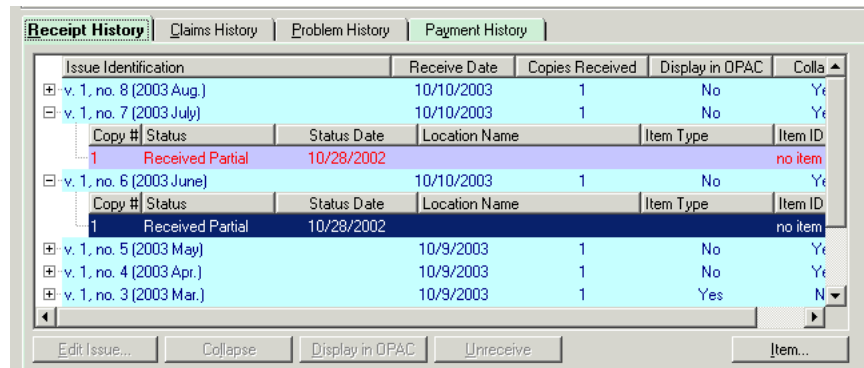
2. Click the **Receipt History** tab.

Result: The **Receipt History** tab displays information about issues that have been received.

If you've clicked the plus (+) sign next to the issue, for each issue

- The first level of the hierarchy displays the enumeration/chronology, the date on which the issue was received, the number of copies received, whether or not the issue is displayed in OPAC, and whether or not the issue has been collapsed to the MARC Holdings record.
  - The second level of the hierarchy displays information about the individual copies of the issue, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Received Partial), the date on which the status was applied, the intended location for the copy, the item type and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, contain information only if an item record has been created.)
3. To create an item record for a copy, in the second level of the hierarchy select the copy of the issue for which you want to create an item record and click the **Item** button (see [Figure 10-12](#)).





**Figure 10-12. Receipt History tab with an issue selected**

Result: The **New Item Record** dialog box opens.

To maintain an item record that has previously been created for a copy, in the second level of the hierarchy select the copy of the issue associated with the item record that you want to maintain and click the **Item** button.

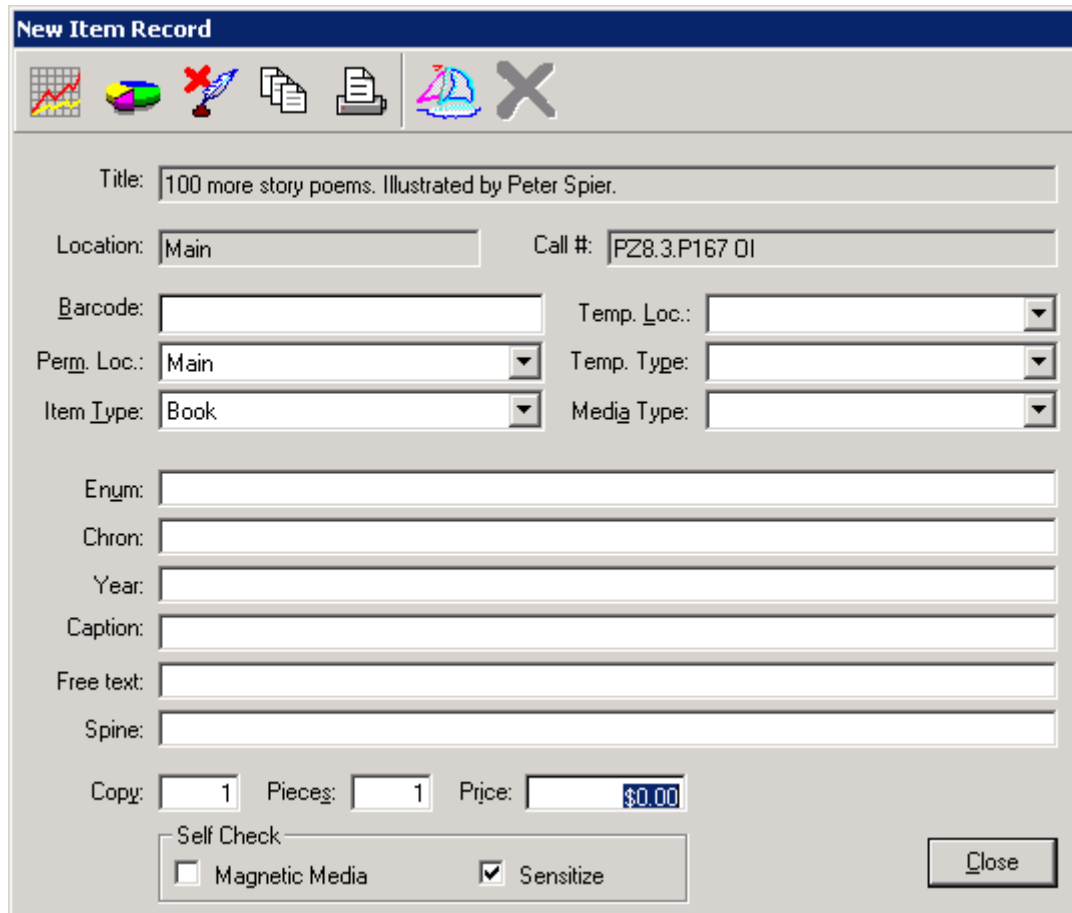
Result: The Item record opens. The operator can now create (or maintain) the item record. See [Procedure 10-6, Creating/maintaining an item record](#).



#### **Procedure 10-6. Creating/maintaining an item record**

Use the following to create or maintain an item record.

1. From the **New Item Record** dialog box ([Figure 10-13](#)), create an item record. Or from the **Item Record** dialog box ([Figure 10-14](#)), edit an item record.



The dialog box is titled "New Item Record". It features a toolbar with icons for a grid, a pie chart, a red X, a document, a printer, a sailboat, and a large X. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Title:** A text field containing "100 more story poems. Illustrated by Peter Spier."
- Location:** A text field containing "Main".
- Call #:** A text field containing "PZ8.3.P167 OI".
- Barcode:** An empty text field.
- Temp. Loc.:** A dropdown menu.
- Perm. Loc.:** A dropdown menu containing "Main".
- Temp. Type:** A dropdown menu.
- Item Type:** A dropdown menu containing "Book".
- Media Type:** A dropdown menu.
- Enum:** An empty text field.
- Chron:** An empty text field.
- Year:** An empty text field.
- Caption:** An empty text field.
- Free text:** An empty text field.
- Spine:** An empty text field.
- Copy:** A text field containing "1".
- Pieces:** A text field containing "1".
- Price:** A text field containing "\$0.00".
- Self Check:** A section containing two checkboxes:
  - ☐ Magnetic Media
  - ☒ Sensitize
- Close:** A button in the bottom right corner.

Figure 10-13. New Item Record dialog box

**NOTE:**

In [Figure 10-14](#) the title bar for an already created item record lists the Item ID and the associated Holding ID.

**Item 69565 for holding 32037**

Title: American journal of education.

Location: Main Call #: L11 .S55

Barcode: ... Temp. Loc.: [dropdown]

Perm. Loc.: Main Temp. Type: [dropdown]

Item Type: serial Media Type: [dropdown]

Enym: v. 1, no. 4

Chron: 2003

Year: 2003

Caption:

Free text:

Spine:

Copy: 1 Pieces: 1 Price: \$0.00

Self Check:

☐ Magnetic Media ☒ Sensitize

Close

**Figure 10-14. Item Record dialog box (item already created)**

The **Title** and **Location** that display at the top of the item record are taken from the linked MARC Holding record, and are not editable through Acquisitions. The **Call #** field at the top of the item record cannot be edited through Acquisitions.

**NOTE:**

The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

2. The **Barcodes** dialog box opens when you click the **ellipsis** in the **Barcode** field. Enter a barcode and click the **Save** button. Click the **Close** button to exit the **Barcodes** dialog box.

Result: The barcode then displays in the **Barcode** field on the Item record.

**NOTE:**

If you checked the **Check for Duplicate Item Barcodes** check box on the **Item Creation** tab in your Session Workflows, a warning message displays if the barcode you have chosen is currently associated with another item.

3. The **Perm. Loc.** field initially defaults to the location on the linked MARC Holding record. You can change the permanent location by selecting a location from the drop-down list in the **Perm. Loc.** field. The location that you select overrides the linked MARC Holding record location that is fixed at the top of the item record, and displays as the item location in OPAC, Circulation, and Cataloging.
4. The **Item Type** field initially displays the default item type for the location defined in System Administration. If there is no default item type for the location defined in System Administration, the **Item Type** field on the item record defaults to the first item type alphabetically in the list. You can change the item type by choosing from the drop-down list in the **Item Type** field.
5. You can select a temporary location for the item from the drop-down list in the **Temp. Loc.** field. A temporary location overrides the permanent location and display in OPAC, Circulation, and Cataloging.
6. You can select a temporary item type for the item from the drop-down list in the **Temp. Type** field.
7. You can select a media type (if appropriate) for the item from the drop-down list in the **Media Type** field.
8. Enter the item's enumeration in the **Enum** field. This field remains editable. See [Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-31](#) and [Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-33](#) for more information about this field's display for serial issues.

9. Enter the item's chronology in the **Chron** field. This field remains editable. See [Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-31](#) and [Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-33](#) for more information about this field's display for serial issues.
10. Enter the year of publication in the **Year** field. This field remains editable. See [Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-31](#) and [Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display](#) on [page 10-33](#) for more information about this field's display for serial issues.
11. The **Caption** field may contain item piece identification taken from the purchase order line item. This field remains editable.
12. Enter any additional information in the **Free Text** field.
13. Enter any additional item information to appear on the spine label in the **Spine** field.
14. If the item record is being created for the first copy of an item or issue, the **First Copy Numbered As** option on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows determines whether 0 or 1 displays in the **Copy** field (see [Item Creation Tab](#) on [page 19-10](#) for more information.)

If the item record is being created for a subsequent copy of an item, the number displayed in the **Copy** field is determined by the copy number on the previous item record. For example, if 1 displays in the **Copy** field on the previous item record, 2 displays in the **Copy** field on the current item record. If 0 displays in the **Copy** field on the previous item record, 0 displays in the **Copy** field on the current item record.

You can manually alter the number in the **Copy** field.

15. The item record may have more than one piece associated with it. For example, a book may come with a cassette or cd-rom. Enter the number of pieces that go with the item in the **Pieces** field.
16. If the **Use list price from the order line item** check box is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, the list price from the purchase order line item automatically displays in the **Price** field. If the **Use list price from the order line item** check box is not selected on, you can manually enter the price or leave the price blank.
17. Click the Magnetic Media and/or Sensitize check boxes per your item record requirements for self-check processing. The default settings for these check boxes are identified in Workflows. See [Self Check](#) on [page 19-13](#) for more information.

18. Click the **Item Status** button ([Figure 10-15](#)) to open the **Item Status** dialog box.



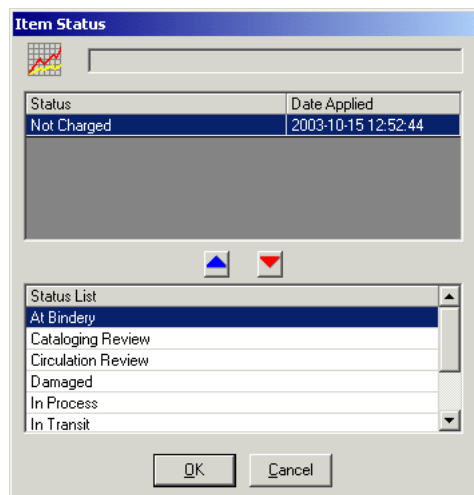

---

**Figure 10-15. Item Status button**

**NOTE:**

If a default item status is selected on the **Item Creation** tab of your Session Workflows, it displays as applied in the **Item Status** dialog box when accessed (see [Figure 10-16](#)).

---




---

**Figure 10-16. Item Status dialog box**

There are two areas displayed on the **Item Status** dialog box.

- The Status section which contains the status(es) that are applied to the item
- The Status List section which contains the available item statuses

19. To:

- a. apply an item status, select the status from the Status List section and click the **up arrow** button. This moves the status into the Status section on the upper half of the dialog box. The Status section lists the status name and the date on which the status was applied.
- b. remove a status, select the status in the Status section and click the **down arrow** button.
- c. save the changes you have made and close the **Item Status** dialog box, click the **OK** button.
- d. close the **Item Status** dialog box without saving your changes, click the **Cancel** button.

**NOTE:**

A status is displayed in OPAC only if all of the other statuses currently applied to the item are below it in rank. For a complete list of possible item statuses and their ranks, see the *Voyager Cataloging User's Guide*.

20. Click the **Item Statistical Category** button ([Figure 10-17](#)) to open the **Item Statistical Categories** dialog box (see [Figure 10-18](#)). Sites can define types of item characteristics that are not needed for Cataloging but are useful for statistical compilations.

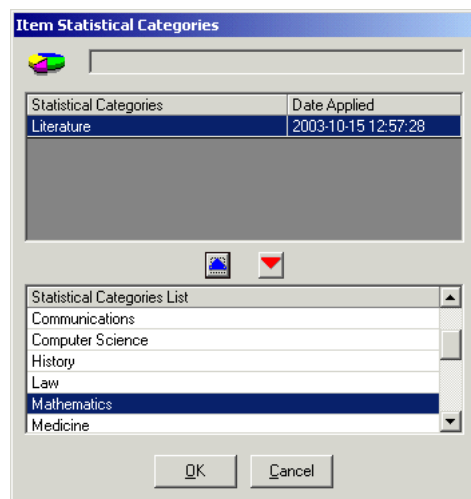


---

**Figure 10-17. Item Statistical Category button**

**NOTE:**

Item Statistical Categories are created in the System Administration module. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.



---

**Figure 10-18. Item Statistical Categories dialog box**

There are two areas displayed for category information.

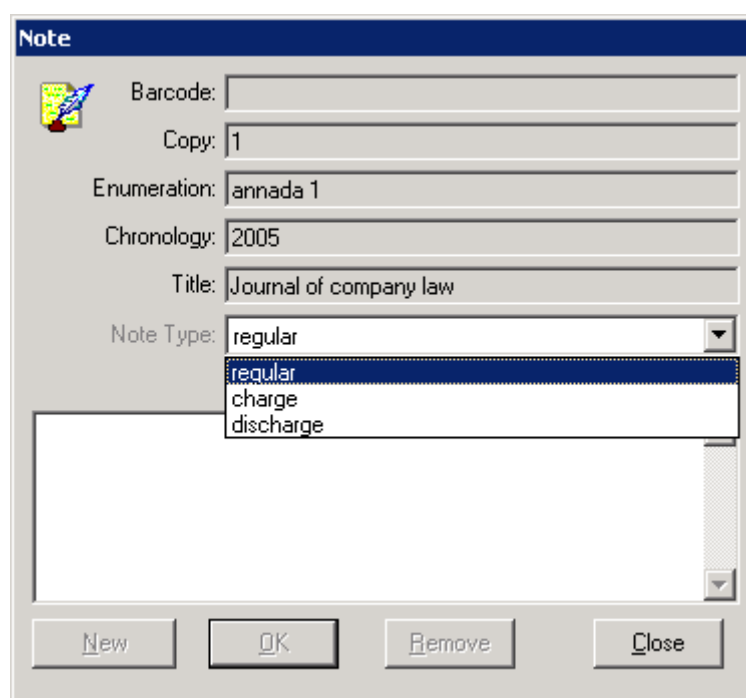
- The Statistical Category section which contains the categories currently applied to the item
- The Statistical Categories List section which contains the available categories

21. To
  - a. apply a statistical category, select the category from the Statistical Categories List section and click the **up arrow** button. This moves the category into the Statistical Categories section on the upper half of the dialog box. The Statistical Categories section lists the category name and the date on which the category was applied.
  - b. remove a status, select the status in the Statistical Categories section and click the **down arrow** button.
  - c. save the changes you have made and close the **Item Statistical Categories** dialog box, click the **OK** button.
  - d. close the **Item Statistical Categories** dialog box without saving your changes, click the **Cancel** button.
22. Click the **Item Note** button ([Figure 10-19](#)) to open the **Note** dialog box ([Figure 10-20](#)).





**Figure 10-19. Item Note Button**



The screenshot shows a 'Note' dialog box with the following fields and controls:

- Barcode:** An empty text input field.
- Copy:** A text input field containing the value '1'.
- Enumeration:** A text input field containing the value 'annada 1'.
- Chronology:** A text input field containing the value '2005'.
- Title:** A text input field containing the value 'Journal of company law'.
- Note Type:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'regular'. The dropdown list is open, showing three options: 'regular' (highlighted), 'charge', and 'discharge'.
- Buttons:** At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: 'New', 'OK', 'Remove', and 'Close'.

**Figure 10-20. Note Dialog Box**

You may create, edit, and delete the following types of notes:

- Regular
- Charge
- Discharge

The charge/discharge notes display for the circulation clerk when the item is being charged or discharged.

To create a new note:

- a. Click **New**.
- b. Select a Note Type.
- c. Enter the note content.
- d. Click **OK**.

To delete a note:

- a. Select the note to be deleted (if there is more than one type stored).
- b. Click **Remove**.

23. Click the **Item History** button ([Figure 10-21](#)) to open the **Record History** dialog box.



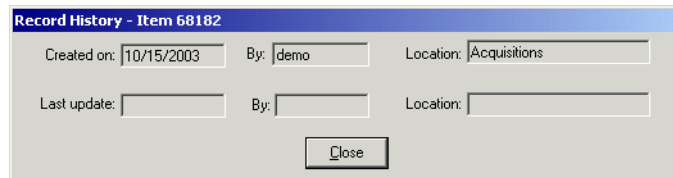
---

**Figure 10-21. Item History Button**

Result: The **Record History** dialog box ([Figure 10-22](#)) displays the following information.

- The date on which the item record was created
- The Operator who created the item record
- The location at which the item record was created
- The date on which the item record was last updated
- The Operator who last updated the item record
- The location at which the item record was last updated

---



A screenshot of a Windows-style dialog box titled "Record History - Item 68182". The dialog box has a light gray background and a blue title bar. It contains two rows of input fields. The first row has "Created on:" followed by a text box containing "10/15/2003", "By:" followed by a text box containing "demo", and "Location:" followed by a text box containing "Acquisitions". The second row has "Last update:" followed by an empty text box, "By:" followed by an empty text box, and "Location:" followed by an empty text box. At the bottom center of the dialog box is a button labeled "Close".

---

**Figure 10-22. Record History - Item dialog box**

24. To print a label for the item, click the **Print Label** button (see [Figure 10-23](#)).



---

**Figure 10-23. Print Label Button**

25. You must then save the item record to the database. Click the **Save** button ([Figure 10-24](#)) to save the item record.



---

**Figure 10-24. Save Button**

Result: The message `Item successfully updated` displays.

26. Click the **Close** button to close the item record

Result: The item is created/updated, and the message `Item successfully updated` displays.

---

## Deleting an Item Record

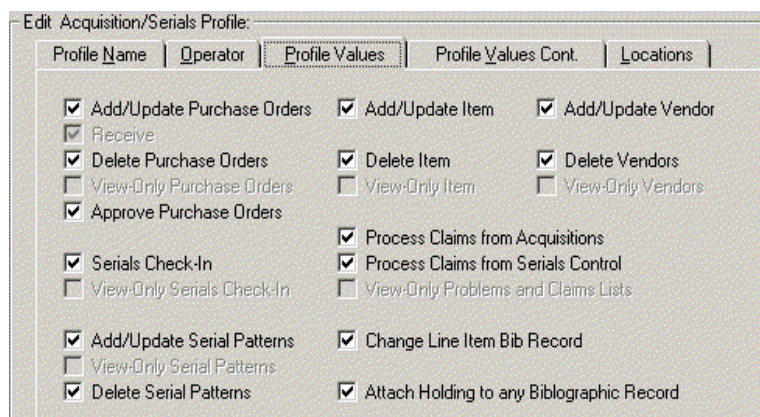
---

Operators may delete item records in the Acquisitions module.

### Security for Deleting Item Records

---

To be authorized to create or edit an item record, the **Delete Item** check box ([Figure 10-25](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values** tab of the Acquisitions/Serials Profile to which an operator belongs. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile:		
Profile Name	Operator	Profile Values
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Vendor
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Purchase Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Vendors
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Item	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Vendors
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Purchase Orders		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Acquisitions	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serials Check-In	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Process Claims from Serials Control	
	<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Problems and Claims Lists	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Line Item Bib Record	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Serial Patterns		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Serial Patterns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Attach Holding to any Bibliographic Record	

---

**Figure 10-25. Profile Values tab**



### Procedure 10-7. Deleting an Item Record

---

Use the following to delete an item record.

1. Open the item record that you want to delete. Access the item record from:
  - the **Receive/Mark** dialog box
  - the **Copy Status** tab of a line item
  - the **Receive/Mark** tab of a line item
2. After the item record opens, click the **Delete** button ([Figure 10-26](#)) to delete the item record.



---

**Figure 10-26. Delete Button**

Result: The confirmation message `Are you sure you want to delete Item # x for holding # x?` displays, where `x` equals the appropriate item record number and holding record number.

3. Click **Yes** to continue with the deletion. To cancel the deletion, click **No**.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the item record is deleted.

---

### **Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display**

---

#### **Enumeration**

If the publication pattern uses an alternate enumeration in addition to the standard enumeration and uses a chronology, everything before the second left parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Enum** field on the item record, where the alternate enumeration displays in parenthesis. For example, if the enum/chron string were

`v.1 n.1 (issue 1) (Dec. 1998) Special Issue`

`v.1 n.1 (issue 1)` would display in the **Enum** field on the item record. If the publication pattern does not use an alternative enumeration in addition to the standard enumeration and does use a chronology, everything before the first left parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Enum** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

`v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998) Special Issue`

only `v.1 n.1` would display in the **Enum** field on the item record. If the publication pattern does use an alternate enumeration in addition to the standard enumeration but does not use a chronology, the entire enum/chron string displays in the **Enum** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

`v.1 n.1 (issue 1)`

v.1 n.1 (issue 1) would display in the **Enum** field on the item record. Likewise, if the publication pattern does not use an alternate enumeration in addition to the standard enumeration and does not use a chronology, the entire enum/chron string displays in the **Enum** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1

v.1 n.1 would display in the **Enum** field on the item record.

## Chronology

If the publication pattern uses an alternate enumeration in addition to the standard enumeration and uses a chronology, everything between the second left parenthesis and the last right parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Chron** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 (issue 1) (Dec. 1998) Special Issue

Dec. 1998 would display in the **Chron** field on the item record. If the enum/chron string also contained an alternate chronology,

v.1 n.1 (issue 1) (Dec. 1998) (Dic.) Special Issue

Dec. 1998 (Dic.) would display in the **Chron** field on the item record, where the alternate chronology would display in parenthesis. If the publication pattern does not use an alternate enumeration in addition to the standard enumeration but does use a chronology, everything between the first left parenthesis and the last right parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Chron** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998)

Dec. 1998 would display in the **Chron** field on the item record. If the enum/chron string also contained an alternate chronology,

v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998) (Dic.)

Dec. 1998 (Dic.) would display in the **Chron** field on the item record, where the alternate chronology would display in parenthesis. If the publication pattern does not use an enumeration but does use a chronology, everything between the first left parenthesis and the last right parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Chron** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

(Dec. 1998)

Dec. 1998 would display in the **Chron** field on the item record. If the enum/chron string also contained an alternate chronology,

(Dec. 1998) (Dic.)

Dec. 1998 (Dic.) would display in the **Chron** field on the item record, where the alternate chronology would be in parenthesis. If the publication pattern does not use any chronology, nothing displays in the **Chron** field on the item record.

### Year

If the publication pattern uses a chronology and has four consecutive digits in its chronology, these four digits display in the **Year** field on the item record. In this case, the year would be displayed in both the **Enum** field and the **Year** field on the item record. If four consecutive digits are not found in the chronology of the publication pattern, Voyager checks the component's prediction tables to determine if a year was at any time associated with the publication pattern. If a year is found, it displays in the **Year** field on the item record.

#### NOTE:

If the received issue was inserted into the predictive publication pattern, a year does not display in the **Year** field on the item record.

### Caption

Everything after the last right parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Caption** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998) (Dic.) Special Issue

Special Issue would display in the **Caption** field on the item record. If there are no parenthesis in the enum/chron string, nothing displays in the **Caption** field on the item record.

The **Enum**, **Chron**, **Year**, and **Caption** fields all remain editable on the item record. However, once the item record is created, changes to the enum/chron of the issue have no effect on the item record. Likewise, changes to the enum/chron of the item record have no effect on the issue.

### Non-Predictive Publication Pattern Item Record Field Display

---

#### Enumeration

If there are any parenthesis in the enum/chron string, everything before the first left parenthesis displays in the **Enum** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998) Premier

only v.1 n.1 would display in the **Enum** field on the item record. If there are no parenthesis in the enum/chron string, all of the information in the enum/chron string displays in the **Enum** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 Dec. 1998 Premier

this entire string would display in the **Enum** field on the item record.

### Chronology

Everything between the first left parenthesis and the last right parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Chron** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998) (Dic.) Special

the first set of parenthesis would be stripped away and Dec. 1998 (Dic.) would display in the **Chron** field on the item record. If there are no parenthesis in the enum/chron string, no information displays in the **Chron** field on the item record.

### Year

If Voyager finds four consecutive digits between the first left parenthesis and the last right parenthesis of the enum/chron string, these four digits display in the **Year** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998) (Dic.) Special

the four consecutive digits 1998 between the first left parenthesis and the last right parenthesis would display in the **Year** field on the item record. In this case, the year would be displayed in both the **Chron** field and the **Year** field on the item record. If there are no parenthesis in the enum/chron string, nothing displays in the **Year** field on the item record.

### Caption

Everything after the last right parenthesis of the enum/chron string displays in the **Caption** field on the item record. For example, if the enum/chron string were

v.1 n.1 (Dec. 1998) (Dic.) Special Issue

Special Issue would display in the **Caption** field on the item record. If there are no parenthesis in the enum/chron string, nothing displays in the **Caption** field on the item record.



<b>Introduction</b>	<b>11-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>11-1</b>
• Security for Processing Marked Items and Issues	11-2
<b>Marking by an Operator</b>	<b>11-3</b>
<b>Marking by the System</b>	<b>11-4</b>
• System Cancel for Monographic Line Items Only	11-4
• System Claim for Monograph Line Item Copies	11-6
• System Claim for Serial Issues	11-6
<b>Explanation of Override Claim Date</b>	<b>11-8</b>
• Override Claim Date for Monographic Items	11-8
• Override Claim Date for Serial Issues	11-10
<b>Overview of Processing Marks and Claims</b>	<b>11-10</b>
<b>Problems Workspace</b>	<b>11-16</b>
• Marked Line Items Tab	11-17
• Marked Issues Tab	11-19
<b>Claims Workspace</b>	<b>11-20</b>
• Claimed Line Items tab	11-21
• Claimed Issues tab	11-23
<b>Buttons on the Tabs in the Problems and Claims Workspaces</b>	<b>11-25</b>
• Searching for Marked and Claimed Items	11-27

<b>Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices</b>	<b>11-27</b>
<b>Unmarking a Line Item Copy or Serial Issue</b>	<b>11-29</b>
<b>Generating a Claim</b>	<b>11-31</b>
<b>Updating a Claim</b>	<b>11-34</b>
<b>Canceling a Claim</b>	<b>11-36</b>
<b>Generating a Cancel</b>	<b>11-39</b>
<b>Generating a Return</b>	<b>11-41</b>
<b>Using the Order, Invoice, and Print Buttons</b>	<b>11-43</b>
• Viewing a Purchase Order from the Problems or Claims Workspaces	11-43
• Viewing an Invoice from the Problems or Claims Workspaces	11-45
• The Print button	11-46

### Introduction

---

In the **Problems** workspace operators can search for monograph line item copies and serial issues that have been manually marked by an Acquisitions operator or automatically marked by the system. Once marked line item copies or marked serial issues are retrieved certain functions can be performed for them, depending upon their mark reasons.

In the **Claims** workspace operators search for claims that have been generated for monograph line item copies and serial issues from the **Problems** workspace. Once claimed monograph line item copies and serial issues are retrieved, operators can update claims with responses from the vendor or, if necessary, generate additional claims. In addition you can cancel a claim for a serial issue only from the **Claimed Issues** tab.

In addition to these workspaces processing marks and claims can be done in various other places from within the Acquisitions module.

### Purpose of this Chapter

---

This chapter discusses:

- Marking by an operator and the functions available for a specific mark reason
- Marking by the system

- System cancel for monographic line items
- System claims for monographic line items and serial issues
- Override claim date
- Overview of processing marks and claims
- **Problems** workspace
- **Claims** workspace
- Processing marked and claimed items from an approved PO and invoice
- Unmarking a line item copy or serial issue
- Generating a claim
- Updating a claim
- Canceling a claim
- Generating a cancel
- Generating a return
- The **Order**, **Invoice**, and **Print** buttons

### **Security for Processing Marked Items and Issues**

---

There are two check boxes that authorize processing of claimed line items and issues.

If the **Process Claims from Acquisitions** check box on the **Profile Values** tab of your Acquisitions/Serials Profile is selected, this operator may process:

- marked line item copies on the **Marked Line Items** tab of the **Problems** workspace
- claimed line item copies on the **Claimed Line Items** tab **Claims** workspace
- marked and claimed line item copies from an approved purchase order and invoice
- marked line item copies on the **Problems** tab
- marked line item copies on the **Claims** tab

If the **Process Claims from Serials Control** check box on the **Profile Values** tab of your Acquisitions/Serials Profile is selected, this operator may process:

- marked serial issues on the **Marked Issues Items** tab of the **Problems** workspace
- claimed serial issues on the **Claimed Issues Items** tab **Claims** workspace

- marked and claimed serial issues from an approved purchase order and invoice
- marked issues on the **Problem History** tab
- marked issues on the **Claims History** tab

In addition, if the **View-Only Problems and Claims Lists** check box is selected on the **Profile Values** tab of your **Acquisitions/Serials Profile**, the operator can view mark and claim information, but the various function buttons, Unmark, Generate Claim, Generate Cancel, and Generate Return functions are not available. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

## Marking by an Operator

When an Acquisitions operator encounters a monograph line item copy or serial issue that is not satisfactory or that requires further investigation, the operator can manually mark the copy or issue with an appropriate mark reason. After the copy or issue has been marked, it appears on the **Problems** workspace where further action can be taken.

How a marked line item copy or serial issue can be processed from the **Problems** workspace depends upon the mark reason that has been assigned. [Table 11-1](#) lists the available functions for each mark reason.

**Table 11-1. Functions Available for Mark Reasons**

Mark Reason	Available Functions for Marked Line Item Copies	Available Functions for Marked Serial Issues
Claim	Unmark Generate Claim	Unmark Generate Claim
Cancel	Unmark Generate Cancel	N/A
Return	Unmark Generate Return	N/A
System Claim	Unmark Generate Claim	Unmark Generate Claim
System Cancel	Unmark Generate Cancel	N/A
User-Defined Mark Reasons	Unmark	Unmark

Operators can manually mark line item copies and serial issues from numerous locations within the Acquisitions module. For information about marking monograph items, see [Receiving and Marking Your Monograph Items](#) on [page 7-1](#). For information about marking serial issues, see [Checking In Serials](#) on [page 9-4](#).

The following three system-defined mark reasons are always available for marking monograph line item copies: Claim, Cancel and Return. One system-defined mark reason is always available for marking serial issues: Claim.

Using the Mark Reason Definitions activity in the System Administration module, your institution may create additional mark reasons (for example, Damaged or Received in error; for more information about creating mark reasons, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.)

## Marking by the System

---

In addition to items displaying on the **Problems** workspace due to marking by an operator, monograph line item copies and serial issues automatically marked by the system with the mark reason of System Cancel or System Claim also display on the **Problems** workspace.

In order for the system to perform such marking, the Acquisitions batch job # 1 must be run (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* and the *Voyager Technical User's Guide* for more information about running this batch job.) The methods used by the Acquisitions batch job # 1 to mark line item copies and serial issues with the System Cancel or System Claim mark reason are explained as follows.

### NOTE:

Acqjob 1 is a batch job that should be run daily. This job is added to a cron as part of the installation process.

## System Cancel for Monographic Line Items Only

---

The System Cancel mark reason is only applied to *monograph* line item copies, not serial issues. In order for the System Cancel mark reason to be applied to a *monograph* line item copy (a line item without a component), the following criteria must be met:

- The copy must have a copy status of Approved or Claimed
- The copy must be listed on a purchase order that has a status of Approved/Sent, Received Partial or Received Complete
- The copy must not already be marked with System Cancel

For a monograph line item copy that meets the above criteria, when the Acquisitions batch job # 1 is run, the system makes two checks to determine whether the line item copy should be marked System Cancel.

The system first looks at the **Not Needed After date** for the purchase order on which the line item copy is listed (the **Not Needed After date** field is located on the **Footer** tab of the purchase order, see [Footer Tab](#) on [page 6-7](#) for more information.) If a **Not Needed After date** has been specified, and if the date has been surpassed, the line item copy is marked with System Cancel. The line item copy can then be retrieved on the **Problems** workspace, where a cancellation notice can be generated.

If a **Not Needed After date** has not been specified for the purchase order on which the line item copy is listed, the system then looks at the **Cancel After days** interval at the following locations and in the following hierarchy.

- **Delivery Options** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 6-70](#))
- **Footer** tab of the purchase order on which the line item is listed (see [Footer Tab](#) on [page 6-7](#))
- **Delivery Options** tab of the vendor record for the vendor used on the purchase order (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#))
- **Vendor Policies** tab of the **Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions** workspace in the System Administration module

The system adds the Cancel After days interval that it finds at the earliest level in the hierarchy to the date on which the line item copy was first assigned the status of Approved (if the system does not find a Cancel After days interval in any of the above locations, the line item copy is not marked with System Cancel and an error message is written to the `acqjob.log` file, located in the `/ml/voyager/xxxdb/rpt` directory.)

**NOTE:**

The Approved status is first assigned to a line item copy when the purchase order is approved. It is necessary for the system to look for the date on which the Approved status was first assigned because, whenever a received copy is unreceived, the copy is re-assigned the Approved status. Therefore, a copy may be assigned the Approved status multiple times. For more information about unreceiving a monograph copy, see [Unreceiving a monographic item](#) on [page 7-13](#).

If the resulting date has been surpassed, the line item copy is marked with a mark reason of System Cancel. The line item copy can then be retrieved on the **Problems** workspace, where a cancellation notice can be generated (see [Generating a Cancel](#) on [page 11-39](#).)

### **System Claim for Monograph Line Item Copies**

---

In order for the System Claim mark reason to be applied to a monograph line item copy (a line item without a component), the following criteria must be met.

- The copy must have a copy status of Approved or Claimed (the copy acquires a copy status of approved when the purchase order on which the line item is listed is approved; the copy acquires a status of Claimed when a claim is generated for the copy)
- The copy must be listed on a purchase order that has a status of Approved/Sent, Received Partial, or Received Complete
- The copy must not already be marked with System Cancel or System Claim

For a monograph line item copy that meets the above criteria, when the Acquisitions batch job # 1 is run, the system uses the following method to determine whether the line item copy should be marked System Claim.

1. The system first determines if the line item copy has been previously claimed.
2. If it has, the system checks the most recent claim for an override Claim Date. See [Explanation of Override Claim Date](#) on [page 11-8](#).

**NOTE:**

Acqjob 1 is a batch job that should be run daily. This job is added to a cron as part of the installation process.

### **System Claim for Serial Issues**

---

In order for the System Claim mark reason to be applied to an issue of a serial component, the following criteria must be met.

- The purchase order on which the serial is listed must have a status of Pending, Approved/Sent, Received Partial or Received Complete
- At least one issue must already have been received

For an issue that meets the above criteria, when the Acquisitions batch job # 1 is run, the system uses the following method to determine whether the issue should be marked System Claim.

1. The system first determines whether the issue has been received. If the issue has been received, the issue is not marked with System Claim.



2. If the issue has not been received, the system then determines whether a **Don't Claim** option is set for the issue or for the component. If the Don't Claim option is set for either the issue or the component, the issue is not marked with System Claim.
3. If a Don't Claim interval is not set for either the issue or the component, and if the issue has never before been marked with System Claim, the system adds the **Claim Interval** on the **Component Details** tab of the serial component (see [Table 8-1 describes the fields in the top section of the Subscription Maintenance workspace](#), on [page 8-3](#)) to the expected date of the issue. If the resulting date has been surpassed, the issue is marked with a mark reason of System Claim for the first time. The serial issue can then be retrieved on the **Problems** workspace, where a claim can be generated (see [Generating a Claim](#) on [page 11-31](#).)
4. If a Don't Claim interval is not set for either the issue or the component, and if the issue has previously been marked with System Claim, the system looks for a **Claim Interval** at the following locations and in the following hierarchy:

**NOTE:**

The Claim Interval at the component level does not come into play if the issue has previously been marked with System Claim. The Claim Interval at the component level is only used to calculate the date on which the issue is marked with System Claim for the first time.

- a. **Delivery Options** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 6-70](#))
- b. **Footer** tab of the purchase order on which the serial line item is listed (see [Footer Tab](#) on [page 6-7](#))
- c. **Delivery Options** tab of the vendor record for the vendor used on the purchase order (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#))
- d. **Vendor Policies** tab of the **Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions** workspace in the System Administration module (see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.)

The system adds the Claim Interval that it finds at the earliest level in the hierarchy to the expected date of the issue (if the system does not find a Claim Interval at any of the above levels, the issue is not marked with System Claim and an error message is written to `acqjob.log` file located in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/rpt` directory.)

If the resulting date has been surpassed, the issue is marked with a mark reason of System Claim. The serial issue can then be retrieved on the **Problems** workspace, where a claim can be generated (see [Generating a Claim](#) on [page 11-31](#).)

5. A serial issue is also marked with System Claim due to a surpassed override Claim Date. See [Explanation of Override Claim Date](#) on [page 11-8](#).

## **Explanation of Override Claim Date**

---

The override Claim Date is set when an already existing claim for the line item copy or serial issue is updated. When a claim response is received from the vendor, an operator can choose to update the claim. When the claim is updated, an override Claim Date is specified (in the **Claim Date** field on the **Update Claim** dialog box).

The purpose of the override Claim Date is to extend or shorten the established Claim Interval for the item. Normally, when the Acquisitions batch job # 1 is run, the system uses the item's established claim interval to determine when the item should be marked with System Claim and sent to the **Problems** workspace. But if an override Claim Date is set for the item, the system ignores the established claim interval and marks the item with System Claim only when the override Claim Date is surpassed. Therefore, the override Claim Date helps regulate the generation of additional claims for an item after the vendor has communicated with you about the item. For more information about updating a claim and setting an override Claim Date, see [Updating a Claim](#) on [page 11-34](#).

For example, assume that the claim interval for an item is 30 days. The item is expected to be received on January 1, 2000. Thirty days after this date, the system generates the first claim. Two weeks later, the vendor sends a response notifying you that the item is not shipped until January 1, 2001. By updating the claim and designating an override Claim Date, you are overriding the 30 day claim interval, which would normally make that item display with a new System Claim mark on the purchase order every 30 days. The system eventually marks the item with System Claim and display it on purchase order when the override Claim Date is surpassed, but the override Claim Date prevents several additional System Claim marks from showing up for the item on the purchase order.

## **Override Claim Date for Monographic Items**

---

- If an override Claim Date exists and has been surpassed, the line item copy is marked with System Claim.
- If an override Claim Date exists but is still in the future, the line item copy not marked with System Claim and the system moves on to the next step.
- If an override Claim Date does not exist, then it is not marked with System Claim and the system moves on to the next step.

- If the line item copy has not been claimed, or if it has been claimed but an override Claim Date has not been set, the system looks at the **Claim Interval** option at the following locations and in the following hierarchy:
  - a. **Delivery Options** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 6-70](#).) The system also looks for a **Don't Claim** option at this level.
  - b. **Footer** tab of the purchase order on which the line item or serial line item is listed (see [Footer Tab](#) on [page 6-7](#).) The system also looks for a **Don't Claim** option at this level.
  - c. **Delivery Options** tab of the vendor record for the vendor used on the purchase order (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#))
  - d. **Vendor Policies** tab of the **Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions** workspace in the System Administration module

The system adds the Claim Interval that it finds at the earliest level in the hierarchy to the date on which the line item copy was first assigned the status of Approved.

**NOTE:**

If the system finds a Don't Claim option at the first or second level, the line item copy is not marked with System Claim. Also, if the system does not find a Claim Interval at any of the levels, the line item copy is not marked with System Claim and an error message is written to `acqjob.log` file located in the `/ml/voyager/xxxdb/rpt` directory.

If the resulting date has been surpassed, the system then determines whether one or more claims have been previously generated for the line item copy. If one or more claims have been sent previously, the system looks at the **Claim Count** in the following two locations and in the following hierarchy to determine whether the maximum number of claims have been sent to the vendor:

- **Delivery Options** tab of the vendor record for the vendor used on the purchase order (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#))
- **Vendor Policies** tab of the **Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions** workspace in the System Administration module

The system uses the Claim Count that it finds at the earliest level in the hierarchy. If the total number of claims that have been previously generated meets or exceeds the Claim Count, the line item copy is not marked with System Claim. If the total number of claims that have been previously generated is below the Claim Count, the line item copy is marked with System Claim.

The line item copy can then be retrieved on the **Problems** workspace, where a claim can be generated (see [Generating a Claim](#) on [page 11-31](#).)

## Override Claim Date for Serial Issues

---

- If one or more claims have been sent previously for the serial issue, the system checks the most recent claim for an override Claim Date.
- If an override Claim Date exists and has been surpassed, the issue is marked with System Claim.
- If an override Claim Date exists but is still in the future, the issue is not marked with System Claim.
- If an override Claim Date does not exist, the system applies the item's established claim interval to the last date on which a claim was generated based on this hierarchy:
  - a. **Delivery Options** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 6-70](#))
  - b. **Footer** tab of the purchase order on which the serial line item is listed (see [Footer Tab](#) on [page 6-7](#))
  - c. **Delivery Options** tab of the vendor record for the vendor used on the purchase order (see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#))
  - d. **Vendor Policies** tab of the **Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions** workspace in the System Administration module (see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.)

The system adds the Claim Interval that it finds at the earliest level in the hierarchy to the expected date of the issue.

### NOTE:

If the system does not find a Claim Interval at any of the levels, the issue is not marked with System Claim and an error message is written to `acqjob.log` file located in the `/ml/voyager/xxxdb/rpt` directory.

If the resulting date has been surpassed, the issue is marked with a mark reason of System Claim. The serial issue can then be retrieved on the **Problems** workspace, where a claim can be generated (see [Generating a Claim](#) on [page 11-31](#).)

## Overview of Processing Marks and Claims

---

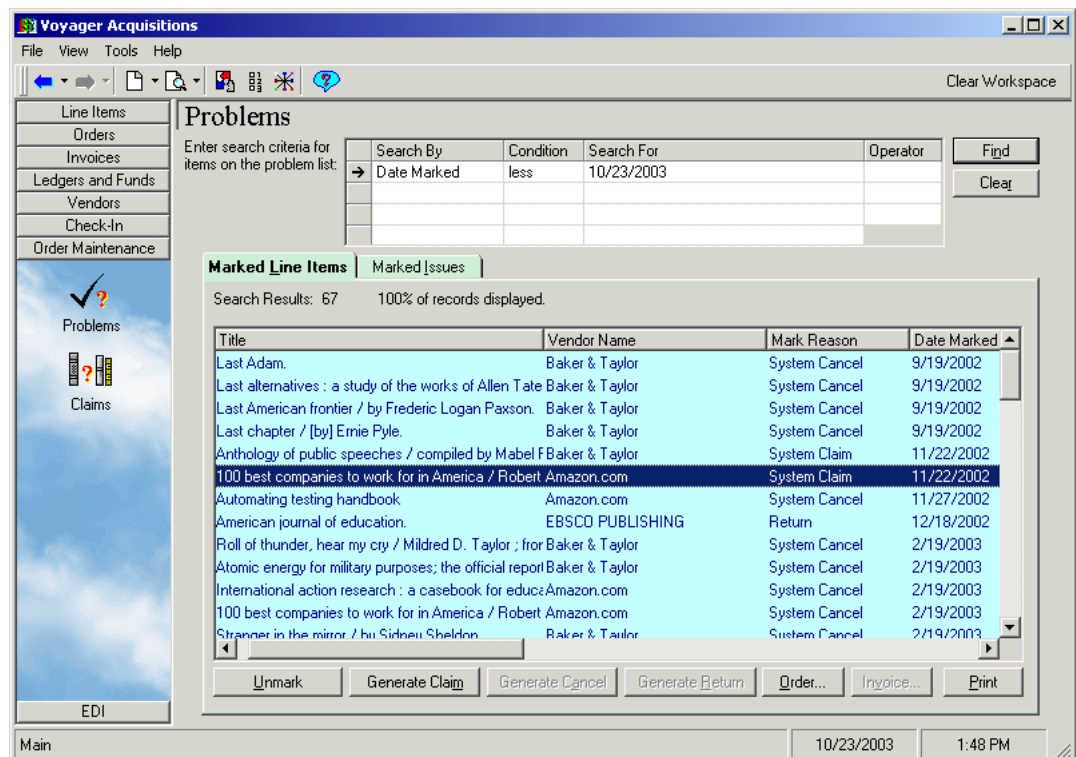
The processing activities that are available from within the Acquisitions module are:

- Unmarking an item or issue. This can be done for any marked item or issue with any reason.
- Generating, updating, or canceling a claim. This can be done for any Claimed or System Claimed item or issue.
- Generating a cancel. This can be done for any item or issue marked with Canceled or System Canceled.
- Generating a return. This can be done for any item or issue marked with "Return".

These processing activities can be performed in various places within the Acquisitions module.

- **Problems** workspace allows processing of marks and claims

The **Problems** workspace displays in [Figure 11-1](#).



**Figure 11-1. Problems workspace**

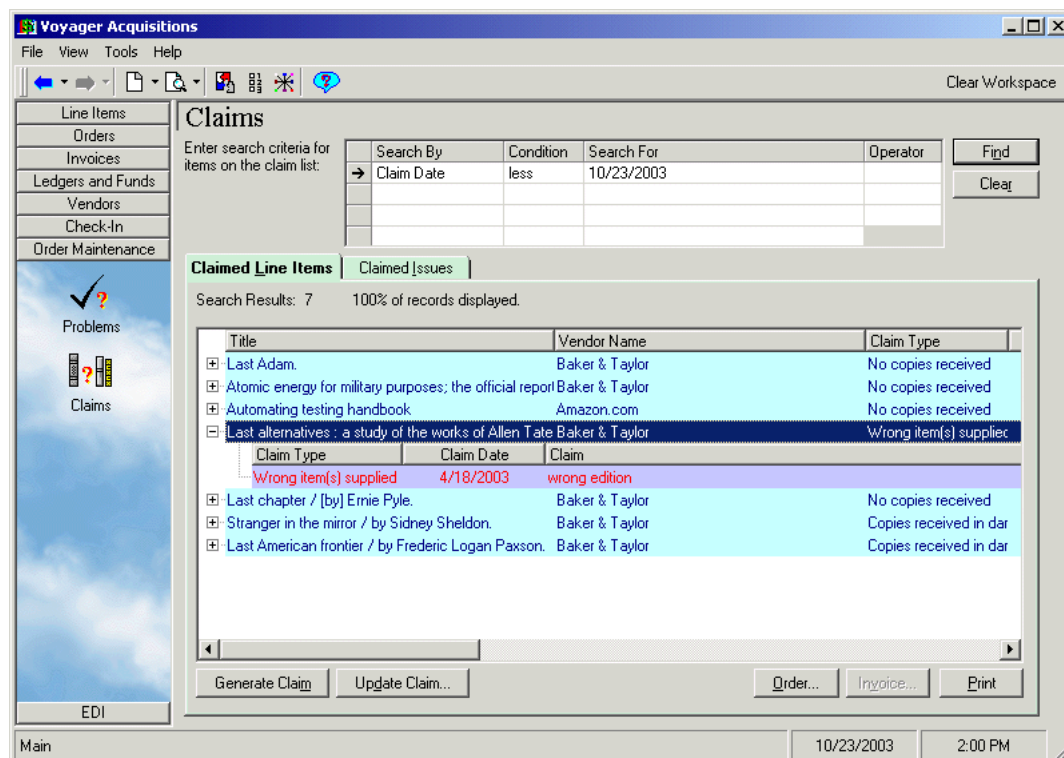
Depending on the item selected, the appropriate buttons are active at the bottom of the workspace. These are:

- **Unmark**, **Order** and **Print** buttons are always available
- If the mark reason is claim, the **Generate Claim** button is active
- If the mark reason is cancel, the **Generate Cancel** button is active
- If the mark reason is return, the **Generate Return** button is active
- The **Invoice** button is active if there is an invoice associated with the item
- On the **Marked Issues** tab the **Check-in** button is active

For more information see [Problems Workspace](#) on [page 11-16](#).

- **Claims** workspace allows processing of claims

The **Claims** workspace displays in [Figure 11-2](#).



**Figure 11-2. Claims workspace**

Since this workspace is specific to claims the following buttons are active at the bottom of the workspace:

- The **Generate Claim**, **Update Claim**, **Order** and **Print** buttons are always available
- On the **Claimed Issues** tab, the **Cancel Claim** and **Check-in** buttons are active
- The **Invoice** button is active if there is an invoice associated with the item

For more information see [Claims Workspace](#) on [page 11-20](#).

- **Approved Purchase Orders** and **Invoices** allow for processing of marks and claims

The **Line Item** section of an approved **Purchase Order** or approved **Invoice** displays in [Figure 11-3](#)

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line T	
1 / Approved	Critique of practical reason;	\$15.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund		
2 / Received Compl	Liberal hour.	\$20.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund		
3 / Approved	Floral biology / Mary Perciv;	\$20.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund		
ISSN	Marked/Claimed	Copy	Issue Identification	Component	Date	Reason	Claim Type
N/A	Marked	1	N/A	N/A	10/23/2003	Claim	(N/A)

Recv/Mark...	Unmark	Generate Claim	Update Claim...	Generate Cancel	Generate Return	Details...	MARC...
--------------	--------	----------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------	---------

**Figure 11-3. Line Item section of an approved PO or Invoice**

Depending on the item selected, the appropriate buttons are active at the bottom of the workspace. These are:

- **Recv/Mark**, **Unmark**, **Details**, and **MARC** buttons are always available
- If the mark reason is claim, the **Generate Claim** and **Update Claim** buttons are active
- If the mark reason is cancel, the **Generate Cancel** button is active
- If the mark reason is return, the **Generate Return** button is active

For more information see [Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices](#) on [page 11-27](#).

- The **Problems** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box allows processing of marks and claims

The **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box displays in [Figure 11-4](#).

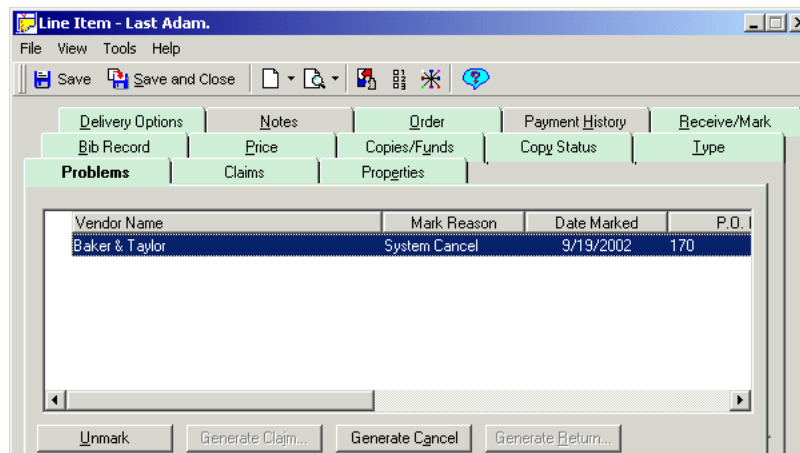


Figure 11-4. Problems tab of the Line Item Detail dialog box

Depending on the item selected, the appropriate buttons are active at the bottom of the workspace.

- The **Claims** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box allows processing of claims  
The **Claims** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box displays in [Figure 11-5](#).

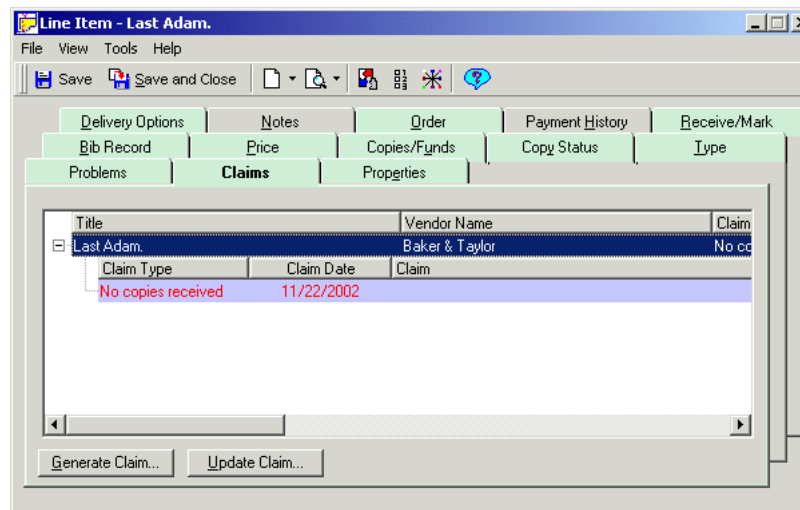


Figure 11-5. Claims tab of the Line Item Detail dialog box



- The **Problem History** tab on the **Serials History** workspace

The **Problems History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace displays in [Figure 11-6](#). See [Serials History Information](#) on [page 9-27](#) for more information.

**Serials History**

Title:  ...

Component Name:  Maintenance

Location:  Holdings...

Call Number:

Receipt History | Claims History | **Problem History** | Payment History

Issue Identification	Mark Reason	Date Marked	Vendor Name
v. 3, no. 16 (1 Apr.)	System Claim	4/16/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 3, no. 16 (1 Apr.)	System Claim	4/16/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 3, no. 17 (1 May)	System Claim	5/13/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 3, no. 17 (1 May)	System Claim	5/13/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 3, no. 18 (1 June)	System Claim	6/30/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 3, no. 18 (1 June)	System Claim	6/30/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 4, no. 19 (1 July)	System Claim	7/1/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 4, no. 19 (1 July)	System Claim	7/1/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 4, no. 20 (1 Aug.)	System Claim	8/14/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING
v. 4, no. 20 (1 Aug.)	System Claim	8/14/2003	EBSCO PUBLISHING

Generate Claim Start Over

**Figure 11-6. Problem History tab**

- The **Claims History** tab on the **Serials History** workspace

The **Claims History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace displays in [Figure 11-7](#). See [Serials History Information](#) on [page 9-27](#) for more information.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Serials History - Details". At the top, there are input fields for "Title" (containing "Journal of company law"), "Component Name" (containing "Journal of company law - Test"), "Location" (containing "Reference Department"), and "Call Number" (containing "CL 123 .456"). To the right of these fields are buttons for "Maintenance" and "Holdings...". Below the input fields is a tabbed interface with four tabs: "Receipt History", "Claims History" (which is selected and highlighted in green), "Problem History", and "Payment History". The "Claims History" tab displays a table with three columns: "Issue Identification", "Vendor Name", and "Claim Type". The table contains several rows of data, with the first row expanded to show a detailed claim. The expanded row shows "v. 2, no. 9 (2001)" as the issue, "EBSCO PUBLISHING" as the vendor, and "Copies received in" as the claim type. Below this, a sub-table shows "Claim Type" as "Copies received in dam", "Claim Date" as "7/18/2003", and "Claim" as an empty field. Below the main table, there is an "Update Claim..." button.

Issue Identification	Vendor Name	Claim Type
v. 2, no. 9 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in
<b>Claim Details for v. 2, no. 9 (2001):</b>		
Claim Type	Claim Date	Claim
Copies received in dam	7/18/2003	
v. 2, no. 10 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in
v. 2, no. 11 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in
v. 2, no. 12 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in
v. 2, no. 13 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in
v. 2, no. 14 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in
v. 2, no. 15 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in
v. 2, no. 16 (2001)	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Copies received in

---

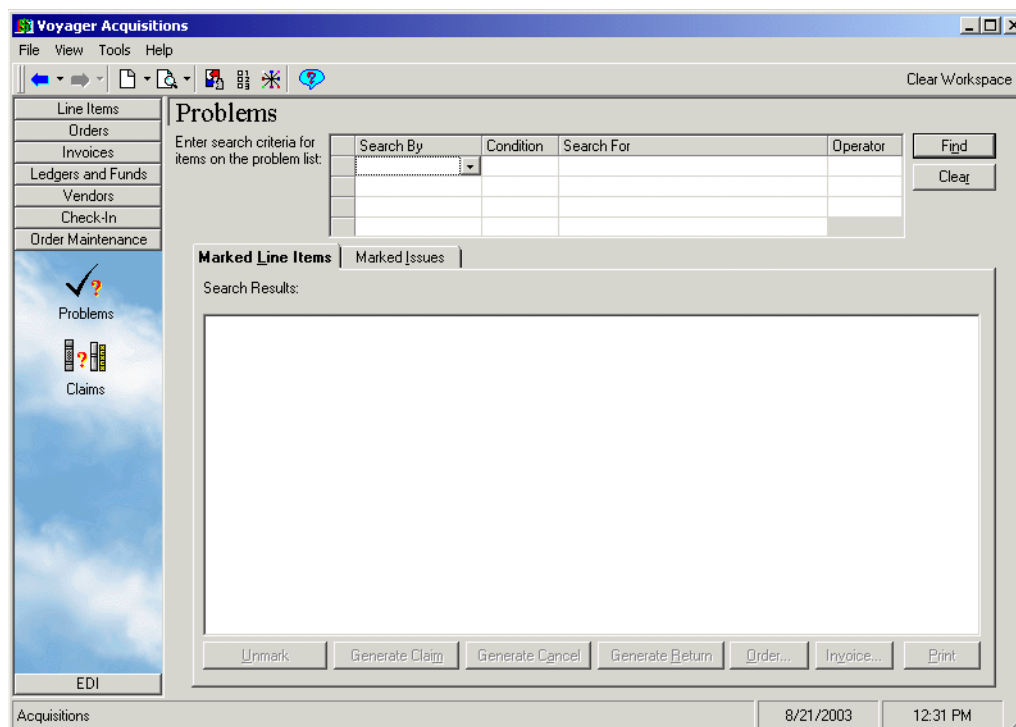
Figure 11-7. Claims History tab

## Problems Workspace

---

The **Problems** workspace ([Figure 11-8](#)) contains two tabs that allow users to search for and process marked items.

- **Marked Line Items**
- **Marked Issues**



**Figure 11-8. Problems workspace**

The **Problems** workspace contains a search grid and two tabs. When you use the search grid, you conduct a search for both marked monographic line item copies and marked serial issues. See [Searching for Marked and Claimed Items](#) on [page 11-27](#).

The marked line item copies that match the search display on the **Marked Line Items** tab. The marked serial issues that match the search display on the **Marked Issues** tab.

### Marked Line Items Tab

[Figure 11-9](#) displays the **Marked Line Items** tab after searching for marked items.

Marked Line Items		Marked Issues						
Search Results: 49		100% of records displayed.						
Title	Vendor Name	Mark Reason	Date Marked	P.O. Number	Invoice Number	Copy	Copy Status	Operator
Football dreams / David Guy.	Baker & Taylor	System Claim	8/14/2003	168		1	Approved	SYSTEM
Football dreams / David Guy.	Baker & Taylor	Cancel	7/3/2003	168		1	Approved	demo
American sports poems / selected by R.R. Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Claim	8/14/2003	168		1	Approved	SYSTEM
Last chapter / [by] Ernie Pyle.	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/2002	170		1	Claimed	SYSTEM
Last American Puritan : the life of Increase Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	5/13/2003	170		1	Approved	SYSTEM
Last American frontier / by Frederic Logan I Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/2002	170		1	Claimed	SYSTEM
Last alternatives : a study of the works of A Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/2002	170		1	Claimed	SYSTEM
Last Adam.	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/2002	170		1	Claimed	SYSTEM
Atomic energy for military purposes; the offi Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	2/19/2003	207	207	1	Claimed	SYSTEM
Roll of thunder, hear my cry / Mildred D. T Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	2/19/2003	214	214	1	Approved	SYSTEM
Automating testing handbook	Amazon.com	System Cancel	11/27/2002	216	082702	1	Claimed	SYSTEM
Anthology of public speeches / compiled by Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	4/16/2003	217		1	Received	SYSTEM
Anthology of public speeches / compiled by Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Claim	11/22/2002	217		1	Received	SYSTEM
100 best companies to work for in America	Amazon.com	Cancel	6/30/2003	237		1	Approved	demo

Figure 11-9. Problems workspace - results on Marked Line Items tab

The following information displays for each marked line item copy on the **Marked Line Items** tab (see [Figure 11-9](#)).

- Title of the item (in Title column)
- Name of the vendor associated with the purchase order on which the line item is listed (in the Vendor Name column)
- Mark reason assigned to the line item copy (in the Mark Reason column); for example, Claim, System Claim, Cancel, System Cancel, Return
- Date on which the line item copy was marked (in the Date Marked column)
- Number of the purchase order on which the line item is listed (in the P.O. Number column)
- Number of the invoice on which the line item is listed (in the Invoice Number column); this value is only present if the line item has been invoiced
- Copy number of the item
- Status of the line item copy (in the Copy Status column); for example, Pending, Approved, or Received
- Operator who marked the line item copy (in the Operator column); if the line item copy was marked by the system, SYSTEM displays
- Comments entered by the operator when the line item copy was marked (in the Comment column)
- Vendor Title number

- Vendor Reference number

## Marked Issues Tab

[Figure 11-10](#) displays the **Marked Issues** tab after searching for marked issues.

ISSN	Title	Issue Identification	Vendor Name	Component	Mark Reason	Date Marked
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 8 (2002 Feb. 1	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 9 (2002 Feb. 2	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 10 (2002 Mar.	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 11 (2002 Mar.	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 12 (2002 Mar.	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 13 (2002 Mar.	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 17 (2002 Apr.	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 19 (2002 May	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 20 (2002 May	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 21 (2002 May	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/3/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 24 (2002 June	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/19/2002
0123-4567	Rational test journal	v. 1, no. 25 (2002 June	EBSCO	Rational test journal	System Claim	6/19/2002

**Figure 11-10. Problems workspace - results on Marked Issues tab**

The following information displays for each marked serial issue on the **Marked Issues** tab (see [Figure 11-10](#)).

- ISSN of the item
- Title of the serial item (in the Title column)
- Enumeration/chronology information of the issue (in the Issue Identification column)
- Name of the vendor associated with the purchase order on which the serial item is listed (in the Vendor Name column)
- Name of the serial's component to which the issue belongs (in the Component column)
- Mark reason assigned to the serial issue (in the Mark Reason column); for example, Claim or System Claim
- Date on which the serial issue was marked (in the Date Marked column)
- Number of the purchase order on which the serial item is listed (in the P.O. Number column)

**NOTE:**

The number of the invoice on which the serial item is listed (in the Invoice Number column). This value is only present if the serial item has been invoiced.

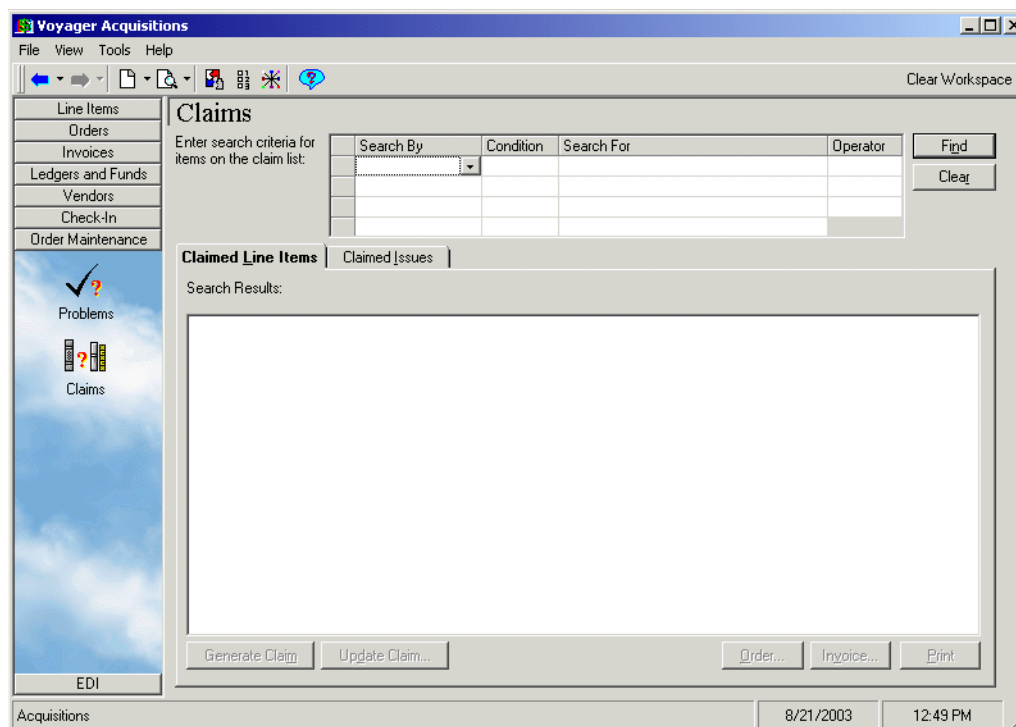
- Copy number of the item
- Status of the serial issue (in the Copy Status column); for example, Received or Received Partial
- Operator who marked the serial issue (in the Operator column); if the serial issue was marked by the system, SYSTEM displays
- Comments entered by the operator when the serial issue was marked (in the Comment column)
- Vendor Title number
- Vendor Reference number

## **Claims Workspace**

---

The **Claims** workspace ([Figure 11-11](#)) allows users to search and process claims that have been generated for monograph line item copies and serial issues from the **Problems** workspace. It contains the following tabs.

- **Claimed Line Items**
- **Claimed Issues**



**Figure 11-11. Claims workspace**

The **Claims** workspace contains a search grid and two tabs. When you use the search grid, you conduct a search for both monograph line item copies and serial issues that have been claimed. See [Searching for Marked and Claimed Items](#) on [page 11-27](#).

The monograph line item copies that match the search display on the **Claimed Line Items** tab. The serial issues that match the search display on the **Claimed Issues** tab.

### **Claimed Line Items tab**

[Figure 11-12](#) displays the **Claimed Line Items** tab, showing monograph line item copies that have one or more claims.

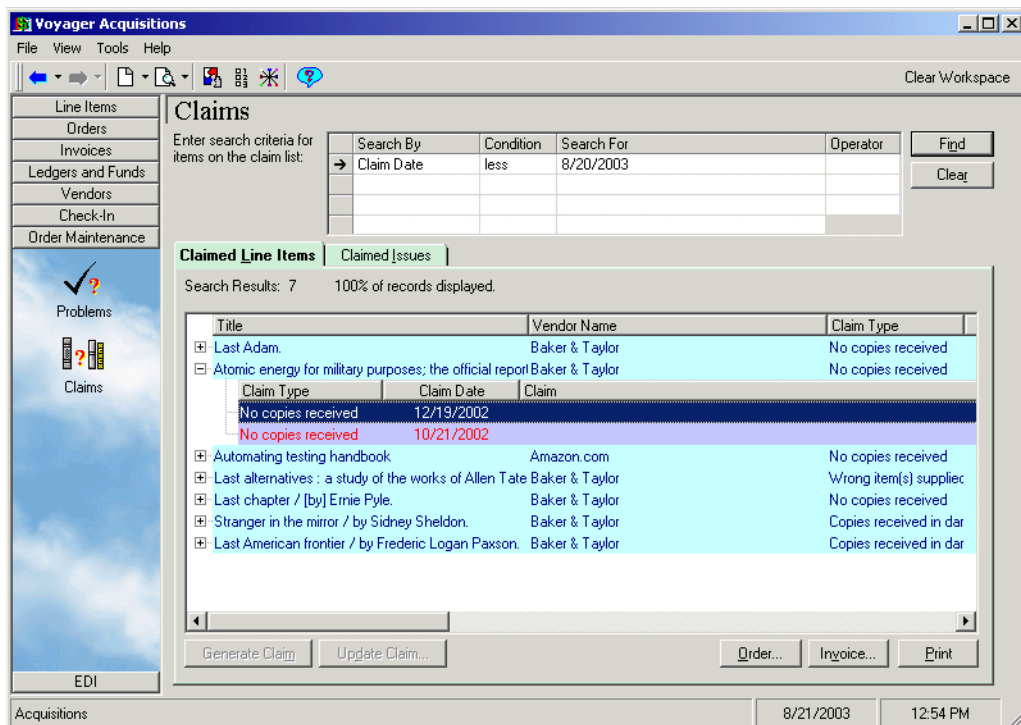


Figure 11-12. Claims workspace - results displayed on Claimed Line Items tab

The following information displays for each line item copy:

- Title of the item
- Vendor Name
- Claim Type
- Claim Date
- Number of Claims
- Number of Claim Responses
- Copy
- PO Number
- Approve Date of the purchase order
- Invoice Number
- Invoice Date
- Operator who claimed the item



- Vendor Title Number
- Vendor Reference
- Comments

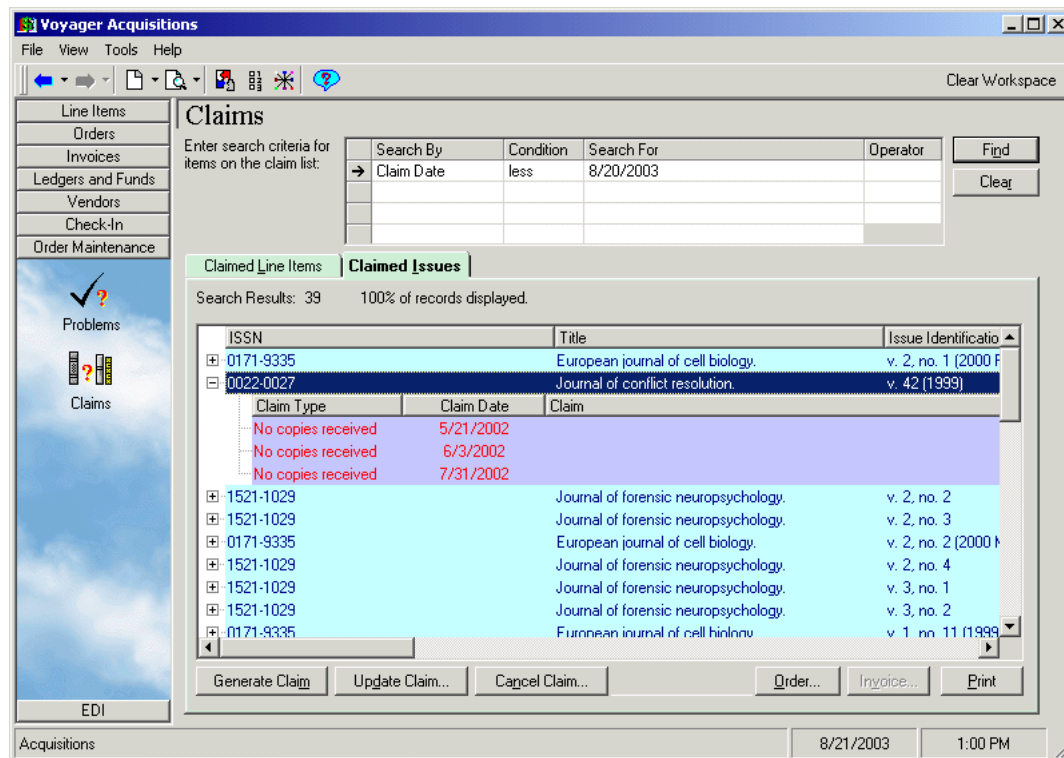
Clicking the plus (+) sign beside a line item copy displays the individual claims associated with the copy. The following information displays for each claim:

- Claim Type
- Claim Date
- Claim
- Vendor Response
- Response Date
- Response Type
- Action Date
- Action Quantity

#### **Claimed Issues tab**

---

[Figure 11-12](#) displays the **Claimed Issues** tab showing serial issues that have one or more claims.



**Figure 11-13. Claims workspace - results displayed on Claimed Issues tab**

The following information displays for each issue:

- ISSN of the serial
- Title
- Issue Identification (the enumeration/chronology of the issue)
- Vendor Name
- Component to which the issue belongs
- Claim Type
- Claim Date
- Number of Claims
- Number of Claim Responses
- Copy number
- PO Number

- Approve Date of the purchase order
- Invoice Number
- Invoice Date
- Operator who claimed the issue
- Vendor Title number
- Vendor Reference
- Comments

Clicking the plus (+) sign beside an issue displays the individual claims associated with the issue. The following information displays for each claim:

- Claim Type
- Claim Date
- Claim
- Vendor Response
- Response Date
- Response Type
- Action Date
- Action Quantity

## Buttons on the Tabs in the Problems and Claims Workspaces

The following is a list of buttons found on the various tabs of the **Problems** and **Claims** workspaces and their functions.

Button	Purpose
<b>Unmark</b>	Available on both the <b>Marked Line Items</b> and the <b>Marked Issues</b> tabs only. Allows you to unmark the line item copy or serial issue and remove it from the <b>Problems</b> workspace. See <a href="#">Unmarking a Line Item Copy or Serial Issue</a> on <a href="#">page 11-29</a> for more information.
<b>Generate Claim</b>	Available on the <b>Marked Line Items</b> , <b>Marked Issues</b> , <b>Claimed Line Items</b> , and <b>Claimed Issues</b> tabs. Allows you to generate a claim to the vendor for the line item copy or serial issue. This button is active if

one or more item is selected (providing they have the same vendor), and it must have a mark reason of claim or system claim. See [Generating a Claim](#) on [page 11-31](#) for more information.

**Generate Cancel**

Available only for monograph line item copies on the **Marked Line Items** tab. Allows you to generate a cancellation notice to the vendor for the line item copy. See [Generating a Cancel](#) on [page 11-39](#) for more information.

**NOTE:**

Generating a cancellation notice for a line item or a purchase order removes the On Order item status in OPAC.

**Cancel Claim**

Available only for serial issues on the **Claimed Issues** tab. Allows you to cancel a claim and produce a cancellation notice to the vendor. See [Canceling a Claim](#) on [page 11-36](#) for more information.

**Update Claim**

Available only for serial issues on the **Claimed Line Items** and **Claimed Issues** tabs. Allows you to update a claim. See [Updating a Claim](#) on [page 11-34](#) for more information.

**Generate Return**

Available only for monograph line item copies on the **Marked Line Items** tab. Allows you to generate a return. However, the fund commitments or expenditures and line item subtotal(s) and total(s) are not adjusted, the status is updated with today's date. The line item copy from the **Problem** workspace entry is deleted and the return data is sent to the queue for export (return notice). See [Generating a Return](#) on [page 11-41](#) for more information.

**Order**

Available on the **Marked Line Items**, **Marked Issues**, **Claimed Line Items**, and **Claimed Issues** tabs. Allows you to quickly open the associated purchase order.

**Invoice**

Available on the **Marked Line Items**, **Marked Issues**, **Claimed Line Items**, and **Claimed Issues** tabs. Allows you to quickly open the associated invoice.

**NOTE:**

If multiple entries are selected in the search results grid, clicking the **Order** or **Invoice** button displays all orders or invoices for the selected problems.

**Print**

Available on the **Marked Line Items**, **Marked Issues**, **Claimed Line Items**, and **Claimed Issues** tabs. Allows you to print the currently displayed list of marked line item copies or marked serial issues.

---

**Searching for Marked and Claimed Items**

---

The procedure for searching for marked items is shown in [Procedure 2-12, Searching for Marked Line Item Copies and Serial Issues](#), on page [2-104](#).

The procedure for searching for claims is shown in [Procedure 2-13, Searching for Claimed Items](#), on page [2-108](#).

---

**Processing Marked and Claimed Items  
from Approved Purchase Orders and  
Invoices**

---

When a purchase order or invoice is approved, the following buttons appear below the line item section ([Figure 11-14](#)): **Unmark**, **Generate Claim**, **Update Claim**, **Generate Cancel**, and **Generate Return**. These buttons allow you to process marked and claimed line item copies and serial issues directly from the purchase order or invoice. This can help save valuable time by eliminating the need to search for the items on the **Problems** or **Claims** workspace.

**Purchase Order: 465 - [Received Partial]**

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Quick Line Item On Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order: Number: 465 Type: Approval Site: Main

Vendor: Code: EB Account: Status Date: 10/23/2003 3 Line Items on Order

Locations: Ship To: Main Bill To: Main

Amounts: Line Item Subtotal: \$55.00 Other Charges: \$0.00 Total Order Amount: \$55.00 Currency: Code: USD Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Line T
1 / Approved	Critique of practical reason:	\$15.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund	
2 / Received Complete	Liberal hour.	\$20.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund	
3 / Approved	Floral biology / Mary Percivi:	\$20.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund	

ISSN	Marked/Claimed	Copy	Issue Identification	Component	Date	Reason	Claim Type
N/A	Marked	1	N/A	N/A	10/23/2003	Claim	(N/A)

Recv/Mark... Unmark Generate Claim Update Claim... Generate Cancel Generate Return Details... MARC...

**Figure 11-14. Approved Purchase Order with buttons active and marks and claims displayed**

**NOTE:**

In order for marks and claims to be opened and processed directly from an approved purchase order or invoice, the appropriate options must be set on the **Line Items** tab of your Session Workflows. See [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more information about setting these options.

If the appropriate options are set, a plus (+) sign appears beside line items with marked or claimed line item copies or serial issues. When you click the plus (+) sign beside a line item, each of the marks and claims for the line item display in a second level. The following information is displayed in this second level for each mark or claim:

- The **ISSN** of the item. N/A (not applicable) displays for a marked line item copy or serial issue
- In the **Marked/Claimed** column. Marked displays for a marked monograph line item copy. Claimed displays for a claimed monograph line item copy. Marked Issue displays for a marked serial issue. Claimed Issue displays for a claimed serial issue.

- The **Copy** column contains the copy number of the copy that is being claimed.
- In the **Issue Identification** column, the enumeration and chronology information of a marked or claimed serial issue displays. N/A (not applicable) displays for a marked or claimed monograph line item copy.
- In the **Component** column, the subscription component to which a marked or claimed serial issue belongs displays. N/A (not applicable) displays for a marked or claimed monograph line item copy.
- In the **Date** column, the date on which line item copy or serial issue was marked or claimed displays.
- In the **Reason** column, the mark reason of a marked line item copy or serial issue displays (for example, Claim, System Claim, Cancel, System Cancel, Return). N/A (not applicable) displays for a claimed line item copy or serial issue.
- In the **Claim Type** column, the claim type of a claimed line item copy or serial issue displays (for example, No copies received, Too many copies received); claim types are created by your institution in the System Administration module. N/A (not applicable) displays for a marked line item copy or serial issue
- In the **Claims/Responses** column, for a claimed line item copy or serial issue, the number of claims that have been generate and the number of responses that have been received displays. N/A (not applicable) displays for a marked line item copy or serial issue
- In the **Locations** column, the intended location for the line item copy or serial issue displays.
- In the **Operator** column, the operator who marked or claimed the line item copy or serial issue displays; if the copy or issue was marked by the system, SYSTEM displays.
- In the **Comment** column, any comments that were entered when the line item copy or serial issue was marked or claimed.

## Unmarking a Line Item Copy or Serial Issue

---

Operators can unmark a line item copy or serial issue that has been marked with any mark reason from these places within Acquisitions.

- **Marked Line Items** tab or the **Marked Issues** tab of the **Problems** workspace
- **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box

- Approved PO or Invoice

Unmarking a line item copy or serial issue removes it from the **Problems** workspace, removes the mark from display on the purchase order or invoice, removes the mark from the issue, and removes the issue from the **Problem History** tab.

This feature is especially useful for resolving a circumstance where an item was marked accidentally. This feature can also be useful in a circumstance where an item is marked, but the problem associated with the marking is resolved shortly thereafter. For example, if you mark a line item copy because it has not yet been received, but the copy is received shortly thereafter, you can use the **Unmark** button to remove the problem from the **Problems** workspace.

**NOTE:**

Unmarking occurs automatically when an item is received.

The procedure for unmarking items is shown in [Procedure 11-1, Unmarking Line Item Copies or Serial Issues](#), on page [11-30](#).



---

### Procedure 11-1. Unmarking Line Item Copies or Serial Issues

---

Use the following to unmark a line item copy or serial issue.

1. From the
  - **Marked Line Items** tab or the **Marked Issues** tab of the **Problems** workspace select the line item copy or serial issue that you want to unmark.
  - **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box select the item to unmark
  - Approved PO or Invoice, click the mark below the appropriate line item. If the line item is highlighted when you select a mark or claim, the processing buttons are not available. Make sure only the mark or claim you want to work with is highlighted in order to activate the processing buttons.
2. Click the **Unmark** button.

Result: The selected line item copy or issue is unmarked.



## Generating a Claim

---

A claim can be generated for a line item copy or a serial issue marked with the Claim or System Claim mark reason, or for a line item copy or serial issue that has been previously claimed.

Claims can be generated from these places within the Acquisitions module.

- **Marked Line Items** tab or the **Marked Issues** tab of the **Problems** workspace
- **Claimed Line Items** tab or the **Claimed Issues** tab of the **Claims** workspace
- **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box
- **Claims** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box
- Approved PO or Invoice
- **Problem History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace

When the claim is generated, you can specify the particular reason for the claim. For example, No copies received, Wrong items supplied, Insufficient copies received.

Also when the claim is generated, you can specify to send it to the vendor via EDI (Electronic Data Interchange) and/or via Postal Mail.

- If you choose to send the claim via EDI, you must then proceed to the **Outgoing** tab of the EDI activity to complete the electronic sending of the claim (see [Outgoing Tab](#) on [page 15-22](#) for more information.)
- If you choose to send the claim via Postal Mail, you must then proceed to the Voyager Reporter module where the claim can be printed (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.)

After a claim is generated for a marked line item copy or serial issue, the item is removed from the **Problems** workspace and sent to the **Claims** workspace, the mark beneath the line item on the purchase order is replaced by a claim, and the mark is removed from the issue, and the issue is removed from the **Problem History** tab.

The claim then displays on the **Claims** workspace, where you can update the claim with responses from the vendor or, if necessary, generate additional claims, see [Claims Workspace](#) on [page 11-20](#) for more information.

The procedure for generating claims is shown in [Procedure 11-2, Generating Claims](#), on page [11-32](#).



## Procedure 11-2. Generating Claims

---

Use the following to generate a claim.

1. From the
  - **Marked Line Items** or **Marked Issues** tab click the line item copy or serial issue you want to claim.
  - **Claimed Line Items** or **Claimed Issues** tab, click the line item copy or serial issue.

**NOTE:**

The **Generate Claim** button is available when multiple claims are selected, providing they share the same vendor, and the have a mark reason of claim or system claim.

- **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box select the item for which you want to generate a claim.
  - **Claims** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box select the item for which you want to generate a claim.
  - Approved PO or Invoice, click the mark below the appropriate line item. If the line item is highlighted when you select a mark or claim, the processing buttons are not available. Make sure only the mark or claim you want to work with is highlighted in order to activate the processing buttons.
  - **Problem History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace click the marked issue for which you want to generate a claim
2. Click the **Generate Claim** button.

Result: The **Generate Claim** dialog box opens (see [Figure 11-15](#)).



The image shows a 'Generate Claim' dialog box with the following fields and controls:

- Vendor Code:** A text field containing 'BT' with a search button (magnifying glass icon) to its right.
- Vendor Name:** A text field containing 'Baker & Taylor'.
- Claim Date:** A date field containing '4/18/2003' with a calendar icon to its right.
- Claim Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Wrong item(s) supplied' selected.
- Comment:** A text area containing 'wrong edition'.
- Send Claim Via:** A section with two checkboxes: 'EDI' and 'Postal Mail', both of which are currently unchecked.
- Buttons:** 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

**Figure 11-15. Generate Claim dialog box**

3. The code and name of the vendor associated with the line item copy or serial issue displays in the **Vendor Code** and **Vendor Name** fields. If you want to send the claim to a different vendor, type the vendor code of the different vendor in the **Vendor Code** field. You can also click the search button (the magnifying glass) beside the field to conduct a search for the vendor. After you have entered the vendor code in the **Vendor Code** field, click the **check** button beside the field to validate the vendor code. If the code is valid, the name of the corresponding vendor automatically displays in the **Vendor Name** field.
4. The date in the **Claim Date** field appears on the claim sent to the vendor. By default, the current date automatically displays in the **Claim Date** field. However, if you want to change the date, click the **down arrow** beside the **Claim Date** field and select a different date from the pop-up calendar. For example, if you want an earlier date to be identified as the claim date on the claim, you can select an earlier date from the calendar. You can also type the date directly into the **Claim Date** field.
5. Select a claim type from the alphabetized drop-down list in the **Claim Type** field. This claim type is used to communicate to the vendor the specific reason for the claim.

**NOTE:**

Claim types are created in the System Administration module. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

6. Enter any additional comments in the **Comments** free-text box. For example, if the claim type description does not adequately communicate the nature of the claim, you can enter any further clarifications in this free-text box.

7. In the **Send Claim Via** section, select the **EDI** check box and/or the **Postal Mail** check box to establish the sending method. These check boxes are already selected if the **Printer** and **EDI** check boxes on the **Claim Processing** tab of your Session Workflows have been selected (see [Claim Processing Tab](#) on [page 19-18](#) for more information.)

**NOTE:**

The **EDI** check box on the **Generate Claim** dialog box is only available if the location from which you are generating the claim and the vendor specified in the claim match the Library Location and Vendor of an existing EDI connection profile. If there are no matches, the **EDI** check box is grayed out. See [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#) for more information.

8. Click the **OK** button to generate the claim. Click the **Cancel** button to close the dialog box without generating the claim.
  - If you chose to send the claim via EDI, you must then proceed to the EDI activity of your Acquisitions module to complete the electronic sending of the claim (see [Outgoing Tab](#) on [page 15-22](#) for more information.)
  - If you chose to send the claim via Postal Mail, you must then proceed to the Voyager Reporter module where the claim can be printed (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.)

Result: If clicked **OK**, the claim is generated.



**IMPORTANT:**

9. *If you chose to send the claim via postal mail, you must then proceed to the Reporter module where the claim can be printed in order to be sent to the vendor (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.)*

*Result: The claim is generated and printed, ready to send to the vendor.*

---

## Updating a Claim

---

When you update a claim, you record the vendor's response to the claim, the date on which the vendor responded, and any additional comments the vendor sent with the response. Updating designates an override claim date. See [Override Claim Date for Monographic Items](#) on [page 11-8](#) and [Override Claim Date for Serial Issues](#) on [page 11-10](#).

Operators can update claims from these places within the Acquisitions module.

- **Claimed Line Items** tab or the **Claimed Issues** tab of the **Claims** workspace
- **Claims** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box
- Approved PO or Invoice
- **Claims History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace

The procedure for updating claims is shown in [Procedure 11-3, Updating Claims](#), on page [11-35](#).



---

### Procedure 11-3. Updating Claims

---

Use the following to update claims.

1. From the

- **Claimed Line Items** or **Claimed Issues** tab, click the line item copy or serial issue.

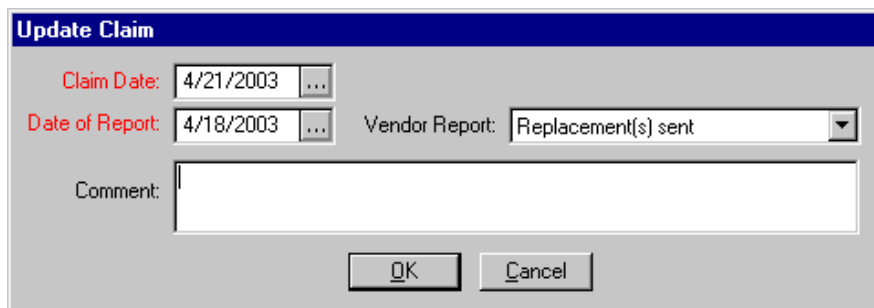
**NOTE:**

The **Update Claim** button is available when multiple claims are selected, providing they share the same vendor.

- **Claims** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box click the line item copy on the **Claims** tab
- Approved PO or Invoice, click the mark below the appropriate line item. If the line item is highlighted when you select a mark or claim, the processing buttons are not available. Make sure only the mark or claim you want to work with is highlighted in order to activate the processing buttons.
- **Claims History** tab of the **Serials History** workspace click the issue that has a claim that you want to update.

2. Click the **Update Claim** button.

Result: The **Update Claim** dialog box opens (see [Figure 11-16](#)).



**Figure 11-16. Update Claim dialog box**

3. Click the down arrow beside the **Claim Date** field and select an override claim date from the pop-up calendar (required). You can also type the date directly into the **Claim Date** field.
4. The **Date of Report** field records the date on which the vendor responded to your claim (required). The current date automatically displays in the this field. To choose a different date, clicking the **down arrow** beside the field and select a date from the pop-up calendar. You can also type the date directly into the **Date of Report** field.
5. The **Vendor Report** field records the type of claim response you receive from the vendor. Select a report type from the alphabetized drop-down list in this field. Vendor report types are created in the System Administration module. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.
6. Enter any additional comments in the **Comments** free-text box. For example, if the Vendor Report description does not adequately communicate the vendor's response, you can enter any further clarifications in this free-text box.
7. Click the **OK** button to update the claim. Click the **Cancel** button to close the **Update Claim** dialog box without updating the claim.

Result: If you clicked **OK**, the claim is updated.

## **Canceling a Claim**

---

There are three methods for canceling claims.

- **Dummy receive** (Receive the issue but not really have it in hand.) When you receive the issue this way, you should update the enumeration with a note explaining the receive.

- Cancel the expectation of the issue by removing it. If you do not expect to receive the issue, remove it from the expected issues list, and claims will not be generated. See [Removing an Issue](#) on [page 9-19](#) for more information.
- **Cancel Claim** button on the **Claimed Issues** tab of the **Claims** workspace (for Serial Issue claims only). From the **Claimed Issues** tab, you can generate a claim cancellation notice for a claim that has been previously sent to the vendor for an issue.

After the cancellation notice is generated, you must then proceed to the Reporter module where the notice can be printed in order to be sent to the vendor (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.) The printed cancellation notice informs the vendor that you are canceling the claim.

When the cancellation is generated, all Claim marks for the issue are removed from the **Problems** workspace and all claims that have been generated for the issue are archived and removed from the **Claims** workspace.

The procedure for canceling a claim from the **Claimed Issues** tab is shown in [Procedure 11-4, Canceling a Claim](#), on page [11-37](#).



---

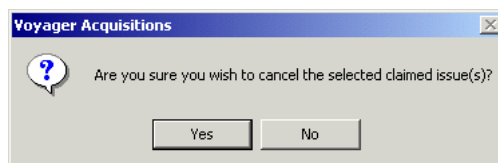
#### Procedure 11-4. Canceling a Claim

---

Use the following to cancel a claim from the **Claimed Issues** tab.

1. On the **Claimed Issues** tab, select the issue for which you want to cancel a claim.
2. Click the **Cancel Claim** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays (see [Figure 11-17](#)).

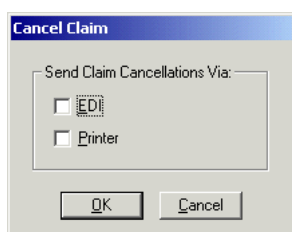


---

**Figure 11-17. Confirmation message to cancel a claim**

3. Click the **Yes** button to generate a claim cancellation notice. Click the **No** button if you decide not to generate a claim cancellation notice.

Result: If you click **Yes**, the **Cancel Claim** dialog box opens (see [Figure 11-18](#)).



---

**Figure 11-18. Cancel Claim dialog box**

4. In the **Send Claim Cancellations Via** section, select the **EDI** check box and/or the **Printer** check box to establish the sending method. These check boxes are already selected if the check boxes of the same name on the **Claim Processing** tab of your Session Workflows have been selected (see [Claim Processing Tab](#) on [page 19-18](#) for more information.)
  - If you chose to send the notice via EDI, you must then proceed to the **EDI** workspace of your Acquisitions module to complete the electronic sending of the cancellation notice (see [Outgoing Tab](#) on [page 15-22](#) for more information.)
  - If you chose to send the notice via Printer, you must then proceed to the Voyager Reporter module where the notice can be printed (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.)

**NOTE:**

The **EDI** check box on the **Cancel Claim** dialog box is only available if the location from which you are generating the cancellation notice and the vendor specified for the issue match the Library Location and Vendor of an existing EDI connection profile. If there are no matches, the EDI check box is grayed out. See [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#) for more information about EDI Connection Profiles.

5. Click the **OK** button to generate the cancellation notice. Click the **Cancel** button to close the dialog box without generating the cancellation notice.

Result: If you clicked **OK**, the cancel claim notice is generated, and the claim is removed from the **Claimed Issues** tab.

---



## Generating a Cancel

---

You can generate a cancellation notice for one or more monograph line item copies marked with the Cancel or System Cancel mark reason.

Cancels can be generated from these places within the Acquisitions module.

- **Marked Line Items** tab of the **Problems** workspace
- **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box
- Approved PO or Invoice

**NOTE:**

This ability is only available for marked monograph line item copies, not for marked serial issues.

In order for a monograph line item copy to be marked with the Cancel mark reason, the following criteria must be met.

- The line item copy must have a status of Received, Back ordered, Claimed or Approved
- The purchase order on which the line item copy is listed must have a status of Approved/Sent, Received Partial, or Received Complete

When the cancellation is generated, the Cancel mark is removed from beneath the line item on the purchase order and from the **Problems** workspace. In addition, all other marks for the line item copy are removed and all claims that have been generated for the line item copy are archived and removed from display on the purchase order and from the **Problems** workspace and all claims that have been generated for the line item copy are archived and removed from the **Claims** workspace.

After the cancellation notice is generated, you must then proceed to the Reporter module where the notice can be printed in order to be sent to the vendor (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.) The printed cancellation notice informs the vendor that you are canceling the line item copy(ies).

The procedure for generating a cancel is shown in [Procedure 11-5, Generating a Cancel](#), on page [11-40](#).



---

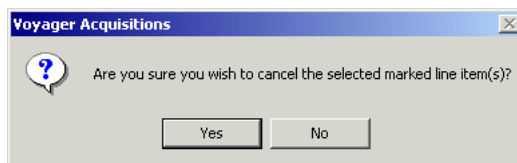
**Procedure 11-5. Generating a Cancel**

---

Use the following to generate a cancel.

1. From the
  - **Marked Line Items** tab of the **Problems** workspace click the line item copy or copies for which you want to generate a cancellation notice.
  - **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box click the line item copy or copies for which you want to generate a cancellation notice.
  - Approved PO or Invoice, click the mark below the appropriate line item. If the line item is highlighted when you select a mark or claim, the processing buttons are not available. Make sure only the mark or claim you want to work with is highlighted in order to activate the processing buttons.
2. Click the **Generate Cancel** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays (see [Figure 11-19](#)).




---

**Figure 11-19. Confirmation message when generating a cancel**

3. Click the **Yes** button to generate a cancellation notice and delete the mark for the line item copy from the **Problems** workspace. Click the **No** button if you decide not to generate a cancellation notice and remove the mark for the line item copy from the **Problems** workspace.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the cancellation notice is generated.

4.  **IMPORTANT:** *After the cancellation notice is generated, you must then proceed to the Reporter module where the notice can be printed in order to be sent to the vendor (see the Voyager Reporter User's Guide for more information.) The printed cancellation notice informs the vendor that you are canceling the line item copy(ies).*
- 

## Generating a Return

---

You can generate a return notice for one or more monograph line item copies marked with the Return mark reason.

Returns are generated from these places within the Acquisitions module.

- **Marked Line Items** tab of the **Problems** workspace
- **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box
- Approved PO or Invoice

### **NOTE:**

The information on the **Marked Line Items** tab of the **Problems** workspace is deleted, but the line item(s) is not deleted on the purchase order. The system does not change the approved purchase orders so that there is a record of what was ordered.

After the return notice is generated, you must then proceed to the Reporter module where the notice can be printed in order to be sent to the vendor (see the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.) The printed return notice informs the vendor that you are sending back the line item(s).

The procedure for generating returns is shown in [Procedure 11-6, Generating a Return](#), on page [11-41](#).



### **Procedure 11-6. Generating a Return**

---

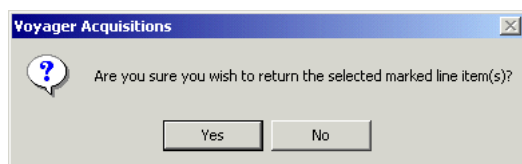
Use the following to generate a return.

1. From the
  - **Marked Line Items** tab of the **Problems** workspace click the line item copy or copies for which you want to generate a return notice.

- **Problems** tab of the **Line Item Details** dialog box click the line item copy or copies for which you want to generate a return notice.
  - Approved PO or Invoice, click the mark below the appropriate line item. If the line item is highlighted when you select a mark or claim, the processing buttons are not available. Make sure only the mark or claim you want to work with is highlighted in order to activate the processing buttons.
2. Click the **Generate Return** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays (see [Figure 11-20](#)).

---




---

**Figure 11-20. Confirmation message when generating a return**

3. Click the **Yes** button to generate a return notice and delete the mark for the line item copy from the **Problems** workspace and remove the mark(s) from beneath the line item(s) on the purchase order. Click the **No** button if you want to cancel the generation of the return notice and not remove the marks for the line item copy.

Result: If you clicked **Yes**, the return is generated.

4.  **IMPORTANT:**  
*After the return notice is generated, you must then proceed to the Reporter module where the notice can be printed in order to be sent to the vendor (see the Voyager Reporter User's Guide for more information.) The printed return notice informs the vendor that you are sending back the copies of the line item(s).*

*Result: The notice is generated and printed, ready to send to the vendor.*

---

## Using the Order, Invoice, and Print Buttons

---

The **Order**, **Invoice**, and **Print** buttons are available on all tabs of the **Problems** and **Claims** workspaces. The **Invoice** button is active if there is an invoice associate with the selected line item.

### Viewing a Purchase Order from the Problems or Claims Workspaces

---

Use the **Order** button to quickly display the purchase order associated with a marked line item or issue. This ability to display the purchase order directly eliminates the need to search for the purchase order manually.



#### Procedure 11-7. Viewing a Purchase Order from the Problems or Claims Workspaces

---

Use the following to display the purchase order associated with a marked line item or issue.

1. From the **Problems** or **Claims** workspaces select the marked line item or issue from the appropriate tab.

Result: The **Order** button is active (see [Figure 11-21](#)).

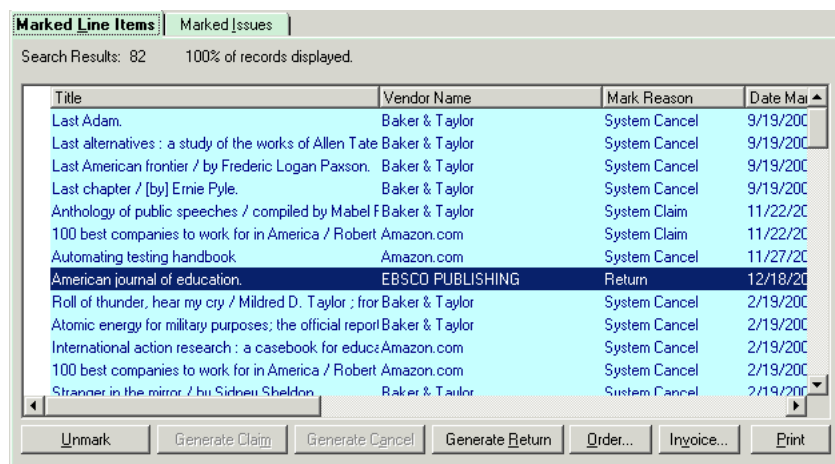


Figure 11-21. Item selected on the Marked Line Item tab

- Click the **Order** button. When multiple items are selected all associated purchase orders are opened.

Result: The PO opens (see [Figure 11-22](#)).

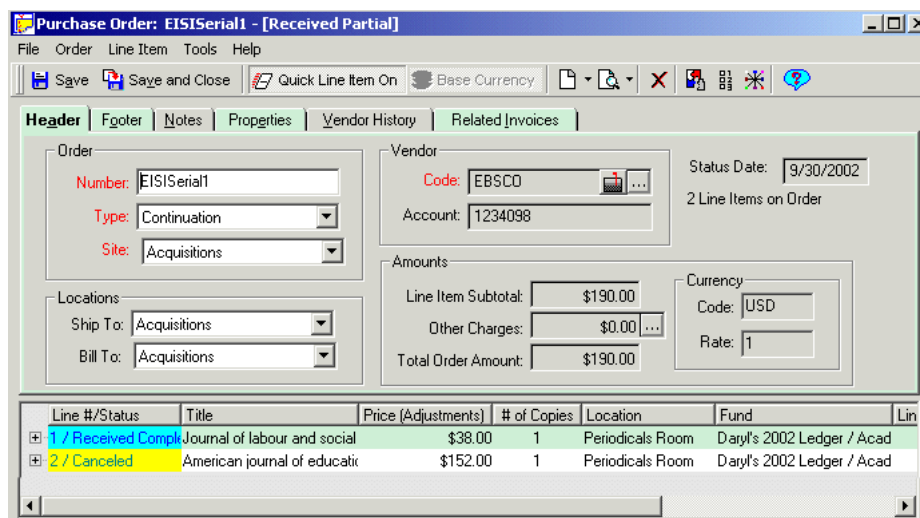


Figure 11-22. Purchase Order associated with the selected item

## Viewing an Invoice from the Problems or Claims Workspaces

Use the **Invoice** button to quickly display the invoice associated with a marked line item or issue. This ability to display the invoice directly eliminates the need to search for the invoice manually.



### Procedure 11-8. Viewing an invoice from the Problems or Claims Workspaces

Use the following to display the invoice associated with a marked line item or issue.

1. From the **Problems** or **Claims** workspaces select the marked line item or issue from the appropriate tab.

Result: The **Invoice** button is active (see [Figure 11-23](#)).

Marked Line Items		Marked Issues	
Search Results: 82		100% of records displayed.	
Title	Vendor Name	Mark Reason	Date Maj
Last Adam.	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/200
Last alternatives : a study of the works of Allen Tate Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/200
Last American frontier / by Frederic Logan Paxson.	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/200
Last chapter / [by] Ernie Pyle.	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	9/19/200
Anthology of public speeches / compiled by Mabel FBaker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Claim	11/22/20
100 best companies to work for in America / Robert Amazon.com	Amazon.com	System Claim	11/22/20
Automating testing handbook.	Amazon.com	System Cancel	11/27/20
American journal of education.	EBSCO PUBLISHING	Return	12/18/20
Roll of thunder, hear my cry / Mildred D. Taylor ; fror Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	2/19/200
Atomic energy for military purposes; the official report Baker & Taylor	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	2/19/200
International action research : a casebook for educat Amazon.com	Amazon.com	System Cancel	2/19/200
100 best companies to work for in America / Robert Amazon.com	Amazon.com	System Cancel	2/19/200
Stranger in the mirror / by Sidney Sheldon.	Baker & Taylor	System Cancel	2/19/200

**Figure 11-23. Item selected on the Marked Line Item tab**

2. Click the **Invoice** button. When multiple items are selected all associated invoices are opened.

Result: The invoice opens (see [Figure 11-24](#)).

Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund
Received Complete	Journal of labour and social	\$38.00	1	Periodicals Room	Daryl's 2002 Ledger / Acad
Canceled	American journal of educati	\$152.00	1	Periodicals Room	Daryl's 2002 Ledger / Acad

Figure 11-24. Invoice associated with the selected item

## The Print button

Use the **Print** button active on all tabs of the **Problems** and **Claims** workspaces to print the highlighted item(s).

On the **Marked Line Items** tab and **Marked Issues** tab the following fields print:

- Bib Title
- Status
- Location
- Enum/Chron (**Marked Issues** tab only)
- Mark Reason
- Mark Date
- Operator ID
- Comment

On the **Claimed Line Items** tab and the **Claimed Issues** tab the following fields print:

- Bib Title



- Vendor
- Claim Type
- Mark Date
- Claim Count
- Enum/Chron (**Claimed Issues** tab only)
- Operator ID
- Comment



<b>Introduction</b>	<b>12-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>12-2</b>
<b>Accessing the Invoices Workspace</b>	<b>12-2</b>
• The New Invoice dialog box	12-4
• Header Tab	12-5
• Footer Tab	12-7
• Notes Tab	12-8
• Properties Tab	12-9
<b>Creating an Invoice</b>	<b>12-10</b>
• Security for Creating/Editing Invoices	12-11
• Line Items	12-17
• Entering Line Item Information	12-24
Changing the Line Item Column Sequence	12-25
Expanding the Line Item Section	12-25
• Searching for Line Items from an Invoice	12-27
• Entering Other Invoice Charges	12-28
<b>Approving an Invoice</b>	<b>12-33</b>
• Security to Approve Invoices	12-33
<b>Processing Marked and Claimed Items from an Approved Invoice</b>	<b>12-36</b>
<b>Completing an Invoice</b>	<b>12-37</b>

<b>Deleting an Invoice</b>	<b>12-38</b>
• Security to Delete an Invoice	12-39
<b>Item Creation and Maintenance</b>	<b>12-40</b>

### Introduction

---

Invoices allow you to keep track of items received from your vendors. Invoices can be for one or more purchase orders, and a single purchase order can be referenced on one or more invoices. All of the referencing is done through invoice line items.

The Invoice section of the Acquisitions module provides the tools for you to create and maintain your invoices. Specifically, these tools allow you to do the following.

- Create new invoices (see [Creating an Invoice](#) on [page 12-10](#))
- Conduct quick searches for invoices, and subsequently edit invoices (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#).)

Invoice activities include several time-saving features such as the following.

- To handle invoices sent by a supplier other than the expected vendor, you can add line items from purchase orders that reference vendor codes different than the one used on the invoice. See [Adding Line Items to an Invoice](#) on [page 12-18](#) for more information.
- An **Invoice Piece Identifier** field is included on the **Note** tab of an invoice line item to enable you to specify the item for which the payment is being made. See [Notes Tab](#) on [page 6-9](#) for more information.

- When an authorized operator approves an invoice, the option to receive all line items on the invoice is presented. A library often receives all of the items that it invoices. This capability eliminates the need to receive each line item separately. See [Approving an Invoice](#) on [page 12-33](#) for more information.
- You can search for a line item directly rather than as an element of a purchase order or invoice. The line item search feature is located on the **Line Items** tab in the Acquisitions listbar.

## **Purpose of this Chapter**

---

This chapter discusses the following.

- Accessing the **Invoices** workspace
  - The **New Invoice** dialog box
  - The **Search Invoices** workspace
- The **New Invoice** dialog box and creating an invoice
- Approving an Invoice
- Completing an Invoice
- Deleting an Invoice

## **Accessing the Invoices Workspace**

---

The **Invoices** workspace contains the two buttons allowing users to create invoices and search for invoices.

From the **Invoices** bar in the Acquisitions listbar, click the one of the following.

- **New Invoice** button ([Figure 12-1](#)) to access the **New Invoice** dialog box ([Figure 12-2](#)).
- **Search Invoices** button ([Figure 12-1](#)) to access the **Search Invoices** workspace (see [Figure 12-3](#)).

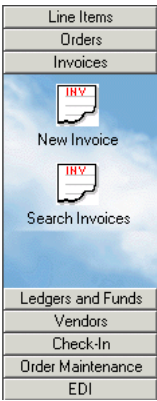


Figure 12-1. Invoice Buttons

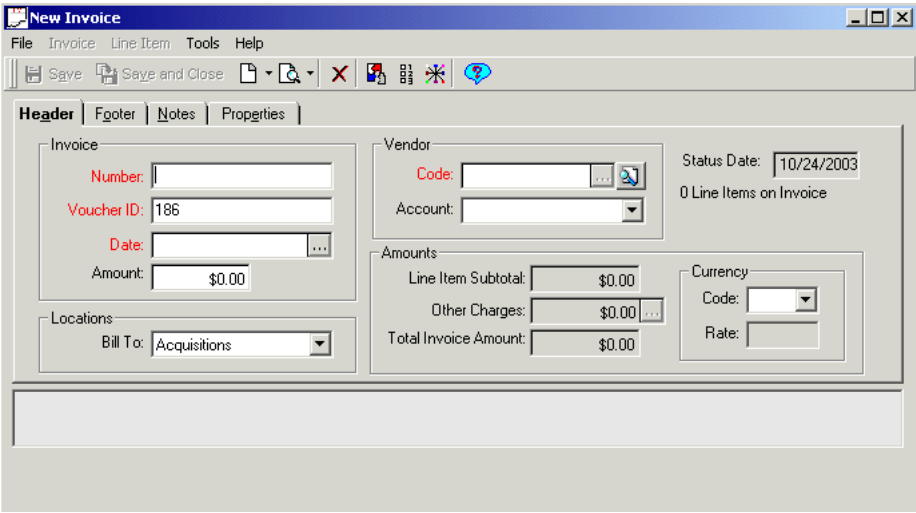


Figure 12-2. New Invoices dialog box

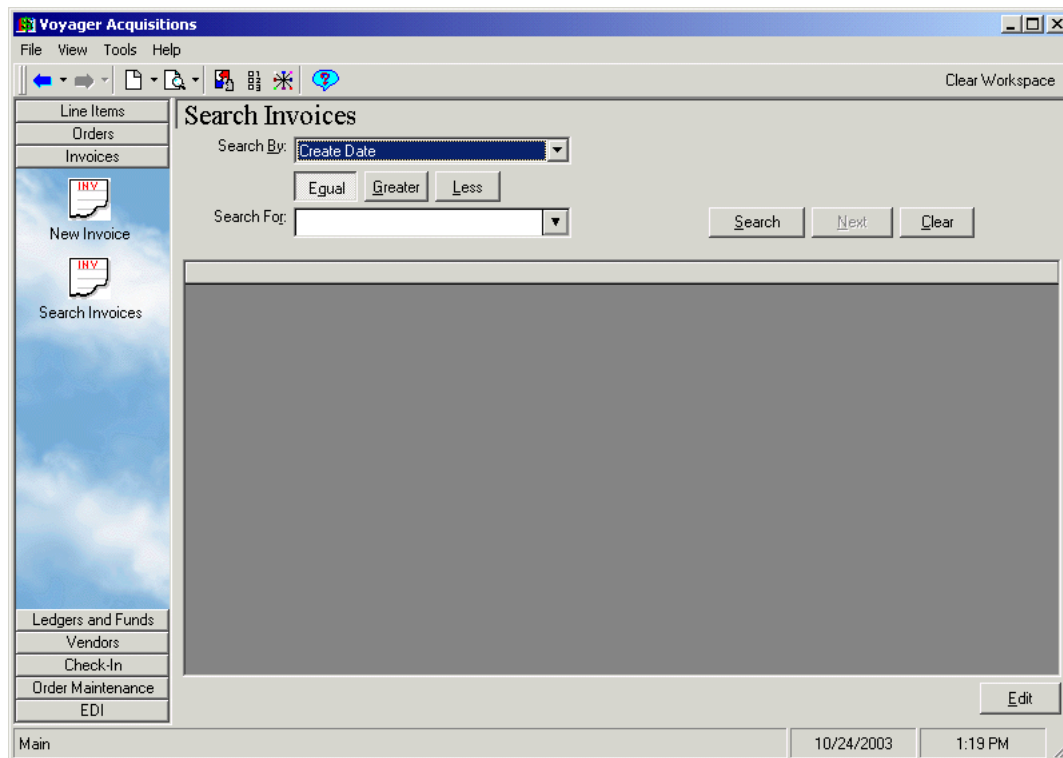


Figure 12-3. Search Invoices workspace

### The New Invoice dialog box

---

The top half of the **New Invoice** dialog box contains of four tabs that contain general information about the invoice, such as identification information, vendor information, billing information, and price information. These tabs are:

- **Header**
- **Footer**
- **Notes**
- **Properties**

The bottom half of the **New Invoice** dialog box initially a blank pane. After you have selected a line item, the item is listed in the pane as a single row of information. It contains a summary of the information particular to that line item on



the invoice. In addition, each line item can be displayed in full detail in a separate window, with all of its information contained on several tabs in the **Line Item** dialog box, see [Detailed Line Item](#) on [page 6-32](#) for more information.

**NOTE:**

After you have saved information to it, the **New Invoice** dialog box becomes the **Invoice** dialog box after.

## Header Tab

The **Header** tab on the **Invoice** dialog box contains general information about the order (see [Figure 12-4](#)).

**Figure 12-4. Header tab of the Invoice dialog box**

On the **Header** tab information is divided into these sections.

Section	Content
Invoice	Identification information, such as the number, Voucher ID, Date, and Amount
Vendor	Information about the vendor you are invoicing, including the Vendor Code and Account
Locations	Information about the library locations to which the bill should be sent.
Amounts	Sum charges on the invoice including Line Item Subtotal, Other Charges, and Total Invoice Amount, also the currency and conversion rate (current or at the time of approval) used.
Status	Status date and the total number of line items on the invoice.

The labels of required fields display in red or in another color you have specified in your session preferences (see [Colors and Fonts Tab](#) on [page 18-4](#).)

Much of the information on the **Header** tab is useful to know if you are searching for invoices in future sessions (you can search for a invoice by identifying some of the required header information.)

To simplify the creation of your invoice, default values can be automatically applied to many of the fields on the **Header** tab, such as Bill To location, Vendor Code, Vendor Account and Currency. See [Invoice Defaults](#) on [page 17-12](#) for more information.

[Table 12-1](#) describes the fields on the **Header** tab by section. Required fields are noted with an “(R)” beside the field name.

**Table 12-1. Header tab fields**

Section	Field	Description
Invoice	Number (R)	The invoice number.
	Voucher ID (R)	System applied voucher number. This is editable.
	Date (R)	The date on the vendor's invoice.
	Amount	The amount of the invoice. It is usually taken from the invoice received from the vendor.  <b>NOTE:</b> This amount must match the total invoice amount in order to approve the invoice.
Locations	Bill To	The location where the bill should be sent.  Selections are defined in the System Administration module.  See the <i>Voyager System Administration User's Guide</i> for more information.
Vendor	Code (R)	The code of the vendor you are using for the invoice. To search for a vendor, click the search button (magnifying glass) beside the <b>Code</b> field. After you enter a valid vendor code, you can view the vendor's record by clicking the ellipsis (...) button or email the vendor by clicking the mailbox button (if one displays beside the <b>Code</b> field).
	Account	Sum of charges on the invoice.

**Table 12-1. Header tab fields**

Section	Field	Description
Amounts	Line Item Subtotal	The combined cost of all of the line items on the invoice.
	Other Charges	Additional charges such as shipping and tax.
	Total Invoice Amount	The total cost of line items and other charges. This is system generated.
Amounts/ Currency	Code	The currency code. If none is selected, the base currency set in the System Administration module is used.  <b>NOTE:</b> Currency cannot be changed after the purchase order has been saved, except to restore the base currency.
	Rate	The exchange rate for the selected currency, as entered in the Acquisitions <b>Currency Maintenance</b> workspace.
[not sectioned]	Status Date	System-generated date of the invoice update.
	Line Items on Invoice	The number of line items in the invoice.

To simplify the creation of invoice, you can prepopulate fields on the **Header** tab with default values. See [Invoice Defaults](#) on [page 17-12](#).

### Footer Tab

The **Footer** tab of the **Invoice** dialog box contains information divided into two sections (see [Figure 12-5](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Footer' tab of an 'Invoice' dialog box. The tab is selected, and the 'Amounts' section is visible on the left, containing three fields: 'Line Item Subtotal' (value: \$0.00), 'Other Charges' (value: \$0.00 with a dropdown arrow), and 'Total Invoice Amount' (value: \$0.00). The 'Check Info' section is visible on the right, containing two fields: 'Check Number' and 'Expenditure Date', both with empty text boxes and dropdown arrows.

**Figure 12-5. Footer tab**

On the **Footer** tab information is divided into these sections.

Section	Content
Amounts	Summaries of the amounts and costs on the invoice.
Check Info	Information about the payment, contains the number of the check used for the invoice and the date funds were used for the check.

None of the fields on the **Footer** tab are required.

[Table 12-2](#) describes the fields on the **Footer** tab by section.

**Table 12-2. Footer tab fields**

Section	Field	Description
Amounts	Line Item Subtotal	Combined cost of all line items in the invoice.
	Other Charges	Additional charges such as shipping and tax.
	Total Invoice Amount	The total cost of line items and other charges.
Check Info	Check Number	Number of the check used to pay invoice.
	Expenditure Date	Date funds were expended.

## Notes Tab

---

The **Notes** tab of the **Invoice** dialog box provides text fields for you to enter internal notes about the invoice (see [Figure 12-5](#)).

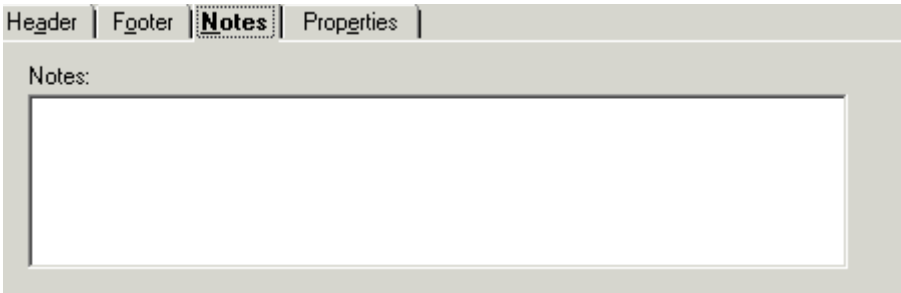


Figure 12-6. Notes tab

[Table 12-3](#) describes the **Notes** tab.

Table 12-3. Notes tab

Label	Description	Limits
Notes	Text box for additional information about the order. For internal use. The information in this field can be used to retrieve the invoice or a line item on the invoice when conducting a search.	1900 alphanumeric characters (including punctuation and spaces)

**Properties Tab**

The **Properties** tab of the **Invoice** dialog box displays read-only historical information about the invoice (see [Figure 12-7](#)).

Header Footer Notes **Properties**

Record ID: 172 Last Status Change: 9/11/2003

Creation Information

Operator: demo Date: 9/11/2003 Location:

Update Information

Operator: demo Date: 9/11/2003 Location:

---

**Figure 12-7. Properties tab**

[Table 12-4](#) describes the fields within sections of the **Properties** tab.

**Table 12-4. Properties tab fields**

Section	Field	Definition
[not sectioned]	Record ID	The record ID number of the invoice, system-generated or user-entered (the actual ID of the record in the database).
	Last Status Change	The date on which the status of the invoice was last changed.
Creation Information	Operator	The operator who created the invoice.
	Date	The date on which the invoice was created.
	Location	The library location where the invoice was created.
Update Information	Operator	The operator who last updated the invoice.
	Date	The date on which the invoice was last updated.
	Location	The library location where the invoice was last updated.

## Creating an Invoice

---

Operators create new invoices in the **New Invoices** dialog box ([Figure 12-9](#)). Creating invoices involves entering information in this dialog box, adding line items, and entering information about the line items on your invoice.

## Security for Creating/Editing Invoices

To be authorized to create and edit invoices the **Add/Update Invoices** check box ([Figure 12-8](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

If the **View-Only Invoices** check box is selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator is able to view purchase orders, but the operator cannot perform any functions on them.

Edit Acquisition/Serials Profile:

Profile Name	Operator	Profile Values	Profile Values Cont.	Locations
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add Update Ledger and Funds			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add/Update Invoices	
<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Ledgers and Funds			<input type="checkbox"/> View-Only Invoices	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Ledgers and Funds			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete Invoices	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Fund Allocations			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approve Invoices	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fiscal Close Operations			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-View Volume And Issue	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Currency Maintenance			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit Volume Level Data	
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery-Edit issue sequence for volumes	
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bindery Print	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Incoming			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overexpend Warning	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDI Outgoing			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override Overcommit Warning	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Modify EDI Outgoing Messages				

**Figure 12-8. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The procedure for creating a new invoice is shown in [Procedure 12-1, Creating an Invoice](#), on page [12-11](#).



### Procedure 12-1. Creating an Invoice

Use the following to create an invoice.

1. Access the **New Invoice** dialog box using one of the following:
  - Click the **Invoice** bar on the **Acquisitions** listbar, then the **New Invoice** button.

- From the **View** menu, select **Invoices > New Invoice**.
- Click the down arrow beside the **New Item** button on the toolbar, then select **Invoices** from the drop-down list.
- To create an invoice directly from an open purchase order, with the line item and other information automatically entered, select **Create Invoice** from the **Order** menu on the purchase order.

Result: The **New Invoices** dialog box opens (see [Figure 12-9](#)).

**Figure 12-9. New Invoices dialog box**

2. Add header information to the new invoice.
  - a. In the Invoice section
    1. Enter the invoice identification number in the **Number** field (required).

**NOTE:**  
If you are creating an invoice from a purchase order, the system assigns the purchase order number as the invoice number. The invoice number is editable.

    2. The voucher number in the **Voucher ID** field is system applied (required). The voucher number is editable.
    3. In the **Date** field, click the down arrow and select the date on the vendor's invoice from the pop-up calendar.



4. Enter the total invoice amount in the **Amount** field. This amount is usually taken from the printed invoice received from the vendor. When approving the invoice, if the amount entered in the **Amount** field does not match the system-generated amount in the **Total Invoice Amount** field, the approve is blocked. This blocking is a precaution to make you aware of a discrepancy between the amount the vendor expects you to pay and the amount actually expressed on the invoice.

b. In the Vendor section

1. Enter the vendor code of the vendor you are using in the **Code** field (required). You can also click the search button (the magnifying glass) beside the **Code** field to conduct a search for a vendor. This value can be used to retrieve the invoice when conducting a search.
2. Click the **ellipsis** button to open the vendor record.

This option can be especially helpful when you want to review information about your vendor (for example, you want to review more extensively the vendor's accounts before selecting the account to use on the invoice.)

**OPTIONAL:**

*The accounts belonging to the vendor automatically display in the drop-down list in the **Account** field. Select the account you want to use from the drop-down list.*

c. In the Locations section

1. Select your invoice billing location from the drop-down list in the **Bill To** field (optional). Bill To locations are defined in the **Acquisitions/Serials Group Definitions** dialog box of the System Administration module.

A location is defined as a Bill To location for a particular acquisitions policy group if that location has been associated with the policy group, and if the **Order/Claim/Pay Location** check box has been checked for that location. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information. This value can be used to retrieve the invoice when conducting a search.

d. In the Amounts section

The **Line Item Subtotal**, **Other Charges** and **Total Amount** fields display monetary amount summaries of the different parts of the invoice as well as of the entire invoice. After line items have been added to the invoice, the combined cost of all the line items on the invoice displays in the **Line Item Subtotal** field. The **Other Charges** field can be used to adjust your charges or apply any charges in addition to the line item costs that may be applicable to the invoice,

such as shipping costs and tax (see [Entering Other Invoice Charges](#) on [page 12-28](#) for more information.) The combined cost of the entire invoice displays in the **Total Amount** field.

The Amounts section also contains a Currency sub-section, in which the **Code** field and the **Rate** field for the currency that are used on the invoice are located.

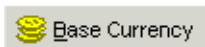
- e. Select a currency code from the drop-down list in the **Code** field (required). After you save the invoice, the currency cannot be changed. Also, if you do not select a currency, the base currency selected in the **Base Currency** workspace of the System Administration module is applied as the default when the invoice is saved (See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.)

Currencies, other than the base currency, are created in the **Currency Maintenance** workspace of the Acquisitions module (See [Currency Maintenance](#) on [page 3-1](#).)

After the currency code has been selected, the current conversion rate, as defined for the currency in the **Currency Maintenance** workspace, displays in the **Rate** field. See [Fix Exchange Rates \(Acqjob 5\)](#) on [page 3-12](#) for additional exchange rate information.

**NOTE:**

After the invoice has been saved, if you want the amounts on the invoice to display in the Base Currency rather than the currency selected in the **Code** field, click the **Base Currency** button ([Figure 12-10](#)) on the toolbar. You can click the button again if you want to change the amounts on the invoice back to the currency specified in the **Code** field.



---

**Figure 12-10. Base Currency button**

The **Status Date** field contains a system-generated date that is updated when the invoice is modified.

The total number of line items contained on the invoice displays beneath the Status Date.

- f. Save the invoice.
  - To save the invoice without closing the **Invoice** workspace, click the **Save** button on the toolbar

- To save the invoice and close the **Invoice** workspace, click the **Save and Close** button on the toolbar.

Result: The **Header** tab is complete. After saving the invoice, the line item activities (the buttons at the bottom of the dialog box) become accessible.

[Figure 12-11](#) displays a completed **Header** tab on a saved invoice.

The screenshot shows the 'Invoice: 701 - [Pending]' dialog box with the 'Header' tab selected. The form is organized into several sections:

- Invoice Information:** Number (701), Voucher ID (392), Date (11/18/2004), and Amount (0.00).
- Vendor Information:** Code (MIDWEST), Account (dropdown), and Status Date (11/18/2004).
- Amounts:** Line Item Subtotal (0.00), Other Charges (0.00), and Total Invoice Amount (0.00).
- Currency:** Code (USD) and Rate (1).
- Locations:** Bill To (Acquisitions).

The bottom of the dialog features a row of buttons: 'Add Line from Order...', 'Delete Line', 'Quick Line Item...', 'Detailed Line Item...', and 'MARC...'.

**Figure 12-11. Header tab completed**

- Add footer information to a new invoice. Click the **Footer** tab (see [Figure 12-12](#)).

The screenshot shows a software window with four tabs: 'Header', 'Footer' (selected), 'Notes', and 'Properties'. The 'Footer' tab contains two main sections. The 'Amounts' section on the left includes three text boxes: 'Line Item Subtotal' (displaying '\$0.00'), 'Other Charges' (displaying '\$0.00' with a small '...' button to its right), and 'Total Invoice Amount' (displaying '\$0.00'). The 'Check Info' section on the right includes two text boxes: 'Check Number' and 'Expenditure Date', both with small '...' buttons to their right.

**Figure 12-12. Footer tab**

- a. In the Amounts section: The **Line Item Subtotal**, **Other Charges** and **Total Amount** fields display monetary amount summaries of the different parts of the invoice as well as of the entire invoice.
  - The combined cost of all the line items on the invoice displays in the **Line Item Subtotal** field, non-editable field.
  - The **Other Charges** field can be used to apply any charges in addition to the line item costs, such as shipping costs and tax. Enter other charges as needed.
  - The combined cost of the entire purchase order displays in the **Total Amount** field, non-editable field.
- b. Check Info section
  1. Enter the number of the check used for the invoice in the **Check Number** field. This information can be used to retrieve the invoice when conducting a search.
  2. Click the ellipsis in the **Expenditure Date** field and select the date on which funds were expended for the check from the calendar. This information can be used to retrieve the invoice when conducting a search.

Result: The **Footer** tab is completed.

**OPTIONAL:**

4. Add Notes information to a new invoice. Click the **Notes** tab and enter any additional information about the invoice in the **Notes** free-text box (see [Figure 12-13](#)).

---



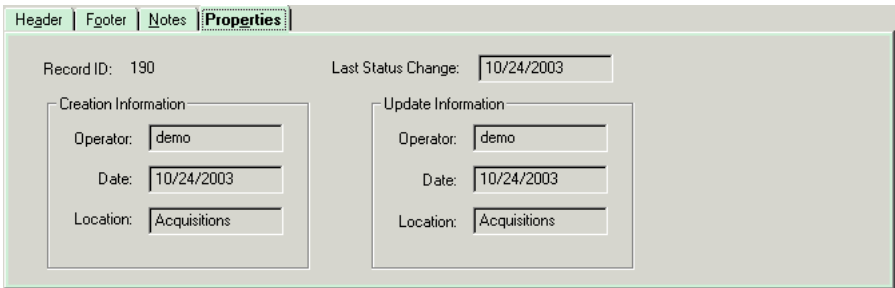
The screenshot shows the 'Notes' tab of a dialog box. At the top, there are four tabs: 'Header', 'Footer', 'Notes' (which is selected and highlighted), and 'Properties'. Below the tabs, there is a text area with the label 'Notes:' and a placeholder text 'Add a note here if wanted.'

**Figure 12-13. Notes tab**

5. Save and close the newly-created invoice, open the invoice again and click the **Properties** tab.

Result: The **Properties** tab displays ([Figure 12-14](#)) the following historical information about the invoice.

---



The screenshot shows the 'Properties' tab of the same dialog box. The 'Notes' tab is now unselected. The 'Properties' tab displays the following information:

- Record ID: 190
- Last Status Change: 10/24/2003
- Creation Information:
  - Operator: demo
  - Date: 10/24/2003
  - Location: Acquisitions
- Update Information:
  - Operator: demo
  - Date: 10/24/2003
  - Location: Acquisitions

**Figure 12-14. Properties tab**

Result: The Invoice is created. Operators can now add the line items to this invoice, see [Line Items](#) on [page 12-17](#).

---

## Line Items

The lower half of the **Invoice** dialog box is where you add line items from purchase orders to your invoice. When an item has been added to the invoice information about the item displays as a line in the list box. Such a line is referred to as an invoice line item.

To automatically receive invoice items with the EDI process, see [Receive Items Option](#) on [page 15-12](#).

**NOTE:**

You need to complete the required information on the **Header** tab and save the invoice to the database before you can add line items.

The procedure for adding line items to an invoice is shown in [Procedure 12-2, Adding Line Items to an Invoice](#), on page [12-18](#).



---

**Procedure 12-2. Adding Line Items to an Invoice**

---

Use the following to add line items to an invoice.

1. Search for and display an invoice. See [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) for more information.
2. From the open invoice, click the **Add Line from Order** button at the bottom of the **Invoice** workspace . You can also select **Add Line from Order** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Find Purchase Order** dialog box opens (see [Figure 12-15](#)).

---

---

**Figure 12-15. Find Purchase Order dialog box**

**NOTE:**

This dialog box, when accessed from the invoice, is slightly different than the standard **Find Purchase Order** dialog box, containing a section entitled “Select an Order from which to Invoice”, the **Invoice Against Any Vendor** check box, the

**Include Already Invoiced Line Items** check box, and the **Display Line Items** button.

You can search for purchase orders that reference vendor codes different than the one used on the invoice. This feature allows you to handle invoices sent by a supplier other than the expected vendor. In order for this feature to work, you must click the **Invoice Against Any Vendor** check box.

If the **Invoice Against Any Vendor** check box is not selected, the system automatically limits your search to those approved purchase orders with the same vendor as on the invoice.

- 3. Conduct a search for a Purchase Order, enter your search terms and click the **Find Now** button. See [Procedure 2-1, Performing a standard search](#) for information on how to conduct the search.

Result: All purchase orders that match your searching criteria display in the search results list. The Order Number, Vendor, Order Status, Order Date, Order Type, Order Site and Order ID display for each purchase order in the search results list (see [Figure 12-16](#)).

Find Purchase Order

Find Orders:

Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ PO Number	less	300	

☐ Invoice Against Any Vendor

Select an Order from which to Invoice:

Order Number	Vendor	Order Status	Order Date	Order Type	Order Site	Order ID
157	EBSCO	Received Complete	04/29/2002	Firm Order	Acquisitions	157
159	EBSCO	Approved/Sent	05/02/2002	Continuation	Acquisitions	159

Display Line Items

☐ Include Already Invoiced Line Items

Find Now

New Search

Close

**Figure 12-16. Find Purchase Order dialog box - orders displayed**

**NOTE:**  
To clear the current search criteria and search results in order to conduct a new search, click the **New Search** button.

- 4. Select a purchase order to invoice against and click the **Display Line Items** button.

Result: The bottom of the **Find Purchase Order** dialog box displays the line items of the selected purchase order (see [Figure 12-17](#)).

**NOTE:**

To display line items that have been previously invoiced, you must click in the **Include Already Invoiced Line Items** check box before displaying the line items. This is designed as a safe-guard step to prevent re-invoicing a line item when you don't mean to.

The screenshot shows the 'Find Purchase Order' dialog box. At the top, there is a 'Find Orders:' section with a table for searching by PO Number, Condition, Search For, and Operator. Below this is a 'Select Line Items/Copies to Invoice:' section. It contains a tree structure with expandable items: 'Rational test journal' (1 @ \$125.00, Daryl's 2003 Ledge, \$125.00 Subscription), 'Reserve Desk' (1, 1, 0), and a sub-item '1' (Received Partial, 5/9/2002, no item). The bottom of the dialog has buttons for 'Display Orders', 'MARC...', 'Append', 'Append/Receive', and 'Close'.

Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ PO Number	less	300	

☐ Invoice Against Any Vendor

Select Line Items/Copies to Invoice:

Title	Qty.	Price (Adj)	Copies/Funds	Line Total	Line Type	Line Item Note
[-] Rational test journal	1	@ \$125.00	Daryl's 2003 Ledge	\$125.00	Subscription	
[-] Location			Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Invoiced	
[-] Reserve Desk	1		1	0		
[-] Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location	Item Type	Item ID	
1	Received Partial	5/9/2002				no item

Buttons: Display Orders, MARC..., Append, Append/Receive, Close

**Figure 12-17. Find Purchase Order dialog box - line items displayed**

The line items of the selected purchase order displays in a tree structure or hierarchy in the **Select Line Items/Copies to Invoice** box. Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. There are three levels in the hierarchy.

- The first level of the hierarchy displays the title of the item, the number of copies and the price per copy, the fund(s) used, the line item total and the line item type.
- The second level of the hierarchy displays the intended location(s) for the item, the number of copies order, the number of copies received, and the number of copies invoiced.
- The third level of the hierarchy displays the individual copies for each location, including the copy number, the copy status (for example, Approved), the date on which the status became active, the intended



location for the copy, the item type and the item ID (these last two, item type and item ID, do not contain information until after the copy has been received and an item record has been created.)

5. Select the wanted copies. Each level of the hierarchy has a box beside it. These boxes are used to select the copies that you want to append to the invoice. If you want to specify which copies to append for each location, at the third level of the hierarchy click the box beside each copy that you want to append. If you want to append all copies for a location, click the box beside the second level (the Location level) to select all the copies beneath that location. Or, if you want to select all copies for all locations, click the box beside the first level of the hierarchy.

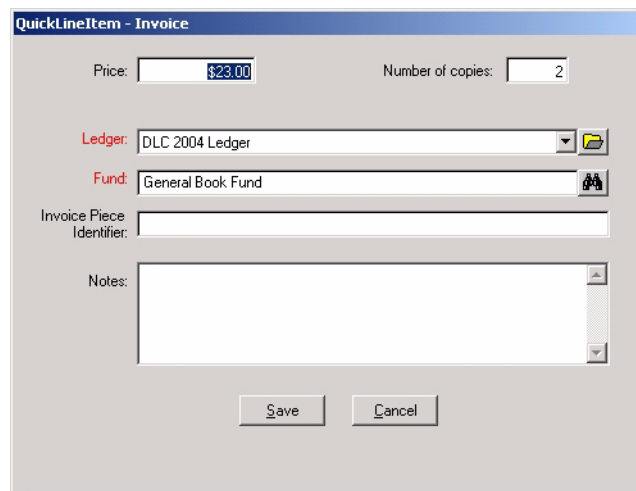
**NOTE:**

To make it easier for you to see how many copies have been received, or how many copies are currently selected to be received or marked, the boxes beside the levels of the hierarchy are either half-full (if only some of the copies have been selected) or completely full (if all of the copies have been selected).

6. Use the option buttons on the bottom of the **Find Purchase Orders** dialog box as follows.
  - a. Click the **Append** button to add the selected line item copies to the invoice. Appending copies to the invoice indicates that it is alright to pay for them. The **Append** button does not effect the purchase order.

**NOTE:**

The Quick Line Item - Invoice dialog box displays (see [Figure 12-18](#)) if the Tools>Workflows settings have been selected to automatically display this dialog box. See [Line Items Tab](#) on [page 19-5](#) for more Workflows information.



---

**Figure 12-18. Quick Line Item - Invoice dialog box**

For a description of the fields on the **Quick Line Item - Invoice** dialog box, see [Table 12-5](#).

**Table 12-5. Quick Line Item - Invoice Dialog Box**

Option	Description
Price	The price displays. For more information, see <a href="#">Price Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-43</a> .
Number of Copies	The number of copies displays. For more information, see <a href="#">Copies/Funds Tab</a> on <a href="#">page 6-48</a> .
Ledger	Enter the ledger containing the Fund that has the money allocated to pay for the item being entered. See <a href="#">Viewing a Fund</a> on <a href="#">page 6-61</a> for more information.
Fund	Enter the allocated fund that is to finance the purchase of this line item. This fund is assigned to a specific ledger.
Invoice Piece Identifier	Enter the identifier for this piece in the invoice.
Notes	Enter any pertinent comments for this line item.

- b. the selected line item copies to the invoice and indicate on the purchase order that the copies have been received.

**NOTE:**

The **Append** and **Append/Receive** buttons are available only if at least one copy is selected.

- c. Click the **MARC** button, available if at least one copy is selected, to view the MARC bibliographic record associated with the line item. Bibliographic data can only be edited in the Cataloging Module. MARC bibliographic records can quickly and easily be opened in the Cataloging module from the Acquisitions module.

**NOTE:**

The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

- d. Click the **Display Orders** button to return to the list of purchase orders that your search found.
7. Click the **Close** button.

Result: If either the **Append** button or **Append/Receive** button was clicked, the appended line item displays in the line item section of the **Invoice** dialog box. See [Figure 12-19](#).

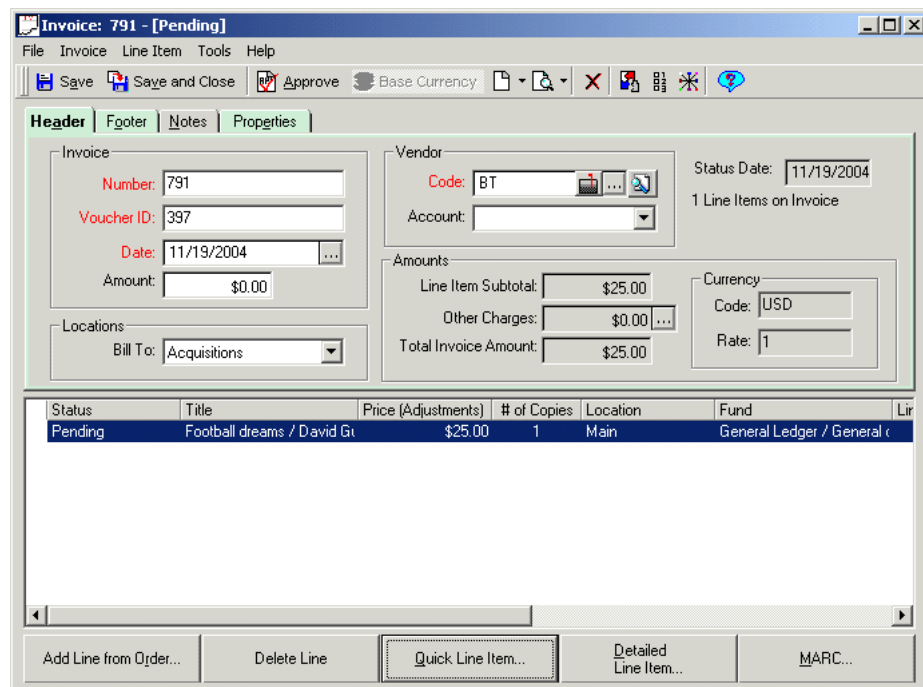


Figure 12-19. Invoice with appended line items

## Entering Line Item Information

After an item has been added to your invoice, it displays as a line of brief information about the item. See [Figure 12-19](#). The line item is divided into a number of columns with each column displaying certain information about the item to provide you meaningful data at a glance.

The columns within a line item contain the following information with a few of the columns are initially blank.

- Line item number and the line item status
- Title of the item
- Any price adjustments
- Number of copies of the item on order
- Intended location(s) (if multiple locations are used, <<Multiple>> displays in the Location(s) column of the line item, alerting you to check the full details of the record for complete information about locations)

- Fund(s) used to purchase the item (if multiple funds are used, <<Multiple>> displays in the Funds column of the line item, alerting you to check the full details of the record for complete information about funds)
- Total amount of the line item (all copies and adjustments)
- Line item type
- Piece Identifier
- The number of the purchase order on which the line item is listed

**NOTE:**

If a single line item is highlighted in the line items section of the invoice, you can quickly display the order on which the line item is listed by selecting **Order** from the **Line Item** menu.

- Any additional notes (entered on the **Notes** tab of the full line item view; see [Notes Tab](#) on [page 6-9](#))

**Changing the Line Item Column Sequence**

In order to make the information that is most relevant to your activities visible for the duration that an invoice is displayed, you can temporarily change the sequence in which the columns of the line items appear. These changes in sequence are not saved when the invoice is closed. Rather, the next time the invoice is displayed, the columns of the line items again appear in the initial sequence listed above.

To change the sequence of the line item information, click the header of a column (appears at the very top of the line item section) and drag it to the appropriate position in the line. The line item information adjusts accordingly.

Also, if some of the information in a line item column is not visible due there being too much information for the width of the column, you can hold your mouse cursor over the column to display the entire information.

**Expanding the Line Item Section**

If there are numerous line items on your invoice, you can expand the line item section to make more of the line items visible.

To expand the line item section of your invoice, hold your mouse cursor just above the line item section. When held in this position, the mouse cursor appears as a small horizontal bar with an up arrow above it and a down arrow below it. Click and hold down the mouse button as it is in this position and drag the cursor up on the invoice. The line item section expands to the point where you drag the cursor. To reduce the size of the line item section, perform the same process, but drag the cursor further down on the invoice.

[Table 12-6](#) contains a list of page numbers on which to look for explanations of the tabs on the **Line Item** dialog box:

**Table 12-6. Page References for Tabs of Line Item dialog box**

Bib Record Tab	<a href="#">6-38</a>
Price Tab	<a href="#">6-43</a>
Copies/Funds Tab	<a href="#">6-48</a>
Copy Status Tab	<a href="#">6-62</a>
Type Tab	<a href="#">6-64</a>
Delivery Options Tab	<a href="#">6-70</a>
Notes Tab	<a href="#">6-72</a>
Order Tab	<a href="#">6-74</a>
Payment History Tab	<a href="#">6-76</a>
Receive/Mark Tab	<a href="#">6-77</a>
Problems Tab	<a href="#">6-79</a>
Claims Tab	<a href="#">6-81</a>
Properties Tab	<a href="#">6-82</a>



---

### Procedure 12-3. Adding information to the line item

---

Use the following to add information to the line item on the invoice.

1. From an open invoice, do the following.
  - a. Select the line item
  - b. Click the **Detailed Line Item** button, select **Detailed Line Item** from the **Line Item** menu.

Result: The **Line Item** details dialog box opens. See [Figure 12-20](#).

**Line Item - JAMA : the journal of the American Medical Association.**

File View Tools Help

Save Save and Close

Problems Claims Properties

Delivery Options Notes Order Payment History Receive/Mark

**Bib Record** Price Copies/Fynds Copy Status Type

Title: JAMA : the journal of the American Medical Association.

Author:

Edition:

Publisher: American Medical Associat

Place: Chicago : System No: (OCoLC)ocm01124917

Date: 1960 LCCN: 82643544 sn 78004483

Series: Bib Record ID: 18858

Check the Standard Number you wish to appear on the printed Purchase Order

☒ ISSN: 0098-7484 ☐ GPO Stock Number:

☐ ISBN: ☐ Publication Number:

☐ CODEN: JAMAAP ☐ Std Technical Report No.:

Change Bib Record MARC... Save

**Figure 12-20. Line Item dialog box**

2. Click the tab on which you want to enter data.

Result: The detailed dialog box for the selected tab displays.

3. Click **Save** when you have completed entering all the additional line item data.

Result: The **Invoice** dialog box displays and additional information has been saved for the selected line item on the invoice.

### Searching for Line Items from an Invoice

You can search for line items directly from an invoice of any status. This feature is useful, for example, in a circumstance where an invoice has many line items. Rather than scrolling through the entire list of line items, you can conduct a search for a particular line item on the invoice.

The procedure for searching for line items from an invoice is shown in [Procedure 2-14, Searching for Line Items from an Invoice](#), on page [2-112](#).

## Entering Other Invoice Charges

---

The **Invoice Fees** dialog box can be used to apply any charges or discounts in addition to the line item costs (such as shipping costs and tax) or to adjust any existing additional charges or discounts. You can credit a pending invoice by entering a discount price adjustment in the **Other Charges** field.

- The procedure for adding a price adjustment is shown in [Procedure 12-4, Adding a Price Adjustment](#), on page [12-28](#).
- The procedure for editing a price adjustment is shown in [Procedure 12-5, Editing a Price Adjustment](#), on page [12-31](#).
- The procedure for removing a price adjustment is shown in [Procedure 12-6, Removing a Price Adjustment](#), on page [12-32](#).



### Procedure 12-4. Adding a Price Adjustment

---

Use the following to add a price adjustment.

1. On the **Header** or **Footer** tab of the invoice, click the **ellipsis** button beside the **Other Charges** field.

Result: The **Invoice Fees** dialog box opens (see [Figure 12-21](#)).

---

---

**Figure 12-21. Invoice Fees dialog box**

2. Click the **Adjust >>>** button beside the **Adjustments Subtotal** field.

Result: The **Invoice Fees** dialog box expands to include an Adjustment Details section (see [Figure 12-22](#)). You can return the **Invoice Fees** dialog box to its initial size at any time by clicking the <<< **Adjust** button.



Figure 12-22. Invoice Fees dialog box - expanded to display Adjustment Details

- 3. Click the **Add** button to add a price adjustment.

Result: The **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box opens (see [Figure 12-23](#)).

Figure 12-23. Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box

- 4. Select a charge type from the drop-down list in the **Charge Type** field.
- 5. From the drop-down list in the **Application Method** field, select how you want to apply the charge type. This depends on whether you are applying a percentage of an amount or adding/crediting a straight amount.

6. Enter the amount of the charge in the **Amount** field. To make the amount a negative (a credit rather than a debit), press the minus (-) sign on your keyboard. If you selected Discount as your Charge Type, the amount is automatically negative.

The **Adjustment** field reflects the charge type and application method applied to the value that you entered in the **Amount** field.

The **Adjusted Price** field reflects the total amount of the additional charges, after the Adjustment amount of this and any other price adjustments have been calculated. The amount in this field corresponds to the amount that displays in the **Total** field on the **Invoice Fees** dialog box.

7. There are three ways you can choose a fund for the price adjustment: you can manually type a fund code in the **Commit to Fund** field, you can select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy, or you can search for a fund.

- If you want to manually type a fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field, you must first select a ledger from the drop-down list in the **Ledger** field. After you have selected a ledger, type the fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field. Because typing the fund information into the field is often much faster than navigating a complex ledger/fund hierarchy, this feature helps improve the efficiency of your line item processing.
- If you want to select a fund from a ledger/fund hierarchy rather than typing the fund code into the **Commit to Fund** field, click the **folder** button beside the **Ledger** field. This opens a hierarchy of available ledgers and funds. To aid you in selecting an appropriate fund, each fund's available balance displays within the hierarchy.

Click the plus (+) signs to expand the levels of the hierarchy and click the minus (-) signs to close the levels of the hierarchy. Navigate the hierarchy and select a fund. You cannot select a ledger or summary fund, but must select an allocated fund (one with a dollar sign).

After selecting a fund from the hierarchy, the ledger to which the fund belongs displays in the **Ledger** field and the fund displays in the **Commit to Fund** field.

- If you want to search for a fund, click the **search button** (the binoculars) beside the **Commit to Fund** field. The **Select Fund** dialog box opens. Search for a fund. After selecting a fund, the ledger to which the fund belongs displays in the **Ledger** field and the fund displays in the **Commit to Fund** field.

8. To complete the price adjustment, click the **OK** button. To cancel the price adjustment, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: After completing the price adjustment, details about the adjustment appear as a line in the Adjustment Details section of the **Invoice Fees** dialog box (see [Figure 12-24](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Invoice Fees' dialog box. At the top, there are fields for 'Invoice Number' (ca121), 'Bill Location' (Acquisitions), and 'Line items' (0). Below these, there are three summary fields: 'Line Item SubTotal' (\$0.00), 'Adjustments Subtotal' (\$10.00), and 'Total' (\$10.00). The 'Adjustments Subtotal' and 'Total' fields are highlighted in green. To the right of these fields are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. Below the summary fields is a section titled 'Adjustment Details:' containing a table with the following data:

Charge Type	How to Apply?	Amount	Adjustment	Adjusted Price	Fund Usage
shipping charge	Amount	10.00	10.00	10.00	CA_Ledger/CA_fund

Below the table are three buttons: 'Add...', 'Edit...', and 'Remove'. At the bottom right, there is a checkbox labeled 'One fund covers all'.

**Figure 12-24. Invoice Fees dialog box - adjustments**

9. To add another price adjustment, repeat steps 3 - 8.

**NOTE:**  
If you select the **One fund covers all** check box, the latest fund you have selected (whether while adding your latest price adjustment or while editing an existing price adjustment) is used for all previous price adjustments as well. For example, if you select the Books fund of the 2004 ledger for your latest price adjustment, a previous price adjustment that used the Misc. fund of the 2004 ledger then also uses the Books fund of the 2004 ledger.

10. After you have finished adding any price adjustments, you must click the **OK** button to save the information to the database and close the **Invoice Fees** dialog box.

To cancel the price adjustments you have added and close the **Invoice Fees** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If you clicked **OK**, the price adjustment is added.



**Procedure 12-5. Editing a Price Adjustment**

Use the following to edit a price adjustment.

1. Select the adjustment that you want to edit from the list in the Adjustment Details section and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The **Add/Edit Adjustment** dialog box opens.

2. Follow steps 4 - 8 of Adding a Price Adjustment on page [12-28](#).
3. After you have finished editing any price adjustments, you must click the **OK** button to save the information to the database and close the **Invoice Fees** dialog box.

To cancel your edits and close the **Invoice Fees** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If you clicked **OK** the price adjustment is edited.

---



---

#### Procedure 12-6. Removing a Price Adjustment

---

Use the following to remove a price adjustment.

1. Select the adjustment that you want to remove from the list in the Adjustment Details section and click the **Remove** button.

Result: A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

2. Click the **Yes** button to continue. Click the **No** button to cancel the removal of the adjustment.
3. Delete any price adjustments and click the **OK** button to save your deletions to the database and close the **Invoice Fees** dialog box.

To cancel your deletions and close the **Invoice Fees** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: If you clicked **OK** the price adjustment is removed.

---

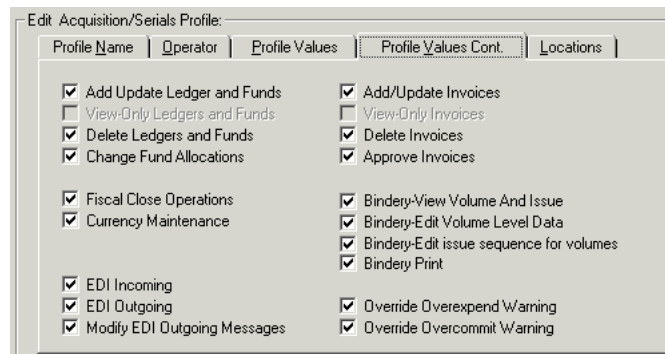
## Approving an Invoice

Before an invoice is approved, the funds used on the invoice are pending expenditures. Approving an invoice actually expends the funds used on the invoice. Therefore, you should approve an invoice only when you are ready to pay for the items.

When you approve an invoice, you have the option to receive all of the line items on the invoice. A library often receives all of the items that it invoices. This capability eliminates the need to visit each line item separately to perform the receiving function.

## Security to Approve Invoices

To be authorized to approve invoices, the **Approve Invoices** check box (Figure 12-25) must be selected in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



**Figure 12-25. Profile Values Cont. tab**

### NOTE:

You are blocked from approving an invoice if the price in the **Amount** field (which is usually taken from the printed invoice received from the vendor) does not match the sum of the line item costs and other charges applied by the system in the **Total Invoice Amount** field. This is a precaution to make you aware of a discrepancy between the amount the vendor expects you to pay and the amount actually contained on the invoice. You are also blocked from approving an invoice if the fund(s) used on the invoice have been expended or have expired. A

message displays explaining the reason for the block. After an invoice has been approved, you are restricted from editing many of the invoice fields.

The procedure for approving an invoice is shown in [Procedure 12-7, Approving an Invoice](#), on page [12-34](#).



---

### Procedure 12-7. Approving an Invoice

---

Use the following to approve a pending invoice.

1. From an open pending invoice, verify that the amount entered in the **Amounts** field matches the sum of the line item costs and other charges in the **Total Invoice Amount** field (see [Figure 12-26](#)).

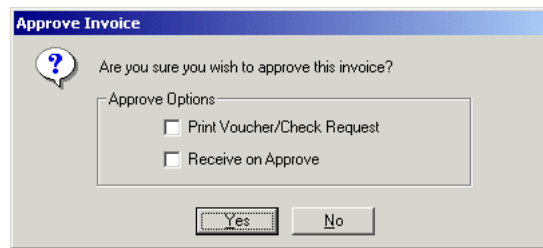
The screenshot shows a software window titled "Invoice: ca121 - [Pending]". It features a menu bar with "File", "Invoice", "Line Item", "Tools", and "Help". Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for "Save", "Save and Close", "Approve", "Base Currency", and other functions. The main area has tabs for "Header", "Footer", "Notes", and "Properties", with "Header" currently selected. The "Header" tab contains several input fields: "Invoice Number" (ca121), "Voucher ID" (192), "Date" (10/27/2003), "Amount" (\$30.00), "Vendor Code" (BT), "Account" (empty), "Status Date" (10/27/2003), and "Currency" (USD). There is also a "Locations" section with "Bill To" set to "Acquisitions". A section titled "Amounts" displays "Line Item Subtotal" (\$20.00), "Other Charges" (\$10.00), and "Total Invoice Amount" (\$30.00). A checkbox for "Display Search Results Only (1)" is also visible.

---

**Figure 12-26. Pending invoice**

2. Click the **Approve** button or select **Approve** from the **Invoice** menu. The **Approve** button is located on the toolbar at the top of **Invoice** workspace.

Result: The **Approve Invoice** dialog box opens (see [Figure 12-27](#)).



**Figure 12-27. Approve Invoice dialog box**

3. Click in the **Print Voucher/Check Request** check box to have a voucher and check request print once the invoice is approved. See the **Approve Processing** tab in your Session Workflows ([Approve Processing Tab on page 19-8.](#)) to set a default for this check box.
4. The **Receive on Approve** check box allows you to automatically receive all monograph line items on the invoice when the invoice is approved. See the **Approve Processing** tab in your Session Workflows ([Approve Processing Tab on page 19-8.](#)) to set a default for this check box.
5. Click **Yes** to approve the invoice. Click **No** to cancel the approving of the invoice.

Result: After the invoice is approved, and after any duplicate order information is resolved, a number of buttons appear below the line item section of the invoice. These buttons allow an authorized operator to receive, mark and unmark line items right from the **Invoice** dialog box (see [Figure 12-28](#)).

**Invoice: ca121 - [Approved]**

File Invoice Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties

Invoice  
 Number: ca121  
 Voucher ID: 192  
 Date: 10/27/2003  
 Amount: \$30.00

Vendor  
 Code: BT  
 Account:

Status Date: 10/27/2003  
 1 Line Items on Invoice  
☐ Display Search Results Only (1)

Locations  
 Bill To: Acquisitions

Amounts  
 Line Item Subtotal: \$20.00  
 Other Charges: \$10.00  
 Total Invoice Amount: \$30.00

Currency  
 Code: USD  
 Rate: 1

Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund
Approved	Impeachment : the constit	\$20.00	1	Main	CA_Ledger / CA_fund

Recv/Mark... Unmark Generate Claim Update Claim Generate Cancel Generate Return Details... MARC...

Figure 12-28. Approved invoice

## Processing Marked and Claimed Items from an Approved Invoice

When an invoice is approved, the following buttons appear below the line item section: **Unmark**, **Generate Claim**, **Update Claim**, **Generate Cancel**, and **Generate Return**. These buttons, which are identical to the buttons that appear on the **Problems** and **Claims** workspaces, allow you to process marked and claimed line item copies and serial issues directly from the invoice. This can help save valuable time by eliminating the need to search for the items on the **Problems** or **Claims** workspace.

See [Processing Marked and Claimed Items from Approved Purchase Orders and Invoices](#) on [page 11-27](#).



## Completing an Invoice

Completing an invoice makes any further changes to the invoice impossible. Once an invoice is completed, you cannot make any changes to claims or check-in items associated with the invoice.

In order for an invoice to be completed, it must have a status of Approved.



### Procedure 12-8. Completing an invoice

Use the following to complete an invoice.

1. From an open approved invoice, select **Complete** from the **Invoice** menu to complete an invoice (see [Figure 12-29](#)).

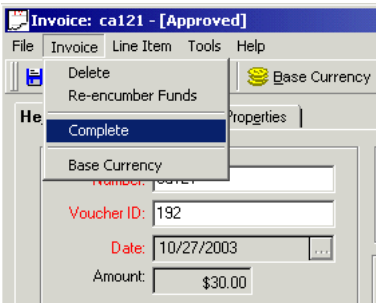


Figure 12-29. Invoice menu

Result: A confirmation message displays (see [Figure 12-30](#)).

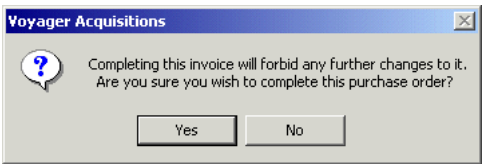
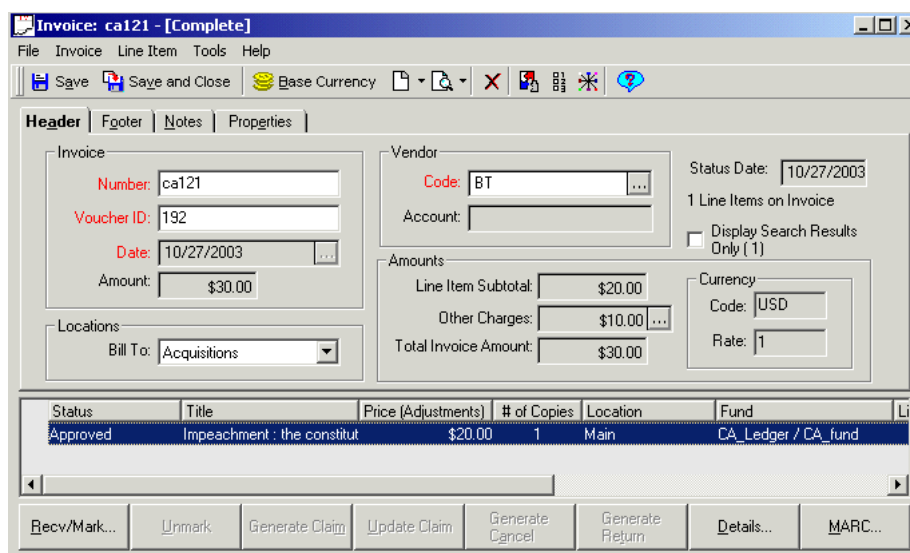


Figure 12-30. Confirmation message when completing an invoice

- Click **Yes** to continue completing the invoice. If you do not want to complete the invoice, click **No**.

Result: If you clicked **Yes** the invoice is completed (see [Figure 12-31](#)).



---

**Figure 12-31. Completed invoice**

---

## Deleting an Invoice

---

Deleting an invoice impacts a funds pending or total expenditures only, it does not affect the Purchase Order.

If the Invoice status is	Then
Pending	The fund's pending expenditures are removed.
Approved	The fund's total expenditures are removed.
Canceled	There is no impact on the fund's expenditures.
Complete	The fund's expenditures remain.

Fiscal period or fund date rules are not checked. This allows you to put money into a fund that may not be current with your fiscal period.

---

## Security to Delete an Invoice

---

To be authorized to delete invoices, the **Delete Invoices** check box must be selected in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



---

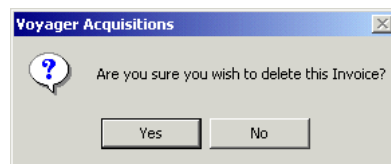
### Procedure 12-9. Deleting an invoice

---

Use the following to delete an invoice.

1. From an open invoice, click the **Delete** button (X) in the toolbar of the invoice or select **Delete** from the **Invoice** menu.

Result: A confirmation message displays ([Figure 12-32](#)) if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.



---

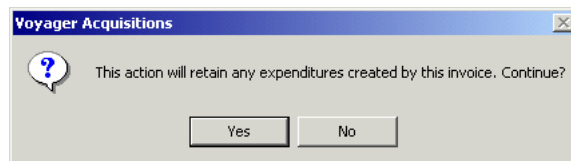
**Figure 12-32. Confirmation message when deleting an invoice**

2. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If you clicked **Yes** the invoice is deleted

**NOTE:**

A second message appears stating that expenditures will be retained ([Figure 12-33](#)) if the status of the invoice was complete. In this case click **Yes** to continue the deletion, if you do not want to continue, click **No**.



---

**Figure 12-33. Deleting an invoice still retains expenditures**

---

## **Item Creation and Maintenance**

---

Item records can be created and maintained from the following three locations on an invoice.

- The **Receive/Mark** dialog box that opens after selecting a line item and clicking the **Receive** button at the bottom of the approved invoice
- The **Copy Status** tab of the detailed view of a line item
- The **Receive/Mark** tab of the detailed view of a line item

See [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#).

---

## **Viewing and Editing MARC Records (Cataloging in Acquisitions)**

# **13**

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>13-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>13-2</b>
<b>Requirements for Cataloging in Acquisitions</b>	<b>13-2</b>
<b>Displaying MARC Records</b>	<b>13-4</b>
• MARC Bibliographic Records	13-4
• MARC Holding Records	13-12
<b>http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server</b>	<b>13-16</b>



---

## Viewing and Editing MARC Records (Cataloging in Acquisitions)

# 13

---

### Introduction

You can view MARC bibliographic and holding records from many locations within the Acquisitions module (see [Displaying MARC Records](#) on [page 13-4](#).) In addition, if certain requirements are met, you can edit MARC bibliographic and holding records (see [Requirements for Cataloging in Acquisitions](#) on [page 13-2](#).) This editing of MARC records is a co-operative procedure between the Acquisitions and Cataloging modules. A MARC record selected in the Acquisitions module can be automatically opened for viewing or editing in the Cataloging module.

Cataloging in Acquisitions (or Cat in the Acq) can help to greatly improve your workflow. With Cat in the Acq, a single operator can perform both Acquisitions and Cataloging functions from a single workstation. For example, after receiving a serial issue in Serials Check-In, you can edit the MARC holding record in Cataloging to add or delete any necessary or unnecessary fields.

The Acquisitions in Cataloging (or Acq in the Cat) function provides the second half of the two-way communication between the Acquisitions and Cataloging modules, improving workflow even further. Acq in the Cat allows you to pull up and edit a line item in the Acquisitions module from the associated bibliographic or holdings record in the Cataloging module. For more information, see the *Voyager Cataloging User's Guide*.

Lastly, if configured, operators can use an http POST request to send a MARC record to a Web server. Sending a POST request can be done from any of the Voyager modules where a MARC record is visible.

## **Purpose of this Chapter**

---

This chapter covers

- Requirements for Cataloging in Acquisitions
- Displaying MARC records in Acquisitions
  - Bibliographic records
  - Holdings records
- Creating an http POST request to send the MARC record to a Web server

## **Requirements for Cataloging in Acquisitions**

---

A few requirements must be met in order for MARC bibliographic and holding records to automatically open in the Cataloging module when selected for display by an operator in the Acquisitions module.

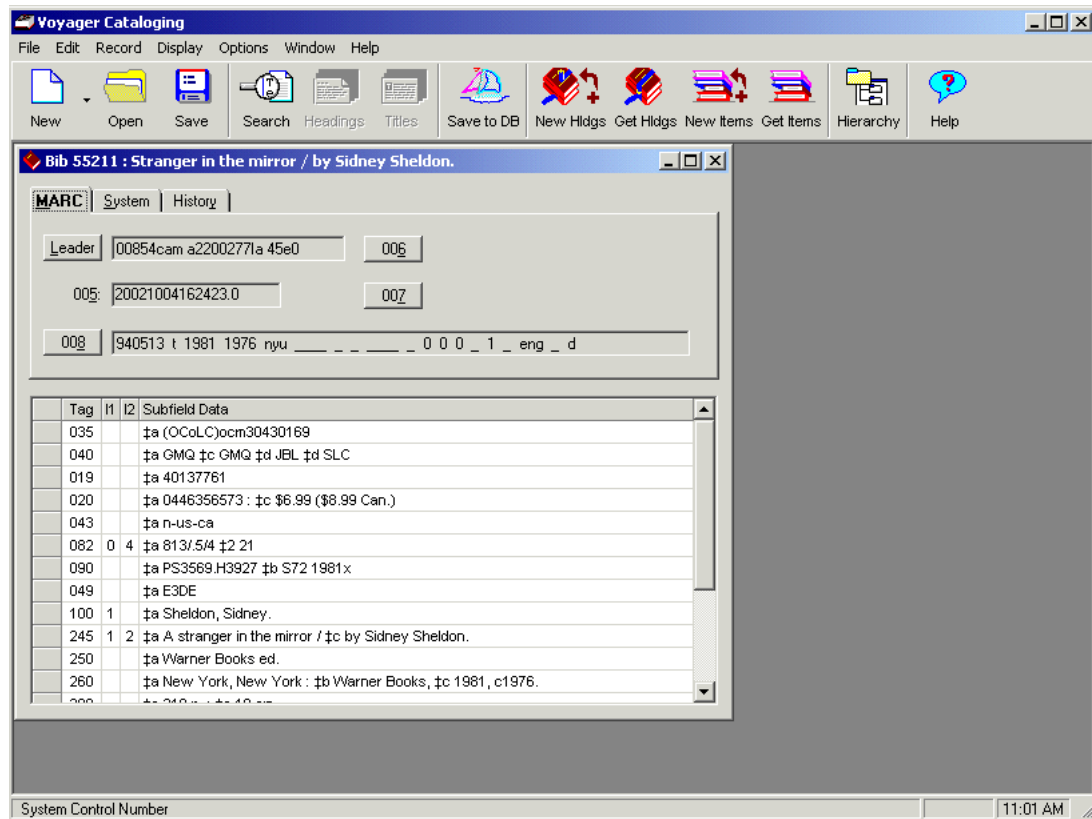
- The Cataloging module must be running.
- The Cataloging module must be logged in with the same Operator ID as the Acquisitions module (for example, if you log into Acquisitions with "Clerk/Clerk", you must log into Cataloging with "Clerk/Clerk").
- The Cataloging Operator must have the security to view the type of MARC record. Cataloging Operator security is determined in the System Administration module. For information about Cataloging security, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### **NOTE:**

You must have additional Cataloging security in order to edit or delete MARC records.

If all requirements are met, a MARC record that the operator selects to view in Acquisitions opens in the Cataloging module ([Figure 13-1](#)), where any Cataloging function that the operator has security for can be performed on the record.





**Figure 13-1. MARC record displayed in Cataloging**

However, if any of the above mentioned requirements are not met, the standard MARC record view ([Figure 13-2](#)) displays in Acquisitions.

The view of the MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Bibliographic Record #55211". At the top, there are dropdown menus for "Font" (set to Arial) and "Linkresolver", and a "Send Record To" button. Below this is a "Bib" section with a "Leader" row containing checkboxes for "c", "a", "m", "l", and "a", followed by the number "006:". Below the leader is a row with "007:", "008: 940513t19811976nyu", and "000 1 eng d". The main part of the window is a table of MARC tags. The table has columns for "Tag", "Ind 1", "Ind 2", and "Bibliographic Data". The data rows are as follows:

Tag	Ind 1	Ind 2	Bibliographic Data
035			\$a (OCoLC)ocm30430169
040			\$a GMQ \$c GMQ \$d JBL \$d SLC
019			\$a 40137761
020			\$a 0446356573 : \$c \$6.99 (\$8.99 Can.)
043			\$a n-us-ca
082	0	4	\$a 813/.5/4 \$2 21
090			\$a PS3569.H3927 \$b S72 1981x
049			\$a E3DE
100	1		\$a Sheldon, Sidney.
245	1	2	\$a A stranger in the mirror / \$c by Sidney Sheldon.
250			\$a Warner Books ed.
260			\$a New York, New York : \$b Warner Books, \$c 1981, c1976.

At the bottom of the window are "Close" and "Print" buttons.

---

Figure 13-2. Standard MARC record view

## Displaying MARC Records

---

MARC bibliographic and holding records can be displayed from numerous locations within the Acquisitions module. To be exact, MARC bibliographic records can be displayed from ten locations and MARC holding records can be displayed from four locations.

### MARC Bibliographic Records

---

MARC bibliographic records can be displayed from the following locations.

- The **MARC** button ([Figure 13-3](#)) in the Line Items section of a Purchase Order. This button can be used to display MARC bibliographic records associated with the line items on a purchase order. See [Adding Line Items to a Purchase Order](#) on [page 6-15](#) for more information about the Line Items section of a purchase order.

**Purchase Order: 241 - [Received Complete]**

File Order Line Item Tools Help

Save Save and Close Quick Line Item On Base Currency

**Header** Footer Notes Properties Vendor History Related Invoices

Order:  
 Number: 241  
 Type: Approval  
 Site: Acquisitions

Vendor:  
 Code: BT  
 Account:

Status Date: 2/24/2003  
 1 Line Items on Order

Locations:  
 Ship To:  
 Bill To:

Amounts:  
 Line Item Subtotal: \$25.00  
 Other Charges: \$1.25  
 Total Order Amount: \$26.25

Currency:  
 Code: USD  
 Rate: 1

Line #/Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund	Lin
1 / Received Compl	Stranger in the mirror / by Si	\$25.00	1	Main	03 Test Ledger / 03 Gener	

Recv/Mark... Unmark Generate Claim Update Claim Generate Cancel Generate Return Details... MARC...

**Figure 13-3. Line Items section of a Purchase Order - MARC button displayed**

- The **MARC** button on the **Bib Record** tab (Figure 13-4) of a line item, which displays brief descriptive data from the bibliographic record associated with the line item. See [Bib Record Tab](#) on [page 6-38](#) for more information.

Line Item - Biological aspects of mental disorder / Solomon H. Snyder.

File View Tools Help

Save Save and Close Print Find

Problems Claims Properties Delivery Options Notes Order Payment History Receive/Mark

**Bib Record** Price Copies/Funds Copy Status Type

Title: Biological aspects of mental disorder / Solomon H. Snyder.

Author: Snyder, Solomon H., 1938-

Edition:

Publisher: Oxford University Press.

Place: New York : System No: 80011981 //v83

Date: 1980 LCCN: 80011981

Series: Bib Record ID: 14485

Check the Standard Number you wish to appear on the printed Purchase Order

☐ ISBN:  ☐ GPQ Stock Number:

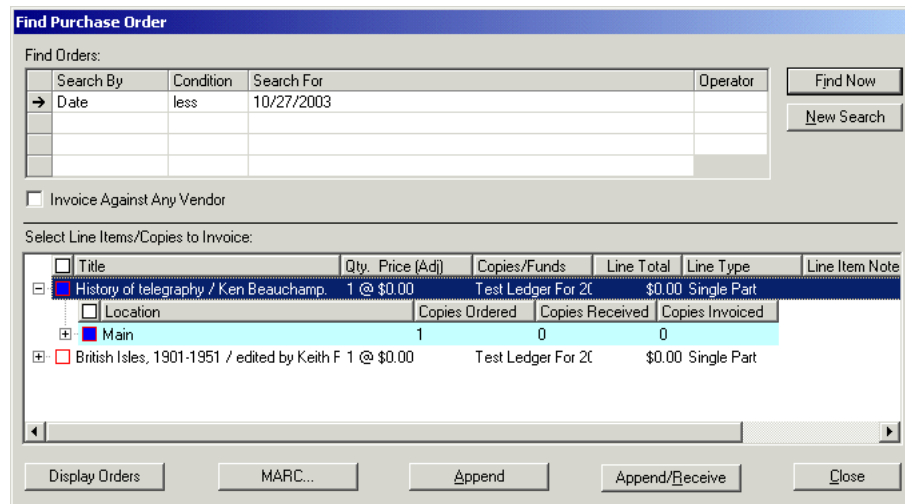
☐ ISBN: 0195027159 ☐ Publication Number:

☐ CODEN:  ☐ Std Technical Report No:

Change Bib Record MARC... Save

Figure 13-4. Line Item dialog box - Bib Record Tab

- The **MARC** button on the **Find Purchase Order** dialog box ([Figure 13-5](#)). The **Find Purchase Order** dialog box is used when searching for purchase orders to append to an invoice. See [Adding Line Items to an Invoice](#) on [page 12-18](#) for more information.



**Find Purchase Order**

Find Orders:

Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ Date	less	10/27/2003	

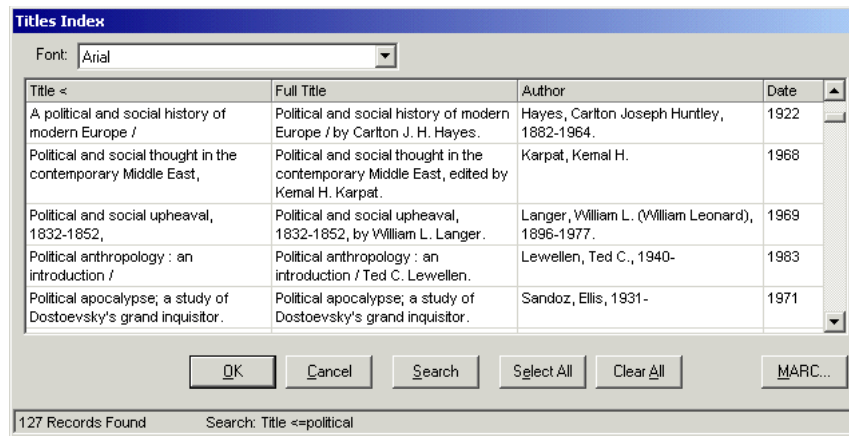
☐ Invoice Against Any Vendor

Select Line Items/Copies to Invoice:

Title	Qty.	Price (Adj)	Copies/Funds	Line Total	Line Type	Line Item Note
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> History of telegraphy / Ken Beauchamp.	1	@ \$0.00	Test Ledger For 20	\$0.00	Single Part	
<input type="checkbox"/> Location			Copies Ordered	Copies Received	Copies Invoiced	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Main	1		0	0		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> British Isles, 1901-1951 / edited by Keith F	1	@ \$0.00	Test Ledger For 20	\$0.00	Single Part	

Figure 13-5. Find Purchase Order dialog box - MARC button displayed

- The **MARC** button on the **Titles Index** dialog box ([Figure 13-6](#)), which displays as a result of any non-Headings search done in Acquisitions. See [Titles Index Dialog Box](#) on [page 2-28](#) for more information.



**Titles Index**

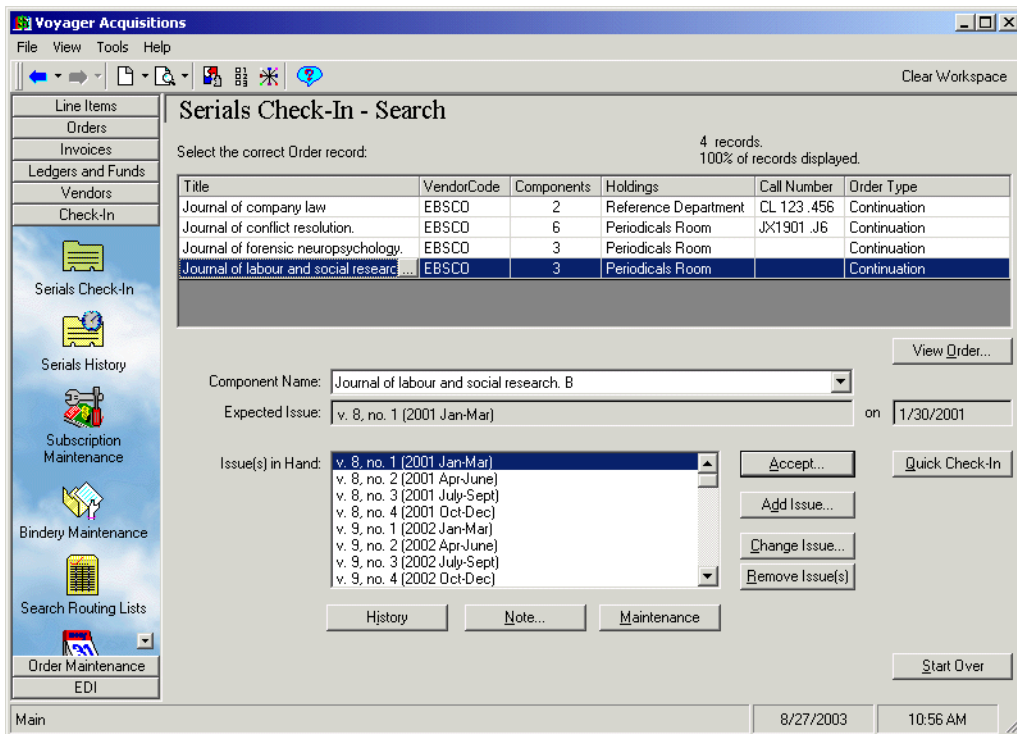
Font: Arial

Title <	Full Title	Author	Date
A political and social history of modern Europe /	Political and social history of modern Europe / by Carlton J. H. Hayes.	Hayes, Carlton Joseph Huntley, 1882-1964.	1922
Political and social thought in the contemporary Middle East,	Political and social thought in the contemporary Middle East, edited by Kemal H. Karpat.	Karpat, Kemal H.	1968
Political and social upheaval, 1832-1852,	Political and social upheaval, 1832-1852, by William L. Langer.	Langer, William L. (William Leonard), 1896-1977.	1969
Political anthropology : an introduction /	Political anthropology : an introduction / Ted C. Lewellen.	Lewellen, Ted C., 1940-	1983
Political apocalypse; a study of Dostoevsky's grand inquisitor.	Political apocalypse; a study of Dostoevsky's grand inquisitor.	Sandoz, Ellis, 1931-	1971

127 Records Found Search: Title <=political

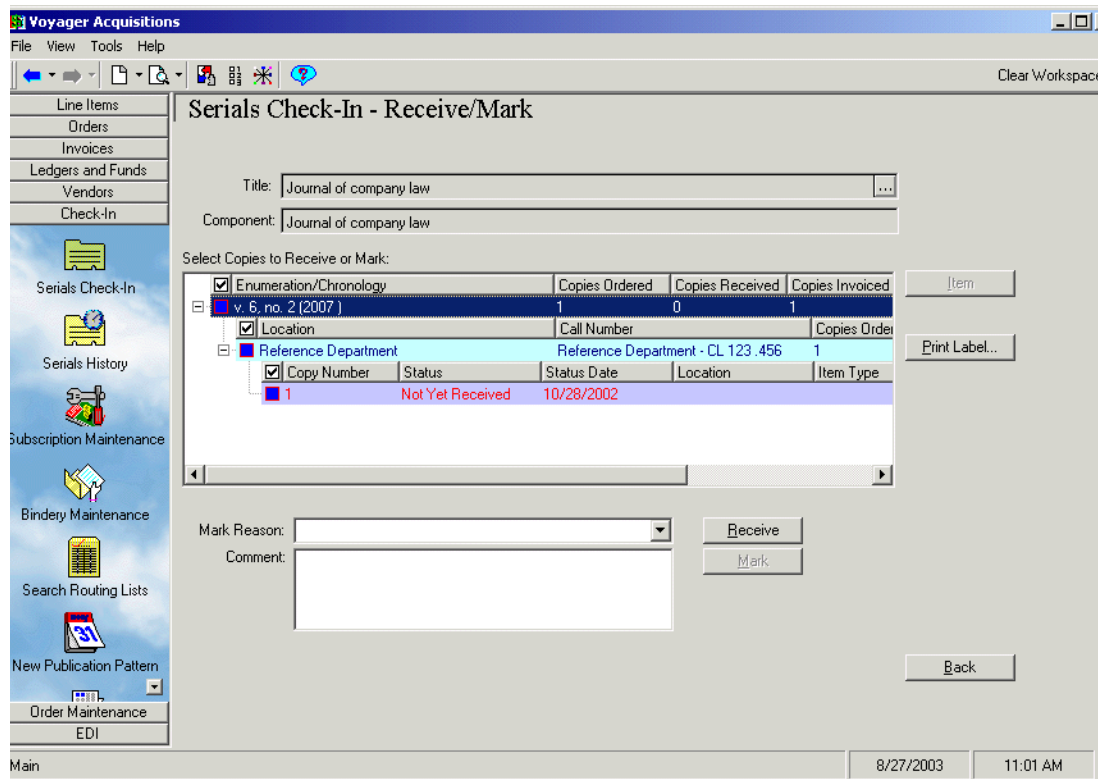
Figure 13-6. Title Index dialog box - MARC button displayed

- The **ellipsis** button in the Title column ([Figure 13-7](#)) of the list of records that displays after searching for records in Serials Check-In. See [Checking In Serials](#) on [page 9-4](#).



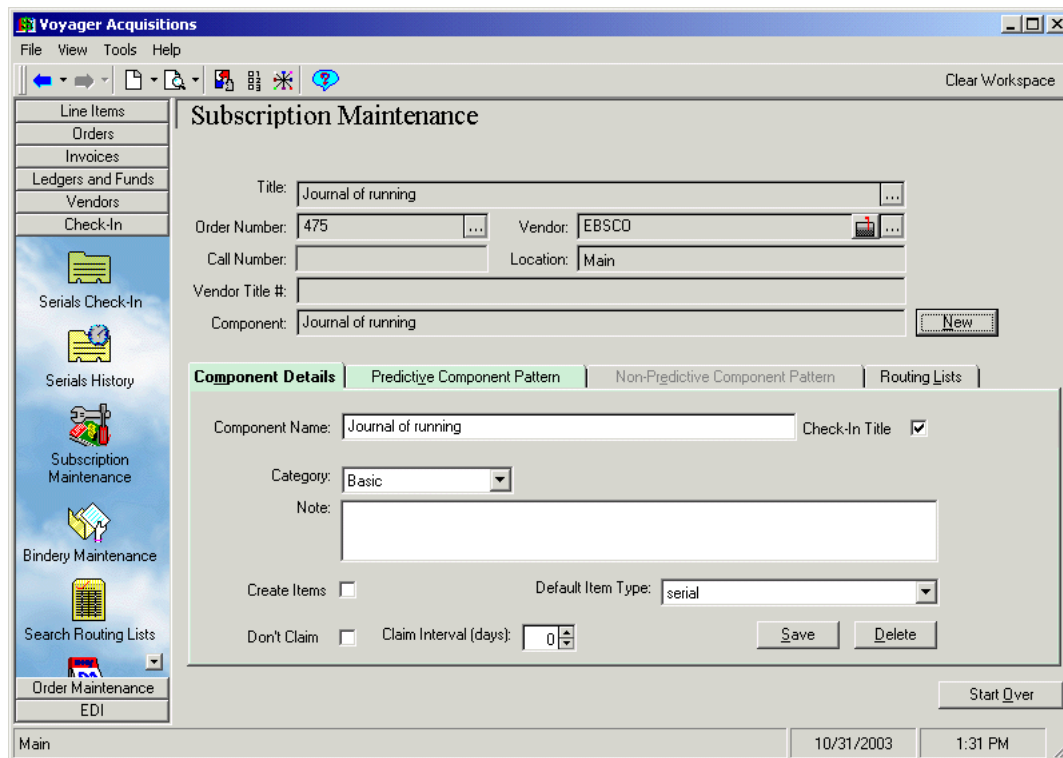
**Figure 13-7. Serials Check-In workspace- ellipsis displayed in the Title column of the list of records**

- The **ellipsis** button beside the **Title** field at the top of the **Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark** workspace ([Figure 13-7](#)), which displays after clicking the **Accept** button on the **Serials Check-In** workspace. See [Figure 9-6](#) on [page 9-10](#) for more information about the **Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark** workspace.



**Figure 13-8. Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark workspace - ellipsis displayed beside the Title field**

- The **ellipsis** button beside the **Title** field on the **Serials Check-In - Recap** workspace. The **Recap** workspace opens after clicking the **Receive** button or the **Continue** button on the **Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark** workspace if the **Display Check-In Recap** workspace check box is selected on the **Serials Check-In** tab of your Session Workflows. This screen allows you to review the issues you just received and view information about the next expected issue.
- The **ellipsis** button beside the **Title** field at the top of the **Subscription Maintenance** workspace (see [Figure 13-9](#)). See [Subscription Maintenance](#) on [page 8-1](#) for more information.



**Figure 13-9. Subscription Maintenance workspace - ellipsis displayed beside the Title field**

- The **ellipsis** button beside the **Title** field at the top of the **Serials History** workspace (see [Figure 13-10](#)). There are numerous ways to display the **Serials History** workspace. See [Serials History Information](#) on [page 9-27](#) for more information.



**Serials History - Details**

Title:  Maintenance

Component Name:  Holdings...

Location:

Call Number:

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapsed
+ v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 2 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No
+ v. 1, no. 1 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No

Edit Issue... Collapse Display in OPAC Unreceive Item...

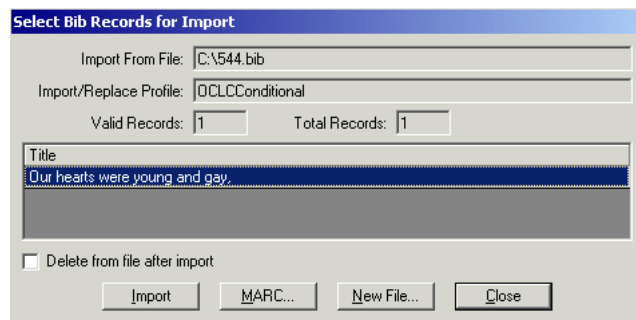
Start Over

**Figure 13-10. Serials History workspace - ellipsis displayed beside the Title field**

- The **MARC** button on the **Select Bib Records for Import** dialog box (see [Figure 13-11](#)) which is used to import bibliographic records into the database from a file.

**NOTE:**

Only the standard Acquisitions MARC view is used when the **MARC** button on the **Select Bib Records for Import** dialog box is pressed. Even if the requirements for the Cataloging in Acquisitions feature are met (see [Requirements for Cataloging in Acquisitions](#) on [page 13-2](#)), the MARC record can only be opened in the Acquisitions view because it does not yet exist in the database, but rather resides in a file.



---

**Figure 13-11. Select Bib Record(s) for Import dialog box - MARC button displayed**

## MARC Holding Records

---

MARC holding records can be displayed by clicking the **MARC** button on the **Link To Holdings** dialog box. The **Link To Holdings** dialog box can be displayed from the following locations.

- The **ellipsis** button beside the **Link to Holdings** field on the **Quick Line Item** dialog box. The Quick Line Item feature provides a way for you to improve the efficiency of line item and purchase order creation by presenting only required and commonly-used information. The **Quick Line Item** dialog box opens ([Figure 13-12](#)) allowing you to enter basic line item information in a single spot rather than over a number of tabs. See [Quick Line Item](#) on [page 6-28](#) for more information.

**Quick Line Item For Purchase Orders**

List Price:  PrePay Amount per copy:

Intended Location:

Number of Copies:

Link to Holdings:  ...

Ship To:

Ledger:

Commit to Fund:

Line Item Type:

Requester:

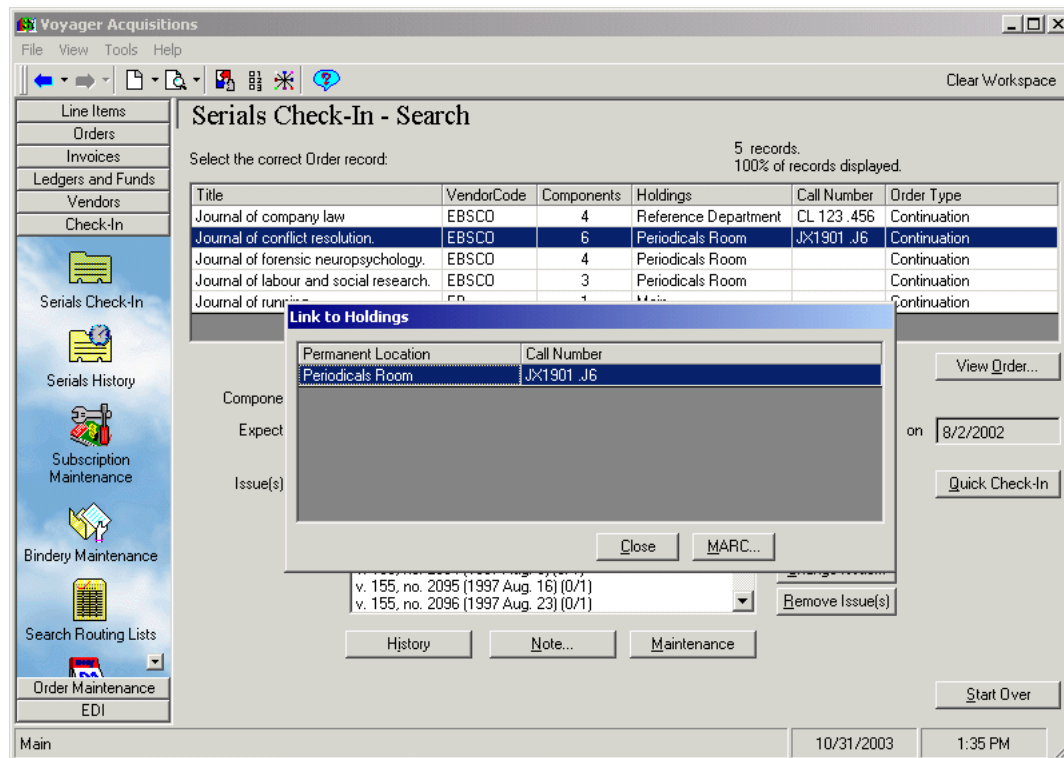
Instructions to Vendor:

Notes:

☒ Open line item details after saving

**Figure 13-12. Quick Line Item dialog box - ellipsis displayed beside the Link to Holdings field**

- Clicking the Holdings column of the list of records that displays after searching for records in **Serials Check-In** displays the **Link to Holdings** dialog box with the MARC button (see [Figure 13-13](#)). See [Checking In Serials](#) on [page 9-4](#).



**Figure 13-13. Serials Check-In workspace - ellipsis displayed in the Holdings column of the list of records**

- The **Holdings** button on the **Serials History** workspace. There are numerous ways to display the **Serials History** workspace ([Figure 13-14](#)). See [Serials History Information](#) on [page 9-27](#) for more information.

**Serials History - Details**

Title:  ...

Component Name:

Location:

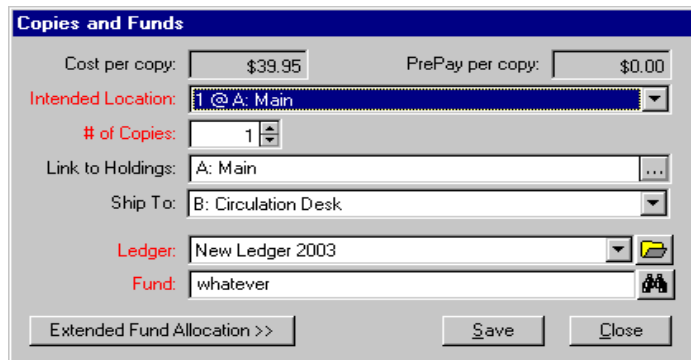
Call Number:

**Receipt History** | Claims History | Problem History | Payment History

Issue Identification	Receive Date	Copies Received	Display in OPAC	Collapse	
[-] v. 1, no. 5 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID
1	Received Partial	9/11/2003	Main	serial	69566
[-] v. 1, no. 4 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	
Copy #	Status	Status Date	Location Name	Item Type	Item ID
1	Received Partial	9/11/2003	Main	serial	69565
[-] v. 1, no. 3 (2003)	6/2/2006	1	Yes	No	

Figure 13-14. Serials History workspace - Holdings button displayed

- The **ellipsis** button beside the **Link to Holdings** field on the **Copies and Funds** dialog box (Figure 13-15). The **Copies and Funds** dialog box can be displayed from the **Copies/Funds** tab of a line item. See [Copies/Funds Tab](#) on [page 6-48](#).

The image shows a 'Copies and Funds' dialog box with a blue title bar. It contains several input fields: 'Cost per copy' with a value of '\$39.95', 'PrePay per copy' with a value of '\$0.00', 'Intended Location' with a dropdown menu showing '1 @ A: Main', '# of Copies' with a spinner set to '1', 'Link to Holdings' with a text field 'A: Main' and an ellipsis button, 'Ship To' with a dropdown menu showing 'B: Circulation Desk', 'Ledger' with a dropdown menu showing 'New Ledger 2003' and a folder icon, and 'Fund' with a text field 'whatever' and a folder icon. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Extended Fund Allocation >>', 'Save', and 'Close'.

**Figure 13-15. Copies and Funds dialog box - ellipsis displayed beside the Link to Holdings field**

## http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server

---

User's can configure their `voyager.ini` file to allow the operator to use an http POST request to send a MARC record to a Web server. If configured, a drop-down list of Web servers available to send the record to and a **Send Record To** button are active in the MARC record standard view. Sending a POST request can be done from any of the Voyager modules where a MARC record is visible.

See the *Voyager Technical User's Guide*, *Voyager.ini* chapter, [MARC POSTing], for more information on configuring this feature.



### Procedure 13-1. Making an http POST request

---

Use the following to make an http POST request to view the MARC record in a Web server, for example in WebVoyage.

1. From the standard MARC view, click the arrow in the drop-down list listing the Web servers that are configured to accept your http POST and highlight the correct Web server (see [Figure 13-16](#)).

The screenshot shows a window titled "Bibliographic Record #21635". At the top, there is a "Font:" dropdown set to "Arial" and a "Send Record To" dropdown menu. The "Send Record To" menu is open, showing options: "Linkresolver", "Linkresolver", and "WebVoyage". Below this, there are fields for "Bib" status, type, bib/l, enc/l, and form. The "Leader:" field shows "n a m". The "006:" field is empty. The "007:" field is empty. The "008:" field contains "920420s1949 nyu 000 1 eng". Below these fields is a table of bibliographic data.

Tag	Ind 1	Ind 2	Bibliographic Data
010			\$a 49009031
035			\$a CNV02329739
040			\$d CoFS
049			\$a SHCM
050	0		\$a PZ3.C5483 \$b Tr
092			\$a F C596t
100	1		\$a Clark, Walter Van Tilburg, \$d 1909-1971.
245	1	4	\$a The track of the cat : \$b a novel / \$c by Walter Van Tilburg Clark.
260			\$a New York : \$b Random House, \$c c1949.
300			\$a 404 p. ; \$c 22 cm.

At the bottom of the window are "Close" and "Print" buttons.

Figure 13-16. MARC view with drop-down of Web servers

2. Click the **Send Record To** button.

Result: The POST request is sent to the selected Web server and the record displays.





<b>Introduction</b>	<b>14-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>14-1</b>
<b>Explanation of Bindery Maintenance Functionality</b>	<b>14-1</b>
• Bindery Maintenance Activities	14-2
• Definitions of terms	14-2
Issues	14-2
Volumes	14-2
Bindery Copy	14-3
Bindery Copy Data	14-3
Pullslip	14-3
• Pages, Dialog Boxes, Field Names, and Field Descriptions	14-3
The Bindery Maintenance Workspace Page	14-4
Issues Available for Binding Box	14-12
Issues Bound in this Volume	14-13
Bind-on Date Interval	14-15
New Volumes List Box	14-16
Bindery Copy Data Dialog Box	14-16
Bindery Pullslip Dialog Box	14-17
Item Record Dialog Box	14-19
<b>Procedures for Volume Management</b>	<b>14-20</b>
• Security for Working in Bindery Maintenance	14-21
• Creating New Volumes	14-22
• Adjusting New Volumes	14-26

• Editing Existing Volumes	14-29
• Deleting Volumes	14-39
• Working with Bindery Notes and Pullslips	14-42
• Collapsing Issues	14-46
• Item Creation and Maintenance	14-50
<b>Workflows</b>	<b>14-52</b>

---

**Introduction**

Voyager's Bindery Maintenance functionality provides the necessary tools for creating and maintaining the binding functions of serials processing.

---

**Purpose of this Chapter**

This section discusses the following.

- Explanation of Bindery Maintenance functionality: this includes Bindery Maintenance activities, definitions of terms, screens, and dialog boxes used in Bindery Maintenance, their field names and descriptions.
- Step-by-step procedures for volume management: this includes creating new volumes, editing existing volumes, deleting volumes, working with bindery notes and pullslips, collapsing issues, and creating item records.
- A sample workflow which illustrates how a library might incorporate the Bindery Maintenance functionality into their workflow.

---

**Explanation of Bindery Maintenance Functionality**

The explanation of Bindery Maintenance functionality section includes the following.

- Bindery Maintenance activities
- Definitions of terms
- Screens
- Field names
- Descriptions

## **Bindery Maintenance Activities**

---

The Bindery Maintenance activities allow users to do the following.

- Group individual serial issues into volumes, and to maintain those volumes for binding
- Group volumes together according to the specific copy of a serial to which they belong
- Add a bind-on date for notification during the serials check-in process if any issues are ready to be pulled for binding
- Print pullslips containing copy-level, volume-level, and issue-level data for a volume
- Retain bindery information such as color and binding frequency

## **Definitions of terms**

---

The following are definitions of terms used in Bindery Maintenance.

### **Issues**

Issues are the pieces that are bound together into a volume. There are one or more issues per volume. The issues are generated using serials prediction. Each copy of each component is composed of one or more issues.

### **Volumes**

A volume is a collection of one or more issues to be bound together. There can be multiple volumes per bindery copy. Each volume becomes a single item record. The enumeration, chronology, and other data for the volume as a whole is stored at the volume level.

In bindery maintenance, users work with volumes most of the time.

Each volume has a bind-on date indicating when its issues should be pulled for binding. The serials check-in process uses this date to alert users and print pullslip information.

### **Bindery Copy**

This is one specific copy, from one or more copies attached to a serials check-in component, that is being bound. Pullslip data and bindery copy data is stored at the bindery copy level.

There may be multiple bindery copies for each serials check-in component, one for each copy on order, because different copies may have distinct bindery information, such as color and binding frequency.

### **Bindery Copy Data**

Bindery copy data is the specific binding information. It includes the following: spine label format, call number format, cloth color, print color, binding frequency, library instructions, bindery instructions, and binder's title number.

This information is stored at the bindery copy level for each bindery copy.

#### **NOTE:**

Users cannot create new types of bindery copy information.

### **Pullslip**

A pullslip is a paper document that contains information about a volume that is to be prepared for binding. It is useful for preparing bindery shipments. Typically, this slip is sent from the serials check-in operator to the periodicals room to inform the periodicals department that it is time to gather the issues from the shelves for binding.

The pullslip also contains other binding and volume information. For example, it can include the colors of the spine and the enumeration and chronology information. The data on the pullslip is a mixture of bindery copy, volume, and issue level data.

### **Pages, Dialog Boxes, Field Names, and Field Descriptions**

---

This section describes the screens and dialog boxes used in Bindery Maintenance, including their field names and field descriptions.

## The Bindery Maintenance Workspace Page

The Bindery Maintenance workspace is the area where most bindery activities take place.



---

### Procedure 14-1. Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace

---

Use the following to open the bindery maintenance workspace.

1. Click the **Check-In** bar in the listbar on the Acquisitions workspace.

Result: The listbar displays the seven Check-In activity buttons.

2. Click the **Bindery Maintenance** button (see [Figure 14-1](#)). Or you can select **Check-In > Bindery Maintenance** from the **View** menu on the toolbar.



---

**Figure 14-1. Bindery Maintenance button**

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens (see [Figure 14-2](#)).

The **Search for Serials** section allows you to perform a search for the serial title to which you want to add bindery information.

---

---

**Figure 14-2. Bindery Maintenance - Search For Serials dialog box**

3. Search for a serials title (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#) and [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#) ).

Result: One or more titles display. Click to highlight the one you want, then click the **Select** button.

Result: Component information for the serial title you selected displays in the workspace (see [Figure 14-3](#)). The read-only fields include Title, Order Number, Vendor, Vendor Title Number, Component, and Location and Copy ID for each copy.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Bindery Maintenance". It contains several input fields and a table. The "Title" field is filled with "Journal of forensic neuropsychology.". The "Order Number" field is filled with "SISerial2". The "Vendor" field is filled with "EBSCO PUBLISHING". The "Vendor Title #" field is filled with "12345". The "Component" field is a dropdown menu showing "Journal of forensic neuropsychology - B". Below these fields is a table labeled "Copies:" with two columns: "Location" and "Copy ID". The table has two rows of data: "Periodicals Room" with "218" and "Periodicals Room" with "219". To the right of the table are two buttons: "Bind" and "Back". At the bottom right of the window is a date field showing "7/11/2007".

Location	Copy ID
Periodicals Room	218
Periodicals Room	219

Figure 14-3. Bindery Maintenance workspace - component information

[Table 14-1](#) describes the component fields.

**Table 14-1. Bindery Maintenance - component information fields**

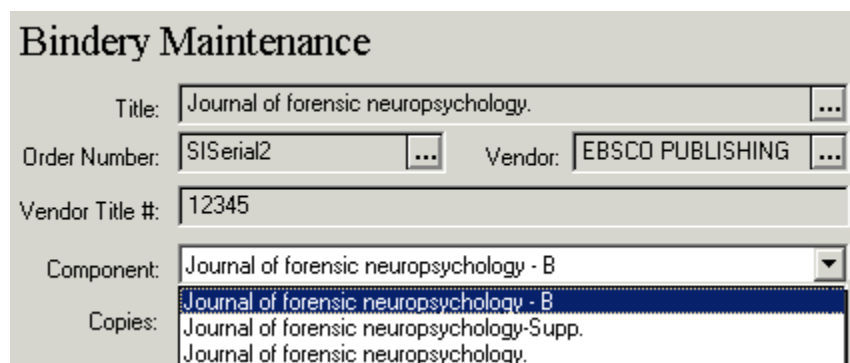
Name	Description	Additional Information
<b>Title</b>	Title from the Bibliographic Record.  The ellipsis button opens the MARC bibliographic and holdings record.	The MARC bibliographic record in the Acquisitions module displays and prints using the Unicode character set because MARC data is stored in the database as UTF-8 encoded, even though MARC data that appears elsewhere in the Acquisitions module displays in the Latin-1 character set.  <b>NOTE:</b> For more information, see <a href="#">Viewing and Editing MARC Records (Cataloging in Acquisitions)</a> on <a href="#">page 13-1</a> . For related information, see <a href="#">http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server</a> on <a href="#">page 13-16</a> .
<b>Order Number</b>	Purchase Order Number. The ellipsis button opens the purchase order for this title.	See <a href="#">Purchase Orders</a> on <a href="#">page 6-2</a>
<b>Vendor</b>	Vendor's name. The ellipsis button opens the vendor record.	See <a href="#">Vendor Activities</a> on <a href="#">page 4-1</a> .
<b>Vendor Title #</b>	The number the vendor uses to identify the item.	Comes from the Purchase Order. See <a href="#">Vendor Activities</a> on <a href="#">page 4-1</a> .
<b>Component</b>	Name of the component. The down arrow button in this field displays all the components for the title.	See <a href="#">Table 8-1 describes the fields in the top section of the Subscription Maintenance workspace</a> on <a href="#">page 8-3</a>
<b>Copies</b>	Copies of this component. The location and ID# for each copy.	See <a href="#">Bindery Copy</a> and <a href="#">Bindery Copy Data</a> on <a href="#">page 14-3</a> .

**NOTE:**

The **Back** button in the lower right corner of the Bindery Maintenance workspace allows you to return to the Bindery Maintenance - Search dialog box with the search results list.



- Click the component you want to use from the **Component** field. If there is more than one component, select the one you want from the drop-down list (see [Figure 14-4](#) ).



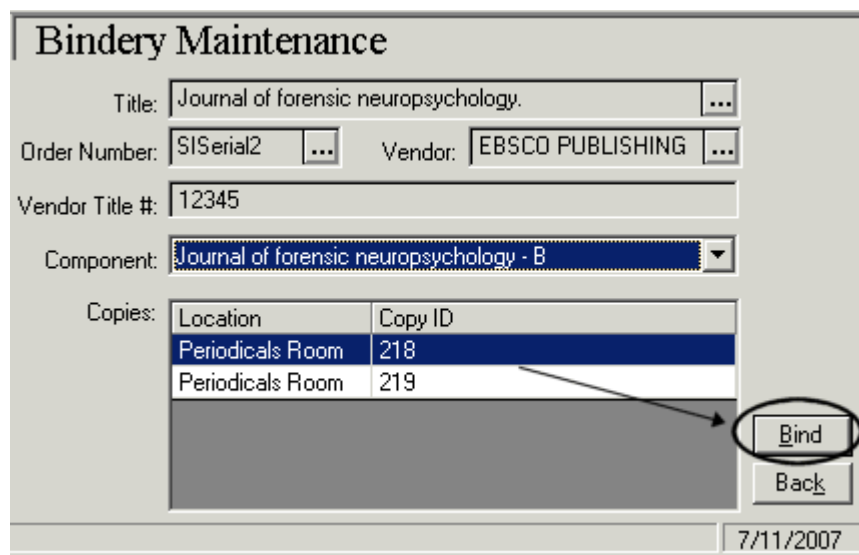
The screenshot shows a web form titled "Bindery Maintenance". It contains several input fields: "Title" with the value "Journal of forensic neuropsychology.", "Order Number" with "SISerial2", "Vendor" with "EBSCO PUBLISHING", and "Vendor Title #" with "12345". Below these is a "Component" dropdown menu currently showing "Journal of forensic neuropsychology - B". A "Copies" dropdown menu is open, displaying a list of three options: "Journal of forensic neuropsychology - B" (highlighted in blue), "Journal of forensic neuropsychology-Supp.", and "Journal of forensic neuropsychology.".

**Figure 14-4. Title with multiple components**

**NOTE:**

You can choose only one component at one time.

- Select the copy you want from the **Copies** field and click the **Bind** button (see [Figure 14-5](#)).



**Bindery Maintenance**

Title:  ...

Order Number:  ... Vendor:  ...

Vendor Title #:

Component:  ▼

Copies:

Location	Copy ID
Periodicals Room	218
Periodicals Room	219

7/11/2007

---

**Figure 14-5. Component with multiple copies**

Result: The workspace for that component opens (see [Figure 14-6](#)).

Bindery Maintenance

TOP

Component

Journal of forensic neuropsychology - B

Location

Periodicals

Copy ID

219

Bindery Notes

Edit Volume

Create New Volumes

Save Volume

Bind-on Date

7/11/2007

...

Item ID

0

Delete Volume

Enumeration

Chronology

MIDDLE

Year

Caption

Free text

Item

Volume Note

Collapse

Other Volume Data

Print Pullslip

Issues available for binding: 67

Issues Bound in this Volume:

BOTTOM

Enum/Chron	Checked-in date
v. 2, no. 7 (0 July)	2003-02-24 10:1
v. 2, no. 8 (0 Aug.)	2003-02-24 10:1
v. 2, no. 9 (0 Sept.	2003-04-11 17:4
v. 2, no. 10 (0 Oct.	2003-04-11 17:4
v. 2, no. 11 (0 Nov	2003-07-21 15:0
v. 2, no. 12 (0 Dec	2004-01-21 11:2
v. 3, no. 18 (1 June	

Bind >>

<< Unbind

Enum/Chron	Checked-in date	Status
------------	-----------------	--------

Back

Start Over

Figure 14-6. Bindery Maintenance workspace

The Bindery Workspace

The Bindery Maintenance workspace can best be described by dividing it into three sections: top, middle, and bottom.

Table 14-2 outlines the fields and buttons as they appear in each section of the workspace, left to right in each section.

Table 14-2. Fields and buttons in the Bindery Maintenance workspace

Item	Description	Range/Default
TOP SECTION		

**Table 14-2. Fields and buttons in the Bindery Maintenance workspace**

Item	Description	Range/Default
Component field	Name of the component that user selected from the title listing/previous Bindery Maintenance form.	System-entered, not user-editable.
Location field	Location as defined in the MFHD and selected by user on previous Bindery Maintenance form.	System-entered, not user-editable.
Copy ID field	ID number assigned to the copy by the system when copies are added to purchase order.	The ID number assigned to the copy by the system.
Bindery Notes button	Opens the <b>Bindery Copy Data</b> dialog box.	NA
<b>MIDDLE SECTION</b>		
Edit Volume list box	Drop-down list box in this field allows you to select a specific volume for editing.	First volume is listed or it is blank if no volumes exist.
Create New Volumes button	Opens the Create Volumes dialog box.	NA
Save Volume button	Saves any changes to the volume information in the workspace.	NA
Bind-On Date field	Date on which user is notified to pull issues for binding.  The Bind-on date that is calculated for the volume listed, by adding the bind-on claim interval to the latest expected receipt date of the issues in the volume.	Select date from pop-up calendar. Defaults to today's date.
Item ID field	ID number assigned by the system to the item record of the volume when the item record is created.	If there is no volume yet created, or if there is a volume but no Item record, <b>No Item</b> displays in the field.  If there is an Item record, the ID number displays.
Delete Volume button	Deletes the volume currently displayed in the workspace.	NA

**Table 14-2. Fields and buttons in the Bindery Maintenance workspace**

Item	Description	Range/Default
Enumeration field	Enumeration for the volume. Displays the current enumeration information for the volume selected in the <b>Edit Volume</b> field.	Limit = 80 alphanumeric characters.
Chronology field	Chronology for the volume. Displays the current chronology information for the volume selected in the <b>Edit Volume</b> field.	Limit = 80 alphanumeric characters.
Item button	Creates a new item record or opens an existing one for the volume currently opened in the workspace.	NA
Year field	Year of the volume. This information is seen in the item record that is created for the volume.	No default value. Limit = 20 alphanumeric characters.
Caption field	Caption for the volume. This information is seen in the item record that is created for the volume.	No default value. Limit = 256 alphanumeric characters.
Free Text field	Free text for the volume. This information is seen in the item record that is created for the volume.	No default value. Limit = 256 alphanumeric characters.
Collapse button	Collapses the issues for the volume currently opened in the workspace.	NA
Volume Notes field	Contains any notes for the volume.	No default value. Limit = 200 alphanumeric characters.
Other Volume Data	Provides a space for adding further information about the volume.	No default value. Limit = 200 alphanumeric characters.
Print Pullslip button	Opens the <b>Bindery Pullslip</b> dialog box. It includes bindery and volume specific information.	NA
<b>BOTTOM SECTION</b>		
Issues Available for Binding list box	The enumeration, chronology, check-in date, status, expected date, issue ID, comp (component) ID, and copy ID for each issue of the component. This includes issues received and not yet received.	System-entered details, read-only.

**Table 14-2. Fields and buttons in the Bindery Maintenance workspace**

Item	Description	Range/Default
Bind button	Adds individual issues to the volume currently opened in the workspace.	NA
Unbind button	Removes individual issues from the volume currently opened in the workspace.	NA
Issues Bound in this Volume list box	The enumeration, chronology, check-in date, status, expected date, issue ID, comp (component) ID, and copy ID for each issue in the volume.	Lists the issues in the volume. If no volume has been created it is blank.
Up and Down arrow buttons	Re-order the sequence of the issues for the volume currently opened in the workspace.	NA
Back button	Returns the user to the component information for the serial title.	NA
Start Over button	Returns the user to the Bindery Maintenance - Search dialog box.	NA

**Issues Available for Binding Box**

The number of issues available for binding is the number of issues that have been predicted less any issues that are already bound, collapsed, or suppressed from OPAC display. The issues listed include received issues as well as issues that have yet been received.

**NOTE:**

You cannot bind a non-predictive serial

This list box displays the enumeration and chronology for each issue of the component. You can use the left and right arrows or the scroll bar at the bottom of the list box to display the additional information of check-in date, status, expected date, issue ID, comp (component) ID and copy ID for each issue of the component.

[Table 14-3](#) describes the fields in the **Issues Available for Binding** list box.

**Table 14-3. Information included in the “Issues Available for Binding” list box**

Issue Field Name	Description
Enum/Chron: Enumeration	The enumeration (for example, the volume or number) of the issue based on the publication pattern.
Enum/Chron: Chronology	The chronology (for example, the month and year) of the issue based on the publication pattern.
Checked-in date	The date on which the issue was checked-in through Serials Check-In.
Status	The current status of the issue. For example, received or claimed.
Expect date	The date by which the issue is expected to arrive. Determined when the publication pattern is applied.
Issue ID	The identification number of the issue. It is automatically generated by the system at the time the issue is created.
Comp ID	The identification number of the component. It is automatically generated by the system when the component is created.
Copy ID	The identification number of the copy. The ID is automatically generated by the database at the time the copy is created on a purchase order.

Regarding the issues that display in the **Issues Available for Binding** list box (either in the **Bindery Maintenance workspace** or in the **Create Volumes** dialog box):

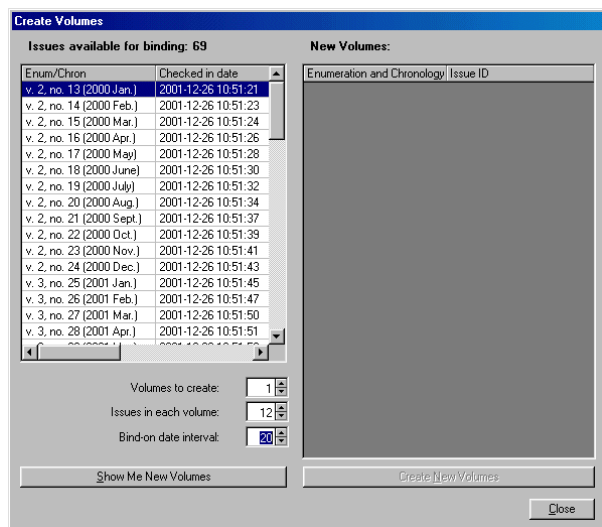
- Any issue already included in an existing volume is not listed.
- If you make any changes to the issues from Serials Check-In or Subscription Maintenance, it is reflected in the **Bindery Maintenance workspace**. For example, if you add, change, or remove any issues from the component, those changes display in Bindery Maintenance.

### Issues Bound in this Volume

When a volume is created, the **Issues Bound in this Volume** list box of the **Bindery Maintenance workspace** is populated with the same issue fields as the **Issues Available for Binding** list box. The information is described in [Table 14-3](#).

## Create Volumes Dialog Box

From the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace, if you click the **Create New Volumes** button the **Create Volumes** dialog box opens (see [Figure 14-7](#)).



**Figure 14-7. Create Volumes dialog box in Bindery Maintenance**

[Table 14-4](#) lists the fields and buttons of the **Create Volumes** box.

**Table 14-4. Create Volumes dialog box field and button descriptions**

Name	Description
Issues Available for Binding	<p>The number of issues that are available to include in the volume.</p> <p>The information in the box is the enumeration and chronology for each issue of the component, the check-in date, status, expected date, issue ID, comp (component) ID, and copy ID for each issue of the component.</p> <p><a href="#">Table 14-3</a> on <a href="#">page 14-13</a> describes the information included in the Issues Available for Binding list box.</p>
Volumes to Create	The number of volumes you want to create. The default number is one.
Issues in each volume	<p>The number of issues in each volume that you create.</p> <p>The default number is one.</p>



**Table 14-4. Create Volumes dialog box field and button descriptions**

Name	Description
Bind-on date interval	The number of days added to the expected date of the last issue in the volume to create a bind-on date which alert an operator that the volume is ready to bind when the date is reached.
Show me New Volumes	This button, when clicked, fills the New Volumes box with the information just provided.
New Volumes	This shows the newly-created volume. The top line lists the range of included issues. The lines below that are the included issues.
Create New Volumes	This generates the volume just created. It populates the Issues Bound in this Volume box.

### Bind-on Date Interval

The Bind-on date interval and the latest expected date of any one of the issues to be included in the volume are used to determine the Bind-on date for the volume. Often the latest expected date is the one for the last issue to be included in the volume. However, it is possible that an earlier issue in the volume has a later expected date than the last issue. The interval allows an newly received item to be available for use a certain period of time before being pulled for bindery.

The Bind-on date is determined by adding the number of days from the interval to the latest expected date. Then the next time an issue for the component is checked-in, and the Bind-on date has passed, a pop-up window alerts the operator that the volume is complete (all issues are checked-in) and ready for binding.

For example, if you set the Bind-on date interval to 15 days, and the latest expected date for one of the issues in that volume is November 1st, the Bind-on date would be November 16th. Then an issue for that component being checked-in after November 16th would prompt the pop-up note to display.

#### NOTE:

If the Bind-on date interval is set to 0, the system uses the latest expected date of an issue in the volume as the Bind-on date.

#### NOTE:

If you want the Bind-on date to be a specific date, for example, June 1st, then set the bind-on interval to zero and manually enter the date in the **Bind-on date** field.

### New Volumes List Box

Within the **New Volumes** list box there is an enumeration/chronology statement for each volume. It is created using the first and last issue in the volume. This statement is composed of the enumeration of the first and last issue separated by double hyphens (--), followed by the chronology of the first and last issues in parentheses. The volume's enumeration and chronology are displayed in their default form. If they need to be edited, this can be done from the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace after the volume(s) are created.

This statement is followed by the enumeration/chronology information for each of the issues included in the volume.

### Bindery Copy Data Dialog Box

From the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace, if you click the **Bindery Notes** button the **Bindery Copy Data** dialog box opens (see [Figure 14-8](#)).

Data Type	Data Value
Spine label format	
Call number format	
Cloth color	
Print color	
Binding frequency	
Library instructions	
Bindery instructions	
Binder's title number	

---

**Figure 14-8. Bindery Copy Data dialog box**

The **Bindery Copy Data** dialog box displays the Component, Location, and Copy ID information at the top of the dialog box. This cannot be edited. The bottom section contains the **Data Type** fields and their associated **Data Value** fields. **Data Types** cannot be changed, nor can you add new fields. **Data Values** can be changed at any time.

[Table 14-5](#) describes the **Data Type** and **Data Value** fields that display in the **Bindery Copy Data** dialog box.

**Table 14-5. Data Types and Data Values from the Bindery Copy Data dialog box**

<b>Data Type Field Name</b>	<b>Data Value Field Description</b>
Spine label format	Any additional information you would like on the spine label other than the call number.
Call number format	The format (spacing and line breaks) for the call number.
Cloth color	The color of the cloth to be used for the volume.
Print color	The color of any text printed on the volume covers.
Binding frequency	The number of issues that should be bound in the volume.
Library instructions	Any additional instructions for the library before the volume is sent to the bindery.
Bindery instructions	Any additional instructions for the bindery.
Binder's title number	A number that the bindery has assigned to the particular title of the volume.

### **Bindery Pullslip Dialog Box**

The **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box opens when you click the **Print Pullslip** button on the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

The **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box displays the Component, Location, and Copy ID information at the top of the dialog box. This cannot be edited. The bottom section contains the **Data Type** fields and their associated **Data Value** fields. **Data Types** cannot be changed. **Data Values** can be changed at any time.

The pullslip information comes from three sources. It includes the specific volume information, the list of issues contained in the volume, and any bindery notes set for the volume.

[Figure 14-9](#) shows the volume information that displays in the **Bindery Maintenance Pullslip** dialog box.

The screenshot shows the 'Bindery Pullslip' dialog box. At the top, there are three input fields: 'Component' with the value 'Journal of forensic neuropsychology - B', 'Location' with 'Periodicals Room', and 'Copy ID' with '218'. Below these is a table with two columns: 'Data Type' and 'Data Value'. The table contains the following rows:

Data Type	Data Value
Call Number	
Enumeration	v. 1, no. 1 -- v. 1, no. 6
Chronology	(0 Jan. - 0 June)
Year	
Caption	
Free Text	
Bind On Date	6/6/2002
Issues To Bind	6
Issue No. 1	v. 1, no. 1 (0 Jan.)
Issue No. 2	v. 1, no. 2 (0 Feb.)
Issue No. 3	v. 1, no. 3 (0 Mar.)

At the bottom right of the dialog box are 'Cancel' and 'Print' buttons.

**Figure 14-9. Volume information in the Bindery Pullslip dialog box**

The enumeration, chronology, year, caption, free text, and bind-on date, located in the top portion of the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box is pulled from the volume information defined in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

[Figure 14-10](#) shows the issues information that displays in the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box.

The screenshot shows the 'Bindery Pullslip' dialog box with the same top fields as Figure 14-9, but with 'Component' set to 'American journal of sports medicine.' and 'Copy ID' set to '541'. The table below shows a list of issues:

Data Type	Data Value
Issue No. 1	v. 1, no. 1 (1999 Jan.)
Issue No. 2	v. 1, no. 2 (1999 Feb.)
Issue No. 3	v. 1, no. 3 (1999 Mar.)
Issue No. 4	v. 1, no. 4 (1999 Apr.)
Issue No. 5	v. 1, no. 5 (1999 May)
Issue No. 6	v. 1, no. 6 (1999 June)
Issue No. 7	v. 1, no. 7 (1999 July)
Issue No. 8	v. 1, no. 8 (1999 Aug.)
Issue No. 9	v. 1, no. 9 (1999 Sept.)
Issue No. 10	v. 1, no. 10 (1999 Oct.)
Issue No. 11	v. 1, no. 11 (1999 Nov.)

'Cancel' and 'Print' buttons are at the bottom right.

**Figure 14-10. Issue information in the Bindery Pullslip dialog box**

The issue information, found as you scroll down in the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box are the issues that belong in this particular volume.

[Figure 14-11](#) shows the bindery copy data that displays in the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box.

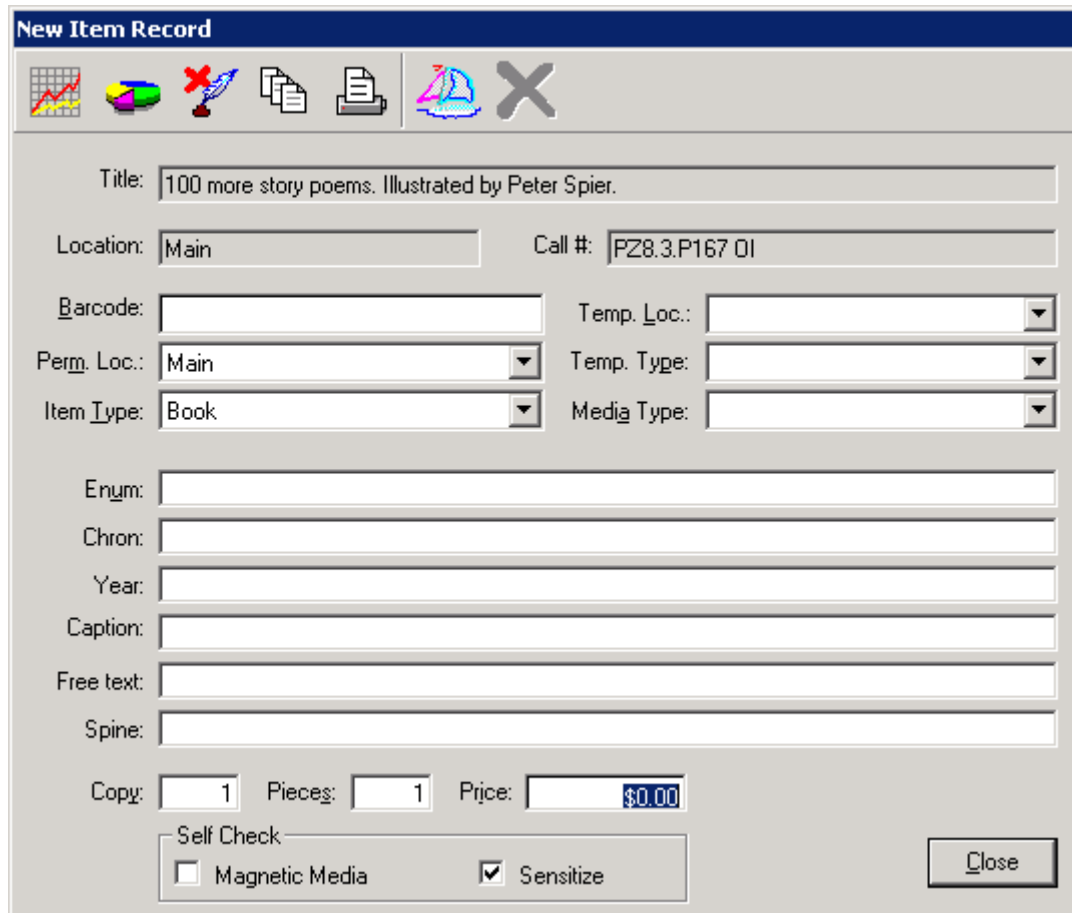
Data Type	Data Value
Issue No. 12	v. 1, no. 12 (1999 Dec.)
Volume Note	Volume information
Other Volume Data	Additional volume information
Spine label format	
Call number format	
Cloth color	
Print color	
Binding frequency	
Library instructions	
Bindery instructions	
Binder's title number	

**Figure 14-11. Bindery Note information in the Bindery Pullslip dialog box**

The bindery information at the bottom of the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box is pulled from the Bindery Copy Data created by clicking the **Bindery Notes** button. See [Working with Bindery Notes and Pullslips](#) on [page 14-42](#)

### Item Record Dialog Box

When you click the **Item** button in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace, the **Item Record** dialog box opens (see [Figure 14-12](#)). For information on item records, see [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#)



The "New Item Record" dialog box features a title bar with the text "New Item Record" and a toolbar with icons for grid, pie chart, error, documents, printer, and a large 'X'. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Title:** Text field containing "100 more story poems. Illustrated by Peter Spier."
- Location:** Text field containing "Main".
- Call #:** Text field containing "PZ8.3.P167 OI".
- Barcode:** Empty text field.
- Temp. Loc.:** Dropdown menu.
- Perm. Loc.:** Dropdown menu containing "Main".
- Temp. Type:** Dropdown menu.
- Item Type:** Dropdown menu containing "Book".
- Media Type:** Dropdown menu.
- Enum:** Empty text field.
- Chron:** Empty text field.
- Year:** Empty text field.
- Caption:** Empty text field.
- Free text:** Empty text field.
- Spine:** Empty text field.
- Copy:** Text field containing "1".
- Pieces:** Text field containing "1".
- Price:** Text field containing "\$0.00".
- Self Check:** A group box containing:
  - ☐ Magnetic Media
  - ☒ Sensitize
- Close:** A button in the bottom right corner.

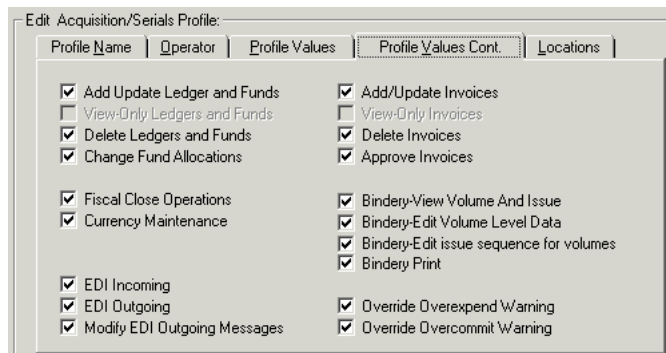
Figure 14-12. New Item Record dialog box

## Procedures for Volume Management

This section provides the step-by-step procedures for volume management. This includes creating new volumes, editing existing volumes, deleting volumes, working with bindery notes and pullslips, and creating and maintaining item records.

## Security for Working in Bindery Maintenance

To be authorized to work in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace, there are four check boxes that can be selected on the **Profile Values Cont.** tab ([Figure 14-13](#)) in the operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile.



**Figure 14-13. Profile Values Cont. tab**

[Table 14-6](#) describes these four check boxes.

**Table 14-6. Bindery security authorizations**

Check box	Authorization Description
<b>Bindery - View Volume and Issue</b>	Allows the operator "View Only" privileges for volumes and issues in Bindery Maintenance.  Must be checked for all other options to be available.
<b>Bindery - Edit Volume Level data</b>	Allows the operator to edit and save changes to volume level data in the Bindery Maintenance workspace. Operators can also create item records and collapse volumes.
<b>Bindery - Edit Issue Sequences for Volumes</b>	Allows the operator to create new volumes, bind and unbind issues to existing volumes, and to change the issue sequence within a volume.
<b>Bindery Print</b>	Allows the operator to print the bindery copy data and the pullslip.

**NOTE:**

The bindery security options are separate from serials check-in security. That is, you can create one Acquisitions security profile strictly for operators concerned with serials check-in and another profile for operators concerned with binding operations.

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

All of the activities begin from the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. To open this screen follow the [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

## Creating New Volumes

---

The Bindery Maintenance process begins with creating volumes.

The **Create Volumes** dialog box is where you determine:

- the specific issues that belong to the volume(s)
- the number of volumes to create
- the number of issues in each volume
- the bind-on date interval.

The procedure for creating a new volume is shown in [Procedure 14-2, Creating a New Volume](#), on page [14-22](#).



### Procedure 14-2. Creating a New Volume

---

Use the following to create a new volume.

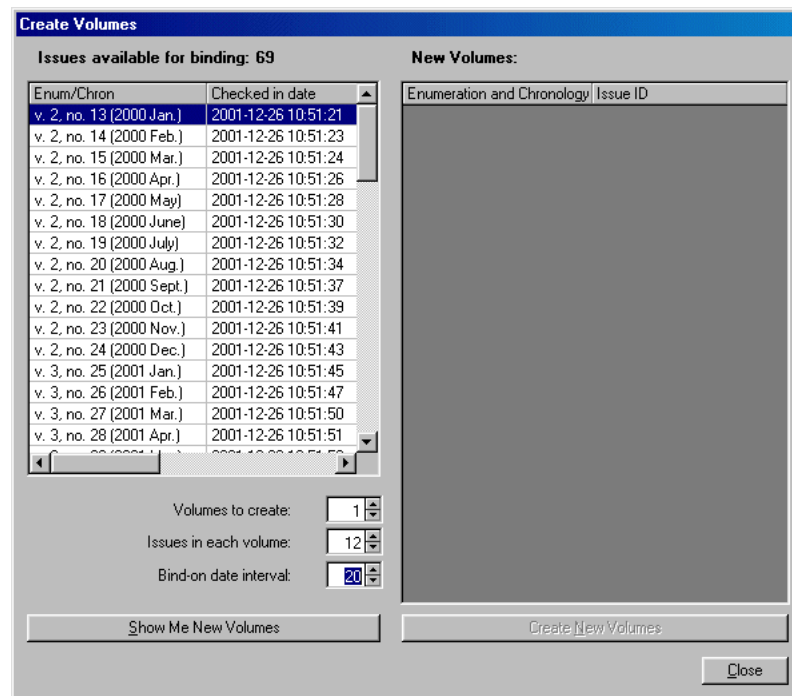
1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Procedure 14-1, Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#), on page [14-4](#).
2. Click the **Create New Volumes** button.

**NOTE:**

If no issues display in the **Issues Available for Binding** list box, the **Create New Volumes** button is not available.

Result: The **Create Volumes** dialog box opens (see [Figure 14-14](#)).





**Figure 14-14. Create New Volumes dialog box**

3. Select the first issue to be included in the volume you are creating.

The system defaults to the first issue in the **Issues Available for Binding** list box.

If the first issue in the new volume is not the first issue in the list box, make sure you select the correct issue before creating the new volumes.

**NOTE:**

Both checked-in and future issues are acceptable for creating new volumes.

4. Enter the number of volumes that you want to create in the **Volumes to create** field.

The system defaults to the number one. You can also click the up and down arrows to increment the counter.

5. Enter the number of issues to be included in the volume in the **Issues in each volume** field.

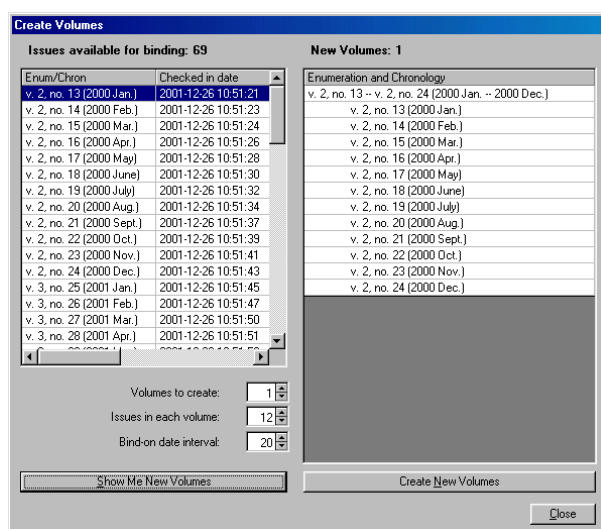
The system defaults to the number one. You can also click the up and down arrows to increment the counter.

6. Enter an interval in days in the **Bind-on date interval** field.

The system defaults to zero. You can also click the up and down arrows to increment the counter. See [Bind-on Date Interval](#) on [page 14-15](#) for additional information about this field.

7. Click the **Show Me New Volumes** button.

Result: Based on the settings defined in the steps above, the system displays the new volumes in the **New Volumes** list box on the right side of the **Create Volumes** dialog box (see [Figure 14-15](#)).



**Figure 14-15.** Create New Volumes dialog box with New Volumes.

In the **Create Volumes** dialog box, the number of new volumes is displayed above the **New Volumes** list box.

If you are satisfied with the volumes you have generated, you must create the volumes to save the information to the database.

8. Click the **Create New Volumes** button.

Result: This creates the volume that was shown in the **New Volumes** list box.

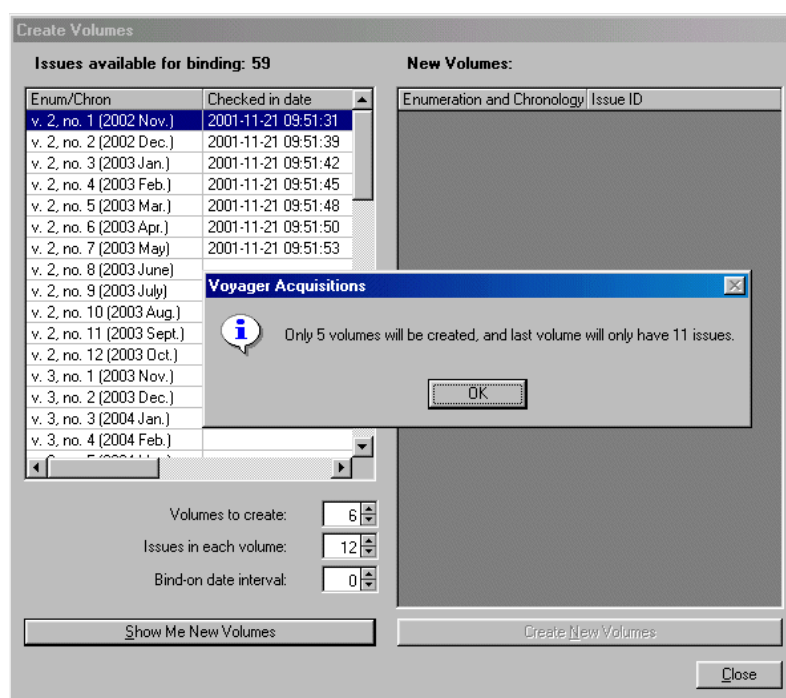
**NOTE:**

New volumes are automatically saved in the database when you click the **Create New Volumes** button in the **Create Volumes** dialog box. You do not have to click

the **Save Volume** button on the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. The **Save Volume** button is used when you edit existing volumes.

Then the system returns to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace (see [Figure 14-19](#)).

**Important:** If the number entered in the **Volumes to create** field is greater than the number of volumes that can be created based on the available issues and the number in the **Issues in each volume** field, then a warning message notifies the operator of the number of volumes that are created and the number of issues that are in the last volume (see [Figure 14-16](#)).



**Figure 14-16.** Warning message with system's recalculation of volumes to create

The warning message displays in the example because there are only 59 available issues, however, the numbers in the **Volumes to create** field and the **Issues in each volume** field tell the system to create 6 volumes of 12 issues each which would require 72 issues.

The system then recalculates the number of volumes to create based on the number of issues available. It determines that only 5 volumes are created and that the last volume only has 11 issues.

Therefore, there are 4 volumes of 12 issues each and a fifth volume of 11 issues only which uses all of the 59 available issues. At this point you can save the new volumes to the database or make changes to the **Volumes to create** and **Issues in each volume** fields.

---

## Adjusting New Volumes

---

If you have not yet saved the new volume, but have simply defined the parameters for the volumes and have seen what they look like using the **Show Me New Volumes** button, you can adjust the new volumes.

If the new volumes created are unsatisfactory, you can change the numbers in the **Volumes to create** and **Issues in each volume** fields to define a different volume. Then clicking the **Show Me New Volumes** button after changing these values regenerates the **New Volumes** list.

For example, [Figure 14-17](#) shows that one volume was generated and it is displayed in the **New Volumes** list box. If the setting in the **Volumes to create** field was changed from one volume to two, clicking the **Show Me New Volumes** button would regenerate and display two volumes in the **New Volumes** list box (see [Figure 14-18](#)).

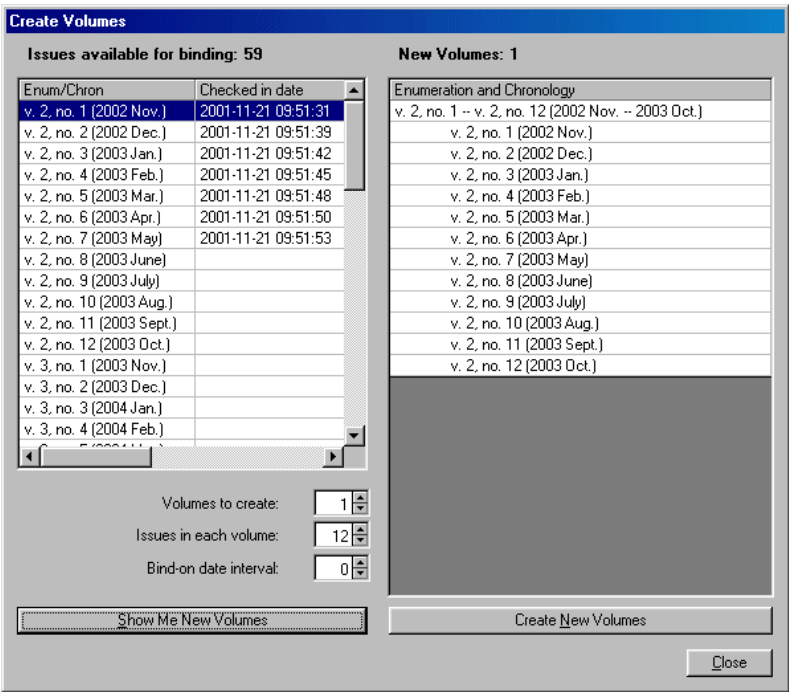
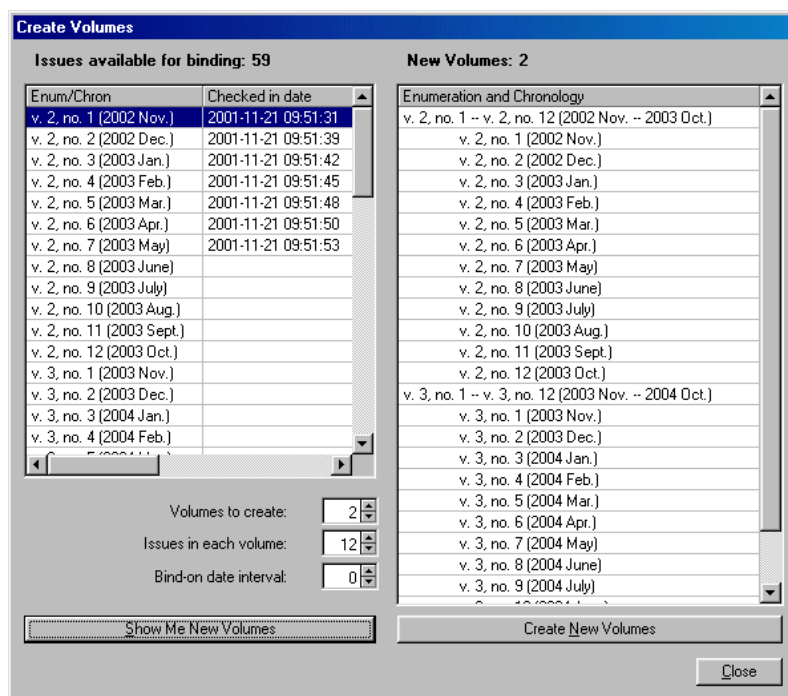


Figure 14-17. Display of one new volume generated



**Figure 14-18. Display of two new volumes generated**

Once you are satisfied with the volumes you have generated, you must create the volumes to save the information to the database by clicking on the **Create New Volumes** button.

**NOTE:**

New volumes are automatically saved in the database when you click the **Create New Volumes** button in the **Create Volumes** dialog box. You do not have to click the **Save Volume** button on the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. The **Save Volume** button is used when you edit existing volumes.

Then the system returns to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace (see [Figure 14-19](#)).

**Figure 14-19. Bindery Maintenance workspace after creating a new volume**

The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace now shows the component information in the top section.

In the middle section the **Edit Volume** field is highlighted showing the volume just created. Also the **Bind-on Date**, **Enumeration**, and **Chronology** fields have been populated.

The bottom section displays the **Issues Available for Binding** and the **Issues Bound in this Volume** boxes. The information contained in those boxes are enum/chron, checked in date, status, expected date, issue ID, component ID, and copy ID. You need to click the right arrow in the scroll bar below those boxes to display all of the information.

## Editing Existing Volumes

Once you have created one or more volumes, you can edit any of the volume information. You can add or remove issues from the volume or resequence the issues in the volume.

### NOTE:

Although the cursor seems to go into the fields in the top section of the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace, you cannot edit these fields.

You can edit any of the volume information that displays in the middle section of the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

Basically, you select a volume to edit and can alter the information in any of the fields **Bind-on Date**, **Enumeration**, **Chronology**, **Year**, **Caption**, and **Free Text**.

- The procedure for editing volume information is shown in [Procedure 14-3, Editing Volume Information](#), on page [14-30](#).
- The procedure for adding or removing issues is shown in [Procedure 14-4, Adding or Removing Issues](#), on page [14-33](#).
- The procedure for reordering volumes in an issue is shown in [Procedure 14-5, Reordering Issues in a Volume](#), on page [14-37](#).



---

### Procedure 14-3. Editing Volume Information

---

Use the following to edit volume information.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Procedure 14-1, Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#), on page [14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Select the volume you want to edit, click the drop-down arrow in the **Edit Volume** field to choose a volume other than the default volume.

#### **NOTE:**

The volumes in the **Edit Volume** field are listed in chronological order by bind-on date.

3. To edit do the following.
  - a. The **Bind-on Date** field, highlight the entire date and enter the numbers only. You do not have to enter any separating characters such as slashes or dashes. You can also click the ellipsis button at the end of the **Bind-on Date** field to change the bind-on date for the volume. When you click the ellipsis button, the pop-up calendar opens (see [Figure 14-20](#)).





**Figure 14-20. Calendar dialog box**

- Use the arrow buttons to the left and right of the month field to change the month.
- Use the arrow buttons to the left and right of the year field to change the year.
- Click the day of the month to select it.
- Click the **OK** button to close the **Calendar** dialog box and save the new date, then click the **Cancel** button to close the **Calendar** dialog box without saving the new date.

- b. The information in the **Enumeration** and **Chronology** fields, place your cursor in the field and enter the appropriate information.

Changes in these fields dynamically update the volume information in the **Edit Volume** field.

When the system creates new volumes it combines the enumeration and chronology from the first and last issue included in the volume. The enumerations are separated by a hyphen and the chronologies are placed in parenthesis.

For example, if the enum/chron for the first issue is v. 24, no. 1 (2001 Jan.), and the enum/chron for the last issue is v. 24, no. 11 (2001 Nov.), then the brief enum/chron statement for the volume created is as follows.

*v. 24, no. 1 -- v. 24, no. 11 (2001 Jan. -- 2001 Nov.)*

**NOTE:**

At this time, the system does not take missing issues into consideration when building the brief enum/chron statement. You must edit the enum/chron to account for any missing issues in the volume.

- c. The **Year**, **Caption**, or **Free Text** fields, place your cursor in the field and enter any necessary information.

Any information you enter in these fields is included in the item record when it is created in Bindery Maintenance.

- d. The **Volume Notes**, place your cursor in the field and enter any additional information for the volume in the **Volume Notes** field.

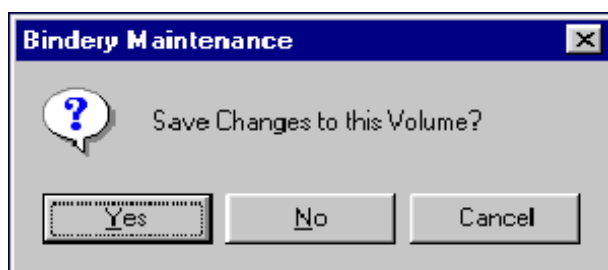
Anything entered is seen in the Volume Notes data type in the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box (see [Bindery Pullslip Dialog Box](#) on [page 14-17](#)) and prints out on the pullslip.

- e. The **Other Volume Data** field, place your cursor in the field and enter any necessary information.

Any information entered in this field is seen in the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box and prints out on the pullslip.

- 4. Click the **Save Volume** button to save your changes.

You are prompted to save your changes if you click the **Back**, **Start Over**, **Create New Volumes**, **Collapse**, or **Print Pullslip** buttons or select a new volume in the **Edit Volume** field before clicking the **Save Volume** button (see [Figure 14-21](#)).



**Figure 14-21.** Save Changes message

Click **Yes** to save your changes and continue with the action; click **No** to continue with the action without saving changes; click **Cancel** to cancel the action and return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

Result: The volume information is edited.

---



---

**Procedure 14-4. Adding or Removing Issues**

---

Once you have created a volume, you can add or remove issues (bind or unbind) from the volume.

Use the following to add or edit issues.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace displays and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Select the volume you want to edit, click the drop-down arrow in the **Edit Volume** field to choose a volume other than the default volume.
3. To add issues to a volume, select the issue(s) you want to add from the **Issues Available for Binding** list box (see [Figure 14-22](#)).

Result: The **Bind>>** button becomes active.

**TIP:**

*You can select a range of issues by pressing the **Shift** key while selecting the first and last issues of the range you want to bind or you can select specific issues by pressing the **Ctrl** key while selecting.*

**Bindery Maintenance**

Component: American journal of sports medicine. Location: Main Copy ID: 541 Bindery Notes

Edit Volume: v. 3, no. 25 -- v. 3, no. 35 (2001 Jan. -- 2001 Nov.) Create New Volumes Save Volume

Bind-on Date: 11/01/2001 Item ID: No item Delete Volume

Enumeration: v. 3, no. 25 -- v. 3, no. 35 Chronology: (2001 Jan. -- 2001 Nov.)

Year: Caption: Free text: Item

Volume Note: Collapse

Other Volume Data: Print Pullslip

**Issues available for binding: 46**

Enum/Chron	Checked in date
v. 3, no. 33 (2001 Dec.)	
v. 4, no. 37 (2002 Jan.)	
v. 4, no. 38 (2002 Feb.)	
v. 4, no. 39 (2002 Mar.)	
v. 4, no. 40 (2002 Apr.)	
v. 4, no. 41 (2002 May)	
v. 4, no. 42 (2002 June)	
v. 4, no. 43 (2002 July)	
v. 4, no. 44 (2002 Aug.)	
v. 4, no. 45 (2002 Sept.)	
v. 4, no. 46 (2002 Oct.)	

Bind >> << Unbind

**Issues Bound in this Volume: 11**

Enum/Chron	Checked in date
v. 3, no. 25 (2001 Jan.)	2001-12-26 10:51:45
v. 3, no. 26 (2001 Feb.)	2001-12-26 10:51:47
v. 3, no. 27 (2001 Mar.)	2001-12-26 10:51:50
v. 3, no. 28 (2001 Apr.)	2001-12-26 10:51:51
v. 3, no. 29 (2001 May)	2001-12-26 10:51:53
v. 3, no. 30 (2001 June)	
v. 3, no. 31 (2001 July)	
v. 3, no. 32 (2001 Aug.)	
v. 3, no. 33 (2001 Sept.)	
v. 3, no. 34 (2001 Oct.)	
v. 3, no. 35 (2001 Nov.)	

Back Start Over

12/26/2001 11:22 AM

**Figure 14-22. Selecting an issue to add to a volume**

- Click the **Bind>>** button.

Result: The selected issue(s) move to the **Issues Bound in this Volume** list box (see [Figure 14-23](#)).

Result: The issue is placed at the bottom of the list in the **Issues Bound in this Volume** list box.

**NOTE:**

Adding issues to an existing volume does not automatically adjust the volume's Bind-on date. If the newly-added issues are expected after the Bind-on date, you must change the Bind-on date manually.

Bindery Maintenance

Component

American journal of sports medicine.

Location

Main

Copy ID

541

Bindery Notes

Edit Volume

v. 3, no. 25 -- v. 3, no. 35 (2001 Jan. -- 2001 Nov.)

Create New Volumes

Save Volume

Bind-on Date

11/01/2001

Item ID

No item

Delete Volume

Enumeration

v. 3, no. 25 -- v. 3, no. 35

Chronology

(2001 Jan. -- 2001 Nov.)

Year

Caption

Free text

Item

Volume Note

Collapse

Other Volume Data

Print Pullslip

Issues available for binding: 45

Issues Bound in this Volume: 12

Enum/Chron	Checked in date
v. 4, no. 37 (2002 Jan.)	
v. 4, no. 38 (2002 Feb.)	
v. 4, no. 39 (2002 Mar.)	
v. 4, no. 40 (2002 Apr.)	
v. 4, no. 41 (2002 May)	
v. 4, no. 42 (2002 June)	
v. 4, no. 43 (2002 July)	
v. 4, no. 44 (2002 Aug.)	
v. 4, no. 45 (2002 Sept.)	
v. 4, no. 46 (2002 Oct.)	
v. 4, no. 47 (2002 Nov.)	

Bind >>>  
<< Unbind

Enum/Chron	Checked in date
v. 3, no. 26 (2001 Feb.)	2001-12-26 10:51:4
v. 3, no. 27 (2001 Mar.)	2001-12-26 10:51:5
v. 3, no. 28 (2001 Apr.)	2001-12-26 10:51:5
v. 3, no. 29 (2001 May)	2001-12-26 10:51:5
v. 3, no. 30 (2001 June)	
v. 3, no. 31 (2001 July)	
v. 3, no. 32 (2001 Aug.)	
v. 3, no. 33 (2001 Sept.)	
v. 3, no. 34 (2001 Oct.)	
v. 3, no. 35 (2001 Nov.)	
v. 3, no. 36 (2001 Dec.)	

Back  
Start Over

12/26/2001

11:23 AM

Figure 14-23. Added a volume to an existing issue

5. To remove issues from a volume, select the issues(s) you want to remove from the **Issues Bound in this Volume** list box.



**TIP:**

*Tip:* You can select a range of issues by pressing the **Shift** key while selecting the first and last issues of the range you want to bind or you can select specific issues by pressing the **Ctrl** key while selecting.

Result: The **<<Unbind** button becomes active (see [Figure 14-24](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Bindery Maintenance' window. At the top, there are fields for 'Component' (American journal of sports medicine), 'Location' (Main), and 'Copy ID' (541). Below these are buttons for 'Bindery Notes', 'Create New Volumes', 'Save Volume', and 'Delete Volume'. The 'Edit Volume' dropdown is set to 'v. 3, no. 25 -- v. 3, no. 35 (2001 Jan. -- 2001 Nov.)'. The 'Bind-on Date' is 11/01/2001, and 'Item ID' is 'No item'. The 'Enumeration' is 'v. 3, no. 25 -- v. 3, no. 35' and 'Chronology' is '(2001 Jan. -- 2001 Nov.)'. There are fields for 'Year', 'Caption', 'Free text', 'Volume Note', and 'Other Volume Data'. On the right, there are buttons for 'Item', 'Collapse', and 'Print Pullip'.

Below the form, there are two tables. The left table is titled 'Issues available for binding: 45' and the right table is titled 'Issues Bound in this Volume: 12'. Both tables have columns for 'Enum/Chron' and 'Checked in date'. In the right table, the row 'v. 3, no. 30 (2001 June)' is selected. Between the tables are buttons for 'Bind >>' and '<< Unbind'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Start Over' buttons. The status bar at the bottom shows '12/26/2001' and '11:25 AM'.

Figure 14-24. Selected an issue to remove from a volume

6. Click the <<Unbind button.

Result: The selected issues move to the **Issues Available for Binding** list box.

7. Click the **Save Volume** button to save your changes.

If you do not click the **Save Volume** button, you are prompted to do so if you had clicked any other button in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace (see [Figure 14-25](#)).

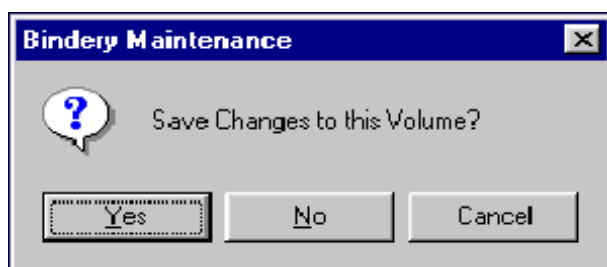


Figure 14-25. Save Changes message

Click **Yes** to save your changes and continue with the action; click **No** to continue with the action without saving changes; click **Cancel** to cancel the action and return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

Result: The volume information is edited.

---



---

#### Procedure 14-5. Reordering Issues in a Volume

---

Use the following to change the order of the issues in a volume.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Select the volume you want to edit, click the drop-down arrow in the **Edit Volume** field to choose a volume other than the default volume.
3. Select the issue you want to move in the **Issues Bound in this Volume** list box.

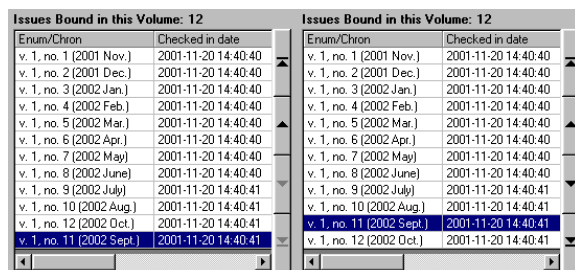
Result: The arrow buttons on the side of the box become active.

4. Click the up or down arrow to the right of the list box until the issue is in the correct place.

Clicking the up or down arrow move the issue up or down on the list one space at a time.

Clicking the top of list button (up arrow with line) or bottom of list button (down arrow with line) moves the issue to the top or the bottom of the list.

[Figure 14-26](#) shows resequencing issue 12 to follow issue 11.



Enum/Chron	Checked in date
v. 1, no. 1 (2001 Nov.)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 2 (2001 Dec.)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 3 (2002 Jan.)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 4 (2002 Feb.)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 5 (2002 Mar.)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 6 (2002 Apr.)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 7 (2002 May)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 8 (2002 June)	2001-11-20 14:40:40
v. 1, no. 9 (2002 July)	2001-11-20 14:40:41
v. 1, no. 10 (2002 Aug.)	2001-11-20 14:40:41
v. 1, no. 12 (2002 Oct.)	2001-11-20 14:40:41
v. 1, no. 11 (2002 Sept.)	2001-11-20 14:40:41

**Figure 14-26.** The left shows issues before, the right shows issues after

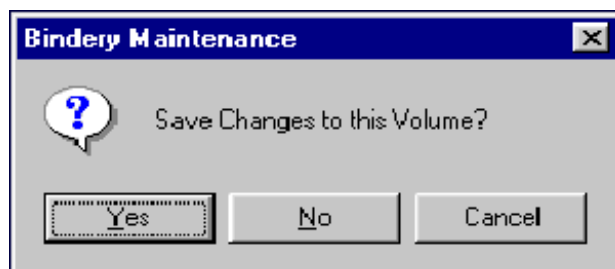


**IMPORTANT:**

*If you move an issue to the top or the bottom of the list box, the brief enum/chron statement in the **Edit Volume** field does not change. You must manually correct the statement to reflect the new order of the list.*

5. Click the **Save Volume** button to save your changes.

If you do not click the **Save Volume** button, you are prompted to do so if you click any other button in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace (see [Figure 14-27](#)).



**Figure 14-27.** Save Changes message

Click **Yes** to save your changes and continue with the action; click **No** to continue with the action without saving changes; click **Cancel** to cancel the action and return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

Result: The volume information is edited.



## Deleting Volumes

---

You can delete existing volumes from the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

You can delete volumes at any time. However, if you delete a volume after an item record has been created, you must also delete the item record. Deleting the item record can be done in either the Voyager Cataloging module or the Voyager Circulation module. Deleting the item record removes the volume information from the record display in WebVoyage.

The procedure for deleting volume information is shown in [Procedure 14-6, Deleting Volumes](#), on page [14-39](#).



### Procedure 14-6. Deleting Volumes

---

Use the following to delete volumes.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Procedure 14-1, Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#), on page [14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Select the volume you want to delete, click the drop-down arrow in the **Edit Volume** field to choose a volume other than the default volume.

Click the drop-down arrow to choose a volume other than the default volume.

Result: When you select a volume, the **Issues Bound in this Volume** list box changes to display all the issues included in the volume.

3. Click the **Delete Volume** button.

Result: A Bindery Maintenance message box asks you to confirm the delete action (see [Figure 14-28](#)).

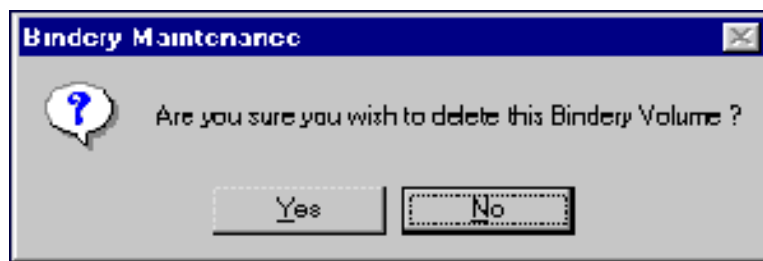


Figure 14-28. Bindery Maintenance message box

- Click the **Yes** button to continue with the delete action; click the **No** button to cancel the delete action.

[Figure 14-29](#), [Figure 14-30](#), and [Figure 14-31](#) on the following pages show what the screens would look like when deleting volume number 2.

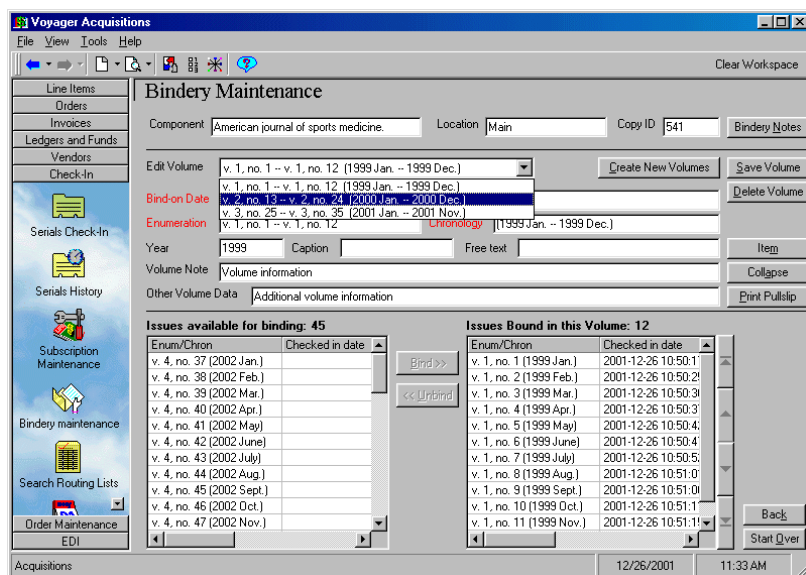


Figure 14-29. Select volume 2 to delete

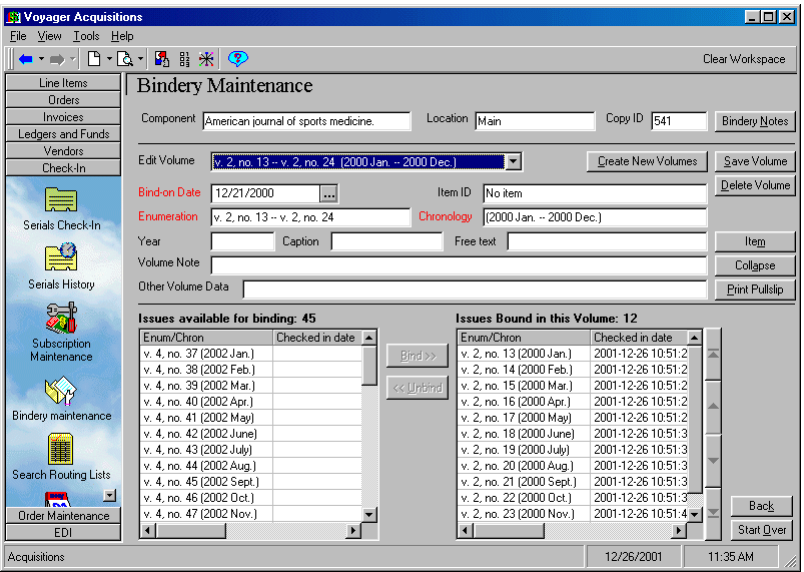


Figure 14-30. Volume 2 is in the Edit Volume field, click the Delete Volume button

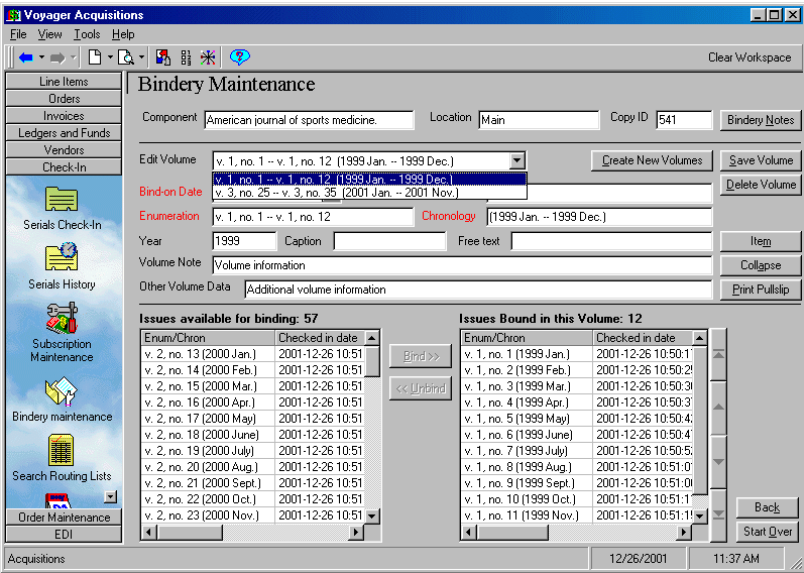


Figure 14-31. Information updates after deleting volume 2

Result: After deleting a volume, the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace updates.

All of the issues contained in the deleted volume move from the **Issues Bound in this Volume** list box to the **Issues Available for Binding** list box (see [Figure 14-31](#)).

---

## **Working with Bindery Notes and Pullslips**

---

Bindery Notes consist of instructions typically sent to the binding vendor with the issues to be bound. You can add Bindery Notes to a component at any time.

The pullslip information includes the volume information defined in Bindery Maintenance, the list of issues contained in the volume, and any bindery notes set for the volume.

The following section gives the step-by-step procedures for adding or editing bindery notes.



### **Procedure 14-7. Adding Bindery Notes**

---

Use the following to add bindery notes.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Click the **Bindery Notes** button.

Result: The **Bindery Copy Data** dialog box opens (see [Figure 14-32](#)).

Data Type	Data Value
Spine label format	
Call number format	
Cloth color	
Print color	
Binding frequency	
Library instructions	
Bindery instructions	
Binder's title number	

**Figure 14-32. Bindery Copy Data dialog box**

The **Bindery Copy Data** dialog displays the Component, Location, and Copy ID information at the top of the dialog box. This cannot be edited.

The bottom section contains the **Data Type** fields and their associated **Data Value** fields. Data types cannot be changed. Data values can be changed at any time.

3. To enter the data value information in each of the **Data Value** fields you place the cursor in the field and begin to enter the information.

**NOTE:**

The system defaults to the first **Data Value** field (spine label format). You can begin entering information immediately or press the **Tab** key on your keyboard to move to another **Data Value** field.

4. Click the **OK** button to save the information and return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. Or click **Cancel** to return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace without saving the information.

**NOTE:**

If you click the **Cancel** button before you click the **OK** button, you are not prompted to save the information. Any new information added to the Bindery Copy Data is lost.



**Procedure 14-8. Printing Bindery Notes**

Bindery Notes can be printed from the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace at any time.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Click the **Bindery Notes** button.

Result: The **Bindery Copy Data** dialog box opens (see [Figure 14-32](#)).

3. Click the **Print** button in the **Bindery Copy Data** dialog box.

Result: All of the information in the **Bindery Copy Data** dialog box is printed except for the Copy ID. The system uses the default printer defined for your PC.

4. To exit this box, if you have made changes click the **OK** button to save the information and return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace; if not, click **Cancel** to return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace without saving the information.



#### **Procedure 14-9. Editing and Printing Pullslips**

---

Pullslips can be edited from the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace at any time. Use the following to edit and print pullslips.

The Bindery Pullslips workflow options are as follows.

- Prompt to print Bindery Pullslips
- Automatically print Bindery Pullslips
- Do not print or prompt for Bindery Pullslips.

A user can select only one of these three options. The default setting is Prompt to print Bindery Pullslips. See [Bindery Pullslips](#) on [page 19-16](#).

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Click the drop-down arrow in the **Edit Volume** field to choose a volume other than the default volume.

3. Click the **Print Pullslip** button.

Result: The **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box opens (see [Figure 14-33](#)).

---

Data Type	Data Value
Spine label format	
Call number format	
Cloth color	
Print color	
Binding frequency	
Library instructions	
Bindery instructions	
Binder's title number	

---

**Figure 14-33. Bindery Pullslip dialog box**

The pullslip information includes the volume information defined in Bindery Maintenance, the list of issues contained in the volume, and any bindery notes set for the volume.

4. To add or edit information, place your cursor in the appropriate field and begin entering the information.
5. Click the **Print** button when you have finished editing the pullslip information.

Result: All of the information in the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box prints. The system uses the default printer defined for your PC.

**NOTE:**

The Display Call Number from the MARC holdings record associated with the bindery copy also prints on the Bindery Pullslip.

6. Click the **Cancel** button when you are finished printing the pullslip.

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens.

**NOTE:**

Because the Bindery Pullslip is populated with information from other bindery areas (volume information, issues, and bindery copy data) any information that you add to the Pullslip is not saved when you click the **Cancel** button.

---

## Collapsing Issues

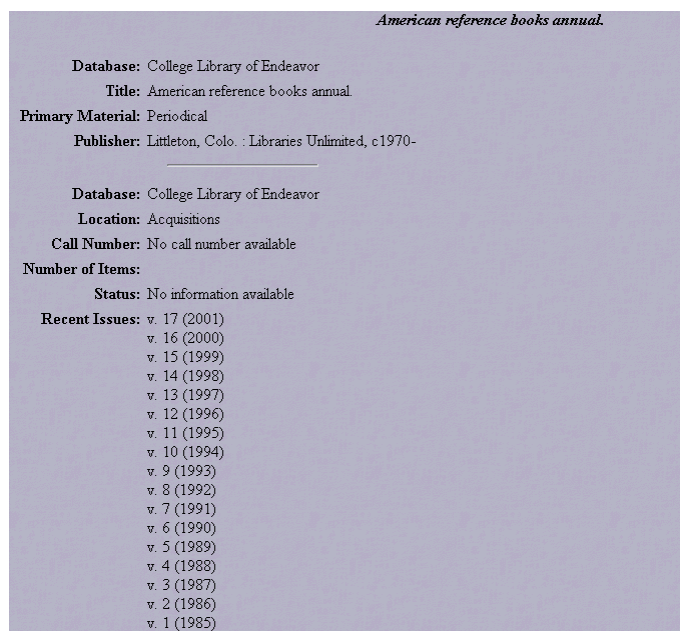
---

Once issues have been pulled for bindery you may want to collapse the issues and create an item record for the volume. Both of these activities help maintain the serial titles' record display in WebVoyage (see [Collapsing Issues](#) on [page 14-46](#) and [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#).)

Collapsing issues in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace copies the functionality of collapsing in the **History** workspace of a serial title.

Adding this functionality to Bindery Maintenance allows you to perform all binding-related activities in one place.

Before issues are collapsed, they display in WebVoyage under the Recent Issues label (see [Figure 14-34](#)).



---

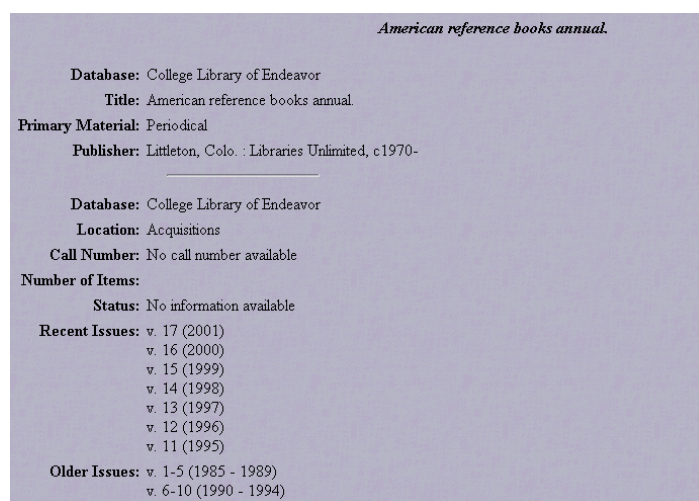
**Figure 14-34. Serial title display in WebVoyage before collapsing issues**

When serial issues are collapsed the following happens.



- The specific fields are created and added to the MARC Holdings record according to the type of component the issue belongs to (basic, supplementary, or index) and whether the component is predictive or non-predictive. (see [Serial Issues Collapsing](#) on [page 9-36](#) for more information.)
- The issues are automatically suppressed from OPAC display (Display in OPAC status toggles to from YES to NO) but the volume information displays.

The record details for the title change so that the individual issues no longer display and the holdings information displays under the label Older Issues.



**Figure 14-35. Serial title display in WebVoyage after collapsing issues**

[Figure 14-35](#) shows the combined issue statement under the Older Issues label.

When you are working in the **History** workspace of the title, you select and collapse issues. When you are working in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace, you select and collapse a volume.

- The procedure for collapsing issues is shown in [Procedure 14-10, Collapsing Issues](#), on page [14-48](#).
- The procedure for re-collapsing a volume is shown in [Procedure 14-11, Re-Collapsing a Volume](#), on page [14-49](#).



---

**Procedure 14-10. Collapsing Issues**

---

Use the following to collapse issues.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Click the drop-down arrow in the **Edit Volume** field to choose a volume other than the default volume.
3. Click the **Collapse** button.

Result: If the collapse action was successful, the message box shown in [Figure 14-36](#) displays.



---

**Figure 14-36. Successful collapse message**

4. Click the **OK** button to return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

**IMPORTANT:**

*All issues for a volume must be received before they can be collapsed.*

Result: If you click the **Collapse** button before all issues in the volume have been received, the message box shown in [Figure 14-37](#) displays.

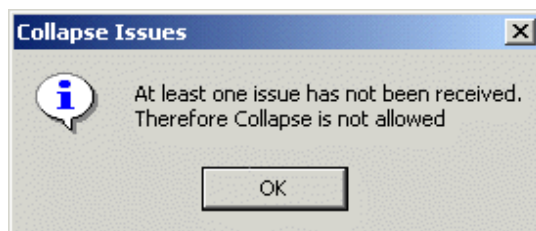


Figure 14-37. Collapse Issues message for unreceived issues



#### Procedure 14-11. Re-Collapsing a Volume

You can re-collapse a volume if necessary. However, with every collapse new fields are created and added to the MARC Holdings record. You must access the MARC Holdings record through Cataloging to edit or delete any of these fields.

For information about viewing and editing MARC records in Acquisitions, see [Viewing and Editing MARC Records \(Cataloging in Acquisitions\)](#) on [page 13-1](#). For information about sending the MARC record to a Web server, see [http POST request - Sending the MARC Record to a Web Server](#) on [page 13-16](#).

1. If you choose to re-collapse a volume, select the volume in the **Edit Volume** field.
2. Click the **Collapse** button.

Result: The message box shown in [Figure 14-38](#) displays.

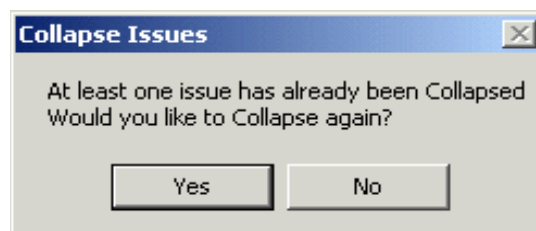


Figure 14-38. Collapse Issues message for already collapsed issues

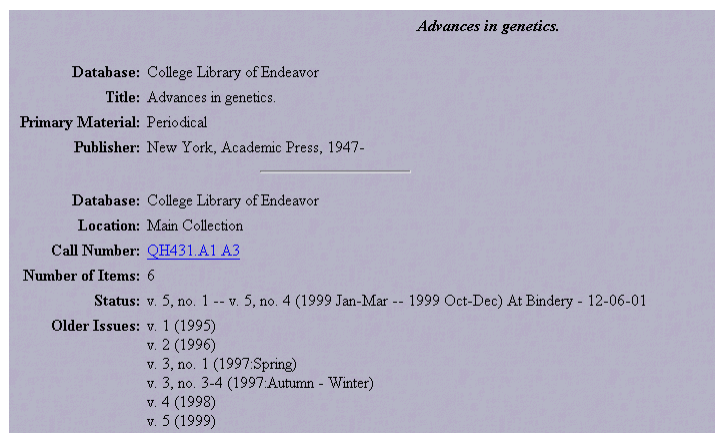
3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the collapse action. Click the **No** button to cancel the collapse action and return to the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.
- 

## Item Creation and Maintenance

---

Creating an item record for a bound volume allows you to update the record details in WebVoyage. In the **Item Record** dialog box, you can change the item status to **At Bindery**. The WebVoyage display for the title displays the enumeration/chronology statement for the volume plus the status of At Bindery and the date the status was applied (see [Figure 14-39](#)).

---



**Figure 14-39. Serial title display in WebVoyage after creating an item record**

[Figure 14-34](#), [Figure 14-35](#), and [Figure 14-39](#) show how the WebVoyage display for the serial title changes from the initial display of individual received issues, to collapsed issues, to an item record for a volume at the bindery.

- The procedure for creating an item record is shown in [Procedure 14-12, Creating an Item Record](#), on page [14-51](#).

See [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#) for information on item records.



---

**Procedure 14-12. Creating an Item Record**

---

You can create and maintain item records for each bound volume in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace.

An item record for each bound volume should be created as soon as the issues have been pulled for binding. If you do not create the item at this time, the pullslip may be printed again, asking you to pull issues that have already been pulled.

1. Search for and display a serial title in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace. See [Opening the Bindery Maintenance Workspace](#) on [page 14-4](#).

Result: The **Bindery Maintenance** workspace opens and the first available volume displays in the **Edit Volume** field.

2. Click the drop-down arrow in the **Edit Volume** field to choose a volume if you want one other than the first volume.

Result: If there is no item record associated with the volume, the **Item ID** field in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace reads **No Item**. (see [Figure 14-40](#)).

---

Item ID	No item
---------	---------

---

**Figure 14-40. Item ID field with no item record**

Result: If an item record has already been created for the volume, the **Item ID** field in the **Bindery Maintenance** workspace displays in Item ID number (see [Figure 14-41](#)).

---

Item ID	62035
---------	-------

---

**Figure 14-41. Item ID field with item ID number displayed**

3. Click the **Item** button.

Result: If it is a new Item Record, the **New Item Record** dialog box opens.

4. Follow [Procedure 10-6, Creating/maintaining an item record](#).
- 

## Workflows

---

There are many variations for bindery workflow. Consider the following points to determine the best workflow for your site.

- What is your existing serials workflow including serials check-in and maintenance?
- How do you handle volumes when they return from the bindery?
- Do you want volume and bindery information to display in WebVoyage?
- Which operators are responsible for bound volumes and what areas of the Acquisitions module do they have the security to access?
- Do the operators need access to any other Voyager modules for processing bound volumes?



### Procedure 14-13. Sample Workflow

---

Use the following for a sample of the many bindery workflow options.

1. Create new volumes for the component and set the bind-on date.
2. Add bindery notes to the volume.
3. Print the pullslip when all issues are available based on the bind-on date.
4. Collect issues. If you circulate issues, you may have to recall issues that are currently checked-out. Take this into consideration when determining the bind-on date.
5. Print the bindery notes and include them with the issues being sent to the bindery.
6. Collapse the issues to update the WebVoyage display.

Issue information moves from being listed individually after the Recent Issues label to one volume statement after the Older Issues label.

7. Create an item record for the bound volume and apply the “At Bindery” status to update WebVoyage display.

The volume statement, item status, and status date display after the Status label.

8. Process the volume when it returns from the bindery.
9. Discharge the volume in the Voyager Circulation module to change the status to “Discharged” and update the display in WebVoyage.

**NOTE:**

You can use the “Pick and Scan” feature in the Voyager Circulation module to quickly change the status for multiple bound volumes. See the “Pick and Scan” section of the *Voyager Circulation User’s Guide* for more information.

---





<b>Introduction</b>	<b>15-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>15-1</b>
<b>Voyager EDI</b>	<b>15-1</b>
• Opening the Process EDI Messages Workspace	15-2
<b>Incoming Tab</b>	<b>15-4</b>
• Security For EDI Incoming Messages	15-4
• Receiving EDI Messages	15-4
• Obtaining EDIFACT Data Files from Your Vendor	15-6
The contents of EDIFACT files	15-6
• Receiving EDIFACT Files	15-7
• Correcting Vendor and Location Assignments	15-8
• Selecting and Loading Messages into Your Database	15-11
Searching for Incoming Messages	15-11
Receive Items Option	15-12
Selecting and Loading Messages	15-14
Resolving Errors	15-16
• Notes	15-19
Receiving EDI files	15-19
Loading EDI Invoices	15-20
Loading Claim Responses	15-21
Sending EDI Claims	15-21
Sending EDI Purchase Orders	15-21

<b>Outgoing Tab</b>	<b>15-22</b>
• Security for EDI Outgoing Messages	15-22
• Searching for Outgoing Messages	15-23
• Security for Modifying Outgoing Messages	15-26
• Selecting and Sending Messages	15-27

### Introduction

---

Using Voyager EDI (Electronic Data Interchange) processing, your library can electronically exchange messages that contain the following with participating vendors.

- Purchase Orders
- Invoices/Credit Memos
- Serial Claims
- Serial Claim Responses

### Purpose of this Chapter

---

The primary purpose of this chapter is to explain EDI setup and processing for the Voyager software. For additional information about EDI, EDI standards, and EDI implementation, see [www.EDItEUR.org](http://www.EDItEUR.org). There are several links from this site; and the links pertaining to implementation guides, you may find useful.

### Voyager EDI

---

The **EDI** tab of the Acquisitions listbar contains the **Process EDI Messages** icon. Used in collaboration with your EDI Connection Profiles, this allows you to send EDI messages to and receive EDI messages from vendors. It is important to note

that Voyager EDI processing requires EDI connection profiles in order to send and receive messages. The information contained in a connection profile is used to determine where an incoming EDI message can be accessed and loaded once it is received and where an outgoing EDI message should be sent. For more information about EDI Connection Profiles, see [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#).

## Opening the Process EDI Messages Workspace

---

The procedure for opening the Process EDI Messages workspace is shown in [Procedure 15-1](#), [Opening the Process EDI Messages Workspace](#).”



### Procedure 15-1. Opening the Process EDI Messages Workspace

---

Use the following to open the Process EDI Messages workspace.

1. Click the **EDI** bar in the Acquisitions workspace listbar.

Result: The listbar displays the Process EDI Messages icon.

2. Use one of the following to display the Process EDI Messages workspace.
  - Click the **Process EDI Messages** icon (see [Figure 15-1](#)).



---

**Figure 15-1. Process EDI Messages Button**

- **View > EDI > Process EDI Messages** (menu selection).

Result: The Process EDI Messages workspace opens (see [Figure 15-2](#)).

### Process EDI Messages

Incoming | Outgoing

Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ Message status	equal	new	

Find Clear Receive a file

Next 200 records 87% displayed

Often used search criterion list:

All new messages

Receive items	Location	Vendor Name	Profile	Message Number	Message Type	Message Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Midwest Library Serv	yes	4404310	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-234	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-236	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-237	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLOR	yes	63026F	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLOR	yes	63038F	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLOR	yes	64647F	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLOR	yes	64648F	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLOR	yes	64649F	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLOR	yes	64650F	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLOR	yes	64651F	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	TK Bim Co.	yes	PS11684	Invoice	new
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Dawson Books	yes	112	unknown	new

Unselect Select All Load Delete

**Figure 15-2. Process EDI Messages workspace - Incoming tab**

The Incoming and Outgoing tabs display in the Process EDI Messages workspace if you have the necessary authorization.

**NOTE:**

If you are not allowed to process incoming or outgoing EDI messages, the Process EDI Messages workspace is blank. However, if you are authorized to process either or both incoming and outgoing messages, the appropriate tab(s) display.

See the following for additional information regarding the options available on the Incoming and Outgoing tabs:

- [Incoming Tab](#) on [page 15-4](#)
- [Outgoing Tab](#) on [page 15-22](#)

## Incoming Tab

---

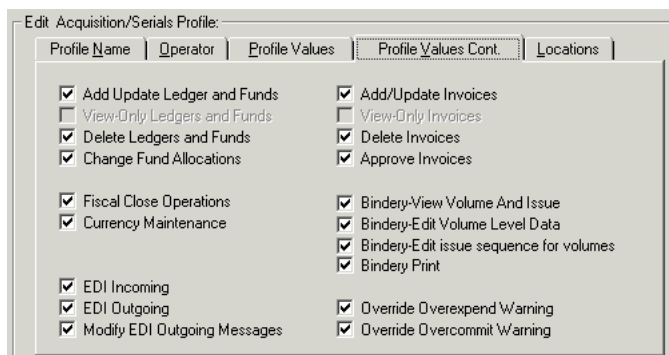
The Incoming tab of the Process EDI Messages workspace enables authorized operators to receive incoming EDIFACT messages and load them into the Voyager System.

### Security For EDI Incoming Messages

---

To be authorized to work with incoming EDI messages, the EDI Incoming check box ([Figure 15-3](#)) must be selected on the Profile Values Cont. tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile. If this check box is not selected, the Incoming tab is not available. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

---



---

**Figure 15-3. Profile Values Cont. tab**

### Receiving EDI Messages

---

The procedure for receiving EDI messages is shown in [Procedure 15-2, Receiving EDI Messages](#), on page [15-5](#).



## Procedure 15-2. Receiving EDI Messages

Use the following to receive EDI Messages.

1. Obtain the file containing the EDIFACT messages from your Vendor and place it in the `/ml/voyager/xxxdb/edi/incoming` directory on your Voyager server.
2. Receive the data file into the Voyager system using the Receive a file button. This step scans the incoming data file, breaks it into its component messages, and displays them to you as messages that are ready to be loaded.

### NOTE:

When there are too many rows to fit on a single screen, the Next button is enabled. See [Figure 15-4](#). Clicking the Next button displays the next 200 records and so on until you have received 100% of the records. Also notice that the screen displays the percentage of records displayed as you continue to click the Next button.

Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ Vendor Name	equal	/	

Find Clear Receive a file

Next 200 records 47% displayed

Often used search criterion list:

**Figure 15-4. Next button example**

If you interrupt the receive process and click the Outgoing tab, the Next button on the Incoming tab is disabled. When you return to the Incoming tab, you need to start the Receive a file process again and the Next button becomes enabled if there are more records than what fits on the display.

Processing on the Outgoing tab works in a similar manner.

3. Select and load the messages that you want to load into your Voyager database. This step is distinct from the receive step. With this step you can choose which messages to actually use.

Voyager is capable of loading two kinds of incoming messages: (1) invoices (of all types, including credit memos) and (2) serial claim responses.

## **Obtaining EDIFACT Data Files from Your Vendor**

---

An EDIFACT transmission appears on your system as an ordinary data file. How it gets to your system is a matter of agreement between your library and the vendor who is sending the transmission. Most libraries and most vendors prefer to use the internet File Transfer Protocol (FTP), but you can also arrange to have the data file delivered by some other means (for example, magnetic tape).

E-mail is not recommended for transmitting EDIFACT messages. E-mail is less secure and the process of extracting the EDI data from the E-Mail message sometimes causes the EDI message to be damaged.

Once you get the file to your site, you (or someone on your computer center staff) need to place it into the proper file directory. In order for Voyager to receive the file, it must be placed into the following directory where `xxxdb` stands for the name of your Voyager database.

```
/ml/voyager/xxxdb/edi/incoming
```

You can give the file any name you like as long as it is different from the name of any file you have previously received. We suggest you choose a file naming convention.

## **The contents of EDIFACT files**

Normally, you do not need to look at the contents of an EDIFACT file. However, should the occasion arise, the following is a brief description of the structure of an EDIFACT transmission.

An EDIFACT file is composed of ordinary text characters, arranged according to special coding rules (called a protocol). The transmission is subdivided into segments, each of which begins with a three-letter segment tag and ends with an apostrophe. Here is a sample segment giving the message date:

```
DTM+137:19980831:102'
```

Segments are strung together in the order specified by the protocol to create messages, which are in turn strung together to create transmission units. Each transmission unit begins with a UNB segment and ends with a UNZ segment. Each message begins with a UNH segment and ends with a UNT segment. Before the first transmission unit, there is usually a UNA segment that specifies the control characters for the transmission.

Because the data in an EDIFACT transmission is mostly textual, you might think that you can treat EDIFACT files like text files. This is not quite true.



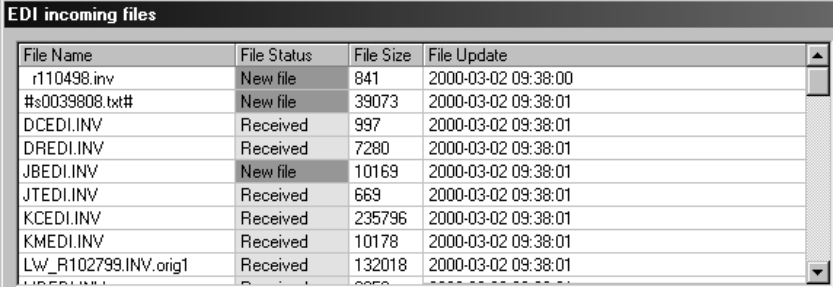
First of all, the EDIFACT protocol specifies very precise coding rules for most of the information in the segments. Unless you know exactly what you are doing, you should not attempt to rearrange or edit data in an EDIFACT transmission.

Secondly, there are no line breaks in an EDIFACT transmission. Each segment begins immediately after the apostrophe that ends the preceding segment. Voyager is an unusually tolerant system and ignores line breaks that it finds between segments, but not all EDIFACT software is so tolerant. Software that is written to handle text files (including most E-mail software) may do unexpected things when it encounters a line that is too long. This is one of the reasons that we recommend FTP rather than E-mail for transferring EDIFACT files.

### Receiving EDIFACT Files

Use the Receive a file button to make Voyager aware of a file containing a new EDIFACT transmission. When you click the Receive a file button, the EDI incoming files list box ([Figure 15-5](#)) displays the following information about each of the files in the `edi/incoming` directory:

- File Name
- File Status (for example, New File, Received, Loaded, Not an EDI file)
- File size
- The date and time when the file was last updated



File Name	File Status	File Size	File Update
r110498.inv	New file	841	2000-03-02 09:38:00
#s0039808.txt#	New file	39073	2000-03-02 09:38:01
DCEDI.INV	Received	997	2000-03-02 09:38:01
DREDI.INV	Received	7280	2000-03-02 09:38:01
JBEDI.INV	New file	10169	2000-03-02 09:38:01
JTEDI.INV	Received	669	2000-03-02 09:38:01
KCEDI.INV	Received	235796	2000-03-02 09:38:01
KMEDI.INV	Received	10178	2000-03-02 09:38:01
LW_R102799.INV.orig1	Received	132018	2000-03-02 09:38:01

**Figure 15-5. EDI incoming files list box**

Click the file you wish to receive (if the file has already been received, you are asked to confirm that you really do want to receive it again.) Then click the OK button. The EDI incoming files workspace closes and a summary of each message in the file displays on the Incoming tab.

If your EDI connection profiles have been set correctly (see [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#)), Voyager assigns each message to the correct vendor and library location, and the messages are ready for loading. If Voyager has not made the correct assignments, you must follow the instructions below for correcting the vendor and location assignments (see [Correcting Vendor and Location Assignments](#) on [page 15-8](#).)

Once you have verified that the newly received messages have each been assigned to the correct vendor and library location, you may load them yourself, pass them along to someone else to load, or leave them as they are.

From this point forward, you deal with individual messages instead of files. Voyager has made its own copy of each message in the file you just received. You can, if you wish, remove the file from the `/ml/voyager/xxxdb/edi/incoming` directory. Be sure to keep a backup copy until you are certain you no longer need the data.

---

### Correcting Vendor and Location Assignments

---

After a file containing new EDIFACT messages has been received, you may find that some of the messages may not have been correctly assigned to a vendor or library location if there are no connection profiles that match the specific characteristics of the messages. Such a message displays ????? in the Vendor Name column and no in the Profile column of the message's summary display on the Incoming tab (see [Figure 15-6](#)).

---

Receive items	Location	Vendor Name	Profile	Message Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	Any location	East View Informatio	no	96107765
<input type="checkbox"/>	Any location	East View Informatio	no	96107765
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	?????	no	10729151
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	?????	no	10729161
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	?????	no	10704679
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	?????	no	10704681
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	?????	no	10704997
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	EBSCO PUBLISHING	yes	10704650
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	EBSCO PUBLISHING	yes	10704666

---

**Figure 15-6.** Vendor Name column with ?????

In order for a ????? message to be ready for loading, you need to perform the steps shown in [Procedure 15-3, Correcting Vendor and Location Assignments](#), on [page 15-9](#).



### Procedure 15-3. Correcting Vendor and Location Assignments

Use the following to correct vendor and location assignments.

1. Click the **Profile** column of the message's row.

Result: An ellipsis button (...) displays beside no.

2. Click the ellipsis (...) button.

Result: The New EDI Connection Profile dialog box opens (see [Figure 15-7](#)).

**Figure 15-7. New EDI Connection Profile dialog box**

3. In the Vendor section of the New EDI Connection Profile dialog box, click the magnifying glass button ([Figure 15-8](#)) beside the Vendor Code field to open the Find Vendor dialog box. Search for a vendor.



**Figure 15-8. Magnifying Glass Button**

Result: Once you have selected a vendor from your search results, the vendor code populates the Vendor Code field.

**NOTE:**

After a vendor has been selected, you can press the ellipsis button beside the Vendor Code field to display the vendor record (for more information about vendor records, see [Creating a Vendor Record](#) on [page 4-16](#).)

4. A default library location populates the Location field (see [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#) for more information about determining the default location.) If you want to associate the message to a different library location, select a library location from the drop-down list in the Location field. Any EDI incoming messages matching this connection profile are accessible from this location. If you want the connection profile to apply to any location, select Any Location from the drop-down list.

**NOTE:**

Unless you have a need to associate the EDI message to a specific library location or department for access control, you should select Any Location from the drop-down list. If you do decide to associate the EDI messages to a specific location, the Acq/Serials Security Profile to which an operator belongs must be associated to the same library location as the EDI message in order for that operator to access the message. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about Acq/Serials Profiles.

5. You must then decide whether you want the connection profile you are creating to be associated only with the current message or with any subsequent messages.
  - If you want the connection profile to be associated only with the current message, do not mark any of the Usage check boxes and click the **OK** button. The New EDI Connection Profile dialog box closes and the summary of the message displays on the Incoming tab with the new location and/or vendor assignments.

The connection profile created for the message exists, but because usage(s) for the connection profile were not defined, the profile cannot be matched to any subsequent messages.

- If you want the connection profile to be associated with any subsequent messages that have the same defining information as the current message, click in the **Usage** check box that applies to the current message (for example, invoice) and click the **OK** button. The New EDI Connection Profile dialog box closes and the summary of the message displays on the Incoming tab with the new location and/or vendor assignments.

The connection profile created for the message exists and is associated with any subsequent messages that match the definition of the connection profile.

Result: You then have corrected the vendor and library location assignments of the newly received message and the message is ready for loading.

---

### **Selecting and Loading Messages into Your Database**

---

Messages can be selected and loaded into your Voyager database at any time after they have been received. At this step you can choose which messages to actually work with. You can load messages directly after they have been received or you can leave the received messages to be loaded or deleted at a later time by yourself or by someone else. If you want to select and load messages directly after they have been received, the messages remain on the Incoming tab. If you want to select and load messages at any later time, you must conduct a search for the messages in order to display the messages on the Incoming tab.

### **Searching for Incoming Messages**

You can use the search grid at the top of the Incoming tab to search for incoming messages that have been previously received. You can also use the search grid to search for messages of a variety of other statuses (including *loaded*) for a variety of reasons (for example, to review messages of a certain status or to delete unwanted messages).

The procedure for searching for an incoming message is shown in [Procedure 15-4, Searching for an Incoming Message](#).



### **Procedure 15-4. Searching for an Incoming Message**

---

Use the following to search for an incoming message.

1. Click in the **Search By** field to display a drop-down arrow. Select a **Search By** option from the drop-down list. If you are conducting a search for received messages that have not yet been loaded, select **Message Status** from the drop-down list.

#### **NOTE:**

You can also click the **Often used search criterion list** drop-down list to display frequently-used searching criteria. If you choose an entry from this list, the search grid is automatically populated with appropriate information and the search is automatically launched.

When you search for incoming messages, you can search by a variety of methods. These methods are shown in the following list.

Method of Searching	Description
Message Number	The number that is associated with the incoming message.
Message Type	The types of incoming messages. For example, invoice or claim response.
Message Status	The status of an incoming message. For example, new, loaded, failed to load or document deleted.
Load Date	The date on which the incoming message was loaded into the Voyager system.
Create Date	The date on which the message was created.
Update Date	The date on which the message was last updated.
Vendor Name	The name of the vendor that sent the message.
Vendor Code	The code for the vendor that sent the message.
EDI filename	The name of the file which contains the EDI message.

2. Click in the **Condition** field to display a drop-down arrow. Select a **Condition** option from the drop-down list.
3. Click in the **Search For** field to display an ellipsis button. Click the ellipsis button and select an option from the dialog box that opens. If an ellipsis button does not display, type the information directly into the Search For field. If you are conducting a search for received messages that have not yet been loaded, select new from the **Select a Message Status** dialog box.
4. If you want to continue narrowing your search, select a boolean operator from the **Operator** drop-down list. Continue narrowing your search by repeating steps 1 - 4 as needed.
5. Click the **Find** button to execute your search according to the chosen searching criteria.

Result: The search results that match your criteria display on the Incoming tab. If you want to conduct another search, click **Clear** to clear the search grid and re-enter your searching information.

---

### Receive Items Option

The Receive items option displays as one of the columns (see [Figure 15-9](#)) on the Incoming tab for invoices (messages) that you have received using the method described in [Procedure 15-2, Receiving EDI Messages](#), on page [15-5](#).

Incoming		Outgoing	
Search By	Condition	Search For	Operator
→ Message status	equal	new	

Receive items	Location	Vendor Name	Profile	Message Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Midwest Library Serv	yes	4404310
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-234
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-236
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-237
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLORA	yes	63026F
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	BAKER & TAYLORA	yes	63038F

**Figure 15-9. Receive items column**

Prior to loading an invoice (as described in [Procedure 15-5, Selecting and Loading Messages](#), on page 15-14), you may choose to indicate that you want the system to automatically receive all the items for POs created with that invoice. To do this, select the check box in the row of the invoice you subsequently plan to load (see [Figure 15-10](#)).

Receive items	Location	Vendor Name	Profile	Message Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Midwest Library Serv	yes	4404310
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-234
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-236
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acquisitions	Baker & Taylor	yes	S3.639-237

**Figure 15-10. Receive items option checked**

Once the invoice has been loaded, you cannot clear the check box.

**NOTE:**

Since marking a PO line item as received changes the line item status to Received Complete, you may want to avoid using this option with invoices that contain serial line items that should retain a status of Received Partial.

## Selecting and Loading Messages

Once the messages have been displayed on the Incoming tab, you can select the messages that you would like to load.

The procedure for selecting and loading messages is shown in [Procedure 15-5, Selecting and Loading Messages](#)."



---

### Procedure 15-5. Selecting and Loading Messages

---

Use the following to select and load messages.

1. Click each message that you want to load. You can select one message to load or you can select more than one message to load. To select all of the messages on the incoming messages grid, click the **Select All** button.

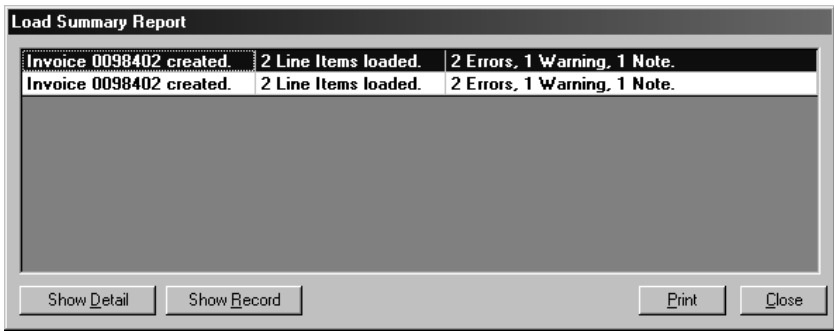
To unselect an individual message, re-click the message. To unselect all of the messages that you have selected, click the **Unselect** button.

#### NOTE:

The searching and selection procedure explained through the previous six steps can be used for a variety of reasons other than displaying messages to load. For example, you can display and delete unwanted messages. To delete a message, follow steps 1-6 to display and select the message, and then click the **Delete** button. The following confirmation question displays: *Are you sure you wish to delete the highlighted message(s)?* Click **Yes** to delete the message. Click **No** to cancel the deletion of the message.

2. Once you have selected the messages that you want to load into your Voyager database, click the **Load** button.
3. A message appears to determine whether you want to see the loading report. The loading report provides summary information containing the status of each message that was loaded. It also provides a quick way to access the actual records that were loaded (that is, invoice or claim response).
  - If you click **No**, you are not provided with any summary information or any immediate way to access the actual records that were loaded.
  - If you click **Yes**, the Load Summary Report list box opens (see [Figure 15-11](#)).



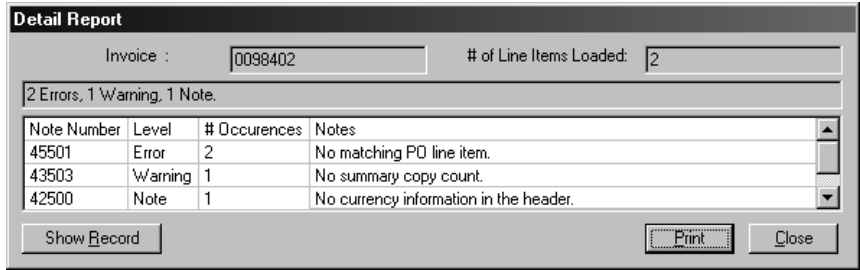


**Figure 15-11. Load Summary Report list box**

The Load Summary Report list box opens the status of each loaded message. A row in the Load Summary Report grid provides brief information about the loading process of that EDI incoming message. The following information is displayed: the type of message along with the message number, the number of line items loaded, and the number of errors, warnings and notes that have occurred during the loading process.

4. Click the **Print** button to send the Load Summary Report information to the printer. Click the **Close** button to exit the Load Summary Report list box.
5. Select a row and click the **Show Detail** button.

Result: This opens the Detail Report list box (see [Figure 15-12](#)).



**Figure 15-12. Detail Report list box**

The Detail Report list box contains a detailed list of notes, providing information such as warnings, errors, etc., that occurred during the loading of that particular EDIFACT message. One row represents one note. For example, if there are three notes, three rows display in the report.

6. Click the **Print** button to send the Detail Report information to the printer. Click the **Close** button to exit the Detail Report list box and re-open the Load Summary Report list box. For a complete list of notes that display in the Detail Report list box, see [Notes](#) on [page 15-19](#).
7. The Show Record button that displays on both the Load Summary Report list box and the Detail Report list box provides a way for you to quickly access the actual record that was loaded into your Voyager database such as invoice or claim response.
  - From the Detail Report list box, click the **Show Record** button to access the record.
  - From the Load Summary Report list box, select the message that you want to access and click the **Show Record** button.

Result: If an invoice was created during the loading process, the Show Record button opens the invoice. If a claim response was created during the loading process, the Show Record button opens the Claims list with the corresponding claims displayed. You can access the Claim History for the particular claims to view the claim response information.

---

## Resolving Errors

It is possible for errors to occur during the loading of incoming EDI messages. The most common error that may occur for invoice messages is Voyager not being able to find unique purchase order line items to match to the line items on the invoice. If this error occurs, when you click the **Show Record** button on the Load Summary Report list box or the Detail Report list box to open the invoice, UnLinked displays in the Line #/Status column of each line item that could not be matched to a unique purchase order line item (see [Figure 15-13](#)).

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Invoice: 0098402 - [Pending]". It has a menu bar with "File", "Invoice", "Line Item", "Tools", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with buttons for "Save and Close", "Save", "Approve", "Base Currency", "Delete", and "Help". The main area is divided into several sections: "Header" (with sub-tabs "Header", "Footer", "Notes", "Properties"), "Invoice" (containing fields for Number: 0098402, Voucher ID: 550, Date: 9/3/98, and Amount: \$279.31), "Vendor" (containing fields for Code: EB, Account, and Status Date: 7/13/00), "Amounts" (containing fields for Line Item Subtotal: \$265.00, Other Charges: \$14.31, and Total Invoice Amount: \$279.31), and "Currency" (containing fields for Code: USD and Rate: 1). Below these sections is a table with columns: Status, Title, Price (Adjustments), # of Copies, Location, and Fund. The table contains two rows of data, both with a status of "UnLinked". At the bottom of the window are three buttons: "Relink...", "Delete Line", and "Details...".

Status	Title	Price (Adjustments)	# of Copies	Location	Fund
UnLinked	EVOLUTIONARY ANTHRC	\$235.00	1		<<Multiple>>
UnLinked	FLORIDA LAW REVIEW /F	\$30.00	1		<<Multiple>>

Figure 15-13. Invoice dialog box - UnLinked items

You cannot view the full details of an unlinked item until it is linked to a new or existing purchase order. You can only link one item at a time. To link an item, select the item and click the **Relink** button. The Find Purchase Order search dialog box opens. Search for the purchase order to which you wish to link the Invoice line item.

If an Order line item that matches the Invoice line item does not exist, or if you know that a purchase order exists that does not exactly match the invoice line item information for some reason, you can create a new purchase order with the correct line items. You can either leave the invoice displayed while you create and approve a purchase order and then link the invoice line items to the newly-created purchase order, or you can close the invoice displayed through EDI and at a later time create and approve a purchase order, display the invoice through a standard invoice search and then link the invoice line items to the newly-created purchase order.

Incoming Message Fields	Description
-------------------------	-------------

Receive items	The option to select, prior to loading an invoice, to flag the system to automatically receive all the items when the invoice is subsequently loaded.
---------------	---

Location	The location at which the message can be accessed. To associate the message to a different location, click the ellipsis in the field and double-click a new location from the list that displays. If you choose a new location, and no connection profile exists for the combination of the location and the vendor, no then displays in the <b>Profile</b> field. If this happens, you can click the ellipsis in the <b>Profile</b> field and create a new connection profile for the location/vendor combination.
Vendor Name	The name of the vendor who sent the message. You can display the vendor record by clicking the ellipsis in this field.
Profile	The connection profile used by the message. To display the connection profile, or to create a new connection profile for the location/vendor combination, click the ellipsis in the this field.
Message Number	The number that is associated with a particular message. You can display the actual EDIFACT view of the message by clicking the ellipsis in this field.
Message Type	The type of message. For example, invoice. After a message has been loaded, if the message type is invoice, the invoice can be displayed by clicking the ellipsis in this field.
Message Status	The status of the message that is being received. The four possible statuses are New, Loaded, Failed to load and Document deleted. Document deleted means that the message was loaded to create a Voyager document, such as an invoice, and then the Voyager document was later deleted. A message with the status Document deleted may be re-loaded. You can click the ellipsis in this field to open the EDI Events dialog box, which displays detailed information about the message. The Show Detail button on the EDI Events dialog box allows you to display the Detail Report associated with the message (see step 9 of <a href="#">Selecting and Loading Messages into Your Database</a> on <a href="#">page 15-11</a> for information about the Detail Report list box.) If the message is an invoice and it has been loaded, the Show Record button enables you to display the invoice.
Load Date	The date on which the message was loaded and viewed.
Line Items	The number of line items associated with the message.

Amount	The dollar amount of the incoming message (if the message is an invoice). This value almost always displays for messages that have been loaded. For new messages that have not yet been loaded, this value is not always present, and if it is present, it does not necessarily reflect the exact amount of the invoice. Rather, this value is intended to help you decipher one message from another. The exact dollar amount displays on the invoice after it has been loaded.
File Name	The name of the EDI file that contained the message. The file names in incoming messages can be no longer than 30 characters.
Sender Code	The unique code used to identify the sender of the message (the Vendor Envelope Address on the EDI connection profile.)
Receiver Code	The unique code used to identify the receiver of the message (the Library Envelope Address on the EDI connection profile.)

## Notes

The following is a complete list of notes that display in the Detail Report list box. The majority of these are not errors, but rather warnings or informational notes that do not interfere with the successful processing of EDI messages.

To determine the severity level of a particular note, look in the Level column on the Detail Report list box. The severity level of each note is provided. The Note or Warning severity levels do not interfere with the processing of EDI messages.

The following are considered notes rather than messages because message refers to the EDI document that was loaded, while note refers to a comment about something that was noticed during the loading process.

## Receiving EDI files

[Table 15-1](#) contains notes generated when receiving EDI files.

**Table 15-1. Notes Generated When Receiving EDI Files**

Note ID	Explanation	Severity Level
43504	Duplicate message was found in the database.	Warning

**Loading EDI Invoices**

[Table 15-2](#) contains notes generated when loading EDI invoices.

**Table 15-2. Notes Generated When Loading EDI Invoices**

Note ID	Explanation	Severity Level
43500	No copy count in the line item.	Warning
43501	No price information in the line item.	Warning
43502	No line item total amount.	Warning
42500	No currency information in the header.	Note
45502	No line items found.	Error
43503	No summary copy count.	Warning
43504	No summary line item count.	Warning
45503	UNS segment is missing.	Error
43505	Discrepancy in the copy count.	Warning
43506	Discrepancy in the line item count.	Warning
42502	Invoice note truncated.	Note
43508	No price adjustment method found.	Warning
42503	Invoice line item note truncated.	Note
43510	Multiple bibs matched the standard number.	Warning
45500	Multiple matching PO line items-The information supplied in the message matched more than one order line item in the database	Error
45501	Cannot find matching line item--An EDI message contains a line item that cannot be matched to any order line item in the Voyager database. Possible causes: 1) the order line does not exist, and a new order needs to be created; 2) the order line exists, but the title, standard numbers, and reference ids from the message did not match the database entries.	Error
42501	No title information in the line item.	Note
42505	Vendor reference number added to line item.	Note
42506	Vendor reference number replaced for line item.	Note

## Loading Claim Responses

[Table 15-3](#) contains notes generated when loading claim responses.

**Table 15-3. Notes Generated When Loading EDI Claim Responses**

Note ID	Explanation	Severity Level
45601	Invalid claim identification number.	Error
45605	No claim responses loaded.	Error
45602	No action date found.	Error
45603	No action quantity found.	Error
45604	No report type information found.	Error
45600	No claim ID found.	Error
45605	No claim response loaded.	Error

## Sending EDI Claims

[Table 15-4](#) contains notes generated when sending EDI claims.

**Table 15-4. Notes Generated When Sending EDI Claims**

Note ID	Explanation	Severity Level
45700	No ISSN found in the bibliographic record.	Error
45701	Improperly formatted ISSN found in the bibliographic record.	Error
45702	No claim type information found.	Error
45703	No vendor reference information found.	Error

## Sending EDI Purchase Orders

[Table 15-5](#) contains notes generated when sending EDI purchase orders.

**Table 15-5. Notes Generated When Sending EDI Purchase Orders**

Note ID	Explanation	Severity Level
45800	No ISSN found in the bibliographic record.	Error
45801	No ISBN found in the bibliographic record.	Error

**Table 15-5. Notes Generated When Sending EDI Purchase Orders**

45803	No author found in the bibliographic record.	Error
45804	No title found in the bibliographic record.	Error
45805	No shipping details were provided.	Error

## Outgoing Tab

---

The Outgoing tab ([Figure 15-15](#)) of the Process EDI Messages workspace enables authorized operators to transmit outgoing EDIFACT messages to vendors. These outgoing messages (that is, purchase order or serial claim) are attached to files that you have created and stored in an agreed upon directory on your server for your vendors to retrieve.

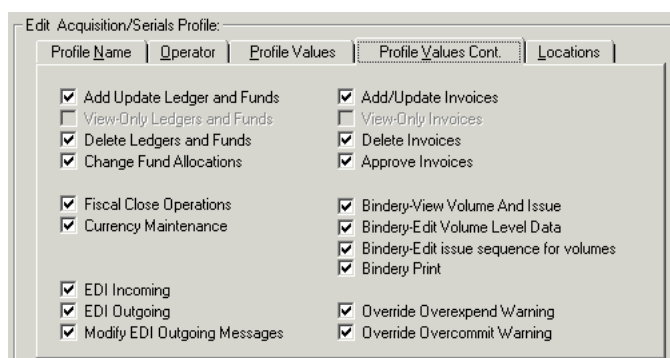
## Security for EDI Outgoing Messages

---

To be authorized to work with outgoing EDI messages, the EDI Outgoing check box must be selected on the Profile Values Cont. tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile. If this check box is not selected, the Outgoing tab is not available.

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

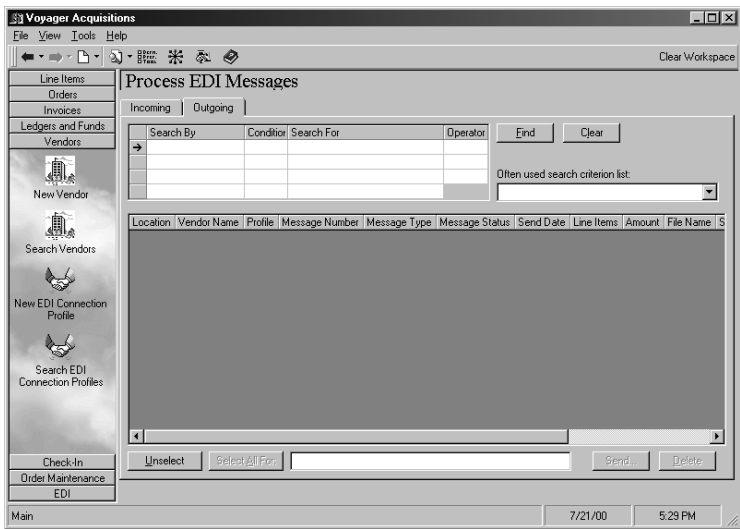
---

**Figure 15-14. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The data included in outgoing EDI purchase order messages has been updated to better support your vendors' handling needs. Those vendors working with libraries to provide shelf-ready materials need to know the final library location (intended location in Voyager) for each copy of an item. This information is now included in



EDI purchase order messages. In addition, you can now include the vendor-supplied customer account number in EDI purchase order messages (see step 5 of [Creating an EDI Connection Profile](#) on [page 4-42](#).)



**Figure 15-15. Process EDI Messages workspace - Outgoing tab**

### Searching for Outgoing Messages

You can use the search grid at the top of the Outgoing tab to search for new outgoing messages that are ready to be sent to a file. You can also use the search grid to search for messages of a variety of other statuses (including written to file for sending) for a variety of reasons (for example, to review messages of a certain status or to delete unwanted messages).

The procedure for searching for outgoing messages is shown in [Procedure 15-6, Searching for Outgoing Messages](#), on [page 15-24](#).



---

**Procedure 15-6. Searching for Outgoing Messages**

---

Use the following to search for an outgoing message.

1. Click in the **Search By** field to display a drop-down arrow. Select a **Search By** option from the drop-down list. If you were conducting a search for all messages with a certain status (for example, new messages that have not yet been written to a file for sending), you would select **Message Status** from the drop-down list.

**NOTE:**

You can also click the **Often used search criterion list** drop-down list to display frequently-used searching criterion. If you choose an entry from this list, the search grid is automatically filled in with appropriate information and the search is automatically launched.

When you search for outgoing messages, you can search by a variety of methods. These methods are as shown.

Search Method	Description
Message Number	The number that is associated with the outgoing message.
Message Type	The types of outgoing messages. For example, Purchase Order, Serial Claim, or Unknown.
Message Status	The status of an outgoing message. For example, new message, written to file for sending, Agent reports message sent or Agent reports problems sending msg.
Send Date	The date on which the outgoing message was written to a file.
Create Date	The date on which the message was created.
Update Date	The date on which the message was last updated.
Vendor Name	The name of the vendor that the message is being sent to.
Vendor Code	The code for the vendor that the message is being sent to.
EDI filename	The name of the file which contains the EDI message.

2. Click in the **Condition** field to display a drop-down arrow. Select a Condition option from the drop-down list.
3. Click in the **Search For** field to display an ellipsis button. Click the ellipsis button and select an option from the dialog box that opens. If an ellipsis button does not display, type the information directly into the Search For field. If you were conducting a search for new messages that have not yet been written to a file for sending, you would select new messages from the Select a Message Status dialog box.
4. If you want to continue narrowing your search, select a boolean operator (AND, OR, NOT) from the Operator drop-down list. Continue narrowing your search by repeating steps 1 - 4 as needed.
5. Click the **Find** button to execute your search according to the chosen searching criterion. The search results that match your criteria display on the Outgoing tab. If you would like to conduct another search, click **Clear** to clear the search grid and re-enter your searching information.

Outgoing Message Fields	Description
Location	The location from which the message can be sent.
Vendor Name	The name of the vendor to whom you are sending the message. You can display the vendor record by clicking the ellipsis in this field.
Profile	The connection profile used by the message. To display the connection profile, or to create a new connection profile for the location/vendor combination, click the ellipsis in the this field.
Message Number	The number that is associated with a particular message. You can display the actual EDIFACT view of the message by clicking the ellipsis in this field.
Message Type	The type of message. For example, Purchase Order or Serial Claim. To display the message in Voyager, click the ellipsis button in this field. After a message has been loaded, if the message type is invoice, the invoice can be displayed by clicking the ellipsis in this field.
Message Status	The status of the message. The four possible statuses are: new message, written to file for sending, Agent reports message sent, and Agent reports problems sending msg.
Send Date	The date on which the message was written to a file.

Line Items	The number of line items associated with the message.
Amount	The dollar amount of the outgoing message (if the message is a purchase order). This value is not always present, and if it is present, it does not necessarily reflect the exact amount of the purchase order. Rather, this value is intended to help you decipher one message from another. The exact dollar amount displays on the actual purchase order in your Voyager system and in the vendor's system after it has been sent.
File Name	If the message has previously been written to a file for sending, the name of the EDI file displays. This value is not present for new messages that have not yet been written to a file for sending.
Sender Code	The unique code used to identify the sender of the message (the Library Envelope Address on the EDI connection profile.)
Receiver Code	The unique code used to identify the receiver of the message (the Vendor Envelope Address on the EDI connection profile.)

---

### Security for Modifying Outgoing Messages

---

To be authorized to select messages that have different Vendors or Sender Codes and send them to a file, the Modify EDI Outgoing Messages check box must be selected on the Profile Values Cont. tab of your Acquisitions/Serials Profile.

Ex Libris does not recommend grouping messages that are associated with different vendors into one EDI transmission as a general practice. However, this ability is available to permit an authorized operator to send messages to a file for archival purposes or to clean up the outgoing message list by sending any wrongly-addressed messages to a file that is then discard.

If this security check box is not selected, when you select messages that have different Vendors or Sender Codes, a warning box displays the following message: You have no authority to modify EDI outgoing messages, so please select the messages for the same vendor.

If this security check box is selected, when you select messages that have different Vendors or Sender Codes, a warning dialog box appears asking if you actually want to send out messages associated with different Vendors or Sender

Codes in one EDI transmission. If your answer is Yes, the Select All for button becomes disabled because this button only allows you to select ALL of the messages with SAME Vendor.

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about security.

### Selecting and Sending Messages

---

Once the messages have been displayed on the Outgoing tab, you can select the messages that you would like to send to a file that you create.

The procedure for selecting and sending messages is shown in [Procedure 15-7, Selecting and Sending Messages](#), on page [15-27](#).



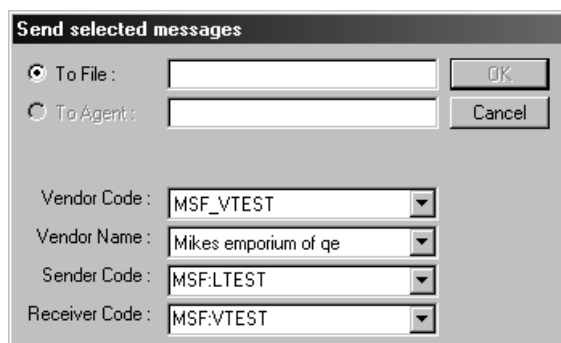
#### Procedure 15-7. Selecting and Sending Messages

---

Use the following to select and send messages.

1. Click an outgoing message. When a message is selected, the name of the Vendor, the Sender Code and the Receiver Code appear in the text box at the bottom of the tab. The Select All for button selects all of the other messages that are associated with the vendor of the currently selected message. Messages with a different Sender Code is not selected. The Unselect button allows you to unselect the messages that you have selected.
2. Click the **Send** button.

Result: The Send selected messages dialog box opens (see [Figure 15-16](#)).



---

**Figure 15-16. Send Selected Messages dialog box**

3. In the field beside the To File radio button, type the name of the file to which you are sending your outgoing messages. There is no method to locate already existing files because you are always creating a new file when you send messages.

After the EDI outgoing message is generated, unless specified, it is saved in the /ml/voyager/xxxdb/EDI/outgoing directory. The file then needs to be moved to the agreed upon location to which the vendor has access in order to FTP the file.

You should define your own file naming conventions so you can properly keep track of the files you create and so you can appropriately name files to work with your transmission software. Naming conventions are not defined for you because Ex Libris cannot predict what kind of software you plan to use to transmit the file.

Result: The Vendor Code, Vendor Name, Sender Code, and Receiver Code fields automatically display with the information from the outgoing message(s).

**NOTE:**

If the Modify EDI Outgoing Messages check box is selected on the Profile tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Profile, the operator has the ability to make any last minute corrections to the Sender and Receiver codes. This security should be used to permit only knowledgeable operators to correct mistakes caused by incorrect connection profiles.

This security can also be used to permit authorized operators to select messages that have different Vendors or Sender Codes and send them to a file (this would have been done at step 1).

Although Ex Libris does not recommend grouping messages that are associated with different vendors into one EDI transmission as a general practice, this ability is available to permit an authorized operator to send messages to a file for archival purposes or to clean up the outgoing message list by sending any wrongly-addressed messages to a file that is then discarded.

In addition, this ability to group messages that are associated with different vendors into one file can help your institution deal with possible vendor mergers. If messages associated with different vendors have been selected to be sent to a file, all the different vendor names, vendor codes, sender codes and receiver codes display in the drop-down lists in the appropriate fields. An authorized operator can click these drop-down lists and select the combination to be used for the file.

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about security.

4. Click **OK** to send the selected message(s) to the file and exit the dialog box. Click **Cancel** to exit the dialog box without sending the selected message(s) to the file.
-





<b>Introduction</b>	<b>16-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>16-1</b>
<b>Introduction to FPC</b>	<b>16-2</b>
• Preparing for Fiscal Period Close	16-3
• Define the Next Fiscal Period (Required)	16-3
• Review Fund Names (Optional)	16-4
• Identify Open Orders (Optional, Strongly Recommended)	16-4
• Define Rollover Rules (Required)	16-7
• Security for Defining the Rollover Rule	16-7
Assigning Rollover Rules to Ledgers	16-13
Rollover Rules Eligibility	16-19
• Set the Rollover Rule's Action Indicator	16-21
• Create and Review Fund Snapshot Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended)	16-22
• Create and Review Open Order Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended)	16-22
<b>Before Running Fiscal Period Close</b>	<b>16-25</b>
• Back Up Your System (Optional, Recommended)	16-25
• Disable Online Operators (Required)	16-26
<b>Fiscal Period Close Processing</b>	<b>16-27</b>
<b>Analyzing Results &amp; Making Corrections (Optional, Strongly Recommended)</b>	<b>16-31</b>

• Checking New Ledgers/Funds	16-31
• Checking Open Order Rollover	16-31
• Re-enable Online Operators (Required)	16-32
• Adjust Funds	16-32
<b>Running the Fiscal Period Close Batch Programs</b>	<b>16-32</b>
• Issues to Consider Before Running Batch Jobs	16-33
• Batch Jobs	16-33
Shutting Down Acquisitions	16-34
Backing Up Your Acquisitions Data (Strongly Recommended)	16-34
Running the Fiscal Period Close (FPC) Batch Job	16-35
Restoring Your Acquisitions Data After Fiscal Period Close Processing	16-36

---

## Introduction

At the end of your fiscal period, Voyager offers features that allow you to accomplish the following.

- Create new Ledgers/Funds for New Fiscal Periods and set Original Allocations in the new Funds according to Rollover Rules applied to each Ledger.
- Rollover open orders from a previous Fiscal Period to a new Fiscal Period by committing amounts in the new Fiscal Period's Funds according to Rollover Rules set for each Line Item Type for each Purchase Order type.

Both of these operations are accomplished by a batch program. You must create Rollover Rules online before you run the program. Also, in order to prepare for the operation, you should produce (again through a batch program) two reports: the Fund Snapshot and Open Order Reports.

Ex Libris distributes a template script that is executed on your Voyager server.

---

## Purpose of this Chapter

This chapter describes the complete Fiscal Period Close process with indications of what is required and what is optional. This information assumes a familiarity with the fund accounting aspects of the Voyager Acquisitions/Serials module and with local decisions regarding Fiscal Periods and Ledgers/Funds.

## Introduction to FPC

---

If you want to do either or both of the following, you should plan to use Fiscal Period Close.

- Create new Ledgers/Funds for a New Fiscal Period without keying them online
- Carry over open purchase orders from one Fiscal Period to the next without keying new Purchase Orders

**NOTE:**

Fiscal Period Close is itself completely optional. You can continue to use Voyager's Acquisition functions without using Fiscal Period Close. Any operation involved in changing from one Fiscal Period to the next can be done manually through online operations.

Before you begin to plan, be aware of what Fiscal Period Close does not include. Fiscal Period Close does not change the line item status of any copy in any Purchase Order or Invoice nor does it initiate any vendor correspondence of any kind. Additionally, FPC does not roll over header information, including other charges information.

For example, if your institution requires you to cancel any open order at the end of a Fiscal Period, you must do this by setting appropriate not-needed-after or cancellation dates in Purchase Orders in order for line items to appear on the Acquisitions Problem List from which you can issue cancellations (or you can cancel unreceived line items or entire Purchase Orders manually from an individual Purchase Order). The Open Order Report provides assistance for such operations. There is one exception: if a line item copy is rolled-over and it was invoiced in the prior Fiscal Period, the Invoice Item Status for the line item copy is set to blank.

With the exception of Purchase Orders and Funds, Fiscal Period Close does not make changes to any existing records. For Purchase Orders and Funds, the system does the following.

- a. Posts commitments to new Funds for those open orders you wish to rollover to a New Fiscal Period
- b. Decommits amounts from the Funds from the prior Fiscal Period (provided there was no invoicing in the prior Fiscal Period)
- c. Makes adjustments to Prices, Line Item Totals, and PO Totals in affected Purchase Orders. Following the completion of the rollover processing, the Ledger/Fund as displayed in Copies/Fund for a line item copy affected by Fiscal Period Close is for the New Fiscal Period

Fiscal Period Close does not remove any existing records from the system. Ledgers/Funds from previous Fiscal Periods remain in the system. All Purchase Orders and Invoices using Ledgers/Funds from ANY Fiscal Period remain in the system. Fiscal Period Close processing does not affect any Invoices of whatever status in any way, nor rollover header information.

### **Preparing for Fiscal Period Close**

---

There are a variety of tasks that you must perform before you run the Fiscal Period Close program. Other tasks are optional, but they provide assistance in deciding how to define rollover rules, a guide to help resolve issues related to unreceived orders, and a check on the success of the rollover operation.

#### **NOTE:**

Some of the optional tasks are further identified as Strongly Recommended. Because Voyager has been developed to provide as many local options as possible (especially with regards to Acquisitions/Serials), its very architecture sometimes prevents Ex Libris designers from making any one step mandatory even when, from a data processing viewpoint, such a requirement would be highly desirable. Therefore, we have marked those steps as Optional, Strongly Recommended and noted in boldface what Ex Libris Customer Support needs in order to help you diagnose problems, should any occur.

If you are using a currency other than the base currency, rollover recalculates the amount of each line item amount according to the conversion rate of the rollover day.

### **Define the Next Fiscal Period (Required)**

---

In order to go from one Fiscal Period to the next, you must define the next Fiscal Period in the Acquisitions Configuration section of the System Administration module. You may have already defined a sequence of Fiscal Periods into the future. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about Fiscal Periods.

Defining a Fiscal Period requires you to enter a time span. The online programs do not permit you to extend the life of a Fund before or after the time span of the Fiscal Period. If you typically do the following, we recommend that you take these facts into account when entering the time spans.

- Begin placing orders using Funds for the next Fiscal Period before the end of the current Fiscal Period
- Pay for items using Funds for a past Fiscal Period after the beginning of the next Fiscal Period

Since each Ledger (and by definition, each Fund) has an assigned Fiscal Period, it does not matter that you may have two sequential Fiscal Periods with overlapping end and begin dates, respectively. The system always commits/ expends from the Ledger/Funds of the Fiscal Period that you select to use.



**IMPORTANT:**

*If you have such an overlap, it is a good idea to make sure that operators understand this. When you select a Fund to place an order or pay for an item, the selection presented to an operator may incorporate Funds with the same names but from multiple Ledgers from different Fiscal Periods. Incorporating dates into the Ledger Name is one way to avoid any confusion.*

Remember that if a Fund is past its allowed date, it does not display as a valid Fund selection when the operator needs to assign a Fund(s) to a line item copy. Also remember that the system blocks the use of Funds before or beyond their allowed dates when you attempt to approve either Purchase Orders or Invoices.

### **Review Fund Names (Optional)**

---

When Fiscal Period Close rolls over a Ledger and its Funds to a new Fiscal Period, you have the option of renaming the Ledger before you perform the rollover, but the Fund Names are the same. If you have incorporated time span information into any Fund Name, you may wish to change those names so as not to create any confusion once you begin using the new Fund.

For example, if your new Fiscal Period is for 1996-1997 and there is a Fund named Serials 95-96 that you used in Fiscal Period 1995-1996, we would recommend that you change the Fund Name to Serials. Otherwise, the new Fund for the Fiscal Period 1996-1997 displays as Serials 95-96 since the Fund Name is continued in the rollover process.

To change a Fund Name, see [Editing a Fund](#) on [page 5-50](#).

### **Identify Open Orders (Optional, Strongly Recommended)**

---

You must define Rollover Rules in the Acquisitions/Serials module before you can run the Fiscal Period Close Program.

You establish rules that apply to the following.

- Creation of a new Ledger/Funds for the next designated Fiscal Period; and

- The handling of open orders, that is, line item copies of certain statuses that use Funds from the Ledger designated for rollover using the rule.

You must have at least one Rollover Rule. The one rule may be applied to one, more than one, or all Ledgers that you intend to rollover from one Fiscal Period to the next. A Ledger can have only one Rollover Rule applied to it.

For purposes of Fiscal Period Close, a Purchase Order Status of Complete or Canceled excludes any line item copy on that PO from any Fiscal Period Close processing.

On Purchase Orders of other statuses, a line item copy qualifies as an open order depending upon a combination of the line item copy status and the invoice item status. If the combination is marked Yes or Yes\* as shown in [Table 16-1](#), the line item copy appears on the Open Order Report (see [Create and Review Open Order Report \(Optional, Strongly Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-22](#) for more information.) Those marked Yes\* are those open orders eligible for rollover.

**Table 16-1. Open Orders**

Line Item Copy Status	Invoice Item Status	Open Order
Pending	n/a	Yes*
Approved	none	Yes*
Approved	Invoice Pending	Yes
Approved	Invoiced	Yes*
Received Partial	none	Yes*
Received Partial	Invoice Pending	Yes
Received Partial	Invoiced	Yes*
Received Complete	none	Yes*
Received Complete	Invoice Pending	Yes
Received Complete	Invoiced	No
Returned	none	No
Returned	Invoice Pending	No
Returned	Invoiced	No
Claimed	none	Yes*
Claimed	Invoice Pending	Yes
Claimed	Invoiced	Yes*
Returned	none	No
Cancelled	none	No

**Table 16-1. Open Orders**

Line Item Copy Status	Invoice Item Status	Open Order
Cancelled	Invoice Pending	No

As part of your preparation for Fiscal Period Close, we would recommend resolving certain situations, for example when the line item copy status is approved/sent or claimed but the invoice item status is invoiced or invoice pending.

**NOTE:**

No line item copy with an invoice item status of invoice pending is rolled-over under any circumstances.

While the above shows what appears, on the surface, to be illogical combinations, remember that it is possible to link line item copies to an invoice (invoice pending) or to approve payment for items (invoiced) without receiving them, just as it is possible to receive copies without invoicing them.

The goal of your pre-Fiscal Period Close preparation is to complete the order process for those items that have been received and are ready for payment in the current Fiscal Period. That is why a received complete/none line item copy appears on the report.

If you should pay for it in the current Fiscal Period, you can do so, changing the status to received complete/invoiced and thereby excluding it from rollover processing and the Open Order Report the next time it is run. If the status received complete/not invoiced includes those items which are obtained without payment, that is, there are no Funds (price=\$0), you can complete those Purchase Orders to remove them from subsequent runs of the Open Order Report.

Any line item copy that qualifies as an open order eligible for rollover as described above, and that is of the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type defined in a Rollover Rule, is rolled-over, regardless of any apparent anomaly between the line item copy status and its corresponding invoice status.

The exception to this is that no line item copy with an invoice item status of invoice pending is rolled-over. (If you want such a line item copy to be rolled-over, you should delete the line item copy from the unapproved invoice.) For information on what processing is done depending upon the statuses, see [Running the Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\) Batch Job](#) on [page 16-35](#).

**NOTE:**

Please note that some line items roll over as Total Commitments in the new ledger. These include line items that have a copy status of Approved or Received



Partial and an invoice item status of Invoiced. For example, for a purchase order with one line item for \$20, where the copy status is Received Partial, the invoice item status is Invoiced and the ledger associated with the line item is set to rollover, the line item rolls over as a Total Commitment in the next fiscal period. The \$20 remains in the Total Expenditure portion of the previous fiscal period's ledger but is listed as a Total Commitment in the newly created ledger (the ledger that is created by running FPC.) You can remove such a Total Commitment by invoicing the line item at \$0 after the roll over.

Why does it work this way? Consider a serial subscription that has been invoiced (possibly along with several other subscriptions for the same vendor). Perhaps the pattern didn't begin until very late in the year; maybe the issues are back ordered or all issues are not yet received. For non-serial orders, if the line item is Approved and Invoiced, this means that you have paid for the item but have not yet received the item. You would want to roll over these line items into the next fiscal year and recommit the money for the subscription or item because you still expect to receive the issues or item, and you still expect to keep paying for it.

### **Define Rollover Rules (Required)**

---

The Rollover Rule governs the FPC process. It defines the Line Item types and Purchase Order Types that will rollover into the next fiscal period. Think carefully about how you define the Rollover Rule so that the open orders eligible for rollover are rolled over because you selected the appropriate Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type when defining the rule.

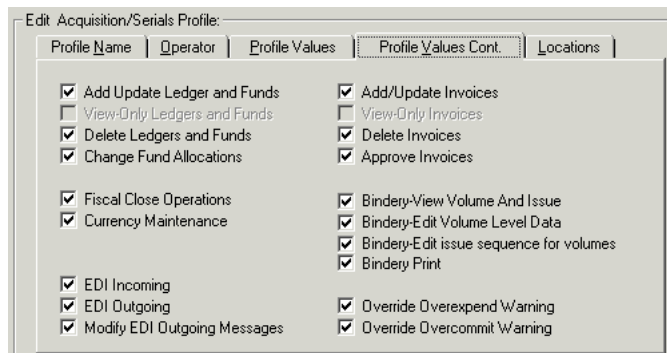
For example, in most cases, you want to rollover those line item copies for your serial subscriptions, continuations, memberships, and so on.

The Open Order Report includes the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type for each line item copy listed. Perusal of the Open Order Report can assist you in defining your Rollover Rules.

### **Security for Defining the Rollover Rule**

---

To be authorized to define the rollover rule the **Fiscal Close Operations** check box ([Figure 16-1](#)) must be selected in the **Profile Values Cont.** tab of an operator's Acquisitions/Serials Security Profile. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



---

**Figure 16-1. Profile Values Cont. tab**

The procedure for defining a Rollover Rule is shown in [Procedure 16-1, Defining a Rollover Rule](#).



---

### **Procedure 16-1. Defining a Rollover Rule**

---

Use the following to define a rollover rule.

1. Click the **Ledgers and Funds** bar in the listbar.

Result: The listbar displays the six Ledgers and Funds buttons: New Ledger, Search Ledgers, Search Funds, Currency, New Rollover Rule, and Search Rollover Rules.

2. There are a number of ways to create a new rollover rule.
  - Click the **New Rollover Rule** button ([Figure 16-2](#)) in the listbar.



---

**Figure 16-2. New Rollover Rule button**

- Select **Ledgers and Funds** from the **View** menu and then select **New Rollover Rule** from the cascading menu.

Result: The **Rollover Rule** dialog box opens (see [Figure 16-3](#)).

**Rollover Rule: New Rule**

File Rule Tools Help

Save Save and Close Save and New

Rule Name/ID:

Fiscal Period:

New Fiscal Period:

☐ Apply rule during next run of Fiscal Period Close

Initialize With:

☐ Zero ☐ Original Allocation

☐ Cash Balance ☐ Original Allocation + Cash Balance

**Approval**

Rollover Line Item Types:	% to Increase Commitments:
<input type="checkbox"/> Single Part	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Subscription	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Membership	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Standing Order	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Blanket Order	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Multi-Part	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Approval	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Clear Rules

**Figure 16-3. Rollover Rule dialog box**

3. Enter a Rule Name/ID in the **Rule Name/ID** field. This information is required in order for the Rollover Rule to be saved. Use up to 25 characters (alpha numerics, punctuation, or spaces)
4. Select the Fiscal Period to which the Rollover Rule applies from the drop-down list in **Fiscal Period** field. This information is required in order for the Rollover Rule to be saved.

The selections in the drop-down list come from the Fiscal Periods defined in the System Administration module. They appear in the order in which they were entered into the system, not necessarily chronological.

5. Select the New Fiscal Period to which you want to rollover Ledgers/Funds and open orders from the drop-down list in the **New Fiscal Period** field.

The selections in the drop-down list come from the Fiscal Periods defined in the System Administration module. Only the fiscal periods that are later than the fiscal period selected in the prior step appears in the drop-down list. They appear in the order in which they were entered into the system, not necessarily chronological.

The Fiscal Periods selected are typically sequential from one chronological period to the next. However, it is possible to select a new fiscal period that is further in the future.

Result: After you have selected a New Fiscal Period, the other sections on the **Rollover Rule** dialog box containing the rest of the Rollover Rule information become available (see [Figure 16-4](#)).

---

Rollover Line Item Types:	% to Increase Commitments:
<input type="checkbox"/> Single Part	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Subscription	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Membership	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Standing Order	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Blanket Order	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Multi-Part	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Approval	0

---

**Figure 16-4. Rollover Rule dialog box - identification information entered and additional information available**

6. Click the **Apply rule during next run of Fiscal Period Close** check box if you want to use the Rollover Rule during the next run of Fiscal Period Close.

More than one Rollover Rule may have this check box selected. This option is useful because it allows you to designate which Rollover Rules are acceptable and unacceptable for use in Fiscal Period Close.

**NOTE:**

If you are setting up the rule only for future application, you may decide to leave it blank. Many people prefer to wait until just before running Fiscal Period Close before selecting this check box.

When you run the Fiscal Period Close program, it reads this indicator to see which rollover rule is ready to be applied and which Fiscal Periods/Ledgers are to be rolled-over. When the Fiscal Period Close program completes, it sets the check box back to blank and prevents editing or deletion of the Ledger/New Ledger information.

Rollover Rules remain online indefinitely. This allows you to review rules created and used for a previous years' Fiscal Period Close. However, once the Fiscal Period Close program is completed, the Rollover Rule becomes unavailable for future use.

7. In the Initialize With section of the **Rollover Rule** dialog box, select the initial allocation option to be used when the system creates a Ledger's Funds for the New Fiscal Period. The following initial allocation options are available.
  - Zero
  - Cash Balance
  - Original Allocation
  - Original Allocation + Cash Balance

Fiscal Period Close automatically creates a new Ledger/Funds for the New Fiscal Period using as a base the Ledger/Funds from the Fiscal Period to be closed. See [Assigning Rollover Rules to Ledgers](#) on [page 16-13](#).

**NOTE:**

You cannot change the structure of the new ledger created by Fiscal Period Close. The new ledger has the same structure as the ledger that was closed.

In creating the new funds, the system sets the initial allocation to the amount indicated by your choice.

- If you select the **Zero** radio button, the system sets the Initial Allocation in all of the new Funds to zero.
- If you select the **Cash Balance** radio button, the system sets the Initial Allocation in all of the new Funds to the remaining Cash Balances of the corresponding Funds from the Ledger to be rolled over.
- If you select the **Original Allocation** radio button, the system sets the Initial Allocation in all of the new Funds to the Original Allocation of the corresponding Funds from the Ledger to be rolled over.

- If you select the **Original Allocation + Cash Balance** radio button, the system sets the Initial Allocation in all of the new Funds to the sum of the Original Allocation and the remaining Cash Balances of the corresponding Funds from the Ledger to be rolled-over.

8. The following six Purchase Order Types are listed in the **Rule** listbar.

- Approval
- Firm Order
- Gift
- Exchange
- Depository
- Continuation

See [Running the Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\) Batch Job](#) on [page 16-35](#) to see what happens when you select a Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type for rollover.

To define the rollover rules for a purchase order type, click the appropriate purchase order type button in the **Rule** listbar or select the appropriate purchase order type from the **Rule** menu.

Result: When you select a purchase order type, the bottom portion of the **Rollover Rule** dialog box displays the associated Line Item Types.

9. For each Purchase Order Type, click the check boxes next to the Line Item Types you want to roll over.

- If you want all line item copies of a Line Item Type rolled-over, click the check box next to the Line Item Type for EACH of the six Purchase Order Types or for as many Purchase Order Types as needed.
- If you want to commit in the New Fiscal Period an amount greater than the original amount committed in the Fiscal Period that is to be closed, enter the percentage increase in the **% to Increase Commitments** field beside the Line Item Type. The **% to Increase Commitments** field are only available for Line Item Types that have been selected for rollover.

The percent increase is applied to all line item copies of the Line Item Type for the Purchase Order Type.

For example, if you specified a 15% increase for the Subscription line item type for the Continuation purchase order type, this means that any such line item copy (that is ALSO an open order eligible for rollover), following rollover, has a commitment made in its New Fiscal Period's Fund an amount equal to its last Fiscal Period's commitment plus 15% of that amount.

The percentage increases are always applied to a past commitment, not to a past expenditure.

- If you want to commit the same amount in the New Fiscal Period's Ledger/Funds as used in the prior Fiscal Period's Ledger/Funds for the line item copies of this Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type, leave the % to Increase Commitments value set to the default of zero.
- If you do not want any of the open order line item copies of the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type rolled over, leave the check box beside the line item type blank.

You can select as many Line Item Types as desired for any, some, or all of the Purchase Order Types, with or without percentage increases, as desired.

Only those line item copies that first qualify as an open order eligible for rollover are affected by the Rollover Rule.

10. Save the Rollover Rule.

- To save the Rollover Rule without closing the **Rollover Rule** dialog box, click the **Save** button.
- To save the Rollover Rule and close the **Rollover Rule** dialog box, click the **Save and Close** button.
- To save the Rollover Rule and create a New Rollover Rule, click the **Save and New** button.
- To clear the Rollover Rule in order to re-enter information differently before saving, click the **Clear Rules** button. A confirmation message displays. Click **Yes** to clear the information for the Rollover Rule. Click **No** to cancel the clearing of the information for the Rollover Rule.

11. Repeat these steps to create as many Rollover Rules as are needed to rollover Ledgers from the old Fiscal Period.

Result: A rollover rule is created.

---

### Assigning Rollover Rules to Ledgers

After the Rollover Rule has been created and saved, you must assign the rule to one or more Ledgers that you wish to rollover to the New Fiscal Period.

- A ledger can be assigned only one rule.
- If you have more than one Ledger, you need at least one rule.
- If you have more than one Ledger, you can have as many rules as you have Ledgers.

- If you have more than one Ledger, you can have the same rule applied to more than one Ledger.

A Ledger can be assigned to one Rollover Rule. However, a Rollover Rule can be used for more than one Ledger.

**NOTE:**

If you have applied Extended Fund Allocation in which you have used Funds from different Fiscal Periods/Ledgers and you intend to rollover any such line item copy, be sure that you do the following.

- Activate a Rollover Rule for each Fiscal Period/Ledger involved in an Extended Fund Allocation
- Treat the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type the same in both rules

Otherwise, the system does not apply rollover.

If you have multiple line item copies for which you have used Funds from different Fiscal Periods/Ledgers and you intend to rollover more than one of those line item copies, be sure that you do the following.

- Activate a Rollover Rule for each Fiscal Period/Ledger involved
- Treat the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type the same in both rules

Otherwise, the system does not apply rollover.



---

### Procedure 16-2. Assign Rollover Rules to Ledgers

---

Use the following to assign rollover rules to ledgers.

1. Click the **View Ledgers** ([Figure 16-5](#)) button in the **Rule** listbar, select **View Ledgers** from the **Rule** menu.



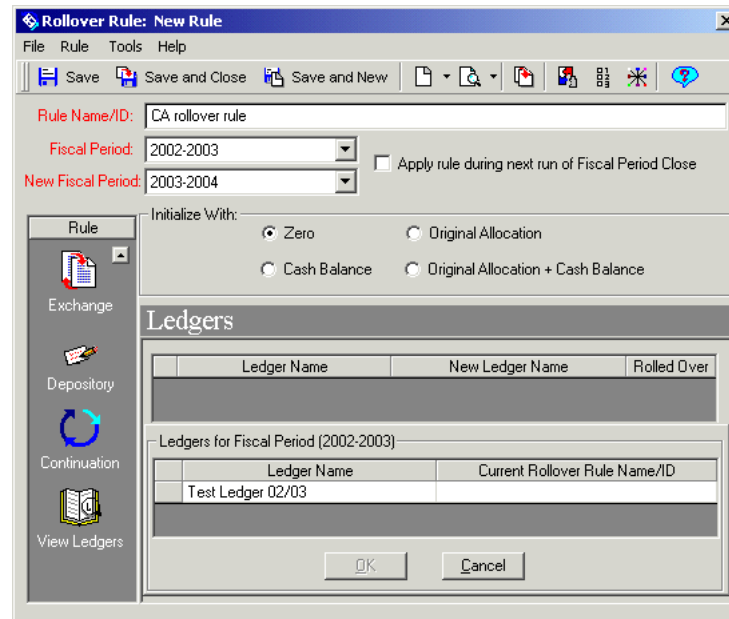
---

**Figure 16-5. View Ledgers button**

Result: The bottom section of the **Rollover Rule** dialog box displays two lists (see [Figure 16-6](#)).



- A list of ledgers that have already been assigned to the Rollover Rule (if this is a new Rollover Rule, no ledgers display in this list)
- A list of ledgers for the Fiscal Period that are available to be assigned to the rollover rule (this list displays below the first list in a section called Ledgers for Fiscal Period)



**Figure 16-6. Rollover Rule dialog box - Ledger section**

The first list displays the following information about each ledger in the list.

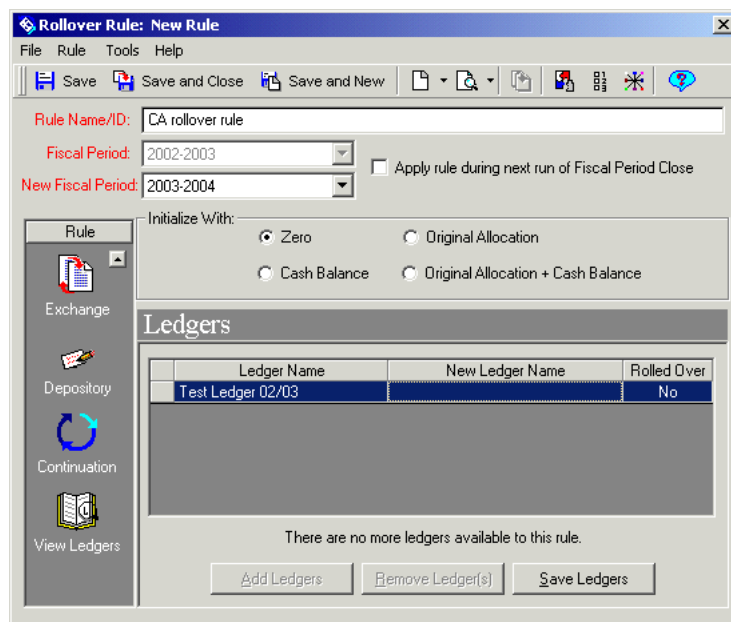
- The current name of the ledger
- The name that the ledger is given after rollover
- Whether or not the ledger has been rolled over

The second list, the Ledgers for Fiscal Period list, displays the Ledger Names and the rollover rule name/ID with which the ledger is currently associated.

2. From the Ledgers for Fiscal Period list, select the ledger that you want the rule applied to. Click the **OK** button.

Result: The bottom section of the **Rollover Rule** dialog box ([Figure 16-7](#)) displays the following information about the ledger you are adding, as well as any other ledgers that have previously been added.

- The name of the ledger for the current Fiscal Period (in the Ledger Name column)
  - The column for the New Ledger Name
  - Whether or not the ledger has been rolled over (in the Rolled Over column either Y = rolled over, N = not rolled over).
- 



---

**Figure 16-7. Rollover Rule dialog box - Ledger section**

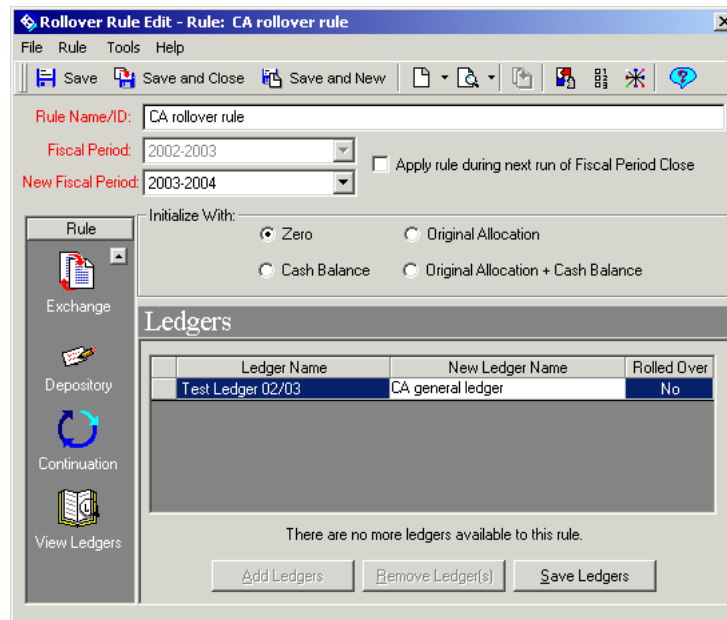
3. Enter the new ledger name to be used for the new fiscal period in the **New Ledger Name** field (see [Figure 16-8](#)). Follow the same rules for entering a Ledger Name.

**NOTE:**

The **New Ledger Name** field is automatically selected. You can begin typing the name of the new ledger immediately. When you begin to type, the field changes from blue to white and the characters display.

The New Ledger Name may have the same name as the Ledger to be rolled-over but Ex Libris recommends the addition of a time span to the Ledger Name to avoid any confusion, especially if you have overlapping Fiscal Periods, so that an operator could see Funds from two Fiscal Periods/Ledgers when working with Purchase Orders and Invoices.

Funds for the New Fiscal Period's Ledger are created using the same Fund Names as used in the Fiscal Period's Ledger that is being rolled-over.



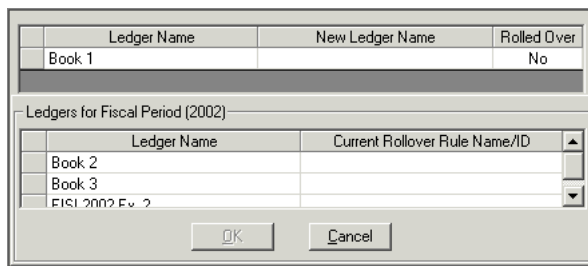
**Figure 16-8. The new ledger name is typed into the column**

- If additional ledgers are available for use with this rule and you want to add them, click the **Add Ledgers** button.

Result: The bottom section of the **Rollover Rule** dialog box displays (see [Figure 16-9](#)).

**OPTIONAL:**

- If you want to add another ledger highlight it from the bottom box and click **OK**.



---

**Figure 16-9. Rollover Rule dialog box - added ledger moved to the first list**

**OPTIONAL:**

6. *If you want to remove the ledger, or any other ledgers, from the first list containing ledgers that have been added to the Rollover Rule, click the ledger(s) and click the **Remove Ledger(s)** button.*

*To select more than one ledger, hold down the Ctrl key on your keyboard when clicking the ledgers. A confirmation message displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the Sounds and Animation tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.)*

*Click the **Yes** button to continue. Click the **No** button to cancel the removal of the ledger. If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.*

7. Save the Rollover Rule.
- To save the Rollover Rule without closing the **Rollover Rule** dialog box, click the **Save** button.
  - To save the Rollover Rule and close the **Rollover Rule** dialog box, click the **Save and Close** button.
  - To save the Rollover Rule and create a New Rollover Rule, click the **Save and New** button.
  - To clear the Rollover Rule in order to re-enter information differently before saving, click the **Clear Rules** button. A confirmation message displays. Click **Yes** to clear the information for the Rollover Rule. Click **No** to cancel the clearing of the information for the Rollover Rule.

Result: The rollover rule is created and ledgers are assigned.

---

## Rollover Rules Eligibility

The following are rollover rules eligibility considerations.

- Line items on purchase orders with user-defined purchase order types are not eligible for rollover. Only line items on purchase orders with system-defined purchase order types are eligible for rollover. The six system-defined purchase order types are: Approval, Continuation, Depository, Exchange, Firm Order, and Gift. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about user-defined purchase order types.
- A line item is eligible for rollover if any one of its copies are eligible for rollover.
- A copy is eligible for rollover if any part of its cost is to be paid from a the following.
  - a. Ledger that is being rolled over
  - b. If the rollover rule for that ledger has the appropriate check box marked for the given purchase order type and line item type
- An eligible copy is rolled over if and only if it is also qualified for rollover.
- Many conditions can disqualify an otherwise-eligible copy from being rolled over, including (but not limited to) the following.
  - a. having an invoice pending
  - b. having been canceled or returned
  - c. having its cost split between funds from two or more different ledgers with incompatible rollover rules
  - d. missing or unreadable cost information
  - e. different copy increase for the line item price
  - f. having been pre-paid on the purchase order
- Copies that are both eligible and qualified are rolled over successfully and logged as such.
- Copies that are eligible but not qualified are logged with an error code that indicates why they were disqualified.
- Copies that are not eligible but belong to an eligible line item are logged as ineligible.
- Copies that are not eligible and belong to ineligible line items do not appear at all in the log.



---

**Procedure 16-3. Editing a Rollover Rule**

---

Use the following to edit a Rollover Rule.

1. Search for a rollover rule (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)) or a standard search (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#).) Click the rollover rule that you want to edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The rollover rule opens in the **Edit Rollover Rule** dialog box (see [Figure 16-10](#)).

---

Rollover Line Item Types:	% to Increase Commitments:
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Single Part	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Subscription	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Membership	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Standing Order	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Blanket Order	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Multi-Part	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Approval	0

---

**Figure 16-10. Edit Rollover Rule dialog box**

2. Edit the rollover rule as wanted. For detailed explanations of the different parts of a rollover rule, see [Define Rollover Rules \(Required\)](#) on [page 16-7](#).
3. After changing any data, click the **Save** button.

Result: The wanted information is edited.

---



### Procedure 16-4. Deleting a Rollover Rule

---

Use the following to delete a Rollover Rule.

**NOTE:**

A rollover rule cannot be deleted if ledgers are assigned to it.

1. Search for a rollover rule (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)) or a standard search (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#).) Click the rollover rule that you want to edit from the search results list and click the **Edit** button.

Result: The rollover rule opens.

2. Select **Delete** from the **File** menu.

Result: A confirmation message, Are you sure you wish to delete this rollover rule? displays if you have selected to use the deletion reminder option on the **Sounds and Animation** tab of your Session Preferences (see [Sounds and Animation Tab](#) on [page 18-10](#) for more information.) If you have not selected to use the deletion reminder option, you do not receive a confirmation message.

3. Click the **Yes** button to continue with the deletion. Click the **No** button to cancel the deletion.

Result: If clicked **Yes**, the rule is deleted.

---

### Set the Rollover Rule's Action Indicator

---

Many people wait until just before running Fiscal Period Rollover before enabling a rollover rule for use. If you have not already enabled this and are ready to enable the Rollover Rule for use, do the following.

- Search for the Rollover Rule you want to enable (see [Quick Searches](#) on [page 2-5](#)) or a standard search (see [Standard Searches](#) on [page 2-2](#).)
- Once you have displayed the Rollover Rule, click the **Apply rule during next run of Fiscal Period Close** check box to enable the Rollover Rule for use during the next run of Fiscal Period Close. More than one Rollover Rule may have this check box selected.

When you run the Fiscal Period Close program, it reads this indicator to see which rollover rule is ready to be applied and what Fiscal Periods/Ledgers are to be rolled-over. When the Fiscal Period Close program completes, it sets the check box back to blank and prevents editing or deletion of the Ledger/New Ledger information. The Rollover Rule can be reassigned to other Fiscal Periods/Ledgers for the next time you run Fiscal Period Close. Rollover Rules remain online indefinitely.

### **Create and Review Fund Snapshot Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended)**

---

To review your fund balances at any time, run the batch program on the Voyager server to produce the Fund Snapshot Report. This creates an input file which is automatically FTPed to your workstation when you open the Voyager Reports module. That module creates a Microsoft Access® database with this input file and permits you to print the report on a network printer. Changes to the format/layout of the report can be made by changing the template used in Access. See the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.

The Fund Snapshot Report provides you with a printed version of the Ledgers/Funds for one or all Fiscal Periods. The report is sorted by Fiscal Period/Ledger/Funds, with Funds presented in alphabetical order. Amounts as shown in Funds are always in your base currency.

The Fund Snapshot Report allows you to monitor before and after Fiscal Period Close. Producing the report after you have completed your preparations for Fiscal Period Close shows you the Original and Net Allocations and the remaining Cash Balances in the Ledgers/Funds of the Fiscal Period which you plan to close. Producing the report again for the New Fiscal Period immediately after running Fiscal Period Close allows you to check and see that Funds were rolled over correctly for the New Fiscal Period by comparing the reports for the predecessor and successor Fiscal Periods/Ledger/Funds.

This report can be produced at any time during any Fiscal Period should you need a printed report to show current fund balances.

### **Create and Review Open Order Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended)**

---

To review your open orders at any time, run the batch program on the Voyager server to produce the Open Order Report. This creates an input file which is automatically FTPed to your workstation when you open the Voyager Reporter module. The Voyager Reporter module creates a Microsoft Access database with



this input file and permits you to print the report on a network printer. Changes to the format/layout of the report can be made by changing the template used in Access. See the *Voyager Reporter User's Guide* for more information.

The Open Order Report provides you with a printed version of the open orders for one or all Fiscal Periods. The report may be produced by Order Site/Ledger/Fiscal Period (or all) and is then sorted by Purchase Order Number. Amounts as shown are always in the currency used in the Purchase Order. (This may not be the base currency used in your Ledgers/Funds.) The report shows the Purchase Order, the vendor, and the Purchase Order Type. For each line item, the report includes the line item number (if applicable--none exist for pending orders), title, copy sequence number, Intended Location, Line Item Type, line item copy status, invoice item status, fund and amount.

Use the report to prepare your Rollover Rules and to close out orders that need to be paid for in the current Fiscal Period.

Pay particular attention to the following.

- repeated line item numbers. This means that you have multiple copies on the line item possibly eligible for rollover; if these are to be rolled over, all of the Funds involved need to be in Fiscal Periods/Ledgers scheduled for rollover. If more than one Rollover Rule applies to the involved Fiscal Periods/Ledgers, each Rollover Rule must treat the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type of the multiple line item copies in the same way for rollover to occur. (If you are running the report for a specific Fiscal Period or Ledger and other Fiscal Periods or Ledgers are involved due to multiple Funds for multiple copies, the report shows the Funds from those other Fiscal Periods or Ledgers for any such line item.)
- repeated copy sequence numbers. This means that you have used Extended Fund Allocation on the line item copy. If the line item copy is to be rolled over, all of the Funds involved need to be in Fiscal Periods/Ledgers scheduled for rollover. If more than one Rollover Rule applies to the involved Fiscal Periods/Ledgers, each Rollover Rule must treat the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type of the line item copy in the same way for rollover to occur. (If you are running the report for a specific Fiscal Period or Ledger and other Fiscal Periods or Ledgers are involved due to Extended Fund Allocation, the report shows the Funds from those other Fiscal Periods or Ledgers for any such line item.)
- anomalous line item copy/invoice item status combinations. This means that you have ambiguous situations that may require resolution before the end of the current Fiscal Period depending upon your local practices or requires resolution if you want rollover to take effect on certain line item copies. Remember that any line item copy with an invoice item status of invoice pending is not eligible for rollover; the invoice should either be approved or the line item copy deleted from the invoice.

Of the combinations that make an open order eligible for rollover (for a complete listing of all combinations, see [Define Rollover Rules \(Required\)](#) on [page 16-7](#)), consider the following choices.

Action	Definition
Pending (not applicable)	In all likelihood, needs to be changed to another status by approving the Purchase Order. Decide if you want to rollover pending line item copies at all; some might be deleted altogether.
Approved-Sent/none	Likely candidate for rollover (unless such practice not permitted by your institution. If the latter applies, complete such Purchase Orders and then recreate new ones after rollover using your New Fiscal Period Ledgers/Funds.)
Approved-Sent/Invoiced	In all likelihood, needs to be received in the current Fiscal Period and (possibly) eliminated as eligible for rollover.
Received Partial/none	Likely candidate for rollover; may need to be invoiced in the current Fiscal Period.
Received Partial/Invoiced	Likely candidate for rollover.
Received Complete/none	In all likelihood, needs to be invoiced in the current Fiscal Period and eliminated as eligible for rollover.
Claimed/none	Likely candidate for rollover.
Claimed/Invoiced	In all likelihood, needs to be received in the current Fiscal Period and (possibly) eliminated as eligible for rollover.

Producing the Open Order Report, after you have completed your preparations for Fiscal Period Close, shows the results of your preparations. Due to local practices and circumstances, the report at this point could show only those line item copies that are rolled-over. (However, be aware that an open order is not necessarily one that is eligible for rollover.)

Producing the report again for the New Fiscal Period immediately after running Fiscal Period Close allows you to check and see that open orders eligible for rollover were rolled over correctly for the New Fiscal Period by comparing the after report with the before report.

This report can be produced at any time during any Fiscal Period should you need a printed report to show open orders.

## **Before Running Fiscal Period Close**

---

In order to make sure that you can monitor Fiscal Period Close operations, you need to block any online operations that would affect Fund balances, Rollover Rules, or changes to the status of any line item copy. In order to accomplish this and to provide for a safety net, certain procedures should be followed. This requires the cooperation of whoever is responsible for running batch jobs on the Voyager server as well as staff who use the Acquisitions module. You should schedule Fiscal Period Close processing at a time that has the least impact on library staff.

You may want to set the fund dates beyond the actual dates to rollover so that your fiscal period close has some built in safety nets. In addition, we strongly encourage you to perform a trial run of Fiscal Period Close.

## **Back Up Your System (Optional, Recommended)**

---

Voyager includes batch operations called `Pfpc_save` and `Pfpc_restore`. The `Pfpc_save` batch operation allows you to save your Acquisitions data before running Fiscal Period Close. If you perform the `Pfpc_save` batch operation before running Fiscal Period Close, you are able to use the `Pfpc_restore` batch operation to restore your Acquisitions data to its pre-rollover condition if any catastrophic data problems should occur.

These batch operations save and restore only your Acquisitions data, without affecting the other Voyager modules. See [Backing Up Your Acquisitions Data \(Strongly Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-34](#) for more information about the `Pfpc_save` batch operation. See [Restoring Your Acquisitions Data After Fiscal Period Close Processing](#) on [page 16-36](#) for more information about the `Pfpc_restore` batch operation.

Normally, running the `Pfpc_save` batch operation suffices to ensure that your pre-rollover Acquisitions data is available for restore in the case of problems. However, to take further precautions, you can perform a full backup of your Voyager database before you initiate Fiscal Period Close (full back-ups should already be part of your site's normal operating procedures.)

This full database backup is the only way to ensure that you are able to restore your Acquisitions data to its pre-rollover condition if you fail to perform the `Pfpc_save` operation before Fiscal Period Close.



### **IMPORTANT:**

*If you do not perform either the `Pfpc_save` operation or a full database back-up, there is no method by which you can recover your pre-rollover*

*Acquisitions data. Be aware that Ex Libris Customer Support cannot assist you with any problems if you did not perform a backup.*

**NOTE:**

Scheduling is important here because if a database restoration from the full backup becomes necessary, the entire Voyager database is restored to its condition at the time of back-up. This obviously has an impact on other library operations. For example, you perform Fiscal Period Close over a weekend when no other library staff is using the system. If you want all (not just Acquisitions/Serials) staff to resume normal operations on Monday morning, you need to determine if a database restoration needs to be done before then. If you delay that decision until Monday afternoon and staff works on the database on Monday (that is, creates new bibliographic records), all of Monday's work is lost when the database is restored.

See the *Voyager Technical User's Guide* for information about running a full database backup.

### **Disable Online Operators (Required)**

---

The system must be set to prevent sign-on to the Acquisitions/Serials module while rollover processing is taking place (be aware that this includes operators authorized only for Serials Check-In). There are two ways to turn off access to Acquisitions.

- You can disable the Acquisitions server as follows:

```
1. cd /ml/voyager/xxxdb/sbin
2. cp -p Pacqsvr Pacqsvr.preFPC
3. sed s/^exec/#exec/ Pacqsvr.preFPC > Pacqsvr
```

And to, subsequently, re-enable the server:

```
1. cd /ml/voyager/xxxdb/sbin
2. cp -p Pacqsvr.preFPC Pacqsvr
```

- You can also change the Acq Security Profiles for your Acquisitions operators in System Administration. If most of your online operators use the same security profile, this task can be easily performed by temporarily removing create/update authorization for Purchase Orders, Invoices, and Ledgers/Funds from the security profile or switching operators to another security profile specifically designed for this purpose. If any operators have their own security profiles, you can either alert them to the situation or temporarily change their authorization levels as well.

**NOTE:**

Other parts of the system that require access to data in this module (for example, the Public Access module to show on-order data) can retrieve data for display purposes. Although there could be slight increases in response times since the system temporarily locks records while updating them as part of the rollover processing, it is unlikely that any such delays are significant or even noticeable.

You may still need a period of time before and after the rollover processing in which only those involved in Fiscal Period Close should have access to the Acquisitions records while you are resolving issues with existing records. Unless you are confident that operators refrain from using the system during these time periods, the only certain way to block access is to temporarily change the security profiles for those operators.

If you find discrepancies after Fiscal Period Close and did not control access to the module, it is difficult if not impossible to pinpoint the cause(s). Ex Libris Customer Support asks about your security procedures should you report a problem.

Since you must block access to the module while Fiscal Period Close processing is underway, we would recommend initiating the process outside normal working hours.

## **Fiscal Period Close Processing**

---

When you initiate Fiscal Period Close processing, the system performs various operations. The description that follows does not necessarily reflect the exact order in which the system actually executes all the steps. It is intended to explain conceptually what happens during the processing.

- The system finds the Rollover Rule that is checked as ready for processing.
- (Optional) The system identifies and runs the Fund Snapshot and Open Order Reports for the Fiscal Period/Ledger(s) to be rolled over; the Order Site selection for the Open Order Report is set to all. (If you want to produce these reports you must instruct the system to run it in your command line, see [Running the Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\) Batch Job](#) on [page 16-35](#).)
- The system creates the New Fiscal Period/Ledger, using the New Ledger Name and replicating the Override Rules used in the Fiscal Period/Ledger that is to be rolled-over (except that Freeze Dates are set to blank).

- For each Fund in the Fiscal Period/Ledger to be rolled over, the system creates a new Fund in the New Fiscal Period/Ledger, replicating the same fund hierarchy and using the same Fund Name, Category, Type, and Override Rules as before for each Fund.
- For each new Fund in the New Fiscal Period/Ledger, the Begin/End Dates are set to those of the New Fiscal Period. The Freeze Date in each new Fund's Override Rules is set to blank.
- The Original Allocation of each new Fund is set to the amount as determined in the Rollover Rule.
- The system locates each line item copy that qualifies as an open order eligible for rollover, that used a Fund from the Fiscal Period/Ledger that is being rolled-over, and that is a Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type selected for rollover in the applicable Rollover Rule.
- For each such line item copy, the system determines the monetary amount that was committed from the prior Fiscal Period's Ledger/Fund(s).
- This amount is de-committed from the applicable Fund(s) resulting in adjustments to either Commitments Pending (if line item copy status is pending) or Commitments Total and the Available Balance (if the line item copy status is either approved/sent, received partial, or claimed).
- If the line item copy has an invoice item status of invoiced, no de-commit is made.
- The system then adds to this amount any percentage increase for that Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type as specified in the Rollover Rule.
- If the line item copy in the prior Fiscal Period had an Extended Fund Allocation, the system replicates the same percentage distribution for the New Fiscal Period.
- In an Extended Fund Allocation, the system uses the following rules.
  - a. Funds involved belong to the same Ledger - apply rollover rule and preserve previous percentage allocation.
  - b. Funds involved belong to different Ledgers with same Rollover Rule - apply rollover rule and preserve previous percentage allocation (provided the Ledgers are all selected for rollover; if not, the system does not rollover the line item copy.)
  - c. Funds involved belong to different Ledgers with different Rollover Rules that treat the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type the same - apply rollover rule and preserve previous percentage allocation (provided that all Rollover Rules are active for Fiscal Close Processing and the Ledgers are all selected for rollover; if one or the other is not true, the system does not rollover the line item copy.)

- d. Funds involved belong to different Ledgers with different Rollover Rules that treat the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type differently. That is, one has rollover, the other no rollover, or one has rollover with same amount, the other rollover with percentage increase of x, or one has rollover with percentage increase of x, the other rollover with percentage increase of y, the system does not rollover the line item copy.
- For multiple line item copies using Funds from multiple Fiscal Periods/Ledgers, the system does not rollover if the following occurs.
  - a. One or more of the involved Fiscal Periods/Ledgers are not being rolled-over.
  - b. Rollover Rules for the different Fiscal Periods/Ledgers treat the Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type differently. That is, one has rollover, the other no rollover, or one has rollover with same amount, the other rollover with percentage increase of x, or one has rollover with percentage increase of x, the other rollover with percentage increase of y.
- The system then commits the amount determined in the New Fiscal Period's Ledger/Fund(s), adjusting the Commitments Total and Available Balance (the system acts in the same way as when you approve a Purchase Order online except that adjusting the Commitments Pending step is skipped altogether.)

If the line item copy had been invoiced from the prior Fiscal Period, the invoice item status for the line item copy is set to blank.

This step is necessary to accommodate multiple invoicing for the line item copy; when a line item copy is linked to a subsequent invoice, the pre-existence of a status of invoiced means that approval of the subsequent invoice results in no de-commit from the applicable Fund(s), only expends. If the line item copy is rolled-over, a commitment is made and the first invoice in the New Fiscal Period must be able to de-commit and expend to keep the Fund(s) in proper balance.

When Copies/Funds for the line item is next displayed, the display shows the New Fiscal Period's Ledger/Fund(s) for the line item copy.

- After completing the process as needed for any other line item copy, the system recalculates and then updates the line item's **Price** field.

If, for multiple copy line items, rollover applies to only one or more of the multiple copies (that is, if at least one copy was not rolled-over), the number of copies reflected in the **Price** field remains as it was originally, but the Price is the amount rolled-over (which, according to the Rollover Rule is the same as in the prior Fiscal Period or the same amount plus the percentage increase specified in the rule for that Line Item Type/Purchase Order Type.)

That amount, times the original number of copies, is the recalculated total for the line item.

The actual price paid for any line item copy not rolled-over remains in its linked invoice(s).

- For any Purchase Order which has had at least one line item copy rolled-over and the Other Charges are still assigned to their old Funds, rollover is applied in the same way as for any line item copy (provided that the Funds used are in a Fiscal Period/Ledger being rolled-over--otherwise, no rollover occurs), that is, a de-commit is made in the prior Fiscal Period's Fund (no de-commit if a line item copy on the Purchase Order was invoiced) and a new commit in the same amount is made in the New Fiscal Period's Fund.
- After completing the process as needed for any other line items, the system recalculates totals and updates the Line Item Subtotal, Other Charges, and Total PO Amount.

**NOTE:**

Other Charges do not rollover.

- The system repeats this process for any other qualified line item copies in any other qualified Purchase Orders.
- (Optional) The system runs the Fund Snapshot and the Open Order Reports for the New Fiscal Period Ledger/Funds. The Order Site selection for the Open Order Report is set to "all." (If you want to produce these reports you must instruct the system to run it in your command line, see [Running the Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\) Batch Job](#) on [page 16-35](#).)
- The system repeats the whole process for any other Fiscal Periods/ Ledgers linked to the Rollover Rule.
- The system repeats the whole process for any other Rollover Rule ready for processing.

**NOTE:**

Running the Fiscal Period Close batch job does not produce any reports unless specified by the user. They are now optional reports. The default is to not generate the open orders (before and after), the fund snapshot (before and after), or the rollover status reports. If you want to generate these reports you must add the appropriate argument in the command line, [Running the Fiscal Period Close \(FPC\) Batch Job](#) on [page 16-35](#).



## **Analyzing Results & Making Corrections (Optional, Strongly Recommended)**

---

You can use the before and after versions of the Fund Snapshot and Open Orders Reports, if you chose to generate them, to either spot-check or completely review the rollover processing. If you ran these reports to use during your preparation activities, you want to make sure that you do not use those for your analysis since they may be outdated (unless of course you ran them immediately prior to initiating Fiscal Period Close processing as a double check on the before reports.) Depending on local circumstances, entries on the Open Order Report may not have been affected by rollover.

### **Checking New Ledgers/Funds**

---

Use the before Fund Snapshot to identify the Original Allocation and/or Cash Balance amounts that should have been used when the new Funds' Original Allocations were created as shown in the after Fund Snapshot. If a few discrepancies are noted or if amounts need to be shifted between or among new Funds, Ex Libris recommends that you make these adjustments manually online. (You may also now decide what Ledgers/Funds need adjustments to Begin/End Freeze Dates; those changes must be done manually online.)

The after Fund Snapshot also shows for each new Ledger/Fund the amounts committed through the rollover processing.

If you discover extensive problems at this point (either due to system malfunction or to a mistake in defining the applicable Rollover Rule), the only alternative is to restore the Voyager database from the last back-up.

#### **NOTE:**

To avoid this situation, define your Rollover Rules carefully. In order to handle this situation should it occur, schedule Fiscal Period Close processing to allow sufficient time to review results so that, if needed, a database restoration can be accomplished without significantly affecting other library operations.

### **Checking Open Order Rollover**

---

Use the before and after Open Order Report to compare open orders as they existed prior to and following Fiscal Period Close processing to make sure that rollover was applied properly for the New Fiscal Period.

If you discover extensive problems at this point (either due to system malfunction or to a mistake in defining the applicable Rollover Rule), the only alternative is to restore the Voyager database from the last backup.

**NOTE:**

To avoid this situation, define your Rollover Rules carefully. In order to handle this situation should it occur, schedule Fiscal Period Close processing to allow sufficient time to review results so that, if needed, a database restoration can be accomplished without significantly affecting other library operations.

### **Re-enable Online Operators (Required)**

---

Once you have determined that Fiscal Period Close processing is complete and correct, you must restore access to operators if you changed permissions for the Acq server or if you changed operators' security authorizations temporarily to prevent access before or after processing.

After rollover processing has completed, to change the permissions on the Acq server so that staff can once again access the Acquisitions module, enter the following.

```
chmod 750 Pacqsvr
```

### **Adjust Funds**

---

If you have not already done so, you should now decide which New Fiscal Period's Ledgers/Funds need adjustments to Begin/End Freeze Dates. These changes must be done manually online.

## **Running the Fiscal Period Close Batch Programs**

---

Before proceeding with any of the steps concerning Fiscal Period Close, you should schedule time to perform a trial run so that you are familiar with the process. Also, in order to prepare for the operation, you can produce (again through a batch program) two reports, the Fund Snapshot and Open Order Reports.

Dangers exist in running batch operations. For example, you could loose work you performed in Acquisitions if you were to make changes to ledgers while someone ran the Fiscal Period Close process.

Ex Libris distributes a script that is executed on your Voyager server to run Fiscal Period Close. If you want, you can also have before and after Open Order and Fund Snapshot reports produced.

### **Issues to Consider Before Running Batch Jobs**

---

There are several issues to consider while still in the Acquisitions module. These issues include setting up your rollover rules. See [Preparing for Fiscal Period Close](#) on [page 16-3](#) for details that you should seriously consider before running the Fiscal Period Close batch programs.

- Define the Next Fiscal Period (Required). See [Define the Next Fiscal Period \(Required\)](#) on [page 16-3](#).
- Review Fund Names (Optional). See [Review Fund Names \(Optional\)](#) on [page 16-4](#).
- Define Rollover Rules (Required). See [Define Rollover Rules \(Required\)](#) on [page 16-7](#).
- Identify Open Orders (Optional, Strongly Recommended). See [Identify Open Orders \(Optional, Strongly Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-4](#).
- Assign Rollover Rules to Ledgers (Required). See [Assigning Rollover Rules to Ledgers](#) on [page 16-13](#).
- Set the Rollover Rule's Action Indicator. See [Set the Rollover Rule's Action Indicator](#) on [page 16-21](#).
- Create and Review Fund Snapshot Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended). See [Create and Review Fund Snapshot Report \(Optional, Strongly Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-22](#).
- Create and Review an Open Order Report (Optional, Strongly Recommended). See [Create and Review Open Order Report \(Optional, Strongly Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-22](#).

Whoever is responsible for scheduling Fiscal Period Close processing should schedule it at a time that has the least impact on library staff. You may want to set the fund dates beyond the actual dates to rollover so that your fiscal period close has some built in safety nets.

In addition, performing a trial run of Fiscal Period Close should be seriously considered.

### **Batch Jobs**

---

The three batch jobs that can be performed as part of your fiscal period close procedures are as follows.

- Pfpc\_save
- Pfpc\_run
- Pfpc\_restore

Before proceeding with these steps, do the following.

- Make sure that you read the all of the sections between Before Running Fiscal Period Close to Final Steps in this chapter.
- Shut Down Acquisitions

## Shutting Down Acquisitions

Please refer to the section Disable Online Operators (see [Disable Online Operators \(Required\)](#) on [page 16-26](#)) for details regarding disabling online operators.

It is best to initiate the process outside normal working hours so that no one is running any part of the Acquisitions module. In theory, someone could be running Acquisitions if they are using ledgers that are not going to be rolled over. However, if you have to restore the database for any reason, those changes using those ledgers are not saved. We consider this a big risk and advise shutting down the entire Acquisitions module.

## Backing Up Your Acquisitions Data (Strongly Recommended)

Before initiating Fiscal Period Close, you should run the `Pfpc_save` batch job to back-up your Acquisitions data. If this is done, you are able to use the `Pfpc_restore` batch job to restore your Acquisitions data to its pre-rollover condition if any problems should occur (see [Restoring Your Acquisitions Data After Fiscal Period Close Processing](#) on [page 16-36](#) for more information.)



### IMPORTANT:

*If you do not run `Pfpc_save`, performing a backup of the entire Voyager system would be the only way to ensure that your Acquisitions data could be restored to its pre-rollover condition if problems should occur. However, it is important to note that using a backup of the entire Voyager system to restore data restores not only your Acquisitions data to its condition at the time of backup, but also all data from other Voyager modules (Circulation, Cataloging, and so on). Therefore, running `Pfpc_save` is the safest and easiest way to ensure that you can restore you Acquisitions data to pre-rollover its condition without affecting any of the other Voyager modules. See [Back Up Your System \(Optional, Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-25](#) for more information supporting the save procedure.*

From the `/ml/voyager/xxxdb/sbin` directory enter the following.

```
Pfpc_save
```

The saved file is located in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/dump` directory and has a name of `fpc_<time>.dmp` (where `xxx` is the name of your database and `<time>` is the time stamp).

For example, `fpc_970417105623`. This saved file was created on April 17, 1997 at 10:56 am.

We suggest that you leave this file in the directory until you have completed a weeks worth of Acquisitions processing and are sure you do not need this back up file. When you are certain that you don't need the database back up, you can delete it from the directory.

### Running the Fiscal Period Close (FPC) Batch Job

Before you run the batch job, make sure the Rollover Rule(s) you are using have the **Apply rule during next run of Fiscal Period Close** check box selected (see [Create and Review Fund Snapshot Report \(Optional, Strongly Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-22](#) for more information.)

#### Run FPC without Producing Any Reports

From the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/sbin` directory enter the following.

```
Pfpc_run
```

#### Run FPC with Producing Reports:

From the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/sbin` directory enter the following.

```
Pfpc_run
```

Then enter any or all of the following arguments.

- ro to generate the Open Orders reports.
- rf to generate the Fund Snapshot reports.
- rr to generate the Rollover Status reports.

These options can be combined to produce all reports by entering the following command.

```
Pfpc_run -ro -rf -rr
```

See [Fiscal Period Close Processing](#) on [page 16-27](#) and [Analyzing Results & Making Corrections \(Optional, Strongly Recommended\)](#) on [page 16-31](#) for information about what happens when you run the batch program and what to do after that processing is completed.

## Restoring Your Acquisitions Data After Fiscal Period Close Processing



### CAUTION:

*Do not use the restore function without consulting Voyager Customer Support. The restore function is to be used only for cases of catastrophic data loss due to Fiscal Period Close.*

From the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/sbin` directory enter the following where `<Saved File>` is the name of the saved file located in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/dump` directory (where `xxx` is the name of your database).

```
Pfpc_restore <Saved File>
```

The saved file has a name of `fpc_<time>.dmp` (where `<time>` is the time stamp). For example, `fpc_970417105623`. This saved file was created on April 17, 1997 at 10:56 am.

You can also type just the time stamp with or without the `.dmp` extension. Voyager continues to look for the file. In addition, you can also copy the file and rename it.

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>17-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>17-1</b>
<b>Accessing Session Defaults</b>	<b>17-2</b>
<b>Purchase Order Defaults</b>	<b>17-4</b>
<b>Line Item Defaults</b>	<b>17-6</b>
<b>Line Item Copies/Funds Defaults</b>	<b>17-8</b>
• Setting Defaults for an Intended Location	17-10
• Displaying the Selected Intended Locations	17-11
<b>Invoice Defaults</b>	<b>17-12</b>
<b>Vendor Defaults</b>	<b>17-14</b>
<b>Fund Defaults</b>	<b>17-16</b>
<b>Ledger Defaults</b>	<b>17-19</b>





---

**Introduction**

Using your Session Defaults, you can automatically apply certain values to newly-created records. These default values help simplify the set-up of your records and increase the efficiency of your Acquisitions processing. You may define as many or as few defaults as you like.

Voyager retains each operator's Session Defaults between sessions. To achieve this, Voyager stores an operator's individual settings on the workstation(s) that the operator uses. The persistence of these settings enable an operator to customize the Session Defaults to fit the activities relevant for the operator. This feature also eliminates the repetitive entry of this data at the start of each new Acquisitions session.

Default values can be specified for: Purchase Order, Line Item Copies/Funds, Invoice, Vendor, Fund and Ledger. These defaults apply to the new records created during your current Acquisitions session.

---

**Purpose of this Chapter**

This chapter discusses how to access Session Defaults and also how to set session defaults.

## Accessing Session Defaults

---

The procedure for accessing session defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-1](#), [Accessing Session Defaults](#).



### Procedure 17-1. Accessing Session Defaults

---

Use the following to access your Session Defaults.

1. Select **Defaults** from the **Tools** menu. The **Tools** menu is accessible from the Acquisitions workspace as well as from most other windows and dialog boxes within the Acquisitions module.

You can also click the **Defaults** button ([Figure 17-1](#)) located on the toolbar of the Acquisitions workspace.



---

**Figure 17-1. Defaults button**

Result: The **Session Defaults** dialog box opens (see [Figure 17-2](#)).

The image shows a software dialog box titled "Session Defaults". It has three tabs: "Ledger", "Invoice", and "Purchase Order". The "Purchase Order" tab is currently selected. Below the tabs, there are several input fields and buttons. The fields are: "Order Site:" (dropdown), "Ship To:" (dropdown), "Bill To:" (dropdown), "Vendor Code:" (text field with a magnifying glass icon), "Account:" (dropdown), "Currency:" (dropdown), "Order Type:" (dropdown), "Cancel After (days):" (text field), "Claim Interval (days):" (text field), and "Ship Via:" (text field). There is a "Don't Claim" checkbox next to the "Claim Interval" field. At the bottom right, there is a "Clear" button. At the bottom left, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons. At the bottom right, there is a "Clear All" button.

**Figure 17-2. Session Defaults dialog box - Purchase Order tab**

2. Click the tab that corresponds to the default information you want to view.

Result: The corresponding tab opens.

3. After you specify information on one or more of the tabs
  - To save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button.
  - To cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - To clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - To clear the information on all of the **Session Defaults** tabs, click the **Clear All** button.

## Purchase Order Defaults

---

Click the **Purchase Order** tab. Default values specified on the **Purchase Order** tab apply to several of the fields on the **Header** and **Footer** tabs of all new purchase orders created during your current Acquisitions session. See page 131 and [6-7](#) for more information.

The procedure for setting purchase order defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-2, Setting Purchase Order Defaults.](#)



### Procedure 17-2. Setting Purchase Order Defaults

---

Use the following to set purchase order defaults (see [Figure 17-2](#)).

1. Select a default order site location from the drop-down list in the **Order Site** field. This value applies to the **Site** field on the **Header** tab of a new purchase order.
2. Select a default shipping location for your purchase order items from the drop-down list in the **Ship To** field. This value applies to the **Ship To** field on the **Header** tab of a new purchase order. Select a default billing location from the drop-down list in the **Bill To** field. This value applies to the **Bill To** field on the **Header** tab of a new purchase order.
3. In the **Vendor Code** field, type the code of the vendor that you want to use as your default for buying items. If you don't know the vendor code, click the search button ([Figure 17-3](#)) beside the **Vendor Code** field to conduct a search for the vendor.



---

**Figure 17-3. Search Button**

If you type in the vendor code, you must then click the **check mark** button beside the **Vendor Code** field to validate the vendor code. After the code is validated, any accounts associated with the vendor display in the **Account** field. In addition, if values have been specified on the **Delivery Options** tab of the vendor record, the values automatically display in the **Cancel After (days)**, **Claim Interval (days)** and **Ship Via** fields on the **Purchase Order** tab.

On a new purchase order, the value in the **Vendor Code** field applies to the **Code** field in the Vendor section of the **Header** tab.

4. After a vendor code has been specified in the **Vendor Code** field, select a vendor account from the drop-down list in the **Account** field. On a new purchase order, this value applies to the **Account** field in the Vendor section of the **Header** tab.
5. Select a default currency code from the drop-down list in the **Currency** field. On a new purchase order, this value applies to the **Code** field in the Currency section of the **Header** tab.

**NOTE:**

If your institution uses the EDI activity, you should use ISO Currency Code Standards. These standards should be used so EDI can read the currency codes on incoming messages from your vendors, and so your vendors can read the currency codes on your outgoing messages. You can acquire information about ISO Currency Code Standards at: [http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency\\_table.html](http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency_table.html).

6. Select a default purchase order type from the drop-down list in the **Order Type** field. The following system-defined purchase order types are available.
  - Approval
  - Firm Order
  - Gift
  - Exchange
  - Depository
  - Continuation

In addition, your institution may have defined one or more user-defined purchase order types in the PO Type Definitions activity of the System Administration module. When a purchase order is marked as any system or user-defined purchase order type, except for Continuation, all line item types default to Single part. When a purchase order is marked as Continuation, all line item types default to Subscription.

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about user-defined purchase order types. This value can be used to retrieve the purchase order when conducting a search.

On a new purchase order, this value applies to the **Type** field in the Order section of the **Header** tab.

7. Enter the maximum number of days exceeded before an unreceived purchase order is canceled in the **Cancel After (days)** field. This value applies to the **Cancel After** field on the **Footer** tab of a new purchase order.
  8. Enter the maximum number of days between claim notices in the **Claim Interval (days)** field. This value applies to the **Claim Interval** field on the **Footer** tab of a new purchase order.
  9. Click the **Don't Claim** check box if you do not want to send any claim notices to the vendor for items on the purchase order. This value applies to the **Don't Claim** check box on the **Footer** tab of a new purchase order.
  10. Enter the default shipping method in the **Ship Via** field (for example, postal or overnight). This value applies to the **Ship Via** field on the **Footer** tab of a new purchase order.
  11. To:
    - enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
    - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
    - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
    - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
    - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.
- 

## Line Item Defaults

---

Click the **Line Item** tab. The **Line Item** tab opens (see [Figure 17-4](#)).

Default values specified on the **Line Item** tab apply to certain fields on the **Delivery Options** and **Type** tabs of the detailed view of a new line item (for more information about the **Delivery Options** tab, see [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 6-70](#)).

For more information about the **Type** tab, see [Type Tab](#) on [page 6-64](#). When entering information for a new line item on a purchase order, the Detailed Line Item feature allows you to view and enter information for all aspects of the line item. See [Detailed Line Item](#) on [page 6-32](#) for more information.

The image shows a software dialog box titled "Session Defaults". It has a tabbed interface with three tabs: "Ledger", "Vendor", and "Fund". The "Vendor" tab is selected, and within it, the "Line Item" sub-tab is active. The "Fund" sub-tab is labeled "Line Item Copies/Funds". The main area of the dialog contains several input fields: "Cancel After (days):" with a text box, "Claim Interval (days):" with a text box and an unchecked checkbox labeled "Don't Claim", "Donor:" with a text box, "Requestor:" with a text box, and "Reference # Qualifier:" with a dropdown menu. At the bottom right of the main area is a "Clear" button. At the very bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Clear All".

**Figure 17-4.** Session Defaults dialog box - Line Item tab

The procedure for setting line item defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-3, Setting Line Item Defaults](#).



### Procedure 17-3. Setting Line Item Defaults

Use the following to set line item defaults.

1. Enter the maximum number of days exceeded before an unreceived line item is canceled in the **Cancel After (days)** field. This value applies to the **Cancel After** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new line item.
2. Enter the maximum number of days between claim notices in the **Claim Interval (days)** field. This value applies to the **Claim Interval** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new line item.

3. Click the **Don't Claim** check box if you do not want to send claims for the item even though it has not been received. If this check box is selected, the **Claim Interval (days)** field is unavailable. This value applies to the **Don't Claim** check box on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new line item.
4. To identify a default donor of items, enter the identification information in the **Donor** field. This value applies to the **Donor** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new line item.
5. To identify a default requester of items, enter the identification information in the **Requester** field. This value applies to the **Requester** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new line item.

**NOTE:**

If the Quick Line Item feature is being used to create a line item, this value applies to the **Requester** field on the **Quick Line Item** dialog box.

6. Select a Reference # Qualifier from the drop down menu in the **Reference # Qualifier** field. This Reference # Qualifier is used specifically for the EDI activity in Acquisitions. This value applies to the first **Vendor Reference Number** field on the **Type** tab of a new line item.
7. To:
  - enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
  - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
  - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.

---

## Line Item Copies/Funds Defaults

Click the **Line Item Copies/Funds** tab. The **Line Item Copies/Funds** tab ([Figure 17-5](#)) allows you to establish default copy and fund information for one or more intended locations. This default information is applied to each new line item.



**NOTE:**

You can enter information for a line item in the following ways.

- Using the Detailed Line Item feature, which allows you to enter detailed information for all aspects of the line item distributed over a number of tabs
- Using the Quick Line Item feature, which allows you to enter basic, commonly-used line item information in a single spot rather than over a number of tabs. (Quick Line Item creation is not available if you have set default copy/fund information for more than one intended location.)

In order for Quick Line Item creation to be available, only one intended location may have default copy and fund information specified on the **Line Item Copies/Funds** tab of your Session Defaults. If defaults are set for more than one intended location, the Detailed Line Item feature is used to create line items instead.

For more information about the Detailed Line Item feature, see [Detailed Line Item](#) on [page 6-32](#). For more information about the Quick Line Item feature, see [Quick Line Item](#) on [page 6-28](#).

The image shows a screenshot of the 'Session Defaults' dialog box, specifically the 'Line Item Copies/Funds' tab. The dialog has a title bar 'Session Defaults' and several tabs: 'Ledger', 'Invoice', 'Purchase Order', 'Vendor', 'Line Item', and 'Fund'. The 'Line Item' tab is selected. Inside the dialog, there is a section for 'Intended Location:' with a dropdown menu. Below this, there is a section 'For This Location:' containing three fields: '# of Copies:' (a text input), 'Ship To:' (a dropdown menu), and 'Commit to Fund:' (a dropdown menu). At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: 'Display Selected Intended locations', 'Clear', and 'OK'. There is also a 'Cancel' button and a 'Clear All' button.

**Figure 17-5. Session Defaults dialog box - Line Item Copies/Funds tab**

## Setting Defaults for an Intended Location

---

You can set default Copy, Ship To, and Fund information for one or more intended locations. The location selected in the **Intended Location** field is the intended location for which defaults are currently being established. All intended locations to which you assign defaults are applied to each newly-created line item. Quick Line Item creation is not available if you have set default copy/fund information for more than one intended location. If defaults are set for more than one intended location, the Detailed Line Item feature is used to create line items instead.

The procedure for Setting defaults for an intended location is shown in [Procedure 17-4, Setting Defaults for an Intended Location.](#)



### Procedure 17-4. Setting Defaults for an Intended Location

---

Use the following to set defaults for an intended location.

1. From the drop-down list in the **Intended Location** field, select an intended storage location to which you want to assign defaults. If the Detailed Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the Intended Location specified on the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box.

If the Quick Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the **Intended Location** field on the **Quick Line Item** dialog box. For more information about the **Copies/Funds** tab of the detailed line item view, see [Copies/Funds Tab](#) on [page 6-48](#). For more information about the **Quick Line Item** dialog box, see [Quick Line Item](#) on [page 6-28](#).

2. In the **# of Copies** field, enter the default number of line item copies to be ordered for the intended location. If the Detailed Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the **Number of Copies** field specified on the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box.

If the Quick Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the **Number of Copies** field on the **Quick Line Item** dialog box.

3. From the drop-down list in the **Ship To** field, select a default location where you want the line item copies for the intended location shipped. You should define a Ship To default only if you want the copies initially shipped to a location other than the final intended storage location.

If the Detailed Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the **Ship To** field on the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box.

If the Quick Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the **Ship To** field on the **Quick Line Item** dialog box.

4. From the drop-down list in the **Commit to Fund** field, select the default fund to be used for the line item copies for the intended location. If the Detailed Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the **Commit to Fund** field on the **Copies/Funds** tab of the **Line Item** dialog box.

If the Quick Line Item feature is used to create the line item, this value applies to the **Commit to Fund** field on the **Quick Line Item** dialog box. If the fund is no longer available, the fund does not display on the purchase order.

5. To set defaults for more intended locations, repeat steps 1 - 4.
6. To:
  - enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
  - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
  - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.

Result: If clicked **OK** the Intended Locations defaults are defined.

---

### **Displaying the Selected Intended Locations**

---

To view the default information of all the intended locations for which you have established defaults, click the **Display Selected Intended Locations** button. This displays the list of intended locations on the **Line Item Copies/Funds** tab, along with the default **# of copies**, **Ship to Location**, and **Commit to Ledger/Fund** for each intended location (see [Figure 17-6](#)).

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Session Defaults". It has several tabs: "Ledger", "Invoice", "Vendor", "Fund", "Purchase Order", "Line Item", and "Line Item Copies/Funds". The "Line Item Copies/Funds" tab is selected. Inside this tab, there is a table with the following data:

Intended Location	# of copies	Ship to Location	Commit to Ledger / Fund
Biology	2		2000 test / Books
Acquisitions Desk	2	Main	DLC ledger / Book Fund Transac

Below the table is a large empty rectangular area, likely for additional entries. At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Clear All".

---

**Figure 17-6. Line Item Copies/Funds tab**

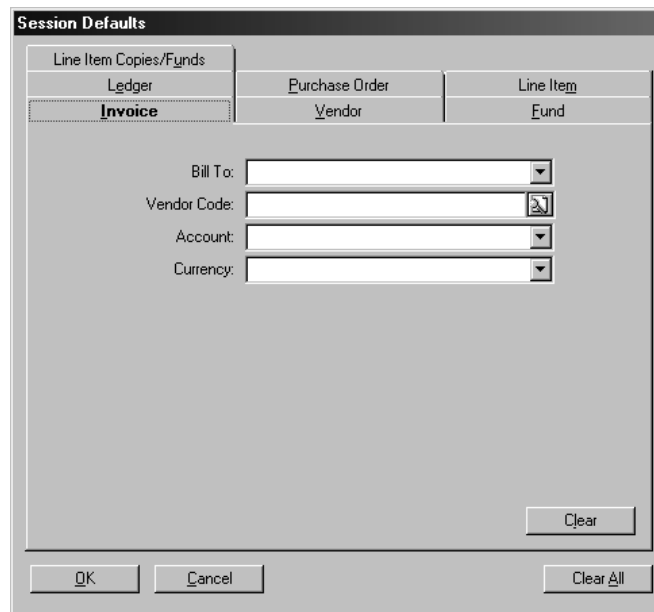
To return the **Line Item Copies/Funds** tab to its original layout, where you can establish defaults for additional intended locations, click the **Select New Intended Locations** button.

## Invoice Defaults

---

Click the **Invoice** tab. Default values specified on the **Invoice** tab ([Figure 17-7](#)) apply to four of the fields on the **Header** tab of a new invoice created during your current Acquisitions session.

The procedure for setting Invoice defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-5, Setting Invoice Defaults.](#)



The image shows a software dialog box titled "Session Defaults". It has three tabs: "Line Item Copies/Funds", "Purchase Order", and "Line Item". The "Invoice" tab is selected. Inside the dialog, there are four fields with labels and dropdown menus: "Bill To:", "Vendor Code:", "Account:", and "Currency:". To the right of the "Vendor Code:" field is a small search icon. At the bottom right of the main area is a "Clear" button. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Clear All".

Figure 17-7. Session Defaults dialog box - Invoice tab



#### Procedure 17-5. Setting Invoice Defaults

Use the following to set invoice defaults.

1. Select a default billing location from the drop-down list in the **Bill To** field. This value applies to the **Bill To** field on the **Header** tab of a new invoice.
2. In the **Vendor Code** field, type the code of the vendor that you want to use as your default for buying items. If you don't know the vendor code, click the search button beside the **Vendor Code** field to conduct a search for the vendor.

If you type in the vendor code, you must then click the **check mark** button beside the **Vendor Code** field to validate the vendor code. After the code is validated, any accounts associated with the vendor display in the **Account** field.

On a new invoice, the value in the **Vendor Code** field applies to the **Code** field in the Vendor section of the **Header** tab.

3. After a vendor code has been specified in the **Vendor Code** field, select a vendor account from the drop-down list in the **Account** field. On a new invoice, this value applies to the **Account** field in the Vendor section of the **Header** tab.
4. Select a default currency code to use on new invoices from the drop-down list in the **Currency** field. On a new invoice, this value applies to the **Code** field in the Currency section of the **Header** tab.

**NOTE:**

If your institution uses the EDI activity, you should use ISO Currency Code Standards. These standards should be used so EDI can read the currency codes on incoming messages from your vendors, and so your vendors can read the currency codes on your outgoing messages. You can acquire information about ISO Currency Code Standards at: [http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency\\_table.html](http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/xr/currency_table.html).

5. To:
  - enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
  - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
  - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.

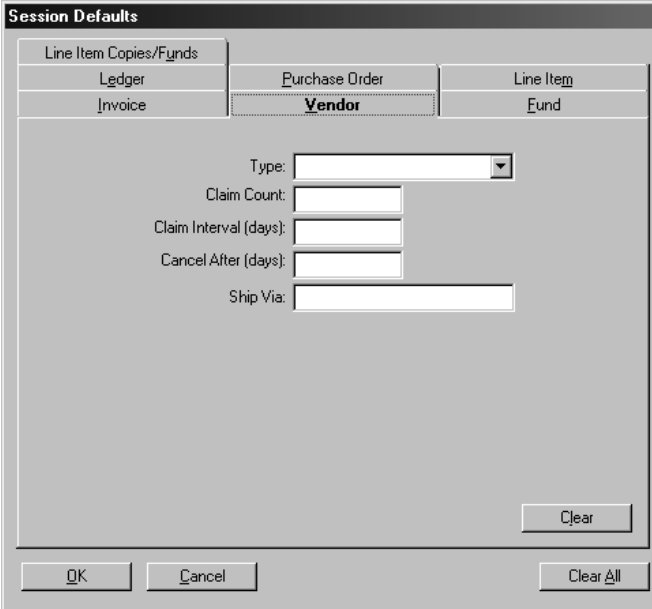
Result: If clicked **OK** the invoice defaults are defined.

---

## Vendor Defaults

---

Click the **Vendor** tab. Default values specified on the **Vendor** tab ([Figure 17-8](#)) apply to several fields on new vendor records created during your current Acquisitions session.



The image shows a 'Session Defaults' dialog box with the 'Vendor' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar 'Session Defaults' and a tabbed interface. The tabs are 'Line Item Copies/Funds', 'Ledger', 'Purchase Order', 'Line Item', 'Invoice', 'Vendor', and 'Fund'. The 'Vendor' tab is active, showing fields for 'Type' (a dropdown menu), 'Claim Count' (a text box), 'Claim Interval (days)' (a text box), 'Cancel After (days)' (a text box), and 'Ship Via' (a text box). There are three buttons at the bottom: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Clear All'. A 'Clear' button is also present near the bottom right of the main field area.

**Figure 17-8. Session Defaults dialog box - Vendor tab**

The procedure for setting Vendor defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-6, Setting Vendor Defaults.](#)



#### **Procedure 17-6. Setting Vendor Defaults**

Use the following to set vendor defaults.

1. Vendor Types are created in the System Administration module. Vendor Types help to group individual vendor records by the basic characteristics important to your library. Select a default vendor type from the drop-down list in the **Vendor Type** field. This value applies to the **Vendor Type** field in the Header Information area of a new vendor record. See [Ledger - Header Information](#) on [page 5-11](#) for more information.
2. Enter the default maximum number of days exceeded before an unreceived line item is canceled in the **Cancel After (days)** field. This value applies to the **Cancel After (days)** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new vendor record. See [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#) for more information.

3. Enter the default maximum number of days between claim notices in the **Claim Interval (days)** field. This value applies to the **Claim Interval (days)** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new vendor record. See [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#) for more information.
4. Enter the default maximum number of claims to be sent to the vendor for an unreceived line item in the **Claim Count** field. This value applies to the **Claim Count** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new vendor record. See [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#) for more information.
5. Enter the default shipping method in the **Ship Via** field. This value applies to the **Ship Via** field on the **Delivery Options** tab of a new vendor record. See [Delivery Options Tab](#) on [page 4-12](#) for more information.
6. To:
  - enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
  - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
  - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.

Result: If clicked **OK** the vendor defaults are defined.

---

## Fund Defaults

---

Click the **Fund** tab. Commitment and expenditure values can be specified for a fund in order to override the commitment and expenditure values of the ledger. Default values specified on the **Fund** tab ([Figure 17-9](#)) apply to the commitment and expenditure values on the **Override Rules** tab of a new fund created during your current Acquisitions session. See [Override Rules Tab](#) on [page 5-33](#) for more information about fund commitment and expenditure values.

- The procedure for setting Fund Commitment defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-7](#), [Setting Fund Commitment Defaults](#), on [page 17-17](#).



- The procedure for setting Fund Expenditure defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-8, Setting Fund Expenditure Defaults](#), on page [17-18](#).

The image shows a software dialog box titled "Session Defaults". It has several tabs at the top: "Line Item Copies/Funds", "Ledger", "Purchase Order", "Invoice", "Vendor", "Line Item", and "Fund". The "Fund" tab is currently selected. Below the tabs, there are two main sections: "Commitments" and "Expenditures". Each section contains a checkbox for "Over [Type] Allowed", followed by input fields for "Over [Type] Warning %", "Over [Type] Limit %", "Under [Type] Report %", and "Freeze Date". At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Clear All".

Figure 17-9. Session Defaults dialog box - Fund tab



#### Procedure 17-7. Setting Fund Commitment Defaults

Use the following to set fund commitment defaults.

- In the Commitments section, select the **Over Commit Allowed** check box if you want fund overcommitment allowed by default. Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Commitments section of the **Fund** tab.
- Enter the default maximum overcommitment percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Commit Warning %** field. This is an on-line warning. For example, if you try to approve a purchase order on which the commitment to a fund has surpassed the Over Commit Warning %, you are warned of the overcommitment.
- Enter the default maximum overcommitment limit percentage in the **Over Commit Limit %** field. This prevents fund overcommitment at the designated percentage.

4. Enter the default maximum undercommitment percentage that generates a report in the **Under Commit Report %** field.
5. From the drop-down list in the **Freeze Date** field, select the default date on which you want to stop overcommitments against the fund.
6. To:
  - enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
  - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
  - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.



#### **Procedure 17-8. Setting Fund Expenditure Defaults**

---

Use the following to set fund expenditure defaults.

1. In the Expenditures section, select the **Over Expend Allowed** check box if you want overexpending allowed by default. Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Expenditures section of the **Fund** tab.
2. Enter the default maximum overexpend percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Expend Warning %** field. This is an on-line warning. For example, if you attempt to approve an invoice on which the expenditure of a fund has surpassed the Over Expend Warning %, you are warned of the overexpenditure.
3. Enter the default maximum overexpend limit percentage in the **Over Expend Limit %** field. This prevents fund overexpenditure at the designated percentage.
4. Enter the default maximum underexpend percentage that generates a report in the **Under Expend Report %** field.
5. From the drop-down list in the **Freeze Date** field, select the default date on which you want to stop overexpending against the fund.

6. To:

- enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
  - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
  - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.
- 

## **Ledger Defaults**

---

Click the **Ledger** tab. Default values specified on the **Ledger** tab ([Figure 17-10](#)) apply to the commitment and expenditure values on the **Commitments/Expenditures** tab of a new ledger created during your current Acquisitions session. A ledger's commitment and expenditure values are applied to any of the ledger's funds that do not have their own commitment and expenditure values specified. See [Commitments/ Expenditures Tab](#) on [page 5-14](#) for more information.

- The procedure for setting Ledger Commitment defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-9, Setting Ledger Commitment Defaults](#), on page [17-20](#).
- The procedure for setting Ledger Expenditure defaults is shown in [Procedure 17-10, Setting Ledger Expenditure Defaults](#), on page [17-21](#).

The screenshot shows a window titled "Session Defaults" with a tabbed interface. The "Ledger" tab is selected. The window is divided into two main sections: "Commitments" on the left and "Expenditures" on the right. Each section has a checkbox for "Over [Type] Allowed" and four text input fields for percentages: "Warning %", "Limit %", "Report %", and "Freeze Date". At the bottom right of the main area is a "Clear" button. At the bottom of the window are "OK", "Cancel", and "Clear All" buttons.

Fund	Invoice	Vendor
Line Item Copies/Funds	Purchase Order	Line Item

**Commitments:**

☐ Over Commit Allowed

Over Commit Warning %:

Over Commit Limit %:

Under Commit Report %:

Freeze Date:

**Expenditures:**

☐ Over Expend Allowed

Over Expend Warning %:

Over Expend Limit %:

Under Expend Report %:

Freeze Date:

Clear

OK Cancel Clear All

---

**Figure 17-10. Session Defaults - Ledger tab**



---

**Procedure 17-9. Setting Ledger Commitment Defaults**

---

Use the following to set ledger commitment defaults.

1. In the Commitments section, select the **Over Commit Allowed** check box if you want ledger overcommitment allowed by default. Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Commitments section of the **Ledger** tab.
2. Enter the default maximum overcommitment percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Commit Warning %** field. This is an on-line warning. For example, if you try to approve a purchase order on which the commitment to a ledger has surpassed the Over Commit Warning %, you are warned of the overcommitment.
3. Enter the default maximum overcommitment limit percentage in the **Over Commit Limit %** field. This prevents ledger overcommitment at the designated percentage.
4. Enter the default maximum undercommitment percentage that generates a report in the **Under Commit Report %** field.

5. Click the ellipses button in the **Freeze Date** field to select the default date on which you want to stop overcommitments against the ledger.
6. To:
  - enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
  - save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
  - cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
  - clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
  - clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.

Result: If you clicked **OK** the ledger commitment defaults are defined.

---



---

#### Procedure 17-10. Setting Ledger Expenditure Defaults

---

Use the following to set ledger expenditure defaults.

1. Select the **Over Expend Allowed** check box if you want overexpending allowed by default. Selecting this check box enables the rest of the fields in the Expenditures section of the **Ledger** tab.
2. Enter the default maximum overexpend percentage that generates a warning in the **Over Expend Warning %** field. This is an on-line warning. For example, if you attempt to approve an invoice on which the expenditure of a ledger has surpassed the Over Expend Warning %, you are warned of the overexpenditure.
3. Enter the default maximum overexpend limit percentage in the **Over Expend Limit %** field. This prevents ledger overexpenditure at the designated percentage.
4. Enter the default maximum underexpend percentage that generates a report in the **Under Expend Report %** field.
5. Click the ellipses button in the **Freeze Date** field to select the default date on which you want to stop overexpending against the ledger.

6. To:

- enter additional default information on another tab for other areas of the Acquisitions module, click that tab.
- save the new information to the database and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **OK** button to.
- cancel any information you have specified and close the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Session Defaults** dialog box are still in place.
- clear all the information on the tab that is currently displayed, click the **Clear** button.
- clear the information on all tabs of the **Session Defaults** dialog box, click the **Clear All** button.

Result: If you clicked **OK** the ledger expenditure defaults are defined.

---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>18-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>18-1</b>
<b>Colors and Fonts Tab</b>	<b>18-4</b>
<b>List Bar Tab</b>	<b>18-5</b>
• Default Workspace	18-6
• Listbar Appearance	18-7
• Position	18-9
<b>Sounds and Animation Tab</b>	<b>18-10</b>
• Sounds	18-11
• Tooltips	18-12
• Deletion Reminder	18-13
• Intro Music	18-14
• Enable Transitions	18-15





### Introduction

---

Session Preferences allow you to customize many aspects of the appearance of your Acquisitions module.

Voyager retains each operator's Session Preferences between sessions. To achieve this, Voyager stores an operator's individual settings on the workstation(s) that the operator uses. The persistence of these settings enable an operator to customize the Session Preferences to fit the activities relevant for the operator.

For example, an operator who works primarily with Serials Check-In can have the **Serials Check-In** workspace automatically open at the start of each new Acquisitions session. This feature eliminates the repetitive entry of this data at the start of each new Acquisitions session.

### Purpose of this Chapter

---

This chapter covers configuring the three tabs in the **Sessions Preferences** dialog box.

- **Color and Fonts** tab
- **List bar** tab
- **Sounds and Animation** tab

[Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#), describes the general steps for editing user preferences.



---

### Procedure 18-1. Establishing Session Preferences

---

Use the following to set up session preferences.

1. Select **Preferences** from the **Tools** menu.

You can also click the **Set Preferences** button ([Figure 18-1](#)) located on the toolbar of the **Acquisitions** workspace.



---

**Figure 18-1. Set Preferences button**

Result: The Preferences dialog box opens (see [Figure 18-2](#)).

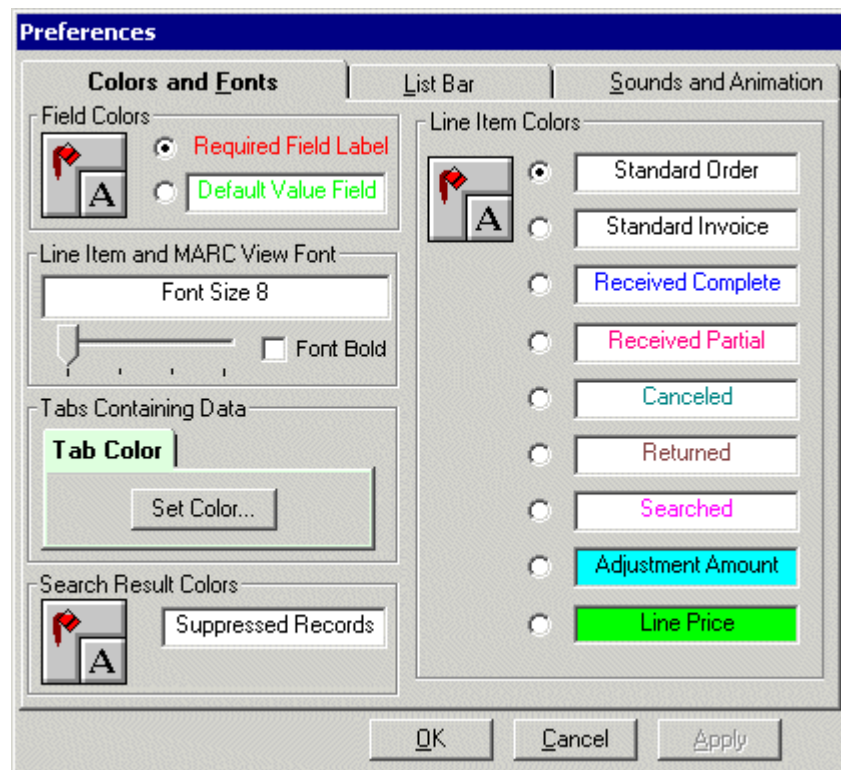


Figure 18-2. Preferences dialog box

2. Click the following tabs at the top of the dialog box to enter data on that tab.

- **Colors and Fonts**
- **List Bar**
- **Sounds and Animation**

Result: When you click a tab, the Preferences dialog box displays the appropriate information.

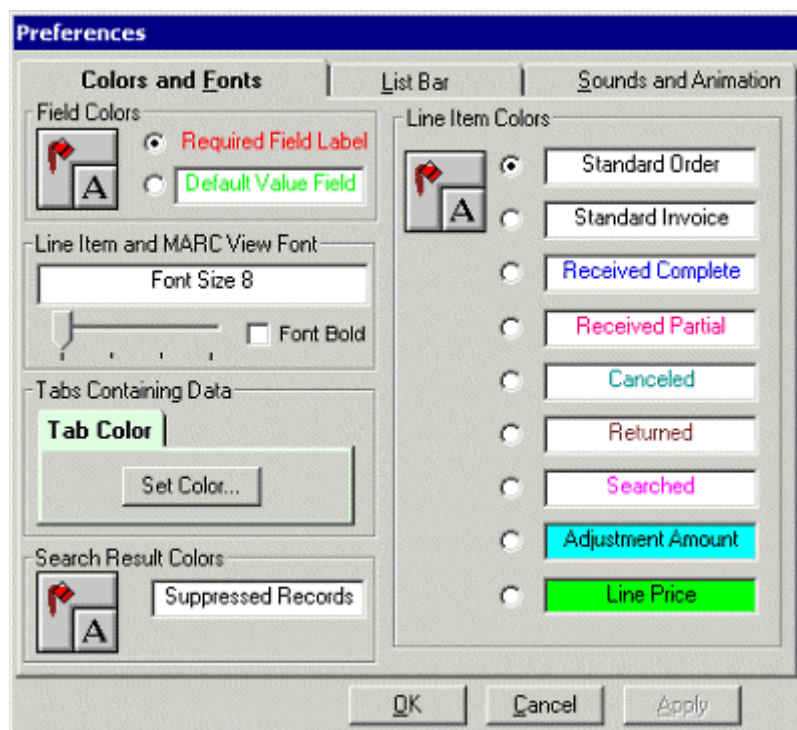
3. Use the information in [Table 18-1](#) on [page 18-5](#) or in Procedures [18-2](#) - [18-9](#) to complete your preferences.
4. To save the new information to the database, click the **Apply** button. To save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button. To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button.

## Colors and Fonts Tab

---

The **Colors and Fonts** tab ([Figure 18-3](#)) allows you to customize the following.

- Color of required fields and required field labels
- Font size for line items and for the MARC display of an item
- Color of tabs that contain data
- Color of suppressed records appearing in staff search results
- Colors of certain aspects of line items



---

Figure 18-3. Colors and Fonts tab

[Table 18-1](#) details the fields and their impact on various items on the Acquisitions interface.

**TIP:**

*Select contrasting text and background colors so the labels are easy to read.*

**Table 18-1. Colors and Fonts tab of Preferences**

Section	Field	Control(s)	Description
Field Colors	Required Field Label	Radio button, text and background buttons open color selection palette.	Determines the text and background color for labels of required fields.
	Default Value Field	Radio button, text and background buttons open color selection palette.	Determines the text and background color for fields populated by default values.
Line Item and MARC View Font	Font Size, Font Bold check box	Drag-and-drop size switch, bold check box.	Sets the size (8,10, 12, or 14 point) and weight (bold or regular) for text in the line item and MARC views.
Tabs Containing Data	Set Color button	Button opens color selection palette.	Sets background color for tabs that already contain data.
Search Result Colors	Suppressed Records	Button opens color selection palette for text and background.	Text and background colors for items suppressed from public views.
Line Item Colors	[line item types] selected with radio button	Radio selection buttons for line items, color palettes for text and background.	Text and background colors for various line items.

## List Bar Tab

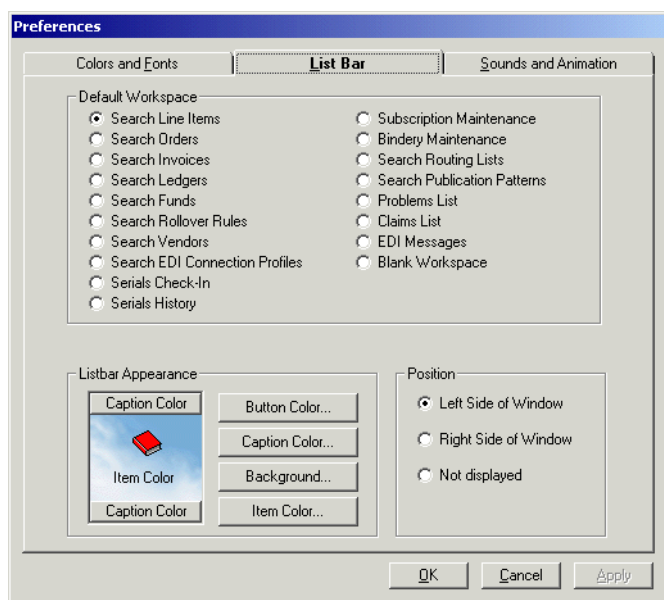
---

A listbar on the Acquisitions workspace presents you with all of your Acquisitions functions. This listbar ([Figure 18-4](#)) can be displayed in a variety of positions and its appearance can be customized. The listbar is not mandatory, however, and you can choose to not display it. All of the Acquisitions functions available from the listbar are also always available from the **View** menu on the Acquisitions workspace.

Also on the **List Bar** tab, you can choose a default view to display each time you start a new Acquisitions session. For example, an operator who works primary with purchase orders can have the **Search Orders** workspace open at the start of each new Acquisitions session.

In addition you can determine the listbar appearance and the position of the listbar.

---



---

**Figure 18-4. Preferences dialog box - List Bar tab**

## Default Workspace

---

Users can set the Acquisitions workspace that opens when they log on.

The procedure for setting the default workspace is shown in [Procedure 18-2, Setting the Default Workspace](#).



### Procedure 18-2. Setting the Default Workspace

---

Use the following to set the default workspace.

1. Click the **List Bar** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).
2. To select the initial default workspace for the Acquisitions workspace, click the appropriate radio button. The radio buttons in the **Default Workspace** section represent all of the workspaces that are accessible from the listbar on the Acquisitions workspace (for example, Search Line Items, Search Funds, and so on). In addition, if you do not want a specific view to automatically display at the start of each new session, you can select the **Blank Workspace** radio button.
3. After you specify information on the **List Bar** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are finished specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.

To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

---

### Listbar Appearance

---

Users can customize the button, caption, and item colors, as well as, the background on the listbar.

The **Button Color** button allows you to change the color of the tabs on the listbar.

The **Caption Color** button allows you to change the color of the text on the tabs of the listbar.

The **Background** button allows you to change the background image of the listbar.

The **Item Color** button allows you to change the color of the text of the buttons below each tab on the listbar.

The procedure for setting the listbar appearance is shown in [Procedure 18-3, Setting the Listbar appearance](#).



### Procedure 18-3. Setting the Listbar appearance

---

Use the following to set the listbar appearance.

1. Click the **List Bar** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).
2. Click the **Button Color** button to open the color selection box. Select a color for the tabs on the listbar and click the **OK** button, or click the **Cancel** button to cancel the color specification.

Result: A preview of the a tab with the color applied displays in the listbar example on the **List Bar** tab.

3. Click the **Caption Color** button to open the color selection box. Select a color for the text on the tabs of the listbar and click the **OK** button, or click the **Cancel** button to cancel the color specification.

Result: A preview of the text color displays in the listbar example on the **List Bar** tab.

4. Click the **Background** button to open the **Open** dialog box. Locate the image you want to use as the background of the listbar and click the **Open** button. Click the **Cancel** button to cancel the application of the image. After you click the **Open** button, a preview of the background image displays in the listbar example on the **List Bar** tab.
5. Click the **Item Color** button to display the color selection box. Select a color for the text of the buttons below each tab of the listbar and click the **OK** button, or click the **Cancel** button to cancel the color specification.

Result: A preview of the text color displays in the listbar example on the **List Bar** tab.

6. After you specify information on the **List Bar** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are finished specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.



To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

---

## Position

---

Users can set the position of the listbar at the left or right side, or not to not display at all.

The procedure for setting the position of the listbar is shown in [Procedure 18-4, Setting the position of the Listbar](#).



### Procedure 18-4. Setting the position of the Listbar

---

Use the following to set the position of the listbar.

1. Click the **List Bar** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).
2. To:
  - a. display the listbar on the left side of the Acquisitions workspace, click the **Left Side of Window** radio button.
  - b. To display the listbar on the right side of the Acquisitions workspace, click the **Right Side of Window** radio button.
  - c. If you don't want the listbar to display on the Acquisitions workspace, click the **Not Displayed** radio button.

#### NOTE:

All of the Acquisitions functions available from the listbar are always available from the menus on the Acquisitions workspace.

3. After you specify information on the **List Bar** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are through specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.

To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

---

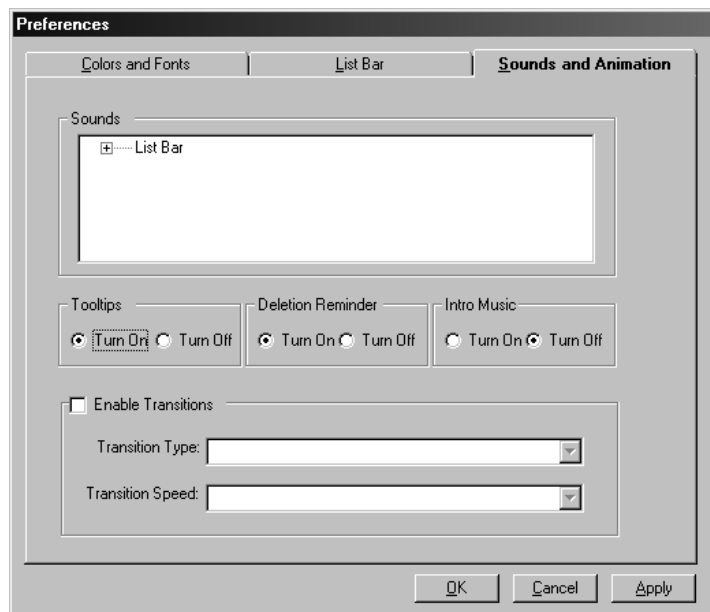
## **Sounds and Animation Tab**

---

The **Sounds and Animation** tab displays in [Figure 18-5](#).

You can customize the sounds and animations that accompany your Acquisitions activities, including the following items:

- the sounds associated with clicking a tab or a button beneath a tab in the listbar
  - whether tooltips show beneath the items on the toolbars of workspaces
  - whether a confirmation message displays before a record is deleted
  - whether introductory music plays at the start of each Acquisitions session
  - the visual transition to use when the contents of the Acquisitions workspace change.
- 



---

**Figure 18-5. Preferences dialog box - Sounds and Animation tab**

The **Sounds and Animation** tab contains the Sounds, Tooltips, Deletion Reminder, Intro Music, and Enable Transitions sections.

## Sounds

---

In the Sounds section of the **Sounds and Animation** tab, you can customize the sounds that are made when a tab or a button beneath a tab on the listbar is selected. Click the plus (+) sign beside listbar to display the following options.

- Group Select
- List Select

**Group Select** controls the sound that occurs when you click the tabs in the listbar (for example, the Line Items, Orders and Invoices tabs). **List Select** controls the sound that occurs when you click a button beneath one of the tabs in the listbar (for example, the **New Ledger** and **Search Ledgers** buttons beneath the **Ledgers and Funds** tab.)

The procedure to specify a sound is shown in [Procedure 18-5, Specifying a sound](#).



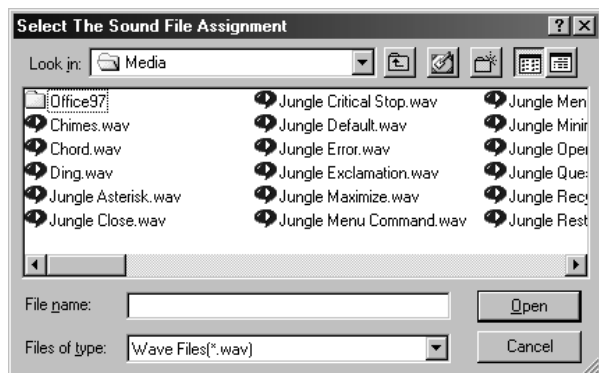
### Procedure 18-5. Specifying a sound

---

Use the following to specify a sound.

1. Click the **Sounds and Animation** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).
2. To specify a sound, click the plus (+) sign beside **Group Select** or **List Select** and double click the entry that displays.

Result: The **Select The Sound File Assignment** dialog box opens (see [Figure 18-6](#)).



---

**Figure 18-6. Select The Sound File Assignment dialog box**

3. Locate the sound file you want to use and click the **Open** button. To cancel the sound specification, click the **Cancel** button.

Result: After selecting a sound file and clicking **Open**, the file path displays below the **Group Select** or **List Select** entry.

4. To specify a different sound file, double-click the file path.
5. After you specify information on the **Sounds and Animation** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are through specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.

To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

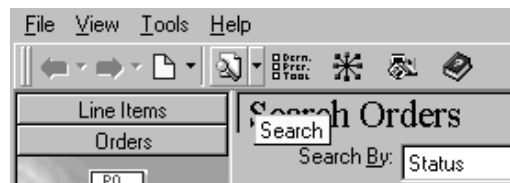
---

## Tooltips

---

A tooltip is a piece of informational text that displays below a toolbar button when your cursor remains on the button. A tooltip describes a button's function.

For example, if you keep your cursor over the search button on the toolbar of the Acquisitions workspace, the text **Search** displays (see [Figure 18-7](#)).



**Figure 18-7. Mouse held over search button - tooltip displayed**

The procedure to specify if tooltips should display is shown in [Procedure 18-6, Specifying if tooltips should display](#).



#### **Procedure 18-6. Specifying if tooltips should display**

Use the following to specify if tooltips should display.

1. Click the **Sounds and Animation** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).
2. If you want tooltips to display, click the **Turn On** radio button. If you do not want tooltips to display, click the **Turn Off** radio button.
3. After you specify information on the **Sounds and Animation** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are through specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.

To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

#### **Deletion Reminder**

You can specify whether a confirmation message does or does not display when performing deletion or removal functions in your Acquisitors module (for example, when you are deleting a routing list or when you are removing a ledger from a rollover rule.) The option to display a confirmation message can be useful in preventing accidental deletions, although it time to respond to the message.

The procedure to specify if confirmation messages should display is shown in [Procedure 18-7, Specifying if confirmation messages should display](#).



---

### Procedure 18-7. Specifying if confirmation messages should display

---

Use the following to specify if confirmation messages should display.

1. Click the **Sounds and Animation** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).
2. If you want a confirmation message to display before deletions or removals, click the **Turn On** radio button. If you do not want a confirmation message to display, click the **Turn Off** radio button.
3. After you specify information on the **Sounds and Animation** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are through specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.

To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

---

### Intro Music

---

You can specify whether a short piece of intro music do or do not sound at the beginning of each Acquisitions session.

The procedure to specify playing introductory music is shown in [Procedure 18-8, Specifying if introductory music should play](#).



---

### Procedure 18-8. Specifying if introductory music should play

---

Use the following to specify playing introductory music.

1. Click the **Sounds and Animation** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).

2. If you want the intro music to sound, click the **Turn On** radio button. If you do not want the intro music to sound, click the **Turn Off** radio button.
3. After you specify information on the **Sounds and Animation** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are through specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.

To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

---

### **Enable Transitions**

---

When certain functions are selected in the listbar, they display as the main pane inside the Acquisitions workspace.

These functions are as follows.

- Search Line Items under the **Line Items** tab
- Search Orders under the **Orders** tab
- Search Invoices under the **Invoices** tab
- Search Ledgers, Search Funds and Search Rollover Rules under the **Ledgers and Funds** tab
- Search Vendors and Search EDI Connection Profiles under the **Vendors** tab
- Check-In, Serials History, Subscription Maintenance, Search Routing Lists and Search Publication Patterns under the **Check-In** tab
- Receive, Problems and Claims under the **Order Maintenance** tab
- Process EDI Messages under the **EDI** tab

Users can choose how to transition between screen displays in the Acquisitions workspace when these functions are selected.

The procedure to specify how to transition between screen displays in the Acquisitions workspace after selecting a specific function is shown in [Procedure 18-9, Specifying how to transition between screen displays in the Acquisitions workspace](#).



### Procedure 18-9. Specifying how to transition between screen displays in the Acquisitions workspace

---

Use the following to specify how to transition between screen displays in the Acquisitions workspace.

1. Click the **Sounds and Animation** tab on the **Preferences** dialog box, see [Procedure 18-1, Establishing Session Preferences](#).
2. Click the **Enable Transitions** check box.

Result: After this check box is selected, the **Transition Type** and **Transition Speed** fields become available.

3. From the drop-down list in the **Transition Type** field, select how you want the Acquisitions workspace display when one of the above mentioned functions are selected in the listbar.

There are various ways you can have the window re-drawn. For example, if Blinds Horizontal is selected, the re-drawing of the **Acquisition** workspace looks like horizontal window blinds opening.

4. From the drop-down list in the **Transition Speed** field, select the speed at which the Acquisitions workspace re-draws when one of the above mentioned functions are selected in the listbar.

There are three speeds to choose from: Fast, Medium or Slow.

5. After you specify information on the **Sounds and Animation** tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

If you are finished specifying information on the **Preferences** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Preferences** dialog box.

To close the **Preferences** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button. All settings that were in place before you opened the **Preferences** dialog box are still in place.

---



---

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>19-1</b>
<b>Purpose of this Chapter</b>	<b>19-1</b>
<b>Accessing the Workflows dialog box</b>	<b>19-2</b>
<b>Searching Tab</b>	<b>19-4</b>
• Default Searches	19-5
• Bibliographic Staff Searching	19-5
<b>Line Items Tab</b>	<b>19-5</b>
• Quick Line Items - Purchase Orders/Invoices	19-6
• Monographic Receive Processing	19-7
• Show Line Item Relations	19-7
<b>Approve Processing Tab</b>	<b>19-8</b>
• Orders	19-9
• Invoices	19-10
<b>Item Creation Tab</b>	<b>19-10</b>
• Item Records	19-11
• Item Creation from Order	19-11
• Item Creation from Invoice	19-12
• Item Creation from Serials Check-In	19-13
• Item Barcodes	19-13
• Self Check	19-13
<b>Serials Check-In Tab</b>	<b>19-14</b>

• Serials Receive Processing	19-16
• Bindery Pullslips	19-16
<b>Claim Processing Tab</b>	<b>19-18</b>
<b>Bibliographic Standard Number Validation (ISBN/ISSN)</b>	<b>19-20</b>
• Bypass ISBN validation	19-20
• Bypass ISSN validation	19-21
• Bypass ISBN prefix validation for EDI messages	19-21
• Bypass ISSN validation for EDI messages	19-21

## **Introduction**

---

In order to create conditions that are most appropriate and efficient for your activities, session workflows allow you to determine how certain aspects of the Acquisitions module function, including: Searching, Line Items, Approve Processing, Item Creation, Serial Check-In and Claim Processing.

Voyager retains each operator's session workflows between sessions. To achieve this, Voyager stores an operator's individual settings on the workstation(s) that the operator uses. The persistence of these settings enable an operator to customize the session workflows to fit the activities relevant for the operator. This feature eliminates the repetitive entry of this data at the start of each new Acquisitions session.

## **Purpose of this Chapter**

---

This chapter discusses how to configure each tab of the **Workflows** dialog box.

- Searching
- Line Items
- Approve Processing
- Item Creation
- Serial Check-In

- Claim Processing
- Bibliographic Standard Number Validation

## Accessing the Workflows dialog box

---

The procedure for accessing the **Workflows** dialog box is shown in [Procedure 19-1, Opening Session Workflows.](#)



### Procedure 19-1. Opening Session Workflows

---

Use the following to open the **Workflows** dialog box.

1. Select **Workflows** from the **Tools** menu.

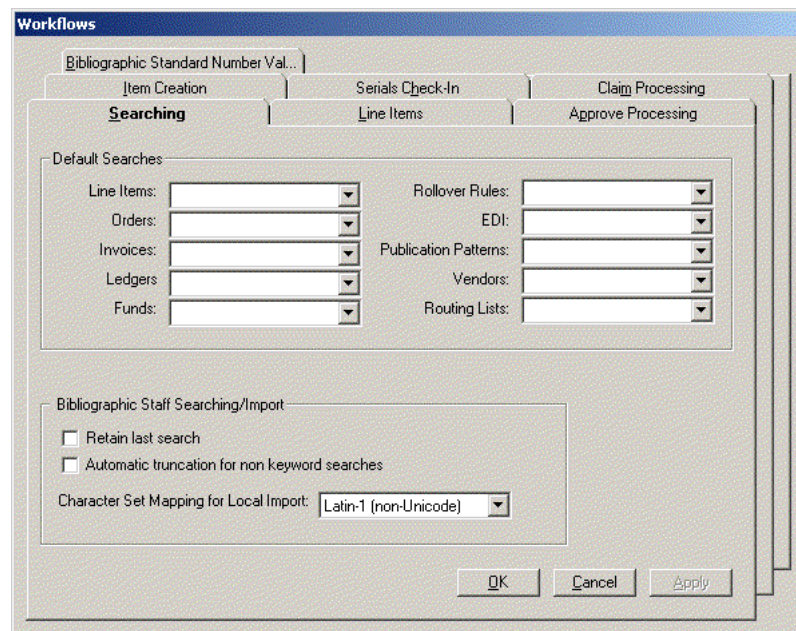
You can also click the **Set Workflows** button ([Figure 19-2](#)) located on the toolbar of the Acquisitions workspace.



---

**Figure 19-1. Set Workflows button**

Result: The **Workflows** dialog box opens (see [Figure 19-2](#)).



**Figure 19-2. Workflows dialog box**

2. To access a specific tab at the top of the window, click one.

- Searching
- Line Items
- Approve Processing
- Item Creation
- Serial Check-In
- Claim Processing

Result: When you click a tab, the **Workflows** dialog box displays that tab's appropriate information.

3. After you specify information on a tab, click the **Apply** button to save the new information to the database.

When you are through specifying information on the **Workflows** dialog box, click the **OK** button to save the new information to the database and close the **Workflows** dialog box.

To close the **Workflows** dialog box without saving any of the information you have specified, click the **Cancel** button . All settings that were in place before you opened the **Workflows** dialog box are still in place.

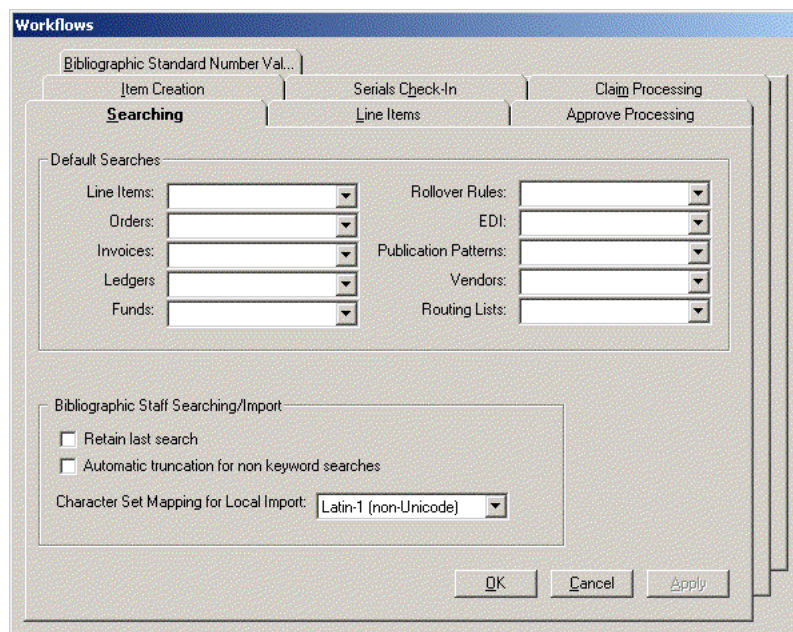
---

## Searching Tab

---

You can use quick searching capabilities to conduct very simple searches using a single searching criterion. The **Searching** tab ([Figure 19-3](#)) allows you to specify default **Search By** selections for each of the available Quick Searches.

---



**Figure 19-3. Workflows dialog box**

In addition, you can customize certain aspects of your Bibliographic searching and decide how to handle large result sets from a search.

See [Searching in Acquisitions](#) on [page 2-1](#) for more information.

## Default Searches

---

The fields in the Default Searches section of the **Searching** tab represent all of the different Quick Searches. The drop-down lists in each of the fields contain all of the available **Search By** options for the specific Quick Search type.

For each search type, select a default **Search By** option from the drop-down list. Each selected **Search By** option automatically displays as the **Search By** option when the corresponding Quick Search is performed. For example, if you select Fund Code from the drop-down list in the **Orders** field, Fund Code automatically displays as the **Search By** option when Quick Searching for a Purchase Order.

## Bibliographic Staff Searching

---

Select the **Retain last search** check box to keep track of the last search you entered. For example, if you use a keyword search to find a bibliographic record to append to a purchase order, the same search query displays the next time you open a search. The system retains this preference selection from Acquisitions session to session based upon your operator ID.

### NOTE:

The **Retain Last Search** option overrides the functionality of the **Default Tab** button and **Save Settings** button located on the **Search** dialog box. Therefore, you must clear the **Retain Last Search** checkbox in order to utilize the **Default Tab** and **Save Settings** buttons. See [Table 2-3](#) on [page 2-13](#), [Table 2-4](#) on [page 2-19](#), and [Table 2-5](#) on [page 2-25](#) for more information.

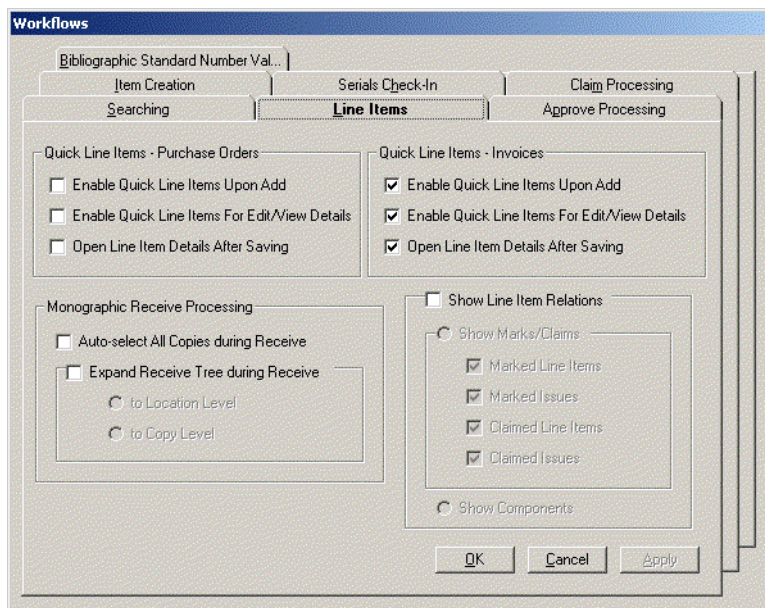
Check the **Automatic truncation for non keyword searches** check box to automatically apply a truncation symbol to the end of any non keyword search statement so that the search results include index entries that match the search statement plus those entries that have more characters to the right.

**Character Set Mapping** converts incoming records to the character set your library uses. You may select from Latin I, OCLC, RLIN Legacy Encoding, and MARC21 MARC-8 character sets. The system uses RLIN Legacy Encoding unless you change it.

## Line Items Tab

---

The **Line Items** tab ([Figure 19-4](#)) helps you create efficient workflows for your line item processing. To open it, click the **Line Items** tab.



---

Figure 19-4. Workflows dialog box - Line Items tab

### Quick Line Items - Purchase Orders/Invoices

---

The Quick Line Item feature provides a way for you to improve the efficiency of line item creation by presenting only required and commonly-used information.

Check the **Enable Quick Line Items Upon Add** check box to have the **Quick Line Item** dialog box open automatically after adding a line item to a purchase order or invoice. Normally, if this workflow option is not selected, you must manually choose either the Quick Line Item feature or the Detailed Line Item feature to enter line item information after adding a line item to a purchase order or invoice. With this check box selected, however, you do not have to spend time choosing between the Quick Line Item feature and the Detailed Line Item feature because the choice to use the Quick Line Item feature has already been made.

Check the **Enable Quick Line Items For Edit/View Details** check box to have the Quick Line Item feature automatically activated when a purchase order or invoice is opened for editing or viewing. With the Quick Line Item feature activated, line items display in the Quick Line Item view rather than the Detailed Line Item view.



Check the **Open Line Item Details After Saving** check box to have the check box of the same name on the **Quick Line Item** dialog box automatically selected. With this workflow option selected, the detailed view of the line item automatically opens after the item has been created using the Quick Line Item feature.

For more information, see the following.

- [Quick Line Item](#) on [page 6-28](#) (Purchase Order)
- [Detailed Line Item](#) on [page 6-32](#) (Purchase Order)
- [Figure 12-18](#) on [page 12-22](#) and [Table 12-5](#) (Invoices)
- [Procedure 12-3, Adding information to the line item](#), on page [12-26](#) (Invoices)

### **Monographic Receive Processing**

---

Check the **Auto-select All Copies during Receive** check box to have all copies for all locations for all selected line items automatically marked to be received when the **Receive** button is clicked on an order or an invoice. Selecting this feature eliminates the need to select each copy for each location to receive all copies of an item.

Check the **Expand Receive Tree during Receive** check box if you want the receive tree (in other words, the line item information hierarchy) automatically expanded to a particular level of information when the **Receive** button is clicked on an order or an invoice. After selecting this check box, you must then specify which level of line item information you want the receive tree expanded to: the Location level or the Copy level. Click the **to Location Level** radio button if you want the receive tree automatically expanded to the second level of the tree to show the locations for which copies are ordered. Click the **to Copy Level** radio button if you want the receive tree automatically expanded to the third level of the tree to show each copy for each location on the purchase order.

See [Receiving and Marking Your Monograph Items](#) on [page 7-1](#) and [Serials Check-In Activities](#) on [page 9-1](#) for more information.

### **Show Line Item Relations**

---

Check the **Show Line Item Relations** check box if you want the line items on purchase orders and invoices to show additional Marks/Claims or Components information. This additional information displays as a second tree level that can be displayed by clicking the plus (+) sign beside the line item.

After you select the **Show Line Item Relations** check box, you must decide whether you want to display additional Marks/Claims information or Components information. Only one of these areas of additional information may be displayed.

To show additional Marks/Claims information on approved purchase orders and invoices, click the **Show Marks/Claims** radio button. You must then click the check boxes beside the kinds of Mark and Claim information that you want displayed. The benefit of having this information displayed is that marks and claims associated with line items can then be processed directly from approved purchase orders or invoices.

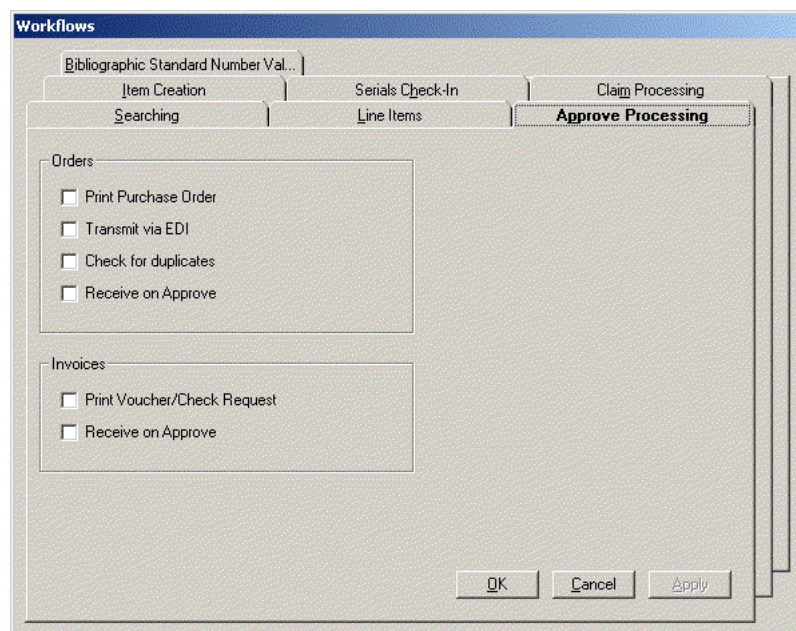
To show additional Component information, click the **Show Components** radio button.

See [Receiving and Marking Your Monograph Items](#) on [page 7-1](#) and [Serials Check-In Activities](#) on [page 9-1](#) for more information.

## **Approve Processing Tab**

---

The **Approve Processing** tab ([Figure 19-5](#)) allows you to specify the actions to be taken when a purchase order or an invoice is approved. Click the **Approve Processing** tab to open it.



**Figure 19-5. Workflows dialog box - Approve Processing tab**

## Orders

The four check boxes in the **Orders** section of the **Approve Processing** tab correspond to the four check boxes on the **Approve Order** dialog box that opens before you approve a purchase order. The check boxes that you select on the **Approve Processing** tab are automatically selected on the **Approve Order** dialog box when you approve a purchase order.

Check the **Print Purchase Order** check box if you want a copy of the purchase order automatically printed when the purchase order is approved. If this check box is selected, the check box of the same name is automatically selected on the **Approve Order** dialog box that opens before a purchase order is approved.

Check the **Transmit via EDI** check box if you want a copy of the purchase order automatically transmitted via EDI when the purchase order is approved. If this check box is selected, the check box of the same name is automatically selected on the **Approve Order** dialog box that opens before a purchase order is approved.

**NOTE:**

The **Transmit Order via EDI** check box on the **Approve Order** dialog box is only available if the location in the **Order Site** field and the vendor in the **Vendor Code** field match the Library Location and Vendor of an existing EDI connection profile. If there are no matches, the **Transmit Order via EDI** check box is greyed out. See [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#) for information about EDI connection profiles.

Check the **Check for Duplicates** check box if you want the system to check for duplicate titles for the same location when a purchase order is approved. If this check box is selected, the check box of the same name is automatically selected on the **Approve Order** dialog box that opens before a purchase order is approved.

Check the **Receive on Approve** check box if you want to automatically receive all monograph line items on a purchase order when the purchase order is approved.

See [Approving a Purchase Order](#) on [page 6-94](#) for more information.

## **Invoices**

---

The two check boxes in the Invoices section of the **Approve Processing** tab correspond to the two check boxes on the **Approve Invoice** dialog box that opens before you approve an invoice. The check boxes that you select on the **Approve Processing** tab are automatically selected on the **Approve Invoice** dialog box when you approve an invoice.

Check in the **Print Voucher/Check Request** check box if you want a voucher/check request automatically printed when you approve an invoice. If this check box is selected, the check box of the same name is automatically selected on the **Approve Invoice** dialog box that opens before an invoice is approved.

Check the **Receive on Approve** check box if you want to automatically receive all monograph line items on an invoice when the invoice is approved.

See [Approving an Invoice](#) on [page 12-33](#) for more information.

## **Item Creation Tab**

---

The **Item Creation** tab ([Figure 19-6](#)) allows you to control many aspects of the creation of item records from a purchase order, invoice or serials check-in. Click the **Item Creation** tab to open it.

For more information about Item Creation from a purchase order, invoice, or serials check-in, see [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#).

Figure 19-6. Workflows dialog box - Item Creation tab

### Item Records

The **First Copy Numbered As** option is used to determine whether 0 or 1 populates the **Copy** field on the item record.

The **Default Item Status** field displays on an item record when it is created through Acquisitions.

The **Use the list price from the order line** check box, if checked, allows the line item list price from the approved purchase order to display in the **Price** field on a created item record. If this check box is not selected, the list price on the item record must be manually entered.

### Item Creation from Order

The **Automatically create at receive** check box, if checked, creates an item record automatically when a line item copy is received from a purchase order.

The **Show Item Record on Create** check box if you want an item record to display when it is created. This check box is available only if the **Automatically create at receive** check box is selected. If you don't select the **Show Item Record on Create** check box but have checked the **Automatically create at receive** check box, an item record is created but does not automatically display at the time of creation.

**NOTE:**

If you receive more than one copy at a time, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically display, even if you have checked the **Show Item Record on Create** check box. Rather, you receive the message: *x item records automatically created*, where *x* equals the appropriate amount. However, you can access an item record for an individual copy by selecting the copy and then clicking the **Item** button.

Check the **Sequence New Items at Top** check box if you want newly-created item records to be placed at the top of the item sequence in the staff modules. If this check box is not selected, by default, the item record is placed at the bottom of the item sequence in the staff modules.

### **Item Creation from Invoice**

---

Check the **Automatically create at receive** check box if you want an item record automatically created when a line item copy is received from an invoice.

Check the **Show Item Record on Create** check box if you want an item record to display when it is created. This check box is available only if the **Automatically create at receive** check box is selected. If you don't select the **Show Item Record on Create** check box but have checked the **Automatically create at receive** check box, an item record is created but does not automatically display at the time of creation.

**NOTE:**

If you receive more than one copy at a time, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically display, even if you have selected the **Show Item Record on Create** check box. Rather, you receive the message, *x item records automatically created*, where *x* equals the appropriate amount. However, you can access an item record for an individual copy by selecting the copy and then clicking the **Item** button.

Check the **Sequence New Items at Top** check box if you want newly-created item records to be placed at the top of the item sequence in the staff modules. If this check box is not selected, by default, the item record is placed at the bottom of the item sequence in the staff modules.

### Item Creation from Serials Check-In

---

Check the **Show Item Record on Create** check box if you want an item record to display when it is created. If you receive more than one copy at a time, the item records created for the individual copies do not automatically display, even if you have selected the **Show Item Record on Create** check box. Rather, you receive the message, `x item records automatically created`, where `x` equals the appropriate amount. However, you can access an item record for an individual copy by selecting the copy and then clicking the **Item** button.

#### NOTE:

The **Show Item Record on Create** feature for Item Creation from Serials Check-In does not perform unless you have selected the **Create Item** check box on the **Component Details** tab of the component. This check box can be selected when the component is created or while editing the component (for more information about selecting this check box when creating or editing a component, see [Table 8-1 describes the fields in the top section of the Subscription Maintenance workspace](#), on [page 8-3](#).) If you check the Create Item check box on the **Component Details** tab, an item record is automatically created when an issue of that serial component is received through Serials Check-In.

Check the **Sequence New Items at Top** check box if you want newly-created item records to be placed at the top of the item sequence in the staff modules.

Result: If this check box is not selected, by default, the item record is placed at the bottom of the item sequence in the staff modules.

### Item Barcodes

---

Click the **Check for Duplicate Item Barcodes** check box if you want the system to determine whether a barcode that you are assigning to an item record is currently associated with another item.

### Self Check

---

The Magnetic Media and Sensitize check box options set item record level flags for interfacing with third-party self-check machines for item check in, check out, and renewal transactions. These are used for magnetic media and sensitize alerts.

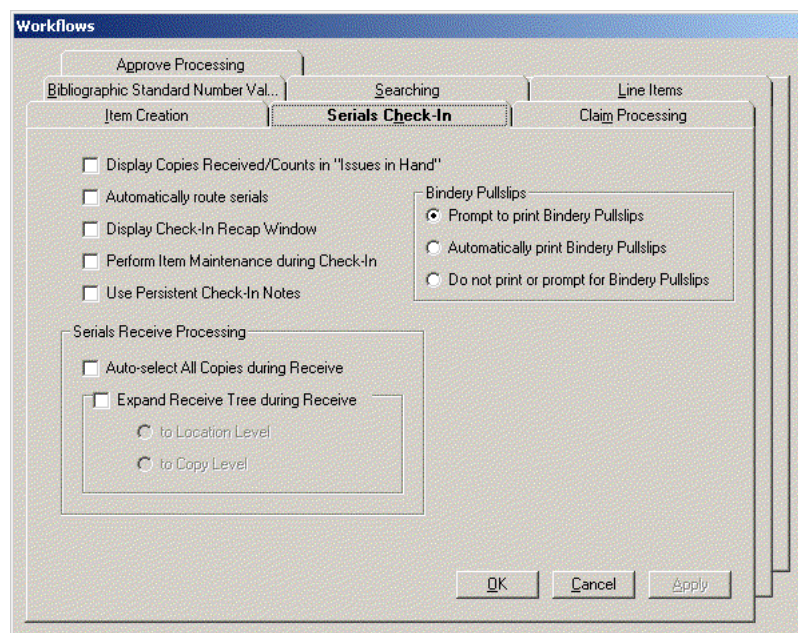
On the **Item Creation** tab (see [Figure 19-6](#)) indicate your default preference for these options when creating item records. When the check box is selected for these options, this sets the flag for Y (Yes) in the database. When unselected, the value is set to N (No) in the database.



Also refer to the *Voyager Interface to Self Check Modules Using 3M SIP User's Guide* for more information regarding the Magnetic Media and Sensitize flags.

## Serials Check-In Tab

The **Serials Check-In** tab ([Figure 19-7](#)) helps you create efficient workflows for your serials processing. Click the **Serials Check-In** tab to open it.



**Figure 19-7. Workflows dialog box - Serials Check-In tab**

Check the **Display Copies Received/Counts in Issues in Hand** check box if you want to see the number of copies that have been received for each issue listed in the **Issues in Hand** list. If this check box is selected, the number of received copies out of the number of ordered copies displays for each issue in the **Issues in Hand** list.

The following is an example of an issue in the **Issues in Hand** list with the enumeration/chronology information and the copies received/copies order information displayed

v.39, no. 4 (Apr. 2000) (1/3).



If you check the **Automatically route serials** check box, the **Route Serial Issue** dialog box does not open when an issue is received. Rather, the next unused routing list is automatically printed.

To have a **Recap** workspace open after receiving an issue, check the **Display Check In Recap Window** check box. This window summarizes the events of receiving process including the issue received, the next expected issue, the ability to change the date for the next expected issue, and so on. If you would rather stream-line the check-in process and not open the **Recap** workspace, do not select this check box.

Normally, in order to stream-line the check-in process, after the **Receive** button is clicked, the check-in process continues either to the **Recap** workspace (if enabled) or back to the **Receive/Mark** dialog box, where you can select another issue to receive.

However, if you want to perform item maintenance before proceeding on to the **Recap** workspace or the **Receive/Mark** dialog box, you can click the **Perform Item Maintenance during Check-In** check box. If this check box is selected, the check-in process does not automatically proceed to the **Recap** workspace or the **Receive/Mark** dialog box after you click the **Receive** button. Rather, a **Continue** button appears beside the **Receive** button.

After you perform your item maintenance, you can then continue the check-in process by clicking this **Continue** button.

Check the **Use Persistent Check-In Notes** check box if you want a note for a component to remain visible throughout the Check-In process. Such a note remains visible until you click the **Close** button on the **Check-In Note** dialog box or until you click the **Start Over** button.

If you do not select the **Use Persistent Check-In Notes** check box, a standard **Check-In Note** dialog box opens when a component is selected for Check-In. Unlike the persistent check-in note, a standard check-in note must be closed in order for you to continue with the check-in process.

**NOTE:**

A check-in note is not editable from the persistent **Check-In Note** dialog box. If you want to edit the check-in note, you must click the **Note** button to open the standard **Check-In Note** dialog box.

## Serials Receive Processing

---

Check the **Auto-select All Copies during Receive** check box to have all copies for all locations for the selected component automatically marked to be received when you click the **Accept** button on the **Serials Check-In** workspace. This feature eliminates the need to select each copy for each location to receive all copies of an issue.

Check the **Expand Receive Tree during Receive** check box if you want the receive tree (in other words, the item information hierarchy) automatically expanded to a particular level of information when the **Accept** button is clicked on the **Serials Check-In** workspace. After selecting this check box, you must then specify which level of item information you want the receive tree expanded to: the Location level or the Copy level.

Click the **to Location Level** radio button if you want the receive tree automatically expanded to the second level of the tree to show the locations for each issue. Click the **to Copy Level** radio button if you want the receive tree automatically expanded to the third level of the tree to show each copy for each location.

### NOTE:

Choosing to expand the tree to the Copy Level might be more useful when checking in an issue because the Call Number can only be seen at the Copy Level.

## Bindery Pullslips

---

A user can select only one of the following options.

- **Prompt to print Bindery Pullslips.** When checking-in an issue of the component, the operator receives a prompt to print the Bindery Pullslip because the bind-on date has passed and issues can be pulled for a volume created in Bindery Maintenance.
- **Automatically print Bindery Pullslips.** When checking-in an issue of the component, the Bindery Pullslip automatically prints if the bind-on date has passed and issues can be pulled for a volume created in Bindery Maintenance.
- **Do not print or prompt for Bindery Pullslip.** When checking-in an issue, there is no prompting or automatic printing of the Bindery Pullslip.

The default setting is Prompt to print Bindery Pullslips.

### Automatic Prompt to Print the Pullslip

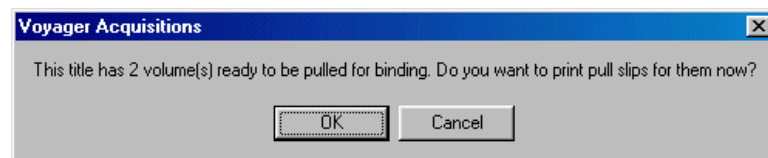
When the **Prompt to print Bindery Pullslips** workflow option is selected the serials check-in operator receives the prompt (or the Pullslip prints) if the following conditions are met.

- The bind-on date for the volume is earlier than the system date (current date)
- The volume does not have an item record

The following is an example of how this would work.

Our volume consists of 12 issues of a monthly periodical for the year 2001. The Bind-on date for this volume is June 1, 2002.

When the serials check-in operator is checking-in an issue for this periodical (it doesn't matter which issue) and the current date is after June 1, 2002 a prompt box alerts the operator that there are volumes to be pulled for binding (see [Figure 19-8](#)).



---

**Figure 19-8. Bindery Pullslip prompt when checking-in an issue**

If the operator chooses cancel the box closes and they can continue with serials check-in.

If the operator chooses **OK**, then the **Bindery Pullslip** dialog box opens (see [Figure 19-9](#)).

Data Type	Data Value
Call Number	RC1200 .J66
Enumeration	v. 1, no. 1 -- v. 1, no. 12
Chronology	(1999 Jan. -- 1999 Dec.)
Year	1999
Caption	
Free Text	
Bind On Date	12/21/1999
Issues To Bind	12
Issue No. 1	v. 1, no. 1 (1999 Jan.)
Issue No. 2	v. 1, no. 2 (1999 Feb.)
Issue No. 3	v. 1, no. 3 (1999 Mar.)

**Figure 19-9. Bindery Pullslip dialog box**

At this point the operator can print the Bindery Pullslip.

### Automatic Printing of Bindery Pullslips

When the **Automatically print Bindery Pullslips** workflow option is selected and the conditions described above are met, then when the operator checks-in an issue the Bindery Pullslips for each volume are printed without prompting the user.

The system uses the default printer defined for the operators computer.

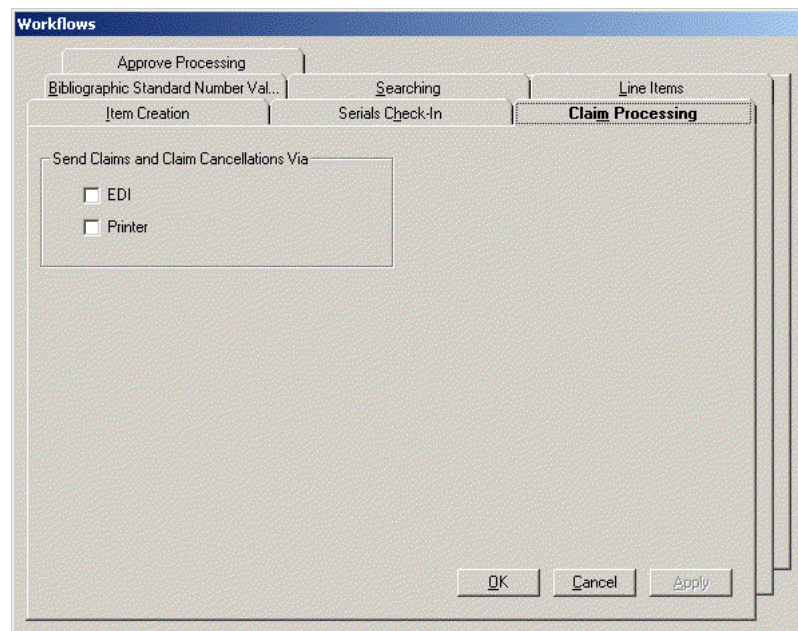
#### NOTE:

If an item record is not created when the issues are pulled for binding, Automatic prompt continues to prompt to print the pullslip and Automatic print continues to print it whenever another issue is received. It is suggested that when issues are pulled for binding the item record should be created, see [Item Record Creation and Maintenance](#) on [page 10-1](#).

---

## Claim Processing Tab

The **Claim Processing** tab ([Figure 19-10](#)) allows you to specify the actions to be taken when claim and claim cancellations are generated. Click the **Claim Processing** tab to open it.



**Figure 19-10. Workflows dialog box - Claim Processing tab**

Check in the **EDI** check box to send claims and claim cancellations to your vendor through EDI when you generate a claim from the **Claims** List, the check box of the same name is selected on the **Generate Claim** dialog box that opens. This is a time saving option.

**NOTE:**

The **EDI** check box on the **Generate Claim** dialog box is only available if the vendor specified in the claim and the location from which you have generated the claim match the Vendor and Library Location of an existing EDI connection profile. If there are no matches, the **EDI** check box is not available. See [EDI Connection Profiles](#) on [page 4-36](#) for information about EDI connection profiles.

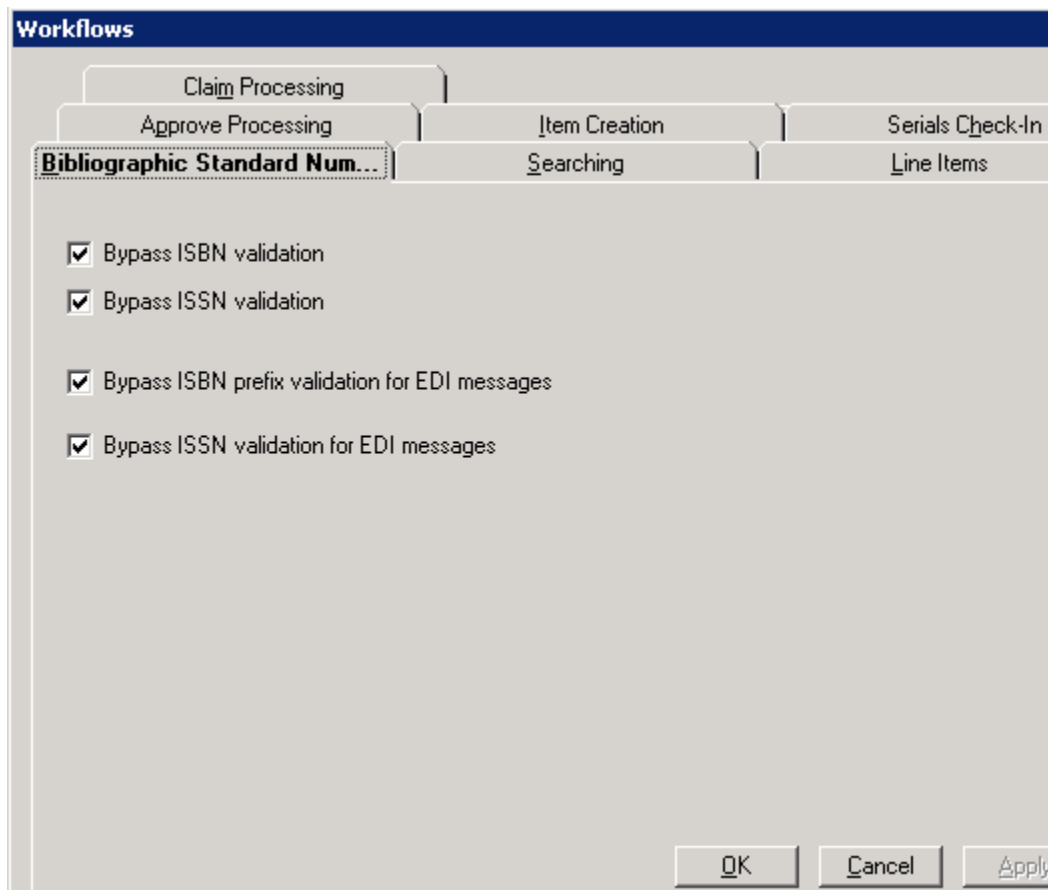
Select the **Printer** check box to send claims and claim cancellations to the printer when you generate a claim from the **Claims** List, the check box of the same name is selected on the **Generate Claim** dialog box. This is a time saving option.

## Bibliographic Standard Number Validation (ISBN/ISSN)

---

The **Bibliographic Standard Number Validation** tab ([Figure 19-11](#)) allows you to select options to turn on or off the validation of fields containing ISBNs and ISSNs. Click the **Bibliographic Standard Number Validation** tab to open it.

---



---

**Figure 19-11. Bibliographic Standard Number Validation tab**

### Bypass ISBN validation

---

Select the **Bypass ISBN validation** option to prevent the validation of the following fields when a bibliographic record is saved to the database.

- 020†a
- 024\$a with first indicator of 3

If this option is not selected, validation occurs when a record is saved to insure compliance with the ISBN format.

### **Bypass ISSN validation**

---

Select the **Bypass ISSN validation** option to prevent the validation of the 022†a when a bibliographic record is saved to the database.

If this option is not selected, validation occurs when a record is saved to insure compliance with the ISSN format

### **Bypass ISBN prefix validation for EDI messages**

---

Select the **Bypass ISBN prefix validation for EDI messages** option to prevent the validation of the following fields when they are formatted for EDI messages.

- 020†a
- 024\$a with a first indicator of 3

If this option is not selected, validation occurs when an EDI message is created.

### **Bypass ISSN validation for EDI messages**

---

Select the **Bypass ISSN validation for EDI messages** option to prevent the validation of the 022†a when it is formatted for an EDI message.

If this option is not selected, validation occurs when a record is saved to insure compliance with the ISSN format.





## Index

---

### Symbols

- ! (exclamation point), [2-15](#)
- ? (question mark), [2-15](#)
- \* (asterisk), [2-15](#)
- # of Copies field, [6-51](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
  - Line Item Copies/Funds tab, [17-10](#)
- % (percent sign), [2-15](#)
- % field
  - Extended Fund Allocation section
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
- % to Increase Commitments field, [16-12](#)
- + (plus sign), [2-15](#)

---

### Numerics

- 007 control field
  - position 01, [2-71](#)
- 008 control field
  - position 06, [2-74](#)
  - position 07-10, [2-71](#)
  - position 15-17, [2-73](#)
  - position 35-37, [2-70](#)

---

### A

- About this document, [xxi](#)
- Accept button, [9-9](#)
- accessing
  - item record from line item, [6-63](#)
  - MARC bibliographic record in acquisitions, [13-4](#)
  - MARC holdings, [13-12](#)
  - Search dialog box, [2-10](#)
  - Serials Check-In work space, [9-3](#)
  - Serials History work space, [9-28](#)
  - Session Defaults, [17-2](#)
  - Session Preferences, [18-2](#)

- Workflows, [19-2](#)
- accessing search history, [2-52](#)
- Account field, [6-6](#), [12-6](#)
  - Change Vendor dialog box, [6-101](#), [6-102](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Invoice tab, [17-14](#)
    - Purchase Order tab, [17-5](#)
- Account Info tab, [4-25](#)
- Account Name field, [4-10](#), [4-25](#)
- Account Number field, [4-10](#), [4-25](#)
- Account Status field, [4-11](#), [4-25](#)
- Accounts tab, [4-9](#), [4-27](#), [4-28](#)
- acqbib.cfg file, [6-18](#), [6-19](#)
  - customizing, [6-19](#)
- acqjob 1
  - order claim/cancel processing, [11-4](#), [11-6](#)
- acqjob 5
  - fix exchange rates, [3-12](#)
- acqjob.log file, [11-5](#), [11-7](#), [11-9](#), [11-10](#)
- Acquisitions
  - batch job
    - fiscal period close, [16-33](#)
    - fix exchange rates, [3-12](#)
    - order claim/cancel processing, [11-4](#), [11-6](#)
  - builder searching, [2-94](#)
  - keyword searching, [2-81](#)
  - logging in, [1-2](#)
  - menu items, [1-12](#)
  - non-keyword searching, [2-88](#)
  - policy definitions, [5-4](#)
  - searching, [2-1](#), [2-81](#)
  - searching examples, [2-81](#)
  - toolbar, [1-8](#)
  - work space, [1-5](#)
- Add After button, [8-18](#), [9-18](#)
- Add Before button, [8-18](#), [9-18](#)
- Add Bib/Item dialog box, [6-18](#)
- Add button, [6-90](#)
- Add Fund button, [6-57](#)
- Add Issue button, [8-15](#), [8-17](#), [9-8](#), [9-18](#)
- Add Ledgers button, [16-17](#)
- Add Line (Bib Import) button, [6-24](#)
- Add Line (Bib Search) button, [6-16](#)
- Add Line (Template) button, [6-18](#)
- Add Line from Order button, [12-18](#)
- Add Location button, [8-26](#)
- Add New Issue Before/After dialog box, [8-17](#)
- Add New Issue dialog box, [8-15](#), [9-18](#)
- Add Patron button, [8-27](#)
- Add Vendor Account dialog box, [4-10](#), [4-24](#)

- Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-45](#), [6-47](#), [6-90](#), [12-29](#), [12-32](#)
- Add/Edit Fund Allocation dialog box, [6-55](#), [6-56](#), [6-115](#), [6-117](#)
- adding
  - copies and funds to a line item, [6-52](#)
  - currency, [3-7](#)
  - extended fund allocation, [6-57](#)
  - extra issue, [8-17](#)
  - fund
    - extended fund allocation, [6-115](#)
  - issue, [8-14](#)
    - to volume, [14-33](#)
  - line item
    - by bibliographic ID, [6-25](#)
    - by bibliographic searching, [6-16](#)
    - by creating a brief bibliographic record, [6-18](#)
    - by importing a bibliographic record, [6-21](#)
    - by searching a remote database, [6-17](#)
    - to invoice, [12-18](#)
  - line item information, [6-26](#)
  - money to a fund, [5-47](#)
  - money to fund, [5-36](#)
  - price adjustment to invoice, [12-28](#)
  - price adjustment to purchase order, [6-89](#)
  - routing list
    - location, [8-26](#)
    - notes, [8-30](#), [8-35](#)
    - patron, [8-27](#)
  - serial issue, [9-18](#)
  - vendor account, [4-23](#)
  - vendor address, [4-19](#)
  - vendor phone number, [4-21](#)
- additional notes for line item, [6-27](#)
- Address # radio button, [4-6](#), [4-20](#)
- Address field
  - Addresses/Phones tab, [4-7](#), [4-20](#)
  - Bank Information tab, [4-13](#), [4-31](#)
- Addresses button, [4-19](#)
- Addresses/Phones tab, [4-19](#)
  - Vendor dialog box, [4-6](#)
- Adjust button, [6-89](#), [12-28](#)
- Adjusted Price field, [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-45](#), [6-46](#)
- adjusting
  - fund begin/end dates after running fpc, [16-32](#)
  - new volumes, [14-26](#)
- Adjustment Details section
  - Price tab, [6-48](#)
- Adjustment field, [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-46](#)
- Adjustments Subtotal field, [6-89](#)
- Agent subscription identifier, [6-66](#)
- allocated fund, [5-27](#)
- allocation
  - fund, [5-32](#)
- Allocation Change radio button, [5-48](#)
- alternative chronology, [8-63](#)
- alternative enumeration, [8-63](#)
- Amount field, [12-13](#)
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
  - Extended Fund Allocation section
    - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-48](#)
  - incoming message, [15-19](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-46](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
- Append button, [12-21](#)
- Application Method field, [6-86](#), [6-90](#), [12-29](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-46](#)
- Apply rule during next run of Fiscal Period Close check box, [16-10](#), [16-21](#)
- applying
  - item statistical category, [10-26](#)
  - item status, [10-25](#)
- approval line item type, [6-67](#)
- approval purchase order type, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
- Approve button, [6-95](#), [12-34](#)
- Approve Invoice dialog box, [12-34](#), [19-10](#)
- Approve Order dialog box, [6-96](#), [19-9](#)
- approve processing
  - session workflows, [19-8](#)
- Approve Processing tab
  - Workflows dialog box, [19-8](#)
- approved line item data
  - edit, [6-113](#)
- approved line items
  - change bibliographic record links, [6-40](#)
- approved purchase order
  - edit line item data, [6-108](#)
- approving
  - invoice, [12-33](#)
  - purchase order, [6-94](#)
- assigning
  - rollover rule to ledger, [16-13](#)
- asterisk (\*), [2-15](#)
- Attached Publications tab, [8-63](#)
- attached publications tab, [8-81](#)
- Attention field, [4-7](#), [4-20](#)
- audience
  - of this document, [xxi](#)

Auth/Ref additional references, [2-38](#)  
Author field, [6-39](#)  
Authority button, [2-40](#)  
Authority records  
    Select one or more authority records dialog box, [2-44](#)  
Authorized additional references, [2-38](#), [2-40](#)  
automatic printing bindery pullslips, [19-18](#)  
Automatic Renewal check box, [6-68](#)  
Automatic truncation for non keyword searches check box  
    Workflows dialog box  
        Searching tab, [19-5](#)  
Automatically create at receive check box  
    Workflows dialog box  
        Item Creation tab, [19-11](#), [19-12](#)  
Automatically print Bindery Pullslips  
    Workflows dialog box  
        Serials Check-In tab, [19-16](#)  
Automatically route serials check box  
    Workflows dialog box  
        Serials Check-In tab, [19-15](#)  
Auto-select All Copies during Receive check box  
    Workflows dialog box  
        Line Items tab, [19-7](#)  
        Serials Check-In tab, [19-16](#)  
Available Locations list box, [5-13](#)  
Available Locations section  
    Voyager Connection Options dialog box, [2-55](#)

---

## B

Bank Account field, [4-13](#), [4-31](#)  
Bank Information tab, [4-12](#)  
Bank Name field, [4-13](#), [4-31](#)  
Barcode field  
    Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)  
Barcodes dialog box, [10-22](#)  
Base Currency, [3-6](#)  
Base Currency button, [6-13](#), [12-14](#)  
basic subscription component, [8-4](#)  
begin date, [5-28](#)  
Begin Date field  
    Ledger window (fund), [5-31](#), [5-44](#)  
Bib Record ID field, [6-39](#)  
Bib Record tab, [6-39](#)  
    Author field, [6-39](#)  
    Bib Record ID, [6-39](#)

    Date, [6-39](#)  
    Edition, [6-39](#)  
    GPO Item Number field, [6-39](#)  
    ISBN field, [6-39](#)  
    ISSN field, [6-39](#)  
    LCCN, [6-39](#)  
    Line Item dialog box, [6-38](#)  
        standard numbers, [6-39](#)  
    Place, [6-39](#)  
    Publication Number field, [6-39](#)  
    Publisher, [6-39](#)  
    Series, [6-39](#)  
    Standard Technical Report Number, [6-40](#)  
    System No., [6-39](#)  
    Title field, [6-39](#)  
bibliographic control (title changes), [8-57](#)  
bibliographic default search, [19-5](#)  
bibliographic record links  
    change, [6-38](#), [6-40](#)  
bibliographic record search  
    builder search, [2-50](#)  
bibliographic record searches, [2-10](#)  
bibliographic records  
    de-duplication, [6-22](#)  
bibliographic searching  
    Workflows dialog box  
        Searching tab, [19-5](#)  
Bibs column  
    Headings List, [2-40](#)  
Bill To field  
    New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)  
    Session Defaults dialog box  
        Invoice tab, [17-13](#)  
Bind button, [14-12](#), [14-33](#)  
Binder's title number field, [14-17](#)  
bindery copy, [14-3](#)  
Bindery Copy Data, [14-3](#)  
    Binding frequency, [14-17](#)  
    Call number format, [14-17](#)  
    Cloth color field, [14-17](#)  
    Print color field, [14-17](#)  
    Spine label format, [14-17](#)  
Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-16](#), [14-42](#), [14-44](#)  
Bindery instructions field, [14-17](#)  
bindery maintenance, [14-1](#)  
    activities, [14-2](#)  
    adjusting new volumes, [14-26](#)  
    Create New Volumes button, [14-23](#), [14-28](#)  
    creating item record, [14-51](#)  
    creating new volumes, [14-22](#)  
    definitions, [14-2](#)

- bindery copy, [14-3](#)
  - bindery copy data, [14-3](#)
  - issue, [14-2](#)
  - pullslip, [14-3](#)
  - volume, [14-2](#)
- editing volumes, [14-29](#)
- security, [14-21](#)
- volume management, [14-20](#)
- workflow, [14-52](#)
- Bindery Maintenance button, [14-4](#)
- Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-10](#), [14-29](#)
  - fields and buttons, [14-9](#)
- bindery notes
  - printing, [14-43](#)
- Bindery Notes button, [14-10](#), [14-16](#), [14-19](#), [14-42](#), [14-44](#)
- Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-17](#), [14-45](#)
- Bindery Pullslips
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Serials Check-In tab, [19-16](#)
- bindery pullslips
  - automatic printing, [19-18](#)
  - prompt to print, [19-17](#)
- Binding frequency field, [14-17](#)
- Bind-on Date field, [14-10](#), [14-30](#)
- Bind-on date interval field, [14-15](#), [14-24](#)
- blanket order line item type, [6-67](#)
- blanket standing order line item type, [8-5](#)
- blocks
  - approving invoice, [12-33](#)
  - purchase order
    - canceling, [6-103](#)
    - completing, [6-103](#)
    - deleting, [6-117](#)
- [Book] stanza, [6-20](#)
- Boolean button, [2-26](#)
- Boolean keyword search, [2-81](#), [2-82](#)
- boolean operator, [2-4](#)
- Boolean operators, [2-24](#)
- Boolean radio button, [2-13](#)
- Browse Headings List dialog box, [2-23](#), [2-89](#)
- Browse radio button, [2-19](#)
- browse search, [2-22](#), [2-48](#)
- builder search
  - deleting search terms, [2-26](#)
  - editing search terms, [2-26](#)
- builder searching, [2-24](#), [2-50](#)
  - Acquisitions, [2-94](#)
- Builder tab, [2-24](#), [2-50](#)
- button
  - Accept, [9-9](#)
- Add, [6-90](#)
- Add After, [8-18](#), [9-18](#)
- Add Before, [8-18](#), [9-18](#)
- Add Fund, [6-57](#)
- Add Issue, [8-15](#), [8-17](#), [9-8](#), [9-18](#)
- Add Ledgers, [16-17](#)
- Add Line (Bib Import), [6-24](#)
- Add Line (Bib Search), [6-16](#)
- Add Line (Template), [6-18](#)
- Add Line from Order, [12-18](#)
- Add Location, [8-26](#)
- Add Patron, [8-27](#)
- Addresses, [4-19](#)
- Adjust, [6-89](#), [12-28](#)
- Append, [12-21](#)
- Approve, [6-95](#), [12-34](#)
- Authority, [2-40](#)
- Base Currency, [6-13](#), [12-14](#)
- Bind, [14-12](#), [14-33](#)
- Bindery Maintenance, [14-4](#)
- Bindery Notes, [14-10](#), [14-16](#), [14-19](#), [14-42](#), [14-44](#)
- Boolean, [2-26](#)
- Cancel Approve, [6-98](#)
- Cancel Claim, [11-37](#)
  - Claimed Issues tab, [11-26](#)
- Cancel New, [5-11](#)
- Change Bib Record, [6-40](#)
- Change Date, [8-17](#), [9-16](#)
- Change Issue, [8-18](#), [9-8](#), [9-19](#)
- Change Vendor, [6-99](#)
- Clear Rules, [16-13](#), [16-18](#)
- Clear Workspace, [1-10](#)
- Close Pattern, [8-22](#), [8-43](#)
- Collapse, [9-37](#), [9-41](#), [14-11](#), [14-48](#)
- Combine/Omit, [8-12](#)
- Connect, [2-57](#)
- Continue, [9-16](#)
- Continue Approve, [6-98](#)
- Create, [8-25](#)
- Create New Volumes, [14-10](#), [14-15](#), [14-22](#), [14-23](#), [14-24](#), [14-28](#)
- Currency, [3-8](#), [3-10](#)
- Default Tab, [2-16](#), [2-20](#), [2-26](#)
- Defaults, [17-2](#)
- Delete Recipient, [8-35](#)
- Delete Volume, [14-10](#), [14-39](#)
- Detailed Line Item, [6-27](#), [12-26](#)
- Details, [7-10](#), [7-18](#), [10-7](#)
- Display in OPAC, [9-44](#)
- Display Line Items, [12-19](#)

- Display Orders, [12-23](#)
- Display Selected Intended Locations, [17-11](#)
- Edit Issue, [9-35](#)
- Extended Fund Allocation, [6-53](#), [6-115](#)
- Find Line Items with Fund Warnings, [5-55](#)
- folder
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-88](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-39](#)
- Generate Cancel
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-26](#)
- Generate Claim
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-25](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-25](#)
- Generate Return
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-26](#)
- Help, [1-10](#)
- History, [9-24](#), [9-29](#)
- Holdings, [13-14](#)
- Invoice, [11-45](#)
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-26](#)
  - Related Invoices tab, [6-103](#)
- Item, [9-12](#)
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11](#), [14-19](#), [14-52](#)
  - Copy Status tab, [6-63](#), [10-7](#)
  - Receipt History tab, [9-49](#)
  - Receive/Mark dialog box, [7-8](#), [10-5](#)
- Item History, [10-28](#)
- Item Note, [10-26](#)
- Item Statistical Category, [10-25](#)
- Item Status, [10-24](#)
- Limit, [2-16](#), [2-21](#), [2-27](#), [2-74](#)
- Load, [15-14](#)
- Maintenance, [9-16](#), [9-26](#)
- MARC, [2-82](#), [8-64](#), [12-23](#)
  - Bib Record tab, [13-5](#)
  - Find Purchase Order dialog box, [13-6](#)
  - Link To Holdings dialog box, [13-12](#)
  - Link To Holdings list box, [6-60](#)
  - purchase order, [13-4](#)
  - Select Bib Records for Import dialog box, [13-11](#)
  - Titles Index dialog box, [13-7](#)
- Mark, [7-17](#), [7-20](#)
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-17](#)
- New EDI Connection Profile, [4-43](#)
- New Fund, [5-10](#), [5-42](#)
- New Item, [1-8](#), [6-12](#), [12-12](#)
- New Ledger, [5-20](#)
- New Publication Pattern, [8-59](#)
- New Purchase Order, [6-12](#)
- New Rollover Rule, [16-8](#)
- New Transaction, [5-47](#)
- New Vendor, [4-17](#)
- Note
  - Serials Check-In work space, [9-25](#)
- Order, [11-43](#)
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-26](#)
- Override and Approve, [5-55](#)
- Phones, [4-19](#), [4-21](#)
- Print
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-44](#)
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-45](#)
  - Duplicate Order Information on PO dialog box, [6-98](#)
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-27](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-27](#)
- Print Label, [10-29](#)
- Print Pullslip, [14-11](#), [14-17](#), [14-45](#)
- Problems, [2-104](#)
- Process EDI Messages, [15-2](#)
- Quick Check-In, [9-9](#)
- Receive, [9-11](#)
  - Receive/Mark tab, [10-9](#)
- Receive a file, [15-5](#), [15-7](#)
- Re-Link, [6-60](#)
- Relink, [15-17](#)
- Remote, [2-16](#), [2-21](#), [2-27](#), [2-53](#), [2-56](#)
- Remove
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-92](#)
  - Invoice Fees dialog box, [12-32](#)
- Remove Fund, [6-117](#)
- Remove Issue, [8-19](#)
- Remove Issue(s), [9-8](#), [9-20](#)
- Remove Ledger(s), [16-18](#)
- Save and New Rule, [16-13](#), [16-18](#)
- Save Settings, [2-27](#)
- Save Volume, [14-10](#), [14-25](#), [14-28](#), [14-32](#)
- Search, [1-9](#)
- Search Invoices, [12-2](#)
- Select All for, [15-27](#)
- Select New Intended Locations, [17-12](#)
- Send Record To, [13-16](#), [13-17](#)
- Serials Check-In, [9-3](#)
- Serials History, [9-28](#)
- Set Defaults, [1-9](#)
- Set Preferences, [1-9](#), [18-2](#)
- Set Workflows, [1-10](#), [19-2](#)

- Show Detail, [15-15](#)
- Show Me New Volumes, [14-15](#), [14-24](#), [14-26](#)
- Show Record, [15-16](#)
- Show Results, [2-60](#)
- Start Prediction, [8-10](#)
- Status, [2-61](#)
- Stop, [2-29](#), [2-35](#), [2-39](#)
- Stop Search, [2-60](#)
- Subscription Maintenance, [8-39](#), [8-45](#)
- Subscription Pattern, [6-68](#), [6-70](#)
- Unbind, [14-12](#), [14-35](#)
- Unmark
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-25](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-25](#)
- Unreceive, [6-63](#), [7-12](#)
- Update Claim, [11-35](#)
  - ClaimedIssues tab, [11-26](#)
- View Fund, [6-61](#)
- View Ledgers, [16-14](#)
- View Order
  - Serials Check-In work space, [9-23](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance search work space, [2-101](#)

bypassing prediction, [8-14](#)

---

## C

- Call # field
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-21](#)
- Call Number field
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, [8-3](#)
- Call number format field, [14-17](#)
- call number searching, [2-23](#)
- cancel
  - generating, [11-39](#)
- Cancel (mark reason), [6-80](#)
- Cancel After (days) field, [4-12](#), [4-30](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Line Item tab, [17-7](#)
    - Purchase Order tab, [17-6](#)
    - Vendor tab, [17-15](#)
- Cancel After days interval, [11-5](#)
- Cancel After field
  - Delivery Options tab, [6-71](#)
- Cancel Approve button, [6-98](#)
- Cancel Claim button, [11-37](#)
  - Claimed Issues tab, [11-26](#)
- Cancel Claim dialog box, [11-38](#)

- cancel expectation, [11-37](#)
- cancel mark reason, [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-39](#)
- Cancel New button, [5-11](#)
- canceling
  - claim, [11-36](#)
    - cancel expectation, [11-37](#)
    - dummy receive, [11-36](#)
  - purchase order, [6-103](#)
    - blocks, [6-103](#)
- canceling claim
  - Claimed Issues tab, [11-37](#)
- Cannot Delete Order dialog box, [6-118](#)
- Caption field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11](#), [14-30](#), [14-32](#)
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
  - Publication Pattern dialog box, [8-48](#)
  - Publication Pattern window, [8-62](#)
- cash balance
  - initial allocation option, [16-11](#)
- cat in the acq, [13-2](#)
- cataloging in acquisitions
  - requirements, [13-2](#)
- Cataloging in Acquisitions (Cat in Acq) feature, [2-31](#), [2-37](#)
- Category field, [8-7](#), [8-50](#), [8-85](#)
- Change Bib Record button, [6-40](#)
- change bibliographic record links, [6-38](#), [6-40](#)
- change bibliographic record links on approved line items, [6-40](#)
- Change Date button, [8-17](#), [9-16](#)
- Change Enumeration/Chronology dialog box, [8-18](#), [9-19](#), [9-35](#)
- Change Issue button, [8-18](#), [9-8](#), [9-19](#)
- Change Vendor button, [6-99](#)
- Change Vendor dialog box, [6-101](#)
- changing
  - chronology serial issue, [9-19](#)
  - component subscription pattern, [8-45](#)
  - enumeration serial issue, [9-19](#)
  - enumeration/chronology of issue, [8-18](#)
  - expected date of issue, [8-17](#)
  - fund allocation, [5-47](#)
  - intended location for a single copy, [6-114](#)
  - intended location for all copies, [6-114](#)
  - ledger/fund data, [6-114](#)
  - list price, [6-113](#)
  - priority of recipient
    - routing list, [8-34](#)
  - sequence of line item information, [12-25](#)
  - vendor on purchase order, [6-99](#)

- Character Set Mapping
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Searching tab, 19-5
- Charge Type field, 6-45, 6-86, 6-90, 12-29
- check box
  - Apply rule during next run of Fiscal Period Close, 16-10, 16-21
  - Approve Invoices, 12-33
  - Automatic Renewal, 6-68
  - Check for Duplicates, 6-96
  - Check-In Title, 8-7
  - Create Items, 8-51, 8-86
    - Component Details tab, 8-8
  - Delete from file after import, 6-23
  - Delete Invoices, 12-39
  - Deposit, 4-11, 4-25
  - Don't Claim, 8-51, 8-86
    - Component Details tab, 8-7
    - Delivery Options tab, 6-71
  - Don't Claim Issue, 8-17
- EDI
  - Cancel Claim dialog box, 11-38
  - Generate Claim dialog box, 11-34
- Enable Quick Line Items Upon Add, 6-31
- Expend Only
  - Ledger window (fund), 5-44
- Include Already Invoiced Line Items, 12-20
- Invoice Against Any Vendor, 12-19
- IV (invoice/credit memo), 4-41
- One fund covers all, 6-86, 6-91, 12-31
- OPAC display of Temp Records, 6-23
- Order/Claim/Pay Location, 12-13
- Over Commit Allowed, 5-15, 5-34
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, 5-23
  - Override Rules tab, 5-45
- Over Expend Allowed, 5-15, 5-34
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, 5-24
  - Override Rules tab, 5-46
- PO (purchase order), 4-41
- Postal Mail
  - Generate Claim dialog box, 11-34
- Print Notes on Routing List, 8-30
- Print Piece Label, 1-17
- Print Purchase Order, 6-96
- Print Spine Label, 1-17
- Print Voucher/Check Request, 12-35
- Printer, 11-38
- Receive on Approve, 6-96, 12-35
- Retain search Limits between searches, 2-76
- Rush
  - Delivery Options tab, 6-71
- SC (serial claim), 4-41
- SR (serial claim response), 4-41
- Transmit Order via EDI, 6-96
- Usage, 15-10
- Use Vendor Account Number, 4-40, 4-44
- XM, 4-42, 4-44
- Check for Duplicate check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Approve Processing tab, 19-10
- Check for Duplicate Item Barcodes check box
  - Session Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, 19-13
- Check for Duplicates check box, 6-96
- Check Number field, 12-16
- Check-In Note dialog box, 9-7, 9-25, 19-15
- Check-In tab, 14-4
- Check-In Title check box, 8-7
- Check-In Title radio button
  - Subscription Maintenance screen, 2-100
- checking
  - new ledgers/funds, 16-31
  - open order rollover, 16-31
- checking in
  - serial issue, 9-4
- choosing
  - fund for price adjustment, 12-30
- Chron field
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-23
- chronology, 8-49
  - publication pattern, 8-63
- Chronology field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-11, 14-30, 14-31
  - Start Prediction dialog box, 8-10
- City field
  - Addresses/Phones tab, 4-7, 4-13, 4-21
  - Bank Information tab, 4-31
- claim
  - canceling, 11-36
  - canceling from Claimed Issues tab, 11-37
  - generating from the Claimed Issues tab, 11-32, 11-35
  - generating from the Claimed Line Items tab, 11-32, 11-35
  - generating from the problems list, 11-31
  - modifying claim information, 8-16
  - processing, 11-10
  - searching, 2-108
  - updating, 11-34
- Claim (mark reason), 6-80
- Claim Count, 11-9



- Claim Count field, [4-12](#), [4-29](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
  - Vendor tab, [17-16](#)
- Claim Date field
  - Generate Claim dialog box, [11-33](#)
  - Update Claim dialog box, [11-8](#), [11-36](#)
- claim interval, [8-7](#), [8-11](#), [11-7](#), [11-9](#), [11-10](#)
- Claim Interval (days) field, [8-50](#), [8-86](#)
  - Component Details tab, [8-7](#)
  - Delivery Options tab, [6-71](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Line Item tab, [17-7](#)
    - Purchase Order tab, [17-6](#)
    - Vendor tab, [17-16](#)
- Claim Interval option, [11-9](#)
- claim mark reason, [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-31](#)
- claim processing
  - session workflows, [19-18](#)
- Claim Processing tab, [19-19](#)
  - Workflows dialog box, [19-18](#)
- Claim Type field
  - Generate Claim dialog box, [11-33](#)
- Claimed Issues tab, [11-23](#), [11-37](#)
  - canceling claim, [11-37](#)
  - generating claim, [11-32](#), [11-35](#)
- claimed line items
  - processing from approved purchase order, [11-27](#)
- Claimed Line Items tab, [11-21](#)
  - generating claim, [11-32](#), [11-35](#)
- Claims History tab, [9-49](#), [11-15](#)
- Claims Interval (days) field, [4-12](#), [4-30](#)
- Claims tab, [6-81](#), [11-14](#)
- Claims work space, [2-108](#), [11-1](#), [11-12](#)
- Clear Rules button, [16-13](#), [16-18](#)
- Clear Workspace button, [1-10](#)
- Close Pattern button, [8-22](#), [8-43](#)
- Close Publication Pattern dialog box, [8-44](#)
- closing
  - publication pattern, [8-22](#), [8-39](#)
- Cloth color field, [14-17](#)
- Code (currency) field, [12-14](#)
- Code (vendor) field, [6-6](#), [12-6](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
- Code field, [6-101](#), [6-102](#)
- CODEN field, [6-39](#)
- Collapse button, [9-37](#), [9-41](#), [14-11](#), [14-48](#)
- collapsing
  - issues in a volume, [14-46](#)
  - serial issue, [9-36](#)
  - serial issues to MARC holdings records, [9-37](#)
- colors and fonts
  - session preferences, [18-4](#)
- Colors and Fonts tab, [18-4](#)
- Combine/Omit button, [8-12](#)
- combine/omit issue, [8-12](#)
- Combine/Omit Issues dialog box, [8-13](#)
- command line search, [2-16](#)
- command searching, [2-16](#)
- Comment column
  - Problems tab, [6-80](#)
- Comment field
  - Receive/Mark dialog box, [7-17](#), [7-20](#)
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-17](#)
- comments
  - about this document, [xxv](#)
- Comments field
  - Generate Claim dialog box, [11-33](#)
  - Update Claim dialog box, [11-36](#)
- Commit to Fund field
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-30](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Line Item Copies/Funds tab, [17-11](#)
- commitments
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab
    - Ledger dialog box (ledger), [5-23](#)
  - funds, [5-32](#)
  - line item
    - fiscal period close, [16-28](#)
  - Override Rules tab
    - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-45](#)
  - overview, [5-53](#)
- Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-14](#)
- completing
  - invoice, [12-37](#)
  - purchase order, [6-103](#)
    - blocks, [6-103](#)
- complex publication patterns, [8-71](#)
  - alternate chronology level, [8-75](#)
  - alternate enumeration level 1 and 2, [8-75](#)
  - chronology level 1 through 4, [8-75](#)
  - continuity for alternate enumeration level 1 and 2, [8-75](#)
  - continuity for enumeration 1 through 6, [8-74](#)
  - creating, [8-72](#)
  - deleting, [8-83](#)
  - editing, [8-78](#)
  - enumeration 1 through 6, [8-74](#)
  - enumeration format, [8-77](#)
    - alpha lowercase, [8-77](#)
    - alpha uppercase, [8-77](#)



- arabic, [8-77](#)
- enter manually, [8-77](#)
- ordinal number (English), [8-77](#)
- roman lowercase, [8-77](#)
- roman uppercase, [8-77](#)
- expected date, [8-74](#)
- interval, [8-74](#)
- issue cycle tab, [8-77](#)
- issues in the cycle, [8-73](#)
- component
  - changing subscription pattern, [8-45](#)
  - deleting, [8-45](#)
  - information, [14-5](#)
  - linking to publication pattern, [8-8](#)
- Component Details tab, [8-6](#), [8-8](#), [8-46](#)
- Component field
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-16](#)
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-6](#), [14-10](#)
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-17](#)
  - Close Publication Pattern dialog box, [8-44](#)
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-10](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance screen, [8-3](#)
- Component Name field, [8-6](#), [9-16](#)
- New Routing List window, [8-24](#)
- Serials Check-In Search work space, [9-7](#)
- Condition field
  - Claims screen, [2-109](#)
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, [2-103](#)
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, [2-113](#)
  - Find Purchase Order window, [2-4](#)
  - Problems work space, [2-106](#)
  - Process EDI Messages dialog box, [15-12](#), [15-25](#)
- configuration file
  - acqbib.cfg, [6-18](#), [6-19](#)
  - spinelabel.cfg, [1-15](#)
- Connect button, [2-57](#)
- Connection column
  - Voyager Connection Options dialog box, [2-55](#)
- considerations for multi-part orders, [8-54](#)
- continuation purchase order type, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
- Continue Approve button, [6-98](#)
- Continue button, [9-16](#)
- conventions used
  - in this document, [xxiv](#)
- Conversion Rate field
  - Currency Maintenance dialog box, [3-5](#)
  - Order tab, [6-76](#)
- Conversion Rate History, [3-6](#), [3-12](#)
- Conversion Rate tab, [3-4](#)
- convert non-predictive components to predictive components, [8-21](#)
- copies and funds
  - deleting line item, [6-59](#)
  - link to holdings, [6-59](#)
- Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-50](#), [6-52](#)
  - Extended Fund Allocation button, [6-51](#)
- Copies field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-6](#)
- Copies/Funds tab, [6-48](#), [6-61](#)
  - hierarchy, [6-58](#)
  - Ledger dialog box, [6-61](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-48](#), [6-49](#)
- copy and fund hierarchy, [6-58](#)
- Copy field
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- Copy ID field
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-16](#)
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-10](#)
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-17](#)
- Copy Number field, [6-55](#)
  - Extended Fund Allocation section
    - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
- Copy Status column
  - Problems tab, [6-80](#)
- Copy Status tab, [10-7](#)
  - hierarchy, [6-63](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-62](#)
- copying
  - EDI connection profile, [4-46](#)
  - publication pattern, [8-67](#)
  - purchase order, [6-93](#)
- Cost per copy field, [6-50](#)
- Country field
  - Addresses/Phones tab, [4-7](#), [4-13](#), [4-21](#)
  - Bank Information tab, [4-32](#)
- Country Name field
  - Currency Maintenance dialog box, [3-4](#)
- [Country] stanza, [6-20](#)
- Create button, [8-25](#)
- Create Items check box, [8-51](#), [8-86](#)
  - Component Details tab, [8-8](#)
- Create New Volume dialog box
  - fields and buttons, [14-14](#)
- Create New Volumes button, [14-10](#), [14-15](#), [14-22](#), [14-24](#), [14-28](#)
  - bindery maintenance work space, [14-23](#)
  - Create Volumes dialog box, [14-28](#)
- Create Volumes dialog box, [14-14](#), [14-22](#)
- creating
  - allocated fund, [5-42](#)

- EDI connection profile, 4-42
- invoice, 12-10
  - from purchase order, 6-120
- item record, 10-19, 12-40
  - from Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-51
  - from Receipt History tab, 9-48, 10-17
  - from Receive/Mark dialog box, 10-3
  - from Receive/Mark tab, 10-8
  - from serials check-in, 10-15
  - from Serials Check-In work space, 10-12
  - from the copy status tab, 10-7
- item records for monographic items, 10-1
- item records for serials, 10-11
- ledger, 5-19
- mark reason, 11-4
- new volumes, 14-22
- publication pattern
  - multi-part orders, 8-54
  - publisher and analyzed series, 8-56
  - simple subscriptions, 8-52
  - standing orders, 8-52
- purchase order, 6-2
- reporting fund, 5-42
- routing list, 8-24
- subscription component, 8-4, 8-6
- summary fund, 5-42
- vendor record, 4-16
- crediting
  - fund, 5-36
  - invoice, 12-28
  - pending purchase order, 6-7
  - purchase order, 6-103
- criteria
  - for marking line item cancel, 11-39
- currency
  - adding, 3-7
  - current, 3-3
  - editing, 3-10
  - ISO currency code standards, 3-7, 17-5, 17-14
- Currency button, 3-8, 3-10
- Currency Code field, 3-4
- Currency field, 4-19
  - Order tab, 6-76
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Invoice tab, 17-14
    - Purchase Order tab, 17-5
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-5
- currency maintenance, 3-2
- Currency Maintenance work space, 3-1, 3-2, 3-8, 3-10, 12-14
  - header information, 3-3

- Currency Name field, 3-4
- Current Conversion Rate, 3-5
- current currency, 3-3
- Current Currency list box, 3-9
- customizing
  - acqbib.cfg, 6-19

---

## D

- Data Type fields
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, 14-16
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, 14-17
- Data Value fields, 14-43
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, 14-16
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, 14-17
- Database Definitions work space, 2-53
- Database Name column
  - Voyager Connection Options dialog box, 2-55
- Date Expected field, 9-16
- Date field
  - Bib Record tab, 6-39
  - New Invoice dialog box, 12-12
- Date Marked column
  - Problems tab, 6-80
- Date of Report field, 11-36
- date search limit, 2-64, 2-67
- [Date] stanza, 2-70
- Day of the month Expected (1..31) field, 8-11
- Decimal Places field, 3-4
- de-duplication of bibliographic records, 6-22
- default
  - fund, 17-16
  - invoice, 17-12
  - ledger, 17-19
  - line item, 17-6
  - line item copies/funds, 17-8
  - purchase order, 17-4
  - session, 17-1
  - vendor, 17-14
- Default Item Status field
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, 19-11
- Default Item Type field, 8-8, 8-51, 8-86
- Default PO Type field, 4-11, 4-25
- default searches
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Searching tab, 19-5
- Default Tab button, 2-16, 2-20, 2-26

- Default Workspace
  - Session Preferences dialog box
    - List Bar tab, 18-6
- defaults
  - searching, 2-63
- Defaults button, 17-2
- defining
  - next fiscal period, 16-3
  - rollover rule, 16-7
- Delete from file after import check box, 6-23
- Delete Recipient button, 8-35
- Delete Volume button, 14-10, 14-39
- deleting
  - bank information, 4-32
  - EDI connection profile, 4-47
  - fund, 5-51
  - invoice, 12-38
    - fund information, 12-38
  - item record, 10-30
  - ledger, 5-25
  - line item
    - copies and funds, 6-59
  - publication pattern, 8-68
  - purchase order, 6-117
    - blocks, 6-117
    - fund impact, 6-118
  - rollover rule, 16-21
  - routing list
    - from edit routing list dialog box, 8-37
    - from subscription maintenance work space, 8-35
    - recipient, 8-35
  - search terms in builder search, 2-26
  - subscription component, 8-45
  - vendor account, 4-28
  - vendor phone number, 4-23
  - vendor record, 4-34
  - volumes, 14-39
- Deletion Reminder
  - Session Preferences dialog box
    - Sounds and Animation tab, 18-13
- delivery options
  - setting, 6-72
- Delivery Options tab
  - Line Item dialog box, 6-70
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-12
- Deposit check box, 4-11, 4-25
- depository purchase order type, 16-12, 17-5
- Descriptive Name field, 8-48, 8-61
- Detail Report dialog box, 15-15
- detailed line item, 6-28, 6-32, 6-37
- Detailed Line Item button, 6-27, 12-26
- Details button, 7-10, 7-18, 10-7
- dialog box
  - Add Bib/Item, 6-18
  - Add New Issue, 8-15, 9-18
  - Add New Issue Before/After, 8-17
  - Add Vendor Account, 4-10, 4-24
  - Add/Edit Adjustment, 6-45, 6-47, 6-90, 12-29, 12-32
  - Add/Edit Fund Allocation, 6-55, 6-56, 6-115, 6-117
  - Approve Invoice, 12-34, 19-10
  - Approve Order, 6-96, 19-9
  - Barcodes, 10-22
  - Bindery Copy, 14-16
  - Bindery Copy Data, 14-42, 14-44
  - Bindery Pullslip, 14-17, 14-45
  - Browse Headings List, 2-23, 2-89
  - Cancel Claim, 11-38
  - Cannot Delete Order, 6-118
  - Change Enumeration/Chronology, 8-18, 9-19, 9-35
  - Change Vendor, 6-101
  - Check-In Note, 9-7, 9-25, 19-15
  - Close Publication Pattern, 8-44
  - Combine/Omit Issues, 8-13
  - Copies and Funds, 6-50, 6-52
  - Create Volumes, 14-14, 14-22
  - Detail Report, 15-15
  - Duplicate Order Information on PO, 6-96
  - EDI Events, 15-18
  - EDI incoming files, 15-7
  - Edit Approved Line Item Data, 6-108, 6-113, 6-115
  - Edit EDI Connection Profile, 4-45
  - Edit Routing List, 8-26, 8-31
  - Edit Vendor Account, 4-27
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order, 2-102
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice, 2-112
  - Find Purchase Order, 2-3, 12-18
  - Find Purchase Order search, 15-17
  - Fund Transactions, 5-47, 5-48
  - Fund Warnings/Blocks, 5-54
  - Generate Claim, 11-32, 19-19
  - Headings List, 2-37, 2-49, 2-52, 2-60, 2-88, 2-89
  - Holdings Index, 2-35, 2-47, 2-81, 2-87
  - Invoice, 12-5
  - Invoice Fees, 12-28
  - Item Record, 14-19, 14-50
  - Item Statistical Categories, 10-25
  - Item Status, 10-24

Ledger, [5-22, 6-61](#)  
 Line Item, [6-32, 7-10, 7-18, 10-7, 12-26](#)  
 Link to Holdings, [6-59, 6-60](#)  
 Load Report Summary, [15-14](#)  
 Log in, [1-2](#)  
 Login Information, [1-4](#)  
 New EDI Connection Profile, [4-43, 4-47, 15-9](#)  
 New Invoice, [12-2, 12-4](#)  
 New Item Record, [10-5, 10-8, 10-15, 14-52](#)  
 New Ledger, [5-21](#)  
 New line item by Bib record id, [6-25](#)  
 New Order, [6-3](#)  
 New Routing List, [8-24](#)  
 Note, [10-26](#)  
 Open, [6-24](#)  
 Patron Search, [8-27](#)  
 PO Fees, [6-84](#)  
 Preferences, [1-9, 18-2](#)  
 Print Labels, [1-16](#)  
 Publication Pattern, [8-47](#)  
 Purchase Order, [6-4](#)  
 Quick Line Item, [6-31, 13-12](#)  
 Receive/Mark, [7-6, 7-16](#)  
 Record History, [10-28](#)  
 Reference Information, [2-40, 2-41](#)  
 Remote Search, [2-57](#)  
 Rollover Rule, [16-9](#)  
 Route Serial Issue, [9-13, 19-15](#)  
 Search, [2-10, 2-11, 2-12, 2-24](#)  
 Search Limits, [2-48, 2-52, 2-53, 2-65, 2-74](#)  
 Search Status, [2-60](#)  
 Select a Message Status, [15-12, 15-25](#)  
 Select a Receiving Location, [1-3](#)  
 Select Fund, [12-30](#)  
 Select one or more authority records, [2-44](#)  
 Select The Sound File Assignment, [18-11](#)  
 Send selected messages, [15-27](#)  
 Session Defaults, [1-9, 17-2](#)  
 Session Workflows, [2-63](#)  
 Simultaneous Search, [2-58](#)  
 Start Prediction, [8-10, 8-51, 8-87](#)  
 Titles Index, [2-28, 2-29, 2-46, 2-49, 2-52, 2-60, 2-81, 2-82, 2-83, 2-85, 2-88, 2-90, 2-92, 2-96](#)  
 Update Claim, [11-35](#)  
 Vendor, [4-17](#)  
 Voyager Connection Options, [2-54, 2-56](#)  
 Workflows, [1-10, 19-2](#)  
 disabling  
     online operators, [16-26, 16-34](#)  
 disappearing ledger, [5-4](#)  
 Discount (%) field, [4-11, 4-25](#)

disencumber, [5-54](#)  
 Display Check-In Recap work space check box  
     Workflows dialog box  
         Serials Check-In tab, [19-15](#)  
 Display Copies Received/Counts in "Issues in Hand" check box  
     Session Workflows dialog box  
         Serials Check-In tab, [19-14](#)  
 Display in OPAC button, [9-44](#)  
 Display Line Items button, [12-19](#)  
 Display Orders button, [12-23](#)  
 Display Selected Intended Locations button, [17-11](#)  
 displaying  
     fund, [9-55](#)  
         from Payment History tab, [6-36, 6-76](#)  
     invoice, [9-54](#)  
         from Payment History tab, [6-36, 6-76](#)  
     item record, [6-63](#)  
     serial issue, [9-43](#)  
     serial subscription information, [2-98](#)  
 Do not print or prompt for Bindery Pullslip  
     Workflows dialog box  
         Serials Check-In tab, [19-16](#)  
 Document deleted message status, [15-18](#)  
 document summary, [xxii](#)  
 Don't Claim check box, [8-51, 8-86](#)  
     Component Details tab, [8-7](#)  
     Delivery Options tab, [6-71](#)  
     Session Defaults dialog box  
         Line Item tab, [17-8](#)  
         Purchase Order tab, [17-6](#)  
 Don't Claim Issue check box, [8-17](#)  
 Don't Claim option, [11-7, 11-9](#)  
 Donor field, [6-72](#)  
     Session Defaults dialog box  
         Line Item tab, [17-8](#)  
 dummy EDI invoices, [6-66](#)  
 dummy receive, [11-36](#)  
 duplicate detection, [6-22](#)  
 duplicate order information, [6-97](#)  
 Duplicate Order Information on PO dialog box, [6-96](#)  
 dynamic noise word reduction, [2-17](#)

---

## E

EDI  
     connection profile, [4-36](#)  
     copying, [4-46](#)

- creating, 4-42
- deleting, 4-47
- editing, 4-45
- correcting vendor and location assignments, 15-8
- detail report
  - notes, 15-19
- incoming message fields, 15-17
- incoming messages, 4-37
- Incoming tab, 15-4
- library envelope address, 4-37
- library envelope address code, 4-39, 4-41, 4-43
- library inside address code, 4-40, 4-41, 4-44
- loading message, 15-14
- loading report, 15-14
- message status
  - Document deleted, 15-18
  - Failed to load, 15-18
  - loaded, 15-18
  - new, 15-18
- messages
  - processing, 15-2
- notes
  - loading claim response, 15-21
  - loading EDI invoices, 15-20
  - receiving EDI files, 15-19
  - sending EDI claims, 15-21
  - sending EDI purchase orders, 15-21
- outgoing message, 15-28
- outgoing message fields, 15-25
- outgoing messages, 4-37
- Outgoing tab, 15-22
- qualifier codes
  - assigned by buyer, 4-42
  - assigned by seller, 4-42
  - EAN location code (envelope), 4-42
  - EAN location code (inside), 4-42
  - mutually agreed, 4-42
  - standard address number (SAN), 4-42
- receiver code, 4-37, 4-39, 4-41
- receiving messages, 15-5
- resolving errors, 15-16
- searching
  - for incoming messages, 15-11
  - for outgoing messages, 15-23
- selecting message, 15-14, 15-27
- sender code, 4-37, 4-39, 4-41
- sending message, 15-27
- unlinked items, 15-16
- usages
  - IV (invoice/credit memo), 4-41
  - PO (purchase order), 4-41
  - SC (serial claim), 4-41
  - SR (serial claim response), 4-41
  - XM check box, 4-42, 4-44
  - vendor envelope address, 4-37
  - vendor envelope address code, 4-44
  - vendor inside address code, 4-44
- EDI check box
  - Cancel Claim dialog box, 11-38
  - Claim Processing tab, 19-19
  - Generate Claim dialog box, 11-34
- EDI Events dialog box, 15-18
- EDI incoming files dialog box, 15-7
- EDI profile logic, 4-48
- EDI tab, 15-1
- EDIFACT
  - file contents, 15-6
  - message, 15-5
  - obtaining file from your vendor, 15-6
  - receiving file, 15-7
  - segment tag, 15-6
  - transmission unit, 15-6
- Edit Approved Line Item Data
  - Intended Location, 6-108
- edit approved line item data, 6-110, 6-113
- Edit Approved Line Item Data dialog box, 6-108, 6-113, 6-115
- Edit EDI Connection Profile dialog box, 4-45
- Edit Issue button, 9-35
- edit line item data on approved purchase order, 6-108
- Edit Routing List dialog box, 8-26, 8-31
- Edit Vendor Account dialog box, 4-27
- Edit Volume field, 14-30
- Edit Volume list box, 14-10
- editing
  - copies and funds in a line item, 6-52
  - currency, 3-10
  - EDI connection profile, 4-45
  - enumeration/chronology
    - from receipt History tab, 9-35
  - fund, 5-50
    - extended fund allocation, 6-116
  - ledger, 5-24
  - line item
    - quick line item, 6-28
  - line item data, 6-108, 6-113
  - MARC record, 13-1
  - price adjustment, 6-92, 12-31
  - publication pattern, 8-65
  - pullslips, 14-44
  - purchase order

- line item data, [6-108](#), [6-113](#)
- purchase orders, [6-105](#)
- rollover rule, [16-20](#)
- routing list, [8-31](#)
- search terms in builder search, [2-26](#)
- vendor account, [4-27](#)
- vendor phone number, [4-23](#)
- vendor record, [4-33](#)
- volumes, [14-29](#)
- Edition field, [6-39](#)
- Electronic Data Interchange (EDI), [15-1](#)
- eligibility
  - rollover rule, [16-19](#)
- e-mail, [4-7](#), [4-8](#)
- Enable Quick Line Items For Edit/View Details check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, [19-6](#)
- Enable Quick Line Items Upon Add check box, [6-31](#)
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, [19-6](#)
- Enable Transitions
  - Session Preferences dialog box
    - Sounds and Animation tab, [18-15](#)
- enabling
  - online operators, [16-32](#)
- encumbrances, [5-53](#)
- end date, [5-28](#)
- End Date field
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-31](#), [5-44](#)
- Enter the record id field, [6-26](#)
- entering
  - line item
    - invoice information, [12-24](#)
    - invoice other charges, [12-28](#)
  - line item information
    - detailed, [6-28](#)
    - quick, [6-27](#), [6-28](#)
  - line item price information
    - Price tab, [6-46](#)
- Enum field
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)
- enum/chron statement, [14-38](#)
- enumeration, [8-48](#)
  - publication pattern, [8-62](#)
- Enumeration field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11](#), [14-30](#), [14-31](#)
  - Start Prediction dialog box, [8-10](#)
- Enumeration/Chronology field, [8-16](#), [8-18](#), [9-18](#)
- Enumeration/Chronology tab, [8-62](#)

- Envelope Address field, [4-39](#), [4-43](#), [4-44](#)
- establishing
  - extended fund allocations, [6-55](#)
- exchange purchase order type, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
- exclamation point (!), [2-15](#)
- exiting Acquisitions, [1-5](#)
- exiting acquisitions, [1-5](#)
- Expand Receive Tree during Receive check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, [19-7](#)
    - Serials Check-In tab, [19-16](#)
- expanding
  - line item section of invoice, [12-25](#)
- Expected Issue field, [9-7](#)
- Expected On field, [8-17](#)
- Expend Only check box
  - Ledger window (fund), [5-44](#)
- Expenditure Date field, [12-16](#)
- expenditures
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#)
  - fund, [5-32](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-46](#)
  - overview, [5-53](#)
- explanation of override claim date, [11-8](#)
- extended fund allocation, [6-55](#), [6-114](#), [16-14](#), [16-23](#), [16-28](#)
  - adding, [6-57](#)
  - adding fund, [6-115](#)
  - editing fund, [6-116](#)
  - removing fund, [6-117](#)
- Extended Fund Allocation button, [6-51](#), [6-53](#), [6-115](#)
- Extended Fund Allocation section
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
- Extra Issue's Expected Date field, [8-16](#), [8-18](#), [9-18](#)

---

## F

- Failed to load message status, [15-18](#)
- Fax field, [4-32](#)
- Federal Tax ID field, [4-5](#), [4-18](#)
- feedback, customer, [xxv](#)
- field
  - # of Copies, [6-51](#)
  - %
    - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
  - % to Increase Commitments, [16-12](#)
  - 007 control
    - position 01, [2-71](#)

- 008 control
  - position 06, [2-74](#)
  - position 07-10, [2-71](#)
  - position 15-17, [2-73](#)
  - position 35-37, [2-70](#)
- Account, [6-6](#), [12-6](#)
  - Change Vendor dialog box, [6-101](#), [6-102](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
- Account Name, [4-10](#), [4-25](#)
- Account Number, [4-10](#), [4-25](#)
- Account Status, [4-11](#), [4-25](#)
- Address
  - Addresses/Phones tab, [4-7](#), [4-20](#)
  - Bank Information tab, [4-13](#), [4-31](#)
- Adjusted Price, [6-45](#), [6-46](#), [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
- Adjustment, [6-46](#), [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
- Adjustments Subtotal, [6-89](#)
- Amount, [6-46](#)
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-48](#)
  - incoming message, [15-19](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
- Application Method, [6-46](#), [6-86](#), [6-90](#), [12-29](#)
- Attention, [4-7](#)
- Author, [6-39](#)
- Bank Account, [4-13](#), [4-31](#)
- Bank Name, [4-13](#), [4-31](#)
- Barcode
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)
- begin date
  - Ledger window (fund), [5-31](#), [5-44](#)
- Bib Record ID, [6-39](#)
- Bill To
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
- Binder's title number, [14-17](#)
- Bindery instructions, [14-17](#)
- Binding frequency, [14-17](#)
- Bind-on Date, [14-10](#), [14-30](#)
- Bind-on date interval, [14-15](#), [14-24](#)
- Call #
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-21](#)
- Call Number
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, [8-3](#)
- Call number format, [14-17](#)
- Cancel After
  - Delivery Options tab, [6-71](#)
- Cancel After (days), [4-12](#), [4-30](#)
- Caption
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11](#), [14-30](#), [14-32](#)
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
  - Publication Pattern dialog box, [8-48](#)
  - Publication Pattern window, [8-62](#)
- Category, [8-7](#), [8-50](#), [8-85](#)
- Charge Type, [6-45](#), [6-86](#), [6-90](#), [12-29](#)
- Check Number, [12-16](#)
- Chron
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- Chronology
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11](#), [14-30](#), [14-31](#)
  - Start Prediction dialog box, [8-10](#)
- City
  - Addresses/Phones tab, [4-7](#), [4-13](#), [4-21](#)
  - Bank Information tab, [4-31](#)
- Claim Count, [4-12](#), [4-29](#)
- Claim Date
  - Generate Claim dialog box, [11-33](#)
  - Update Claim dialog box, [11-36](#)
- Claim Date dialog box, [11-8](#)
- Claim Interval (days), [8-50](#), [8-86](#)
  - Component Details tab, [8-7](#)
  - Delivery Options tab, [6-71](#)
- Claim Type
  - Generate Claim dialog box, [11-33](#)
- Claims Interval (days), [4-12](#), [4-30](#)
- Cloth color format, [14-17](#)
- Code, [6-101](#), [6-102](#)
- Code (currency), [12-14](#)
- Code (vendor), [6-6](#), [12-6](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
- CODEN, [6-39](#)
- Comment
  - Receive/Mark dialog box, [7-17](#), [7-20](#)
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-17](#)
- Comments
  - Generate Claim dialog box, [11-33](#)
  - Update Claim dialog box, [11-36](#)
- Commit to Fund
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-87](#), [6-91](#), [12-30](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-30](#)
- Component, [14-10](#)
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-16](#)
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-6](#)
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-17](#)
  - Close Publication Pattern dialog box, [8-44](#)
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-10](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance screen, [8-3](#)



- Component Name, [8-6, 9-16](#)
  - New Routing List window, [8-24](#)
  - Serials Check-In Search work space, [9-7](#)
- Condition
  - Claims screen, [2-109](#)
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, [2-103](#)
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, [2-113](#)
  - Find Purchase Order window, [2-4](#)
  - Problems work space, [2-106](#)
  - Process EDI Messages dialog box, [15-12, 15-25](#)
- Conversion Rate
  - Currency Maintenance dialog box, [3-5](#)
  - Order tab, [6-76](#)
- Copies
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-6](#)
- Copy
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- Copy ID
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-16](#)
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-10](#)
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-17](#)
- Copy Number, [6-55](#)
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
- Cost per copy, [6-50](#)
- Country
  - Addresses/Phones tab, [4-7, 4-13, 4-21](#)
  - Bank Information tab, [4-32](#)
- Country Name
  - Currency Maintenance dialog box, [3-4](#)
- Currency
  - Order tab, [6-76](#)
  - Vendor dialog box, [4-5](#)
- Currency Code, [3-4](#)
- Currency Name, [3-4](#)
- Date
  - Bib Record tab, [6-39](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-12](#)
- Date Expected, [9-16](#)
- Date of Report, [11-36](#)
- Decimal Places, [3-4](#)
- Default Item Type, [8-51, 8-86](#)
  - Component Details tab, [8-8](#)
- Default PO Type, [4-11, 4-25](#)
- Descriptive Name, [8-48, 8-61](#)
- Discount (%), [4-11, 4-25](#)
- Donor, [6-72](#)
- Edit Volume, [14-30](#)
- Edition, [6-39](#)
- End Date
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-31, 5-44](#)
- Enter the record id, [6-26](#)
- Enum
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)
- Enumeration
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11, 14-30, 14-31](#)
  - Start Prediction dialog box, [8-10](#)
- Enumeration/Chronology, [8-18, 9-18](#), [8-16](#)
- Envelope Address, [4-39, 4-43, 4-44](#)
- Expected Issue, [9-7](#)
- Expected On, [8-17](#)
- Expenditure Date, [12-16](#)
- Extra Issue's Expected Date, [8-16, 8-18, 9-18](#)
- Fax, [4-32](#)
- Federal Tax ID, [4-5](#)
- File Name
  - incoming message, [15-19](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
- First Issue's Expected Date, [8-11](#)
- Fiscal Period, [5-12, 5-17, 5-22, 16-9](#)
- Format, [8-49, 8-63](#)
- Free Text
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11, 14-30, 14-32](#)
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- Freeze Date
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23, 5-24](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45, 5-46](#)
- Freeze date, [5-15, 5-16, 5-34, 5-35](#)
- Frequency, [8-48, 8-61](#)
- Fund
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-51, 6-54](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-39, 5-49](#)
- Fund Category, [5-31, 5-43](#)
- Fund Code, [5-43](#)
- Fund Name, [5-43](#)
- Fund Type, [5-31, 5-43](#)
- GPO Item Number, [6-39](#)
- How to Apply, [6-46](#)
- Import From File, [6-22](#)
- Import/Replace Profile, [6-22](#)
- Inside Address, [4-40, 4-44](#)
- Institution ID
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-32, 5-44](#)
  - Vendor dialog box, [4-6](#)
- Instructions to Vendor, [6-9](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-73](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-30](#)



- Intended Location, [6-51](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- Invoice Piece Identifier
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-73](#)
- ISBN, [6-39](#)
- ISSN, [6-39](#)
- Issue, [8-25](#)
- Issue(s) in Hand, [9-7](#), [9-18](#)
- Issues in each volume, [14-14](#), [14-23](#), [14-25](#), [14-26](#)
- Item ID
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-10](#), [14-51](#)
- Item Type
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)
- LCCN, [6-39](#)
- Leader control
  - position 06, [2-72](#)
  - position 07, [2-72](#)
- Ledger
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-51](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-39](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- Ledger Name, [5-12](#), [5-22](#)
- Library instructions, [14-17](#)
- Line Item Subtotal
  - Invoice dialog box, [12-16](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
- Line Item Total, [6-45](#)
- Line Item Type, [6-65](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-30](#)
  - Type tab, [6-67](#)
- Line Items
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
- Link to Holdings, [6-110](#)
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-51](#), [6-59](#), [13-15](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- List Price, [6-45](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- Load Date
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
- Location, [14-10](#)
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-16](#)
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-17](#)
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-21](#)
  - New EDI Connection Profile window, [4-39](#), [4-43](#)
  - New EDI Connection Profiles dialog box, [15-10](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-25](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, [8-3](#)
- Mark Reason
  - Receive/Mark dialog box, [7-17](#)
  - Receive/Mark tab, [7-20](#)
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-17](#)
- Maximum, [8-62](#)
- Media Type
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)
- Message
  - outgoing message, [15-25](#)
- Message Number
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-25](#)
- Message Status
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-25](#)
- Message Type
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
- Name, [6-101](#), [6-102](#)
- New Enumeration/Chronology, [8-19](#), [9-19](#), [9-35](#)
- New Fiscal Period, [16-9](#)
- New Ledger Name, [16-16](#)
- Next Expected Issue, [9-16](#)
- No. Continuity, [8-49](#), [8-62](#)
- No. Scheme, [8-48](#), [8-62](#)
- Note
  - Component Details tab, [8-7](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-48](#)
- Notes, [6-9](#), [6-74](#), [12-9](#), [12-16](#)
- Number
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-12](#)
- Number of Copies, [1-17](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- Operator
  - Claims work space, [2-110](#)
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, [2-103](#)
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, [2-113](#)
  - Problems work space, [2-106](#)
- Operator ID, [1-2](#)
- Order Date, [6-75](#)
- Order Number
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-6](#)
  - Order tab, [6-75](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, [8-3](#)
- Order Site, [6-75](#)
- Order Type, [6-75](#)
- Original Allocation, [5-45](#)

- Other Charges
  - Invoice dialog box, [12-16](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
  - Purchase Order dialog box, [6-89](#)
- Other Data, [14-11](#)
- Other Volume Data, [14-32](#)
- Over Commit Limit %, [5-15](#), [5-34](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45](#)
- Over Commit Warning %, [5-15](#), [5-34](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45](#)
- Over Expend Limit %, [5-16](#), [5-35](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-24](#)
  - Overrides tab, [5-46](#)
- Over Expend Warning %, [5-16](#), [5-35](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-24](#)
  - Overrides tab, [5-46](#)
- Password, [1-2](#)
- Percentage, [6-56](#), [6-116](#)
- Perm. Loc.
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)
- Phone
  - Bank Information tab, [4-32](#)
- Phone Number
  - Addresses/Phones tab, [4-8](#), [4-22](#)
- Phone Number Type, [4-8](#), [4-22](#)
- Piece Identification, [6-66](#)
- Pieces
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- Place, [6-39](#)
- Policy Group, [5-12](#), [5-22](#)
- Prepaid
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
- PrePay Amount per copy, [6-45](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- PrePay per copy, [6-50](#)
- Price
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- Print color, [14-17](#)
- Profile
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-25](#)
- Publication Number, [6-39](#)
- Publication Pattern Model, [8-9](#), [8-51](#), [8-87](#)
  - Close Publication Pattern dialog box, [8-44](#)
- Publisher, [6-39](#)
- Quantity, [6-45](#)
- Rate
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-14](#)
- Rate (currency)
  - New Order dialog box, [6-13](#)
- Receive items
  - incoming message, [15-17](#)
- Received Issue(s), [9-16](#)
- Receiver Code
  - incoming message, [15-19](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
  - Send selected messages dialog box, [15-28](#)
- Renewal, [6-68](#)
- Requester
  - Delivery Options tab, [6-72](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-30](#)
- Rollover Date, [5-17](#)
- Rollover Rule Name, [5-17](#)
- Routing List Name, [8-25](#)
- Rule Name/ID, [16-9](#)
- Search, [2-3](#)
- Search By, [2-3](#)
  - Claims work space, [2-109](#)
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, [2-103](#)
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, [2-112](#)
  - Problems work space, [2-105](#)
  - Process EDI Messages dialog box, [15-11](#), [15-24](#)
- Search For, [2-15](#), [2-20](#)
  - Claims work space, [2-110](#)
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, [2-103](#)
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, [2-113](#)
  - Find Purchase Order dialog box, [2-4](#)
  - Problems work space, [2-106](#)
  - Process EDI Messages dialog box, [15-12](#), [15-25](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance search work space, [2-100](#)
- Search for, [2-25](#)
- Search In, [2-26](#)
- search type drop-down, [2-19](#)
- Select Last Issue, [8-44](#)
- Send Date
  - outgoing message, [15-25](#)
- Sender Code
  - incoming message, [15-19](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
  - Send selected messages dialog box, [15-28](#)
- Serial Title, [8-24](#)
- Series, [6-39](#)
- Ship To

- Copies and Funds dialog box, 6-51
- Quick Line Item dialog box, 6-29
- Ship Via, 4-12, 4-30
- SICI
  - Type tab, 6-67
- Spine
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-23
- Spine label format, 14-17
- Standard Address Number, 4-7, 4-21
- Standard Technical Report Number, 6-40
- Start Date
  - Type tab, 6-68
- Starting Piece Identification, 6-67
- State/Province
  - Addresses/Phones tab, 4-7, 4-13, 4-21
  - Bank Information tab, 4-31
- Status Date
  - New Invoice dialog box, 12-14
- Subscription Length, 6-68
- Successor Ledger Name, 5-17
- System No., 6-39
- Tax ID, 4-13, 4-31
- Temp. Loc.
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-22
- Temp. Type
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-22
- The day of the month Expected (1..31), 8-11
- Title, 6-39, 9-16
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-6
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-21
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, 9-10
  - Serials History - Details work space, 9-32
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, 8-3
- Title/Dept., 4-7, 4-20
- Total
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, 6-87
  - Invoice Fees dialog box, 12-30
- Total Adjustments, 6-45
- Total Amount
  - New Invoice dialog box, 12-13, 12-16
- Total Records, 6-23
- Transit/Routing, 4-13, 4-31
- Under Commit Report %
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, 5-23
  - Override Rules tab, 5-45
- Under Expend Report %
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, 5-24
  - Override Rules tab, 5-46
- UnderCommit Report %, 5-15, 5-34
- UPC, 6-67
- Valid Records, 6-22
- Vendor
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-6
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, 8-3
- Vendor Account, 6-76
- Vendor Code
  - Generate Claim dialog box, 11-33
  - New EDI Connection Profile dialog box, 4-40, 4-44, 15-10
  - Order tab, 6-75
  - Send selected messages dialog box, 15-28
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-5
- Vendor Name
  - Generate Claim dialog box, 11-33
  - incoming message, 15-18
  - outgoing message, 15-25
  - Send selected messages dialog box, 15-28
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-5
- Vendor Reference Number, 6-66, 6-68
- Vendor Report, 11-36
- Vendor Title #, 6-66, 6-68
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-6
- Vendor title #
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, 8-3
- Volume Notes, 14-11, 14-32
- Volumes to create, 14-14, 14-23, 14-25, 14-26
- Voucher ID, 12-12
- Year
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-11, 14-30, 14-32
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-23
- Zip, 4-7, 4-13
  - Addresses/Phones tab, 4-21
  - Bank Information tab, 4-31
- file
  - configuration
    - acqbib, 6-18, 6-19
    - spinelabel, 1-15
  - initialization
    - voyager, 13-16
  - initilization
    - limits.ini, 2-66
  - log
    - acqjob, 11-5, 11-7, 11-9, 11-10
    - Voyager.ini, 2-32
- file menu, 1-12
- File Name field
  - incoming message, 15-19
  - outgoing message, 15-26
- [Filing] stanza, 6-20
- Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, 2-102

- Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, [2-112](#)
- Find Line Items with Fund Warnings button, [5-55](#)
- Find Purchase Order dialog box, [2-3](#), [12-18](#)
- Find Purchase Order search dialog box, [15-17](#)
- Find radio button, [2-19](#)
- find search, [2-22](#), [2-48](#)
- firm order purchase order type, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
- First Copy Numbered As option
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, [19-11](#)
- First Issue's Expected Date field, [8-11](#)
- fiscal period close
  - adjusting fund begin/end dates, [16-32](#)
  - analyzing the results, [16-31](#)
  - batch jobs, [16-33](#)
  - checking ledgers/funds, [16-31](#)
  - checking open order rollover, [16-31](#)
  - defining
    - next fiscal period, [16-3](#)
    - rollover rule, [16-7](#)
  - disabling
    - online operators, [16-26](#), [16-34](#)
  - enabling
    - online operators, [16-32](#)
  - identifying open orders, [16-4](#)
  - line item commitments, [16-28](#)
  - multiple copy line items, [16-29](#)
  - preparing, [16-3](#)
  - processing, [16-27](#)
  - restoring acquisitions data, [16-25](#), [16-34](#), [16-36](#)
  - reviewing
    - fund snapshot report, [16-22](#)
    - open order report, [16-22](#)
  - reviewing fund names, [16-4](#)
  - running fpc, [16-32](#)
    - with reports, [16-35](#)
    - without reports, [16-35](#)
  - saving acquisitions data, [16-25](#), [16-34](#)
  - system back-up before running fpc, [16-25](#)
  - what it does not do, [16-2](#)
- fiscal period close (FPC) program, [16-1](#), [16-11](#)
- Fiscal Period field, [5-12](#), [5-17](#), [5-22](#), [16-9](#)
- fiscal year, [5-1](#)
- fix exchange rates acqjob 5, [3-12](#)
- folder button
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-88](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-39](#)
- Footer tab
  - Invoice dialog box, [12-7](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-15](#)
  - Purchase Order dialog box, [6-7](#)
- Format field, [8-49](#), [8-63](#)
- [Format] stanza, [6-20](#)
- FPC program, [16-1](#)
- Free Text field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11](#), [14-30](#), [14-32](#)
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- Free text keyword search, [2-81](#), [2-84](#)
- Free Text radio button, [2-13](#)
- Free-text box, [4-12](#)
- Freeze Date field, [5-15](#), [5-16](#), [5-34](#), [5-35](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#), [5-24](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45](#), [5-46](#)
- Session Defaults dialog box
  - Fund tab, [17-18](#)
  - Ledger tab, [17-21](#)
- Frequency field, [8-48](#), [8-61](#)
- fund, [5-27](#)
  - adding
    - extended fund allocation, [6-115](#)
  - adding money, [5-36](#), [5-47](#)
  - allocated, [5-27](#), [5-31](#)
  - allocations, [5-32](#)
  - begin date, [5-28](#)
  - changing allocation, [5-47](#)
  - checking after running fpc, [16-31](#)
  - choosing
    - for price adjustment, [12-30](#)
  - commitments, [5-32](#)
    - after a return, [6-81](#), [11-26](#)
  - crediting, [5-36](#)
  - deleting, [5-51](#)
  - deleting invoice, [12-38](#)
  - deleting Purchase Order, [6-118](#)
  - displaying, [9-55](#)
    - from Payment History tab, [6-36](#), [6-76](#)
  - editing, [5-50](#)
    - extended fund allocation, [6-116](#)
  - end date, [5-28](#)
  - expenditures, [5-32](#)
    - after a return, [6-81](#), [11-26](#)
  - line item, [6-26](#)
    - viewing, [6-61](#)
  - locations, [5-3](#)
  - more than one, [6-51](#)
  - overview, [5-2](#)
  - removing
    - extended fund allocation, [6-117](#)
  - reporting, [5-28](#), [5-31](#)
  - selecting, [6-111](#), [6-114](#)
  - session defaults, [17-16](#)

- setting identical allocations, [6-55](#)
- subtracting money, [5-36](#), [5-47](#)
- summary, [5-27](#), [5-31](#)
- transferring allocated funds, [5-48](#)
- transferring money, [5-36](#)
- types, [5-27](#)
- Fund Category field, [5-31](#), [5-43](#)
- fund code, [5-31](#), [5-39](#), [5-49](#)
- Fund Code field
  - Ledger dialog box (Fund), [5-43](#)
- Fund field
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-51](#)
  - Extended Fund Allocation section
    - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-39](#), [5-49](#)
- Fund Name, [5-31](#)
- Fund Name field, [5-43](#)
- fund snapshot report, [16-22](#), [16-27](#), [16-31](#)
- Fund tab, [17-16](#)
- Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-47](#), [5-48](#)
- Fund Type field, [5-31](#), [5-43](#)
- Fund Warnings/Blocks dialog box, [5-54](#)

---

## G

- Generate Cancel
  - Problems tab, [6-80](#)
- Generate Cancel button
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Items, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Items tab, [11-26](#)
- Generate Claim button
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-25](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-25](#)
  - Problems tab, [6-80](#)
- Generate Claim dialog box, [11-32](#), [19-19](#)
- Generate Return
  - Problems tab, [6-81](#)
- Generate Return button
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-26](#)
- generating
  - cancel, [11-39](#)
    - marked line item copy, [6-80](#)
  - claim from Problems tab
    - marked line item copy, [6-80](#)
  - claim from the Claimed Issues tab, [11-32](#), [11-35](#)

- claim from the Claimed Line Items tab, [11-32](#), [11-35](#)
- claim from the problems list, [11-31](#)
- return, [11-41](#)
  - marked line item copy, [6-81](#), [11-26](#)
- Getting Started, [1-1](#)
  - prerequisite skills and knowledge, [1-2](#)
- gift purchase order type, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
- GPO Item Number field, [6-39](#)

---

## H

- header information
  - Currency Maintenance work space, [3-3](#)
  - Ledger dialog box, [5-11](#)
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-30](#)
  - Publication Pattern work space, [8-61](#)
  - Vendor dialog box, [4-4](#)
- Header tab
  - Invoice dialog box, [12-5](#)
  - New Order dialog box, [12-5](#)
  - Purchase Order dialog box, [6-5](#)
- Heading column
  - Headings List, [2-40](#)
- Heading Type column
  - Headings List, [2-40](#)
- Heading Types Filter, [2-20](#), [2-48](#)
- Headings List
  - Bibs column, [2-40](#)
  - Heading column, [2-40](#)
  - Heading Type column, [2-40](#)
- Headings List dialog box, [2-37](#), [2-49](#), [2-52](#), [2-60](#), [2-88](#), [2-89](#)
- headings search
  - results, [2-39](#)
- headings searching, [2-18](#), [2-47](#), [2-88](#)
- Help button, [1-10](#)
- help menu, [1-15](#)
- hierarchy
  - Copies/Funds tab, [6-58](#)
  - copy and fund, [6-58](#)
- hierarchy of line item, [7-7](#)
- History button, [9-24](#), [9-29](#)
- history for
  - remove multiple issues from non-predictive component, [9-24](#)
  - remove multiple issues from predictive component, [9-24](#)

- History tab, [2-28](#), [2-52](#)
- history tab
  - searching, [2-28](#)
- Holdings Boolean keyword search, [2-81](#), [2-86](#)
- Holdings Boolean radio button, [2-14](#)
- holdings boolean search
  - results, [2-35](#), [2-36](#)
- Holdings button, [13-14](#)
- Holdings Index
  - Holdings Record column, [2-36](#)
- Holdings Index dialog box, [2-35](#), [2-47](#), [2-81](#), [2-87](#)
- holdings keyword definition
  - SPAC, [2-79](#)
- Holdings Record column
  - Holdings Index, [2-36](#)
- holdings record id searching, [2-81](#)
- How to Apply field
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-46](#)
- http POST request, [13-16](#)

---

## I

- identifying
  - open orders, [16-4](#)
- Import button
  - Select Bib Records for Import list box, [6-23](#)
- Import From File field, [6-22](#)
- Import/Replace Profile field, [6-22](#)
- Include Already Invoiced Line Items check box, [12-20](#)
- incoming message fields
  - EDI, [15-17](#)
- incoming messages, [4-37](#)
- Incoming tab, [15-4](#)
- index selection
  - searching, [2-18](#), [2-47](#)
- Index Selection tab, [2-18](#)
- index selection tab, [2-47](#)
- index subscription component, [8-4](#)
- Information about... section
  - Voyager Connection Options dialog box, [2-55](#)
- inilization file
  - voyager.ini, [13-16](#)
- initial allocation options
  - cash balance, [16-11](#)
  - original allocation, [16-11](#)
  - original allocation+cash balance, [16-11](#)
  - zero, [16-11](#)

- initialization file
  - limits.ini, [2-66](#)
- Inside Address field, [4-40](#), [4-44](#)
- Institution ID field, [4-19](#)
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-32](#), [5-44](#)
  - Vendor dialog box, [4-6](#)
- Instructions to Vendor field, [6-9](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-73](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-30](#)
- intended audience
  - of this document, [xxi](#)
- Intended Location, [6-108](#)
- intended location
  - changing for a single copy, [6-114](#)
  - changing for all copies, [6-114](#)
  - line item, [6-26](#)
- Intended Location field, [6-51](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Line Item Copies/Funds tab, [17-10](#)
- interval
  - claim, [11-9](#), [11-10](#)
- Intro Music
  - Session Preferences dialog box
    - Sounds and Animation tab, [18-14](#)
- invoice
  - adding
    - line item, [12-18](#)
    - price adjustment, [12-28](#)
  - approving, [12-33](#)
    - block, [12-33](#)
  - completing, [12-37](#)
  - creating, [12-10](#)
    - from purchase order, [6-120](#)
  - crediting, [12-28](#)
  - deleting, [12-38](#)
    - fund information, [12-38](#)
  - displaying, [9-54](#)
    - from Payment History tab, [6-36](#), [6-76](#)
  - fund information, [5-53](#)
  - item record
    - creating, [12-40](#)
    - maintaining, [12-40](#)
  - processing
    - claimed items, [12-36](#)
    - marked items, [12-36](#)
  - searching for line item, [2-111](#), [12-27](#)
  - selecting line items, [12-21](#)
  - session defaults, [17-12](#)
- Invoice Against Any Vendor check box, [12-19](#)
- Invoice button, [11-45](#)

- Marked Issues tab, 11-26
- Marked Line Item tab, 11-26
- Related Invoices tab, 6-103
- Invoice dialog box, 12-5
- Invoice Fees dialog box, 12-28
- invoice line item, 12-17
  - adding, 12-18
  - entering information, 12-24
- Invoice Number column
  - Problems tab, 6-80
- Invoice Piece Identifier field
  - Line Item dialog box, 6-73
- invoice search, 12-2
- Invoice tab, 17-12
- invoices
  - dummy EDI, 6-66
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Approve Processing tab, 19-10
- Invoices work space, 12-2
- ISBN field, 6-39
- ISBN validation, 19-20
- ISO currency code standards, 3-7, 17-5, 17-14
- ISSN field, 6-39
- ISSN radio button, 2-100
- ISSN validation, 19-21
- issue
  - adding, 8-14
    - to volume, 14-33
  - adding extra, 8-17
  - changing enumeration/chronology, 8-18
  - changing expected date, 8-17
  - collapsing in a volume, 14-46
  - combine/omit, 8-12
  - removing, 8-19
    - from volume, 14-33
  - removing multiple, 8-19
  - reordering
    - in a volume, 14-37
- issue cycle tab grid, 8-90
- Issue field, 8-25
- Issue(s) in Hand field, 9-7, 9-18
- Issues Available for Binding list box, 14-11, 14-33
- Issues Available for Binding list box fields, 14-13
- Issues Bound in this Volume list box, 14-12, 14-35
- Issues in each volume field, 14-14, 14-23, 14-25, 14-26
- item barcodes
  - Session Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, 19-13
- Item button, 9-12
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-11, 14-19, 14-52
- Copy Status tab, 6-63, 10-7
- Receipt History tab, 9-49
- Receive/Mark dialog box, 7-8, 10-5
- item creation from invoice
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, 19-12
- item creation from order
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, 19-11
- item creation from serials check-in
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, 19-13
- item creation session workflows, 19-10
- Item Creation tab
  - Workflows dialog box, 19-10
- Item History button, 10-28
- Item ID field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-10, 14-51
- Item Note button, 10-26
- item record
  - accessing
    - from line item, 6-63
  - creating, 10-19, 12-40
    - from Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-51
    - from Receipt History tab, 9-48, 10-17
    - from Receive/Mark dialog box, 10-3
    - from Receive/Mark tab, 10-8
    - from serials check-in, 10-15
    - from Serials Check-In work space, 10-12
    - from the copy status tab, 10-7
  - creating for monographic items, 10-1
  - creating for serials, 10-11
  - creation options, 7-8
  - deleting, 10-30
  - field display
    - non-predictive publication pattern, 10-33
    - predictive publication pattern, 10-31
  - maintaining, 10-19, 12-40
  - maintaining for monographic items, 10-1
  - maintaining for serials, 10-11
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, 19-11
- Item Record dialog box, 14-19, 14-50
- Item Statistical Categories dialog box, 10-25
- item statistical category
  - applying, 10-26
  - removing, 10-26
- Item Statistical Category button, 10-25
- item status
  - applying, 10-25

- removing, [10-25](#)
- Item Status button, [10-24](#)
- Item Status dialog box, [10-24](#)
- Item Type field
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)
- IV (invoice/credit memo) check box, [4-41](#)

---

## J

- journal index searching, [2-26](#)
- [Journal] stanza, [6-20](#)

---

## K

- keyword condition, [2-4](#)
- keyword search, [2-4](#)
  - Boolean, [2-81](#), [2-82](#)
  - Free text, [2-81](#), [2-84](#)
  - Holdings Boolean, [2-81](#), [2-86](#)
  - results, [2-28](#), [2-30](#)
- keyword searching, [2-12](#), [2-45](#)
  - Acquisitions, [2-81](#)
- Keyword tab, [2-12](#), [2-45](#)

---

## L

- label
  - piece, [1-15](#)
  - spine, [1-15](#)
- language search limit, [2-64](#), [2-67](#)
- [Language] stanza, [2-69](#)
- LCCN field, [6-39](#)
- Leader control field
  - position 06, [2-72](#)
  - position 07, [2-72](#)
- ledger
  - checking after running fpc, [16-31](#)
  - creating, [5-19](#)
  - deleting, [5-25](#)
  - disappearing, [5-4](#)
  - editing, [5-24](#)
  - location, [5-3](#)

- overview, [5-2](#)
- rules, [5-3](#)
- session defaults, [17-19](#)
- Ledger dialog box, [5-22](#), [6-61](#)
  - header information, [5-11](#)
  - Locations tab, [5-12](#)
- Ledger dialog box (fund)
  - header information, [5-30](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-33](#)
  - Summary tab, [5-32](#)
  - Transactions tab, [5-35](#)
- Ledger field
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-51](#)
    - drop-down hierarchy display, [6-52](#)
  - Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-39](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- Ledger Name field, [5-12](#), [5-22](#)
- Ledger tab, [17-19](#)
- ledger/fund data
  - changing, [6-114](#)
- ledger/fund hierarchy, [5-39](#), [6-111](#), [6-114](#), [12-30](#)
- ledgers
  - associated funds, [5-27](#)
- Ledgers and Funds tab, [3-7](#), [3-10](#), [5-20](#), [16-8](#)
- Ledgers for Fiscal Period list, [16-15](#)
- left-anchored search
  - results, [2-30](#)
- left-anchored searching, [2-18](#), [2-47](#), [2-88](#), [2-91](#)
- library envelope address, [4-37](#), [15-19](#)
- library envelope address code, [4-39](#), [4-41](#), [4-43](#)
- library inside address code, [4-40](#), [4-41](#), [4-44](#)
- Library instructions field, [14-17](#)
- Library section
  - New EDI Connection Profile dialog box, [4-39](#)
- Limit button, [2-16](#), [2-21](#), [2-27](#), [2-74](#)
- limiting your search, [2-64](#)
  - not allowed, [2-64](#)
- [Limits] stanza, [2-67](#)
- limits.ini file, [2-65](#), [2-66](#)
- line item
  - accessing item record, [6-63](#)
  - adding, [6-16](#)
    - by bibliographic ID, [6-25](#)
    - by bibliographic searching, [6-16](#)
    - by creating a brief bibliographic record, [6-18](#)
    - by importing a bibliographic record, [6-21](#)
    - by searching remote database, [6-17](#)
    - to invoice, [12-18](#)
  - adding brief information, [6-26](#)
  - additional notes, [6-27](#)
  - by bibliographic search, [6-16](#)



- deleting
  - copies and funds, 6-59
- detailed, 6-32
- displaying item record, 6-63
- editing data on approved PO, 6-108, 6-113
- editing using quick line item, 6-28
- eligible for rollover, 16-5
- entering
  - other charges, 12-28
- entering price information, 6-46
- extended fund allocation, 6-55
- fund, 6-26
- hierarchy, 7-7
- intended location, 6-26
- link to holdings, 6-59
- number, 6-26
- number of copies, 6-26
- piece identification, 6-35, 6-64
- prediction pattern information, 6-35, 6-64
- prepay, 6-29
- price adjustment, 6-26
- printing
  - piece label, 6-63
  - spine label, 6-63
- purchase order, 6-15
- searching, 2-102
- searching from a PO, 2-102
- searching from an invoice, 2-111, 12-27
- selecting copies for invoice, 12-21
- session defaults, 17-6
- session workflows, 19-5
- status, 6-26
- title, 6-26
- total amount, 6-26
- type, 6-26, 6-35, 6-64
  - approval, 6-67
  - blanket order, 6-67
  - membership, 6-67
  - multi-part, 6-67
  - multiple part, 6-67
  - regular, 6-65
  - single part, 6-67
  - standing order, 6-67
  - subscription, 6-67
- unreceiving
  - monograph, 6-63
- vendor reference number, 6-35, 6-64
- vendor title number, 6-35, 6-64
- viewing
  - fund, 6-61
- line item (monograph)

- receiving/marking, 7-1
  - from purchase order, 7-3
  - from Receive/Mark tab, 7-9, 7-17
- line item copies/funds
  - session defaults, 17-8
- line item copy
  - marked, 6-80
  - unmarking, 11-30
- Line Item dialog box, 7-10, 7-18, 10-7, 12-26
  - Bib Record tab, 6-38
  - Copies/Funds tab, 6-48, 6-49
  - Copy Status tab, 6-62
  - Delivery Options tab, 6-70
  - detailed, 6-32
  - Notes tab, 6-72
  - Order tab, 6-74
  - Payment History tab, 6-76
  - Price tab, 6-43, 6-45
  - Problems, 6-79
  - Properties tab, 6-82
  - Receive/Mark tab, 6-77
  - Type tab, 6-64
- line item information
  - extended fund allocation, 6-55, 6-115
- line item relations
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, 19-7
- Line Item Subtotal field
  - Invoice dialog box, 12-16
  - New Invoice dialog box, 12-13
- Line Item tab, 17-6
- Line Item Total field
  - Line Item dialog box, 6-45
- Line Item Type field, 6-65
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, 6-30
  - Type tab, 6-67
- Line Items field
  - incoming message, 15-18
  - outgoing message, 15-26
- Line Items tab
  - Open Line Item Details After Saving, 19-7
  - Workflows dialog box, 19-5
- link to holdings
  - edit approved line item data, 6-110
- line item
  - copies and funds, 6-59
- Link to Holdings dialog box, 6-59, 6-60, 9-37, 9-42
- Link to Holdings field, 6-110
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, 6-51, 6-59, 13-15
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, 6-29
- linking

- publication pattern to a component, [8-49](#)
- subscription component to publication pattern, [8-8](#)
- list
  - existing issues, [8-21](#)
  - recipients, [8-26](#)
  - routing, [8-23](#)
- list bar
  - session preferences, [18-5](#)
- List Bar Appearance
  - Session Preferences dialog box
    - List Bar tab, [18-7](#)
- List Bar tab, [18-6](#)
- list box
  - Available Locations, [5-13](#)
  - Current Currency, [3-9](#)
  - Edit Volume, [14-10](#)
  - Issues Available for Binding, [14-11](#), [14-33](#)
  - Issues Bound in this Volume, [14-12](#), [14-35](#)
  - New Volumes, [14-16](#), [14-24](#)
  - Select Bib Records for Import, [6-22](#), [6-24](#)
    - fields and buttons, [6-22](#)
  - Select Locations for Account, [4-11](#), [4-25](#)
  - Selected Locations, [5-22](#)
- list price
  - changing, [6-113](#)
- List Price field
  - Line Item window, [6-45](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
- Load button, [15-14](#)
- Load Date field
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
- Load Summary Report dialog box, [15-14](#)
- loaded message status, [15-18](#)
- loading
  - EDI messages into the database, [15-14](#)
    - report, [15-14](#)
- location
  - funds, [5-3](#)
  - ledger, [5-3](#)
  - ledgers, [5-3](#)
  - routing list
    - adding, [8-26](#)
- Location field
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, [14-16](#)
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-10](#)
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, [14-17](#)
  - incoming message, [15-18](#)
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-21](#)
  - New EDI Connection Profile window, [4-39](#), [4-43](#)
  - New EDI Connection Profiles dialog box, [15-10](#)

- outgoing message, [15-25](#)
- Subscription Maintenance work space, [8-3](#)
- location search limit, [2-64](#), [2-67](#)
- Locations Filter, [2-48](#)
- Locations Filter List, [2-20](#)
- log file
  - acqjob.log, [11-5](#), [11-7](#), [11-9](#), [11-10](#)
- Log in dialog box, [1-2](#)
- logging in, [1-2](#)
- login information
  - viewing, [1-4](#)
- Login Information dialog box, [1-4](#)

---

## M

- magnetic media self-check option, [10-23](#)
- maintaining
  - item record, [10-19](#), [12-40](#)
  - item records for monographic items, [10-1](#)
  - item records for serials, [10-11](#)
- Maintenance button, [9-16](#), [9-26](#)
- MARC
  - button, [2-31](#), [2-37](#)
  - record, [2-31](#), [2-37](#)
- MARC bibliographic record
  - accessing, [13-4](#)
  - viewing
    - from Serials Check-In work space, [9-21](#)
- MARC button, [2-82](#), [8-64](#), [12-23](#)
  - Bib Record tab, [13-5](#)
  - Find Purchase Order dialog box, [13-6](#)
  - Link To Holdings dialog box, [13-12](#)
  - Link To Holdings list box, [6-60](#)
  - purchase order, [13-4](#)
  - Select Bib Records for Import dialog box, [13-11](#)
  - Select Bib Records for Import list box, [6-23](#)
  - Titles Index dialog box, [13-7](#)
- MARC holdings record
  - accessing, [13-12](#)
  - display, [9-42](#)
  - viewing
    - from Serials Check-In work space, [9-22](#)
- MARC record, [2-49](#), [2-82](#), [13-16](#)
  - editing, [13-1](#)
  - send to web server, [13-16](#)
  - viewing, [13-1](#)
  - view-only, [2-31](#), [2-37](#)
- MARC standards, [2-69](#)

MARC... button, [2-49](#)  
mark  
    processing, [11-10](#)  
Mark button, [7-17](#), [7-20](#)  
    Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-17](#)  
mark reason, [6-80](#), [11-3](#)  
    cancel, [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-39](#)  
    claim, [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-31](#)  
    creating, [11-4](#)  
    for monograph line item copy, [11-4](#)  
    for serial issues, [11-4](#)  
    Problems tab, [6-80](#)  
    return, [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-41](#)  
    system cancel, [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-39](#)  
    system claim, [11-3](#), [11-31](#)  
    system claim (monograph), [11-6](#)  
    system claim (serial), [11-6](#)  
    user-defined, [11-3](#)  
Mark Reason column  
    Problems tab, [6-80](#)  
Mark Reason field  
    Receive/Mark dialog box, [7-17](#)  
    Receive/Mark tab, [7-20](#)  
    Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-17](#)  
Marked Issues tab, [11-16](#), [11-17](#), [11-19](#), [11-32](#)  
marked line item  
    functions available, [11-3](#)  
    processing  
        from approved purchase order, [11-27](#)  
    search result, [2-106](#)  
    searching, [2-104](#)  
marked line item copy, [6-80](#)  
    generating a cancel, [6-80](#)  
    generating a claim from Problems tab, [6-80](#)  
    generating a return, [6-81](#)  
        fund commitments or expenditures, [6-81](#), [11-26](#)  
    processing, [6-80](#)  
    unmarking, [6-80](#)  
Marked Line Items tab, [11-16](#), [11-17](#), [11-18](#), [11-32](#)  
marked serial issue  
    functions available, [11-3](#)  
    search result, [2-106](#)  
marking  
    by operator, [11-3](#)  
    by system, [11-4](#)  
    criteria  
        for system cancel, [11-4](#)  
        for system claim (monograph), [11-6](#)  
        for system claim (serial), [11-6](#)  
    serial issue, [9-17](#)

Maximum field, [8-62](#)  
Media Type field  
    Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)  
medium search limit, [2-64](#), [2-67](#)  
[Medium] stanza, [2-71](#)  
membership line item type, [6-67](#), [8-5](#)  
menu  
    file, [1-12](#)  
    help, [1-15](#)  
    tools, [1-14](#)  
    view, [1-13](#)  
Message Number field  
    incoming message, [15-18](#)  
    outgoing message, [15-25](#)  
Message Status field  
    incoming message, [15-18](#)  
    outgoing message, [15-25](#)  
Message Type field  
    incoming message, [15-18](#)  
    outgoing message, [15-25](#)  
MFHD keyword index searching, [2-26](#)  
MFHD-Bibliographic Combined Keyword Search, [2-77](#)  
modifying claim information, [8-16](#)  
monograph  
    unreceiving, [6-63](#)  
monographic receive processing  
    Workflows dialog box  
        Line Items tab, [19-7](#)  
multi-part line item type, [6-67](#), [8-5](#)  
multi-part orders  
    considerations, [8-54](#)  
multi-part subscription  
    example, [8-54](#)  
multiple funds for copies, [6-51](#)  
multiple part line item types, [6-67](#)

---

## N

Name field, [6-101](#), [6-102](#)  
narrower term, [2-42](#)  
New EDI Connection Profile button, [4-43](#)  
New EDI Connection Profile dialog box, [4-43](#), [4-47](#), [15-9](#)  
New Enumeration/Chronology field, [8-19](#), [9-19](#), [9-35](#)  
new fiscal period, [16-27](#)  
New Fiscal Period field, [16-9](#)  
New Fund button, [5-10](#), [5-42](#)

New Invoice dialog box, [12-2](#), [12-4](#), [12-13](#), [12-14](#)  
 New Item button, [1-8](#), [6-12](#), [12-12](#)  
 New Item Record dialog box, [10-5](#), [10-8](#), [10-15](#), [14-52](#)  
 New Ledger button, [5-20](#)  
 New Ledger dialog box, [5-21](#)  
 new ledger name, [16-27](#)  
 New Ledger Name field, [16-16](#)  
 New line item by Bib record id dialog box, [6-25](#)  
 new message status, [15-18](#)  
 New Order dialog box, [6-3](#)  
 New Publication Pattern button, [8-59](#)  
 New Purchase Order button, [6-12](#)  
 New Rollover Rule button, [16-8](#)  
 New Routing List dialog box, [8-24](#)  
 New Transaction button, [5-47](#)  
 New Vendor button, [4-17](#)  
 New Volumes list box, [14-16](#), [14-24](#)  
 Next button example, [15-5](#)  
 Next Expected Issue field, [9-16](#)  
 No. Continuity field, [8-49](#), [8-62](#)  
 No. Scheme field, [8-48](#), [8-62](#)  
 NOISEWORDFILTER, [2-17](#)  
 non-keyword searching  
     Acquisitions, [2-88](#)  
 non-predictive component  
     remove multiple issues, [8-19](#)  
 non-predictive component pattern  
     adding an issue, [8-14](#)  
 Non-Predictive Component Pattern tab, [8-14](#)  
 non-predictive components  
     convert to predictive components, [8-21](#)  
 non-predictive publication pattern  
     item record  
         field display, [10-33](#)  
 not needed after date, [11-5](#)  
 Note additional references, [2-38](#), [2-40](#)  
 Note button  
     Serials Check-In work space, [9-25](#)  
 Note dialog box, [10-26](#)  
 Note field  
     Component Details tab, [8-7](#)  
     Fund Transactions dialog box, [5-48](#)  
 Note tab  
     Add Vendor Account dialog box, [4-11](#), [4-26](#)  
 notes  
     adding to routing list, [8-35](#)  
     EDI  
         detail report, [15-19](#)  
         loading claim response, [15-21](#)  
         loading EDI invoices, [15-20](#)

        receiving EDI files, [15-19](#)  
         routing list  
             adding, [8-30](#)  
             sending EDI claims, [15-21](#)  
             sending EDI purchase orders, [15-21](#)  
 Notes field, [6-9](#), [6-74](#), [12-9](#), [12-16](#)  
 Notes tab  
     Edit Routing List, [8-30](#)  
     Edit Routing List window, [8-26](#)  
     Invoice dialog box, [12-8](#)  
     Ledger dialog box, [5-18](#)  
     Ledger dialog box fund, [5-40](#)  
     Line Item dialog box, [6-72](#)  
     New Invoice dialog box, [12-16](#)  
     Purchase Order dialog box, [6-9](#)  
     Vendor dialog box, [4-13](#)  
 number  
     line item, [6-26](#)  
 Number field  
     New Invoice dialog box, [12-12](#)  
 number of copies  
     line item, [6-26](#)  
 Number of Copies field, [1-17](#)  
     Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)

---

## O

obtaining  
     EDIFACT data file from your vendor, [15-6](#)  
 Older Issues label  
     WebVoyage display, [14-47](#)  
 On order status  
     removing, [11-26](#)  
 One fund covers all check box, [6-86](#), [6-91](#), [12-31](#)  
 online help, [1-15](#)  
 On-line shelf list, [2-20](#)  
 OPAC Display of Temp Records check box, [6-23](#)  
 OPAC headings search, [2-19](#)  
 Open dialog box, [6-24](#)  
 Open Line Item Details After Saving check box  
     Workflows dialog box  
         Line Items tab, [19-7](#)  
 open order, [16-5](#), [16-28](#)  
     checking rollover after running fpc, [16-31](#)  
 open order report, [16-5](#), [16-7](#), [16-22](#), [16-27](#)  
     anomalous line item copy/invoice item status combinations, [16-23](#)  
     repeated copy sequence numbers, [16-23](#)

- repeated line item numbers, [16-23](#)
- operator
  - disabling before running fpc, [16-26](#), [16-34](#)
  - enabling before running fpc, [16-32](#)
- Operator column
  - Problems tab, [6-80](#)
- Operator field
  - Claims work space, [2-110](#)
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, [2-103](#)
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, [2-113](#)
  - Problems work space, [2-106](#)
- Operator ID field, [1-2](#)
- Order button, [11-43](#)
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-26](#)
- order claim/cancel processing acqjob 1, [11-4](#), [11-6](#)
- Order Date field, [6-75](#)
- Order Maintenance tab, [2-104](#), [2-108](#)
- Order Number field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-6](#)
  - Order tab, [6-75](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance, [8-3](#)
- Order Site field, [6-75](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Purchase Order tab, [17-4](#)
- Order tab
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-74](#)
- Order Type field, [6-75](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Purchase Order tab, [17-5](#)
- Order/Claim/Pay Location check box, [12-13](#)
- orders
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Approve Processing tab, [19-9](#)
- Orders bar, [6-12](#)
- original allocation, [16-28](#)
  - initial allocation option, [16-11](#)
- Original Allocation field, [5-45](#)
- original allocation+cash balance
  - initial allocation option, [16-11](#)
- other charges
  - line item entering, [12-28](#)
- Other Charges field
  - Invoice dialog box, [12-16](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-13](#)
  - Purchase Order dialog box, [6-89](#)
- [Other] stanza, [6-20](#)
- Other Volume Data field, [14-11](#), [14-32](#)
- outgoing message, [15-28](#)
- outgoing message fields
  - EDI, [15-25](#)
- outgoing messages, [4-37](#)
- Outgoing tab, [15-22](#)
- Over Commit Allowed check box, [5-15](#), [5-34](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Fund tab, [17-17](#)
    - Ledger tab, [17-20](#)
- Over Commit Limit % field, [5-15](#), [5-34](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Fund tab, [17-17](#)
    - Ledger tab, [17-20](#)
- Over Commit Warning % field, [5-15](#), [5-34](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Fund tab, [17-17](#)
    - Ledger tab, [17-20](#)
- Over Expend Allowed check box, [5-15](#), [5-34](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-24](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-46](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Fund tab, [17-18](#)
    - Ledger tab, [17-21](#)
- Over Expend Limit % field, [5-16](#), [5-35](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-24](#)
  - Overrides tab, [5-46](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Fund tab, [17-18](#)
    - Ledger tab, [17-21](#)
- Override and Approve button, [5-55](#)
- override claim date, [11-8](#), [11-34](#)
  - monographic items, [11-8](#)
  - serials, [11-10](#)
- Override Rules tab
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-33](#)
- overview
  - processing marks and claims, [11-10](#)

## P

P.O. Number column  
 Problems tab, [6-80](#)  
 Password field, [1-2](#)  
 patron  
   adding to routing list, [8-27](#)  
 Patron Search dialog box, [8-27](#)  
 Payment History tab, [9-53](#)  
   displaying  
     fund, [6-36](#), [6-76](#)  
     invoice, [6-36](#), [6-76](#)  
   displaying a fund, [9-55](#)  
   displaying invoice, [9-54](#)  
   Line Item dialog box, [6-76](#)  
 percent sign (%), [2-15](#)  
 Percentage field, [6-56](#), [6-116](#)  
 Perform Item Maintenance during Check-In  
   Workflows dialog box  
     Serials Check-In tab, [19-15](#)  
 Performance tab  
   Vendor dialog box, [4-14](#)  
 Perm. Loc. field  
   Item Record dialog box, [10-22](#)  
 Pfpc\_restore, [16-33](#)  
 Pfpc\_run, [16-33](#)  
 Pfpc\_save, [16-33](#)  
 Phone field  
   Bank Information tab, [4-32](#)  
 Phone Number field  
   Addresses/Phones tab, [4-8](#), [4-22](#)  
 Phone Number Type field, [4-8](#), [4-22](#)  
 Phones button, [4-19](#), [4-21](#)  
 photocopying  
   documentation, [xxv](#)  
 piece identification  
   line item, [6-35](#), [6-64](#)  
 Piece Identification field, [6-66](#)  
 piece label, [1-15](#), [6-63](#)  
 Pieces field  
   Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)  
 Place field, [6-39](#)  
 place of publication search limit, [2-64](#), [2-67](#)  
 [Place] stanza, [2-72](#)  
 plus sign (+), [2-15](#)  
 PO (purchase order) check box, [4-41](#)  
 PO Fees dialog box, [6-84](#)  
 policy group  
   Acquisitions, [5-3](#)

Policy Group field, [5-12](#), [5-22](#)  
 Position  
   Session Preferences dialog box  
     List Bar tab, [18-9](#)  
 POST request, [13-1](#), [13-16](#)  
 Postal Mail check box  
   Generate Claim dialog box, [11-34](#)  
 prediction pattern information  
   line item, [6-35](#), [6-64](#)  
 predictive component  
   remove multiple issues, [8-19](#)  
 predictive component pattern  
   adding extra issue, [8-17](#)  
   changing enumeration/chronology of issue, [8-18](#)  
   changing expected date of issue, [8-17](#)  
   closing pattern, [8-22](#)  
   combine/omit issues, [8-12](#)  
   removing issue, [8-19](#)  
   removing multiple issues, [8-19](#)  
 Predictive Component Pattern tab, [8-9](#)  
 predictive components  
   convert non-predictive components to, [8-21](#)  
 predictive publication pattern  
   item record  
     field display, [10-31](#)  
 preferences  
   session, [18-1](#)  
 Preferences dialog box, [1-9](#), [18-2](#)  
 Prepaid field  
   Extended Fund Allocation section  
     Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-54](#)  
 preparing  
   fiscal period close, [16-3](#)  
 prepay, [6-29](#)  
 PrePay Amount per copy field  
   Line Item dialog box, [6-45](#)  
   Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)  
 PrePay per copy field, [6-50](#)  
 price adjustment  
   adding to invoice, [12-28](#)  
   adding to purchase order, [6-89](#)  
   choosing  
     fund, [12-30](#)  
   editing, [6-92](#), [12-31](#)  
   line item, [6-26](#)  
   removing, [6-92](#), [12-32](#)  
 Price field  
   Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)  
 Price tab  
   Adjustment Details section, [6-48](#)  
   entering line item information, [6-46](#)

- Line Item dialog box, 6-43, 6-45
- Print button
  - Bindery Copy Data dialog box, 14-44
  - Bindery Pullslip dialog box, 14-45
  - Duplicate Order Information on PO dialog box, 6-98
  - Marked Issues tab, 11-27
  - Marked Line Item tab, 11-27
- Print color field, 14-17
- Print Label button, 10-29
- Print Labels dialog box, 1-16
  - printing labels, 1-16
- Print Notes on Routing List check box, 8-30
- Print Piece Label check box, 1-17
- Print Pullslip button, 14-11, 14-17, 14-45
- Print Purchase Order check box, 6-96
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Approve Processing tab, 19-9
- Print Spine Label check box, 1-17
- Print Voucher/Check Request check box, 12-35
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Approve Processing tab, 19-10
- Printer check box, 11-38, 19-19
- printing
  - bindery notes, 14-43
  - items on Claims work space, 11-46
  - items on Problems work space, 11-46
  - labels
    - from Print Labels dialog box, 1-16
  - labels, spine and piece, 1-15
  - line item
    - piece label, 6-63
    - spine label, 6-63
  - pullslips, 14-44
  - routing list, 8-35
  - standard number on a purchase order, 6-43
- Problem History tab, 9-51, 11-15
- problem list
  - generating a claim, 11-31
- Problems button, 2-104
- Problems List, 6-70
- Problems tab, 11-13
  - Line Item dialog box, 6-79
- Problems work space, 2-104, 2-105, 11-1, 11-11, 11-16
- Process EDI Messages
  - Next button, 15-5
- Process EDI Messages button, 15-2
- processing
  - claimed items
    - from approved invoice, 12-36
    - from approved purchase order, 11-27
  - EDI messages, 15-2
  - fiscal period close, 16-27
  - marked items
    - from approved invoice, 12-36
  - marked line item copy, 6-80
  - marked line items
    - from approved purchase order, 11-27
  - marks and claims, 11-10
- Profile field
  - incoming message, 15-18
  - outgoing message, 15-25
- program
  - fiscal period close (FPC), 16-1, 16-11
- Prompt to print Bindery Pullslips
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Serials Check-In tab, 19-16
- prompt to print bindery pullslips, 19-17
- Properties tab
  - Currency Maintenance dialog box, 3-6
  - Invoice dialog box, 12-9
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), 5-41
  - Ledger dialog box (ledger), 5-18
  - Line Item dialog box, 6-82
  - New Invoice dialog box, 12-17
  - Publication Pattern work space, 8-64
  - Purchase Order dialog box, 6-10
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-15
- properties tab, 8-81
- Publication Number field, 6-39
- publication pattern, 8-4, 8-8, 8-58
  - alternative chronology, 8-63
  - alternative enumeration, 8-63
  - chronology, 8-63
  - closing, 8-22, 8-39
  - copying, 8-67
  - deleting, 8-68
  - editing, 8-65
  - editing a publication pattern, 8-65
  - enumeration, 8-62
  - linking to subscription component, 8-8
- Publication Pattern dialog box, 8-47
- Publication Pattern Model field, 8-9, 8-51, 8-87
  - Close Publication Pattern dialog box, 8-44
- Publication Pattern work space, 8-60, 8-69
  - header information, 8-61
- publication patterns
  - complex, 8-71
- publication status search limit, 2-64, 2-67
- Publisher field, 6-39

- pullslip, [14-3](#)
  - editing, [14-44](#)
  - printing, [14-44](#)
- purchase order, [6-1](#)
  - adding
    - line item by bibliographic searching, [6-16](#)
    - line item by creating a brief bibliographic record, [6-18](#)
    - line item by importing, [6-21](#)
    - line item by searching a remote database, [6-17](#)
    - price adjustment, [6-89](#)
  - adding line items, [6-16](#)
  - approving, [6-94](#)
    - duplicate order information, [6-97](#)
  - canceling, [6-103](#)
    - blocks, [6-103](#)
  - changing vendor, [6-99](#)
  - completing, [6-103](#)
    - blocks, [6-103](#)
  - copying, [6-93](#)
  - creating
    - invoice, [6-120](#)
  - crediting, [6-7](#), [6-103](#)
  - deleting, [6-117](#)
    - blocks, [6-117](#)
    - fund impact, [6-118](#)
  - editing, [6-105](#)
  - editing line item data, [6-108](#), [6-113](#)
  - fund information, [5-53](#)
  - line item
    - by bibliographic ID, [6-25](#)
  - line item information, [6-26](#)
  - line items, [6-15](#)
  - new, [6-2](#)
  - processing
    - claimed items, [11-27](#)
    - marked line items, [11-27](#)
  - receiving/marking
    - line item (monograph), [7-3](#)
  - search results list, [12-19](#)
  - searching for line item, [2-102](#)
  - selecting standard number to print, [6-43](#)
  - session defaults, [17-4](#)
  - type
    - approval, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
    - continuation, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
    - depository, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
    - exchange, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
    - firm order, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)
    - gift, [16-12](#), [17-5](#)

- user-defined, [17-5](#)
  - viewing
    - from Serials Check-In work space, [9-23](#)
- Purchase Order dialog box, [6-4](#)
- Purchase Order tab, [17-4](#)
- purpose
  - of this document, [xxi](#)

---

## Q

- Quantity field
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-45](#)
- question mark (?), [2-15](#)
- Quick Check-In button, [9-9](#)
- quick line item
  - editing, [6-28](#)
- Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-31](#), [13-12](#)
- Quick Line Item feature, [6-27](#)
- quick line items, [6-27](#), [6-28](#)
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, [19-6](#)
- quick searches, [2-5](#)
- quick sort, [2-31](#)

---

## R

- radio button
  - Address #, [4-6](#)
  - Allocation Change, [5-48](#)
  - Boolean, [2-13](#)
  - Browse, [2-19](#)
  - Check-In Title
    - Subscription Maintenance screen, [2-100](#)
  - Find, [2-19](#)
  - Free Text, [2-13](#)
  - Holdings Boolean, [2-14](#)
  - ISSN, [2-100](#)
  - SICI, [2-100](#)
  - To File, [15-28](#)
  - Transfer, [5-48](#)
  - UPC, [2-100](#)
- Rate (currency) field
  - New Order dialog box, [6-13](#)
- Rate field
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-14](#)



- Recap work space, [9-15](#), [19-15](#)
- Receipt History tab, [9-33](#), [10-18](#)
  - after re-collapse, [9-42](#)
  - creating item record from Receipt History tab, [9-48](#)
  - editing
    - enumeration/chronology, [9-35](#)
  - hierarchy, [9-34](#)
  - serial issue collapsing, [9-36](#)
  - serial issue displaying, [9-43](#)
  - serial issue re-collapsing, [9-40](#)
  - serial issue unreceiving, [9-45](#)
- Receive a file button, [15-5](#), [15-7](#)
- Receive button, [9-11](#)
  - Receive/Mark tab, [10-9](#)
- Receive items field
  - incoming message, [15-17](#)
- Receive on Approve check box, [6-96](#), [12-35](#)
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Approve Processing tab, [19-10](#)
- Receive/Mark dialog box, [7-6](#), [7-16](#)
- Receive/Mark tab, [6-36](#), [7-11](#), [7-19](#), [10-9](#)
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-77](#)
  - receiving/marking
    - line item (monograph), [7-9](#), [7-17](#)
- Received Issue(s) field, [9-16](#)
- receiver code, [4-37](#), [4-39](#), [4-41](#)
- Receiver Code field
  - incoming message, [15-19](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
  - Send selected messages dialog box, [15-28](#)
- receiving
  - EDI messages, [15-5](#)
  - EDIFACT files, [15-7](#)
  - serial issue, [9-11](#)
- receiving location
  - selecting, [1-3](#)
- receiving/marking
  - monographic line item, [7-1](#)
  - from purchase order, [7-3](#)
  - from Receive/Mark tab, [7-9](#), [7-17](#)
- Recent Issues label
  - WebVoyage display, [14-46](#)
- recipient
  - list, [8-26](#)
  - routing list
    - changing priority, [8-34](#)
    - deleting, [8-35](#)
- re-collapse
  - issues, [9-41](#)
- re-collapsing
  - serial issue, [9-40](#)
  - volume, [14-49](#)
- record
  - searching for, [2-1](#)
- Record History dialog box, [10-28](#)
- Ref/Note additional references, [2-40](#)
- Reference # Qualifier field
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Line Item tab, [17-8](#)
- Reference additional references, [2-38](#), [2-40](#)
- Reference Information dialog box, [2-40](#), [2-41](#)
- regular line item type, [6-65](#)
- reissue
  - reason for, [xxi](#)
- Related Invoices tab, [6-102](#)
- Relevance column
  - Titles Index, [2-30](#)
- Re-Link button, [6-60](#)
- Relink button, [15-17](#)
- Remote button, [2-16](#), [2-21](#), [2-27](#), [2-53](#), [2-56](#)
- remote databases
  - searching, [2-56](#)
- Remote Search dialog box, [2-57](#)
- remote searching, [2-53](#)
- Remove button
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, [6-92](#)
  - Invoice Fees dialog box, [12-32](#)
- Remove Fund button, [6-117](#)
- Remove Issue button, [8-19](#)
- Remove Issue(s) button, [9-8](#), [9-20](#)
- Remove Ledger(s) button, [16-18](#)
- Remove Multiple Issues button, [8-20](#)
- remove multiple issues from non-predictive component, [8-19](#)
- remove multiple issues from predictive component, [8-19](#)
- removing
  - fund
    - extended fund allocation, [6-117](#)
  - issue, [8-19](#)
    - from volume, [14-33](#)
    - multiple, [8-19](#)
  - item statistical category, [10-26](#)
  - item status, [10-25](#)
  - On order status, [11-26](#)
  - price adjustment, [6-92](#), [12-32](#)
  - serial issue, [9-19](#)
- Renewal Date field, [6-68](#)
- reordering
  - issue in a volume, [14-37](#)
- report

- fund snapshot, [16-22](#)
- open order, [16-5](#), [16-7](#)
- reporting fund, [5-28](#)
- reproduction, of documentation, [xxv](#)
- Requester field
  - Delivery Options tab, [6-72](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-30](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Line Item tab, [17-8](#)
- requirements
  - cataloging in acquisitions, [13-2](#)
- resolving errors
  - EDI, [15-16](#)
- re-sort, [2-31](#)
- re-sort configuration, [2-32](#)
- restoring
  - acquisitions data after running fpc, [16-25](#), [16-34](#), [16-36](#)
- results
  - headings search, [2-39](#)
  - holdings boolean search, [2-35](#), [2-36](#)
  - keyword search, [2-28](#), [2-30](#)
  - left-anchored search, [2-30](#)
- Retain Last Search, [2-63](#)
- Retain last search check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Searching tab, [19-5](#)
- Retain search limits between searches check box, [2-76](#)
- retaining
  - search limits between searches, [2-66](#)
- return
  - generating, [11-41](#)
- Return (mark reason), [6-81](#)
- return mark reason, [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-41](#)
- reviewing
  - fund names, [16-4](#)
  - fund snapshot report, [16-22](#)
  - open order report, [16-22](#)
- rollover
  - line item eligibility, [16-5](#)
- Rollover Date field, [5-17](#)
- Rollover Information tab, [5-17](#)
- rollover line item types, [16-12](#)
- rollover rule, [16-27](#)
  - assigning to ledger, [16-13](#)
  - defining, [16-7](#)
  - deleting, [16-21](#)
  - editing, [16-20](#)
  - eligibility, [16-19](#)
  - initial allocation, [16-11](#)

- Rollover Rule dialog box, [16-9](#)
- Rollover Rule Name field, [5-17](#)
- Route Serial Issue dialog box, [9-13](#), [19-15](#)
- routing list, [8-23](#)
  - adding
    - location, [8-26](#)
    - notes, [8-30](#), [8-35](#)
    - patron, [8-27](#)
  - changing priority of recipient, [8-34](#)
  - creating, [8-24](#)
  - deleting
    - from edit routing list dialog box, [8-37](#)
    - from subscription maintenance work space, [8-35](#)
    - recipient, [8-35](#)
  - editing, [8-31](#)
  - printing, [8-35](#)
- Routing List Information tab, [8-26](#), [8-31](#)
- Routing List Name field, [8-25](#)
- routing lists
  - saving, [8-30](#)
- Routing Lists tab, [8-23](#)
- routing serial issues, [8-23](#)
- Rule Name/ID, [16-9](#)
- Rule Name/ID field, [16-9](#)
- rules for ledgers and funds, [5-3](#)
- running
  - fiscal period close, [16-32](#)
  - fiscal period close with reports, [16-35](#)
  - fiscal period close without reports, [16-35](#)
- Rush check box
  - Delivery Options tab, [6-71](#)

---

## S

- Save and New Rule button, [16-13](#), [16-18](#)
- Save Settings button, [2-27](#)
- Save Volume button, [14-10](#), [14-25](#), [14-28](#), [14-32](#)
- saving
  - acquisitions data before running fpc, [16-25](#), [16-34](#)
- SC (serial claim) check box, [4-41](#)
- scope note, [2-42](#)
- search
  - holdings boolean results, [2-35](#)
  - keyword results, [2-28](#)
  - OPAC headings, [2-19](#)
  - secondary, [2-85](#), [2-87](#)

- staff headings, 2-19
- Search button, 1-9
- Search By field, 2-3
  - Claims work space, 2-109
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, 2-103
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, 2-112
  - Problems work space, 2-105
  - Process EDI Messages dialog box, 15-11, 15-24
- Search By option
  - Session Workflows dialog box
    - Searching tab, 19-5
- Search dialog box, 2-10, 2-11, 2-24
  - Builder tab, 2-24
  - Index Selection tab, 2-18
  - Keyword tab, 2-12
- Search field
  - Find Purchase Order dialog box, 2-3
- Search for, 2-25
- Search For field, 2-15, 2-20
  - Claims work space, 2-110
  - Find Line Items Under a Purchase Order dialog box, 2-103
  - Find Line Items Under an Invoice dialog box, 2-113
  - Find Purchase Order dialog box, 2-4
  - Problems work space, 2-106
  - Process EDI Messages dialog box, 15-12, 15-25
  - Subscription Maintenance search work space, 2-100
- Search In, 2-26
- Search Invoices button, 12-2
- search limit
  - date, 2-64, 2-67
  - language, 2-64, 2-67
  - Limit Type column, 2-66
  - list of limits, 2-66
  - location, 2-64, 2-67
  - medium, 2-64, 2-67
  - place of publication, 2-64, 2-67
  - publication status, 2-64, 2-67
  - setting, 2-74
  - type, 2-64, 2-67
  - Value, 2-66
- search limits
  - stanza, 2-68
- Search Limits dialog box, 2-48, 2-52, 2-53, 2-65, 2-74
- search preferences
  - setting, 2-63
- search publication patterns, 8-65, 8-78, 8-79, 8-94
- search results
  - headings, 2-39
  - holdings boolean, 2-36
  - keyword, 2-30
  - left-anchored, 2-30
  - marked line item, 2-106
  - marked serial issue, 2-106
- search results list
  - purchase order, 12-19
  - serial issue, 2-101, 9-5
- Search Status dialog box, 2-60
- search type drop-down field, 2-19
- searching
  - accessing search history, 2-52
  - Acquisitions, 2-1, 2-81
  - Acquisitions examples, 2-81
  - authorities, 2-18
  - automatic truncation, 2-64
  - bibliographic record, 2-10
  - builder, 2-24, 2-50
  - claim, 2-108
  - claims
    - from Claims work space, 2-107
  - command, 2-16
  - command line, 2-16
  - defaults, 2-63
  - for item keyword search, 2-45
  - headings searches by call number, 2-23
  - headings/index selection, 2-18, 2-47
  - headings/non-keyword, 2-88
  - history tab, 2-28
  - holdings record id, 2-81
  - incoming EDI messages, 15-11
  - journal index, 2-26
  - keyword, 2-12, 2-45
  - left-anchored, 2-47, 2-88, 2-91
  - limits, 2-28, 2-64
  - line item, 2-102
    - from a PO, 2-102
    - from an invoice, 2-111, 12-27
  - marked line item
    - from Problems work space, 2-104
  - marked line items, 2-104
  - marked serial issues
    - from Problems work space, 2-104
  - MFHD keyword index, 2-26
  - outgoing EDI messages, 15-23
  - quick, 2-5
  - remote databases, 2-53, 2-56
  - retain last search, 2-63

- serial items, [2-98](#)
- session workflows, [19-4](#)
- standard, [2-2](#)
- unable to limit, [2-64](#)
- URI option, [2-16](#), [2-21](#), [2-27](#), [2-62](#)
- with relevance, [2-13](#)
- without relevance, [2-13](#)
- Searching tab
  - default searches, [19-5](#)
- [SearchURI] stanza, [2-63](#)
- secondary search, [2-83](#), [2-85](#), [2-87](#), [2-90](#), [2-93](#), [2-96](#)
- security
  - Add/Update Invoices check box
    - creating invoices, [12-11](#)
    - editing invoices, [12-11](#)
  - Add/Update Item check box
    - creating item records, [10-2](#)
    - editing item records, [10-2](#)
  - Add/Update Ledgers and Funds check box
    - adding or editing ledgers and funds, [5-19](#), [5-29](#)
  - Add/Update Purchase Orders check box
    - copying purchase orders, [6-93](#)
    - creating purchase orders, [6-11](#)
    - editing purchase orders, [6-11](#)
  - Add/Update Serial Patterns check box
    - copying a publication pattern, [8-67](#)
    - creating a publication pattern, [8-58](#)
    - editing a publication pattern, [8-58](#)
  - Add/Update Vendor check box
    - adding vendor record, [4-2](#)
    - editing vendor record, [4-2](#)
  - Approve Invoices check box, [12-33](#)
  - Approve Purchase Orders check box, [6-95](#)
    - editing line items on approved PO, [6-108](#)
  - Bindery - Edit Issue Sequences for Volumes, [14-21](#)
  - Bindery - Edit Volume Level data, [14-21](#)
  - Bindery - View Volume and Issue, [14-21](#)
  - bindery maintenance, [14-21](#)
  - Bindery Print, [14-21](#)
  - canceling a purchase order, [6-104](#)
  - Change Fund Allocations check box, [5-36](#)
  - Currency Maintenance check box
    - add a currency, [3-2](#)
  - Delete Invoices check box, [12-39](#)
  - Delete Item check box, [10-30](#)
  - Delete Ledgers and Funds check box
    - deleting ledgers and funds, [5-26](#), [5-51](#)
  - Delete Purchase Orders check box, [6-119](#)
  - Delete Serial Patterns check box
    - deleting a publication pattern, [8-68](#)
  - Delete Vendors check box
    - deleting vendors, [4-35](#)
  - EDI Incoming check box, [4-36](#), [15-4](#)
  - EDI Outgoing check box, [4-36](#), [15-22](#)
  - editing line items on approved PO, [6-108](#)
  - Fiscal Close Operations check box, [16-7](#)
  - Modify EDI Outgoing Messages check box, [4-36](#), [15-26](#)
  - Override Overcommit Warning check box, [5-56](#)
  - Override Overexpend Warning check box, [5-56](#)
  - overriding warnings when working in PO or invoice, [5-36](#), [5-45](#)
  - Process Claims from Acquisitions check box, [11-2](#)
  - Process Claims from Serials Control check box, [11-2](#)
  - Receive check box
    - unreceiving, [7-12](#)
  - Serials Check-In check box, [8-4](#), [9-4](#)
  - Subscription Maintenance, [8-4](#), [9-4](#)
  - View-Only Invoices check box, [12-11](#)
  - View-Only Item check box, [10-2](#)
  - View-Only Ledgers and Funds check box, [5-20](#), [5-26](#), [5-29](#), [5-51](#)
  - View-Only Problems and Claims Lists check box, [11-3](#)
  - View-Only Purchase Orders check box, [6-11](#)
  - View-Only Serial Patterns check box, [8-58](#)
  - View-Only Serials Check-In check box, [8-4](#), [9-4](#)
  - View-Only Vendors check box, [4-2](#)
- Security - Acquisitions/Serials Profiles dialog box, [5-6](#)
- see also, [2-43](#)
- Select a Message Status dialog box, [15-12](#), [15-25](#)
- Select a Receiving Location dialog box, [1-3](#)
- Select All for button, [15-27](#)
- Select Bib Records for Import list box, [6-22](#), [6-24](#)
  - fields and buttons, [6-22](#)
- Select Fund dialog box, [12-30](#)
- Select Last Issue field, [8-44](#)
- Select Locations for Account list box, [4-11](#), [4-25](#)
- Select New Intended Locations button, [17-12](#)
- Select one or more authority records dialog box, [2-44](#)
- Select The Sound File Assignment dialog box, [18-11](#)
- Selected Locations list box, [5-22](#)
- Selected Locations section
  - Voyager Connection Options dialog box, [2-55](#)
- selecting
  - copies to receive/mark, [7-7](#), [7-8](#), [7-12](#)
  - EDI message, [15-14](#), [15-27](#)
  - fund, [6-111](#), [6-114](#)

- line item
  - for invoice, [12-21](#)
  - receiving location, [1-3](#)
  - standard number to print on purchase order, [6-43](#)
- self check
  - magnetic media, [10-23](#)
  - sensitize, [10-23](#)
- send
  - claim
    - EDI, [11-31](#)
    - Postal Mail, [11-31](#)
- Send Date field
  - outgoing message, [15-25](#)
- Send Record To button, [13-16](#), [13-17](#)
- Send selected messages dialog box, [15-27](#)
- sender code, [4-37](#), [4-39](#), [4-41](#)
- Sender Code field
  - incoming message, [15-19](#)
  - outgoing message, [15-26](#)
  - Send selected messages dialog box, [15-28](#)
- sending
  - EDI message, [15-27](#)
  - MARC record to a web server, [13-16](#)
- sensitize self-check option, [10-23](#)
- Sequence New Items at Top check box
  - Session Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, [19-12](#)
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, [19-12](#), [19-13](#)
- serial issue
  - adding, [9-18](#)
  - changing chronology, [9-19](#)
  - changing enumeration, [9-19](#)
  - checking in, [9-4](#)
  - collapsing, [9-36](#)
  - displaying, [9-43](#)
  - history
    - viewing from Serials Check-In work space, [9-24](#)
  - marking, [9-17](#)
  - receiving, [9-11](#)
  - re-collapsing, [9-40](#)
  - removing, [9-19](#)
  - search results list, [2-101](#), [9-5](#)
  - unmarking, [11-30](#)
  - unreceiving, [9-45](#)
  - security, [9-46](#)
- serial issues
  - collapsing to MARC, [9-37](#)
- Serial Item and Contribution Identifier (SICI), [6-67](#)
- serial items
  - searching, [2-98](#)
- serial subscription information
  - displaying, [2-98](#)
- Serial Title field, [8-24](#)
- Serials Check-In
  - workflow
    - copies received/counts, [19-14](#)
- serials check-in
  - item record
    - creating, [10-15](#)
  - session workflows, [19-14](#)
- Serials Check-In - Recap work space, [13-9](#)
- Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-9](#)
- Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark work space, [13-8](#)
- Serials Check-In - Search work space, [13-8](#), [13-13](#)
- Serials Check-In button, [9-3](#)
- Serials Check-In tab
  - Workflows dialog box, [19-14](#)
- Serials Check-In work space, [9-2](#), [19-16](#)
  - accessing, [9-3](#)
  - information accessible from this work space, [9-20](#)
  - viewing
    - MARC bibliographic record, [9-21](#)
    - MARC holding record, [9-22](#)
    - purchase order, [9-23](#)
    - serial issue history, [9-24](#)
- Serials History button, [9-28](#)
- Serials History work space, [9-24](#), [9-27](#), [13-10](#)
- serials receive processing
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Serials Check-In tab, [19-16](#)
- Series field, [6-39](#)
- session defaults, [17-1](#)
  - fund, [17-16](#)
  - invoice, [17-12](#)
  - ledger, [17-19](#)
  - line item, [17-6](#)
  - line item copies/funds, [17-8](#)
  - purchase order, [17-4](#)
  - vendor, [17-14](#)
- Session Defaults dialog box, [1-9](#), [17-2](#)
- session preferences, [18-1](#)
  - colors and fonts, [18-4](#)
  - list bar, [18-5](#)
  - Sounds and Animation, [18-10](#)
- session workflows, [19-1](#)
  - approve processing, [19-8](#)
  - claim processing, [19-18](#)
  - item creation, [19-10](#)
  - line items, [19-5](#)
  - Quick Line Item feature, [6-31](#)

- searching, [19-4](#)
- serials check-in, [19-14](#)
- Serials Check-In tab
  - copies received/counts, [19-14](#)
- Session Workflows dialog box, [2-63](#)
- Set Defaults button, [1-9](#)
- Set Preferences button, [1-9](#), [18-2](#)
- Set Workflows button, [1-10](#), [19-2](#)
- setting
  - delivery options, [6-72](#)
  - identical fund allocations, [6-55](#)
  - search limits, [2-74](#)
  - search preferences, [2-63](#)
- Ship To field
  - Copies and Funds dialog box, [6-51](#)
  - Quick Line Item dialog box, [6-29](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Line Item Copies/Funds tab, [17-10](#)
    - Purchase Order tab, [17-4](#)
- Ship Via field, [4-12](#), [4-30](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Purchase Order tab, [17-6](#)
    - Vendor tab, [17-16](#)
- Show Components radio button
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, [19-8](#)
- Show Detail button, [15-15](#)
- Show Item Record on Create check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, [19-12](#), [19-13](#)
- Show Line Item Relations check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, [19-7](#)
- Show Marks/Claims radio button
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, [19-8](#)
- Show Me New Volumes button, [14-15](#), [14-24](#), [14-26](#)
- Show Record button, [15-16](#)
- Show Results button, [2-60](#)
- SICI field
  - Type tab, [6-67](#)
- SICI radio button, [2-100](#)
- Simultaneous Search dialog box, [2-58](#)
- single part line item type, [6-65](#), [6-67](#)
- SNA, [6-66](#)
- sort by, [2-31](#)
- Sounds
  - Session Preferences dialog box
    - Sounds and Animation tab, [18-11](#)
- Sounds and Animation
  - session preferences, [18-10](#)
- Sounds and Animation tab, [18-10](#)
- SPAC, [2-79](#)
- Spine field
  - Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)
- spine label, [1-15](#), [6-63](#)
- Spine label format field, [14-17](#)
- spinelabel.cfg file, [1-15](#)
- SR (serial claim response) check box, [4-41](#)
- staff headings search, [2-19](#)
- Standard Address Number field, [4-7](#), [4-21](#)
- standard numbers
  - Bib Record tab
    - Line Item dialog box, [6-39](#)
- standard search, [2-2](#)
- Standard Technical Report Number field, [6-40](#)
- standing order line item type, [6-67](#), [8-5](#)
- stanza
  - [Book], [6-20](#)
  - [Country], [6-20](#)
  - [Date], [2-70](#)
  - [Filing], [6-20](#)
  - [Format], [6-20](#)
  - [Journal], [6-20](#)
  - [Language], [2-69](#)
  - [Limits], [2-67](#)
  - [Medium], [2-71](#)
  - [Other], [6-20](#)
  - [Place], [2-72](#)
  - search limits, [2-68](#)
  - [SearchURI], [2-63](#)
  - [Status], [2-73](#)
  - [Templates], [6-20](#)
  - [Type], [2-72](#)
  - Voyager.ini [Global Log], [2-32](#)
- Start Date field
  - Type tab, [6-68](#)
- Start Prediction button, [8-10](#)
- Start Prediction dialog box, [8-10](#), [8-51](#), [8-87](#)
- Starting Piece Identification field, [6-67](#)
- State/Province field
  - Addresses/Phones tab, [4-7](#), [4-13](#), [4-21](#)
  - Bank Information tab, [4-31](#)
- status (publication) search limit, [2-64](#), [2-67](#)
- Status button, [2-61](#)
- Status Date field, [12-14](#)
- [Status] stanza, [2-73](#)
- Stop button, [2-29](#), [2-35](#), [2-39](#)
- Stop Search button, [2-60](#)
- subscription component, [8-4](#)
  - creating, [8-6](#)
  - deleting, [8-45](#)

- line item type
  - blanket order, [8-5](#)
  - membership, [8-5](#)
  - multi-part, [8-5](#)
  - standing order, [8-5](#)
  - subscription, [8-5](#)
- linking to publication pattern, [8-8](#)
- type
  - basic, [8-4](#)
  - index, [8-4](#)
  - supplementary, [8-4](#)
- Subscription Length field, [6-68](#)
- subscription line item type, [6-67](#), [8-5](#)
- Subscription Maintenance, [8-1](#)
- Subscription Maintenance button, [8-39](#), [8-45](#)
- Subscription Maintenance work space, [8-2](#), [9-26](#)
- subscription pattern
  - creating example, [8-47](#)
- Subscription Pattern button, [6-68](#), [6-70](#)
- subtracting
  - money from a fund, [5-47](#)
  - money from fund, [5-36](#)
- Successor Ledger Name field, [5-17](#)
- summary fund, [5-27](#)
- Summary tab
  - Balance, [5-32](#)
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), [5-32](#)
- supplementary subscription component, [8-4](#)
- suppressing
  - display of bibliographic record, [6-23](#)
- system cancel
  - marking criteria, [11-4](#)
- system cancel mark reason, [6-80](#), [11-3](#), [11-4](#), [11-39](#)
- system claim
  - marking criteria (monograph), [11-6](#)
  - marking criteria (serial), [11-6](#)
- system claim mark reason, [6-80](#), [11-3](#), [11-31](#)
- system claim mark reason (monograph), [11-6](#)
- system claim mark reason (serial), [11-6](#)
- System No. field, [6-39](#)

---

## T

- tab
  - Account Info, [4-25](#)
  - Accounts, [4-9](#), [4-27](#), [4-28](#)
  - Addresses/Phones, [4-6](#)
  - Approve Processing

- Workflows dialog box, [19-8](#)
- Attached Publications, [8-63](#), [8-81](#)
- Bank Information, [4-12](#)
- Bib Record, [6-38](#)
- Builder, [2-24](#), [2-50](#)
- Check-In, [14-4](#)
- Claim Processing
  - Workflows dialog box, [19-18](#)
- Claimed Issues, [11-23](#), [11-37](#)
- Claimed Line Items, [11-21](#)
- Claims, [6-81](#), [11-14](#)
- Claims History, [9-49](#), [11-15](#)
- Colors and Fonts, [18-4](#)
- Commitments/Expenditures, [5-14](#)
- Component Details, [8-6](#), [8-46](#)
- Conversion Rate, [3-4](#)
- Copies/Funds, [6-48](#)
- Copy Status, [6-62](#), [10-7](#)
- Delivery Options, [6-70](#)
  - Vendor dialog box, [4-12](#)
- EDI, [15-1](#)
- Enumeration/Chronology, [8-62](#)
- Footer
  - Invoice dialog box, [12-7](#)
  - New Invoice dialog box, [12-15](#)
  - Purchase Order dialog box, [6-7](#)
- Fund, [17-16](#)
- Header
  - Invoice dialog box, [12-5](#)
  - New Order dialog box, [12-5](#)
  - Purchase Order dialog box, [6-5](#)
- History, [2-28](#), [2-52](#)
- Incoming, [15-4](#)
- Index Selection, [2-18](#)
- index selection, [2-47](#)
- Invoice, [17-12](#)
- Issue Cycle, [8-77](#)
- Item Creation
  - Workflows dialog box, [19-10](#)
- Keyword, [2-12](#), [2-45](#)
- Ledger, [17-19](#)
- Ledgers and Funds, [3-7](#), [3-10](#), [5-20](#), [16-8](#)
- Line Item, [17-6](#)
- Line Items
  - Workflows dialog box, [19-5](#)
- List bar, [18-6](#)
- Locations, [5-12](#)
- Marked Issues, [11-16](#), [11-17](#), [11-19](#), [11-32](#)
- Marked Line Items, [11-16](#), [11-17](#), [11-18](#), [11-32](#)
- Non-Predictive Component Pattern, [8-14](#)
- Note



- Add Vendor Account dialog box, 4-11, 4-26
- Notes, 6-72
- Edit Routing List, 8-26, 8-30
- Invoice dialog box, 12-8
- Ledger dialog box, 5-18
  - fund, 5-40
- New Invoice dialog box, 12-16
- Purchase Order dialog box, 6-9
- Vendor dialog box, 4-13
- Order, 6-74
- Order Maintenance, 2-104, 2-108
- Outgoing, 15-22
- Payment History, 6-76, 9-53
- Performance
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-14
- Predictive Component Pattern, 8-9
- Price, 6-43
- Problem History, 9-51, 11-15
- Problems, 6-79, 11-13
- Properties, 6-82, 8-81
  - Currency Maintenance dialog box, 3-6
  - Invoice dialog box, 12-9
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), 5-41
  - Ledger dialog box (ledger), 5-18
  - New Invoice dialog box, 12-17
  - Publication Pattern work space, 8-64
  - Purchase Order dialog box, 6-10
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-15
- Purchase Order, 17-4
- Receipt History, 9-33, 10-18
- Receive/Mark, 6-36, 6-77, 7-11, 7-19, 10-9
- Related Invoices, 6-102
- Rollover Information, 5-17
- Routing List Information, 8-26, 8-31
- Routing Lists, 8-23
- Serials Check-In
  - Workflows dialog box, 19-14
- Sounds and Animation, 18-10
- Type, 6-64
- Vendor, 17-14
- Vendor History, 6-98, 6-99
- Tax ID field, 4-13, 4-31
- Temp. Loc. field
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-22
- Temp. Type field
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-22
- [Templates] stanza, 6-20
- The day of the month Expected (1..31) field, 8-11
- This Address is section, 4-7, 4-20
- title
  - line item, 6-26

- title changes (bibliographic control), 8-57
- Title field, 6-39, 9-16
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-6
  - Item Record dialog box, 10-21
  - Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, 9-10
  - Serials History - Details work space, 9-32
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, 8-3
- Title/Dept. field, 4-7, 4-20
- Titles Index
  - MARC button, 2-31, 2-37
  - Relevance column, 2-30
  - sort by, 2-31
- Titles Index dialog box, 2-28, 2-29, 2-46, 2-49, 2-52, 2-60, 2-81, 2-82, 2-83, 2-85, 2-88, 2-90, 2-92, 2-96
- to Copy Level radio button
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, 19-7
    - Serials Check-In tab, 19-16
- To File radio button, 15-28
- to Location Level radio button
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Line Items tab, 19-7
    - Serials Check-In tab, 19-16
- toolbar, 1-8
- tools menu, 1-14
- Tooltips
  - Session Preferences dialog box
    - Sounds and Animation tab, 18-12
- Total Adjustments field
  - Line Item dialog box, 6-45
- total amount
  - line item, 6-26
- Total Amount field
  - New Invoice dialog box, 12-13, 12-16
- Total field
  - Add/Edit Adjustment dialog box, 6-87
  - Invoice Fees dialog box, 12-30
- Total Records field, 6-23
- transaction history, 5-35
- Transactions tab
  - Ledger dialog box (fund), 5-35
- Transfer radio button, 5-48
- transferring
  - allocated funds, 5-48
  - money between funds, 5-36
- Transit/Routing field, 4-13, 4-31
- Transmit Order via EDI check box, 6-96
- Transmit via EDI check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Approve Processing tab, 19-9
- truncation



- searching, [2-64](#)
- type
  - line item, [6-26](#), [6-35](#), [6-64](#)
  - multiple part, [6-67](#)
  - regular, [6-65](#)
- Type column
  - Voyager Connection Options dialog box, [2-55](#)
- type search limit, [2-64](#), [2-67](#)
- [Type] stanza, [2-72](#)
- Type tab
  - Line Item dialog box, [6-64](#)

---

## U

- Unbind button, [14-12](#), [14-35](#)
- Under Commit Report % field, [5-15](#), [5-34](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-23](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-45](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Fund tab, [17-18](#)
    - Ledger tab, [17-20](#)
- Under Expend Report % field, [5-16](#), [5-35](#)
  - Commitments/Expenditures tab, [5-24](#)
  - Override Rules tab, [5-46](#)
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Fund tab, [17-18](#)
    - Ledger tab, [17-21](#)
- Unicode character set, [2-30](#), [2-36](#), [2-39](#)
- Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), [2-16](#), [2-21](#), [2-27](#), [2-62](#)
- Universal Product Code (UPC), [6-67](#)
- unlinked items
  - EDI, [15-16](#)
- Unmark button
  - Marked Issues tab, [11-25](#)
  - Marked Line Item tab, [11-25](#)
  - Problems tab, [6-80](#)
- unmarking, [11-30](#)
  - line item copy, [11-30](#)
  - marked line item copy, [6-80](#)
  - serial issue, [11-30](#)
- Unreceive button, [6-63](#), [7-12](#)
- unreceived issue, [9-48](#)
- unreceiving
  - monograph copy, [6-63](#), [7-12](#)
  - serial issue, [9-45](#)
- UPC - Universal Product Code, [6-67](#)
- UPC field, [6-67](#)

- UPC radio button, [2-100](#)
- Update Claim button, [11-35](#)
  - Claimed Issues tab, [11-26](#)
  - Claimed Line Item, [11-26](#)
- Update Claim dialog box, [11-35](#)
- updating
  - claim, [11-34](#)
- URI search option, [2-16](#), [2-21](#), [2-27](#), [2-62](#), [2-63](#)
- Usage check box, [15-10](#)
- Usage section
  - New EDI Connection Profile dialog box, [4-44](#)
- Use Persistent Check-In Notes check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Serials Check-In tab, [19-15](#)
- Use the list price from the order line check box
  - Workflows dialog box
    - Item Creation tab, [19-11](#)
- Use Vendor Account Number check box, [4-40](#), [4-44](#)
- user-defined alternate search button, [2-62](#)
- user-defined mark reason, [11-3](#)
- user-defined purchase order type, [17-5](#)

---

## V

- Valid Records field, [6-22](#)
- Validation
  - ISBN, [19-20](#)
  - ISSN, [19-21](#)
- vendor
  - adding
    - account, [4-23](#)
    - address, [4-19](#)
    - phone number, [4-21](#)
  - creating a vendor record, [4-16](#)
  - deleting
    - account, [4-28](#)
    - phone number, [4-23](#)
    - record, [4-34](#)
  - editing
    - account, [4-27](#)
    - phone number, [4-23](#)
    - record, [4-33](#)
    - session defaults, [17-14](#)
- Vendor Account field, [6-76](#)
- vendor code, [6-6](#), [12-6](#), [12-13](#)
- Vendor Code field, [4-18](#)
  - Generate Claim dialog box, [11-33](#)
  - New EDI Connection Profile dialog box, [4-40](#), [4-](#)

- 44, 15-10
- Order tab, 6-75
- Send selected messages dialog box, 15-28
- Session Defaults dialog box
  - Invoice tab, 17-13
  - Purchase Order tab, 17-4
- Vendor dialog box, 4-5
- Vendor dialog box, 4-17
  - Addresses/Phones tab, 4-6
  - header information, 4-4
- vendor e-mail address, 4-7, 4-8
- vendor envelope address, 4-37, 15-19
- vendor envelope address code, 4-44
- Vendor field
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-6
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, 8-3
- Vendor History tab, 6-98, 6-99
- vendor inside address code, 4-44
- Vendor Name column
  - Problems tab, 6-80
- Vendor Name field, 4-18
  - Generate Claim dialog box, 11-33
  - incoming message, 15-18
  - outgoing message, 15-25
  - Send selected messages dialog box, 15-28
  - Vendor dialog box, 4-5
- vendor reference number
  - line item, 6-35, 6-64
- Vendor Reference Number field, 6-66, 6-68
- Vendor Report field, 11-36
- Vendor section
  - New EDI Connection Profile dialog box, 4-44
- Vendor tab, 17-14
- Vendor Title # field, 6-66, 6-68
  - Bindery Maintenance work space, 14-6
- Vendor title # field
  - Subscription Maintenance work space, 8-3
- vendor title number
  - line item, 6-35, 6-64
- vendor type, 4-5
- Vendor Type field, 4-18
  - Session Defaults dialog box
    - Vendor tab, 17-15
- View Fund button, 6-61
- view history for
  - remove multiple issues from non-predictive component, 9-24
  - remove multiple issues from predictive component, 9-24
- View Ledgers button, 16-14
- view menu, 1-13

- View Order button
  - Serials Check-In work space, 9-23
  - Subscription Maintenance search work space, 2-101
- viewing
  - line item
    - fund, 6-61
  - login information, 1-4
  - MARC bibliographic record from Serials Check-In work space, 9-21
  - MARC holdings record from Serials Check-In work space, 9-22
  - MARC record, 2-31, 2-37, 2-49, 2-82, 13-1
  - purchase order
    - from Serials Check-In - work space, 9-23
  - serial history
    - from Serials Check-In work space, 9-24
- volume
  - adding an issue, 14-33
  - adjusting, 14-26
  - collapsing issues, 14-46
  - creating, 14-22
  - deleting, 14-39
  - editing, 14-29
  - management, 14-20
  - re-collapsing, 14-49
  - removing an issue, 14-33
  - reordering issues, 14-37
- Volume Notes field, 14-11, 14-32
- Volumes to create field, 14-14, 14-23, 14-25, 14-26
- Voucher ID field, 12-12
- Voyager Connection Options dialog box, 2-54, 2-56
  - Available Locations section, 2-55
  - Connection column, 2-55
  - Database Name column, 2-55
  - Information about... section, 2-55
  - Selected Locations section, 2-55
  - Type column, 2-55
- Voyager.ini
  - [Global Log] stanza, 2-32
- voyager.ini file, 13-16
  - URI search option, 2-63

---

## W

- WebVoyage
  - issues display, 14-46, 14-47
- wildcard characters, 2-15

work space

- Acquisitions, [1-5](#)
- Claims, [2-108](#), [11-1](#), [11-12](#)
- Currency Maintenance, [3-1](#), [3-2](#), [3-8](#), [3-10](#), [12-14](#)
- Database Definitions, [2-53](#)
- Invoices, [12-2](#)
- Problems, [2-104](#), [2-105](#), [11-1](#), [11-11](#), [11-16](#)
- Publication Pattern, [8-60](#), [8-69](#)
- Recap, [9-15](#), [19-15](#)
- Serials Check-In, [9-2](#), [19-16](#)
- Serials Check-In - Recap, [13-9](#)
- Serials Check-In - Receive/Mark, [9-9](#), [13-8](#)
- Serials Check-In - Search, [13-8](#), [13-13](#)
- Serials History, [9-24](#), [9-27](#), [13-10](#)
- Subscription Maintenance, [8-2](#), [9-26](#)

workflow

- Serials Check-In
  - copies received/counts, [19-14](#)
  - session, [19-1](#)

Workflows dialog box, [1-10](#), [19-2](#), [19-19](#)

---

## X

XM check box, [4-42](#), [4-44](#)

---

## Y

Year field

- Bindery Maintenance work space, [14-11](#), [14-30](#),  
[14-32](#)
- Item Record dialog box, [10-23](#)

---

## Z

zero

- initial allocation option, [16-11](#)

Zip field, [4-7](#), [4-13](#)

- Addresses/Phones tab, [4-21](#)
- Bank Information tab, [4-31](#)

